



**The University of Auckland**

# **CALENDAR**

# **1993**

ISSN 0112-8337

**Official Address:**

The correspondence of the University is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

*The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag 92019  
Auckland  
New Zealand*

**Telegrams and Cables:**

*University Auckland*

**Telephone:**

*373-7999 (switchboard operators)  
373-7599 and appropriate extension (automated attendant)*

*Cover:* Vaulted ceiling, Old Arts Building  
*Cover Design:* Suellen Allen  
*Cover Photography:* Anne Nicholas, Juzt Photos

# Contents

	Page		Page
<b>General Information</b>	1	Diploma in Performing Arts	215
Arms of the University	2	Diploma in Politics and the News Media	215
The University of Auckland	2	Diploma in Professional Ethics	216
History of the University	3	Postgraduate Diploma in Arts	216
The Main Campus	4	Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research	217
The Tamaki Campus	5	Postgraduate Diploma in Translation	217
Joint Arrangements with Other Institutions	5	Diploma Course Prescriptions	218
Calendar 1993, 1994	6		
Calendar Year 1993	7	<b>Faculty of Commerce</b>	221
Officers of the University	12	General Information	222
The Council	12	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce	223
The Senate	12	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)	224
Deans of Faculties	13	Degree of Master of Commerce	245
Honorary Graduates	14	Degree of Master of Business Administration	246
Professores Emeriti	14	Master of Commercial Law	248
Staff of the University (Academic)	15	Degree of Master of Taxation Studies	248
Staff of the University (Library)	40	Degree Course Prescriptions	249
Staff of the University (Administration)	42	Diploma Course Regulations	256
Acts of Parliament	48	Diploma in Business	256
University Statutes	49	Diploma in Commerce	258
		Diploma Course Prescriptions	258
<b>General Statutes and Regulations</b>	53		
Admission	54	<b>Faculty of Education</b>	262
Pre-enrolment Application	55	General Information	263
Enrolment and Course (General)	55	Degree of Bachelor of Education	263
Limitation of Entry	62	Degree of Master of Education	264
Enrolment Limitations 1993	62	Degree Course Prescriptions	265
Enrolment 1993	69	Diploma in Educational Psychology	265
Enrolment Timetable 1993	70	Diploma in Guidance and Counselling	266
Extramural Enrolment	72	Diploma in Special Education	267
Definitions of Full-Time Study 1993	73	Diploma Course Prescriptions	267
Examination	75		
Conferment of Degrees and Academic Dress	78	<b>Faculty of Engineering</b>	268
Degrees and Diplomas	79	General Information	269
Award of Honorary Degrees	81	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering	269
Fees	81	Degree of Master of Engineering	274
Discipline	84	Research in Engineering	276
Computer Systems	86	Degree Course Prescriptions	276
Library	87	Diploma Course Regulations	287
Preliminary Courses	88	Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology	287
English as a Second Language Programme	89	Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology	287
Overseas Students	89	Diploma Course Prescriptions	287
		Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology	288
<b>Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning</b>	91		
General Information	92	<b>Faculty of Fine Arts</b>	289
Degree of Bachelor of Architecture	92	General Information	290
Degree of Master of Architecture	96	Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts	290
Degree of Master of Building Science	97	Degree of Master of Fine Arts	291
Joint Special Examination NZIA and AERB	98	Degree Course Prescriptions	292
Architecture Degree Course Prescriptions	99		
Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	104	<b>Faculty of Law</b>	294
Degree of Bachelor of Property	104	Degree of Bachelor of Laws	295
Degree of Master of Property	107	Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	298
Property Degree Course Prescriptions	108	Professional Legal Studies Course	299
Degree of Bachelor of Planning	109	Degree of Master of Laws	299
Degree of Master of Planning	112	Degree of Master of Jurisprudence	300
Planning Degree Course Prescriptions	113	Degree of Doctor of Jurisprudence	301
		Degree Course Prescriptions	301
<b>Faculty of Arts</b>	115	Diploma Course Regulations	306
General Information	116	Diploma in Criminology	306
Degree of Bachelor of Arts	116	Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies	306
Degree of Master of Arts	178	Diploma Course Prescriptions	307
Degree of Master of Literature	183		
Degree Course Prescriptions	183	<b>Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology</b>	308
Diploma Course Regulations	212	General Information	309
Diploma in Arts	212	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology	310
Diploma in Arts Administration	212	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and	
Diploma in Broadcast Communications	213	Bachelor of Surgery	310
Diploma in Drama	213	Degree of Master of Audiology	311
Diploma in English Language Teaching	213	Degree of Master of Health Sciences	313
Diploma in Labour Studies	214	Degree of Master of Medical Science	314
Diploma in Local Government and Administration	215	Degree of Master of Public Health	315

	Page		Page
<b>Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology Contd</b>		<b>Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees</b>	436
Degree of Doctor of Medicine	316	Degree of Doctor of Philosophy	437
Degree Course Prescriptions	317	Degree of Doctor of Literature	438
Diploma Course Regulations	321	Degree of Doctor of Science	439
Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics	321	Degree of Doctor of Laws	440
Diploma in Mental Health	322	Degree of Doctor of Engineering	440
Diploma in Obstetrics	322		
Diploma in Paediatrics	323	<b>Staff and Student Information</b>	442
Diploma in Public Health	323	Academic Dress	443
Diploma Course Prescriptions	324	Accommodation Service	443
Further Information	325	Auckland Uniservices Limited	443
		Auckland University Club	443
<b>Faculty of Music</b>	326	Careers Advisory Service	443
General Information	327	Centre for Continuing Education	443
Degree of Bachelor of Music	327	The Chapel	444
Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)	330	Chaplains	444
Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours)	330	Clinical Psychology Services	444
Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) (Honours)	332	Computer Centre	444
Degree of Master of Music	332	Counselling Service	445
Degree of Doctor of Music	333	The Creche	445
Degree Course Prescriptions	334	Equal Employment Opportunity Policy	445
Diploma Course Regulations	336	Halls of Residence	445
Diploma in Music	336	Harassment Procedures	445
Diploma in Music (Honours)	337	Intellectual Property : Inventions and Patents	446
Diploma Course Prescriptions	338	Lost Property	446
Instruction in a Single Instrument	338	Newman Hall	446
		The New Zealand Universities Graduates	
<b>Faculty of Science</b>	339	Association (UK)	446
General Information	340	The New Zealand Universities Students'	
Degree of Bachelor of Science	341	Association	446
Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)	372	Parking	447
Degree of Bachelor of Optometry	375	Public Comment	447
Degree of Master of Science	377	Recreation Centre	447
Degree Course Prescriptions	379	Rest Spaces	447
Diploma Course Regulations	404	Smoke Free Policy	447
Diploma in Computer Science	404	Students' Association	448
Diploma in Science	404	Student Health Service	449
Diploma in Statistics	404	Student Learning Centre	449
Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology	405	Telephones	449
Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	405	The University of Auckland Alumni Association	450
Postgraduate Diploma in Science	406	The University of Auckland Foundation	450
Diploma Course Prescription	406	University Park	450
Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology	407		
Certificate in the Principles and Practice of		<b>Student Allowances, Loans, Scholarships, Awards</b>	
Radiochemistry	407	<b>and Prizes</b>	451
		Student Allowances	452
<b>Joint Board of Studies in Theology</b>	408	Student Loans	453
General Information	409	Scholarships and Prizes	453
Degree of Bachelor of Theology	409	National Scholarships 1992	453
Degree Course Prescriptions	416	University of Auckland Scholarships 1992	454
		University of Auckland Prizes 1991	456
<b>Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas</b>	421		
Degree of Bachelor of Science Education	422	<b>Prescribed Texts</b>	460
Degree of Bachelor of Technology	423	Introduction	461
Conjoint Degrees of Bachelor of Science and		Prescribed Texts	461
Bachelor of Commerce	426		
Degree of Master of Philosophy	427	<b>Lecture and Laboratory Timetables 1993</b>	474
Degree Course Prescriptions	427	General Information and Key	475
Diploma Course Regulations	427	Lecture Timetable 1993	477
Diploma in Mathematics Education	428	Science Laboratory Timetable 1993	503
Diploma in Performing Arts	428		
Diploma in Science Education	429	<b>Glossary of Terminology</b>	506
Diploma Course Prescriptions	430		
		<b>Summary of Subject Codes</b>	509
<b>Inter-Faculty Studies</b>	432		
Operations Research	433	<b>Directory</b>	510
Certificate of Proficiency	433		
Joint Certificate	434	<b>Index</b>	513
Transitional Certificate	434		
Intermediate Courses (Other NZ Universities)	435	<b>Main Campus Map</b>	522
		<b>Tamaki Campus Map</b>	524



---

# General Information

---

## *Contents*

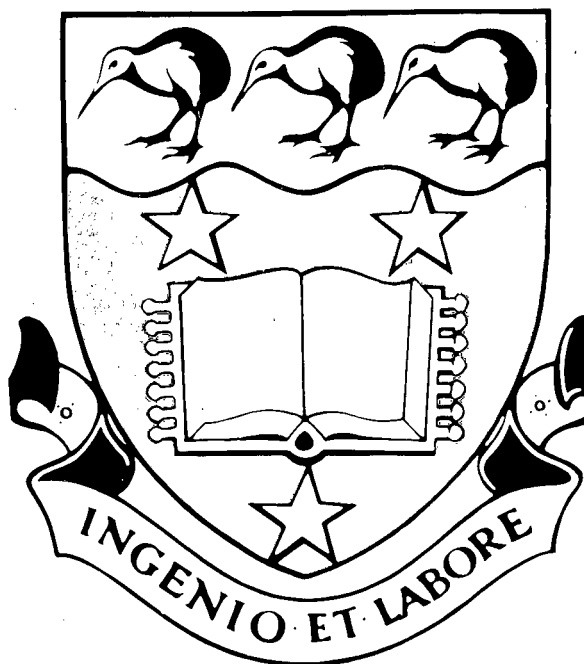
		Page
<b>The University of Auckland</b>	Arms of the University	2
	The University	2
	History of the University of Auckland	3
	The Main Campus	4
	The Tamaki Campus	5
	Joint Arrangements with Colleges and Polytechnics	5
<hr/>		
<b>The University Year</b>	Calendar 1993, 1994	6
	Calendar Year 1993	7
<hr/>		
<b>University Personnel</b>	Officers of the University	12
	The Council	12
	The Senate	12
	Deans of Faculties	13
	Honorary Graduates	14
	Professores Emeriti	14
	Academic Staff	15
	Library Staff	40
	University Administration	42
	Registrar's Section	42
	Academic Registry	42
	Corporate Services Registry	43
	Finance Registry	43
	Staff Registry	43
	Student Services Registry	44
	Works Registry	45
	Faculties and Departments	46
<hr/>	Auckland Uniservices Ltd	47
	Computer Centre	47
<hr/>	Centre for Information Science	48
<hr/>		
<b>Acts of Parliament</b>	Education Act 1989	48
	University of Auckland Act 1961	48
<hr/>		
<b>University Statutes</b>	Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990	49
	The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990	50
	Fellows of the University Statute 1992	52

---

# THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

---

## ARMS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND



As granted by Garter, Clarenceux and Norry and Ulster, Kings of Arms by Letters Patent bearing date the 15th February 1962 and recorded in the College of Arms, London.

### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper.

On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words 'Ingenio et Labore'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto 'Ingenio et Labore', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its Islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

**Note:** British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards, references: AZURE (BCC 196) OR (BCC 114).

---

## THE UNIVERSITY

The University has 10 faculties representing each of its main disciplines: Architecture Property and Planning, Arts, Commerce, Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Human Biology, Music, and Science. In addition, Theology is offered by a Joint Board of Study. There are 56 teaching departments, ranging from Accounting and Finance to Sociology. Some departments are associated with more than one faculty.

Many courses and research activities reflect Auckland's and New Zealand's place in the world. Pacific archaeology, ethnology and languages, for example, are stressed in the Anthropology Department. Geographers carry out fieldwork in the Pacific Islands while University scientists make frequent study trips to the Antarctic. Four Asian languages - Chinese, Japanese, Indonesian and Korean - are

taught and Samoan was introduced in 1991. New Zealand's concerns and problems are addressed in subjects as diverse as sociology, medicine, engineering and architecture. The Geothermal Institute is one of four international centres which provide training in geothermal technology.

Almost all teaching staff engage in research which attempts to advance the frontiers of knowledge and understanding. Research is also vital to sustain university teaching. Some 1,140 students are enrolled for masters degrees and around 380 for doctorates. While research is more often basic than applied, what is discovered may ultimately prove eminently practical. The Yacht Research Institute's contribution towards New Zealand's campaigns for the America's Cup is one notable example. A research laboratory at Leigh, east of Warkworth, carries out marine fieldwork. Various research centres cross disciplinary boundaries. The School of Medicine is one of the largest single research institutions in New Zealand.

The University's governing body is the Council, a mixture of elected staff, students and graduates, and outside appointees. The Vice-Chancellor, the University's chief academic and administrative officer, is also a member. Council is chaired by the Chancellor whose other duties are largely ceremonial.

On academic matters Council is bound to consult the Senate which the Vice-Chancellor chairs. This body includes all the professors, some non-professional staff and student representatives. The Senate takes advice from the Deans, Academic and Research Committees, and from specialist committees, dealing for example with the Library, the Computer Centre and the Audio Visual Centre, and the Faculties.

Day to day central administration is performed by the Registry. It is divided into academic, corporate services, finance, staff, student services and works sections and is headed by the Registrar.

## HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in *Chapman's New Zealand Monthly Magazine* that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestion. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870 Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate B.A. at a British university.

In 1878 O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that University Colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882 the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the state.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F.D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T.G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885 he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W.S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused courthouse.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a University for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital - and the governor - would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909-12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College has no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907 the Choral Hall was purchased. In 1917 the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Old Arts building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and Law clerks, Music students from 1888 onwards, Commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the nineteen-twenties. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research notably in Chemistry. In general the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the twenties.

In that decade and well into the thirties the College was ruled by a Registrar, Locke O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with post-graduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R.P. Anschütz, and the physicist, P.W. Burbridge. An excellent researcher, W.F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognised by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906 the College established a School of Mining, which, covertly by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University

recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in Architecture.

During the depression of the early nineteen-thirties there was great disputation and rancour. The temporary appointment of a lecturer in history, J.C. Beaglehole, later a world famous scholar, was terminated, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the right of Communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, *Phoenix*, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A.R.D. Fairburn, R.A.K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received a great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H.G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C.G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during World War II as much as had O'Rourke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K.J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The nineteen-fifties was a very difficult period in the history of the College - the University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: The University was to stay where it was.

The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings - army huts for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growth lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a Committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly. There was a massive university building programme, and over the next two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new Library. A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968 teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'. By the end of the sixties Auckland had the largest University Library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962 the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. His successor, Dr Colin Maiden, was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organisation, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the sixties continued well into the seventies and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The seventies brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$95.2 million by 1989. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seemed sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.

Its position was indeed to be challenged in the following year. The wide-ranging restructuring of Education undertaken by the Labour government encompassed the universities, and their autonomy and their identity were seen to be threatened. As a result of efforts by the universities, supported by alumni, some changes were secured in the Education Amendment Act 1990, but the University Grants Committee was abolished, the Universities were placed directly under the Ministry of Education, and the composition of the Council was altered.

The University was also faced with adverse financial conditions. In 1992 its roll climbed to 20,302 students. Anxious to respond to the demand for university education, it offered papers at Northland Polytechnic, at Manukau Polytechnic, and at the Auckland College of Education, and, acquiring buildings from the Commonwealth Games Village, it began to develop a second campus at Tamaki, offering teaching in Commerce. It was obliged, like other universities, to introduce quotas for all first-year papers in 1992, breaking the historic policy of 'open entry'. But from 1993 Arts and Science courses are also to be available at Tamaki, and the intake at Elam doubled.

## THE MAIN CAMPUS

The Main Campus is in the heart of Auckland City, separated from the tower blocks of the central business district by historic Albert Park on its western flank. To the south-east lie the trees and open spaces of the Auckland Domain. Its proximity to the cultural and commercial amenities of the country's largest city, attractive green setting and harbour views bestow advantages enjoyed by few inner city campuses anywhere.

The development of the Main Campus has been continuing over the last hundred years. Following its opening as Auckland University College in 1883 with four teaching staff and 80 students were some 40 years of wanderings in temporary homes, including the disused Parliament Building, Grammar School and Choral Hall. All of these have now disappeared except for the last. Finally, the College was given the horse paddock behind Government House and a contest was held to design the first permanent building, the ornate Old Arts Building which opened in 1926.

With the swift rise of the roll after the Second World War, many prefabricated buildings had to be squeezed onto the then tiny campus while debate raged over whether to move the University to the eastern suburbs. A building boom began in the 1960s after the decision to stay on the expanded city site. At one stage the University was operating in more than 80 buildings, 45 of which were old houses or private hotels. Most of these made way for a succession of large structures which transformed the campus: Science, Biology, Engineering, a Student Union, a new Library, Architecture, Computer Centre, Human Sciences, Recreation Centre, Arts-Commerce. A School of Medicine was erected in Grafton in two stages. The period of intensive new construction ended with completion of the new School of

Music in 1986 and the Marae complex in 1988. A new precinct to the north of Waterloo Quadrant houses the Education Faculty and the Law School moved into its new premises in 1992..

Today, the Main Campus comprises 16 hectares and is crossed by three busy thoroughfares (Symonds Street, Grafton Road and Alfred Street). It covers three entire blocks and part of three more.

Elam School of Fine Arts is a short walk away in Whitaker Place with the School of medicine on the other side of Grafton Gully, opposite Auckland Hospital in Park Road.

Each of the ten faculties of the University teaches papers on the Main Campus towards degrees, diplomas and certificates as well as carrying out research.

---

## THE TAMAKI CAMPUS

The Tamaki Campus is the second campus of the University of Auckland. It was established in 1991 as part of the University's strategy for meeting the ever increasing demand for university education particularly in Auckland.

The Campus is located on the 13 hectare University owned land in Glen Innes that was the site of the 1990 Commonwealth Games Village. It is bounded by Merton and Morrin Roads and looks across to Glendowie and the Tamaki River estuary. The University Park, which has 16 hectares of playing fields and spacious club-rooms is adjacent to the Campus.

The University's Council has approved a \$45 million building programme for the first phase of the development of the Campus. The first academic building and lecture theatre are to be completed for the start of the 1993 academic year. Six other academic buildings and two lecture theatres are expected to be completed over the next three years. These buildings will be able to accommodate about 3,000 students. Ultimately the Campus is expected to have in excess of 7,000 students.

The Campus is connected to the University's Library and computer systems and electronic mail network. There is a regular shuttle bus service connecting the Tamaki and Main Campuses.

There are three academic divisions at Tamaki. These are divisions of the Faculties of Arts, Science and Commerce located at the main campus. The faculties and their departments are responsible for the teaching at the Tamaki Campus.

The academic and administrative head of the Tamaki Campus is an Assistant Vice-Chancellor, who is responsible to the Vice-Chancellor of the University. Each of the academic divisions at Tamaki is headed by an Associate or Deputy Dean of the relevant faculty. The academic staff are members of departments and faculties on the Main Campus but have primary teaching responsibility at Tamaki. A Deputy Registrar is responsible for the administrative matters of the Campus.

The Commerce Division offers the BCom Degree course. The Part I and Stage II papers, listed in the *Tamaki Handbook* and *Student Guide*, are similar to those offered on the Main Campus. In the third year, students will be able to specialise in Financial Management, International Studies or Information Technology which are particular in their content to the Tamaki Campus.

The Arts Division offers papers towards the Degree of Bachelor of Arts. In 1993, it will offer Stage I papers in Economics, English, Geography, History, Japanese, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Maori Studies, Mathematics, Political Studies, and Psychology. It is envisaged that these subjects will be advanced to Stage II in 1994, with further Stage I subjects being introduced such as Anthropology, Philosophy and a European language. In 1995, some Stage III papers will be introduced although some degree requirements will have to be completed on the Main Campus initially.

The Science Division offers for 1993 two new and innovative Degree of Bachelor of Science programmes, Environmental Management and Physics, Electronics, Computers and Computing. The Science Division also offers the new four-year BTech (Information Technology) Degree. These three Science programmes are available only on the Tamaki Campus. For full details of these programmes refer to the *Tamaki Handbook* and the *Student Guide*.

Students enrolling for the majority of their papers at Tamaki may enrol for up to two papers at the Main Campus. Similarly, students enrolling for the majority of their papers at the Main Campus may enrol for up to two papers at the Tamaki Campus.

These courses are governed by the General Statutes and Regulations and by the Regulations for the specific degrees which appear in this *Calendar*. The degree regulations for courses taught at Tamaki will be found in the relevant sections of the *Calendar* and all papers taught at Tamaki will have the prefix T before the paper number. Papers taught at both the Main Campus and Tamaki Campus will be shown twice in the degree schedule (eg for Accounting 01.100, it will show for the Main Campus as "01.100 Accounting" and for the Tamaki Campus as "T01.100 Accounting").

---

## JOINT ARRANGEMENTS WITH COLLEGES AND POLYTECHNICS

In addition to the two campuses owned by the University of Auckland, joint arrangements have been made with several tertiary institutions.

### AUCKLAND COLLEGE OF EDUCATION

The Bachelor of Education is jointly taught by the University and Auckland College of Education. Papers in Stage I English, Mathematics, and Psychology, papers for the Bachelor of and Diploma in Science Education, for the Diploma in Mathematics Education and for the MA in Social Work are also taught at the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

### THE AUCKLAND CONSORTIUM FOR THEOLOGICAL EDUCATION

The Bachelor of Theology is jointly taught by the University and the members of the consortium which include The College of St. John, Trinity Methodist College, Carey Baptist College, the Catholic Institute of Theology, Mount Saint Mary's College and the University of Auckland.

### MANUKAU POLYTECHNIC

A Stage I Sociology paper, 82.104 An Introduction to Sociological Analysis: Gender, Ethnicity and Class in New Zealand, is taught at Manukau Polytechnic. The Centre for Continuing Educations runs a New Start Programme at Manukau Polytechnic as well as papers on the Main Campus.

### NORTHLAND POLYTECHNIC

In 1993, the new Joint Certificate will be offered at Northland Polytechnic. Students may enrol for specifically for the Joint Certificate or simply for the individual papers being offered which will be N14.150, Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms, N14.151, Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education, N04.101. Introduction to Maori Society and N04.203, The Coming of the Maori.

It is hoped to expand the papers available at Northland Polytechnic in 1994 to include a wider variety of subjects.

## 1993 CALENDAR

JANUARY							FEBRUARY							MARCH							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
25	26	27	28	29	30	31								29	30	31					
APRIL							MAY							JUNE							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
			1	2	3	4						1	2		1	2	3	4	5	6	
5	6	7	8	9	10	11	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
12	13	14	15	16	17	18	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
19	20	21	22	23	24	25	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	
26	27	28	29	30			24	25	26	27	28	29	30	28	29	30					
							31														
JULY							AUGUST							SEPTEMBER							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
			1	2	3	4							1			1	2	3	4	5	
5	6	7	8	9	10	11	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
12	13	14	15	16	17	18	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	
19	20	21	22	23	24	25	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	
26	27	28	29	30	31		23	24	25	26	27	28	29	27	28	29	30				
							30	31													
OCTOBER							NOVEMBER							DECEMBER							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
				1	2	3		1	2	3	4	5	6	7			1	2	3	4	5
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30						27	28	29	30	31			

## 1994 CALENDAR

[illegible]

---

# THE CALENDAR YEAR 1993

---

## January 1993

---

Friday 1	New Year's day
Tuesday 5	Registry opens
Friday 8	Applications close for: Pre-enrolment for all students wishing to be considered for enrolment in 1993 except for students who were <i>not</i> enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992 where the closing date was 9 December 1992 (includes provisional entrance) or where an earlier date is prescribed for a limited entry course or paper.
Friday 15	Applications close for enrolment as an extramural student (Massey, if application includes restricted-entry papers)
Friday 29	Applications close for enrolment as an extramural student (Massey, if application includes no restricted-entry papers) Enrolment (with fees) close with the Registrar for the next examinations for DipObst and DipG&O

## February 1993

---

Monday 1	Auckland Anniversary Day Holiday Graduate School of Business Session 1 begins
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30 Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Saturday 6	Waitangi (New Zealand) Day
Monday 8	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 10	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 11	Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30
Friday 12	Last day for additions and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 1 February Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 15	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 16	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 17	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00 Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00 Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 18	<b>Enrolment begins (18 Feb - 26 Feb)</b> Times for enrolment for the various faculties are set out under General Statutes and Regulations, Enrolment Timetable 1993 Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30 Meeting of Student Services Committee 3.30
Monday 22	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00
Thursday 25	Candidates who have not presented theses, essays, dissertations and original investigations to complete their degree or diploma by this date are required to re-enrol and are not entitled to have their degree conferred or diploma awarded at the graduation ceremony in May
Friday 26	

## March 1993

---

Monday 1	<b>TERM 1 BEGINS</b>
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Monday 8	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30 Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Tuesday 9	Meeting Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Wednesday 10	Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00
Thursday 11	Last day for additions and deletions to all courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst and final year for MBChB for papers commencing before 21 June that are not taught over the full academic year.
Friday 12	Last day for additions and deletions to courses for BE and ME for papers commencing before 12 July
Monday 15	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 16	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 17	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00 Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00 Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30

Thursday 18	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Friday 19	Meeting of Departmental Grants Committee 9.00
	Last day for additions and deletions to all courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst and final year for MBChB for papers taught over the full academic year.
Monday 22	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Tuesday 23	Meeting of Audit Committee 9.30
Monday 29	Meeting of Senate 9.30
Tuesday 30	Last day for receipt of applications for the conferment of degrees and award of diplomas for the May graduation ceremony including applications for masters and other degrees with a research content
	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30

---

## April 1993

---

Thursday 1	Last day for deletions to course for DipG&O and DipObst for June examination
	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00
Monday 5	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Thursday 8	Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30
Friday 9	<b>Easter Recess begins</b>
	Good Friday
Monday 12	Easter Monday
Tuesday 13	University closed
Wednesday 14	<b>Lectures resume after Easter Recess</b>
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 15	Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30
Monday 19	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 20	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 21	Meeting Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
Friday 23	Meeting of Audio Visual Committee 10.00
Sunday 25	Anzac Day
Monday 26	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Student Services Committee 3.30
Tuesday 27	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Wednesday 28	Meeting of Audit Committee 2.30
Thursday 29	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30

---

## May 1993

---

Saturday 1	Graduate School of Business Session 1 ends
Monday 3	Graduate School of Business examinations begin
	Meeting of Senate 9.30
Tuesday 4	Graduation Ceremonies
Wednesday 5	Graduate School of Business examinations end
Thursday 6	Graduation Ceremonies
Friday 7	Graduation Ceremonies
Saturday 8	<b>TERM 1 ENDS</b>
Monday 10	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
Wednesday 12	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 13	Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00
Monday 17	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 19	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
Thursday 20	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Monday 24	Term II begins for School of Medicine Clinical students
Tuesday 25	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Friday 28	Last day for alterations and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 17 May
Monday 31	<b>TERM II BEGINS</b>
	Meeting of Senate 9.30
	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00



---

**June 1993**

---

Tuesday 1	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Thursday 3	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00
Monday 7	Queen's Birthday
Tuesday 8	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
	Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Wednesday 9	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Monday 14	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 15	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 16	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
Thursday 17	Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30
Friday 18	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 21	<b>Engineering study break begins</b>
	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Thursday 24	Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30
Friday 25	<b>Engineering study break ends and engineering examinations begin</b>
Monday 28	Meeting of Senate 9.30
	Meeting of Student Services Committee 3.30
Tuesday 29	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Wednesday 30	Applications close for admission in 1994 for BMus (Performance) (for the first time)

---

**July 1993**

---

Friday 2	<b>Engineering examinations end</b>
	Last day for additions and deletions to all courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst and final year for MBChB for papers commencing after 21 June that are not taught over the full academic year
Monday 5	<b>Mid-Term study break begins</b>
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Audit Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Sunday 11	<b>Mid-Term study break ends</b>
Monday 12	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 14	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 15	Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00
Monday 19	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 20	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 22	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Friday 23	Last day for additions and deletions to courses for BE and ME for papers commencing after July 13
Tuesday 27	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Friday 31	Enrolment (with fees) close with the Registrar for the next examination for DipObst

---

**August 1993**

---

Monday 2	Applications close for overseas students for entry to the course for DipGeotherm Tech
	Closing date for receipt by the Registrar of Rhodes Scholarship applications
	Meeting of Senate 9.30
Tuesday 3	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
	Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Wednesday 4	Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 5	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00
Monday 9	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 11	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 12	Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30
Saturday 14	<b>TERM II ENDS</b>
	Graduate School of Business Session 2 ends
Monday 16	Graduate School of Business examinations begin

	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 17	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 18	Graduate School of Business examinations end
	Meeting Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30
Thursday 19	Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30
Friday 20	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Tuesday 24	Meeting of Audit Committee 9.30
Monday 30	Graduate School of Business Session 3 begins
	Meeting of Senate 9.30
	Meeting of Student Services Committee 3.30
Tuesday 31	Meetings of Appointments Committee 8.30

---

## September 1993

---

Wednesday 1	Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the December examinations for DipG&O
Thursday 2	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Monday 6	<b>TERM III BEGINS</b>
	Meeting of Senate 9.30
Tuesday 7	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Wednesday 8	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30
Friday 10	Last day for additions and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 30 August
Monday 13	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 14	Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Wednesday 15	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
Thursday 16	Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00
Monday 20	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 21	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 23	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Tuesday 28	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Thursday 30	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00

---

## October 1993

---

Friday 1	Closing date for receipt of applications for NZVCC Scholarship
	Last day for deletions to courses for DipG&O and DipObst for December examinations
	Applications for entry to the course for BHB for 1994
	Applications close for entry to the course for DipGeotherm Tech for 1994
Monday 4	Meeting of Senate 9.30
	Meeting of Student Services Committee 3.30
Tuesday 5	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Friday 8	Lectures end
Monday 11	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30
	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 12	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 8.30
	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Wednesday 13	Meeting of Human Subject Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 14	<b>Degree Examinations begin</b>
	Applications close for entry to MBA programmes (for the first time) for 1994
	Applications close for DipBus programmes (for the first time) for 1994
	Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30
Friday 15	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 8.30
Monday 18	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 19	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 20	MERT Fees Scholarship/Undergraduate places for 1994. Closing date for receipt of applications by NZUCC
	Placement Services, Wellington (South Pacific students only)
	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00
	Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
	Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30
Tuesday 21	<b>Engineering Lectures end</b>
Friday 22	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00

Monday 25	Labour Day
Tuesday 26	Meeting of Audit Committee 9.30
Friday 29	<b>Engineering Examinations begin</b> Applications close for entry to Education 14.410, 14.418, 14.451, 14.452, BFA Studio I and MFA/MPhil (for the first time), Environmental Science MSc, 64.401 (for the first time) DipELT, DipSpecEd for 1994
Sunday 31	<b>TERM III ENDS</b>

---

### November 1993

---

Monday 1	Candidates for all masters degrees except MSc in subjects than Geography and Mathematics must present theses and dissertations by this date except by special permission of Head of Department. DipEd and DipEdPsych candidates must present their original investigations and written reports to the Registrar by this date. Applications close for MPH, DipPH
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30 Meeting of Childcare Committee 11.00
Wednesday 3	Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 4	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Monday 8	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 10	Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Thursday 11	Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00
Monday 15	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 16	Applications close for Education 14.455, 14.456 Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 17	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00 Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00
Thursday 18	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Tuesday 23	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Thursday 25	Meeting of Works Committee 3.00
Saturday 27	Graduate School of Business Session 3 ends
Monday 29	Graduate School of Business Examinations begin Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00 Meeting of Students Services Committee 3.30
Tuesday 30	Applications close for First Law for LLB for 1994 Applications close for entry to DipBrC, DipPolNewsMed, Anthropology 03.340 for 1994 Applications close for private full fee-paying overseas students (postgraduate) Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30

---

### December 1993

---

Wednesday 2	Graduate School of Business Examinations end
Monday 6	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 7	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 8	Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00 Meeting of Computer Committee 10.00 Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00
Friday 10	Applications close for private full fees-paying overseas students (undergraduate)
Monday 13	Last day for deletions to final year course for MBChB Meeting of Academic Committee 9.00 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 15	Applications close for entry to the course for MAud in 1993 Last day for deletions to the course of first year MBChB
Saturday 25	Christmas Day
Sunday 26	Boxing Day

---

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

---

### OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chancellor THE HON. MR JUSTICE R. I. BARKER, BA LLB N.Z. (To 16-9-93)  
 Pro-Chancellor GAEWYN E. GRIFFITHS, MA AEd Lond., ATCL (To 18-2-93)  
 Vice-Chancellor SIR COLIN MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.  
 Deputy Vice-Chancellor P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ (To 31-1-93)  
 Registrar W. B. NICOLL, BCom

---

### THE COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY

#### Ex officio

Vice-Chancellor SIR COLIN MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.  
 Deputy Vice-Chancellor P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ (To 31-1-93)

#### Appointed by the Minister of Education

EDWARD G. BOLLARD, CBE, BSc N.Z., PhD Camb., HonDSc, FRSNZ (Retires 31-12-94)  
 R. H. L. FERGUSON, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DO Lond., HonLLD, FRCS, FRACS (Retires 31-12-92)  
 GAEWYN E. GRIFFITHS, MA AEd Lond., ATCL (Retires 31-12-94)  
 W. H. K. PURIRI, LLB (Retires 20-8-96)

#### Elected by Graduates

THE HON. MR JUSTICE R. I. BARKER, BA LLB N.Z. (Chancellor, Retires 18-7-95)  
 JENNIFER B. GIBBS, MA N.Z. (Retires 18-7-95)  
 ROBERT W. LACK, JP, BA, ACIS, ANZIM (Retires 18-7-93)

#### Appointed by Council

J. H. INGRAM, CBE, BE N.Z., FIPENZ, FAIMM, MIMechE (Retires 31-12-92)  
 HAROLD M. TITTER, BCom (Retires 14-9-96)

#### President, Auckland University Students' Association

#### Ex officio

#### Appointed by Students' Association

A. S. OGILVIE, BA (Retires 30-6-93)

#### Appointed by Academic Staff

A. R. BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD (Retires 31-3-93)

#### Appointed by General Staff

SUSAN CATHERSIDES, BA (Retires 31-3-95)

#### Appointed by Lecturers

J. L. CRAIG, BSc Otago, PhD Massey (Retires 31-3-95)

#### Appointed by Professors

PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc N.Z., MSc, PhD, FMSAm, FRSNZ (Retires 31-3-93)

---

### THE SENATE OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chairman: THE VICE-CHANCELLOR

ALL PROFESSORS (and their equivalents)

HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS AND ACTING HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS (subprofessorial)

DEANS (not being members of the professorial staff)

LIBRARIAN

LIAISON OFFICER

ASSOCIATE DEAN OF GRADUATE STUDIES, SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

ELECTED MEMBERS OF THE SUB-PROFESSORIAL STAFF (three from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Science; one each from the Faculties of Architecture Property and Planning, Commerce, Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Human Biology, Music, and from the Centre for Continuing Education, and five from the sub-professorial staff at large)

PRINCIPAL, AUCKLAND COLLEGE OF EDUCATION

PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND CONSORTIUM FOR THEOLOGICAL EDUCATION

#### Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning

H. B. WILLEY (Retires 31-1-95)

#### Faculty of Arts

P. ROUSSEAU (Retires 31-1-94)

L. T. SMITH (Retires 31-1-95)

A. J. SPALINGER (Retires 31-1-94)

#### Faculty of Commerce

W. D. MAPP (Retires 31-1-94)

#### Faculty of Education

Appointment Pending

#### Faculty of Engineering

P. J. RICHARDS (Retires 31-1-94)

#### Faculty of Fine Arts

J. FAIRCLOUGH (Retires 31-1-95)

#### Faculty of Law

D. GRINLINTON (Retires 31-1-95)

#### Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology

C. G. JENSEN (Retires 31-1-94)

**Faculty of Music**J. ELMSLY (*Retires 31-1-95*)**Faculty of Science**I. L. REILLY (*Retires 31-1-94*)G. A. BOWMAKER (*Retires 31-1-95*)**Centre for Continuing Education**W. KORNDORFFER (*Retires 31.1.95*)**Sub-professorial Staff at Large**G. R. CLARK (*Retires 31-1-94*)R. DALZIEL (*Retires 31-1-95*)W. NEVILLE (*Retires 31-1-94*)C. J. WILD (*Retires 31-1-94*)M. WILSON (*Retires 31-1-95*)**President, Auckland University Students' Association****Five Student Members** (nominated by Auckland University Students' Association)N. PULLAR (*Retires 30-4-93*) (Postgraduate Student Representative)

Appointment Pending

Appointment Pending

Appointment Pending

Appointment Pending

**DEANS****Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning***Dean*

Appointment Pending

**Faculty of Arts***Dean*

WARREN MORAN, MA N.Z. PhD

*Associate Deans*

RAEWYN DALZIEL, BA PhD Well.

D. I. B. SMITH, MA N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Sub-Deans*

J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.

MICHAEL A. R. TOWNSEND, MA Cant., PhD Ill.

SUZANNE TYNDAL (Mrs), MA N.Z. (to 1-2-93)

IVANICA M. VODANOVICH, BA N.Z., PhD DipSocAnthrop Lond.

**Faculty of Commerce***Dean*

ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA PhD Yale, BSc MCom

*Associate Dean*

BRIAN D. MURPHY, MA PhD

*Associate Dean (Tamaki Campus)*

NIGEL A. F. HAWORTH, BA BPhil PhD Liv.

*Sub-Deans*

LECH J. JANCZEWSKI, MAS Tor., DEng Warsaw

SUSAN S. LAURENSEN, BCom MA

WAYNE D. MAPP, LLM Tor., PhD Camb., LLB

MARIE G. WILSON, MS Florida State &amp; Arizona, JD PhD Arizona

**Faculty of Education***Dean*

JAMES D. MARSHALL, BA PhD Brist.

**Faculty of Engineering***Dean*

ROY M. SHARP, MA DPhil Oxf., CEng, MIM, FIPENZ, MIEAust

*Associate Dean*

ERROL G. KELLY, BE PhD Otago, AOSM, CEng, MAIME, MIMM, FAusIMM

**Faculty of Fine Arts***Dean*

JOLYON D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndDes, NDD, FDINZ

*Sub-Dean*

ROBERT ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MFIM, FRSA, MDINZ

**Faculty of Law***Acting Dean*

M. B. TAGGART, LLM Harv., LLB

*Deputy Dean*

K. A. PALMER, LLM Harv. &amp; Auck., SJD Virginia

**Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology***Dean*

P. D. GLUCKMAN, MBChB Otago, MMedSc DSc, FRSNZ, FRACP

*Associate Deans*

M. J. MERRILEES, BSc Otago, PhD Tor.

I. J. SIMPSON, MBChB Otago, MD, FRACP

*Associate Dean of Graduate Studies, School of Medicine*1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB *Otago*, MPed N.S.W., DipObst, FRNZCGP, MRCCGP*Sub-Deans*J. B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS DSc *Otago*, FRCPathPAULINE A. McAVOY, MBChB *Glas.*, MRNZCGP

GRAHAM R. WHITE, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

**Faculty of Music***Dean*JOHN F. RIMMER, BA N.Z., MusD *Tor.*, MA*Sub-Dean*

BRYAN A. SAYER, BA, DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL

**Faculty of Science***Dean*RALPH P. COONEY, PhD DSc *Q'ld.*, FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC*Associate Dean (Undergraduate Affairs and Enrolment)*

PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FMSAm, FRSNZ

*Associate Dean (Postgraduate Affairs and Research)*G. L. AUSTIN, BA *Camb.*, MSc PhD *Cant.**Sub-Dean (Timetabling)*

PETER M. FENWICK, MSc PhD, MIEEE

*Sub-Dean (Student Affairs and Graduate Employment)*D. J. McLENNAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD *Well.*, DSc, FNZIC*Sub-Dean (Public Relations)*I. L. REILLY, BA DSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*, FIMA*Sub-Dean (Tamaki)*

Appointment Pending

**HONORARY GRADUATES**

HER MAJESTY QUEEN ELIZABETH, THE QUEEN MOTHER	LLD 1966
PAUL JOHN BEADLE	MFA 1979
SIR DAVID STUART BEATTIE	LLD 1983
EDWARD GEORGE BOLLARD	DSc 1983
JUDGE MICHAEL JOHN ALBERT BROWN	LLD 1992
SIR THOMAS HARCOURT CLARKE CAUGHEY	LLD 1986
ANASTASIOS CHRISTODOULOU	LLD 1992
LUCY MAY CRANWELL	DSc 1992
RICHARD HENRY LINDO FERGUSON	LLD 1986
SIR RAYMOND WILLIAM FIRTH	LittD 1978
DAVID FULTON FOWLDS	ME 1987
ARTHUR OSWALD MICHAEL GILMOUR	DSc 1983
PAAKARIKI HARRISON	LittD 1991
OLIVE AVERIL JOHNSON	MA 1979
VAUGHAN FREDRICK RANDAL JONES	DSc 1992
DAME KIRI TE KANAWA	MusD 1983
ERIC HALL McCORMICK	LittD 1983
RICHARD DENNIS McELDOWNEY	LittD 1986
ROY GRANVILLE McELROY	LittD 1976
JANETTA MARY McSTAY	MusD 1992
MAURICE PAYKEL	LLD 1992
WALTER SCHEEL	LLD 1978
WILLIAM KENDRICK SMITHYMAN	LittD 1986
SIR GRAHAM DAVIES SPEIGHT	LLD 1983
DAME CATHERINE TIZARD	LLD 1992
SIR ALEXANDER KINGCOME TURNER	LLD 1965
DOROTHY GERTRUDE WINSTONE	LLD 1983
LESLIE COLIN WOODS	DSc 1983

**PROFESSORES EMERITI**

COLIN JAMES ALEXANDER, MBChB N.Z., MD *Otago*, HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR (Medicine) Retired 1986  
 JOHN ALEXANDER ASHER, QSO, Grosses Verdienstkreuz *Germany*, RNO *Sweden*, Ehrenkreuz I. Klasse *Austria*, Goethe Med, *Munich*, MA N.Z., DrPhil *Basle* (German) Retired 1986  
 PAUL JOHN BEADLE, HonMFA, HonMNZSSPA, MFIM, FRSA (Fine Arts) Retired 1983  
 BRUCE GRANDISON BIGGS, OBE, MA N.Z., PhD *Indiana*, FRSNZ (Anthropology) Retired 1984  
 ARCHIBALD GORDON BOGLE, BE N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, CEng, FIEE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1978  
 GEOFFREY PETER BRAAE, MCom N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.* (Economics) Retired 1987  
 DENNIS BROWN, DSc *Brist.*, FInstP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1967  
 ALLAN JOHN LEWIS CATT, MCom N.Z. (Economics) Retired 1990  
 ROBERT MacDONALD CHAPMAN, CMG, MA N.Z., (Political Studies) Retired 1988  
 DAME MARIE MILDRED CLAY, DBE, MA, DipEd N.Z., PhD, FNZPsS, HonFNZEI (Education) Retired 1990  
 DAVID SIMPSON COLE, CBE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS (Medicine) Retired 1989  
 EDWIN RICHARD COLLINS, OBE, MSc N.Z., PhD *Birm.*, FIP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1982  
 KENNETH BRAILEY CUMBERLAND, CBE, MA *Lond.*, DSc N.Z., FRSNZ (Geography) Retired 1978

JOHN CHARLES DOWER, AB MD *Johns H.*, FRACP (Paediatrics) Retired 1987  
 PETER DAVID HENSMAN GODFREY, CBE, MA MusB *Camb.*, HonFRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) Retired 1983  
 ROGER CURTIS GREEN, BA BSc *New Mexico*, PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ, MANAS (Anthropology) Retired 1991  
 DAVID HALL, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1984  
 BRIAN DUTTON HENSHALL, BSc PhD DSc *Brist.*, CEng, FRAes, FNZIM (Management Studies) Retired 1987  
 PETER BARRIE HERDSON, BMedSc MBChB *N.Z.*, PhD *Northwestern*, FRCPA (Medicine) Retired 1986  
 GEORGE WILLIAM HINDE, LL.M. *N.Z.*, LL.D. (Law) Retired 1987  
 KENNETH JAMES HOLLYMAN, MA *N.Z.*, DU *Paris* (French) Retired 1987  
 DAVID JOHN HOOTON, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Edin.*, FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys (Physics), Retired 1987  
 HENRY KAYE IBBERTSON, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) Retired 1991  
 TREVOR ROBERT JOHNSTON, LL.M. BCom *N.Z.*, MCom *Melb.*, PhD *Camb.*, FCA, FASA (Accountancy) Retired 1981  
 ROBERT TERENCE KENNEDY, CBE, FRIBA, MTPI, ANZIA, MNZPI (Town Planning) Retired 1968  
 ALICK CHARLES KIBBLEWHITE, MSc *N.Z.*, DIC PhD *Lond.*, FInstP(Lond), FNZIP, FASA CPhys(Physics) Retired 1989  
 WALTER KIRKPATRICK LACEY, MA *Camb.* (Classics and Ancient History) Retired 1987  
 SIR GRAHAM COLLINGWOOD LIGGINS, CBE, KB, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRCS *Edin.*, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, FRS, FRSNZ (Medicine) Retired 1987  
 ARNOLD ROBERT LILLIE, MA *Camb.*, DesSc *Geneva*, FRSNZ (Geology) Retired 1975  
 RICHARD ELLIS FORD MATTHEWS, ONZ, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD ScD *Camb.*, FRS, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Cell Biology) Retired 1987  
 ANTHONY HENRY McNAUGHTON, MA *Calif. & N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*, DipEd *N.Z.*, (Education) Retired 1989  
 JOHN EDWARD MORTON, QSO, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ, HonFLS (Zoology) Retired 1989  
 CHARLES NALDEN, CBE, BMus *Durh. & Lond.*, DMus *Lond.*, (Music) Retired 1974  
 FRANCIS JOHN NEWHOOK, OBE, MSc *N.Z.*, DIC PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSA (Botany) Retired 1984  
 JOHN DEREK KINGSLEY NORTH, CBE, MBChB *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) Retired 1991  
 ALLAN LLOYD ODELL, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*, DSc, Hon.FNZIC (Chemistry) Retired 1985  
 DAVID MURRAY PATON, MBChB *Cape T.*, MD DSc *Witw.*, FRCPCan, FRACP, CBiol, FIBiol (Pharmacology) Retired 1988  
 ARVED JAAN RAUDKIVI, DipIng (Civil) *Tallinn & T.H. Braunschweig*, DRIngEh *Braunschweig*, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 HUBERT SAMPSON, MA *Br. Col.*, PhD *McG.*, FNZPsS (Psychology) Retired 1984  
 FORREST SMYTH SCOTT, MA MLitt *Camb.* (English) Retired 1985  
 ERNEST JOHNSTONE SEARLE, QSM, MSc *N.Z.*, DSc (Geology) Retired 1972  
 CECIL MARIN SEGEDIN, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*, C.Math, FIMA, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1981  
 SIR KEITH SINCLAIR, Kt., CBE, MA PhD *N.Z.*, LittD (History) Retired 1987  
 CHRISTIAN KARLSON STEAD, CBE, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Brist.*, LittD (English) Retired 1986  
 RUSSELL CYRIL JAMES STONE, MA *N.Z.*, PhD (History) Retired 1989  
 JAMES BRUCE TABB, BCom *N.Z.*, PhD *Sheff.*, MCom, FCA, (Accounting and Finance) Retired 1990  
 PETER WHITAKER TAYLOR, BSc BE *N.Z.*, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 ALAN LEE TITCHENER, CBE, BSc BE *N.Z.*, ScD *M.I.T.*, AOSM, MIMechE, FIPENZ, MAIME, FIM (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 RICHARD HORTON TOY, OBE, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD *Dub.*, RIBA (Architecture) Retired 1977  
 THOMAS NEIL MORRIS WATERS, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DSc, FNZIC, FANZAAS (Chemistry) Retired 1983  
 PHILIP RICHARD HYLTON WEBB, MA LLB *Camb.*, LL.D. (Law) Retired 1987  
 JOHN SCOTT WERRY, BMedSc, MBChB *N.Z.*, MD *Otago*, DipPsych *McG.*, FRCPCan, FRANZCP (Psychiatry and Behavioural Science) Retired 1991  
 HENRY ARTHUR WHALE, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*, FIP, SMIEEE (Engineering) Retired 1983  
 RALPH WINTERBOURNE, MA DipEd *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*, FBPsS (Education) Retired 1975  
 JACK LIONEL WOODWARD, BE *N.Z.*, MASc *Tor.*, CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) Retired 1991

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ACADEMIC)

---

Dates given are dates of taking up full-time employment. Where Degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. List prepared 30-9-92.

◇ Denotes a part-time permanent appointment.

---

## FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

---

Dean

Appointment Pending

---

### ARCHITECTURE

---

Head of Department

1989 RICHARD M. AYNSLEY, BArch PhD *N.S.W.*, MS(ArchEng) *Penn. State*, FRAIA, RIBA, MAIB, ANZIA, MNZIOB

Professor, Architectural Design

1964 PETER J. BARTLETT, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

Professor

1961-66, 1973 A. HAROLD MARSHALL, BArch BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *S'ton.*, RIBA, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA

Associate Professor

1979 JOHN G. HUNT, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD, FNZIA

Senior Lecturers

1967 M. R. AUSTIN, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD, FNZIA

1979 C. A. BIRD, MA DipUD *Oxf. Pol.*, BArch

1970 JOHN D. DICKSON, BArch PhD  
 1974 G. DODD, BSc *R'dg.*, MSc (Eng) PhD DipAud *S'ton.*  
 1973 R. J. W. GRANWAL, ME, MIPENZ  
 1981 G. R. JENNER, BA *Otago*, BArch  
 1979 M. P. T. LINZEY, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, ME, MIEAust  
 1991 J. LONG, BArch MPhil, ANZIA, ANZIM  
 1969 C. W. MEGSON, MArch, RIBA, FNZIA  
 1979 K. J. MORROW, DipArch *RMIT*  
 1985 GRAEME L. ROBERTSON, BArch, ANZIA, MNZIOB, FRSA  
 1990 P. L. SHEPPARD, BArch, DipTP, SAFA, ANZIA  
 ◇ 1988 N. STANISH, BArch, ANZIA  
 1991 G.M. TONKS, BArch PhD, ANZIA  
 1982 A. WARD, DipArch *Birm.*, RIBA  
 1979 H. B. WILLEY, MA PhD *Camb.*, BArch MSc

*Lecturers*  
 ◇ PATRICK J. HANLY  
 1992 P. M. MILOJEVIC, BArch *Tor.* MArch, *Ill.*  
 ◇ C. POND-EYLEY, DipFA  
 ◇ 1991 R. L. SCOFIELD, BArch, ANZIA

## PROPERTY

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1991 GERALD R. BROWN, BArch MA *Liv.*, PhD *Reading*

### *Senior Lecturers*

1979-1987, 1989 ROBIN A BELL, MPA DipSurv *Lond.*, DipUrbVal, FPMI, FRICS, ANZIV, AREINZ  
 1974-1976, 1988 RODNEY L. JEFFERIES, BCA *Well.*, DipUrbVal, FNZIV, FPMI  
 1989 D. M. LINDBERG, BA, MPMI

### *Lecturer*

1986 DEBORAH S. LEVY, BLE *Aberd.*, ARICS, MPMI

## PLANNING

### *Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1965 MICHAEL H. PRITCHARD, BSc *Wales*, DipTP, MNZPI

### *Professor*

1984 ROBERT B. RIDDELL, MA *Camb.*, PhD *N'cle. (U.K.)*, DipTP *N.Z.*, ARICS, MNZPI, MNZIS

### *Senior Lecturers*

◇ 1963 J. R. DART, MSc DIC *Lond.*, DipTP, MNZIS, MNZPI  
 1974 M. A. TAYLOR, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*, MNZPI  
 ◇ 1986 L. ANTHONY WATKINS, BArch *N.Z.*, MArch DipTP, FNZIA, RIBA

### *Lecturers*

1987 P. M. AUSTIN, BSc *Sus.*, BPhil *N'cle. (U.K.)*  
 1989 DANIEL J. BARRY, BA *SUNY Buffalo*, JD *Virginia*, MPAURP *Prin.*  
 ◇ 1989 JEANETTE M. FITZSIMONS, BA  
 ◇ 1989 J. D. LUNDAY, BA *Glas.*, MRTPI

## FACULTY OF ARTS

### *Dean*

1968 WARREN MORAN, MA *N.Z.*, PhD

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### *Professor of Archaeology/Prehistory, Head of Department*

1975 GEOFFREY J. IRWIN, PhD *A.N.U.*, MA

### *Professor*

1973 M. ANNE SALMOND, CBE, PhD *Penn.*, MA, FRSNZ

### *Professor of Social Anthropology*

Appointment pending

### *Emeritus Professor of Prehistory*

◇ 1961-66, 1973 ROGER C. GREEN, BA BSc *New Mexico*, PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ., MANAS

### *Associate Professor in Social Anthropology*

1973 JUDITH W. HUNTSMAN, AB PhD *Bryn Mawr*, MA *Brown*

### *Senior Lecturer in Ethnomusicology*

1989 RICHARD M. MOYLE, JP, MA PhD, LTCL

### *Senior Lecturers in Linguistics*

1973 D. ROSS CLARK, BA *Br. Col.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1980 F. LICHTENBERK, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawaii*

### *Senior Lecturers in Prehistory*

1973 HARRY R. ALLEN, BA *Syd.*, PhD *A.N.U.*  
 1982 DOUGLAS G. SUTTON, MA PhD *Otago*

### *Senior Lecturers in Social Anthropology*

1972 NANCY BOWERS, BS PhD *Col.*



1972 M. R. RIMOLDI, BA DipAnth Syd., PhD A.N.U.  
 1972 STEVEN S. WEBSTER, BA Minn., PhD Wash. (on leave)  
*Lecturers in Archaeology*  
 1991 PETER J. SHEPPARD, BA Wat., MA PhD Tor.  
*Lecturers in Biological Anthropology*  
 1991 JOHN S. ALLEN, MA PhD Berkeley  
 1992 ALEXANDRA A. BREWIS, PhD Arizona, MA  
*Lecturer in Linguistics*  
 1991 FAY WOUK, MA Mich., CPhil PhD UCLA  
*Senior Tutor*  
 1987 R. E. CLOUGH, PhD Lond., MA

## ART HISTORY

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*  
 1979 MICHAEL R. DUNN, DipFA Cant. & Auck., MA Melb., PhD  
*Professor*  
 1969 A. S. G. GREEN, MA Camb., PhD Edin., DipHistArt Lond.  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1973 LEONARD B. BELL, DipArtHist Edin., BA PhD  
 1974 I. B. BUCHANAN, BA Manc., MA Essex,  
 ◇ 1969-71, 1975 ELIZABETH E. EASTMOND, MA Edin.  
 1988 NGAHUIA TE AWEKOTUKU, DPhil Waik., MA  
 1971 ALAN J. WRIGHT, MA Edin.  
*Lecturers*  
 1992 FRANCIS N. POUND, MFA  
 1977 ROBIN L. WOODWARD, PhD Edin., MA  
*Senior Tutor*  
 1985 DONALD J. D. BASSETT, PhD Edin., MA

## ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

*Head of Department*  
 Appointment Pending  
*Professor of Chinese*  
 Appointment Pending  
*Professor of Japanese*  
 Appointment Pending  
*Senior Lecturer in Chinese*  
 1988 BINGJUN PANG, BA Nankai  
*Senior Lecturer in Indonesian*  
 1974 E. O. van REIJN, Drs Ley  
*Senior Lecturers in Japanese*  
 1973 T. AKIMA, MA Waseda & Hosei  
 1970 SETSUKO ITO, MA Doshisha, MPhil PhD Lond.  
 1972 T. TAKAGAKI, BA Wakayama, MA San Francisco State  
*Lecturers in Chinese*  
 1984 MANYING IP (Mrs), BA H.K., MA PhD  
*Lecturers in Japanese*  
 1988 ATSUKO KIKUCHI, BA Sophia, MA Hawaii  
 1987 WAYNE P. LAWRENCE, MA Tokyo U.F.S., PhD Tsukuba  
*Lecturer in Korean*  
 1989 INSHIL YOON (Mrs), MA Seoul  
*Honorary Fellow*  
 1967 MARGARET T. S. SOUTH, BA Syd., PhD A.N.U.

## CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*  
 1974 VIVIENNE J. GRAY, PhD Camb., MA  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1971 W. R. BARNES, BA Syd., MA PhD Camb.  
 1960 R. G. COWLIN, MA Camb.  
 1963 W. F. RICHARDSON, BD Otago, MA N.Z. & Camb., PhD  
 1981 A. J. SPALINGER, BA C.U.N.Y., MPhil PhD Yale  
*Lecturers*  
 1990 D. J. BLYTH, BA Otago, MA PhD Nth. Western  
 1991 P. R. McKECHNIE, MA Camb., DPhil. Oxf.  
 1987 M. J. WILSON, BA LLB Tas., MA Tor., PhD Monash

## EDUCATION

*Professor, Head of Department*  
 1989 I. ROGER DALE, BA Leeds, PhD Brist., PGCE Lond.

*Professors*1973 JAMES D. MARSHALL, BA PhD *Brist.*1992 MICHAEL R. MATTHEWS, BSc Med MA *Syd.*, PhD *N.S.W.*, DipEd *Syd.**Associate Professors*

1976 STUART S. McNAUGHTON, MA PhD

1990 TOM NICHOLSON, MA *Syd.*, PhD *Minn.*1980 KERI M. WILTON, PhD *Alberta*, MA*Senior Lecturers*1971 JOHANNES F. EVERTS, MA DipClinPsych *Cant.*, PhD DipEdPsych

1968 BARTON A. MacARTHUR, MA PhD

1985 DENNIS W. MOORE, PhD *P.N.G.*, MA DipEdPsych1978 ROGER A. PEDDIE, MA *N.Z.*, Dipd'EtSup *Poitiers*, PhD1993 MICHAEL A. PETERS, BA *Well.*, PhD1976 VIVIANE M. J. ROBINSON, PhD *Harv.*, MA1982 BRYAN F. TUCK, PhD *Cant.*, MA*Senior Lecturer in Child Studies*1981 MICHAEL A. R. TOWNSEND, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Ill.**Senior Lecturers in Bicultural Education*

1988 GRAHAM H. SMITH, MA

1988 LINDA T. SMITH, MA

*Lecturers*

1991 VIVIENNE A. ADAIR, MA

1990 MARGARET N. AGEE, MA, DipGuid

1992 AVRIL BELL, BA

1991 ANDREA M. BOYD, MA

1991 EVE I. COXON, MA

1992 MARGIE K. HOHEPA, MA

1991 KUNI E. H. JENKINS, MA

1987 ALISON JONES, BSc *Massey*, MPhil PhD1991 JUDITH PARR, BSc PhD *A.N.U.*, MA

1991 JUDITH SIMON, MA PhD

1989 DIANNE S. SNOW, BA PhD DipEd *W'gong.*1991 JULIA WESTERA, BA *Tas.*, DipEd *Q'ld.*, MA DipEdPsych1992 IAN A.G. WILKINSON, BEcon *James Cook*, MAppPsych DipPsych *Q'ld.*, PhD *Ill.**Senior Tutor*1979 KATHRYN C. IRWIN, BA *Minn.*, MEd *Harv.***ENGLISH***Professor, Head of Department*1964 M. P. JACKSON, MA *N.Z.*, BLitt *Oxf.**Professors*1973 D. I. B. SMITH, MA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*1980 T. L. STURM, CBE, PhD *Leeds*, M.A.1988 ALBERT WENDT, MA *Well.**Associate Professors*1980 BRIAN D. BOYD, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Tor.*1970 W. T. L. CURNOW, BA *N.Z.*, PhD *Penn.*, MA1966 R. J. HORROCKS, BA *N.Z.*, MA PhD1969 J. LAMB, BA DPhil *York (U.K.)*1967 M. A. F. NEILL, MA *Otago*, PhD *Camb.**Senior Lecturers*1966 W. SEBASTIAN BLACK, BA *Leeds*1972 STEPHANIE J. HOLLIS, BA *Adel.*, PhD *A.N.U.*1973 K. J. LARSEN, PhL *Rome*, MA PhD *Camb.*

1973 R. H. LEEK, MA PhD

1968 AOREWA P. McLEOD, MA *Well.*, BPhil *Oxf.*, BA1977 R. H. NICHOLSON, MA *Well.*1979 D. G. WRIGHT, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Tor.**Senior Lecturer in English Language Teaching*1991 MARILYN LEWIS, Licence ès Lettres *Besançon*, MA*Lecturer in Drama*

1991 MURRAY EDMOND, BA

*Lecturers*1985 W. SCOTT ALLAN, MA PhD *Edin.*

1986 ROBIN E. HOOPER, MA

◇ 1991 MICHELE LEGGOTT, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Br.Col.*1990 BRIDGET E. ORR, BA *Well.*, MA PhD *C'nell*1991 SOPHIE E. TOMLINSON, BA *Well*1987 JOANNE C. WILKES, BA *Syd.*, DPhil *Oxf.*1981 M. J. WRIGHT, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *N.E.**Senior Tutors*

1971 RIEMKE ENSING, MA

1971 MARGARET A. EDGCUMBE, MA

1987 JACQUELINE R. GREENWOOD, MA  
 1988 A. J. CALDER, MA PhD  
*Tutors*  
 1991 CLAUDIA MARQUIS, BA *Ley.*, MA *McMaster*  
 1991 ELIZABETH WILSON, MA  
*Honorary Research Fellows*  
 1987 W. H. PEARSON, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1991 F.S. SCOTT, MA *MLitt Camb.*

## GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

*Professor of German, Head of Department*  
 1966-72, 1986 ALAN KIRKNESS, BA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
*Associate Professor of German*  
 1966 KATHRYN SMITS, MA *N.Z.*, DrPhil *Freib.*  
*Senior Lecturers in German*  
 1976 JAMES J. D. N. BADE, MA *Well.*, DrPhil *Zür.*  
 1978 FRIEDRICH VOIT, DrPhil *Saar*  
 1969 MARTIN J. SUTTON, MA  
*Senior Lecturer in Scandinavian Studies*  
 1965-68, 1975 O. LENNART WAARA, FilMag *Uppsala*  
*Lecturer in Dutch*  
 1992 CORNELIS H. SNOEK, PhD (Leiden)  
*Senior Tutor in German*  
 1979 UTA HAGEN (Mrs), MA *Freib.*  
*Tutor in Scandinavian Studies*  
 1989 I. ANITA WILTSHIRE (Mrs), MA *Göteborg*

## HISTORY

*Head of Department*  
 Appointment Pending  
*Professors*  
 1965 P. N. TARLING, MA PhD *LittD Camb.*, FRAS, FRHistS  
 1956-58, 1964 M. P. K. SORRENSON, MA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
*Associate Professors*  
 1978 L. Y. ANDAYA, BA *Yale*, AM PhD *C'nell.*  
 1966 JUDITH M. C. BINNEY, BA *N.Z.*, MA  
 1972 RAEWYN DALZIEL, BA PhD *Well.*  
 1971 VALERIE I. J. FLINT, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS  
 1967 MICHAEL A. R. GRAVES, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Otago*  
 1970 H. M. LARACY, S.I.M., MA *Well.*, PhD *A.N.U.*  
 1972 P. H. ROUSSEAU, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1965 MARGARET H. LAMB (Mrs), BA PhD *Lond.*  
 1976 R. T. PHILLIPS, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1982 B. G. REAY, BA *Adel.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS  
*Lecturers*  
 1974 JUDITH O. BASSETT, QSO, LLB MA  
 1988 LINDA BRYDER, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
 1992 MALCOLM CAMPBELL, BA PhD *N.S.W.*  
 1991 T. ROHKRÄMER, MA PhD *Freib.*  
 1990 H. VAN DYK, MA *JD Wis.*  
 1979 BARBARA J. WATSON ANDAYA, BA *Syd.*, MA *Hawaii*, PhD *C'nell.*

## LABOUR STUDIES, CENTRE FOR

*Director*  
 1990 MARYAN STREET, BA *Well.* (jointly with Department of Management Studies and Labour Relations)

## MAORI STUDIES

*Head of Department*  
 Appointment Pending  
*Professors*  
 1973 M. ANNE SALMOND, CBE, PhD *Penn.*, MA, FRSNZ  
 Appointment Pending  
*Associate Professor*  
 1970 R. J. I. WALKER, MA PhD  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1965 P. W. HOHEPA, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Indiana*  
*Lecturers*  
 1988 MARGARET S. MUTU, BSc MPhil PhD  
 1988 VIOLET B. NORMAN, MA

---

## PACIFIC STUDIES, Centre For

*Director*

Appointment Pending

*Liaison Officer*

1989 T. AARON MARSTERS, MA

*Lecturer, Samoan Language*

1991 MALIA WILLIAMS, BA

---

## PHILOSOPHY

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1981 JOHN C. BISHOP, BA A.N.U., PhD Camb.

*Professor*

Appointment Pending

*Senior Lecturers*

1983 STEPHEN J. DAVIES, MA Monash, PhD Lond.

1974 FREDERICK W. KROON, MA Prin. &amp; Auck., PhD Prin.

1969 ROBERT NOLA, BSc N.Z., PhD A.N.U., MA MSc

1983 STANISLAW J. SURMA, PhD DSc Cracow

1978 CHRISTINE H. M. SWANTON, DPhil Oxf., MA

1971 JULIAN P. YOUNG, MA Camb. &amp; Wayne State, PhD Pitt.

*Lecturers*

1989 JAN CROSTHWAITE, MA LaT., PhD Melb.

1985 DENIS J. ROBINSON, BA Melb., BPhil Oxf., PhD Monash

*University Post-doctoral Fellow*

1992 JOHN B. FITZPATRICK, BA Q'ld, PhD A.N.U.

---

## POLITICAL STUDIES

*Professor, Head of Department*

1989 RICHARD G. MULGAN, BA N.Z., BPhil MA Oxf.

*Associate Professors*

1967 GRAHAM W. A. BUSH, MA N.Z., PhD Brist., DipEd

1965 RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil Oxf.

1968 BARRY S. GUSTAFSON, MA N.Z., DipEd Massey, DipSovStud Glas., PhD

1972 J. STEPHEN HOADLEY, BSc Purdue, MA Calif. State, PhD Calif.

1971 R. ANDREW SHARP, BA N.Z., MA Cant., PhD Camb.

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 E. PETER AIMER, MA N.Z., PhD A.N.U.

1970 JOHN D. PRINCE, MA Case Western Reserve &amp; Auck., PhD

*Lecturers*

1979 JOSEPH B. ATKINSON, MA Cant., MPhil Yale

1990 HELENA D. CATT, MA Edin., PhD Lond.

1984 RAYMOND K. MILLER, BA McM., MA PhD, DipEd

1993 M. C. B. RIAN VOET, MA Amst.

1993 T. MARTIN WILKINSON, BA DPhil Oxf.

---

## ROMANCE LANGUAGES

*Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Prince of Asturias Professor of Spanish*

Appointment Pending

*Associate Professor of French*

1969 J. C. CORNE, MA PhD

*Associate Professor of Italian*

1990 BRUNO G. R. FERRARO, BA Syd., PhD Flin., DipScStLettlt Urbino

*Senior Lecturers in French*

1972 G. Y. EKAMBI (Mrs), Dipd'EtSup Besançon, MA

1966 JUDITH I. A. GRANT, MA N.Z., PhD Tor., Dipd'EtSup Paris, CertPhon Inst. de Phon., Paris

1970 M. D. JAMIESON (Mrs), LèSL Dipd'EtSup Lille

1970 B. D. McKAY, DU Paris, MA

*Senior Lecturers in Italian*

1968-70, 1974 MICHAEL D. HANNE, BA Oxf.

1971 RICHARD B. BACKHOUSE, DipCorso sup. Perugia, MA

*Senior Lecturers in Spanish*

1986 M. S. HARVEY, BA PhD Monash

1969 J. G. HOWLEY, MA Glas.

1981 M. K. READ, BA MLitt Brist., PhD Wales

*Lecturer in French*

1992 R. ARNOUX, DU Paris, MA DipHons

*Lecturer in Italian*

1980 LAURENCE E. SIMMONS, MA

*Lecturers in Spanish*1987 CHRISTINE R. ARKINSTALL, MA *Oviedo*, BA PhD1992 KATHRYN LEHMAN, BA *Ill.*, PhD *Pitt.**Senior Tutor in Spanish*

1978 FIONA M. TALER, MA

*Tutor in Italian*

1993 GABRIELLA BRUSSINO, MA

*Honorary Research Fellow*K. J. HOLLYMAN, MA *N.Z.*, DU *Paris***RUSSIAN***Senior Lecturer (in charge)*1975 IAN K. LILLY, MA *Cant. & Monash*, PhD *Wash.**Associate Professor*1970-72, 1975 HANS-PETER STOFFEL, DrPhil *Zür.**Lecturer*1992 ROBERT J. LAGERBERG, BA *Birm.*, PhD *Lond.*, DipSlavonic Studies *Oxf.**Senior Tutor*1981 HANNAH BRODSKY-PEVZNER, DipPhil *Latvian State***SOCIOLOGY***Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Professor*1982 I. R. CARTER, BSc *Bath*, MA *Essex*, PhD *Aberd.*, FRSA*Associate Professors*1973 A. J. CLUNY MACPHERSON, MA DPhil *Waik.*1987 BARRY SMART, BSc *Lond.*, PhD *Sheff.**Senior Lecturers*1972 DAVID R. BEDGGOOD, MA *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*1982 CHARLES H. G. CROTHERS, BA *Waik. & Well.*, PhD *Well.*1977 NICK H. PERRY, BA *Strath.*, BSc(Soc) *Lond.*1973 IVANICA M. VODANOVICH, BA *N.Z.*, PhD DipSocAnthrop *Lond.**Lecturers*1980-82, 1984 CATHERINE WEST-NEWMAN, MA *Lond. & Auck.*, PhD1987 MAUREEN A. MOLLOY, BEd MA *Br. Col.*, PhD1993 GEORGE C. PAVLICH, BA *Wits.*, MA *S.Fraser*, PhD *Br.Col.***FACULTY OF COMMERCE***Dean*1969 ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA PhD *Yale*, BSc MCom**GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS***Director, Diploma in Business Programme*1989 MICHAEL C. GROVES, MA *Otago**Associate Director, Diploma in Business Programme*

1971 MARTIN A. PERKINSON, MCom, ACA

*Director, Executive Short Course Programme*

1992 ANNE M. STEWART, MBA MSc PhD

*Director, MBA Programmes*1990 REGENA MITCHELL, BS *New H.*, MSc *Hartford*, PhD *Claremont**Senior Lecturer*

◇ 1987 KERRIN VAUTIER, BAWell.

**ACCOUNTING & FINANCE***Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*1969 G. L. D. MORRIS, BCom *BCA Well.**Professors*

1968-71, 1975 D. M. EMANUEL, MCom PhD, FCA

1989 BARRY H. SPICER, BCom *Q'ld.*, PhD *Wash.*

1981-1988, 1992 JILNAUGHT WONG, MCom PhD, ACA

*Professor of Finance*1987 R. G. BOWMAN, BA *Pomona*, MS *San Diego State*, PhD *Stan.*, CPA *Calif.**NZI Professor of Banking and Insurance*1988 C. F. ANSLEY, BSc *Cant.*, MSc *Well.*, PhD *Mich.*, FIA, ASA*Visiting Professor*1960 J. B. TABB, BCom *N.Z.*, PhD *Sheff.*, MCom, FCA*Associate Professors*1982 M. E. BRADBURY, BCom *N.Z.*, MCom PhD, ACA, CMA

1978 MARTIN S. PUTTERILL, MBA PhD *Cape T.*, ACA, FCMA  
1963-1973, 1990 JOHN B. RYAN, MCom, ACA, CMA, FCIS, FCPA

*Senior Lecturers*

1992 J. B. CHAY, MBA *Seoul*, PhD *SUNY Buffalo*  
1987 C. CLIFFE (Miss), BA MCom *Cant.*, ACA  
1992 C. J. GUILDING, BA MBA *C'dia*, PhD *Brad.*  
1984 MICHAEL G. KEENAN, PhD *St And.*, BCom MA, DipVal  
1988 WILLIAM A. A. MAGUIRE, BCom *Natal*, MBL S.A., PhD *Cape T.*, CA S.A.  
1986 SONJA NEWBY (Mrs), MCom, ACA, ACIS  
1971 MARTIN A. PERKINSON, MCom, ACA  
1987 A. P. B. ROUSE, MCom, ACA  
1985 ALAN M. TEIXEIRA, MCom, ACA

*Lecturers*

1989 LLOYD M. M. AUSTIN, MCom, ACA  
1989 ANNE R. DAVY, MCom, ACA, ACIS  
1990 HELEN J. KERR (Ms), BCom  
1991 A. D. E. MARSDEN, MBChB MCom, ACA  
1984 G. J. MOYLE, LLB MCom, ACA, ACIS, CMA, MRFIP  
1991 FARSHID NAVISSI, MAcc *Oklahoma*  
1992 A. NEALE, MCom *Cant.*, ACA  
1984 DEREK M. SPEER, MCom, ACA

*Senior Tutors*

1986 B. K. BENNETT, MCom, ACA, ACIS  
1979 KATHRYN G. CAIRD, BSc *Otago*, BCom  
1973 C. B. FRANKHAM, BCom *N.Z.*, MCom, ACA  
1990 LEIGH HOUGHTON, BA BCom, ACA, CMA, ACIS  
1986 ROSEMARY F. SPENCE, BA *Cant.*, BBS *Massey*, ACA, ANZIM

*Tutors*

1989 G. WILSON, MCom, ACA  
1992 N. WONG, MCom

**Tamaki Campus**

*Chair in Financial Management*

Appointment Pending

*Senior Lecturer*

1992 DESMOND J. A. HEATH, BSc *Rhodes*, MBA *Pret.*, HonsBCompt S.A., CA S.A., ACMA, CA S.A.

*Senior Tutor*

1991 LILLIAN J. P. VIITAKANGAS, BBS *Massey*, MSc, MNZIC

*Tutors*

1991 DEAN PREBBLE, BCom  
1992 PHILIP GOODALL, BCom

## COMMERCIAL LAW

*Professor, Head of Department*

1971 IAN G. EAGLES, BA LLB *Q'ld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM

*Associate Professor*

1975 GARTH A. HARRIS, LLB MJur

*Senior Lecturers*

1984 WAYNE D. MAPP, LLM *Tor.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLB  
1985 MICHAEL J. ROSS, BCom LLM  
1979 JOHANNA C. VROEGOP (Ms), LLM

*Lecturers*

1991 MICHAEL GEDYE, BCom LLB  
1989 ROSS B. GRANTHAM, LLM  
1985 M. LOUISE LONGDIN (Ms), BA LLB MJur  
1990 LEIGH MILLER (Ms), BA LLM  
1990 CHRISTOPHER C. NICOLL, LLB  
1990 CHRISTOPHER M. OHMS, BCom LLM  
1991 SUSAN PAHL, LLB MJur

*Senior Tutors*

1992 MARNIE PRASAD, LLB  
1988 BARBARA REA (Mrs), BA LLB  
1990 BARBARA UEHLIN (Ms), BA LLB

*Tutors*

1992 DELIA BROWNE, LLB  
1991 TERRY REID, BA LLB  
1992 MADELEINE McFADDEN, LLB

**Tamaki Campus**

*Lecturer*

1991 GEHAN GUNASEKARA, BA LLB *Well.*

*Senior Tutor*

1991 JAYNE FRANCIS (Ms), LLB

---

## ECONOMICS

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*1990 BASIL M.H. SHARP, BAgCom(Econ) *Cant.*, MS PhD Wis., DipAg DipVFM *Lincoln**Professors*1972 C. A. BLYTH, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*1973 R. H. COURT, BA BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *N.S.W.*, MA1992 T. HAZLEDINE, MA *Cant.* & *Otago*, PhD *Warw.**Alumni Distinguished Professor*1992 P. C. B. PHILLIPS, MA *Yale* & *Auck.*, PhD *Lond.**Associate Professor*1978 S.R.H. JONES, BSc(Econ) PhD *Lond.**Senior Lecturers*1983 ANTHONY M. ENDRES, MSocSc *Waik.*, PhD *W'gong*1972 KENNETH E. JACKSON, BA PhD *Kent*1964 K. D. S. JONES, BA *Wales*, MSc(Econ) PhD *Lond.*1985 SHOLEH MAANI, MS PhD *Ill.*1991 TIM J. MALONEY, BA MS PhD *Wis.*1988 MIA MIKIC, MSc *Zagreb* & *St. Mary's Coll.*, PhD *Zagreb*1986 ALAN J. ROGERS, AM PhD *Prin.*, MA1981 SUSAN M. ST. JOHN, BSc MA *N.Z.**Lecturers*1990 MARTIN O'CONNOR, BSc MA *Cant.*, MPhil PhD1991 R. RATNAYAKE, BA *S.Lanka*, PhD *LaT.*1979 ROBERT D. J. SCOLLAY, MA *Well.* & *Camb.*, BCom1988 ANJUM SIDDIQUI, MA *Ottawa*, PhD *S.Fraser**Senior Tutor*

1987 SUSAN S. LAURENSEN, BCom MA

**Tamaki Campus***Senior Tutor*

1989 MICHAEL D. G. ANSTIS, BA

*Tutors*1992 CHRISTOPHER CARSON, BAEcon *Cant.*1991 TERRY HANNON, BCA BCOM *Well.*, LLB

1992 GRAEME JONES, MCom, ACA

---

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

*Professor, Head of Department*1990 JUSTO A. DIAZ, BSc *Ottawa*, PhD *Berkeley**Professor*1992 DAVID M. RYAN, MSc *Otago*, PhD *A.N.U.*, FIMA (jointly with Engineering Science)*Associate Professor*1992 ANANTH SRINIVASAN, BS *Madras*, MBA *Ill.*, PhD *Pitt.**Senior Lecturers*1991 SUSAN BYRNE, BSc *Well.*, PhD *London*1991 JOSEPH G. DAVIS, BSc *St Josephs College*, PGDM IIMA *Ahmedabad*, PhD *Pitt.*1986 LECH J. JANCZEWSKI, MASc *Tor.*, DEng *Warsaw*1991 HANS LEHMANN, BA *Vienna*, MA *Natal*1984 KAMBIZ E. MAANI, MSc *Tehran* & *Ill.*, PhD *Ill.*1989 PETER MAZANY, MA MPhil PhD *Yale*, BSc MCom1974 DONALD H. PETERS, BA *Wash.* & *Jefferson*, MBA *Stanford*1982 JAMES SHEFFIELD, MBA *Wis.*, PhD *Arizona*, MSc*Lecturers*1983 KATHRIN BOARDMAN, BSc MCom *Cant.*

1989 MICHAEL D. MYERS, MA PhD

*Tutors*

1992 STUART R. MUNDAY, BCom DipCom

1991 FELIX B. TAN, BCom

**Tamaki Campus***Senior Lecturer*

1991 JOHN PAYNTER, BCom MSc

*Tutors*

1991 MARK PINDER, BCom

1992 SHOBA TEGGINMATH, BSc *B'lore.*, MPhil

---

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

*Professor, Head of Department*1980 J. H. KERR INKSON, MA *Aberd.*, MPhil *Lond.*, PhD *Otago*, FNZPSS*Associate Professor*1972 JOHN S. DEEKS, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *L.S.E.**Senior Lecturers*1987 PETER F. BOXALL, PhD *Monash*, MCom

1988 NIGEL A. F. HAWORTH, BA BPhil PhD *Liv.*  
 1987 J. RICHARD S. HIGHAM, MA *Oxf.*, DipArch *Lond.*  
 1973 JUDITH C. F. McMORLAND, BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD  
 1988 MICHAEL J. POWELL, PhD *Chicago*, MA  
 1991 MARIE G. WILSON, MS *Florida State & Arizona*, JD PhD *Arizona*  
**Lecturers**  
 1992 CATHERINE J. CASEY, MA Cert MaoriStudies *Waik.*  
 1991 STEPHEN G. HUGHES, BA *Bradford*, MA *Warw.*  
 1992 DARL G. KOLB, MA *Colorado*, PhD *Cornell*  
 1990 JUDITH K. PRINGLE, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1990 MARYAN STREET, BA *Well.* (jointly with Centre for Labour Studies)  
**Senior Tutors**  
 1990 FELICITY LAMM, BA MPhil  
**Tamaki Campus**  
**Senior Tutor**  
 1992 LYNNE LINDBERG, MA, DipEd

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

**Professor, Head of Department**  
 1988 RODERICK J. BRODIE, BSc (Econ) PhD *Cant.*, MA *Otago*  
**Professor**  
 1986 R. WAYNE CARTWRIGHT, MAgrSc *Massey*, PhD *Purdue*  
**Associate Professor**  
 1983 RICHARD W. BROOKES, BCA *Well.*, MSc *Lond.*  
**Senior Lecturers**  
 1993 DOREN D. CHADEE, BA MSc PhD *Manit.*  
 1989 MICHAEL C. GROVES, MA *Otago*  
 1978 ROGER MARSHALL, PhD *W.Aust.*, MCom  
 1971 BRIAN D. MURPHY, MA PhD  
 1987 DONALD R. SCOTT, BSc *Rhodes*, MBA PhD *Witw.*  
 1992 NICHOLAS VAN DER WALT, BCom *Rhodes*, PhD *Bath*, FRSA  
**Lecturers**  
 1989 BRIAN J. BLOCH, MCom *Witw.*, PhD *S.A.*  
 1989 NICOLE E. COVIELLO, BCom MSc *Sask.*  
 1992 JOANNE HENSHALL, MCom  
 1992 ANDREW JARDINE, BBS *Massey*, BSocSc MBA *Waik.*  
 1992 JENNY JARDINE, BMS MCom *Waik.*  
 1990 CHRISTINE LEE, MCom  
 1987 DAVID S. E. SHIEFF, MCom

## FACULTY OF ENGINEERING

**Dean**  
 1992 ROY M. SHARP, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, MIM, MIEAus, CEng, FIPENZ

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING

**Professor, Head of Department**  
 1969 GEOFFREY G. DUFFY, BSc *N.S.W.*, PhD DEng, ASTC, FRSNZ, FICHEM, FIPENZ, FIMCNZ, CEng  
**Professors of Chemical and Materials Engineering**  
 1992 ROY M. SHARP, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, MIM, MIEAus, CEng, FIPENZ  
 1981 BARRY J. WELCH, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FICHEM, MAICH, FRACI, FNZIC, MNorskATS, MAIME, CEng, CChem  
**Professor**  
 Appointment Pending  
**Associate Professors**  
 1984 JOHN J. J. CHEN, BE PhD, CEng, FICHEM, FIPENZ  
 1968 W. GEORGE FERGUSON, BSc BE *N.Z.*, PhD, CEng, MIPENZ, FIEAust, FIM  
 1986 KEVIN W. FREE, ME MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1969 ERROL G. KELLY, BE PhD *Otago*, AOSM, CEng, MAIME, MIMM, FAUSIMM  
 1986 HANS M. MULLER-STEINHAGEN, DiplIng *DrIng Karlsruhe*, MASME, MAICH  
**Senior Lecturers**  
 1970 JOSEPH T. GREGORY, BSc *Idaho*, PhD *Wis.*, MASM, MAWS, MIEAust  
 1971 MICHAEL L. ALLEN, BSc(Eng) *Lond.*, ME, CEng, MICHEM, MAICH, MIPENZ  
**Lecturers**  
 1989 PETER A. DEARNLEY, BSc PhD *Birm.*, CEng, MIM  
 1992 WEI GAO, BE (*Northeastern Inst. Tech.*) *China*, MSc (BCRI) *China*, PhD *Oxf.*  
**Comalco Lectureship in Materials Science and Engineering**  
 1991 MARGARET M. HYLAND, BSc *Guelph*, PhD *W. Ont.*  
**University Post-Doctoral Fellow**  
 1981 S. BARRY TRICKLEBANK, MSc PhD *N.Z.*



---

## CIVIL ENGINEERING

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1981 PETER G. LOWE, BE N.Z., MA Camb., MEngSc Syd., PhD Lond., CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, MIEAust

### *Professor*

1977 MICHAEL J. PENDER, BE PhD Cant., MIPENZ, MASCE

### *Associate Professor*

1975 RICHARD C. FENWICK, BE N.Z., PhD Cant., MIPENZ

### *Senior Lecturers*

1967 BRUCE H. CATO, BE N.Z., CEng, FIPENZ, FIHT, AArbINZ, MICE

1969 IAN W. GUNN, BE N.Z., DipPHE N'cle (U.K.), CEng, MICE, FIPENZ, FIWEM

1969 ANTHONY H. BRYANT, BE PhD Cant.

1972 ROGER C. M. DUNN, BE BSc N.Z., MEngSc N.S.W., DipTP, FITE, MIHT, MIPENZ

1979 COLIN D. CHRISTIAN, BSc(Eng) PhD S'ton., CEng, MICE, MIPENZ, MASCE

1979 BARRY J. DAVIDSON, BE PhD

1980 JOHN W. BUTTERWORTH, BE PhD Sur.

1980 THOMAS J. LARKIN, BE PhD, AMASCE

1981 BRUCE W. MELVILLE, BE PhD, AMICE, MIAHR

1986 LAURENCE D. WESLEY, MSc(Eng) DIC PhD Lond., ME, MASCE, MIPENZ

1986 LESLIE M. MEGGET, ME Cant., DiplIEEE Tokyo, MIPENZ

1979-85, 1990 NORMAN LAWGUN, ME PhD, MIPENZ

### *Lecturer*

1992 PETER G. KING, BCom ME, MIPENZ, ACA

1989 HUGH W. MORRIS, ME, MIPENZ

### *Timber Engineering Research Fellow*

1986, 1988 RICHARD D. HUNT, BE PhD

---

## ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1975 ALLAN G. WILLIAMSON, BE PhD, CEng, FIEE, SMIEEE, FIPENZ

### *Professor*

1977 JOHN T. BOYS, ME PhD, FIPENZ

### *Senior Lecturers*

1986 LAWRENCE J. CARTER, BSc Kent, MPhil PNGUT, CEng, SMIEEE, MIEE, MIEAust

1987 GEORGE G. COGHILL, BSc H.-W., BA Open, PhD Kent, CEng, MIEE

1966 H. BRUCE GATLAND, BSc N.Z., DipElectronics S'ton., CEng, MIEE, FIMCNZ

1984 GAVIN R. HIGGIE, ME PhD, MIEEE

### *Lecturers*

1990 MARK ANDREWS, BE PhD, MIEEE

1992 UDAYA D. ANNAKKAGE, BSc (Eng) S.Lanka., MSc PhD UMIST, AMIEE

1992 GRANT COVIC, BE PhD

1990 ANDREW GREEN, BE PhD

1985 BERNARD J. GUILLEMIN, BE PhD, NZCS

1992 RAMAKRISHNA KAKARALA, MSc Mich., PhD Calif.

1990 NALIN C. PAHALAWATHTHA, BSc (Eng) Sri Lanka, PhD Calg., MIEEE

1984 GERARD B. ROWE, ME PhD, MIEEE

1990 KEVIN W. SOWERBY, BE PhD, MIEEE

1991 MARK M. THOMSON, BE PhD

### *Senior Tutor*

◇ 1989 FRED ENGEL, BE

### *Tutors*

1990 NALIN PATEL, BSc (Eng) M'lore.

◇ 1991 MITCHELL RODDA, BSc BE

---

## ENGINEERING SCIENCE

### *Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1969 MICHAEL J. O'SULLIVAN, BE N.Z., PhD Cal. Tech, BSc ME

### *Professors*

1981 IAN F. COLLINS, MA PhD Camb., FIMA

1975 DAVID M. RYAN, MSc Otago, PhD A.N.U., FIMA (jointly with Management Science & Information Systems)

### *Associate Professors*

1978 PETER J. HUNTER, DPhil Oxf., ME

1962 DONALD A. NIELD, MA Camb., MSc N.Z., BD Otago, PhD, FIMA

### *Senior Lecturers*

1986 SUSAN J. BYRNE, BSc Well., DIC PhD Lond.

1986 ANDREW B. PHILPOTT, BA BSc Well., MPhil PhD Camb.

### *Lecturers*

1992 ANDREW J. MASON, BE PhD Camb.

1988 ROGER I. NOKES, BSc PhD Cant.

1990 ANDREW J. PULLAN, BSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

MARGARET R. BLAKELEY, BE PhD

DAVID P. BULLIVANT, MSc PhD

**MECHANICAL ENGINEERING***Professor, Head of Department*

1986 JOHN L. DUNCAN, BMechEng Melb., MSc PhD Manc., FASM, FIPENZ

*Professors*

1969 RAY F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAeS

1977 PETER S. JACKSON, PhD Camb., ME, CEng, MIPENZ, MRAeS

*Associate Professors*

1981 DEBES BHATTACHARYYA, ME Calc., PhD Jad., MASME

1982 GORDON D. MALLINSON, BSc Well., PhD N.S.W., MIEAust, CPEng

1975 J. DES TEDFORD, BSc(Eng) PhD Belf., CEng, MIManufE, MIEE

*Senior Lecturers*

1988 PRADEEP K. BANSAL, BSc Meerut, MSc Roor., PhD I.I.T. Delhi, MISES

1970 GEORGE W. BLANCHARD, MSc Manc., MIMC

1988 JOSEPH DEANS, BSc PhD Strath., CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ

1984 RICHARD G. J. FLAY, BE PhD Cant., CEng, FIMechE, MASME, MIPENZ

1991 KENG CHOON LEE, MBA ME, DipEnTech (Geotherm), MIPENZ (jointly with Geothermal Institute)

1982 BRIAN R. MACE, MA DPhil Oxon.

1987 JOHN S. McFEATERS, BS Pitt., MS Minn., PhD C.M.U.

1973 GEORGE MOLTSCHANIWSKYJ, MSc(Eng) Lond.

1977 ROBERT R. RAINE, BSc PhD S'ton., MSAE, MASME, MISES

1981 PETER J. RICHARDS, BSc R'dg, PhD C.N.N.A., AMRAeS

1986 RAINER H. A. SEIDEL, Dipl.-Wirtsch.-Ing Karls., PhD

◇ 1980 FERGUS J. THOMSON, MSc Otago, PhD, MACPSEM

*Lecturers*

1992 PETER R. MILNER, BA Open, BSc PhD Leeds, CEng, MIMechE

1988 STEPHEN M. PANTON, BSc PhD Aston

1992 HEATHER SILYN-ROBERTS, BSc Wales, PhD

*HRC Senior Research Fellow*

1975-1979, 1991 NEIL D. BROOM, BE Melb., PhD

*HRC Research Fellow*

1988 V. O. ADEKUNLE OLOYEDE, BSc(MechEng) Lagos, MSc(Eng), PhD DIC Lond., MNSE

**MINING ENGINEERING incorporating the Otago School of Mines***Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1957 MICHAEL H. BUCKENHAM, BE N.Z., ME Otago, MSc (Eng) DIC Lond., CEng, AOSM, FAusIMM, MIPENZ, MIMM

*Senior Lecturers*

◇ 1992 C. JOHN HOGAN, BSc (MinTech) Otago, MAusIMM

1977 JOHN D. ST GEORGE, BSc Lond., MSc N'cle U.K., PhD, CEng, ARSM, MIMM, FAusIMM

1984 WILLIAM E. VANCE, MSc Nott., CEng, FIMM, MIEAust, FAusIMM, FIMinE, MIPENZ

**GEOHERMAL INSTITUTE within the Faculty of Engineering***Associate Professor, Director of Geothermal Institute*

1972 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys T.U. Clausthal, DrRerNat Mün. (jointly with Geology)

*Associate Professor*

1978 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc Cape T., MSc Leeds, PhD Well. (jointly with Geology)

*Senior Lecturer*

1991 KENG CHOON LEE, MBA ME, DipEnTech(Geotherm), MIPENZ (jointly with Mechanical Engineering)

*Lecturer*

1992 M. G. DUNSTALL, BE PhD

1991 S. F. SIMMONS, BA Macalester, MS PhD Minn.

**FACULTY OF FINE ARTS***Dean*

1961 JOLYON D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndDes, NDD, FDINZ

**FINE ARTS***Professor, Head of Department*

1961 JOLYON D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndDes, NDD, FDINZ

*Professor*

1957 ROBERT ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MFIM, FRSA, MDINZ

*Associate Professor*

1966 G. L. TWISS, DipFA N.Z.

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 JOHN B. TURNER

1975 A. GARCIA-ALVAREZ, PD Barcelona

1977 P. E. DADSON, DipFA  
 1978 R. M. SIMPSON, MFA *Ill.*, BFA  
 1979 D. H. BINNEY, DipFA *N.Z.*  
 1980 B. G. de THIER, DipFA *Cant.*, MDINZ  
 1980 D. C. WATKINS, DipGD *Well. P.*, DipRCA *Lond.*  
 ◇ 1981 R. J. FRIZZELL, DipFA  
 ◇ 1984 CHRISTINE HELLYAR, DipFA  
*Lecturers*  
 1990 JOHN FAIRCLOUGH, MA *Middx. P.*, ATD *Liv.*  
 1985 MEGAN L. JENKINSON, BFA  
 ◇ 1989 CAROLE M. SHEPHEARD, DipFA

---

## FACULTY OF LAW

### *Acting Dean*

1982 M. B. TAGGART, LLM *Harv.*, LLB

---

## LAW

### *Professors*

1966 F. M. BROOKFIELD, BA LLB *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1961 BRIAN COOTE, LLM *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1969 P. J. EVANS, BA LLB *Otago*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM  
 1982 M. B. TAGGART, LLM *Harv.*, LLB

### *Associate Professors*

1962-65, 1969 B. J. BROWN, LLB *Leeds*, LLM *Sing.*  
 1973 J. B. ELKIND, BA *Col.*, JD *N.Y.*, LLM *Lond.*  
 1972 W. C. HODGE, AB *Harv.*, JD *Stan.*  
 1968 D. W. McMORLAND, PhD *Camb.*, LLM  
 1969 K. A. PALMER, LLM *Harv. & Auck.*, SJD *Virginia*  
 1977 MARGARET A. VENNEL, LLB *N.Z.*

### *Senior Lecturers*

1988 K. BOSSELMANN, DrIur *Freie U. Berlin*  
 1983 W. J. BROOKBANKS, LLM  
 1992 R. BROWN, LLB *Queen's*, LLM *Harv.*  
 1979 E. JANE KELSEY, LLB *Well.*, BCL *Oxf.*, MPhil *Camb.*, PhD  
 1979 S. J. MACFARLANE, MA LLB *N.Z.*  
 1980 T. J. McBRIDE, LLB *Well.*, LLM *Dal.*  
 1985 J. K. MAXTON (Miss), LLB *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD  
 1986 R. J. PATERSON, BCL *Oxf.*, LLB  
 1970 PAMELA E. RINGWOOD, BA *Syd.*, LLM DipSocSc *Adel.*  
 1974 PAULINE TAPP, LLB MJur  
 1985 P. G. WATTS, LLB *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.*

### *Lecturers*

1992 P. DEVONSHIRE, LLBBirm., LLM *Alta.*  
 1991 D. P. GRINLINTON, BA *Massey*, LLM *W. Aust.*  
 1992 G. A. HUSCROFT, BA *Westera*, LLB *Queen's*, LLM  
 1986 JOANNA M. MANNING, LLM *George Wash.*, BA LLB  
 1991 JANET M. McLEAN, LLB *Well.*, LLM *Mich.*  
 1992 G. MOUSOURAKIS, LLB *Athens*, MSc *Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*  
 1992 S. L. OPTICAN, BA *Berkeley*, MPhil *Camb.*, MA JD *Harv.*  
 1987 P. T. RISHWORTH, LLB MJur  
 1991 ELIZABETH K. PATON-SIMPSON, LLM *Br. Col.*, BCom LLB  
 1991 ROSEMARY TOBIN, BA LLB MJur, DipEd *Massey*  
 1992 V. C. TOMAS, LLB  
 1983 G. L. WILLIAMS, BCom LLM, ACA

### *Lecturers, Part-time*

1991 JUDGE J. CADENHEAD, LLB *N.Z.*  
 1991 MARGUERITE HALLEN, BA LLB *Natal*  
 1991 P. C. SUMPTER, LLB MA  
 1993 R. P. G. HAINES, BA LLB  
 1991 F. J. THORP, LLB *Well.*, MPhil *Nott.*  
 1991 Hon. Mr Justice D. A. R. WILLIAMS, QC, LLM *Harv.*, LLB  
 1991 J. W. TURNER, MJur LLM *Dal.*

### *Co-ordinator of Community Law Placements*

1990 ANN E. JONES, BA DipEd *Wales*, LLB

---

## FACULTY OF MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY

### *Dean*

1988 P. D. GLUCKMAN, MBChB *Otago*, MMedSc DSc, FRSNZ, FRACP

### *Associate Dean of Graduate Studies*

1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB *Otago*, MPed *N.S.W.*, DipObst, FRNZCGP, MRCGP

*Senior Lecturer, Physico-Chemistry*

1960 GRAHAM R. WHITE, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

## ANATOMY

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1978 RICHARD L. M. FAULL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Professor of Anatomy*

1968 JOHN B. CARMAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professor of Radiology*

1986 STUART W. HEAP, MBBS Lond., FRACR, FRCR

*Associate Professors in Anatomy*

1973 CYNTHIA G. JENSEN, AB Brown, PhD Minn.

1976 MERVYN J. MERRILEES, BSc Otago, PhD Tor.

*Senior Lecturers in Anatomy*

1989 BRENDA V. DAWSON, BA Keele, MD Arizona, FASCP, FCAP

1984 J. MARTIN WILD, MA Cant., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Radiology*

1988 ALAN R. LIST, MBChB Otago, FRACR

*Senior Lecturer in Biology for Medicine*

1989 LOUISE F. B. NICHOLSON, MSc PhD

*Senior Tutors in Biology for Medicine*

1982 COLIN G. QUILTER, PhD Otago, BSc

1972 R. MERE ROBERTS, BSc Cant. MSc

*Senior Research Fellows*

1991 C. ANTHONY POOLE, BSc, PhD Otago

1973 STEPHEN J. M. SKINNER, BSc PhD S'ton (jointly with Paediatrics)

## COMMUNITY HEALTH

*Professor, Head of Department*

1979 ROBERT BEAGLEHOLE, MBChB Otago, MSc Lond., FRACP, MCCMNZ, MRCP

*Senior Lecturer in Medical Sociology*

1976 PETER B. DAVIS, BA S'ton., MSc Lond., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Community Health*

▷ 1988 ROBERT N. McKEGG, BDS N.Z., DipPH(Dent) Syd., MCCMNZ

*Senior Lecturer in Epidemiology*

1990 RODNEY T. JACKSON, DipComH Otago, BSc MBChB MMedSc PhD, DipObst, MCCMNZ

1983 ROBERT K. R. SCRAGG, MBBS Adel., PhD Flin., MCCMNZ

*Senior Lecturer in Biostatistics*

1986 ROGER J. MARSHALL, MSc S'ton., PhD Brist.

*Senior Lecturer in Health Promotion*

1992 JENNIFER E. HAND, BA Auck. & Well., PhD New School for Social Research (N.Y.)

*Senior Lecturer in Maori and Pacific Island Health*

◊ 1989 DAVID C. TIPENE-LEACH, DipComH Otago, MBChB, MCCMNZ

*Executive Director Alcohol and Public Health Research Unit*

1991 SALLY CASSWELL, BA Sheff., PhD Otago

*Senior Research Fellow*

1990 ROBYN NORTON, MA Cant., MPH PhD Syd.

## GENERAL PRACTICE

*Elaine Gurr Professor of General Practice, Head of Department*

1989 BRIAN R. McAVOY, BSc MBChB Glas., MD Leic., MRCP, FRCGP, MRNZCGP

*Associate Professor*

1973 JOHN G. RICHARDS, MBChB N.Z., FRCGP, FRNZCGP, FRCPEd, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1991 BRUCE ARROLL, MHSc B.Col., BSc MBChB DipObst, CCFPCC, NZCCM

1990 PAULINE A. McAVOY, MBChB Glas., MRNZCGP

1988 ALEX N. THOMSON, BSc MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP

*Sir William Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice*

1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB Otago, MPed N.S.W., DipObst, FRNZCGP, MRCPG

*Assistant Director*

1990 JOCELYN M. TRACEY, MBChB MMedSc, DipObst, MRNZCGP

## MEDICINE, The Department of

*Professor, Head of Department*

1978 D. N. SHARPE, MBChB MD Otago, DipABIM, DipABCVDis, FRACP FACC

*Professor of Medicine*

1973 SIR JOHN SCOTT, KBE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRSNZ, FRCP, FRACP

*N.Z. Masonic Professor of Geriatrics*

1973 D. E. RICHMOND, MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, MPHED N.S.W., DipABIM, DipABNeph, FRCP, FRACP

*National Heart Foundation Professor of Cardiovascular Studies*

1979 W. F. LUBBE, MBChB MD Cape T., FCP(S.A.), FRACP, FACC

*Honorary Professor*

1969 PHILIPPA M. WIGGINS, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Associate Professors*

1987 I. R. REID, MBChB MD, FRACP

1978 I. J. SIMPSON, MBChB Otago, MD, FRACP

1971 C. TASMAN-JONES, BSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*Honorary Associate Professor*

1981 I. M. HOLDAWAY, BMedSc MDChB Otago, FRFACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1986 J. J. BASKETT, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1990 P. N. BLACK, MBChB, FRACP

1988 T. F. CUNDY, MA MBBChir Lond., MD Camb., MRCP(U.K.)

1992 A. FRASER, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1987 J. KOLBE, MBBS Q'ld., FRACP

1980 E. W. WILLOUGHBY, MBChB Otago, FRACP

*Senior Research Fellows*

1987 R. BONITA, BA DipEd N.S.W., MPH North Carolina, PhD

1989 S. MacMAHON, BSc MACant., MPH Syd., PhD N.S.W.

1992 A. J. FENTON, MBChB PhD, FRACP

1992 D. SIMMONS, MA MD Oxf., MBBS Lond., MRCP(U.K.)

**MOLECULAR MEDICINE***Professor, Head of Department*

1980 J. D. WATSON, MSc PhD

*Honorary Professor*

1976 J. MARBROOK, MSc PhD

*Associate Professor, Haematology*

◇ 1971 J. G. BUCHANAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MA Mich., FRCPEd, FRACP, FRCPath, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturers in Microbiology*

1971 D. A. BREMNER, MBChB N.Z., FRCPA

1988 M. G. THOMAS, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers in Haematology*

1989 P. J. BROWETT, BMedSc MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPA

1991 K. E. CROSIER, MBChB Otago, PhD, FRACP, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer in Immunology*

1987 P. L. J. TAN, MBBS Sing., FRACP

*Senior Tutor*

1987 M. G. HEAP, MSc Otago

*Senior Research Fellows*

1991 N. M. BIRCHALL, MBChB Brist.

1984 R. J. BOOTH, MSc PhD

1987 P. S. CROSIER, MSc PhD Otago

1989 J. D. FRASER, BSc Well., PhD

1990 A. GEURSEN, MSc PhD Otago

1992 F. GRINLINTON, MBChB Otago

1988 G. W. KRISSANSEN, BSc PhD DipSc Otago

1984 R. L. PRESTIDGE, BSc PhD Massey

1985 MARGOT A. SKINNER, BSc PhD

**OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY***Professor in Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Head of Department*

1973 C. D. MANTELL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD, DipObst, FRCOG, FRNZCOG

*Postgraduate Professor in Obstetrics and Gynaecology*

1993 G. M. TURNER, BS MB Lond., FRCOG

*Associate Professor in Steroid Biochemistry*

1969 J. T. FRANCE, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FAACB, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

◇ 1993 A. M. BIGRIGG, BMed S'ton., FRCS (Ed), MRCOG

1991 B. CASTLE, MBChB CapeT., MD, MRCOG

◇ 1989 C. M. FARQUHAR (Mrs), MBChB, DipObst, MROG

1982 M. G. JAMIESON, BMedSc MBChB Otago, MSc Edin., DPhil Oxf., FRCOG, FRNZCOG

◇ 1987 L. M. E. McCOWAN (Mrs), BSc MBChB, DipObst, MRCOG, MRNZCOG

1991 R. A. NORTH, DPhil Melb., BSc MBChB, FRACP

1985 N. S. PATTISON, BSc MBChB MD, DipObst, FRCOG

1982 A. B. ROBERTS, MDChB Aberd., FRCOG

1991 H. E. ROBERTS, BAO MBChB, DipObst Dublin, MPH Yale

1989 J. C. SCHELLENBERG, DM Lausanne, PhD, DABA, FHM, FRNZCOG

**PAEDIATRICS***Research Professor in Child Health, Head of Department*

1970 R. B. ELLIOT, MBBS MD Adel., FRACP

*Associate Professors*

1972 R. N. HOWIE, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

1982 DIANA R. LENNON, MBChB Otago, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1981 M. INNES ASHER, BSc MBChB, FRACP

1991 WAYNE CUTFIELD, MBChB DCH Otago, FRACP

1989 JANE E. HARDING, DPhil Oxf., BSc MBChB, FRACP

1984 E. A. MITCHELL, BSc MBBS Lond., DCH, FRACP

1976 M. C. MORRIS, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPCan

1976 S. R. WEALTHALL, MDChB Sheff.

*Senior Lecturer in Clinical Genetics*

1990 C. J. CHAPMAN, BSc BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Paediatric Surgery*

◇ 1990 ANNE KOLBE, MBBS, FRACS

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

1982 BARBARA M. JOHNSTON, BSc S'ton., DPhil Oxf.

*NCHRF Senior Research Fellow*

1989 SUZANNE L. DAVIS, BMedSc MBChB Otago

*Senior Research Fellow*

1971, 1973 STEPHEN J. M. SKINNER, BSc PhD S'ton.

1983 ALISON W. WESLEY, MBChB Otago, DipObst, DCH, FRACP

*Research Fellows*

1990 G. AMBLER, MBBS Syd., FRACP

1987 B. BREIER, DiplIng Gott., PhD

1982 S. REDDY, MSc DipSc Otago, PhD

1984-1987, 1991 C. WILLIAMS, MSc Waik., PhD

*UGC Postdoctoral Fellow*

1990 N. KLEMP, DiplIngAgr PhD Gott.

*Honorary Associate Professor*

1990 TANIA GUNN, MBChB MD, FRCPCan

---

**PATHOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1988 J. R. JASS, BSc MBS Lond., MRCPATH

*Professor, Experimental Pathology*

1970 J. B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS DSc Otago, FRCPath

*Associate Professor, Forensic Medicine*

1981 T. D. KOELMEYER, MBBS Ceyl., FRACS, FRCPA

*Associate Professor, Oncology*

1976 J. C. PROBERT, MA BMBS Oxf., DMRT Lond., DipAmerBdRad, FRACR, FRCR

*Honorary Professors*

1985 B. C. BAGULEY, MSc PhD, MNZMS

1986 W. A. DENNY, PhD DSc, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturer, Forensic Pathology*

1991 ALISON D. CLUROE, BMedSc, BMBS Nott., FRCPA

1989 JANE C. VULETIC, MBChB, FRACS, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomical Pathology*

1978 BETH J. L. SYNEK, MBChB Otago, FRCPA

1991 L. J. ZWI, BSc MBBS Wits., PhD, FRCPA

*Lecturer*

1990 LINDA MAXWELL, BSc MCSP Sur., MPhil PhD

*Senior Research Fellow*

1984 LOIS C. ARMIGER, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

*HRC Senior Research Fellow*

1980 W. R. WILSON, BSc Well., MSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

1980 Y. S. CHOONG, MSc PhD Otago, FACA, FICA

1990 S. CLIFFE, BSc PhD Lond.

*Honorary Senior Research Fellow*

1981 F. H. SIMS, MSc MD Otago, PhD Edin., FRCPA, FAACB

---

**PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Senior Lecturer in Anaesthetics*

1991 S. A. SCHUG, MD Cologne

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 SHEILA A. DOGGRELL, BSc PhD S'ton.

1988 MICHAEL DRAGUNOW, MSc PhD Otago

1977 J. W. PAXTON, BSc PhD Glas.

*Senior Lecturer in Clinical Pharmacology*

1984 N. H. G. HOLFORD, MSc MBChB Manc., MRCP(UK), FRACP

*HRC Senior Research Fellow*

1988 IAIN G. C. ROBERTSON, BSc Massey, PhD

**PHYSIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Professor of Neurophysiology*

1986 J. LIPSKI, MD PhD DSc Warsaw

*Associate Professor*

1971 P. McN. HILL, MBChB BAO MA PhD Dub.

1977 B. H. SMAILL, BE BSc Cant., PhD Lond., DIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 NOEL J. DAWSON, BSc PhD N.E.

1977 J. R. SLACK, BSc PhD Lond.

1982 D. S. LOISELLE, MSc Alta., PhD Dal., DipPhEd Otago

1984 S. M. ROBINSON, MBChB Otago, MSc Adel., FFARACS

1989 P. R. THORNE, BSc DipSc Otago, MSc PhD

*Lecturers*

◇ 1991 D. DE CASTRO, BSc MBChB

◇ 1991 H. GAETA, MSc

1990 S. C. PURDY, DipAud Melb., MSc PhD

1989 G. HOUSLEY, MSc PhD

*Senior Research Fellow*

1980 S. POCKETT, MSc PhD

**PSYCHIATRY AND BEHAVIOURAL SCIENCE***Professor of Psychiatry, Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Associate Professor in Adult Psychiatry*

1976 J. J. WRIGHT, MBChB MD Otago, FRACP, MRPsych, FRANZCP

*Associate Professor in Behavioural Science*

1972 J. M. RAEBURN, PhD Queens, MA

*Senior Lecturers in Behavioural Science*

1989 KEITH PETRIE, MA PhD, DipClinPsych

1992 JAN E. PRYOR, BSc Otago, MA PhD Cant.

*Senior Lecturer in Medical Ethics*

1992 D. F. SEEDHOUSE, BA PhD Manc.

*Senior Lecturers in Psychiatry*

1992 J. H. COVERDALE, BSc MBChB Otago, DipObst

1978 R. G. LARGE, MBChB DPM Cape T., PhD, FFPsych S.A., FRANZCP

1984 R. R. KYDD, MBChB Otago, PhD, FRANZCP

1988 M. J. VAMOS, MBChB, FRANZCP

*Senior Research Fellow*

1982 G. J. LEES, BSc PhD Melb.

*Senior Tutors in Behavioural Science*

1975 R. G. R. NAIRN, MSc

1980 VALERIE J. GRANT, MA PhD, NZRN

**SURGERY***Professor, Head of Department*

1980 GRAHAM L. HILL, MBChM Otago, MD Leeds, FRACS, FRCS, FACS

*Sir William Stevenson Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery*

1975 D. HARLEY GRAY, MBChB N.Z., MMedSc ChM Otago, FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson Associate Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*

1979 DONALD F. LIGGINS, MBMS Syd., FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson and Lady Stevenson Senior Lecturer in Ophthalmology*

1984 M. M. GILLIAN CLOVER, MBChB Otago, PhD Lond., FRACS, FRACO

*Senior Lecturer in Transplantation Surgery*

1992 PETER M. CHRISTIE, MBChB MD, FRACS

*Senior Lecturers in Orthopaedic Surgery*

1979 GARNET D. TREGONNING, MBChB Otago, FRACS, FRCSCan

1992 PETER A. ROBERTSON, MBChB Otago, FRACS

*Senior Lecturers*

1992 P. G. ALLEY, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1979 JOHN P. COLLINS, MBChM N.U.I., FRCS, FRCSEd, FRACS

1992 R. W. FARMILO, BSc MBChB, DipObst, FRACS

1992 JOHN A. WINDSOR, BSc MBChB MD DipObst, FRACS

*Lecturer*

1992 R. GUPTA, MBChB Glas., FRCS

*Senior Research Physicist*

1989 LINDSAY PLANK, MSc PhD

*HRC Research Fellow*

1986 GRANT S. KNIGHT, MSc PhD

## CLINICAL LECTURERS TO THE SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

### Anatomy

#### Clinical Lecturers

M. Flint, MBBS Lond., FRCS, FRACS  
G. A. Foote, MBChB Otago, FRACR  
M. L. Herdson, MBChB, FRACR  
B. Hochstein, BSc MBChB, DRACR, FRACR

### Community Health

#### Clinical Reader

J. W. McLeod, MBChB DPH Otago, MCCMNZ

### General Practice

#### Clinical Lecturers

Wilma F. Grant, BA Med Aberd. MBChB, MRNZCGP  
D. Hoadley, MBChB, DRCOG, MRCP  
G. W. L. Knight, MBChB DipObst, MRCP  
I. R. N. McCormick, MBChB MSc PhD, FRNZCGP

### Medicine

#### Clinical Readers

J. A. Birkbeck, MBChB Edin., FRCP Can., CertPed, AMBD  
Robin H. Briant, MDChB Otago, FRACP, MRCP U.K.  
D. E. Caughey, MBChB N.Z., FRCPEd, FRACP  
J. M. Neutze, MD Otago, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

#### Clinical Lecturers

T. M. Agnew, MBChB N.Z., MFRACP, MFRCP Lond.  
M. R. Ali, MBBS Mys., FRACP  
N. E. Anderson, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
H. P. Birch, MBChB Sheff., MRCP U.K.  
M. J. Butler, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRCP, FRACP  
E. D. Clarke, MBChB Otago, MRCP, U.K.  
J. F. Collins, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
J. V. Conaglen, MDChB Otago, FRACP  
H. A. Coverdale, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. S. Croxson, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
R. G. Cutfield, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
A. Daniels, MBChB Cape T., FCP, S.A.  
J. G. Davison, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
P. B. Doak, MBChB N.Z., MRCP, FRACP  
R. Dunlop, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. N. Eade, MD Birm., MBChB Otago, FRACP  
R. J. Eason, MBBChir Cant., DipObst, FRACP  
D. J. Ford, MA Cant., MBBChir, MRCP, DCH, FRACP  
P. D. Frankish, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
P. A. Frengley, MBChB Otago, FRCP Can., FRACP  
R. W. Frith, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
J. E. Garrett, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
P. G. Gow, MBChB, BMedSc Otago, FRACP, FACRM  
R. R. Grigor, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRACP  
R. G. Harris, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRACP  
A. C. Harrison, MBBS Adel., FRACP  
H. H. Hart, BSc MBBCh Witw., FCP S.A., MRCP U.K., FRACP  
R. K. Haydon, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRACP, MNZCGP  
J. W. Henley, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
P. G. Henley, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
I. M. Holdaway, MBChB BMedSc MD Otago FRACP  
W. Jaffe, MBChB, FRACP  
M. R. Lane, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
N. Lynch, MBChB, M. Med Melb. FRACP  
D. L. McAuley, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
C. J. Mercer, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP  
G. I. Nicholson, MBChB DipObst N.Z., FRCP, FRACP  
R. M. Norris, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRCP, FRACP  
J. C. Okpala, MBBS P.N.G., MRCP  
H. H. Rea, MDChB Edin., FRCPEd U.K., FRACP  
R. M. Reynolds, MBChB Otago, BSc, FRACP  
M. D. J. Robertson, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP  
A. H. G. Roche, MBChB N.Z., FRACP  
T. Rose, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
R. P. Rothwell, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP  
P. J. Say, MBBS DipVen Lond., FRCPPath, FAC Ven.

Marilyn A. Scott, MBChB, FRACP  
M. Searle, BSc, BM S'ton., MRCP U.K., FRACP  
J. P. Simcock, VRD, MBChB, BMedSc N.Z., FRACP, FRCP  
G. P. Singh, MBChB Natal., FRACP  
W. M. Smith, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. Todd, MBChB, FRACP  
W. M. Van der Merwe, MBChB Cape T., FRACP  
A. G. Veale, MBChB Otago, BSc, FRACP, DipDHM  
I. Wallace, MBBCh, FCP(SA)  
M. R. Wallace, MBChB, BMedSc N.Z., FRCP, FRACP  
W. E. Wallis, BA Harv., MD Rochester, FRACP, AMBD Cert Neurol  
M. Weatherall, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. Webster, MBChB, FRACP  
H. White, MBChB, FRACP  
L. C. Williams, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. Williams, BSc MBChB Otago, FRACP  
M. L. Wilsheer, MDChB Otago, FRACP  
J. M. Wishart, MBChB Otago, FRACP

### Molecular Medicine

#### Clinical Readers

R. B. Ellis-Pegler, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPA, DTM & H Lond.  
J. R. D. Matthews, BAgSci Massey, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRCPA, FRACP

#### Clinical Lecturers

H. A. Blacklock, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPA  
M. C. Croxson, MBChB Otago, FRCPA  
R. Y. Harding, MBBS Lond., FRCPC  
S. D. R. Lang, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPA  
P. A. Ockelford, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA  
A. R. Varcoe, MBChB, Otago, FRACP, FRCPA  
D. G. Woodfield, MBChB N.Z., PhD, FRCP Edin., FRCPA

### Obstetrics and Gynaecology

#### Clinical Lecturers

D. A. Ansell, BSc MBChB BMedSc Otago, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
M. A. H. Baird, MBChB Otago, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
G. C. Bye, MBChB DipObst Otago, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
M. Carter, MBChB, MRCOG  
G. S. Gudex, MBChB, MRCOG  
S. Hastie, MBChB Otago, MRCOG, FRNZCOG, DCH  
M. Insull, MBChB DipObst, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
Y. M. Lake, MBBS Lond., MRCOG  
A. R. MacKintosh, MBChB, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
E. Ozumba, BMBCh Nigeria, MObstetGynae Liv., MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
P. T. Patten, MBChB, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
J. H. Taylor, MBChB N.Z., FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
A. H. Widjaja, MD Antwerp, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
J. R. Whittaker, MBChB Otago, MRCOG, MRNZCOG

### Paediatrics

#### Clinical Lecturers

A. L. Calder, MD Alberta, LMCC, FRCP  
Patricia M. Clarkson, MBChB N.Z., FRACP  
Suzanne L. Davis, BMedSc MBChB Otago  
Keith Farmer, MBChB N.Z., PhD DCH Lond., FRCPEd, FRACP  
R. S. Ferguson, MBChB Otago, FRACS  
J. D. Gillies, MBChB Otago, FRCPCan, FAAP, FRACP  
Tania R. Gunn, MBChB N.Z., MD, FRCPCan, AMBD Cert Ped  
A. G. James, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
D. L. Jamison, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
A. Y. L. Liang, MBBS H.K., FRACP  
R. E. Marks, MBChB Brist., BSc DRCOG FRACP  
J. E. Newman, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
P. T. Nobbs, BSc MBChB, FRCPCan  
P. W. B. Pease, MBBCh Witw., FRCS  
R. Pinnock, BSc MBChB DCH S.A., FRACP  
R. S. H. Rowley, MBChB Otago, FRACP



N. L. Stewart, MBChB *Otago*, DCH, FRACP  
 A. A. G. Trenholme, BChir MB *Camb.*, FRACP  
 L. Voss, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 M. W. Watt, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 W. M. Walker, MBChB, DipObst  
 Alison W. Wesley, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst DCH *Lond.*, FRACP

### Pathology

#### Clinical Reader

D. M. O. Becroft, MDChB *N.Z.*, FRCPA, FRACP, FRCPath, FRNZCOG

#### Clinical Lecturers

J. P. Allen, BSc MBChB DipObst, FRCPA  
 C. S. Benjamin, MBBS *Madur*, MD DMRT *Madr.*, FRACR  
 Y. F. Chan, MBBS *H.K.*, FRCPA, MRCPPath  
 M. B. Gill, MBChB, BMedSci, FRCPA, DipObst  
 V. J. Harvey, MD *Lond.*, MRCS, LRCP, MRCP(UK), FRACP  
 A. I. King, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA  
 M. V. Miller, MBChB DipObst, FRCPA

### Pharmacology

#### Clinical Reader

Robin H. Briant, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, MRCP *U.K.*

#### Clinical Lecturers

R. A. Boas, MBChB *N.Z.*, FFARCS  
 M. E. Futter, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, FFARCS, FRANZCA  
 B. P. Hodgkinson, BSc MBBS *N'cle. U.K.*, FFARCS  
 S. E. Kaye, MBChB *Cape Town*, FFARCS *Lond.*  
 A. H. Mark, MBChB, FFARCS  
 J. G. Walker, MBChB *Otago*, FFARCS, FFARCSI

### Physiology

#### Clinical Lecturers

M. N. Eade, MBChB *Otago*, MD *Birm.*, FRACP  
 E. A. Harris, MD *Liv.*, PhD *Edin.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 R. M. L. Whitlock, MBChB *N.Z.*, DIC *Lond.*, FRACP

### Psychiatry

#### Clinical Reader

G. J. Turbott, MBChB *Otago.*, FRACS, FRANZCP

#### Clinical Lecturers

H. W. F. Albrecht, MD *Gottingen*, FRANZCP  
 L. Andrews, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 P. E. Capelle, MBChB DPM *Witw.*, FRANZCP  
 D. Chaplow, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 H. O. Clarkson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRANZCP  
 C. G. Cumming, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 P. Fernandez, MBBS *Madras*, FRANZCP  
 A. R. Fraser, MBChB, DPM *Otago*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 M. S. Gudex, MBChB, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

C. Hapgood, MBBS *Lond.*, FRANZCP  
 Sally N. Merry, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 S. W. Miles, MDChB *Otago*, DipPsychiat, FRANZCP  
 F. Plunkett, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP  
 S. Wong, MBBS *H.K.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

### Surgery

#### Clinical Readers

P. G. Alley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. C. Cullen, MBChB *N.Z.*, MSc *Oxf.*, FRCS,  
 R. J. Goodey, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

#### Clinical Lecturers

M. Allen, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. M. Astley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 C. S. Barber, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. A. Cadwallader, MBChB, FRACS  
 J. F. Carter, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS  
 M. Caughey, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 Joan S. Chapple, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRACS  
 K. E. Clark, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 E. B. Dorman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 I. D. Elliott, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS, FRACO, FRCOphth  
 K. Finucane, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. Gordon, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. G. Gunn, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. E. Hardy, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 C. I. Hope, MBChB, FRACO  
 J. E. Horton, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCSEd, FRCS, FRACS  
 G. F. Lamb, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS  
 M. MacCormick, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 A. R. McKenzie, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACSC.  
 C. G. Mellow, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. Mills, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. P. Morton, MBBS *Adel.*, MSc(Med) *Cape T.*, FRACS  
 R. O. Nicol, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 N. M. F. Officer, MBE, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 M. L. Rice, MBBS *Adel.*, FRACS  
 C. P. Ring, MBChB *Otago*, DO *Lond.*, FRCS, FRACS, FCOphth  
 P. S. Simcock, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 K. L. Smith, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. L. Snow, MBChB *St.And.*, FACEM  
 V. F. Sorrell, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 I. D. Stewart, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 S. J. Streat, MBChB, FRACP  
 R. Street, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. S. Sumner, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 B. J. Williams, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

## FACULTY OF MUSIC

#### Dean

1974 JOHN F. RIMMER, BA *N.Z.*, MusD *Tor.*, MA

## MUSIC

#### Professor, Head of Department

1983 HEATH LEES, BMus MA *Glas.*, FTCL, HonFTCL

#### Associate Professors

1974 JOHN F. RIMMER, BA *N.Z.*, MusD *Tor.*, MA

1965 GERALD R. SEAMAN, MA DPhil *Oxf.*

#### Senior Lecturers

1979 CORAL BOGNUDA, 1er Prix (Violoncello) 1er Prix (Musique de Chambre) *Paris*, ACM *Melb.*

1977 G. WARREN J. DRAKE, BA *N.Z.*, PhD *Ill.*, MA

1984 JOHN A. ELSLEY, BMus BSc *Well.*, 1er Prix (Comp) *Brussels*, SpCert *Liège*, LTCL

1974 DAVID NALDEN, BA *N.Z.*, 1er Prix (Violin) 1er Prix (Musique de Chambre) *Brussels*

◇ 1976 MARY T. O'BRIEN, DipPedagog *Paris Cons.*

1975 BRYAN A. SAYER, BA, DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL

1983 TAMAS VESMAS

#### Lecturer

1980 FIONA E. McALPINE, MA *Well.*, DèSL *Paris*

1990 UWE GRODD, MMus *Mainz*.

◇ 1991 KAREN GRULLS, BA *Otago*, MM *Seattle*, MMus, LRSM, LTCL

◇ 1991 DONALD MAURICE, MM *Wash.*, FTCL, LRSM

---

## FACULTY OF SCIENCE

### Dean

1986 RALPH P. COONEY, PhD DSc *Q'ld.*, FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC

---

## SCHOOL OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

### Director

1968 A. RICHARD BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FRSNZ

### Deputy Director (Curriculum and Teaching)

1976 PETER H. LOVELL, BSc PhD *Sheff.*

### Professor of Biochemistry

1974 ALISTAIR G. C. RENWICK, MA *Camb.*, MDChB PhD *Edin.*, FRCPATH, FRCP *Edin.*, CChem, FRSCHEM (on leave)

### Professor of Botany

1976 PETER H. LOVELL, BSc PhD *Sheff.*

### Professors of Cell Biology

1964 PETER L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

1966 STANLEY BULLIVANT, PhD DSc *Lond.*

1963 RAYMOND K. RALPH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc N.S.W.

### Professor of Cellular and Molecular Biology

1968 A. RICHARD BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FRSNZ

### Professors of Zoology

1957 PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

1976 RUFUS M.G. WELLS, PhD DSc *Lond.*, MSc, FRSNZ

1972 EUAN C. YOUNG, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD *Lond.*

### Associate Professors in Biochemistry

1977 THOMAS BRITTAIN, BSc PhD ScD *E.Anglia*, CChem, FRSCHEM, FNZIC

1970 ROY GEDDES, BSc PhD *Edin.*

### Associate Professors in Cellular and Molecular Biology

1985 RICHARD C. GARDNER, BA MSc PhD

1983 JOERG KISTLER, DipNat ETH *Zür.*, PhD *Basle*

### Associate Professors in Zoology

1976 JOHN L. CRAIG, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Massey*

1958 MICHAEL C. MILLER, BSc PhD *Liv.*

1978 JOHN C. MONTGOMERY, BSc *Otago*, PhD DSc *Brist.*, FRSNZ

### Senior Lecturers in Biochemistry

1974 PETER M. BARLING, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Lond.*

1984 DAVID L. CHRISTIE, MSc PhD

1969 ANTHONY M. ROBERTSON, BSc *Otago*, DPhil *Oxf.*

1976 G. KENNETH SCOTT, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*

### Senior Lecturers in Botany

1969 JOHN E. BRAGGINS, MSc *Well.*, PhD

1966 FRANK I. DROMGOOLE, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

1987 PHILIP J. HARRIS, MA PhD *Camb.*

1972 LAWRENCE C. W. JENSEN, AB *Brown*, MSc PhD *Minn.* (on leave)

1977 NEIL D. MITCHELL, MA *Oxf.*, MSc *Wales*, PhD *N'cle.* (U.K.)

1984 BRIAN G. MURRAY, BSc PhD *R'dg.*, FLS

1979 JOHN OGDEN, MSc PhD *Wales*

1983 MICHAEL N. PEARSON, BSc C.N.A..A., PhD *Exe.*

1984 ALISON STEWART, BSc *Glas.*, PhD *Stir.*

### Senior Lecturer in Molecular Genetics

1993 DONALD R. LOVE, BSc PhD *Adel.*

### Senior Lecturers in Zoology

1958 DONALD R. COWLEY, MSc N.Z., PhD

1987 CLIVE W. EVANS, BSc PhD

1980 DAVID M. LAMBERT, MSc *Q'ld.*, PhD *Witw.*

1968 ROBERT D. LEWIS, BSc PhD *Wales* (on leave)

1972 JOHN A. MACDONALD, AB *Stan.*, PhD *Texas*

1977 BRIAN H. McARDLE, BSc *Brist.*, DPhil *York* (UK)

### Lecturer in Biochemistry

1991 NIGEL P. BIRCH, BSc *Massey*, MSc PhD

### Lecturer in Botany

1988 KEVIN S. GOULD, BSc *Bath*, PhD *Manc.*

### Lecturers in Cellular and Molecular Biology

1982 WARREN JUDD, BA PhD

◇ 1981 JUDITH A. O'BRIEN (Mrs), MSc

### Lecturer in Environmental Science

1991 GILLIAN LEWIS, BSc PhD *Otago*

### Lecturer in Marine Zoology

1992 RUSSELL C. BABCOCK, BSc PhD *James Cook*

### Lecturer in New Zealand and Experimental Biology

1990 MICHAEL M. WALKER, MSc PhD *Hawaii*

### Senior Tutor in Biochemistry

1987 ELIZABETH HITCHINGS (Mrs), BSc

*Senior Tutor in Botany*

1977 G. MARIE TAYLOR, MSc Well.

*Senior Tutors in Zoology*

1967 MAUREEN H. LEWIS, MSc PhD

1961 JOAN M. MILLER (Mrs), BSc Liv.

*Senior Tutor (on secondment from School of Medicine)*

1972 R. MERE ROBERTS, BSc Cant., MSc PhD

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

1992 JAMIE DAY, BSc PhD Adel.

1992 K. ALLEN G. DONALD, BSc Camb., PhD Warw.

1991 KERRY LOOMES, BSc PhD Massey

1992 RUTH MOULD, BSc PhD Warw.

1992 STUART NOBLE, BSc PhD Norwich

1992 OLUSEGUN O. OSUNKOYA, MSc Ib., PhD A.N.U.

*Research Fellows*

1990 PAUL J. DONALDSON, BSc PhD Otago

1991 PREM P. DWIVEDI, MSc PhD L'now.

1990 DAVID P. FIGGITT, BSc PhD Nott.

1992 SWARMA A. GAMAGE, BSc S.Lanka, PhD Otago

1990 ALLEN G. RODRIGO, BSc PhD Cant.

1991 VALLAPPILAKKANDY K. SASIDHARAN, MSc Calicut, PhD Kerala

1984, 1987 DAVID J. SAUL, BSc PhD Sheff.

1992 SIMON SWIFT, BSc PhD Nott.

1990 JOHN A. TAYLOR, BSc Aberd., PhD Edin.

*Honorary Research Fellows*

1992 DOUGLAS P. ARMSTRONG, BSc Guelph, MSc Br.Col., PhD Syd.

1991 PETER JENKINS, BSc N.Z., PhD

1991 ANDREAS KÖNIGSTORFER, PhD Salzburg

1985 MARSHALL LAIRD, PhD DSc N.Z., FAAAAS

1990 JOHN A. RATTENBURY, MA Br.Col., PhD Calif.

1992 MICHELLE L. G. STEVENS, BSc Well., PhD

*Honorary Lecturers*

1971 RODERICK L. BIELESKI, MSc N.Z., PhD Syd., FRSNZ

1973 A. ROSS FERGUSON, MSc Well., PhD

1991 LENA G. FRASER, MSc PhD

*Statistician/Programmer*

1990 DIANNE H. BRUNTON, MSc PhD Mich.

**Leigh Laboratory***Lecturer, Scientist in Charge*

1987 T. A. V. REES, BSc Liv., PhD Wales, MIBiol

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 W. J. BALLANTINE, MA Camb, PhD Lond., MIBiol

1987 N. W. PANKHURST, BSc Otago, PhD Brist.

*Lecturer*

1982 R. G. CREESE, BSc PhD Syd.

*Research Fellows*

1992 C. D. TROWBRIDGE, BA Cornell, PhD Oregon State

1992 A. R. VENTLING, MSc PhD Zurich

*University Postdoctoral Fellow*

1991 P. M. PANKHURST, BSc Otago, PhD

**CHEMISTRY***Professor, Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

*Professors*

1958 R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

1986 RALPH P. COONEY, PhD DSc Q'ld., FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC

1962 BRIAN R. DAVIS, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FRSC, CChem, FNZIC

1958 CHARMIAN J. O'CONNOR, CBE, JP, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FRSC, CChem, FNZIC

1966 W. R. ROPER, MSc N.Z., PhD Cant., FRS, FRSNZ, FNZIC

*Alumni Distinguished Professor*

1993 LEWIS N. MANDER, MSc PhD Syd., FRS, FRACI, FAAS

*Associate Professors*

1968 GRAHAM A. BOWMAKER, BSc PhD Syd., FNZIC, ARACI

1970 GEORGE R. CLARK, PhD DSc, FNZIC

1968 DUNCAN J. McLENNAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD Well., DSc, FNZIC

1962 JOHN E. PACKER, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., FNZIC, FRSC, CChem

1967 P. S. RUTLEDGE, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC

1966 MICHAEL J. TAYLOR, MA DPhil Oxf., FNZIC, FRSC, CChem

1971 PAUL D. WOODGATE, PhD DSc, FNZIC

1961 GRAHAM A. WRIGHT, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1978 P. D. W. BOYD, BSc Tas., PhD Monash, FNZIC, ARACI

1966 ALLAN J. EASTEAL, MSc N.Z., PhD *Tas.*, MNZIC  
 1965 B. A. GRIGOR, MSc N.Z., PhD *Leic.*, MNZIC,  
 1985 JAMES B. METSON, BSc PhD *Well.*, MNZIC, MTMS  
 1984 S. J. de MORA, BSc *Wales*, PhD *Br. Col.*, FRSC, FNZIC, CChem  
 1968 C. E. F. RICKARD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FNZIC  
 1969 DAVID SHOOTER, MSc PhD, MNZIC  
 1984 L. JAMES WRIGHT, MSc PhD, MNZIC, MACS

*Lecturers*  
 1993 MARGARET A. BRIMBLE, MSc PhD *S'ion*, MNZIC  
 1988 PENELOPE J. BROTHERS, PhD *Stan.*, MSc, MNZIC, MACS  
 1991 PETER HAUSER, BEng *Winterthur*, MSc *Br. Col.*, PhD *LaT.*, MNSCS  
 1991 PETER SCHWERDTFEGGER, CEng *Aalen*, BMat MSc PhD *Stuttgart*, MACS, MGDCh

*Senior Tutors*  
 1982 JUDITH M. BRITTAIN, BSc PhD *E. Anglia*, MNZIC  
 1982 SHEILA D. WOODGATE, BS *Arizona*, PhD *Stan.*

*Honorary Professor*  
 1987, 1989 WILLIAM A. DENNY, PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*  
 1992 JOSEF ISCHTWAN, MSc *Bonn*, PhD *Canberra*  
 1992 ALLICK R. LAL, MSc *Otago*, PhD  
 1991 DIANA C. W. LIM, MSc PhD  
 1992 GRAEME J. MILLAR, BSc PhD *Dundee*

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

*Professor, Head of Department*  
 1982 ROBERT W. DORAN, BSc *Cant.*, MS *Stan.*

*Professor*  
 1993 HERMAN MAURER, DrPhil *Vienna*, DrHc *Polytechnical University, St. Petersburg*

*Senior Lecturers*  
 1973 G. ALAN CREAK, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Leeds*  
 1972 PETER M. FENWICK, MSc PhD, MIEEE  
 1981 PETER B. GIBBONS, MSc *Massey*, PhD *Tor.*, FTICA  
 1985 JOHN G. HOSKING, BSc PhD, MIEEE  
 1971 MICHAEL J. J. LENNON, PhD *M.I.T.*, MSc MNZCS  
 1979 RICHARD J. E. LOBB, MSc PhD  
 1984 WARWICK B. MUGRIDGE, BA BSc *Massey*, MSc PhD, MIEEE, MACM

*Lecturers*  
 1992 CRISTIAN CALUDE, BA PhD *Bucharest*  
 1992 JEREMY GIBBONS, BSc *Edin.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1992 HANS W. GUESGEN, DipCompSc *Bonn*, DrRerNat *Kaiserslautern*  
 1990 JOHN HAMER, BSc *Well.*, PhD, MACM  
 1981 BRUCE HUTTON, PhD *Warw.*, MSc  
 1992 XINFENG YE, BSc *Hua Qiao*, MSc PhD *Manc.*

*Senior Tutors*  
 1985 JENNIFER A. LENNON, BSc N.Z., MSc  
 1987 C. JO WILLIAMSON, BA BCom BSc  
 1988 ROBERT SHEEHAN, BA, DipCompSci

*Honorary Lecturer*  
 1969-1972, 1975, 1980, 1986 J. NEVIL BROWNLEE, MSc PhD, MIEEE, MNZIP

*Programmers*  
 1984 ROBERT E. BURROWES, BSc  
 1990 BRUCE P. BENSON, MSc  
 1991 LAURENT FAWER, DipIngInf *Vaud.*  
 1992 DAVID W. GLADSTONE, BSc

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

*Associate Professor and Director*  
 1977 NEIL D. MITCHELL, MA *Oxf.*, MSc *Wales*, PhD *N'cle. (U.K.)*

*Lecturer*  
 1991 GILLIAN D. LEWIS, BSc PhD *Otago*

*Honorary Lecturer*  
 1990 NORMAN G. THOM, BSc, DipHealthAdmin *Massey*, FNZIC, MIPENZ

## GEOGRAPHY

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*  
 1970 R. J. WARWICK NEVILLE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD *Lond.*

*Professors*  
 1968 WARREN MORAN, MA N.Z., PhD  
 1972 PAUL W. WILLIAMS, BA *Durh.*, MA *Dub.*, PhD ScD *Camb.*

*Appointment Pending*  
*Associate Professors*  
 1993 DOROTHY URLICH CLOHER, MA PhD *Monash* (jointly with Maori Studies)

1987 JOHN E. HAY, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Lond.* (jointly with Environmental Science)

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1985 CHRISTOPHER R. COCKLIN, BSocSc *Waik.*, MA *Guelph*, PhD *McM.*

1977 CHRISTOPHER R. de FREITAS, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Q'ld.*

1968 PETER L. HOSKING, BA *N.Z.*, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.Ill.*

1976 HONG-KEY YOON, BA *Seoul*, MS *Brigham Young*, PhD *Calif.*

#### *Lecturers*

1991 WARDLOW D. FRIESEN, BACalg. & *Car.*, PhD

1992 JAY GAO, BE *Wuhan*, MSc *Tor.*, PhD *Georgia*.

1986 DAVID V. HAWKE, BA *Adel.*, MSc *Witw.*, PhD

1992 EDWARD HARVEY, BSc *Regina*, MS *Flor.*, PhD *Calif.*

1992 DAVID J. HAYWARD, BA *Lanc.*, MS PhD *Penn. State*

1989 ROBIN A. KEARNS, MA PhD *McM.*

1991 WENDY J. LAWSON, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Camb.*

1992 SARAH MICHAELS, BIS *Wat.*, MRM *S.Fraser*, PhD *Colorado*

1992 LAURENCE MURPHY, BA PhD *Dub.*

1986 KEVIN E. PARNELL, MA PhD *James Cook*

#### *Tutors*

1991 LYNDSEY BLUE, BSc *Cant.*, MSc *Lond.*

1990 MARGARET GOLDSTONE, MSc

*University Post-doctoral Fellow*

1992 MELINDA LAITURI, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Arizona*

## GEOLOGY

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1969 K. B. SPÖRLI, DipIngGeol DrScNat *Zür.*, FGSA, FRSNZ

#### *Professor*

1970 PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD, FMSA, FRSNZ

*Honorary Visiting Professor*

1992 J. MALPAS, MA *Oxf.*, MSc PhD *Memorial (Canada)*, FGSA, FGSC, FGSL

#### *Associate Professors*

1960 P. F. BALLANCE, BSc PhD *Lond.* (on leave until May 1993)

1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc *Cape T.*, MSc *Leeds*, PhD *Well.*, (jointly with Geothermal Institute)

1958 J. A. GRANT-MACKIE, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD (on leave)

1978 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys *T.U. Clausthal*, DrRerNat *Mün.* (jointly with Geothermal Institute)

1964 K. A. RODGERS, MSc PhD, FRNSNZ, FNZIC

#### *Senior Lecturers*

◇ 1981 J. CASSIDY, BSc PhD *Liv.*

1966 G. W. GIBSON, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Well.*

1971 M. R. GREGORY, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Dal.*, MSc

◇ 1988 CORINNE A. LOCKE, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS

1981 R. J. PARKER, MSc *Cape T.*, PhD *Lond.*

1975 W. M. PREBBLE, MSc *Well.*, PhD (on leave from July 1993)

1980 I. E. M. SMITH, BSc *Well.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

#### *Lecturers*

1987 B. B. BEAMISH, BSc *Tas.*, MSc *N.S.W.*, MAusIMM

1991 S. F. SIMMONS, BA *Macalester*, MS PhD *Minn.* (jointly with Geothermal Institute)

## MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1972 ALASTAIR J. SCOTT, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Chicago* (Statistics Unit)

*Professor, Head of Statistics Unit*

1965-71, 1973 GEORGE A. F. SEBER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Manc.*

*Professor, Head of Applied and Computational Mathematics Unit*

1966 JOHN C. BUTCHER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD DSc *Sydney*, FRSNZ, FIMA

#### *Professors*

1969 DAVID B. GAULD, PhD *Calif.*, MSc

1958 JOHN A. KALMAN, MA *N.Z.*, AM PhD *Harvard*

1966 PETER J. LORIMER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *McGill*, FRSNZ

1988 GAVEN J. MARTIN, PhD *Mich.*, MSc

*Alumni Distinguished Professor*

◇ 1992 VAUGHAN F. R. JONES, PhD *Geneva*, MSc

*Associate Professor, Head of Mathematics Education Unit*

1970 IVAN L. REILLY, BA DSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*, FIMA

#### *Associate Professors*

1983 MARSTON D.E. CONDER, MSocSc *Waik.*, MSc DPhil *Oxf.*

1971 MAVINA K. VAMANAMURTHY, MSc *Mysore*, MS PhD *Mich.*

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1969 DAVID P. ALCORN, BSc *N.Z.*

1967 KENNETH ASHTON, BSc *Manc.*

1971 BRUCE D. CALVERT, MS PhD *Chicago*, BSc

1968 GANESH D. DIXIT, BA *Agra*, MA DPhil *Alld.*

1970 PAUL R. HAFNER, DiplMath DrPhil *Zürich*

1969 CHRISTOPHER C. KING, MSc *Well. & Warw.*  
 1974 ALAN J. LEE, PhD *N. Carolina*, MA (Statistics Unit)  
 1971 P. RAMANKUTTY, BA *Madras*, MSc *Kerala*, MA PhD *Indiana*  
 1971 JOEL L. SCHIFF, AM PhD *Calif.*  
 1970 DAVID J. SMITH, BA *Portland State*, MA PhD *Wash. State*  
 1968 GARRY J. TEE, MSc *N.Z.*, FIMA  
 1990 CHRISTOPHER M. TRIGGS, MSc PhD (Statistics Unit)  
 1971 WAYNE J. WALKER, PhD *Ill.*, MSc  
 1979 CHRISTOPHER J. WILD, PhD *Wat.*, MSc (Statistics Unit)

#### Lecturers

1992 JIANBEI AN, BSc *Harbin*, PhD *Ill.*  
 1993 WILLIAM D. BARTON, MPhil *Massey*, MSc (Mathematics Education Unit)  
 1992 CONSTANCE BROWN, MA PhD *Harv.*, BSc (Statistics Unit)  
 1990 PETER J. DANAHER, MS *Purdue*, PhD *Florida State*, BSc (Statistics Unit)  
 1992 J. A. ELLIS, BSc *Otago* (Mathematics Education Unit)  
 1990 COLIN FOX, PhD *Camb.*, MSc (Applied & Computational Mathematics Unit)  
 1992 ROBERT GENTLEMAN, BSc *Br.Col.*, MSc PhD *Seattle* (Statistics Unit)  
 1991 ROSS IHAKA, PhD *Berkeley*, MSc (Statistics Unit)  
 1992 VIVIEN KIRK, PhD *Camb.*, MSc (Applied & Computational Mathematics Unit)  
 1992 NORMAN LEVENBERG, BSc *Case Western Reserve*, MS PhD *Mich.*  
 1993 DAVID W. MCINTYRE, BA PhD *Oxf.*  
 1984 MARGARET J. MORTON, PhD *Penn. State*, MSc  
 1993 PHILIP N. SHARP, BSc PhD *Cant.* (Applied & Computational Mathematics Unit)  
 1993 ARKADIE M. SLIN'KO, MA *Novosibirsk*, PhD DSc *USSR Academy of Sciences*  
 1986 WIREMU SOLOMON, PhD *Wis.*, MSc  
 1993 MICHAEL O. J. THOMAS, MSc PhD *Warw.*, FIMA (Mathematics Education Unit)  
 1992 ILZE B. ZIEDINS, BA *Waik.*, PhD *DipMathStat Camb.* (Statistics Unit)

#### Senior Tutor

1969 R. E. SWENSON, MSc

#### Tutors

1992 HORST W. GERLACH, DiplMath DrPhil *Kaiserslautern*

◇ 1992 MOIRA STATHAM, BSc

#### Computer Programmers

1991 PETER DOBCSANYI, MSc *Szeged*

1978 JOHN R. PEMBERTON, MSc

### Tamaki Campus

#### Lecturer

1980 ROBERT P. K. CHAN, MSc PhD (Applied & Computational Mathematics Unit)

#### Senior Tutors

1991 LYNNETTE L. GILMORE, MSc

1992 ALASTAIR McNAUGHTON, BA *Otago*, BSc *Cant.*, DipEd *Massey*

## OPTOMETRY

#### Professor, Head of Department

1978 L. F. GARNER, BAppSc DipEd *Melb.*, PhD *City*, LOsc DCLP, FBCO, FAAO

#### Senior Lecturers

1984 R. J. JACOBS, MSc PhD *Melb.*, LOsc, FAAO, FVCO

1991 M. K. H. YAP, BSc PhD *Brad.*, MBCO, FAAO

#### Lecturer

1989 P. R. HERSE, DipAppScOptom *Q.I.T.*, PhD *Houston*, FAAO

#### Clinic Director

HELEN OWENS, MSc *Cardiff*, PhD *Aston*, MBCO

#### ◇ Visiting Ophthalmologists

M. FISK, MBChB, FRACO

A. T. MORRIS, MBChB *Otago*, DO *Lond.*, FRCS, FRACO

P. POLKINGHORNE, MBChB, FCOph, FRACS, FRACO

D. SHARPE, MBChB DO *Lond.*, FRACO

#### ◇ Academic Associates

H. G. L. BOWEN, BSc, FBCO

G. F. SANDERSON, BSc, FBOA

#### ◇ Senior Clinical Associates

K. W. ATKINSON, FBOA, DCLP

CELIA BHARGAV, BOptom

C. R. EARNSHAW, BSc DipOpt

SUSAN GRINDELL, BSc BOptom

L. GROCOTT, SDONZ

SARAH HUNT, BOptom

P. D. SKEATES, BAppSc *Melb.*, LOsc

J. TARBUTT, BSc DipOpt

G. WATTERS, DipOpt

#### ◇ Clinical Associates

JULIA HALL, BOptom

R. HART, BOptom

## PHYSICS

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1969 ALAN R. POLETTI, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FInstP, FAPS, FNZIP, FRSNZ, CPhys

### *Professors*

1991 G. L. AUSTIN, BA Camb., MSc PhD Cant., FNZIP

1987 D. F. WALLS, MSc N.Z., PhD Harv., FRS, FRSNZ, FOSA, FAPS, FNZIP

### *Associate Professors*

1971 PAUL H. BARKER, BA Oxf., PhD Manc.

1975 JOHN D. HARVEY, PhD Sur., MSc, MIEEE, FNZIP

1958 R. F. KEAM, BA Camb., MSc DipHons N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

1966 ALAN P. STAMP, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FNZIP

1969 C. DAVID STOW, BSc PhD Manc., DSc, FInstP FMetS(Japan), CPhys

1972 C. T. TINDLE, PhD Br. Col., MSc, FNZIP, FASA

### *Senior Lecturers*

1970 GARY E. J. BOLD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MNZIP, MIEEE, MASA

1982 STUART G. BRADLEY, MSc PhD, MInstP(Lond), MNZIP, FRMetS, CPhys

1979 BARRY J. BRENNAN, BSc PhD, MNZIP

1963 A. CHISHOLM, MSc N.Z., PhD, MInstP(Lond.), MNZIP, CPhys

1961 ROSS GARRETT, BA MSc N.Z., PhD, MInstP

1970 MURRAY D. JOHNS, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MNZIP, MIEEE, MASA

1971 GRAEME D. PUTT, BSc PhD Melb., FAIP, FNZIP, MAAPT

1963 J. R. STOREY, MSc, PhD N.Z., MNZIP, MIEEE, MAAPT

1969 Z. C. TAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, CEng, MIEE

1981 PETER R. WILLS, BSc PhD

### *Lecturers*

1991 T. H. BARNES, MSc PhD UMIST, MSPiE, MJpnSocApplPhys

1989 M. J. COLLETT, MSc Waik., PhD Essex, MNZIP

1991 RAINER LEONHARDT, DipPhys DrRerNat Munich

1990 SZE TAN, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb., MIEEE, AASA, MOSA

### *Senior Research Fellow*

1960 JOHN E. TITHERIDGE, MSc DipHons N.Z., PhD Camb., SMIEE, FInstP, FNZIP, FRSNZ

### *Honorary Research Fellows*

1969 A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FInstP(Lond.), FNZIP, CPhys, FASA

1963 ROBERT E. WHITE, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc

### *Postdoctoral Research Fellows*

1988 CHENG-YI WU, PhD

### *Visiting Associate Professor*

1991 J. BRIAN EARNSHAW, MSc(Eng) Manc., PhD

## PSYCHOLOGY

### *Professor, Head of Department*

Appointment Pending

### *Professors*

1978 M. C. CORBALLIS, BA MSc N.Z., PhD McG., MA, FAAAS, FAPA, FAPS, FNZPsS, FRSNZ

1969 MICHAEL C. DAVISON, BSc Brist., PhD Otago, DSc., FRSNZ

1962 R. J. IRWIN, MA N.Z., PhD Tufts., FAPS, FNZPsS

1968 GRAHAM M. VAUGHAN, MA N.Z., PhD Well., FNZPsS

### *Associate Professors*

1964 IVAN L. BEALE, MSc, N.Z., PhD

1985 DIANNE C. MCCARTHY, BA MSc PhD (on leave)

### *Senior Lecturers*

1981 JEFFERY FIELD, BA Macq., PhD A.N.U.

1965 J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.

1969 BARRY J. KIRKWOOD, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1986 JENNIFER A. OGDEN, BSc Massey, DipSocSc N.E., MSc PhD, DipClinPsych

1988 FREDERICK W. SEYMOUR, BA Well., MA W. Aust., PhD

1968 GUY D. de F von STURMER, BA N.Z., MA Melb., PhD

### *Lecturers*

1991 IAN M. COLRAIN, BSc PhD Tas., MACS

1990 FIONA M. CRAM, BA PhD PGDipPsych Otago

1992 CLAIRE M. FLETCHER-FLINN, BPsych W.Aust., PhD LaT.

1991 NICOLA J. GAVEY, MA PhD, DipClinPsych

1988 ANTHONY J. LAMBERT, BSc Sheff., PhD Leic.

1991 J. M. McALLISTER, MA PhD Edin.

### *Senior Tutor*

1990 DOUGLAS M. ELLIFFE, BSc PhD

### *Research Fellow*

CON K.K. STOUGH, BSc Adel.

### *Associates in Clinical Psychology*

FIONA HOWARD

RUTH JACKSON

EILEEN SWAN

ALISON TOWNS

---

## JOINT BOARD OF STUDIES

---

### THEOLOGY

#### *Honorary Dean*

1990 G. C. NICHOLSON, BSc *Cant.*, BD MTheol *Otago*, PhD *Vanderbilt*

#### *Honorary Lecturers*

1991 P. G. ATKINS, BD *Otago*, MA *Camb.*

1990 K. W. CARLEY, BCom *N.Z.*, BD *Otago*, PhD *Lond.*

1992 P. CODY, STL *Greg.*, STD *Angelicum*

1990 J. E. CRAWFORD, BA BD DipEd *Otago*, STM *Yale* (on leave)

1990 N. P. DARRAGH, MA STL *Urban*

1990 A. K. DAVIDSON, BD MA *Otago*, PhD *Aberd.*

1991 M. FITZPATRICK, STD *Louven*

1992 L. GUY, BD LLB MA *M.C.D.*

1990 E. F. I. HANSON, BA *N.Z.*, BD *Otago*

1990 S. C. MAY, BD *Edin.*, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *Aberd.*

1991 H. M. O'LEARY, JCD *Angelicum*

1992 J. OWENS, BA *Cant.*, PhL *Angelicum*, PhD *Munich*

1990 M. R. RIDDELL, BD *M.C.D.*, MTh *Ruschlikon*

1992 K. ROACH, STD *Angelicum*, HED JCL *Greg.*

1992 J. SALMON, BD MA PhD *Otago*

1992 M. SHIRRES, MA PhD

1990 B. K. SMITH, BE *N.Z.*, BD *M.C.D.*, MA *Birm.*

1992 P. WILLIAMSON, MA *Cant.*, STD *Greg.*

---

## CONTINUING EDUCATION, Centre for

#### *Director*

Appointment Pending

#### *Senior Lecturers*

◇ 1973 JUDITH C. I. McMORLAND, BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD (jointly with Management Studies & Labour Relations)

1992 WANDA J. KORNDORFFER, BA BEd PhD

1992 BRIAN C. FINDSEN, BSocSc MA *Waik.*, EdD *North Carolina*

#### *Lecturer*

1986 CLAUDIA H. F. BELL, BA *Massey*, MA

---

## HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH OFFICE

#### *Associate Professor, Head*

1974 JOHN JONES, BSc PhD *Wales*, MA *Malawi*

#### *Senior Lecturer and Teaching Development Officer*

1978 ANTHONY A. MORRISON, MA PhD DipEd

#### *Lecturer*

1991 ADELE GRAHAM, MA, DipKU

---

## STUDENT LEARNING CENTRE

#### *Director*

1976 DAVID W. SIMPSON, BA *Cant. & Well.*, MA *Well.*, DipEdPsych

#### *Senior Tutors*

◇ 1985 BARBARA J. REILLY, BSc *Well.*, MS *Ill.*

◇ 1989 BARBARA M. GRANT, BA

#### *Tutors*

◇ 1990 ERNIE BARRINGTON, BSc *Cant.*, BA

◇ 1990 ELISA LAVELLE, MA

◇ 1990 DAVID SEMP, BA

◇ 1989 HEATHER SILYN-ROBERTS, BSc *Wales*, PhD

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (LIBRARY)

---

#### *Librarian*

PETER B. DUREY, BA *Durh.*, FLA, ALAA, FNZLA

#### *Deputy-Librarian*

CHRISTINE I. WILSON, BA DipNZLS

#### *Head of Acquisitions*

ALISON M. GRANT, BA DipNZLS, ANZLA

#### *Head Cataloguer (Alternates)*

GAIKA HAWKINS, BA *Stell.*, DipLibr *CapeT.*

JENEFER M. WRIGHT, BA



*Head of Lending Services*

JOHN W. HAYWARD, BA Cant., DipNZLS

*Head of Information Services*

A. CATHERINE HUTCHINSON, MA Well., DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Head of Serials Unit, Acquisitions*

NEIL C. HEINZ, MA Well., DipNZLS

*Architecture Librarian*

WENDY S. GARVEY, BA Well., DipNZLS

*Asian Languages Librarian*

KUAN-HOONG LUN, BA Nan., MA Well., DipNZLS

*Biological Sciences Librarian*

FLAVIA A. CLIFFORD-WHITE, BSc Otago, DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Engineering Librarian*

PATRICIA D. HULSE, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA, LRSM, LTCL

*Fine Arts Librarian*

GAIL KEEFE, BA, NZLSCert

*Geography Librarian*

BRIAN W. MARSHALL, BA Massey, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Geology Librarian*

ELVA M. LEAMING, BA, NZLACert

*Law Librarian*

E. JULIA McMAHON O'HIGGINS, BA N.Z., LLB MA, NZLACert

*Librarian, Centre for Continuing Education*

MARY ANN CRICK, BA, NZLSCert

*Librarian New Zealand and Pacific Collection*

R. STEPHEN INNES, BA PGDA Otago, DipLibr

*Librarian, School of Medicine*

MARGARET A. GIBSON SMITH (Mrs), MA, NZLACert, ANZLA

*Librarian, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies)*

P. JANE McRAE, BA Otago, MA PhD

*Music Librarian*

BEVERLEY A. ANSCOMBE (Miss), BMus Well., DipNZLS, ANZLA, LTCL, AIRMT

*Science Librarian*

INGE E. B. RUDOLPH, BA(LibrSci) S.A.

*Tamaki Librarian*

DEBORAH YOUNG, BA, NZLSCert

*Systems Manager*

DAVID AKERS

*Associate-Librarian*

ELAINE M. ROBINSON, NZLACert, ANZLA

*Senior Librarians*

ANNA K. BELTOWSKI, BALib C.N.A.A.

SUSAN M. FOGGIN, MA, DipNZLS

JENNIFER J. HART, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

BRUCE A. HOWIE, BA Well., DipNZLS

HAZEL M. LANYON, BA Cant., DipLIS Lond., ALA

ELIZABETH MAJOR, BSc, NZLSCert

ELIZABETH H. McKENZIE, BA, DipLibr Well.

EMIL MELNICHENKO, BSc, NZLSCert

ROBYN RAMAGE, MSc Auck. &amp; Sheff., PhD

ROSLYN M. G. SMITH, LLB, DipNZLS

ROBERTA WHELAN, MA N.Z., NZLACert

RAINER WOLCKE, Staatsexamen Hamburg, DipLibr Well.

*Assistant Librarians*

CORAL D. ASHFORD, BA, CertNZLS

DAPHNE CARRUTHERS, MA N.Z., DipNZLS

CHERYL EDWARDS, BA Natal, HighDipLibServ Natal

BRIAN C. FLAHERTY, BA, DipLibr

MARGARET I. FREEMAN, MA, NZLACert

MARK P. HANGARTNER, BA, DipLibr

SUSAN HORN, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

MARGARET E. KNIGHTBRIDGE, NZLACert

JOHN R. LAURIE, BA, DipLibr

PAMELA D. MALKMUS, BSc Natal, BBibI HDLib S.A.

KATHLEEN A. SHAWCROSS, MA, NZLSCert

FELICITY STEWART, BA DipNZLS

LYNLEY E. STONE, BA, DipLibr

MASAKO TAKAGAKI (Mrs), BA Aoyama Gakuin, NZLSCert

ANNE E. WILSON, BA, DipLibr

*Analyst Programmer*

BEE I YU, DipBusAdmin Philippine Christian University, Manila

*Administrative Assistants*

JUDITH M. GRAYKOWSKI, MA Cornell

KATHRYN GREEN, BA

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ADMINISTRATION)

---

*Vice-Chancellor*

Sir Colin MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Assistant Vice-Chancellors*

P. R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

*Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Buildings and Site Development)*

J.B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS DSc Otago, FRCPath

*Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Equal Employment Opportunities and Staff Development)*

CHARMIAN J. O'CONNOR, CBE, JP, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FRSNZ, CChem, FRSCChem, FNZIC

*Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Student Services)*

R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Tamaha)*

R. F. MEYER, BE, N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAES

*Registrar*

WARWICK B. NICOLL, BCom

*Assistant to Registrar*

GRANT WILLS, BSc Cant.

*Vice-Chancellor's Secretary*

JENNIFER M. TOPLISS

*Registrar's Secretary*

JOYCE E. JORGENSEN

---

## REGISTRAR'S SECTION

*Head of the Audio-Visual Centre*

ERIC M. ANDERSON, MA

*Managing Editor, Auckland University Press*

ELIZABETH P. CAFFIN, MA Cant., MS Georgetown

*Information and Public Affairs Officer*

W. R. S. WILLIAMS, LLB Well., DipJ Cant.

*Editor, Public Affairs Office*

A. H. ASHTON, BA

*Alumni Officer*

CHRISTINE SMITH, BA Massey, MA Cant.

*Internal Auditor*

PETER G. DORMON, ACA

*University Mediator*

MATTHEW FITZSIMMONS, MA

---

## ACADEMIC REGISTRY

*Academic Registrar*

LORNA A. WILSON (Mrs), JP

*Deputy Academic Registrar*

R. F. METCALFE, MA Cant.

*Assistant Registrars, Academic*

K. G. BRADFORD

JOHN R. CLARKE, DipBusStuds Massey

MICHAEL G. CRONIN, BA

F. RICHARD V. MILNE, BA Lond.

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

RICHARD G. BOLLEY, BA York (U.K.)

MARGARET L. BRICKLAND (Mrs), BA

MAUREEN FROST, LGSM

FELICITY A. HOPKIN, LLB Liv., MIAM

ALMA KELLEHER (Mrs), MA Well.

CAROLINE LYNCH (Mrs), BA Leeds

RAYMOND J. WATKINS, MA

*Administrative Assistants*

GAY BRENNAN (Mrs)

AMY CHEN (Ms)

PAUL L. COLVIN

SARA LINDSAY (Mrs), BA Otago, MA Cant.

CHERYL NIXON, BA Otago, DipEd Massey

LINDSAY SPEDDING, BA

*Senior Systems Analyst*

KEITH W. SALMON, MA

*Systems Analysts*

SUSAN COLVIN

EVAN THOMAS, BA Well.

STEPHANIE WYNNE, BSc Waik., DipMgt

---

## CORPORATE SERVICES REGISTRY

*Corporate Services Registrar*

PHILIP C. R. VENVILLE, BSc, MACS

*Manager, Registry Computing Services*

JOHN POWELL

*Facilities Manager, Telecommunications*

JOY L. GILCHRIST

*Programming Manager*

STEPHEN HARESNAPE, BSc

*Senior Programmer*

HUGH FERGUSON

*Programmers*

W. C. ALICE BRADLEY, BA H.K., MPhil Edin, DipSocStudies

GREG BRUMBY

PHIL PLATT

AARON STONE

*PC Consultant*

DYLAN ROGERS

---

## FINANCE REGISTRY

*Finance Registrar*

B. M. COCKER, ACA

*Deputy Finance Registrar*

RICHARD J. TOWNSEND, ACA

*Financial Management Accountant*

IAN R. JOHNSON, BCom, ACA

*Financial Systems Manager*

LINDA M. ROBERTS

*Financial Operations Accountant*

GRAEME R. LEWIS, BCom Otago, ACA

*Assistant Registrar (Research & Supply)*

Appointment Pending

*Assistant Registrar (Salaries)*

MAURICE WONG SHEE

*Accountant*

ANITA B. JANSEN

*Manager, UniPrint*

PAUL SMITH

*Applications Analyst*

PHIL JEPSON

*Senior Administrative Assistant (Research & Supply)*

LYN CLARK

*Data Processing Operations Controller*

FAYE GROOM

*University Cashier*

FAY BUCHANAN

*Assistant Accountants*

ROSEMARY A. BROWN, BCom

GREGORY T. FITZPATRICK, BCom

*Administrative Assistant (Salaries)*

GILLIAN JONES

---

## STAFF REGISTRY

*Staff Registrar*

G. E. W. THOMAS, BA

*Assistant Registrars*

GAIL CROSS (Mrs), BA Well.

M. V. LELLMAN, BA

*Equal Employment Opportunities Officer*

STEPHENIE G. KNIGHT, MA

*Staff Development Officer*

LORRAINE PARKER, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistant*

ROBIN V. HUDSON (Ms)

*Administrative Assistant*

BARBARA G. NEELS, BA

## STUDENT SERVICES REGISTRY

### Student Services Registrar

KAY WILLS (Mrs), MA

### Accommodation

#### Manager

STUART McELWAIN

*Administrative Assistant*

PAMELA S. COWEY

*Manager, International House*

SHIRLEY SULLIVAN

*Warden, O'Rorke Hall*

MORAG MURRAY, MA *Edin.*

*Administrative Assistant*

ROSELLA D. CHANDRA

### Careers

*Careers Advisor*

GUY NASH, ANZIM, ANZIPM

*Assistant Careers Advisor*

KATY MOORE, MA

### Chaplains

*Maclaurin Chaplain to the University*

STUART VOGEL, BD MA *Otago*

*Roman Catholic Chaplains*

ANTONY HEGARTY

PAUL RANKIN, (Rev. Fr.) OP

ALAPINA SMITH (Sr.) LSA

### Childcare Centres

*Creche 1, 2, 3 Co-ordinating Supervisor*

ELAINE McCULLOCH, BA

*Park Avenue Childcare Centre Supervisor*

DIANE NORTON

### Counselling

*Director of the Counselling Services*

S. McHUGH, MA, DipAppPsych, DipClinPsych

*Counsellors*

◇ BILLIA BRAV, MA *Tel Aviv*

TINA EARL-MONTGOMERY, MA, DipClinPsych

JULIAN METCALFE, MSc

◇ RAY MITCHELL, MA, DipClinPsych

◇ JILLIAN WITTMER, MA, DipClinPsych, DipTech

### Financial Advisory Service

*Financial Advisers*

RHONDDA TANNOCK

MARCELLA McCARTHY

### Health Services

*Medical Director of the Student Health Service*

PATRICIA MAUGER, MBBS *Lond.*, LRCP, MRCS

*Medical Officers*

◇ T. BOWMAN, MBChB

◇ D. BROMLEY, BSc MBChB, DipObst, DipGUM

◇ T. EDWARDS, MBChB, DipObst, DipSportMed

◇ J. McALLISTER, BSc MBChB, DipPsych

◇ R. J. MAYHEW, BSc MBChB, DipObst, DipSportMed, MRNZCGP

◇ V. PETERSON, MBChB, DipObst

◇ J. G. RICHARDS, MBChB, FRNZCGP, FRACP, FRCPE

◇ K. SORRENSON, MBChB

◇ G. WARDROPE, MBChB, FRACP

◇ R. VALLINGS, MBBS, DipClinHyp

*Nursing Sisters*

SHIRLEY BENNETT, NZRN, RMN

SUE PARTON, NZRN, RMN

### Liaison

*Liaison Officer with Secondary Schools*

ROSS A. SPURDLE, DipEd *Cant.*, MA

*Deputy Liaison Officer*

CHRISTINE M. HAMMETT (Mrs), BSc *S'ton.*

*Liaison Officer for Women in Physical Sciences and Engineering*

J. ELIZABETH GODFREY, MSc

*Maori Liaison Officer*

*Appointment Pending*

*Pacific Islands Liaison Officer*

T. AARON MARSTERS, MA

Maidment Arts Theatre

*Artistic Director*

PAUL MINIFIE

**Overseas Students**

*Adviser to Overseas Students*

B. R. LYTHER, MA

**Recreation**

*Director, Physical Recreation*

S. C. HOLLINGS, DipPE Madeley Coll., Keele

*Physical Recreation Officers*

L. T. HADFIELD

G. J. ROBSON, MSc

JULIE M. STILL, BPhEd Otago

*Assistant Physical Recreation Officers*

R.E. GROVE, BPhEd Otago

D.J. SLYFIELD, BA

*Recreation Centre Manager*

LYNDALL FRASER (Mrs)

**Student Union**

*Manager*

TERRY BAXTER, BA N.S.W

---

## WORKS REGISTRY

*Works Registrar*

M. B. MATTHEWSON, BE Cant., MIPENZ

*Project Manager*

K. G. PRISK, ME

*Safety Manager*

I. A. ROSS

*Buildings Officer*

C. J. SETH, BA

*Workshop Trade Supervisors*

R. COOK

P. JOHANSEN

P. SPASIC

B VALLELY

*Superintendent of Horticulture*

A. PALMER, NCH, DipHort, HertInstHort

*Assistant Superintendent of Horticulture*

J. P. ADAM, DipHort, DipP&R Cant.

*Head Groundsman University Park*

M. WEAVER

*University Custodian*

L. W. TYRER

*Assistant Custodians*

H. HOLDER

G. NASH

E. NOBLE

*Senior Security Officer*

M. TENNENT

*Technical Services Manager*

D. R. AGATE, NZCE

*Electrical Engineer*

C. P. M. BAKKER, BE

*Architect*

M. B. BREEMS, BArch

*Estimator*

R. F. ATTWELL

*Draughting Officer*

D. K. CAMPBELL

*Computer Programmer*

K. LOHESWARAN, AIDPM

*Administrative Services Manager*

C. B. M. JACKSON, BA, DipLGA

*Accountant*

J. E. REDKNAP (Mrs), NCB, NZIM

*Administrative Assistants*

S. M. PHILPS, NZCDP

R. J. PIRRIE

---

## FACULTIES AND DEPARTMENTS

---

**Tamaki Campus***Tamaki Registrar*

PHILIP N. RAMA, MA

**Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning***Faculty Registrar*

D. J. S. HARVEY, BMus

*Administrative Assistants*

LESLEY CAVANAGH

F. S. FRASER

**Faculty of Arts***Faculty Registrar*

GRETCHEN A. L. SPALINGER (Mrs), BA Calif.

**Department of Anthropology***Senior Administrative Assistant*

MICHELLE DONOVAN, BA Well.

**Department of Education***Administrative Assistant*

CATRIONA M. J. CHALMERS, BA

**Department of English***Administrative Assistant*

WALTER FRASER, BA SPac.

**Department of History***Administrative Assistant*

DIANA K. HOLMES

**Faculty of Commerce***Faculty Registrar*

HARRY MALTBY, BA Vic.B.C., CA Canada

*Marketing Communications Manager*

JOCELYN BRAY, BCom

*Senior Administrative Assistant*

FRANK KEATON, BSc Seattle, MBA

*Administrative Assistant*

H. SMEETON (Mrs), BA Otago

**Department of Accounting and Finance***Administrative Assistant*

MARGARET ROTONDO

**Graduate School of Business***Senior Administrative Assistant*

JOHN BERRIDGE, BSc, DipBIA, MIPMNZ

*Administrative Assistant*

SHAHNAZ S. AKBAR, BA SPac., BAdmin Griffith

**Faculty of Education***Faculty Registrar*

JOANNE B. WILLIAMSON, BA

**Faculty of Engineering***Faculty Registrar*

G. C. BEACH

*Senior Administrative Assistant (Purchasing)*

J. E. M. JONES

*Administrative Assistant*

MARJORIE WOODS

**Geothermal Institute***Senior Administrative Assistant*

OSCAR HUIJSSE

**Faculty of Fine Arts***Administrative Assistant*

ANNA M. REES (Mrs)

**Faculty of Law***Faculty Registrar*

STEPHEN F. PENK, MA PGDA Otago, BA

*Administrative Assistant*

GEORGE GAVET

**Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology***Faculty Registrar*

SUSAN CATHERSIDES, BA

*Faculty Registrar (Resources)*

IAN HOUSTON

*Administrative Assistant*

TINA SMITH

**Faculty of Science***Faculty Registrar*

MICHAEL P. THOMAS, BA

*Administrative Assistant*

ANGELA M. MAY, BA

**School of Biological Sciences***School Registrar*SANDRA JONES, BA *Q'ld.*, DipBusStuds *Massey**Administrative Assistant*

K.R. JENNINGS, MA

**Leigh Laboratory***Administrative Assistant*

A. L. COZENS

**Department of Chemistry***Administrative Assistant*TINEKE LIEBREGS, *Dra Amst.***Department of Geography***Administrative Assistant*

GAEL P. ARNOLD

**Department of Mathematics & Statistics***Senior Administrative Assistant*

JILLIAN M. REID, BA LLB DipCrim

**Department of Optometry***Administrative Assistant*

M. ELIZABETH SHARLAND

**Department of Psychology***Senior Administrative Assistant*

YVONNE O'BRIEN

**Centre for Continuing Education***Senior Continuing Education Officers*

ANNE DAVIS, MA

GEORGE DIBLEY, BA

*Continuing Education Officers*

JOAN DIAMOND, BA

MARION FEASEY

HELEN HAGEN, BA

BARRY WILLIAMS, *BCA Well.**Assistant Continuing Education Officers*

CATH M. HENDERSON

GARY TOMLIN, BSc

**Higher Education Research Office***Administrative Assistant*

1989 SEAN MILLAR, MA DipBIA

---

**AUCKLAND UNISERVICES LTD***Chief Executive Officer*JOHN A. KERNOHAN, PhD *Boston*, MSc*Operations Manager*MARK P. D. BURGESS, MSc *Well.**Consulting and Testing Services Manager*

NIEL C. GEDGE, BA

*Manager, Engineering Contracts*KEITH JONES, MSc *Cran.I.T**Manager, Medical Contracts*A. B. (SANDY) FERGUSON, BVSc *Syd.*, BAg *N.Z.*, MRCVS*Administrative Assistant*

JOANNE W. HOLLIDAY

---

**COMPUTER CENTRE***Director*1971 JOHN C. B. WHITE, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *A.N.U.**Deputy Director*

1971 J. NEVIL BROWNLEE, MSc PhD, MIEE, MNZIP

*Operations Manager*

Appointment Pending

*Business Manager*

IAN R. GAUSEL

*Senior Computer Programmers*ALASTAIR R. ANDERSON, BSc *A.N.U.*, DipCompSc *W'gong.*, DipEd *Monash*

DAVID E. ASH

RUSSELL J. FULTON, BSc DipCompMaths Dal.  
 PAUL R. GRAY  
 RAYMOND W. L. MARTIN, BSc A.N.U.  
 FREDERICK J. NUTTALL, BSc Waik.  
 HOWARD A. ROSS, BSc York (Can.), MSc Brock, PhD  
 OWEN G. TUMULTY  
 DON WHITESIDE  
 Tamaki Computer Laboratory  
 DAVID McLEAN

---

## CENTRE FOR INFORMATION SCIENCE

*Director*  
 W. R. WAY, BSc W.Ont.  
*Deputy Director*  
 M. ANNAND  
*Promotions Manager*  
 D. C. WEBSTER  
*Consultants*  
 M. A. FORTH, BSc  
 D. J. HUGHES, DipBus  
 A. RAFIQ, BSc-W:Pak.Eng.

---

## ACTS OF PARLIAMENT

### EDUCATION ACT 1989

The University, like all tertiary education institutions, is subject to the provisions of the Education Act 1989 (as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990). This Act specifies the constitution and powers of the Council and various other matters relating to the administration of tertiary institutions. Copies of the Act are available from the Government Bookshop.

---

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ACT 1961

### ANALYSIS

#### *Title*

1. Short Title and Commencement
2. Interpretation
3. Constitution of the University
4. University District and Court of Convocation

#### *Powers of the Council*

20. Award of certificates, etc.
21. Lectures to members of the public

## AN ACT TO CONSOLIDATE AND AMEND CERTAIN ENACTMENTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY RELATING TO THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

BE IT ENACTED by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

### 1. Short Title and Commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as the University of Auckland Act 1961.
- (2) This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty two.

### 2. Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires:

'The Council' means the Council of the University of Auckland constituted in accordance with Part XV of the Education Act 1989: 'Lecturer' means a member of the staff of the University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons as the Council from time to time determines:

'Minister' means the Minister of the Crown for the time being responsible for the administration of this Act: 'Professor' means a professor of the University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor:

'The Registrar' means the Registrar of the University of Auckland:

'The University' means the University of Auckland constituted under this Act.

### 3. Constitution of the University

- (1) For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be a University to be called the University of Auckland.
- (2) The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar, and librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and under-graduates of the University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.
- (3) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property,



and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.

- (4) The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under the University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by the University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

#### 4. Court of Convocation

- (1) – repealed
- (2) – repealed
- (3) There shall be a Court of Convocation of the University.
- (4) The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.
- (5) Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who
  - (a) Is a graduate of the University; or
  - (b) Being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reasons of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the Council to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University; or
  - (c) Not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or
  - (d) Is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.
- (6) The power of the Council under Section 194 of the Education Act 1989 to make statutes extends to making statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their names enrolled in the register of the said Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.
- (7) The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

#### Sections 5 to 19 - repealed

#### 20. Awards of Certificates, etc.

The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.

#### 21. Lectures to Members of the Public

The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

#### Sections 22 to 53 - repealed

---

## UNIVERSITY STATUTES

---

### COURT OF CONVOCATION REGISTER STATUTE 1990

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989.

1. This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990.
2. The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland and shall (subject to section 5) enter on the register the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be enrolled under section 4 of the University of Auckland Act and under section 3 of this Statute.
3. Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of section 4 of the University of Auckland Act each person shall be entitled to have his or her name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the 1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation for any other University in New Zealand, and
  - (i) under section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, or
  - (ii) was an undergraduate member of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of the University of New Zealand after that date, or
  - (iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.
4. Except as provided in section 5 of this Statute it shall not be necessary for any person entitled to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.
5. Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him or her to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.
6. A member of the Court may, by notifying the Registrar in writing, elect not to receive voting papers for the purpose of conducting elections to the Council by the Court, but may at any subsequent time advise the Registrar by notice under his or her hand that they wish to receive voting papers for an election.
7. Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his or her hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the grounds that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.
8. The Registrar shall enquire into and decide whether to uphold or dismiss any such objection forthwith after receiving it.
9. Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his or her hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day after the day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.
10. Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when deciding the appeal directs.

11. (a) Any member of the Court having changed his or her address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.
- (b) The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that the Registrar shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.
12. The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and shall be entitled to make on request any amendment of name made necessary by marriage, deed poll or other lawful reason.
13. The Court of Convocation Statute 1962 is hereby repealed.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (COURT OF CONVOCATION REPRESENTATIVES) STATUTE 1990

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989:

1. This Statute may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990.
2. For the purpose of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll containing the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote shall be prepared and revised from time to time in accordance with this Statute.
3. The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who
  - (a) voted at the last two preceding elections
  - (b) (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election
  - (c) have had their name entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - (d) (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by that officer on or before 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
4. In this Statute and the forms contained herein:
 

'the roll' means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this Statute

'elector' and 'voter' respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll

'the Returning Officer' shall be the Registrar of the University.
5. The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
6. Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than thirty-five days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with the Returning Officer on or before a day, to be fixed by the Returning Officer, being not less than ten days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.

An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 p.m. on the ..... day of ..... 19..... at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this election unless he or she shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 p.m. on the ..... day of ..... 19.....

The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 p.m. on the twenty-first day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown on the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).

..... Returning Officer

7. The roll shall be closed at 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand.
8. Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his or her voting paper has been issued to that elector.
9. The votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by this Statute, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to the Returning Officer in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
10. Nomination shall be made by two persons qualified to vote and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his or her nomination.
11. Nomination shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....  
of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.

We .....  
and .....  
being duly qualified voters, hereby nominate .....  
of .....  
for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.

Date .....

I consent to the above nomination .....

12. Each candidate for election may submit to the Registrar with his or her nomination papers a short statement about the candidate:
  - (i) The statement shall not exceed 250 words.
  - (ii) The statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications and any other relevant information about the candidate.
  - (iii) The Returning Officer shall ensure that the information in each statement is forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.
13. If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.
14. Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

### VOTING PAPER

#### COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

#### ELECTION OF MEMBERS

By the Court of Convocation  
for the University of Auckland

#### Directions

There are.....vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The voter is to put a cross (x) in the square beside the name of each candidate for whom he or she desires to vote.

15. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer. The voter must complete the panel on the back of envelope:

THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS/HER NAME AND COMPLETE THE ADDRESS PANEL BELOW.

I, .....  
(Full name in block letters)

declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of the University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission *ad eundem gradum* before 1 January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University in New Zealand other than the University of Auckland.

SIGNATURE OF VOTER .....

ADDRESS .....

(I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as above.)

If recorded on University records under another name, e.g. maiden name, please state

.....

16. The poll shall close at 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of Section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.
17. Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any poll of the Auckland City Council.
18. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
19. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
20. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.
21. The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations are hereby repealed.

---

## FELLOWS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND STATUTE 1992

---

This 17th day of August 1992, pursuant to its powers under section 194 of the Education Act 1989 the Council of the University of Auckland makes the following statute:

1. This Statute may be cited as the Fellows of the University of Auckland Statute 1992.
2. The Council may at its discretion confer the honour and title of "Fellow of the University of Auckland" on a person who:
  - (a) has made a unique and valuable contribution to the University; and
  - (b) is not a permanent member of the staff of the University.
3. A nomination that a person be honoured as a Fellow of the University shall be made confidentially in writing to the Vice-Chancellor, signed by not less than three persons, each of whom shall be a permanent member of the staff of the University or a member of the Council.
4. Each nomination shall be accompanied by a statement of the relevant aspects of the nominee's career, particularly the ways in which the nominee has contributed to the University, and shall clearly state the grounds for the nomination.
5. The Vice-Chancellor shall submit each nomination to the Fellows Committee which shall advise the Education Committee of the Council and the Council of its recommendation on each nomination.
6. The Fellows Committee shall comprise:
  - 2 members appointed by the Council
  - 2 members appointed by the Senate
  - The Registrar
  - 1 member of the General Staff appointed by the General Staff Committee of the Council
  - The President of the University of Auckland Students' Association (or his or her nominee)
7. The Council shall by resolution determine those persons to be honoured as Fellows of the University of Auckland.
8. The title "Fellow of the University of Auckland" shall be conferred by the Chancellor, or such other person as has been approved by the Council to confer degrees and award diplomas, at the annual graduation ceremony or at any other function approved by the Council for this purpose.
9. A Fellow of the University shall be entitled to wear a special gown (as prescribed by Statute) at the ceremony when the award is conferred and on any other University occasion when academic dress is worn.
10. The Council may from time to time advise the Fellows Committee of its views regarding:
  - (a) the number of awards of the title of Fellow of the University of Auckland which may be made at any time;
  - (b) the nature and the extent of the information required in the statement which supports a nomination for an award; or
  - (c) such other matters relating to the award as Council may determine.

---

# General Statutes and Regulations

---

## *Contents*

	<i>Page</i>
Admission Regulations	54
Pre-enrolment Application Regulations	55
Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations	55
Limitation of Entry Statute 1991	62
Enrolment Limitations 1993: Limited Entry Courses and Papers	62
Enrolment 1993	69
Enrolment Timetable 1993	70
Extramural Enrolment Statute	72
Definitions of Full-Time Study 1993	73
Examination Regulations	75
Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1992	78
Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991	79
Award of Honorary Degrees	81
Fees Regulations	81
Discipline	84
Disciplinary Regulations	84
Computer System Regulations	86
The Library	87
Library Regulations	87
Preliminary Courses	88
Wellesley Programme	89
New Start Programme	89
English as a Second Language Programme	89
Overseas Students	89

# GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

## ADMISSION REGULATIONS

### Prerequisites and Conditions

1. Subject to the Council's statutory powers to decline enrolment (whether for insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers or for other cause) and to Regulation 2, a person is qualified to matriculate (that is, to be admitted to the University and enrolled on its books as a student) if that person:
  - (a) has satisfied the requirements for entrance to a university in New Zealand; or
  - (b) is granted admission on transfer from another university in New Zealand; or
  - (c) is granted Special Admission; or
  - (d) is granted Provisional Entrance; or
  - (e) is admitted Ad Eundem Statum.
2. (a) Save with the permission of Senate, a person shall not be eligible to be on the books of this University who:
  - (i) is on the books of another university; or
  - (ii) has not reached the age of 16 years by the 31 December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought; or
  - (iii) is enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, area school or technical institute.
- (b) The Senate's permission in relation to (a)(ii) and (a)(iii) of this Regulation shall be granted only in exceptional circumstances.
3. A person seeking to matriculate shall comply with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations.

### Matriculation

4. At matriculation (that is, on admission to the University and being enrolled on its books) every student shall make the following declaration: 'I promise to obey the Statutes and Regulations, and comply with requirements of the University of Auckland'.

### Personal Interest Course

5. (a) A person who has a personal interest in a paper or papers but who is ineligible for admission in accordance with Regulation 1 of these Regulations may make application in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations and, subject to Regulation 4 and Senate approval, enrol in a paper or papers and sit the University examinations.
- (b) A student who passes a paper in which he or she is enrolled under (a) above and who subsequently is eligible for admission in accordance with Regulation 1 of these regulations may have such a paper credited towards a degree or diploma provided that all the necessary conditions for such a degree or diploma were fulfilled at the time that paper was passed.

Note: (i) Application must be made on the Pre-enrolment Application Form 1A and submitted with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 9 December or by the date specified in the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations if an earlier date is required.  
 (ii) A late application may be received but the papers applied for will be accorded last priority consideration and a late fee will apply to any application received after 8 January 1993.

### Admission Ad Eundem Statum

#### Students from another University in New Zealand

6. (a) A student from another university in New Zealand who wishes to enrol at the University of Auckland, including a student who may have been enrolled at the University of Auckland in a previous year, shall submit a pre-enrolment form in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations.
- (b) The University may grant such credits or exemptions as it considers appropriate towards a degree or other qualification of the University of Auckland on the basis of work successfully completed by the applicant at the previous university. Prerequisites may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or diploma.
- (c) A student who has completed the major subject requirement for a degree or other qualification of another university in New Zealand may apply to take papers for Certificate of Proficiency at the University of Auckland for credit towards the degree or other qualification of that university. Before an application under this Regulation will be considered the student must produce evidence from the other university that the paper or papers taken at the University of Auckland will fulfil the requirements of the degree or other qualification being taken.
- (d) A student admitted under these Regulations must comply with Regulation 9 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), with all the other Regulations of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) appropriate to his or her course, and with the Examination Regulations.
7. A person who wishes to enrol at the University of Auckland and
  - (a) has gained appropriate qualifications validated by NZQA or
  - (b) has gained qualifications from an overseas institution
 may be granted admission Ad Eundem Statum by this University
  - (i) at entrance level;
  - (ii) with credits towards the course for a Bachelor's Degree or a diploma for work which in the opinion of the Senate is substantially corresponding or equivalent;
  - (iii) to the status of a degree holder or diploma holder with the right to proceed to a specific higher degree or diploma with or without Honours.

A person seeking admission Ad Eundem Statum shall apply by completing the prescribed form and submitting it with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 30 November in the year preceding that in which admission is sought.

Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects.

Prerequisites may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or diploma.

8. All applications under Regulations 6 and 7 shall be accompanied or supplemented by such evidence as the Senate may require as to:
  - (i) identity
  - (ii) academic standing, and
  - (iii) any degree or diploma obtained by the applicant from another university.

### Special Admission

9. A person who does not hold a university entrance qualification but who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident and has attained the age of 20 years by 31 December in the year preceding that for which application is made may be granted Special Admission to any course of study. The Senate may waive that age requirement where the applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and in particular has:
    - (a) satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that course of study; or
    - (b) completed two years of study at a College of Education and attained a sufficient standard therein; or
    - (c) obtained any other qualification which may be approved by the Senate.
- A person seeking Special Admission to the University shall apply for it in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application

Regulations, submit evidence of age and educational qualifications, and pay the prescribed fees.

Note: (i) Closing date for applications for Special Admission is 9 December or by the date specified in the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations if an earlier date is required.  
(ii) A late application may be received but the course and papers applied for will be accorded last priority consideration and a late fee will apply to any application received after 8 January 1993.

### Provisional Entrance

10. (a) A person who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident but does not hold a university entrance qualification may be granted Provisional Entrance to any course of study if that person
  - (i) is 16 years of age and is under 20 years of age by 31 December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought and
  - (ii) has satisfactorily completed a sixth form year at a New Zealand secondary school or has earned a University Entrance qualification credit in at least one subject and
  - (iii) has not made an entry in four or five subjects of the University Bursaries Examination in the year preceding that in which admission is sought.
- (b) The entrance qualification shall cease to be provisional when the student has passed one year's full-time study or its equivalent
  - (i) While the entrance qualification remains provisional a student may enrol only for papers or subjects of the course of study for which permission is granted.
  - (ii) When the entrance qualification ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other course of study subject to any requirement for enrolment in that course.

A person seeking Provisional Entrance to University shall apply on the appropriate Pre-enrolment Application Form and submit it to the Registrar by 9 December of the year preceding that for which admission is sought.

The fee for Provisional Entrance is \$60.

## PRE-ENROLMENT APPLICATION REGULATIONS

1. Every person intending to enrol or to re-enrol in the University shall give notice of that intention by completing the Pre-enrolment Application Form and submitting it to the Registrar to be received:
  - (i) by 9 December 1992 for all applicants who were not enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992, or
  - (ii) by 8 January 1993 for all applicants who were enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992, or
  - (iii) by the date specified in the Schedule for certain limited entry courses and papers requiring an earlier closing date.
2. The Pre-enrolment Application Form also includes the following categories:
  - (a) Persons seeking Special Admission.
  - (b) Persons seeking Provisional Entrance.
  - (c) Students wishing to transfer from another New Zealand University.
  - (d) Students who come under the Unsatisfactory Academic Progress Regulations and need the special permission of Senate to enrol.
  - (e) Persons seeking to enrol who are ineligible to matriculate (Personal Interest Course).

Note: For the fees prescribed for categories (a) (b) (c) (d) and (e) see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*. There are no fees for other categories submitted on or before the closing date. Applications received after the specified closing dates will be given last priority in consideration for places in limited entry courses and/or papers. Additionally, applications received after 8 January 1993 will incur a late fee (see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*).

## ENROLMENT AND COURSE REGULATIONS (GENERAL)

### Dates of Terms

1. (a) There shall be in each year three terms. The first term shall begin on the first Monday after 26 February and shall end on the Saturday preceding the 19th Monday of the calendar year. The second term shall begin on the 22nd Monday of the calendar year and shall end on the Saturday of the 11th week thereafter. The third term shall begin on the 36th Monday of the calendar year and shall end on 31 October of each year. The Easter recess shall extend from Good Friday to the Tuesday of Easter week, both days inclusive. The mid-term break during the second term shall consist of the whole of the 6th week.
- (b) For the purpose of the holding of such examinations as may be required at the conclusion of the University year, lectures and laboratory courses shall normally cease about the end of the fifth week of the third term in each year.
- (c) Lecture and laboratory courses in Engineering shall be suspended for the fourth and fifth weeks of the second term and shall end in the seventh week of the third term.

### General Course Provisions

2. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and to the express provisions of any other regulations every candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate course shall be required to:
  - (i) be a matriculated student of the University;
  - (ii) follow the prescribed course of study in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing the course;
  - (iii) carry out the prescribed practical work (if any);
  - (iv) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations;
  - (v) pass the prescribed examinations.
- (b) The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate provided that:
  - (i) the Senate may delegate to the Dean of the Faculty within which the student is enrolled the power to give such approval;
  - (ii) the Senate may in exceptional circumstances approve a personal course of study which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the degree or diploma for which the student is enrolled;
  - (iii) any person who produces evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of inability to attend classes and who wishes to take any paper or papers the equivalent of which is not available by extramural enrolment at Massey University may in exceptional circumstances be permitted to enrol at the University of Auckland with such dispensations and upon such conditions as the Senate thinks fit;
  - (iv) where approval of a personal course of study has been withheld by a decision of the Dean acting under delegation of that power the student may appeal to the Senate against that decision;
  - (v) where options are prescribed for a course of study the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any year; provided always that sufficient options shall be available to enable a candidate to complete his or her course.
- (c) Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number has enrolled for a paper taught in the Department or there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, withdraw that paper for the current year within one week of the beginning of the first Term, if the essential prerequisites for any candidate's course of study are not thereby affected. No candidate shall be charged a fee for any change of course required because of the withdrawal of a paper.

- (d) In relation to the time limit for the presentation of a dissertation, research essay, or thesis, 'academic year' shall in these and all other regulations of the University, unless the context requires otherwise, mean the period from the first day of March in one calendar year to the last day of February in the calendar year next following.
- (e) Except (i) as provided in the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1991 and the Extramural Enrolment requirements and (ii) otherwise with the special permission of the Senate, no student shall enrol or continue to be enrolled at the University of Auckland while enrolled at any other university.

### Eligibility to Enrol

3. (a) Students entitled to enrol at the University of Auckland subject to pre-enrolling and places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include:
  - (i) those previously enrolled whose official record remains at this University;
  - (ii) those who wish to enrol for the first time at a university.
 Each student shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.
- (b) Students who may be permitted by the Senate to enrol at the University of Auckland, subject to pre-enrolling and places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include:
  - (i) those who have failed to make satisfactory academic progress in their university studies under Regulation 9 of these Regulations;
  - (ii) those transferring from another university in New Zealand;
  - (iii) those who wish to enrol to complete the course requirements of another university in New Zealand;
  - (iv) those overseas students granted Admission Ad Eundem Statum with credits; or
  - (v) those overseas students selected for admission at entrance level.
 Each student permitted to enrol shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.

### Enrolment

4. (a) Every internal student shall enrol at the university in person or by mail where such procedures apply before the beginning of the first term in accordance with the detailed enrolment timetable published in this *Calendar*; provided that where the student is by reason of illness or of any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control, unable to enrol in due time, he or she may with the permission of the Senate enrol late without penalty if he or she:
  - (i) applies for that permission on or before 31 January, or as soon as reasonably possible in any case where it is after that date that the student becomes ill or the exceptional circumstances arise; and
  - (ii) produces with the application a medical certificate or reasonable evidence of the exceptional circumstances relied upon.
- (b) Students whose dissertations, research essays, or theses for a degree or diploma are incomplete shall be required to re-enrol at the beginning of each academic year until the dissertation, research essay, or thesis is presented.
- (c) (i) Candidates for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.
- (ii) Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.
- (iii) Candidates for the final year of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate for the commencement of the Trainee Internship year.
- (d) Extramural students shall enrol in accordance with the provision of the Extramural Enrolment Statute and requirements.
- (e) Students who have applied for Ad Eundem Statum Admission, or Special Admission to be eligible to matriculate, and who have not received a decision before the beginning of enrolment week, shall enrol and pay fees as if their application has been granted. If the application is refused they shall be admitted as non-matriculated students to lectures and laboratories only; provided that the enrolment may be cancelled and the fees fully refunded if within fourteen days of the posting to them of notice of refusal they lodge at the Registry an appropriately completed 'Alteration to Course' form.
- (f) Students who were last enrolled at another university in New Zealand and wish to enrol at the University of Auckland may make application in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations:
  - (a) to transfer to the University of Auckland
  - OR
  - (b) to take papers for Certificate of Proficiency to complete a degree or diploma of another New Zealand university.

### Exceptions

5. (a) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for more than two distinct courses of study for degrees and diplomas. A student enrolling for two such courses of study shall be permitted to sit for examination in only two papers or their equivalent more than the maximum allowed in either course of study.
- (b) (i) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for papers the content of which is substantially similar.
- (ii) No student shall be enrolled in any paper already credited to a course of study or in any paper the content of which is substantially similar to any paper for which credit has been received provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may permit such enrolment for Certificate of Proficiency.
- (iii) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) above substantially similar papers are not limited to those that are specifically restricted under any regulations for a course of study.
- (c) Subject to the provisions of the Regulations for any degree or diploma no student shall be enrolled in two stages of a subject in the same year, provided that the Senate may waive this requirement in the case of a student of proven merit.
- (d) Any student who has twice enrolled for, but has failed to be credited with a pass in an optional paper or subject shall not be entitled to enrol again for that paper or subject other than in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate.
- (e) Students who satisfy the Senate that they are unable to attend the full course of study for which they are enrolled may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department concerned, be granted partial exemption from lectures.
6. (a) Each student (except for DipG&O, DipObst, final year MBChB and those able to complete enrolment by mail) shall enrol on the appropriate day and morning or afternoon as set out in the enrolment timetable. Provided that on payment of the prescribed late fee and penalties as Senate may in its discretion impose, an enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed but in no case shall:
  - (i) a student whose home is outside New Zealand be accepted later than the commencement of the second week of lectures, or
  - (ii) a student be accepted for enrolment in a laboratory subject (including the subject Studio in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning and Faculty of Fine Arts) and any subject prescribed for the First, Second or Third Law Examination



- for LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree and any paper in the Faculty of Engineering except with the special permission of the Senate.
- (b) Each student for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics or the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination in that year.
- (c) Each student for the final year for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall enrol by 15 November or such later date as approved by the Senate.

#### Choice of Course of Study

- (d) The courses of study of those enrolled after the date prescribed will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such courses, the Senate will have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at the approved time.

#### PhD Enrolments

- (e) The provisions of this Regulation do not apply to enrolments for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

#### Alterations to Course of Study

##### 7. Additions

Any candidate who has completed enrolment and wishes to add a paper must apply on the appropriate form and obtain the approval of the Head of the relevant Department for any paper which the candidate wishes to enter and thereafter of the Dean of the Faculty for the course of study. Each application must be accompanied by the prescribed fee and submitted to the Registry not later than the date set out in Regulation 11. Late applications may be accepted in exceptional circumstances subject to payment of the prescribed fee. Fees charged are set out in the Fees Regulations.

##### 8. Deletions

Any candidate who has completed enrolment and wishes to delete a paper must apply on the appropriate form and obtain the approval of the Head of the relevant Department of any paper which the candidate wishes to delete and thereafter of the Dean for the Faculty for the course of study. Each such application must be accompanied by the prescribed fee and submitted to the Registry not later than the date set out in Regulation 11. Regulations concerning refund of fees are set out in Regulation 10 of these Regulations. Where a candidate ceases to attend lectures after the date set out in Regulation 11, Regulation 9, relating to Withdrawals, shall apply. The Senate may in its absolute discretion permit a candidate to make a late application to delete a paper after the closing date prescribed in Regulation 11 if the reasons are illness, injury or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control, but not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper finish. A partial refund of fees may also be granted as set out in Regulation 10(c).

##### 9. Withdrawals

Any candidate who ceases to attend lectures after the date set out in Regulation 11 for deleting a paper can submit a "Notification of Withdrawal after Prescribed Date" form to the Registrar not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper finish and the following will apply:

- the paper will remain on the academic record showing the date of withdrawal against the paper concerned
- the fees will remain owing
- the paper will be treated as a failure when calculating Satisfactory Progress under Regulation 14 of these Regulations
- for student allowances purposes the paper will be treated as a failure and the withdrawal will automatically reduce the number of points a candidate is enrolled in.

**Note:** (i) Where a candidate ceases to attend lectures in a paper and fails to complete a "Notification of Withdrawal after Prescribed Date" form the paper will remain on the academic record, show as "Did not sit" and be treated as a failure for all purposes.

(ii) For selection in a limited entry course/paper there is no overall University policy in regard to students whose records include withdrawal/Did not sit. It is important therefore to ask the Dean of the Faculty or Head of the Department concerned for information in this respect.

##### 10. Refund of Fees

For all courses of study:

- where a candidate applies to delete all the papers enrolled in terms of Regulation 8 a full refund of all tuition fees, the Students' Association Fee and the Student Services will be made
- where a candidate applies to delete paper(s) but not all papers enrolled in terms of Regulation 8 a refund of the fees for the paper(s) deleted and the appropriate reduction of the Students' Association Fee will be made but there will be no refund or reduction of the Student Services Fee
- where a candidate has been permitted to delete a paper after the prescribed date because of illness, injury or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control a refund of 50% of tuition fees will be granted provided that the Senate may in its absolute discretion increase this percentage but there will be no refund of the Students' Association Fee or Student Services Fee.

11. The last date for submitting applications for adding papers under Regulation 7 and deleting papers under Regulation 8 are set out below:

- (a) All courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst, and final year of MBChB:

- (i) for papers that are *not* taught over the full academic year:

For papers commencing before 21 June ..... 12 March

For papers commencing after 21 June ..... 2 July

- (ii) For Full year papers ..... 19 March

**Note:** To identify papers that are not full year refer to the Lecture and Laboratory Timetables in this *Calendar*.

- (b) BE and ME

For papers commencing before 12 July ..... 12 March

For papers commencing after 12 July ..... 23 July

- (c) MTaxS, MBA and DipBus

For papers commencing 1 February ..... 12 February

For papers commencing 17 May ..... 28 May

For papers commencing 30 August ..... 10 September

- (d) Dip G&O and DipObst

1 April for June examinations or 1 October for December examinations

- (e) Final year for MBChB

15 December in the year of enrolment

**Note:** (i) It is not sufficient to notify an addition or deletion solely to the Department. An Alteration to Course form must be handed in to the Registry and the appropriate fees paid before this will be effected.

(ii) Charges for fees owing will be made as follows:

(a) Fees for altering papers and any fines for late applications will be charged when the application is submitted to the Registry.

(b) A Fees Invoice will be issued to candidates owing tuition or other fees eg Students Association, departmental fees, for papers being added. These fees must be paid by the date shown on the Fees Invoice

**Non-Matriculated Students**

12. Admission to lectures or laboratories may be granted to non-matriculated students provided they comply with all other Regulations governing admission. The Council may from time to time restrict entry of non-matriculated students to one or more subjects by reason of shortage of accommodation or other special circumstances.

**Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress**

13. (a) This Regulation shall apply to all courses of study at the University of Auckland unless otherwise specified in the particular regulations for degrees and diplomas printed elsewhere in this *Calendar*.  
 (b) This Regulation shall also apply to a student intending to transfer to the University of Auckland from any other New Zealand University.  
 (c) For the purpose of this Regulation, and for any student, 'a year of university studies' means a year in which a student has enrolled and has not deleted enrolment by the date prescribed under Alterations to Course of Study, and a 'minimum full-time programme' is as defined under Definitions of Full-time Study 1992.

**Note:** Withdrawals after the dates prescribed for deletions in the schedule to Regulation 7 (and as specified in Note (c) to that Regulation) still constitute 'a year of university studies' for the purpose of this Regulation.

**Requirements for Satisfactory Progress****Full-time Students**

- (d) A full-time student is required to have passed, in the last two years of university studies, at least the equivalent of one year's minimum full-time programme.  
 (e) A full-time student is required to have passed in the last year of university studies at least the equivalent of half of one year's minimum full-time programme.

**Note:** Refer to Definitions of Full-Time Study 1993 in this *Calendar*.

**Part-time Students**

- (f) A part-time student is required to have passed in the last two years of university studies at least the equivalent of half of his or her total enrolment.  
 (g) A part-time student is required to have passed in the last year of university studies at least the equivalent of half of his or her enrolment.

**Note:** To calculate the weighting of an 'enrolment' or 'total enrolment' reference should be made to Definitions of Full-Time Study 1993.

**Failure to Make Satisfactory Progress**

- (h) In the event of failure to meet the requirements of either clause (d) or clause (f) of this Regulation a student shall be suspended for one academic year from enrolment at the University of Auckland and will then require the prior permission of the Senate to enrol. When applying for permission to enrol after the period of suspension or an equivalent period the student will need to satisfy the Senate that, as a result of study or other appropriate activity in the intervening period, there is a reasonable chance of success in subsequent studies at this University. On consideration of such an application the Senate may  
 (i) grant a student permission to enrol with such conditions as it thinks fit;  
 (ii) suspend the student from enrolment at the University of Auckland for one further academic year;  
 (iii) decline enrolment at the University of Auckland.

Application must be made in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations.

- (i) In the event of failure to meet the requirement of either clause (e) or clause (g) of this Regulation a student will be Restricted in the next year of study at the University of Auckland to no more than a minimum full-time programme.  
 (j) If the failure to meet the requirements of any of clauses (d) (e) (f) or (g) of this Regulation is considered to be due to medical or other exceptional circumstances, or where a significant improvement in academic progress has been shown in the second of the last two years of the university studies, a student may apply to the Senate for Special Consideration in respect of the Suspension under clause (h) or the Restriction under clause (i) of this Regulation.

Such an application must:

- (i) be made on the appropriate Pre-enrolment Application Form and be accompanied by the prescribed fee;  
 (ii) include evidence if Special Consideration is sought for medical or other exceptional reasons;  
 (iii) state the programme in which the student intends to enrol should the application be successful;  
 (iv) reach the Registrar, The University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland by the prescribed deadline.  
 (k) Any student declined enrolment at this University under clause (h) (iii) of this Regulation may within fourteen days appeal to the Council against the decision of the Senate.  
 (l) Provided that the student is enrolled for no other paper or papers, this Regulation shall not apply to a student enrolling for any one of: case study, dissertation, original investigation, practicum, thesis or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

**Note:** Late applications under this Regulation will be considered only in exceptional circumstances.

**Cross-Credits**

14. (a) In this Regulation cross-credits means papers or subjects which:

- (i) are common to two or more courses of study;  
 (ii) have been passed by a candidate for the purpose of one of those courses of study; and  
 (iii) the candidate desires to transfer to another of those courses of study.  
 (b) A candidate may, on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations, transfer to the course of study for any degree or diploma named or referred to in the left hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation cross-credits as shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to in the right hand column of that Schedule (subject to any other provisions of this Regulation and the relevant Degree or Diploma Regulations).  
 (c) No Stage III paper that fulfils the Stage III requirements of a course of study may be cross-credited to meet the Stage III requirement of another course of study, e.g. Stage III Maths credits passed as the only Stage III credits for BSc, could not be credited to BA unless three other Stage III papers were passed for the BA course of study.  
 (d) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject passed with a conceded pass or restricted pass; and if that paper or subject is compulsory any other paper or subject may be substituted for it as the Senate may approve.  
 (e) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject already so transferred under this Regulation.  
 (f) In any case where an application for the transfer of cross-credits:  
 (i) is not otherwise covered by this Regulation or not covered by special provisions made elsewhere in the Regulations of the University, or  
 (ii) is subject to any doubt or difficulty in the interpretation of these or any other Regulations of the University - the Vice-Chancellor may approve any such transfer of credit, or give any such direction in relation to the application, as he thinks fit.

---

**Schedule**


---

**Architecture Property and Planning**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) Degree of Bachelor of Architecture             | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |
| (ii) Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |
| (iii) Degree of Bachelor of Planning               | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |
- 

**Arts**

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (iv) Degree of Bachelor of Arts | Not more than seven papers. |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
- 

**Commerce**

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (v) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce | Not more than eight papers. |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
- 

**Education**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (vi) Degree of Bachelor of Education | Not more than seven University papers.<br>No papers from BEd Schedule B may be cross credited. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
- 

**Music**

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (vii) Degree of Bachelor of Music                | Not more than seven papers. |
| (viii) Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) | Not more than seven papers. |
- 

**Science**

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (ix) Degree of Bachelor of Science  | Not more than 36 credits. |
| (x) Degree of Bachelor of Optometry | Not more than 42 credits. |
- 

**Joint Board - Theology**

- |                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (xi) Degree of Bachelor of Theology | Not more than seven papers |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
- 

**Other Degrees and Diplomas**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (xii) Any Bachelors degree other than those named above                                  | Not more than six papers or three subjects.                       |
| (xiii) Any diploma other than the Diploma in Business or the Diploma in Computer Science | Not more than one-third of the paper requirements of the diploma. |

**Note:** (i) in the case of Master's degrees no cross-credits are available, except where the course Regulations so provide.

(ii) A student taking two courses of study may be permitted to transfer as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one course or the other but not for both.

**Credit**

15. (a) A candidate may with the approval of the Senate and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations be granted towards a degree or diploma named or referred to in the left-hand column of the Schedule of this Regulation, credit not exceeding that shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to, in the right-hand column of that Schedule.
- (b) No candidate may be granted credit for work already so credited under this Regulation.

---

**Schedule**


---

**Arts****(i) Degree of Bachelor of Arts**

- (a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1977 a three-year full-time division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.
- (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1978 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5, the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.
- (c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three year Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland

Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a two year full-time Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

- (d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5 the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.
- (e) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.
- (f) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a two-year full-time course in Division E at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.
- (g) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two papers to count as one unspecified Stage I subject.
- (h) For a student who has in or after 1984 successfully completed Studio I for the BFA Degree but is not continuing with that degree, two papers to count as papers in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.
- (i) For a student who has successfully completed the course for the Diploma in Physiotherapy, Auckland Institute of Technology only, or the Diploma in Nursing at one of the following institutions in or after 1985: Auckland Institute of Technology  
Carrington Polytechnic  
Manukau Polytechnic  
Northland Polytechnic  
four Stage I and two Stage II papers to count as papers in two unspecified subjects in Group B of the BA Schedule.
- (j) For a student who has in or after 1988 passed the subject Legal System for LLB but is not continuing with the Degree, one paper to count as a paper in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.
- (k) For a student who has in or after 1989 passed the subject Introduction to Property for the Intermediate Examination for the BPA Degree but is not continuing with the Degree, one paper to count as a paper in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

**Commerce**  
(ii) Degree of  
Bachelor  
of Commerce

- (a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for Certificate in Personnel Management of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade of B or higher or two unspecified Stage I Papers.
- (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.
- (c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than one unspecified paper to count as an elective paper. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education three elective papers for the three-year Division B course, or two elective papers for the two-year Division B course.
- (d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.
- (e) For a student who has successfully completed the course for the Diploma in Physiotherapy, Auckland Institute of Technology only, or the course for the Diploma of Nursing at one of the following institutions in or after 1985: Auckland Institute of Technology  
Carrington Polytechnic  
Manukau Polytechnic  
Northland Polytechnic  
not more than four Stage I and two Stage II unspecified elective papers.

**Education**  
(iii) Degree of  
Bachelor of  
Education

For a student who has successfully completed a three year full-time course at a Teachers' College in New Zealand, in or after 1974, fourteen papers in Schedule B prescribed for this Degree.

**Fine Arts**  
(iv) Degree of  
Bachelor of  
Fine Arts

- (a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three year full-time course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified Stage I papers which shall not be credited in lieu of the required Stage I papers in Art History.
- (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, not more than one unspecified Stage I paper which shall not be credited in lieu of either of the required Stage I papers in Art History.

- (c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, not more than one unspecified Stage I paper which shall not be credited in lieu of either of the required Stage I papers in Art History.

**Law**  
(v) Degree of  
Bachelor of Laws

For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Criminology of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two unspecified papers.

**Music**  
(vi) Degree of  
Bachelor of Music

- (a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division A course at Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified papers (not being a paper in music) in lieu of the BA papers prescribed for the Degree. For a student specialising in music in the above three-year course, a further two unspecified Stage I papers.
- (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.
- (c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.

**Science**  
(vii) Degree of  
Bachelor of Science

- (a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 and up to and including 1980 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I Science credits.
- (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I Science credits.
- (c) For a student who has successfully completed any other approved three-year course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, 12 unspecified Stage I credits. For any other approved two-year course under the same authority, 8 unspecified Stage I Science credits.

**Note:** The progress of students granted credit for Certificate Courses of the Centre for Continuing Education will be reviewed following their first year of study after the granting of the credit.

**Exemptions**

16. (a) A candidate for a degree or diploma, who has passed in a paper or subject not prescribed for that degree or diploma but the same as or substantially equivalent to a paper or subject so prescribed, may at the discretion of the Senate be exempt from that prescribed paper or subject; subject, however, to the provisions of any other regulation.
- (b) A candidate exempted either under this or any other regulation for a paper or subject shall pay the prescribed fee under the Fees Regulations to be exempted from that paper or subject.
17. Except as permitted by Regulation 10 of these Regulations or by the regulations for any particular course of study, no candidate may be granted in all more than one-third of the paper requirements of a course of study as cross-credits, credit, or exemptions.

**Abandonments**

18. A student may apply on the appropriate form and on payment of the prescribed fee to abandon papers credited to one course of study and have them credited to another course of study.

**Completion of Degree or Diploma at Another University**

19. A student who leaves the University of Auckland district either to reside in another university district within New Zealand or to reside overseas, and who has passed for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland such part of the work as the Senate may from time to time determine to be the major part of the work for that degree or diploma may make application on the prescribed form not later than 10 January to complete that degree or diploma by taking appropriate examinations at another university and may, with like approval be granted credits under these Regulations for such examinations.

**Note:** (i) Applications must be made on the appropriate form and submitted not later than 10 January with a prescribed fee for papers taken at an overseas university or for papers taken at another New Zealand university.

(ii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee after 10 January.

**Additional Lectures**

20. A student while pursuing a course of study in the University may with the approval of the Dean of the appropriate Faculty, after consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned, take lectures in a subject which he or she is not offering for examination without payment of fee for the course provided that this facility shall be granted only where the additional lectures would be useful in supplementing the student's course of study.

**Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

21. (a) The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he shall think fit for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his satisfaction:
- (i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a course of study or in examination requirements has caused a candidate hardship; or
- (ii) that official advice has been given in writing and acted upon, and it is later found that a candidate's course of study is not in accordance with the governing regulations and hardship would be caused if the candidate were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.
- (b) Where a candidate for a Master's degree or Bachelor of Science (Honours) Degree writes a script outside the prescribed time for the examination, the Vice-Chancellor shall have power to:
- (i) admit or reject the script as part of the examination;
- (ii) authorise the Head of Department to conduct an oral examination, and the Head of the Department where appropriate and if necessary, shall submit a mark based on the year's work and the oral examination.
- (c) A candidate may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within fourteen (14) days of being notified of the decision. Council shall have the power to make such provision as it may think fit. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

## THE LIMITATION OF ENTRY STATUTE 1991

At the University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991. Pursuant to Section 224 of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of the University of Auckland hereby makes the following Statute:

1. (a) This statute may be cited as the Limitations on Enrolments Statute 1991.  
(b) This statute shall come into force on the first day of January 1991.
2. Where the Council is satisfied that it is necessary to do so because:
  - (i) students cannot be allocated places in appropriate lecture rooms or laboratories at times when they can reasonably be expected to attend, or
  - (ii) the number of teaching staff does not ensure all students expected to seek a place in a particular faculty, department, course or class of study can be adequately taught there shall be deemed to be an insufficiency of accommodation or of staff.
3. The maximum number of students that may be enrolled in any such faculty, department, course or class shall be determined by the Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from the Senate and shall be published in a schedule to this Statute.
4. In determining such maximum number of students the Council may, after securing a recommendation from the Senate:
  - (a) prescribe academic standards to be achieved as a prerequisite for enrolment in any such faculty, department, course or class and
  - (b) prescribe other criteria for selection of students to be permitted enrolment in any such faculty, department, class or course.
5. The Limitation of Entry Statute 1985 is hereby repealed.

## ENROLMENT LIMITATIONS 1993

### Limited Entry Courses of Study and Papers

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain courses of study or papers at the University in 1993.

#### Approved limitations

Applications for a place in any of the Limited Entry Courses or Papers specified in parts A and/or B of the Schedule below must be made on the Pre-enrolment Application Form (PAF) in accordance with the requirements set down on that form.

Unless otherwise specified in the notes column below, the closing dates for applications are:

**9 December 1992** For all applicants who did not attend the University of Auckland in 1992.

**8 January 1993** For all applicants who attended the University of Auckland in 1992.

Applications received after the specified application closing date will be given last priority in consideration for a place in a limited entry paper and/or course.

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Course	Approved Limit	Notes
<b>(A) Limited Entry Courses of Study (Admission by Selection)</b>			
Architecture Property and Planning	BArch (First Examination)	75	
	(Second Examination)	80	
	BProp (First Examination)	50	
	(Second Examination)	50	
	BPlan (First Examination)	25	
	(Second Examination)	40	(20 places for graduates)
Arts	DipDrama	16	
	DipELT	24	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	DipBrC	6	Apply by 30 Nov for the following year
	DipPolNewsMed	5	Apply by 30 Nov for the following year
	DipProfEthics	20	Apply by 14 Dec for the following year
	Geography Masters total	60	
	Psychology Masters total	40	
Commerce	BCom Part I (for the first time)	900	See Student Guide for guidance on selection levels
	DipCom (for the first time)	50	
	MCom/MPhil/MA (for the first time):		
	Accounting and Finance	20	
	Economics	20	
	Management Science & Information Systems	20	
	Management Studies & Labour Relations	20	
	Marketing & International Business	20	
	MBA (Executive) (for the first time)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	MBA (Management) (for the first time)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (Marketing) (for the first time)	120	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (Engineering Management)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (Finance) (for the first time)	45	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (InfoScience) (for the first time)	80	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (Maori Development)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (Operations Management) (for the first time)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Course	Approved Limit	Notes
Education	DipBus(PMER) (for the first time)	40	Apply by 15 Oct for the following year
	DipBus (each Paper 1 Stream)	40	
	DipGuid II	15	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	DipSpecEd	20	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
Engineering	BE First Year	220	See Student Guide for guidance on selection levels
	Chem&Mat/Met&Mat	35	
	Civil	60	
	Elect	75	
	EngSc	20	
	Mech	60	
	Mining	15	
	BE Second Year	300	Apply by 9 Dec for the following year
	Chem&Mat/Met&Mat	45	
	Civil	70	
	Elect	90	
	EngSc	25	
	Mech	75	
	Mining	20	
	DipGeothermTech	30	1 Aug (Overseas Students) for the following year
	DipPulpPaper	10	Apply as advised by the Head of the Department of Chem&MatEng
Fine Arts	BFA - Studio I	100	Apply by 31 Oct for the following year
	MFA/MPhil (for the first time)	25	Apply by 31 Oct for the following year
Law	LawInt (Paper 25.103)	425	See Student Guide for guidance on selection levels
	First Law for LLB	270	Apply by 30 Nov for the following year See Student Guide for guidance on selection levels
Medicine	BHB	115	Apply by 1 Oct for the following year See Student Guide for guidance on selection levels
	MAud	10	Apply by 9 Dec for the following year
	DipPH	-	Apply by 1 Oct for the following year
Music	BMus(Perf) or DipMus	35	Apply by 30 Jun for the following year
	BMus & BA (advancing in Music)	25	
	Masters	12	
Science	BTech (Optoelectronics)	25	Taught at Tamaki Campus Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	BTech (Information Technology)	50	
	MSc Environmental Science	20	
	MSc, MA (Geography)	60	
	BOptom Part I	20	
	Psychology Masters (Year I)	40	
	PGDipClinPsych Year I	8	
	Biological Sciences PhD/MSc/BSc(Hons)	130	

**(B) Limited Entry Papers (Admission by Selection)**

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
<b>Architecture Property Planning</b>	See Under Part (A) of this Schedule		
<b>Arts</b>			
	Ancient History	12.100	200
		12.102	200
		12.103	200
		12.104	160
	Anthropology	03.100	800
		03.101	800
		03.102	800
		Also taught as 04.101	

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
	03.103	130	Also taught as 28.114
	03.209	30	Also taught as 28.214
	03.320	20	
	03.326	30	
	03.327	20	
	03.340	15	Apply by 30 Nov for the following year
	03.342	20	
Art History	19.151	350	
	19.153	250	
	19.154	250	
	19.155	250	
	19.156	250	
	19.259	110	
	19.260	110	
	19.262	110	
	All Stage III papers	35 each	
	All Masters papers	9 each	
Asian Geography	20.130	100	
Asian History	24.130	90	
	24.132	54	
	24.133	72	
Asian Studies	97.100	70	Also taught as 48.102 - Chinese
	97.102	80	Also taught as 48.105 - Chinese
	97.103	70	Also taught as 48.106 - Chinese
	97.120	70	Also taught as 80.103 - Indonesian
	97.121	70	Also taught as 80.104 - Indonesian
	97.122	70	Also taught as 80.105 - Indonesian
	97.140	60	Also taught as 81.102 - Japanese
	97.141	60	Also taught as 81.103 - Japanese
	97.160	70	Also taught as 449.102 - Korean
Chinese	48.100	80	
	48.101	80	
	48.102	70	Also taught as 97.100
	48.105	80	Also taught as 97.102
	48.106	70	Also taught as 97.103
	48.107	60	
Dutch	421.100	50	
	421.102	70	
Economics	13.100	400	For course of study other than BCom
	13.101	400	For course of study other than BCom
Education	14.100	750	
	14.101	750	
	14.305	40	
	14.310	50	
English	18.100	350	
	18.101	560	
	18.103	480	
	18.104	255	
	18.105	235	
	T18.106	120	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T18.107	120	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	18.113	65	Taught at Auckland College of Education
	18.115	65	Taught at Auckland College of Education
	18.250	30	
	18.328	12	
Film & Television Studies	85.200	160	
French	34.100	180	
	34.101	110	
	34.151	total 100	
	34.152 }		



Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
Geography	See listing under Faculty of Science		
German	22.100	90	
	22.101	100	
	22.102	70	
	22.103	90	
	22.105	90	
Greek	10.100	50	
	10.102	50	
History	24.100	288	
	24.101	234	
	24.105	198	
	24.107	144	
	24.122	216	
	24.123	216	
	24.140	234	
	T24.150	60	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T24.151	60	Taught at Tamaki Campus
Indonesian	80.100	50	
	80.101	50	
	80.103	70	Also taught as 97.120
	80.104	70	Also taught as 97.121
	80.105	70	Also taught as 97.122
	80.106	50	
Italian	35.104	15	
	35.106	total 230	
	35.107 }		
	35.110	50	
	35.322/35.402	15 in total	
Japanese	81.100 }	total 150	
	81.101 }		
	T81.100 }	total 50	
	T81.101 }		Taught at Tamaki Campus
	81.102	60	Also taught as 97.140
	81.103	60	Also taught as 97.141
Korean	449.100	50	
	449.101	50	
	449.102	70	Also taught as 97.160
Latin	09.100	50	
	09.102	50	
Linguistics	83.102	100	
	83.104	100	
Management Studies and Labour Relations	72.101	350	For courses other than BCom
Maori Studies	04.101	800	Also taught as 03.102
	N04.101	50	Taught at Northland Polytechnic
	T04.101	50	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	04.106	300	
	04.107	300	
	04.109	300	
	04.110	300	
	04.111	300	
	04.112	100	
	04.113	200	
	N04.203	50	Taught at Northland Polytechnic
Mathematics and Statistics	See listing under Faculty of Science		
Music	28.104	150	
	28.105	90	
	28.106	150	
	28.113	150	
	28.114	130	Also taught as 03.103

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
	28.214	30	Also taught as 03.209
Pacific Studies	79.100	220	
Philosophy	29.100	420	
	29.101	280	
	29.104	420	
Political Studies	30.106	270	
	30.107	360	
	30.109	250	
	30.110	220	
	T30.111	150	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T30.112	150	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	30.400-20	20	per paper
	30.422	6	
	30.423-4	20	per paper
Psychology	See listing under Faculty of Science		
Russian	43.100	total 53	
	43.101		
	43.111		
	43.112		
	43.113		
Samoan	478.100	80	
	478.101	100	
Scandinavian Studies	46.100	25	
	46.101	70	
	46.102	25	
Sociology	82.100	700	
	82.101	700	
	82.102	200	
	82.104	50	Taught at Manukau Polytechnic
Spanish	45.103	60	
	45.104	total 190	
	45.105		
	45.107	total 40	
	45.108		
	45.200	total 100	
	45.208		
	45.300	total 75	
	45.308		
Women's Studies	488.100	150	
	488.101	150	
<b>Commerce</b>	See Under Commerce Part A of this Schedule for BCom limits. The following quotas are reserved as indicated:		
Accounting and Finance	01.104	300	For courses other than BCom
	T01.104	100	For courses other than BCom. Taught at Tamaki Campus
Commercial Law	02.100	50	For courses other than BCom
	T02.100	20	For courses other than BCom. Taught at Tamaki Campus
Economics	13.100	400	For courses other than BCom
	T13.100	50	For courses other than BCom. Taught at Tamaki Campus
	13.101	400	For courses other than BCom
	T13.101	50	For courses other than BCom. Taught at Tamaki Campus
Management Studies and Labour Relations	72.101	350	For courses other than BCom
	T72.101	100	For courses other than BCom. Taught at Tamaki Campus
Accounting and	Limits will also apply to the following advanced level papers:		
	01.302	200	

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
Finance	01.480	12	
	01.481	12	
Commercial Law	02.400 - 02.416	12	per paper
	Except 02.405	15	
Management Studies and Labour Relations	72.305	35	For BCom
	72.314	35	For BCom
Management Science and Information Systems	74.301	30	For BCom
	74.321	50	For BCom
<b>Education</b>	14.410	18	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	14.418	15	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	14.451	12	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	14.452	12	Apply by 30 Oct for the following year
	14.454	12	Apply by 16 Nov for the following year
	14.455	12	Apply by 16 Nov for the following year
	14.456	12	Apply by 16 Nov for the following year
	14.457	12	Apply by 9 Dec for the following year
<b>Engineering</b>	See Under Engineering in Part A of this Schedule		
<b>Fine Arts</b>	See Under Fine Arts in Part A of this Schedule		
<b>Law</b> LLB(Hons)	See Under Law in Part A of this Schedule		
	Seminar papers	15	per paper
<b>Medicine</b>	See Under Medicine in Part A of this Schedule		
<b>Music</b>	28.106	150	
	28.113	150	
	28.114	130	Also taught as 03.103
	28.210	12	
	28.214	30	Also taught as 03.209
	28.215	20	
	28.216	20	
	28.218	20	
	28.310	8	
	28.316	8	
	28.318	5	
<b>Science</b>			
Biochemistry	66.202	100	
	66.203	50	
	66.301	30	
	66.302	30	
Botany	39.101	640	
	06.102	320	
	06.250	72	
	06.251	72	
	06.252	72	
	06.313	24	
	06.326	24	
	06.334	24	
	06.335	24	
	06.341	24	
	06.361	24	
	06.371	24	
Cellular & Molecular Biology	40.303	48	
	40.304	30	
	40.305	30	
Chemistry	08.111	1025	
	08.121	1025	
	T08.170	60	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	08.230	135	
	08.330	65	
	08.331	65	
Computer Science	07.100	450	

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
	07.105	550	
	07.111	500	
	T07.115	210	(Includes BTech, BSc, BCom, BA) Taught at Tamaki Campus
Environmental Science	64.401	10	
Geography	20.101	400	
	T20.101	240	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	20.102	400	
	T20.102	240	Taught at Tamaki Campus
Geology	T21.108	50	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	21.110	200	
	21.111	240	
	21.112	200	
	21.200	45	
	21.211	40	
	21.212	40	
	21.213	40	
	21.215	40	
Mathematics and Statistics	26.101	total 600	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	26.102		
	T26.101		
	T26.107	total 300	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T26.108		
	26.120	total 1100	
	26.121		
	26.140	total 1250	
	26.141		
	26.142		
	26.165		
	T26.165	400	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	26.175	100	
	26.175	200	
	26.180	400	
	26.181	total 1500	
	26.182		
	T26.187	total 500	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T26.188		
	26.200	20	
	T26.208	100	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T26.288	100	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T26.293	100	Taught at Tamaki Campus
Pharmacology	96.301	32	
	96.302	32	
Physics	31.101	120	
	31.102	120	
	31.114	320	
	T31.122	100	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T31.132	100	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	31.140	560	
	31.150	580	
Physiology	67.201	140	
	67.301	32	
	67.302	32	
	67.303	32	
Psychology	32.108	840	
	32.109	650	
	32.118	200	
	T32.128	240	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	T32.129	240	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	32.220	175	
	32.230	240	
	32.240	300	
	32.250	150	
	32.305	50	
	32.314	40	
	32.403	14	

Faculty/Subject	Limited Entry Paper	Approved Limit	Notes
	32.408	12	
	32.409	12	
	32.421	28	
	32.422	8	
	32.424	12	
	32.426	12	
	32.427	12	
	32.428	6	
Science Communication	T701.101	60	Taught at Tamaki Campus
Zoology	38.102	550	
	39.103	360	
	T39.103	60	Taught at Tamaki Campus
	38.207	120	
	38.250	150	
	38.251	120	
	38.252	150	
	38.303	48	
	38.305	43	
	38.310	36	
	38.315	40	
	38.316	48	
	38.317	30	
	38.319	24	
	38.320	48	
	39.311	24	
	39.314	100	Shown as 38.314 in <i>Student Guide 1993</i>

**(C) Other Limits**

The following papers are not available for Courses of Study other than BCom or DipCom except with the specific approval of the Head of Department concerned and subject to compliance with appropriate course regulations.

Accounting and Finance	All stage I papers except 01.104 All Stage II and Stage III papers
Commercial Law	All Stage II and Stage III papers
Management Science & Information Systems	All papers
Marketing & International Business	All papers

## ENROLMENT 1993

- To facilitate enrolment ALL students are required to complete a Pre-enrolment Application Form. For 1993 there are three slightly different Pre-enrolment Application Forms. They are:
  - PAF 1A For all students who have not previously enrolled at any New Zealand university.
  - PAF 1B For students who are transferring from another New Zealand university or whose last enrolment was at the University of Auckland before 1992.
  - PAF 1C For students who were enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992. (This form will be sent to the appropriate students with the 1992 examination results).
- Pre-enrolment Application Forms are available from the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92 019, Auckland or at the Enquiries Office, Registry Building, 24 Princes Street.
- For 1993 there are some important deadline dates by which Pre-enrolment Application Forms must be received at the Registry:
  - (a) 9 December 1992 — for Provisional Entrance applications
  - (b) 9 December 1992 — PAF 1A and PAF 1B submission deadline for *all* students who were *not* enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992
  - (c) 8 January 1993 — PAF 1C submission deadline for all students who were enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1992.
- In addition to completing the Pre-enrolment Application Form all students must complete their enrolment by attending in person at the University, or by mail where such procedures apply, in accordance with the enrolment timetable. Students failing to enrol in accordance with the Timetable may forfeit their place or be charged with late penalties in full.

Note: Early enrolment is not permitted.

Notes:

### 1. Admission Ad Eundem Statum

#### (a) Students From Other New Zealand Universities Wishing to Transfer to the University of Auckland

Students from other New Zealand Universities wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland are required to apply to transfer. Applications must be made on the Pre-enrolment Application Form and submitted with the prescribed fee (see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*) to the Registrar not later than 9 December or any such earlier date as specified in the Enrolment Limitations. Applications received after the specified closing dates will be given last priority in consideration for places in limited entry courses and/or papers. Additionally, applications received after 8 January 1993 will incur a late fee (see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*).

#### (b) Students From Overseas Requiring a Study Permit

- (i) Overseas students from South Pacific countries seeking admission at entrance level should apply to the New Zealand Vice-Chancellor's Committee, P.O. Box 11915, Manners Street, Wellington.
- (ii) Overseas students from countries outside the South Pacific and *all* students applying for postgraduate courses of study must apply to the University for admission. Enquiries and applications should be addressed to the Overseas Students Unit.

**2. Special Admission**

Students are referred to Regulation 9 of the Admission Regulations and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

**3. Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress**

Students are referred to Regulation 9 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

**4. Student Advice**

A Student Advice Centre in the Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street, will be open as follows: 30 November - 9 December 1992, 4-8 January 1993, 18-26 February 1993 (in each case, weekdays only from 9am to 5pm).

**5. Penalties****(a) Late Pre-enrolment, Late Enrolment, Late Additions or Deletions to Courses**

Students are referred to Penalties under the Fees Regulations for applications for late submission of the Pre-enrolment Application Form and late enrolment. For late additions or deletions of courses refer to Regulation 8 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**(b) Choice of Course**

The course of study of a student making a late enrolment will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with that proposed by the student concerned. In determining the student's course the Senate will have regard to prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of students who have enrolled in accordance with the enrolment timetable.

**6. Refund of Fees**

Students are referred to Regulation 8 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

## ENROLMENT TIMETABLE 1993

**General Information**

Enrolment is during the hours of 9.00 am to 4.45 pm, Thursday 18 February and Friday 19 February; Monday 22 to Friday 26 February 1993 in accordance with the timetable below.

Students enrolling for the first time at a university should bring their UE, HSC, 6th Form Certificate, Provisional Entrance, Bursary or Scholarship results or evidence of admission ad eundem statum at entrance level, (unless already submitted with the Pre-enrolment Application Form). Any students who have changed name since last enrolment should produce evidence e.g. marriage certificate, deedpoll, unless already submitted with Pre-enrolment Application Form. In the case of students eligible to enrol by mail, all documents will have been supplied and checked during pre-enrolment. Students enrolling in more than one Faculty should note that they must complete only one Enrolment Form.

All students who have pre-enrolled by the specified closing dates will receive advice from the University in February in the form of either an Enrolment Form or a Fees Invoice. In either case detailed instructions will be included on how to complete enrolment.

Students who have not received any advice in the mail should go to the Pre-enrolment Centre, Commerce "A" Block, 16 or 17 February or during the enrolment period.

Students who receive a Fees Invoice in the mail may pay this invoice either upon receipt or AT THE LATEST during the enrolment period on the day specified for their degree/diploma in the Enrolment Timetable. Any students wishing to make a change to their course of study after receipt of a Fees Invoice may ONLY DO SO during the official enrolment period and on the day specified for their degree and name in the timetable.

First year BA or BSc students who have received an Enrolment Form with all papers "Approved" must enrol on 18/19 February in accordance with the timetable below. First year BA or BSc students who do not have all their papers for a full time or part time course of study "Approved" should enrol in the week beginning 22 February in accordance with the timetable below. For the definition of an "Approved" paper please see section 3.4.4 in Student Guide. All other BA or BSc students must enrol according to the timetable below.

Students who are unable to complete their enrolment on the day specified for their degree and name in the official enrolment timetable should obtain from the Registry Inquiries counter, 22 Princes Street an "Application for Late Enrolment" and should also contact all departments in which they intend to enrol, asking them to reserve their place.

Students who have difficulty completing enrolment due to disability should write to The Disabled Students Resource Officer, AUSA no later than 8 January, giving their name, address, telephone number, details of their disability, assistance required and the papers and course in which they have pre-enrolled.

Students who decide not to enrol at the University of Auckland in 1992 should advise the Enrolment Co-ordinator, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland, in writing quoting full name, date of birth and ID number, or by returning their Enrolment Form or Fees Invoice crossed out. Their place can then be given to a student on the waiting list.

### ENROLMENT IS NOT COMPLETED UNTIL ALL FEES ARE PAID OFFICIAL ENROLLING HOURS ARE 9.00AM TO 4.45PM

**Note:** Enrolments for all courses and papers, including those taught at Tamaki Campus, are conducted on the Main Campus.

			Initial of Surname	
			am	pm
<b>ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING</b>				
First Year for BArch, BPlan and BProp .....	19	Friday	A-K	L-Z
BArch, BPlan, BProp (other than First Year) .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
MArch, MPlan, MProp, MBldgSc, MPhil, COP .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
NZIA/AERB Special, PGDipBldgSc, PhD .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z

## ARTS

**(i) STUDENTS WHO HAVE NOT PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:**

BA and COP papers (if 'Approved' into all papers applied for on the

Pre-enrolment Application Form) .....	18	Thursday	A-G	H-O
.....	19	Friday	P-S	T-Z

BA and COP papers (if NOT 'Approved' into all papers applied for on the

Pre-enrolment Application Form) .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
---------------------------------------	----	--------	-----	-----

			Initial of Surname am pm	
BA/BCom .....	18	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
(ii) STUDENTS WHO HAVE PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:				
BA and COP papers EXCEPT for those listed below under "OTHERS" .....	19	Friday	A-B	C
.....	22	Monday	D-G	H-J
.....	23	Tuesday	K-M	N-P
.....	24	Wednesday	Q-S	T-Z
OTHERS:				
BA/BCom; BA with Accounting papers, Management Studies & Labour Relations papers .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
BA/LLB; BA with LAW papers .....	24	Wednesday	A-K	L-Z
BA with SCIENCE papers (BA schedule Group B) .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
MA, MLitt, MPhil, PhD, DipArts, DipArtsAdmin, DipBrC, DipDrama, DipELT, DipLabourStudies ...	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
DipLGA, DipPerformArts, DipPolNewsMed, DipProfEthics, PGDipArts, PGDipSocRes, PGDipTrans	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z

## EDUCATION

First Year for BEd .....	19	Friday	A-K	L-Z
BEd (other than First Year) .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
MEd, PhD, DipEdPsych, DipGuid, DipSpecEd .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z

## JOINT BOARD OF STUDIES (THEOLOGY)

BTheol .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
--------------	----	--------	-----	-----

## COMMERCE

(i) STUDENTS WHO HAVE NOT PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:				
BCom Part 1 (for Main Campus), BCom/BA, BCom/BSc, BCom/LawInt .....	18	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
BCom Part 1 (for Tamaki Campus) .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z

(ii) STUDENTS WHO HAVE PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:				
BCom, BCom(Hons), EXCEPT for those listed under "OTHERS" .....	24	Wednesday	A-D	E-K
.....	25	Thursday	L-P	Q-Z

OTHERS:				
BCom (for Tamaki Campus) .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
BCom/BA; BCom with ARTS papers .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
BCom/BSc; BCom with SCIENCE papers (including Computer Science & Mathematics) .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
BCom/LLB; BCom with LAW papers .....	24	Wednesday	A-K	L-Z

MCom, MComLaw, MPhil, MTaxS, PhD .....	25	Thursday	A-Z	
--	----	----------	-----	--

DipCom and COP papers .....	26	Friday	A-Z	
-----------------------------	----	--------	-----	--

## GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS:

MBA Year 1 students enrol Thursday 21 January

MBA students (other than Year 1) enrol Friday 22 January

DipBus Year 1 students enrol Tuesday 26 to Thursday 28 January inclusive

DipBus students (other than Year 1) enrol Monday 18 January and Tuesday 19 January

## ENGINEERING

First year for BE .....	19	Friday	A-K	L-Z
BE (other than First year) .....	25	Thursday	A-D	E-K
.....	26	Friday	L-P	Q-Z
ME, MPhil, PhD, COP, CertGeothermTech, DipGeothermTech .....	26	Friday	A-K	L-Z

## FINE ARTS

First year for BFA .....	19	Friday	A-K	L-Z
BFA (other than First year) MFA,MPhil,PhD .....	25	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
COP .....	26	Friday	A-Z	

## LAW

Law Intermediate (including BCom/LawInt) .....	18	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
LLB,LLB(Hons), and COP papers EXCEPT those listed under "OTHERS" .....	24	Wednesday	A-K	L-Z
OTHERS:				
SCIENCE papers .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
BA/LLB, BCom/LLB .....	24	Wednesday	A-K	L-Z
LLM,MJur,MPhil,PhD,DJur,PGDipLS .....	24	Wednesday	A-K	L-Z

## MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY

BHB,COP,MAud,MBChB,MHSc,MMedSc,MPH,MPhil,PhD,DipMentH,DipPaed,DipPH .....	26	Friday	A-Z	
---	----	--------	-----	--

## MUSIC

First year for BMus .....	19	Friday	A-K	L-Z
BMus,BMus(Hons) (other than First year),MMus,MPhil,PhD,DMus,COP,DipMus,DipMus(Hons) .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z

## SCIENCE

(i) STUDENTS WHO HAVE NOT PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:

BSc,BTech and COP papers (if 'Approved' into all papers applied for on the Pre-enrolment Application Form) .....	18	Thursday	A-K	L-Z
BSc,BTech and COP papers (if NOT 'Approved' into all papers applied for on the Pre-enrolment Application Form) .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
BSc/BCom,OptomInt .....	18	Thursday	A-K	L-Z

(ii) STUDENTS WHO HAVE PREVIOUSLY ENROLLED AT A UNIVERSITY:

BSc,BTech,BScEd and COP papers EXCEPT those listed under "OTHERS" .....	19	Friday	A-C	D-I
.....	22	Monday	J-M	N-R
.....	23	Tuesday	S-U	V-Z
OTHERS:				
BSc with ARTS papers .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
BSc/BCom; BSc with COMMERCE papers .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
LAW papers .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
MUSIC papers .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
BOptom .....	22	Monday	A-K	L-Z
BSc(Hons),MSc,MPhil,PhD, .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
DipCompSci,DipMathsEd,DipSci,DipSciEd,DipStats .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z
PGDipAppPsych,PGDipClinPsych,PGDipSci,CertOcPharm,CertRadioChem, .....	23	Tuesday	A-K	L-Z

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT STATUTE

- This Statute may be cited as the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1991.
  - This Statute shall come into force on 1 January 1992.
- Any person qualified to enrol at a university in New Zealand who satisfies the Senate of the University of Auckland that he or she should not be required to attend classes at the University, shall, subject to the provisions of this Statute and upon such conditions as Senate thinks fit, be permitted to enrol extramurally in that year.



3. No person who is already on the books of another university in New Zealand as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification shall be permitted to enrol extramurally without the permission of that other university.
4. Except where the Senate otherwise permits, a person who is permitted to enrol extramurally in any paper or papers for which extramural tuition is provided at Massey University, shall:
  - (a) be required to register or enrol for tuition in each such paper at Massey University;
  - (b) not enrol in the same year for any other paper or papers at the University of Auckland;
  - (c) take the examinations of Massey University, and appropriate credit shall be granted at the University of Auckland for the paper or papers passed.
5. Save with the permission of the Senate granted in such exceptional circumstance as it thinks fit, no person on the books of the University of Auckland may be enrolled extramurally in respect of:
  - (a) any Stage III paper;
  - (b) any work for a Master's Degree;
  - (c) any work for a diploma;
  - (d) any paper requiring practical or laboratory work;
  - (e) any paper or other work which, in the opinion of Senate, requires internal tuition at a University.
6. A person on the books of this University who ceases to reside in New Zealand, and who requires to pass in the final paper or papers for any degree, diploma or other qualification, may enrol extramurally in the paper or papers at the discretion of Senate and upon such conditions as it thinks fit.
7. The Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981 is repealed.
- NB. Students wishing to enrol extramurally shall comply with the following:
  - (a) Every person wishing, in any year, to enrol extramurally shall apply to the Registrar of the University not later than 10 January of that year.
  - (b) Every application shall state:
    - (i) the papers or other work in respect of which extramural enrolment is sought;
    - (ii) the grounds of the application;
    - (iii) whether the applicant is already on the books of, or (where it may be permitted or required) proposes to enrol at any other university and if so, which university and for what course, papers or other work;
    - (iv) (i) the applicant's current business and residential address;
    - (ii) whether to the best of the applicant's knowledge and belief there will be any change of residence during the year of enrolment; and if so the expected new address and approximate date of change.
  - (c) Every student permitted to enrol extramurally:
    - (i) shall pay the prescribed fees for course approval (in addition to any fees payable at another University);
    - (ii) may withdraw from his or her studies by written notice to the Registrar not later than 31 March; and having done so by that date, shall be entitled to a full refund of fees.
  - (d) (i) The studies of students permitted to enrol extramurally under the Statute are subject to Regulation 9 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
  - (ii) For the purpose of this Regulation students who have not withdrawn under Regulation 3 (b) of this regulation shall be deemed engaged in academic studies in the relevant year.

The Extramural Enrolment Regulations last published in the 1991 *Calendar* are revoked.  
These requirements shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DEFINITIONS OF FULL-TIME STUDY 1993

### Architecture Property and Planning

BArch	36 credits
BPlan	36 credits
BProp	36 credits
PGDipBldgSc	4 papers as required under PGDipBldgSc Reg 2

### Arts

BA	72 points <sup>1</sup>
DipArts	72 points <sup>1</sup>
DipArtsAdmin	All papers as specified under DipArtsAdmin Reg 3
DipBrC	All work as specified under DipBrC Reg 3
DipDrama	All work as specified under DipDrama Reg 3 and 4
DipELT	All papers as specified under DipELT Reg 3
DipLabourStudies	All papers as specified under DipLabourStudies Reg 4
DipLGA	All subjects required under DipLGA Reg 5
DipPerformArts	All work as specified under DipPerformArts Reg 2, 3 and 4
DipPolNewsMed	All papers as specified under DipPolNewsMed Reg 3
DipProfEthics	All papers as specified under DipProfEthics Reg 3
PGDipArts	All papers as specified under PGDipArts Reg 3
PGDipSocRes	All papers as specified under PGDipSocRes Reg 3
PGDipTrans	Pt I, II or III
Wellesley Programme	48 points <sup>1</sup>

### Commerce

BCom	72 points <sup>1</sup>
BCom(Hons)	72 points <sup>1</sup>
MBA	9 papers
DipCom	6 papers as specified under DipCom Reg 4

**Education**

BEd	72 points
DipEdPsych	Pt I or Pt II
DipGuid	Pt I or Pt II

**Engineering**

BE	A Professional Examination or equivalent
DipGeothermTech	Parts I, II and III

**Fine Arts**

BFA	6 papers in the first Professional year
	9 papers in the second, third and fourth Professional years

**Law**

Law Intermediate	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
LLB	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
LLB(Hons)	All work as specified under LLB(Hons) Reg 2
PGDipLS	All subjects required under PGDipLS Reg 3 and 4
ProfLS	Short course of 13 weeks

**Medicine and Human Biology**

BHB	Part I, II or III
MBChB	Part I, II or III
DipMentH	4 papers as required under DipMentH Reg 3
DipPH	4 papers as required under DipPH Reg 3

**Music**

BMus	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
BMus(Hons)	4 papers
BMus(Perf)	Performance and 3 papers
BMus(Perf)(Hons)	All work as specified under Reg 4
DipMus	6 papers
DipMus(Hons)	6 papers

**Science**

BSc	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
BSc(Hons)	Part III or IV
OptomInt	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
BOptom	Part I, II or III
BScEd	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
DipCompSci	All subjects required under DipCompSci Reg 3
DipMathsEd	All subjects required under DipMathsEd Reg 2
DipSci	All work as specified under DipSci Reg 3
DipSciEd	All work as specified under DipSciEd Reg 2
DipStats	All subjects required under DipStats Reg 3
PGDipClinPsych	Part I or II
PGDipSci	All work as specified under PGDipSci Reg 3
Wellesley Programme	48 points <sup>‡</sup>

**Inter-Faculty**

BTech	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
Transitional Certificate	72 points <sup>‡</sup>

**Joint Board of Studies**

BTheol	72 points <sup>‡</sup>
--------	------------------------

**<sup>‡</sup>Points**

- (a) Papers in the Schedules for BA, BCom, BMus:
- at Stage I and II 12 points per paper
  - at Stage III 16 points per paper
- (b) Papers in the Schedule for BSc:
- at Stage I 2 points per credit
  - at Stage II 3 points per credit
  - at Stage III 4 points per credit
- (c) Papers in the Schedule for LLB I 18 points each
- Papers in the Schedule for LLB II & III 8 points per hour

**Masters Courses**

At least half of the papers required under the relevant degree regulations, or in the case of thesis only enrolment, as approved by the Head of Department.

**Prerequisites for Postgraduate Courses**

A course of papers, prescribed to fulfil prerequisites for entering a postgraduate degree, may, with the approval of Senate, be deemed full-time for the purpose of these Regulations.

**Note:** Students enrolled for less than a full-time programme are for all purposes considered to be part-time students except that under the Student Allowances Regulations a student may be defined as limited full-time for allowance purposes only.

# EXAMINATION REGULATIONS

## Eligibility to Sit Examinations

1. To be eligible to present himself or herself for examination in a paper or subject, a candidate
  - (a) must have been enrolled as an internal student, have attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate, and performed to the satisfaction of the Senate such oral, practical, written and other work as the Senate may require

**Note:** Students will be informed by each department of the specific requirements for courses in that department and the extent to which the year's work will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases students may not be permitted to sit the final examination.

- (b) not being enrolled as an internal student, must have been granted exemption in accordance with the Extramural Statute and Regulations.

## Time of Examinations

2. The examination shall be held at the times specified in the timetable each year.

## Place of Examinations

3. All internal students must sit their examinations at Auckland. Extramural students who do not wish to sit their examinations at Auckland may sit at one of the centres specified in the Extramural Enrolment Regulations, provided that, with the approval of the Senate, a special examination centre may be established under special circumstances subject to the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

## Conduct of Examinations

4.
    - (a) The examinations shall comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.
    - (b) Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination release to the candidates, the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination.
    - (c) Candidates shall write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who shall be appointed or approved by the Council in accordance with such detailed instructions as may be furnished by the Council.
    - (d) No candidate shall communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination except through the Registrar.
    - (e) No candidate may be examined in any subject or part of a subject at any time other than that set down for him or her in the timetable.
    - (f) No candidate shall be allowed to enter the room:
      - (i) for a 3-hour examination later than one hour thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination;
      - (ii) for a 2-hour examination later than one hour after candidates have begun writing the examination;
      - (iii) for a 1½-hour examination later than forty-five minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination;
      - (iv) for a 1-hour examination later than thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination.
    - (g) No candidate shall be permitted to leave the room:
      - (i) of a 3-hour examination until one hour forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;
      - (ii) of a 2-hour examination until one hour fifteen minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;
      - (iii) of a 1½-hour examination until one hour has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;
      - (iv) of a 1-hour examination until forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,
 and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in his or her script.
    - (h) Candidates shall be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than ten minutes before the examination commences but may not begin writing their answers until the room supervisor announces that they may do so.
    - (i) Audible alarms may not be used on any devices permitted in the examination room.
    - (j) No candidate shall bring into examination an electronic calculator except by direction of the examiner. Where an examination has been designed 'calculator permitted':
      - (i) the calculator used in the examination must be electronic, truly portable and self-powered, and noiseless.
      - (ii) no supplementary material (e.g. operating manuals) related to the use and operation of the calculator will be permitted in the examination room other than spare batteries;
      - (iii) in all cases it is the responsibility of the candidate to maintain the operation and operating power of the calculator.
- Note:** In the context of Regulation 4 (i) above Electronic Calculator refers to any electronic device capable of information storage, or processing or retrieval.
- (k) No candidate shall bring to an examination any written or printed matter except by direction of the examiner:
    - (i) Where an examination is designated "Open Book", candidates may take into the examination room any written or printed material including Books, Acts, etc., and there will be no check on items taken into the examination room.
    - (ii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner, and that material shall not be annotated, written or typed upon, or otherwise marked.
    - (iii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book - may be written upon", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner; and that material may be annotated, written or typed upon or otherwise marked in a relevant or contextual manner.
    - (iv) All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination shall be left in such part of the room as the supervisor shall direct. All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.
    - (v) Where material is permitted under items (ii) and (iii) above, examiners will be required to be present at the commencement of the examination to check material brought in to the examination room.
  - (l) No candidate shall communicate with another in the examination room.
  - (m) No candidate shall continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any paper to be allowed a candidate for reading over his scripts or making any amendment or addition to his scripts.
  - (n) Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence shall be referred to the Deans Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated power to deal with all matters relating to examinations) to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an examination offence includes any breach of any rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts towards the attainment of a pass in any subject or otherwise occurring in connection with any examination.
  - (o) The Discipline Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated the appropriate powers) shall hear and determine any complaint which the Deans Committee has resolved should be investigated. The candidate concerned shall be notified in writing of the subject matter of the complaint and the time and place of the hearing. He or she shall be invited to state in writing his or her answer to the complaint and may attend the hearing.

- (p) The Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to do all or any of the following things in the case of a candidate found guilty of an examination offence:
- Impose upon him or her any of the penalties prescribed in the Disciplinary Regulations.
  - Disqualify him or her from sitting any examinations for such period as may be prescribed.
  - Cancel any pass with which he or she may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the offence has occurred.
- (q) Where the Senate or any committee of the Senate is satisfied that a candidate has not complied with any Regulation of the University whether in respect of any examination or any other matter having given the candidate such opportunity as it considers reasonable of remedying non-compliance with the Regulation or Regulations, then the Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to suspend for such time as may be prescribed the release to the candidate of the results of any examination, or to decline to credit to his or her course any subject or subjects, or to impose both those penalties.
- (r) A candidate may appeal to the Council from any decision of the Senate or its Discipline Committee under paragraphs (n) or (o) of this Regulation by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within 14 days of being notified of the decision. A candidate so appealing shall be entitled to make submissions in writing and may, with the consent of the council, appear when the appeal is determined. The council may dismiss or allow the appeal or vary the penalty but shall not impose any penalty which the Senate or its Discipline Committee could not have imposed. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

### Marking of Scripts

5. (a) In determining a candidate's result the examiners:
- may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the year;
  - shall give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required;
  - shall include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for awarding on the year's work of the candidate in any paper or subject.

### Passes - Grades and Marks

- (b) A pass mark in any paper or subject including papers and thesis for a Master's Degree is: for a single paper, 50%; for two or more combined or linked papers, an average of 50%; for one or more papers and a thesis, and average of 50%; provided that:
- the Senate may give approval for a thesis to count as more than one paper;
  - a candidate not attaining a minimum of 37% in any combined or linked paper except in the papers or thesis for a Master's Degree and mid-year examinations, will fail the subject as a whole provided that this requirement may be waived in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Senate;
  - a candidate taking papers in the Faculty of Music not attaining a minimum of 37% of the marks allocated for the end of the year examination, will fail the paper as a whole. This does not apply to examinations in Performance;
  - a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering must pass in each of eight subjects or in each of three subjects and a thesis;
  - where oral work is required for a paper of a language, unless otherwise provided, a pass in both oral work and written papers is necessary;
  - where both practical and written work is required for a paper or subject a pass in both practical work and written paper is necessary.

These are eleven pass grades and two fail grades as set out:

### Pass Grades

A+ high first	B+ high second	C+ sound pass
A clear first	B clear second	C pass
A- bare first	B- bare second	C- marginal pass

**Note:** (i) Candidates for BMus (Performance) who pass the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and are therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage 1 Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus.

### Restricted Passes

A restricted pass shall apply:

- only to a paper in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce or Science;
- to the course of study awarded and may not be transferred to another course of study.

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a restricted pass. No application by the candidate is required. A restricted pass in a paper which is a prerequisite for enrolment in another paper shall not be accepted as fulfilling that prerequisite except with the approval of the relevant Head of Department in each case.

A candidate may decline the award of a restricted pass in a paper by notifying the Registrar in writing not later than 31 March in the year following the award.

**Note:** A student with a Restricted Pass in a paper who wishes to take the paper again may do so for Certificate of Proficiency only.

### Conceded Passes

A conceded pass shall apply only to the following courses of study and may not be transferred to another course of study: Bachelor of Architecture, Diploma in Business, Bachelor of Engineering, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Human Biology, Bachelor of Laws, Bachelor of Laws with Honours, Law Professional Examination, Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of Music, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Diploma in Music, Bachelor of Optometry, Bachelor of Property Administration, Bachelor of Planning including Intermediate years where applicable).

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate for consideration is required.

### Fail Grades

D+ Marginal Fail
D Clear Fail
D- Poor Fail

### Work at Standard of Honours

6. A candidate whose work is at the standard of Honours or a First or Second Class Pass under the relevant degree or diploma Regulations but who is ineligible for the award of Honours or First or Second Class Pass under the Regulations shall be informed of the standard that he or she would have been awarded had he or she been eligible.

### Recount of Marks

7. By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of his or her official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting for an examination for a degree, diploma, professional qualification, or certificate of proficiency may have the marks awarded

his or her script recounted in any paper or subject which he or she has failed. The fee for such a recount shall be as prescribed in the Fees Regulations. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer or any portion of an answer submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Master of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, or for the Diploma in Music, or the Diploma in Music with Honours may apply for a recount of marks for written papers only.

**Note:** For prescribed fee for an application for recount of marks see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*. The fee is not refundable.

#### Availability of Scripts

8. By making application not later than the Friday preceding the Enrolment period a candidate may obtain a photocopy of his or her final examination script.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for a photocopy of an examination script is \$28.15, which includes postage within New Zealand.

#### Disabled Students

9. A candidate who is permanently or temporarily disabled in a manner which affects his or her ability to undertake examinations under the prescribed examination conditions may, upon production of the appropriate evidence, obtain from the Student Health Centre a recommendation which, subject to the approval of the Senate, will enable the candidate to be examined under conditions that take account of the candidate's particular disability.

#### Aegrotat Pass

10. A candidate who has been prevented by illness or injury from presenting himself or herself at any examination in any paper or subject, or who considers that his or her performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired by illness or injury may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted an aegrotat pass in such paper or subject if the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) that the candidate is enrolled as an internal student for the course of instruction in the paper or subject in question;
- (b) that the illness or injury was reported in writing to the Registrar within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place or if more than one examination has been affected then within one week of the last of such examinations;
- (c) that as soon as practicable after reporting the illness or injury, the candidate furnish to the Registrar a certificate (on the form provided) from a registered medical practitioner which
  - (i) states that the practitioner examined the candidate on a certain date preferably on the actual day for which consideration is being requested or, if this is not possible, the day before or the day after;
  - (ii) states that in the practitioner's opinion, illness or injury of the candidate at the actual time of the examination in question either prevented the candidate from taking the examination or was likely to have seriously impaired his or her performance in it;
  - (iii) gives sufficient detail of the illness or injury to show clearly that the candidate was not responsible for his or her disability;
  - (iv) is suitable for submission, in cases of doubt, to a medical referee;
- (d) that the candidate's responsible teachers in the paper or subject of the examination in question certify that his or her work therein during the course of instruction was well above the minimum pass standard (or where relevant the minimum standard for a class of Honours) and that he or she is in their opinion clearly worthy to pass in that paper or subject (or where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours *or* alternatively that the Senate is satisfied upon considering the quality of the candidate's work during the course of instruction and of any work which he or she has completed in the current examinations (whether in the paper or subject in question or any other paper or subject) that the candidate is clearly worthy to pass in the paper or subject in question or (where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass therein.

Provided that in either case:

- (i) Honours may not be given to a candidate who has been awarded a pass under this Regulation in respect of more than two papers for a degree or diploma;
- (ii) a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be given Honours irrespective of the number of aegrotat passes awarded.

**Note:** For the fee prescribed under the Fees Regulations for each application for an Aegrotat Pass see Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*.

#### Compassionate Pass

11. Where by reason of any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control other than his or her own illness or injury a candidate has been prevented from presenting himself or herself at any examination in any paper or subject or considers that his or her performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired, he or she may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted a compassionate pass subject to compliance with the same condition (with necessary changes) as those appearing in Clauses (a) and (d) of Regulation 9. Such an application must be made to the Registrar on the form provided within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place, or, if several examinations have been effected, then within one week of the last of those examinations, and must be supported by such evidence as the Registrar shall require.
12. (a) The provisions of Regulations 9 and 10 shall apply to:
  - (i) any final written examination presented for a paper or subject of a course of study for a degree, or for a diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a professional qualification;
  - (ii) any final practical examination presented for a paper or subject of a course of study for a degree, or for a diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a professional qualification.
- (b) The provisions of Regulation 9 and 10 shall apply (with necessary changes) to:
  - (i) the final submission in each year of work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts;
  - (ii) the final submission in each year of studio work for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture as if such final submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.
13. Where (i) a percentage of the marks awarded for a final examination is allocated to a prior written test; and (ii) a candidate is prevented by illness, injury or circumstances beyond his or her control, from sitting the test; or considers that his or her performance in the test has been seriously impaired by any of those causes - then; if the conditions in Clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Regulation 9 are (with the necessary changes) complied with, the candidate may on application and at the discretion of the Senate:
  - (a) be permitted to sit another written test; or
  - (b) receive a mark based on the average of marks awarded for other course work; or
  - (c) take a viva voce examination; or
  - (d) have the entire mark allocated to the final examination.
14. A candidate who is eligible to apply and has applied for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in any paper or subject may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned, be granted permission by the Senate to take a viva voce examination in any paper or subject of his or her aegrotat or compassionate pass application.

**Concessions**

15. Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination require or permit the candidates, either wholly or partly in lieu of taking an examination held in accordance with Regulations 2 to 5 inclusive and 7 to 9 inclusive of these Regulations, submit for examination such written assignments of work as may be required.

**Thesis**

16. Where a thesis is required as part of an examination the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) Diplomas, Bachelors and Masters Degrees
  - (i) The candidate shall submit two bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract not exceeding 350 words bound in each copy of the thesis.
  - (ii) The Registrar shall transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
  - (iii) On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis shall be responsible through the Head of the Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.
- (b) Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
  - (i) The candidate shall submit three bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract not exceeding 350 words bound in each copy of the thesis.
  - (ii) On completion of the examination two copies shall be deposited with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.

- Notes:**
- (i) In the case of PhD theses, a further unbound copy of the thesis and abstract will be required by the University Library if the candidate wishes to have the thesis published by the University Microfilms International. Information in this connection will be forwarded to the candidate when the Degree is awarded.
  - (ii) Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet *Guide to the Presentation of Theses* from the Library before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis. A clear, legible type style is to be used and the thesis must be submitted in hardbound form.
  - (iii) The author of a thesis has a right to impose conditions restricting the publication of his or her work for such a period as he or she may stipulate without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of subsection (3) of Section 21 of the Copyright Act (1962).
  - (iv) Where it is suspected that a thesis contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.
  - (v) Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.
  - (vi) Where a thesis has been presented as part of a degree which:
    - (a) has been awarded but the thesis itself is failed, that thesis will not be deposited in the Library;
    - (b) has not been awarded, the thesis will not be deposited in the Library irrespective of whether the thesis itself has been given a pass or fail grade.

17. Pursuant to Regulation 1 hereof the University of Auckland will conduct examinations in the following centres: Apia, Auckland, Dargaville, Gisborne, Lautoka, Nuku'alofa, Paeroa, Rotorua, Rarotonga, Suva and Whangarei. Internal candidates are required to sit their examinations at Auckland.

---

## CONFERMENT OF ACADEMIC QUALIFICATIONS AND ACADEMIC DRESS STATUTE 1992

---

1. Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council and at a meeting of the Council.
2. Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded by the Chancellor, or if he or she is absent from the meeting or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, by the Vice-Chancellor or Pro-Chancellor. The Council may also authorise another person to confer degrees or award diplomas at a particular ceremony.
3. Every recipient of a degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that his or her Degree has been conferred and stating the class of Honours (if any) awarded.
4. Every diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.
5. At a specified time or times each year the Council shall meet in Convocation of the University to confer Degrees and award Diplomas. Persons wishing to have their degree conferred or diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at such a ceremony shall make application to the Registrar not later than the date specified in the Calendar for this purpose.
6. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to confer degrees shall be as follows: "By the authority vested in me by resolution of the University of Auckland Council I [NAME] confer the degrees stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University."
7. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to award diplomas shall be as follows: "By the authority vested in me by resolution of the University of Auckland Council I [NAME] award the diplomas stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University."
8. The academic dress worn by members of the University at any public ceremony of the University shall be the costume appropriate of their degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted Ad Eundem Statum may wear the academic costume of their own university. Unless the holder of a diploma is also a graduate the only academic dress he or she may wear is an undergraduate gown.
9. The academic costumes of the University of Auckland shall be as follows:
  - (a) The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel. The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel.
  - (b) The gown for a Bachelor's degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's degree is lined with coloured satin and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's degree is lined with coloured satin only.

The colours of the linings of the hoods for the Bachelor's and Master's degrees are as follows:

#### ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

BArch, MArch .....	lemon (BCC 111 primrose)
BPA, MPA .....	silver grey (BCC 41 violet grey)
BPlan, MPlan .....	light green (BCC 171 chartreuse green)

#### ARTS

BA, MA, .....	pink (BCC 32 pink)
MLitt .....	pink with 75 mm pink band round outside edge

#### COMMERCE

BCom, MCom .....	orange (BCC 57 spectrum orange)
MBA .....	burgundy (BCC 36 Claret)
MTaxS .....	orange with 25 mm white centre stripe

#### EDUCATION

BEd, MEd .....	emerald green (BCC 21 green)
----------------	------------------------------

#### ENGINEERING

BE, ME .....	violet (BCC 179 violet)
--------------	-------------------------

#### FINE ARTS

BFA, MFA .....	gold (BCC 144 gold)
----------------	---------------------

#### LAWS

LLB, LLB(Hons), LLM, MJur .....	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
---------------------------------	--------------------------------

#### MEDICINE

BHB .....	lilac (BCC 228 mayflower lilac)
MBChB, MMedSc, MAud, MHSc, MPH .....	crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)

#### MUSIC

BMus, BMus(Perf), BMus(Perf)(Hons), MMus .....	white (BCC 1 white)
--	---------------------

#### SCIENCE

BSc, BSc(Hons), MSc .....	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)
BOptom .....	blue-green (BCC 119 honey bird)

#### JOINT BOARD OF STUDIES

BTheol .....	forest green (BCC 26 green).
--------------	------------------------------

- (c) The gown for the Degree of Doctor of Jurisprudence, the Degree of Doctor of Medicine and the Degree of Doctor of Music is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings of 50mm wide of satin. The hood is made wholly of satin and this and the facing of the gown is of the following colours for the different degrees:

Jurisprudence .....	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Medicine .....	crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)
Music .....	white (BCC 1 white).

- (d) The gown for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings 100 mm wide: of scarlet satin (75 mm-BCC 209 post office red) edged with gold satin (25 mm-BCC 144 gold). The hood is made wholly of scarlet satin.

- (e) The gown for the Degree of Engineering, the Degree of Doctor of Laws, the Degree of Doctor of Literature and the Degree of Doctor of Science is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts but it is made of black silk or of scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of satin and is of the following colours for the different degrees:

Engineering .....	violet (BCC 179 violet)
Laws .....	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Literature .....	pink (BCC 32 rosepink)
Science .....	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue).

- (f) The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel.

- (g) The cap for all Doctors other than the officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.

**Note:** (1) The colour of the lining of the hood for the Degree of Master of Philosophy is that of the Masters Degree to which the MPhil relates.

(2) Number references are from the British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards. Approximate colours may be seen on a chart at the enquiry counter at the Registry.

10. The Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1991 is hereby repealed.

## THE DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS STATUTE 1991

At the University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991.

Pursuant to Section 194(1)(g) of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of the University of Auckland, after consulting the Senate, hereby makes the following statute:

- This statute may be cited as the Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991.
- The Council shall have power to confer the following awards:

#### Degrees:

Bachelor and Master of Architecture  
 Bachelor and Master of Arts  
 Master of Audiology  
 Master of Building Science  
 Master of Business Administration  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours and Master of Commerce  
 Master of Commercial Law  
 Bachelor and Master of Education  
 Bachelor, Master and Doctor of Engineering

Bachelor and Master of Fine Arts  
 Master of Health Sciences  
 Bachelor and Master of Human Biology  
 Master and Doctor of Jurisprudence  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master and Doctor of Laws  
 Master and Doctor of Literature  
 Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery  
 Doctor of Medicine  
 Master of Medical Science  
 Bachelor, Bachelor (Performance), Bachelor with Honours, Bachelor (Performance) with Honours, Master and Doctor of Music  
 Bachelor of Optometry  
 Master and Doctor of Philosophy  
 Bachelor and Master of Planning  
 Bachelor and Master of Property Administration  
 Bachelor and Master of Property  
 Master of Public Health  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master and Doctor of Science  
 Bachelor of Science Education  
 Master of Taxation Studies  
 Bachelor of Technology  
 Bachelor of Theology

***Diplomas in:***

Arts  
 Arts Administration  
 Broadcast Communication  
 Business  
 Commerce  
 Computer Science  
 Criminology  
 Drama  
 Education  
 Educational Psychology  
 English Language Teaching  
 Geothermal Energy Technology  
 Guidance and Counselling  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics  
 Labour Studies  
 Local Government and Administration  
 Mathematical Education  
 Mathematics Education  
 Mental Health  
 Music and Music with Honours  
 Obstetrics  
 Paediatrics  
 Performing Arts  
 Politics and the News Media  
 Professional Ethics  
 Public Health  
 Pulp and Paper Technology  
 Science  
 Science Education  
 Special Education  
 Statistics

***Postgraduates Diplomas:***

Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Arts  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Science  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Translation

- on any person who completes a course of study in accordance with the provisions of the Regulations for that qualification.
3. The Council shall have the power to confer the following Honorary Degrees:

Doctor of Engineering  
 Doctor of Laws  
 Doctor of Science  
 Doctor of Literature  
 Doctor of Music



A Master's Degree in any Faculty of the University  
in accordance with the provisions of the Honorary Degrees Regulations 1978.

4. The Degrees Statute 1990 is hereby repealed.

## AWARD OF HONORARY DEGREES

Information regarding the procedure and criteria for the nomination of a candidate for one of the above honorary degrees may be obtained from either the Vice-Chancellor or the Registrar.

## FEES REGULATIONS

### FEES REGULATIONS

All students who have had less than the equivalent of three full-time years of Tertiary Study in New Zealand since leaving school must complete a declaration of previous tertiary study, before enrolment at this University can be completed. Students enrolled in 1992 have met this requirement.

#### GENERAL FEES

(All fees are inclusive of 12.5% GST)

	\$
<b>Abandonment</b> ..... each application .....	12.00
<b>Ad Eundem Statum</b> ..... from overseas .....	120.00
<b>Additions to a Course of Study</b> each application submitted .....	30.00
<b>Academic Certificates</b> ..... each .....	6.00
<b>Aegrotat Pass</b> ..... each paper (maximum \$24.00) .....	6.00
<b>Availability of Scripts</b> ..... each paper .....	30.00
<b>Completion of an Auckland Degree or Diploma</b>	
at an overseas University ..... each application .....	60.00
at a New Zealand University ..... each application .....	30.00
<b>Cross-credits, Credit or Exemptions</b> ..... each paper .....	18.00
..... each credit .....	4.00

There is a \$60.00 maximum for each full-time course as defined under the Section 'Definitions of Full-Time Study' with an overall maximum of \$145

#### Extramural Enrolment (University of Auckland)

50% of cost of fees as listed under 'Tuition, Examinations and Research Fees 1993'

#### Extramural Enrolment (Massey University)

Any student whose record is held at the University of Auckland who wishes to enrol extramurally for tuition at Massey University while remaining on Auckland's books .....

.....	12.00
<b>Personal Interest Course</b> ..... each application .....	30.00
<b>Provisional Entrance</b> .....	60.00
<b>Special Admission</b> .....	30.00
<b>Recount of Marks</b> ..... each paper .....	30.00

#### \*Examination Centres

Examinations sat in New Zealand but out of Auckland

Single examination (per venue) .....	60.00
Each additional examination at the same venue .....	10.00

Examinations sat outside New Zealand

Single examination (per venue) .....	90.00
Each additional examination at the same venue .....	10.00

**Special Statements** (e.g. Admission to the Bar etc) ..... each statement .....

**Transfer from another New Zealand University** ..... each application .....

**Unsatisfactory Progress** ..... each application .....

### PENALTIES

Note: General fees, late fees, fines and penalties are not refundable.

#### Late Enrolments

Internal Students

	\$
(a) During the Enrolment Period	
Failure to enrol on the appropriate day, morning or afternoon as required by the enrolment timetable .....	24.00
(b) After the Enrolment Period .....	60.00
(c) DipG&O, DipObst - after 1 February or 1 August	
per week or part of a week .....	6.00
(d) DipPaed - after 1 October .....	per week or part of a week .....
(e) MBChB (final year) - after 15 November per week or part of a week .....	6.00

#### Late Applications

Note: Late fees are payable in addition to the General Fee.

- (i) Additions to Courses of Study  
Applications received after the date prescribed in the Enrolment and

Course Regulations (General) Regulation 7 .....	per week or part of a week .....	6.00
(ii) Admission Ad Eundem Statum		
From a New Zealand University		
After 10 January .....		60.00
From an overseas University		
After 1 September for an undergraduate course .....		60.00
After 30 November for a graduate course .....		60.00
(iii) Completion of Degree or Diploma at another University		
After 10 January .....		60.00
(iv) Pre-Enrolment Application Form after due date		
(refer Pre-Enrolment Application Regulations) .....		50.00

### COURSE MATERIALS FEE

Departments may charge for materials supplied. Briefly these materials will be in lieu of text books and charges will vary from department to department, and paper to paper.

### STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION FEE

Students enrolled in 1.00 EFTS or more ..... 139.50

Students enrolled in less than 1.00 EFTS pro rata on proportion of EFTS enrolment

(e.g. if enrolled 0.5 EFTS ..... \$69.75)

- Notes:**
1. The Student's Association Fee payable includes a building levy value of 40% of the fee payable.
  2. The Student's Association Fee paid at enrolment will vary according to EFTS total printed on the Fees Invoice at enrolment. If a student adds or deletes a paper(s) after enrolment, the fee will vary according to the EFTS total enrolled in on the amended Fees Invoice. The maximum payable is \$139.50.
  3. **AUSA Fees Exemption Policy**
    - (a) Any member who does not wish to remain a member nor continue to receive the benefits of being a member due to conscientious objection may apply to the Executive Secretary, AUSA no later than 1 May in each year. The application will then be considered by a Committee of the Auckland University Council and provided that the Committee is satisfied that the member has demonstrated an irreconcilable ideological incompatibility with the Association's aims, objectives or policies, the annual subscription of the member shall be refunded in full to a recognised charity nominated by the member, and further that
    - (b) any member applying due to hardship shall be referred to the appropriate University and Association Funds.

### STUDENT SERVICES FEE

Student Services Fee ..... \$50.00

All students are required to pay the Services Fee (with limited exceptions).

The following students if they wish to use the Student Services must pay the Student Services Fee and the Students' Association Fee:

- (i) Students living outside Auckland and not using the University Facilities other than the Library who are enrolled for thesis, dissertation or research essay.
- (ii) Students enrolled full-time at Auckland College of Education or Auckland Institute of Technology, may pay a reduced Student Services Fee of \$16.50. Evidence of having paid a Student Services charge at the College or Institute in the same year must be produced at enrolment.
- (iii) Students on an approved cadetship may pay a reduced Student Services Fee of \$16.50.
- (iv) Full-time members of staff who are enrolled for courses may not use the Student Services except by payment of standard charges for non-student users. The Student Health Service is available only in an emergency.
- (v) Students sponsored by the United Nations for DipGeothermTech and students under approved University exchange schemes and students enrolled in Wellesley Programme may use the Student Services without payment of the fee.

### TUITION, EXAMINATION AND RESEARCH FEES 1993

(For NZ Citizens and Permanent Residents)

(All fees are inclusive of 12.5% GST)

#### 1. Papers for BA, BCom, BED, BMus, BTech, BTheol, BSc

(a) Non science papers ..... per paper ..... \$200.00

(b) Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Environmental Science, Geology, Pharmacology, Physics, Physiology, Tutoring in Science and Zoology ..... per paper ..... \$221.00

**Note:** Science tuition fees are derived from the total cost of a BSc degree i.e. 3 years at \$1,400 p.a.

The total cost of \$4,200 is then apportioned between the courses on the basis

Six science Stage I credits = one paper

Four science Stage II credits = one paper

Four science Stage III credits = one paper

For fees purposes the BSc degree is the equivalent of a 19 paper course.

For other than the standard seven paper BA course or equivalent, tuition fees are set on a pro rata basis e.g. a student enrolling for BA in six papers will pay \$1,200 and for eight papers \$1,600.

2. Wellesley Programme per paper ..... \$30.00

#### 3. Professional Courses of Study

BArch, BE, BHB, MBChB I, II and III, BFA, BOptom, BProp, BPlan, LLB, LLB(Hons)

Per defined full-time year ..... \$1400.00

(Enrolment in more than, or less than full-time year will be charged on a pro rata basis)

#### 4. All Diplomas and Certificates (except DipBus, DipPulp & Paper, DipObst, DipPaed,

Dip G&O) ..... \$1400.00

(Enrolment in more than, or less than full-time year will be charged on a pro rata basis)

5. DipPulp & Paper per defined full time year ..... \$18,500.00  
(under review)

**6. Medicine and Human Biology Diplomas**

DipObst .....	\$700.00
DipB&O Part I and II .....	each .....\$350.50
DipPaed .....	\$700.00

**7. ProfLS per session** .....\$1,462.50  
(under review)**8. Graduate School of Business**

MBA, DipBus .....	per paper .....\$900.00
-------------------	-------------------------

Note: DipBus papers 70.570, 70.571, 70.572 will have an additional fee of \$112.50 each.

**9. MTaxS** .....per paper .....\$1,406.25  
(under review)**10. Masters courses of study (except MBA, MTaxS and MLitt)**

6 paper Master's course of study .....	per paper .....\$466.50
7 paper Master's course of study .....	per paper .....\$400.00
8 paper Master's course of study .....	per paper .....\$350.00
9 paper Master's course of study .....	per paper .....\$311.00

**11. DMus**

(a) As for-Masters' courses of study .....	
(b) on submission of work to be examined .....	\$1,400.00

**12. MD**

(a) application to be examined .....	\$350.00
(b) on submission of work to be examined .....	\$700.00

**13. DJur** .....\$1,400.00**14. PhD, MLitt**

First two full-time years .....	each .....\$1,400.00
Each subsequent 6 months or part of 6 months full-time study .....	\$700.00

(Candidates registered part-time for PhD are required to pay each year half the fee prescribed for full-time study)

**15. DSc, LittD, LLD, DEng** .....\$1,400.00**FULL FEES PAYING OVERSEAS STUDENTS**

(students who are (i) not New Zealand Citizens; (ii) do not hold permanent residence status in New Zealand; (iii) have been granted a New Zealand Ministry of External Relations and Trade Fees Scholarship; (iv) are being fully funded under the New Zealand Ministry of External Relations and Trade Overseas Development Assistance programme; or (v) are exempt from payment of full fees under Section 34B (2) of the Education Amendment Act 1989.)

**Undergraduate courses of study**

	NZ\$
Architecture, Engineering .....	each year .....16,000.00
Arts, Theology .....	each year .....9,500.00
Commerce, Planning, Property .....	each year .....11,500.00
Diploma in Business .....	each year .....15,000.00
Fine Arts, Science, Technology .....	each year .....13,000.00
Law .....	each year .....10,000.00
Music .....	each year .....12,500.00
Optometry (Intermediate year) .....	each year .....13,000.00
Optometry (subsequent years) .....	each year .....26,000.00
Medicine .....	each year .....32,500.00

N.B. Science includes Geography, Psychology and 1st year Human Biology

**Postgraduate courses of study**

Arts, Education .....	each year .....9,500.00
Law .....	each year .....10,000.00
Commerce, Building Science, Planning, Property .....	each year .....11,500.00
Music .....	each year .....12,500.00
Science, Fine Arts, Medicine, Health Sciences, Optometry .....	each year .....13,000.00
Engineering, Architecture .....	each year .....16,000.00

Notes: 1. The charge covers all tuition fees, the Students' Association fee, the Welfare fee but not other charges such as late fees, notes for courses, field trips.

2. Postgraduate fees for 1993 reflect a subsidy from the University of the difference between actual postgraduate costs and the relevant undergraduate fee in recognition of the valuable contribution which is made by a private postgraduate student to University research.

**PAYMENT OF TUITION FEES**

Students will pay all fees due at enrolment. Students applying for a loan for payment of fees will be given a credit of that sum in order to complete their enrolment.

In all cases students will be required to pay all other charges at enrolment e.g. Students Association fee, Building Levy, Student Services Fees, Course materials.

Note: While every care is taken to correctly calculate fees at enrolment, the amount due is subject to later verification.

**NON-PAYMENT OF CHARGES AND FEES**

The University Council shall have the right to exclude from the University any student whose fees have not been paid by the due date. Such exclusion does not discharge the debt which will be placed in the hands of the University Debt Collector and while the fees or fines of any kind remain owing the following additional penalties shall apply:

- the person's academic results will be withheld;
- the person shall not be re-enrolled as a student of the University;

- (c) the person shall not be entitled to have his or her record transferred to any other University;
- (d) the person will not be entitled to receive a copy of his or her academic record;
- (e) the person who has graduated will not receive his or her Degree or Diploma Form.

**Note:** A student who stops attending lectures is still liable for the fees owing unless he or she has submitted an 'Application to Alter Course' in accordance with the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) Regulation 8.

### ADDITIONAL FEES

Departmental fees for costs such as photocopying and materials are in the main being listed on your fees invoice and will be payable as part of your total bill. Some departments though will still be collecting fees separately from you in person at enrolment.

### REFUNDS

The full regulations for refunds may be found under Alterations to Course of Study in this *Calendar*.

In general refunds to fees will be made if a completed and approved alteration to course form is received by the Cashier within two weeks of the commencement of your course. You will need to refer to the schedule in Regulation 11, Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) in this *Calendar* as the dates vary according to the course of study. Papers commencing in the second half of the year have the same rule applied i.e. within two weeks of the commencement of the course for deletion and refund. Failure to meet the deadline will mean that you will be unable to have the paper or papers deleted from your academic record and you remain liable for the fees associated with those papers even if you stop attending lectures. The only exception to the two-week deadline is where there are medical or exceptional circumstances which can be substantiated with appropriate professional evidence, and if approved the paper or papers will be deleted from the academic record. In such cases a 50% refund of the tuition fees would be made.

If you wish to receive a full refund of all your fees you must submit an alteration to course form within two weeks of the commencement of lectures.

---

## DISCIPLINE

---

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council.*

The Senate has, subject to a right of appeal to the Council, the power to deal with all questions relating to the discipline of students. During the intervals between meetings of the Senate, and subject to a right of appeal to the Senate, the Vice-Chancellor may exercise alone the powers of the Senate as to discipline.

### DISCIPLINARY REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.
2. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1973.
3. In these Regulations unless the context otherwise requires:
  - 'Class' means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which students are present;
  - 'Hall' means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the Council;
  - 'Student' means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes for the purposes of Regulation 4 hereof a person applying so to enrol;
  - 'Students' Association' means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated;
  - 'Warden' means the person who is for the time being in charge of any Hall and includes his duly appointed deputies;
  - 'The Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961 and its amendments;
  - 'The University' includes any institution under the control of the Council;
  - 'University property' includes property occupied by the University, property owned by any institution under the control of the Council, and any property held by the Crown on behalf of or for the purposes of the University.
  - 'University precincts' means any land or premises in the possession or occupation of the University.

Words and expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.
4. Every student shall on enrolling at the University sign a declaration in the following form or to the like effect:
  - 'I hereby solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the rules and regulations of the University and be bound by the same'.
- (b) The Senate shall have the power to impose conditions on the attendance at classes of any student and to obtain his or her undertaking to observe those conditions, either at his or her enrolment, or in the course of his or her attendance at the University in all cases where in the reasonable opinion of the Senate it is necessary so to do in order to prevent any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal activities at the University or otherwise to maintain order and discipline.
- (c) The Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate may as delegate of the Council exercise the powers conferred on the Council by S.24 (2) of the Act without however preventing the Council from exercising those powers.
5. No student or other member of the University shall:
  - (a) act in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or prejudicial to its functioning as such;
  - (b) wilfully or recklessly damage or deface, or wilfully move without authority, any property on the University or any other property within the University precincts;
  - (c) wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise;
  - (d) wilfully create any nuisance in or on the University precincts;
  - (e) wilfully obstruct any officer or member of the University employed at the University in the performance of his or her functions or of the work he or she is required to perform;
  - (f) interfere by offensive behaviour or unwanted attention with the pursuit of work or study by another student, member, or officer of the University or that other person's proper enjoyment of its amenities;
  - (g) be in a part of the University precincts in which he or she is not, at that time, entitled to be, knowing that he or she is not entitled to be there at that time;
  - (h) (i) start, ride or park without prior permission, a cycle, a motorcycle, or a motor vehicle in University grounds;
  - (ii) fail to comply with the University Parking Regulations at all times;
  - (i) fail to comply with the directions on any notice erected with the authority of the Council and governing entry, speed and exit of vehicles and the location of parking spaces;
  - (j) commit any criminal offence in the University precincts;
  - (k) smoke

- (i) in any building controlled by the University Council, or
  - (ii) in any vehicle controlled by the Council;  
in contravention of the "smoke free" policy of the University, copies of which are obtainable from the Registrar.
  - (l) commit a breach of any University Statute or Regulation or of any rule of conduct made by any person authorised by the Council or the Senate to make such a rule, provided that the Statute, Regulation or rule had been published in the *University Calendar* or that reasonable notice thereof has been given by other means, to students generally or to the student charged with misconduct, before the misconduct is alleged to have taken place.
6. No student shall:
- (a) knowingly fail to identify himself or herself if required or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made by the Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer in order to maintain good order and discipline;
  - (b) knowingly fail to comply with any reasonable direction given to him or her by the person in charge of a group of students going to, engaged in, or returning from a field trip or any other academic activity conducted by the University beyond the University precincts, or, while a member of such a group, do anything which would constitute misconduct if done within the University precincts;
  - (c) fail to comply with any specific Department or Faculty Regulation in regard to appropriate dress in relation to safety or to professional courses;
  - (d) bring or consume alcoholic liquors within the precincts of the University for other than official functions except with the permission of the Senate. Permission for alcoholic liquors to be consumed at other functions will be subject to the following conditions:
    - (i) where the function is held in a lecture theatre, reading room, seminar room, staff study or staff common room, one senior member of the staff shall be present throughout the function;
    - (ii) where the function is held within the facilities under the control of the Student Union Management Committee, a senior member of the staff or a member of the Student Executive or a member of the Student Union Management Committee shall be present throughout the function;
  - (e) post student notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for this purpose, and in accordance with the conditions laid down by the Students' Association.
7. (a) Where there is misconduct by a student in a class, the person in charge of the class may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from not more than three successive class meetings. Any such exclusion for more than one class meeting shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor.
- (b) Where there is misconduct by a student in the use of any University facility, the person in charge of the facility may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from using it for any period or indefinitely. Any such exclusion shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor except where it is for a period less than one week.
- (c) A student reprimanded or excluded under paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of this Regulation may appeal to the Senate against the reprimand or order for exclusion. The Vice-Chancellor may suspend the operation of the order for exclusion until the appeal has been heard or determined.
- (d) In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.
8. The Senate shall have power:
- (a) to impose on any student who does not observe the provisions of these Regulations; or the conditions (if any) attached to his or her attendance at classes pursuant to Regulations 4 and 6 thereof; or any direction given under Regulation 11 hereof; or who otherwise commits any breach of University discipline; any one or more of the following penalties as it thinks fit:
    - (i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;
    - (ii) a fine not exceeding \$500;
    - (iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any of its classes for such period as it thinks fit;
    - (iv) a suspension from attendance at any test or examination;
    - (v) expulsion from the University;
    - (vi) a limitation or prohibition on his or her attendance at any class or classes at the University or his or her use or enjoyment of any of the facilities of the University;
  - (b) to prohibit the sitting of examinations by any student who is in default with any payment due to the University under these or any other Regulations or any Statute;
  - (c) to delegate the powers conferred on it by these Regulations to the Discipline Committee of the Senate without thereby preventing itself or the Vice-Chancellor pursuant to Regulation 9 hereof from exercising any such delegated power.
  - (d) In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.
9. The Vice-Chancellor shall have power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof) to exercise all the powers and authorities of the Senate under these Regulations and under the Act, including any powers delegated by the Senate to any committee of the Senate, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate or that Committee.
10. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, the Director of the Computer Centre, the Physical Recreation Officer, the Head of the Audio-Visual Centre, any Warden, or any Professor, member of the Senate or Lecturer shall have power to report any student to the Discipline Committee for any breach of these Regulations.
11. Any Warden shall have the power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof):
- (a) from time to time to give such directions as he or she reasonably thinks fit for the maintenance of good order and discipline within the Hall under his or her charge provided however that all such directions shall if of general application be exhibited on the main notice board of the Hall to which they relate or be provided to each resident in writing;
  - (b) to impose as he or she thinks fit on any student who does not observe any of the directions so given, anyone or more of the following penalties:
    - (i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;
    - (ii) a fine not exceeding \$200;
    - (iii) a suspension from attendance at the Hall for such period as the Warden thinks fit;
    - (iv) expulsion from the Hall.
12. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, or any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer may, in addition to reporting any breach of these Regulations to the Discipline Committee, order any student to pay the cost of replacing or repairing any University property lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of the wilfulness, negligence or misconduct of that student. Any penalty so ordered shall be paid within 14 days.
13. The Executive of the Students' Association shall (without prejudice to the power of the Senate under S.34 (3) of the Act) have power

of disciplinary control over students within the Student Union Building or the precincts of the Student Union Building and in exercise of that power may:

- (i) impose a fine not exceeding \$25 on any student guilty of any act prejudicial to the maintenance of discipline therein, and
  - (ii) (whether or not in addition to imposing a fine) order any student to pay as a penalty the cost of replacing or repairing any property therein lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of wilfulness, negligence or misconduct of that student.
14. (a) (i) All fines and other penalties imposed under Regulation 9 and 12 or by the Discipline Committee under powers delegated to it under Regulation 8 and all suspensions or expulsions under Regulation 11(b)(iii) and (iv), shall forthwith be reported to the Senate by the person or body imposing them.
  - (ii) Every Warden shall maintain, and shall produce when required to do so by the Registrar, a register in which shall be entered details (including the reason for its being imposed) under Regulation 11(b)(i) and (ii).
  - (b) Any student on whom a fine or other penalty is imposed under Regulation 9, 11 and 12 hereof or by any committee of the Senate under powers delegated under Regulation 8 may within fourteen (14) days of imposition of that penalty, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal to the Senate against it. The Senate may hear and determine an appeal in such manner as it thinks proper.
  - (c) Any student who suffers any penalty under these Regulations by a decision of the Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate or the Executive of the Students' Association or whose appeal under the preceding clause of this Regulation is dismissed by a decision of the Senate may within fourteen (14) days of that decision, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal against it to the Council which may hear and determine the appeal in such manner as it thinks proper. The decision of the Council shall be final.
15. (a) The grounds of Old Government House are open to all members of the University for their individual use for the purpose of quiet recreation.
  - (b) No organised group activities will be permitted in those grounds without specific permission of the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of the Council, given in each case and in such terms as are appropriate.
  - (c) Members of the University may bring guests into the University grounds but not into the grounds of Old Government House except in terms of Clauses (a) and (b) above.
  - (d) At all times and more particularly at night, members of the University and their guests shall act in such a way as not to cause disturbance or inconvenience to those living in the grounds (both occupants of Old Government House and members of the custodial staff), or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood.
- Notes:**
- (i) If the above requirements are observed, no time limit on the use of the grounds will be necessary, nor shall there be any need for the Police to be on the campus by invitation or otherwise.
  - (ii) Members of the University while in the grounds are free to observe demonstrations which may occur in the adjoining streets, but they are reminded that the Statutory and Common Law powers of the Police enable the Police to enter the University campus and to take appropriate action in relation to offences committed thereon and to prevent a breach of the peace.
  - (iii) Whenever it appears likely that demonstrations of the kind mentioned in note (ii) above will occur, the Vice-Chancellor shall consult with the appropriate representative of staff and students.
  - (iv) Any privileges of staff, students and their guests in respect of the use of the grounds, may be withdrawn by the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of Council; the Vice-Chancellor shall report the circumstances to the next following meeting of the Senate and Council.
16. (a) No member of the Security Service enrolled as a student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the precincts of the University.
  - (b) The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Service and the University Authorities before his or her enrolment.
17. After the discussions contemplated in the preceding sub-clause 16 (b) have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.
  18. Nothing in these Regulations shall prejudice the rights and remedies of the University under the general law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any student.

---

## COMPUTER SYSTEM REGULATIONS

---

Pursuant to section 22 of the University of Auckland Act, 1961 the Council of the University makes the following Regulations:

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Computer System Regulations 1975 and shall come into force on 1 January 1976.
2. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires - "System" means any Computer System controlled and operated by the Council whether at the Computer Centre established in the University or elsewhere. "Director" in relation to any System means the person authorised by the Council to control it.
3. No student or any other member of the University shall:
  - (a) without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System;
  - (b) obtain or attempt to obtain from the System any information to which he or she is not entitled;
  - (c) use the system to make unauthorised use of any other system, whether in the University or outside it;
  - (d) wilfully impede or attempt to impede the operation or activity of any other user;
  - (e) use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred:
    - (i) by the University, without the consent of his Head of Department and the Head of any other Department concerned;
    - (ii) by any person other than the University, without the consent of that other person.
4. (a) Any breach of Regulation 3 of these Regulations shall be deemed to be a breach of the Disciplinary Regulations of the University.
  - (b) (i) Without prejudice to the application and operation of the Disciplinary Regulations, the Director may exclude from use of the System, for such period as the Director thinks fit, any person who has done anything in breach of Regulation 3 or has misused or attempted to misuse the System in any way.
  - (ii) The Director shall forthwith report any such exclusion to the Vice-Chancellor.
  - (iii) Any person so excluded may appeal to the Council against the exclusion.

**Note:** Application to use a Computer System must be made to the person in control - that is, to the Director of the Computer Centre or, in the case of a system under the control of a Head of Department, to that Head of Department or nominee.

## THE LIBRARY

The University Library was established in 1884 with a grant of £37 for books which were 'to be bought in England and uniformly bound in full calf with golden lettering'. Since then the Library has grown into a collection of more than 1 million volumes, excluding thousands of unbound periodicals, pamphlets and reprints. Over 15,000 periodical titles are currently received. *The True University: A Short History of the University of Auckland Library 1883-1986* by Olive Johnson was published in 1988 as No. 16 of the Library's Bibliographical Bulletins.

The University Library comprises the General Library in the Library Building on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, divisional libraries in Architecture Property and Planning, Biological Sciences, Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geography, Law, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies), Medicine, Music, Science and at Tamaki. In addition there are departmental reading rooms in a number of subjects. The General Library contains most of the books needed for undergraduate reading in arts and commerce subjects. It also contains more advanced material in Accountancy, Anthropology, Economics, Education, Geography, History, Languages and Literature, both classical and modern, Management Studies, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology and Sociology.

The Audio Visual Library is located in the Arts I Building. It contains a collection of videotapes, audio cassettes and slides.

More information about the Library, its services and organisations, can be found in the *Library Guide* and in the pamphlet *Library Resources in the University of Auckland*. These are available from the Information Desk in the General Library. Library tours are offered during the first three weeks of Term I. Readers are encouraged to seek assistance throughout the year from the Information Desk.

## LIBRARY REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.
2. Except where otherwise stated:
  - (a) these Regulations shall apply to all sections of the University Library, that is, the General Library, Architecture Property and Planning, Audio-Visual, Biological Sciences, Centre for Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geography, Law, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies), Medicine, Music, Science, Tamaki and such other sections as may be added by the Senate;
  - (b) in these Regulations 'books' includes all types of printed, written, photographic, audio, visual and machine-readable material.

### Hours of Opening (General Library only)

3. The hours of opening shall be:
 

Mondays to Thursdays 8.30 a.m. - 11 p.m. Fridays 8.30 a.m. - 8 p.m. (Third Term - 11 p.m.) Summer Vacation (Wed - 8 p.m.)	Saturdays 9 a.m. - 5 p.m. (Third Term - 9 p.m.)  9 a.m. - 5 p.m.    9 a.m. - 12 noon
--	--

The Library shall be open on Sundays in first and second terms and August Study Break from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. and in third term from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m. The Library shall be closed on Anniversary Day, Waitangi Day, Good Friday, Easter Saturday, Easter Sunday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Queen's Birthday and for up to two weeks from and including Christmas Eve.

These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation shall be appropriately notified in the General Library. Books may be returned to the General Library when it is closed through the after-hours slot on the main concourse of the Library building.

### Readers

4. (a) All members of the University Council, all professors, lecturers and junior lecturers, all enrolled students of the University, and all library, administrative and technical staff shall be readers for the purpose of these Regulations and may:
  - (i) use all sections of the Library; and
  - (ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University requires, borrow books from it; provided that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless he or she is currently enrolled as such.
- (b) By special permission of the Librarian any person not included among those authorised by clause (a) of this Regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.
- (c) The Librarian, may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that he or she pay to the University a sum of not more than twice the approved readers' fee as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which he or she may become liable under Regulation 6 (d). Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of his or her use of the library.
- (d) Persons admitted as approved readers under clause (b) of this Regulation may be charged an annual fee which shall be determined by the Library Committee from time to time. No fee shall be charged to retired members of the University staff or such persons as the Librarian may determine.

**Note:** The fee for 1993 will be \$99 including GST.

### Borrowing

5. (a) No reader shall borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these Regulations.
- (b) (General Library only.) Borrowing starts at 9 a.m. and ceases 20 minutes before closing time. The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the Librarian. Borrowers shall present each book at the exit for stamping along with their identity card. The desk assistant shall stamp the book with the date on which it is to be returned.
- (c) Any person on leaving the Library shall on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.
- (d) (General Library only) Unless a book on the open shelves is marked 'Not to be borrowed' or otherwise restricted, it may be borrowed until the end of next term by academic staff and for four weeks by other borrowers or for such shorter periods as the Librarian may decide. Borrowers shall be required to check the date stamped in the book by the desk assistant. Glass Case books without 'Not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for a fortnight only. All other materials shall be used only in the Library except that Teaching Staff may borrow bound volumes of periodicals for seven days non renewable, and theses for fourteen days. Postgraduate students may borrow theses for fourteen days.
- (e) Books from any section other than the General Library shall be borrowed direct from that Section and returned to it.
- (f) All books shall be subject to recall within 24 hours at any time during the year, including study breaks and summer vacation. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1.50 plus \$1.50 for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the date for return stamped on the date slip incur a fine (including GST) of 25c per day whether a notice has been sent or not.

- (g) The Librarian shall be under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue and a fine may still be charged when books are returned after the date stamped, even though no notice has been received.
- (h) Books may be renewed at the expiry of a loan period by presenting them at the Lending Desk. Renewal will be refused if the book is reserved and may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian. (General Library only, only Glass Case items and theses can be renewed by letter or telephone.)
- (i) Readers may reserve books which are on loan. The length of loan allowed shall depend on the number of other readers who are also waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan reserve books late shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1.50 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue. Excessive numbers of reservations may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian.
- (j) Books which are in heavy demand may be kept behind the Lending Desk. These Desk Copies shall be available for a specified period (advertised in the Library concerned) on surrender of the reader's identity card and may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight loans. Failure to return Desk Copies on time shall incur a fine (including GST) of 5c per volume for each minute for which the book is not returned.
- (k) Teaching staff and postgraduate students may apply to borrow books from the library of another institution through the Interloans Assistant. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by that library.
- (l) Material from the Library (audio) Record Collection shall be available for borrowing on payment of a subscription determined by the Librarian from time to time<sup>1</sup>.
- (m) Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.
- (n) Authorised librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.
- (o) ID cards are not transferable; any loss must be immediately reported to the Library in order to block unauthorized use.

Note: <sup>1</sup>1993 subscriptions will be \$40 (including GST) for the complete collection including compact discs; \$15 (including GST) for records and cassettes only.

### Discipline

- 6. (a) Bags, satchels and briefcases shall not be taken into the Library.
- (b) Under no circumstances shall a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this Regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued shall remain liable for all fines payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue or recalled.
- (c) Every reader shall immediately notify to the Library any change of his or her address and thereupon renew the borrowing of all books issued to him or her.
- (d) (i) Readers shall be responsible for and shall make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an administration fee of \$10 (including GST), whether or not the book if lost is subsequently found and returned in good order.
- (ii) The loss of a book shall be reported immediately to an authorised librarian.
- (iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must be returned if found. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.
- (e) No reader shall deface or mark any book or any piece of library furniture or property.
- (f) The reservation of seats in the Library shall not be permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.
- (g) There shall be no noisy or disruptive behaviour in public reading areas.
- (h) Bottles of ink shall not be brought into the Library.
- (i) No reader shall smoke or shall consume food or drink in any part of the Library open to readers.
- (j) A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time and all readers shall vacate the Library by closing time.
- (k) Library fines or bills shall be paid at the lending desk of the Library concerned. University invoices may be paid to the University Cashier.
- (l) Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due:
  - (i) the Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in default for such period as he thinks fit;
  - (ii) the Senate may impose on the reader any of the following penalties; prohibit the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.
- (m) No reader may borrow from the Library while any fine or charge payable by him or her is outstanding.
- (n) Any authorised librarian may require any reader who is guilty of disorderly or improper conduct or of any breach of these Regulations to withdraw from the Library and the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as he or she thinks fit. Nothing in these Regulations shall limit the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.

Note: The unauthorised borrowing or removal of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.

### Copyright

- 7. Every reader using copying facilities in the Library shall duly comply with the laws on copyright.

Note: (i) Readers are warned that if a copyright work is copied the copying must be a "fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study only" to comply with the laws on copyright. What is a fair dealing involves consideration of both the *quantity* and *quality* of what is copied. Although no blanket rule can be given, the following rules must be observed:

1. You may only make one copy of the work.
2. You may use the copy for your research and private study only.
3. You may not make a copy for another person.
4. Amount copied:
- 4.1 You must not copy the whole of a work. In each case the copying must not exceed a *fair and reasonable* amount of the whole work. By way of guideline only, please note:
- 4.2 **Books:** no more than one article should be copied from a single issue of a periodical.
- 4.3 **Books:** you must not copy a whole chapter. In no case should the total amount copied exceed 10% of the whole work. A single extract should not exceed 4,000 words. If a series of extracts is required, each extract should not exceed 3,000 words nor should the total exceed 8,000 words.

N.B. The Act allows a University teacher to make a copy in some circumstances where a student or a member of the public may not be permitted to make a copy.

(ii) These rules apply to card-operated copying machines and not to photocopying supplied by librarians.

(iii) Failure to observe these rules may be treated as a breach of discipline. Users who are in doubt as to whether an item is in copyright should consult a member of the Library staff.

## PRELIMINARY COURSES

The University of Auckland offers a number of courses designed to assist those who may be planning to enrol for formal degree or diploma courses.

These include the Wellesley Programme, prepared in association with the Auckland Institute of Technology. The main target group is



in the up-to-25 age range, normally with a pass in School Certificate, motivated to take tertiary courses, but otherwise inadequately prepared for them. Students doing well in the programme should have a fair chance of success in appropriate first-year courses at university.

The Centre for Continuing Education offers preparation programmes for adults wishing to commence tertiary studies after a break in their formal education, and who may or may not have University entrance qualifications. The Centre offers many other courses, some of them being listed under the entry for the Centre for Continuing Education in the *Calendar*.

The Wellesley Programme and New Start and Continuing Education courses form part of the University's policy to enhance access to university education.

In addition the University is offering formal degree teaching at the Auckland College of Education, Northland Polytechnic and Manukau Polytechnic.

---

## WELLESLEY PROGRAMME

### Course Content

All students cover four subjects. English (18.091) and Mathematics (26.091) are compulsory, students then choose *either* two Arts subjects, namely (New Zealand) History (24.091) and Geography (20.091) *or* two Science subjects, namely two from Physics (31.091), Chemistry (08.091), Biological Science (39.091). The syllabus is designed to enable successful students to begin appropriate University or Polytechnic courses.

### Course Length

The course starts in March and ends in early November; normal University study breaks apply. Each student has a total of some 20 contact hours per week to cover the four subjects (daytime hours). In addition, besides private and follow-up study, each student is expected to spend at least a further 6-8 hours in the Library. Students are also entitled to the normal tertiary assistance with the same conditions applying as for regular University students.

### Certification

Students completing the course are to be awarded a Tertiary Education Foundation Certificate. The certificate will show grades for each subject attempted. Students are advised and assisted with applications for tertiary courses in the following year. Achievement at an appropriate level should equip science students to enter certificate courses with the Polytechnics or degree courses at university.

---

## NEW START PROGRAMME

**New Start for Commerce** - a year long course (two hours per week) providing a comprehensive introduction to Mathematics, Accounting and Economics. On satisfactory completion of this course students may make application to enrol in Part I of BCom, DipBus or the MBA programme.

**New Start for BA, BTheol, LawInt, BPlan** - a ten week course (two hours per week) providing an introduction to subjects in the Arts Faculty.

New Start programmes include study skills and subject lectures, regular assignments, tests and realistic feedback. Students gain information on the structure of university degrees, knowledge of and practice in skills required for success, and an insight into the standard of work expected. The programme provides the University with criteria to evaluate applications to limited entry courses.

Educational Guidance is an integral part of New Start and students are offered assistance in planning their on-going courses of study. Alongside New Start are short Introductory Courses in specific subjects, a wide range of study skills workshops and other supportive activities.

New Start also caters for people with physical disabilities who may need special assistance in getting started.

The Centre for Continuing Education offers Certificate programmes in Adult Education, School Leadership, Training and Development, and Womens Studies. On satisfactory completion of a Certificate course a student may receive a credit of two papers towards the BA degree.

---

## ENGLISH AS A SECOND LANGUAGE PROGRAMME

New Zealand residents of less than two years' standing, whose first language is not English, seeking admission to the University of Auckland under Special Admission will be interviewed before enrolment to assess their competence in the English language. If they need assistance they will be advised to take paper 590.001, English Second Language Acquisition, for Non-Degree, in addition to no more than two-thirds of a full-time programme towards their degree. The English Second Language Acquisition paper is recognised for student allowances but does not carry any credit towards a degree or diploma. It will also be available under the same conditions to other students who seek or are advised to undertake it.

---

## OVERSEAS STUDENTS

The following notes are intended to be a general guide for overseas students wishing to enrol at the University of Auckland. Further information and application forms are available from the Overseas Students Unit.

### Admission

Overseas students must apply for admission on the appropriate application form. Intending applicants should note the following general points:.

1. All overseas students enrolling in an undergraduate course must hold as a minimum requirement, an acceptable university entrance qualification.
2. Graduates of overseas universities seeking admission to graduate or postgraduate courses must apply to have their overseas degree recognised (Admission Ad Eundem Statum).
3. Applicants whose first language is not English will be required to provide satisfactory evidence of their proficiency in English language such as a minimum score of 550 or more in the TOEFL test or 6.5 in the IELTS.
4. All overseas students must have a student visa before entering New Zealand and a valid student permit for the duration of their studies. Further information regarding the various requirements of the New Zealand Immigration Service can be obtained from the nearest New Zealand High Commission or Immigration Office.

5. An offer of a place at the University does not guarantee that the student will be issued with a student visa.
6. Permanent residents of Australia and New Zealand, Australian citizens, and student from the Cook Islands, Tokelau or Niue who are New Zealand citizens, are eligible for enrolment on the same basis as New Zealand students and do not need to apply for admission as overseas students.

**Tuition Fees**

Refer to Fees Regulations in this *Calendar*.

**Scholarships and Financial Assistance**

The Ministry of External Relations and Trade awards a limited number of full scholarships and fees scholarships to students from identified developing countries. Enquiries should be directed to the New Zealand Vice-Chancellors' Committee, P.O. Box 11-915, Wellington or to the nearest New Zealand High Commission. The University awards a number of scholarships to postgraduate research students from any country. Preference will be given to PhD candidates. The scholarships meet the difference in cost between the undergraduate and postgraduate tuition fees. Applications should be directed to the Overseas Students Unit.

# Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning

## Contents

	<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b> Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning	92

## *Department of Architecture*

<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture	92
<b>Regulations</b>	Degree of Master of Architecture	96
	Degree of Master of Building Science	97
	Joint Special Examination of NZIA and AERB	98
<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture	99
<b>Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Master of Architecture and Master of Building Science	102
<b>Diploma Course</b>	Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	104
<b>Regulations</b>		

## *Department of Property*

<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Property	104
<b>Regulations</b>	Degree of Master of Property	107
<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Property	108
<b>Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Master of Property	109

## *Department of Planning*

<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Planning	109
<b>Regulations</b>	Degree of Master of Planning	112
<b>Degree Course</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Planning	113
<b>Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Master of Planning	114

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

Three Professional degrees are offered within the Faculty.

#### **Bachelor of Architecture (BArch)**

The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Architects and the Architects Education & Registration Board for professional membership and registration. It is also recommended for recognition by the Commonwealth Association of Architects to all member institutes in the Commonwealth. The course comprises five professional years. Students select credits from five subject areas - design; architectural technology; history, theory and criticism; practice and management; drawing, computing and communication - with a wide range of advanced electives in the later years.

#### **Bachelor of Property (BProp)**

The Degree of Bachelor of Property is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Valuers, the Valuers Registration Board, the Property Management Institute, the Real Estate Institute of New Zealand and the Commonwealth Association of Surveying & Land Economy. The course comprises three professional years, and provides a synthesis of studies concerned with the use, management, valuation, development, financing, marketing, acquisition and transfer of primarily urban land and buildings, and with the economic, legal, sociological and technological factors which affect the ownership of the proprietary interests involved.

#### **Bachelor of Planning (BPlan)**

The Degree of Bachelor of Planning is recognised by the New Zealand Planning Institute. The course has four professional years of study in which the principal continuing components are Studio and papers grouped under the headings of planning concepts, technical skills and practice and management. Graduates with qualifications in approved subject areas may complete the BPlan degree in two years.

#### **Master of Architecture (MArch)**

The Degree of Master of Architecture involves the equivalent of seven papers, and may include a major project (worth two papers), or a thesis (worth four papers), or both. A range of papers is available in each of the five subject areas of BArch. The degree requires at least one and not more than three years, and may be taken full or part time. BArch is prerequisite.

#### **Master of Building Science (MBldgSc)**

The Master of Building Science involves the equivalent of seven papers and may include a Major Project (worth two papers) or a Thesis (worth four papers), or both. Coursework for the programme of study is offered as evening classes so that students may conveniently attend on a part-time basis. A BArch or BE is prerequisite.

#### **Master of Property (MProp)**

The Degree of Master of Property consists of three papers in advanced aspects of property administration and a thesis. It may be completed in two years of full-time study, or in up to three years part-time. The prerequisite is BProp with grades averaging C+ or DipVal or DipUrbVal subject to special conditions.

#### **Master of Planning (MPlan)**

The Degree of Master of Planning, for which BPlan is prerequisite, consists of five papers in advanced planning or planning-related subjects and a research essay, or four papers and a thesis. The course may be taken part-time over three years.

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science (PGDipBldgSc)**

The Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science involves the equivalent of four papers and may include a Major Project related to Building Services (worth two papers) and/or appropriate Master's level papers offered by the Department of Mechanical Engineering, in consultation with the Head of that Department. A BArch or BE is prerequisite.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE

#### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARCHITECTURE BArch

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

##### **General Provisions**

- (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture shall
  - follow a course of study of not less than five years
  - pass each of the five Architecture Examinations
- (b) Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall enrol in any one year for more than 42 credits.
- No candidate shall be credited for this Degree with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper already passed for any other Degree or Diploma

##### **Concessions**

- Candidates who have been awarded or qualified for admission to a degree of this University or have completed with outstanding merit a relevant recognised tertiary qualification may be granted admission with such credits as approved by the Senate.

*Note:* The tertiary qualifications currently recognised under Regulation 3 of these Regulations are the New Zealand Certificate in Building, the New Zealand Certificate in Quantity Surveying, the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) and the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering (Civil).

##### **Examinations**

- (a) Candidates shall be required to pass as a whole each Architecture Examination so that their performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; but where candidates fail to pass an Architecture Examination as a whole they may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the next succeeding Architecture Examination.
- (b) Candidates whose course in any year consists of more or fewer papers than a full Examination or whose course is taken from more than one Examination shall have their performance in all papers taken in that year considered as a whole.

5. (a) For each Architecture Examination a candidate shall pass 36 credits from the subjects set out in the Schedule to Regulation 8.  
 (b) Before proceeding beyond the Third Architecture Examination a candidate shall pass 108 credits including mandatory papers:

111.100	111.101	111.110	111.111	111.130	111.131	111.180
111.181	111.200	111.201	111.202	111.210	111.211	111.245
111.260	111.280	111.300	111.301	111.302	111.303	111.310
111.311	111.312	111.313	111.360			

at least 2 further credits chosen from the History, Theory & Criticism Subject Area at 200 level, and  
 at least 2 further credits chosen from the History, Theory & Criticism Subject Area at 300 level

- (c) To complete the Degree a candidate shall pass 180 credits including mandatory papers: 111.460, 111.461  
 at least 12 credits at 400 level from the Design Subject Area  
 at least 2 credits at 400 level from the Architectural Technology Subject Area, and at least 2 credits at 400 level from the History, Theory and Criticism Subject Area  
 at least 12 credits from the Design Subject Area at 500 level or Research Reports or a 12 credit thesis.
- (d) The Senate may permit a candidate to take a paper or papers as defined in the regulations for a degree or diploma in any Faculty up to an equivalent of 30 credits for this degree, and credits will be awarded for a pass in such papers in accordance with the following:

Faculty	Segment of Study	Equivalent credits for this degree
Arts & Commerce Engineering	Paper	5 credits
	Paper 50.002	3 credits
	any other half year paper	4 credits
	any full-year paper	6 credits
Law	Per 23 hours of lectures	2 credits
Science	Credit	1 credit

Note: Where a paper appears in both the Science Schedule and the Arts or Commerce Schedule, then the Science Credits shall be used.

6. A candidate may not take a subject unless he or she has passed or been exempted the prerequisite subject for that subject as provided in Regulation 8, and the Schedule to it; provided that:
- (a) where a prerequisite has been waived by the Head of Department and imposed instead as a corequisite to allow a student to enrol in an advanced paper, then the advanced paper may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless and until the candidate has passed the corequisite.
- (b) where the candidate has been exempted from one or more of the subjects of the course for this Degree under the Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, the Senate may at its discretion exempt the candidate from the requirements of this Regulation.

#### Honours

7. The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work in the best 48 credits from papers at the 200 level or higher taken for the Fourth or Fifth Architecture Examination, including 12 credits drawn from Fifth Architecture Examination Design papers, Research Reports or Thesis.

#### Schedule

8. (a) This Schedule sets out paper numbers, titles of papers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and other conditions applying to papers offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture within the five departmental subject areas.
- (b) The Schedule shall be read with the other Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
- (c) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers or combinations of papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- (d) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
- (e) The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
- (f) Elective Studies (3 credits), Research Reports (6 credits) and Thesis (12 credits) are each based on an approved advanced topic in the subject area shown.

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Availability	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>DESIGN SUBJECT AREA</b>						
111.100	Design 100		6			
111.101	Design 101		6			
111.200	Design 2A		6	12 cr Design 1		
111.201	Design 2B		3		111.200	
111.202	Design 2C		3		111.200	
111.203	Design 2D		3		111.200	
111.300	Design 3A		6	12 cr Design 2		
111.301	Design 3B		3		111.300	
111.302	Design 3C		3		111.300	
111.303	Design 3D		3		111.300	
111.400	Design 4A		6	12 Cr Design 3		
111.401	Design 4B		3		111.400	
111.402	Design 4C		3		111.400	
111.403	Design 4D		3		111.400	
111.404	Design Elective		3		111.400	
111.500	Design 5A		6	12cr Design 4		
111.501	Design 5B		3	12cr Design 4		
111.502	Design 5C		3	12cr Design 4		
111.503	Design 5D		3	12cr Design 4		
111.509	Thesis		12	12cr Design 4		

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Availability	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Note: (i) Some elective programmes in Design 4 will have nominated prerequisite papers, to be notified each year by the Head of the Department. (ii) In Design papers above A = term 1, B = first half of term 2, C = second half of term 2, D = term 3.						
<b>CONSTRUCTION &amp; TECHNOLOGY SUBJECT AREA</b>						
111.110	Principles of Architectural Technology		4			
111.111	Principles of Architectural Science		4			
111.210	Construction & Structure 1		5	111.110		
111.211	Environment & Services		5	111.111		
111.310	Construction & Structure 2		5	111.210		
111.311	Sound		2	111.211		
111.312	Lighting		2	111.211		
111.313	Thermal Environment		2	111.211		
111.314	Services		2	111.211		
111.315	Ergonomics		2	111.211		
111.316	Workshop Project		2	111.210		
111.410	Advanced Structure		3	111.310		
111.411	Multi-storey Construction		3	111.310		
111.412	Timber Technology		2	111.310		
111.413	Alternative Technologies		2	111.211 and 111.310		
111.414	Acoustics	*	3	111.311		
111.415	Noise Control		3	111.311		
111.416	Audio Systems Design		2	111.311		
111.417	Advanced Lighting		3	111.312		
111.418	Energy Efficient Design					
	- Residential		3	111.313		
111.419	Energy Efficient Design					
	- Commercial		3	111.313		
111.420	Advanced Services	*	2	111.314		
111.421	Lighting Project		2			111.417
111.422	Multi-storey Construction Project		2			111.411
111.423	Energy Efficient Design Project		2			111.418 or 111.419
111.424	The NZ House Construction Project		2	111.310		
111.425	Architectural Aerodynamics		2	111.310		
111.426	Special Topics	*	2	Permission of Head of Department required		
111.429		*		Permission of Head of Department required		
111.510-	Elective Studies		3	Permission of Head of Department required		
111.513						
111.514	Advanced Energy Studies					
	- Residential		3	111.418		
111.515	Advanced Energy Studies					
	- Commercial		3	111.419		
111.516	Advanced Multi-storey Construction		3	111.410		
111.520-	Research Reports		6	12cr in Design 4		
111.521						
111.529	Thesis		12	12cr in Design 4		
<b>HISTORY, THEORY &amp; CRITICISM SUBJECT AREA</b>						
111.130	History of Architecture		5			111.131
111.131	Theories of Architecture		5			111.130
111.230	Egyptian Architecture		2	111.130		
111.231	Byzantine Architecture	*	2	111.130		
111.232	Renaissance & Baroque Architecture		2	111.130		
111.233	Modern Italian Architecture		2	111.130		
111.234	Ancient & Medieval Architecture	*	2	111.130		
111.235	Contemporary Dutch Architecture		2	111.130		
111.236	Vernacular Architecture		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.237	Design Procedures	*	2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.238	The House		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.239	Composition, Scale & Proportion		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.240	Architectural Interpretation		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.241	Organic Architecture	*	2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.242	Women & Architecture		2	111.130 and 111.131		

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Avail- ability	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
111.243	Oceanic Architecture		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.244	Built Form & Culture		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.245	New Zealand Architecture		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.246-	Special Topics in Architectural		2	Permission of Head of		
111.249	History or Theory			Department required		
111.330	Urban Design I		2	111.131		
111.331	Architectural Psychology		2			
111.333	Representation in Architecture	*	2			
111.334	Introduction to Building					
	Conservation		2			
111.335	Beginnings of Modern					
	Architecture	*	2			
111.336	Design & Building Performance	*	2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.337	Introduction to Community					
	Design	*	2			
111.338-	Special Topics in		2	Permission of Head		
111.348	History or Theory			of Department required		
111.430	Urban Design 2		2	111.330		
111.431	Architectural Discourse &					
	Criticism		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.432	Designing for Institutions		2	111.237		
111.433	Architectural Semiotics	*	2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.434	Myth & Metaphor	*	2			
111.435	Design for Sustainability		3		111.400	
111.436	Open Elective		2	Permission of Head		
				of Department required		
111.437-	Special Topics in Architectural		2	Permission of Head		
111.440	History or Theory			of Department required		
111.530-	Elective Studies		3	Permission of Head		
111.533				of Department required		
111.540-	Research Reports		6	12cr in Design 4		
111.541						
111.549	Thesis		12	12cr in Design 4		

**PRACTICE & MANAGEMENT SUBJECT AREA**

111.260	NZ Building Industry		2	111.110		
111.360	Contract Documentation		3	111.260	111.310	
111.361	Building Economics		3	111.210	111.360	
111.362	Town Planning	†	2		111.360	
111.460	Practice & Law		5	111.360	111.461	
				and 12cr in Design		
				3 or 4		
111.461	Commercial Practice &					
	Management		2		111.460	
111.462	Cost Control		2		111.460	
111.463	Construction Management		2		111.460	
111.464	Computers in Practice		2			
111.465 -	Special Topics in Practice & Management		2			
111.470						
111.560-	Elective Studies		3	Permission of Head		
111.561				of Department required		
111.570-	Research Reports		6	12cr in Design 4		
111.571						
111.579	Thesis		12	12cr in Design 4		

**DRAWING COMPUTING & COMMUNICATION SUBJECT AREA**

111.180	Architectural Drawing 1		3			111.182
111.181	Freehand Drawing 1		3			111.183
111.182	Architectural Drawing 1a		2			111.180
111.183	Freehand Drawing 1a		2			111.181
111.280	Architectural Drawing 2		3	111.180 and 111.181		
				or 111.182 and 111.183		
111.281	Freehand Drawing 2		2	111.180 and 111.181		
				111.182 and 111.183		
111.282	Introduction to Architectural					
	Computing		2			
111.283	Communications in Design		2	111.130 and 111.131		
111.380	Architectural Drawing 3		3	111.280		
111.381	Human Figure in Architecture	*	2	111.280		
111.382	Life Drawing	*	2	111.280		
111.383	Measured Drawing		2	111.280		

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Avail-ability	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
111.384	Audiovisual Techniques		2	12 cr Design 2		
111.385	Computer Aided Design		2	111.282		
111.480	Advanced Architectural Computing		2	111.385		
111.481-111.489	Special topics		2	Permission of Head of Department required		
111.580-111.581	Elective Studies		3	Permission of Head of Department required		
111.590-111.591	Research Reports		6	12cr Design 4		
111.599	Thesis		12	12cr Design 4		

Note: (i) \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

(ii) Consult the Department for details of special topics offered in the current calendar year.

### Transitional

9. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) A candidate who gained credits in any subject or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent papers and credits as may be determined by the Senate.
- (c) A candidate who has completed at an acceptable standard the Architecture Intermediate Examination as described in Regulation 6 of the 1992 Regulations shall be exempt from the First Architecture Examination and transfer to these Regulations subject to a restriction to a maximum of 10 in the number of credits for a paper or papers as defined in the regulations for any other degree or diploma which may be awarded for this Degree.

### Exceptions

10. The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Commencement

11. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARCHITECTURE March

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate: Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.

Note: A candidate who has been awarded the Diploma in Architecture and has approved professional experience shall be eligible to enrol for this degree.

2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:

- (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
- (b) (i) pass in each of five papers (including at least three from one of the Subject Areas - Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills - below) and a related Major Project which shall count as two papers; or
- (ii) pass in each of three papers (including at least two from one of the Subject Areas - Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills - below) and a related Thesis which shall count as four papers; or
- (iii) pass in one paper from the Subject Areas Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills below, and a Major Project which shall count as two papers, and a related Thesis which shall count as four papers.

### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:

- (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation: provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree

- (b) The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

#### (i) Design Subject Area

- 115.500 Project
- 115.501 Major Project (value 2 papers)

#### Architectural Technology Subject Area

- 115.510 Construction
- 115.511 Structure
- 115.512 Acoustics
- 115.513 Noise Control
- 115.514 Lighting
- 115.515 Energy Efficient Design
- 115.516 Building Services
- 115.517 Environmental Aerodynamics
- 115.518 Computer Applications (a)
- 115.520 Elective
- 115.521 Elective

#### History, Theory & Criticism Subject Area

- 115.530 Building Conservation
- 115.531 NZ Architecture
- 115.532 Community Architecture
- 115.533 Architectural Criticism
- 115.534 Urban Design



- 115.535 Oceanic Architecture
- 115.536 Contemporary Architectural Theory
- 115.537 Design & Building Evaluation
- 115.540 Elective
- 115.541 Elective

**Practice & Management Subject Area**

- 115.560 Documentation
- 115.561 Building Economics
- 115.562 Project Management
- 115.563 Practice Management
- 115.564 Construction Management
- 115.565 Marketing Architectural Services
- 115.566 Quality Control
- 115.567 Computer Applications (b)
- 115.570 Elective
- 115.571 Elective

**Drawing, Computing and Communication Subject Area**

- 115.580 Architectural Drawing
- 115.581 Computer Graphics
- 115.582 Communication
- 115.590 Elective
- 115.591 Elective

Note: Not all of the above papers will be available in a given year.

and one or two from:

- (ii) Those papers offered at Fourth or Fifth Architecture Examination level for the BArch degree, provided that any paper of less than 5 credits shall be supplemented by a 3-credit Elective Study in a topic relevant to the paper, to a total of not less than 5 credits; and
- (iii) Those offered in any other Department at the final-year undergraduate level or the Master's level provided:
  - (a) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and
  - (b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any paper prescribed for this Degree, and
  - (c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an Architecture Master's paper.

**Thesis**

4. The following conditions apply to the thesis (115.601):
  - (a) The thesis shall be of the value of four papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of Department.
  - (b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the year in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
  - (c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 16.

**Classes of Pass**

5. The Degree of Master of Architecture may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.

**Transitional**

6. (a) Candidates enrolled in or before 1990 under the MArch Regulations in the 1989 Calendar may in 1993 complete under those Regulations, or may transfer to these Regulations with such credits as the Senate may determine.
- (b) Candidates enrolled in 1991 or 1992 under the MArch Regulations in the 1991 Calendar shall transfer to these Regulations with such credits as the Senate may determine.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUILDING SCIENCE MBldgSc

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate: Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Prescriptions**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Building Science shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture or the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering.
- (b) A candidate who has passed some of the requirements of or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Building Science but has not been awarded the Diploma may transfer to this Degree with appropriate credits.
2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:
  - (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
  - (b) (i) pass in each of five papers (including at least three from the Services Subject Area below) and a related Major Project 115.559 which shall count as two papers; or
  - (ii) pass in each of three papers (including at least two from the Services Subject Area below) and a related Thesis 115.611 which shall count as four papers; or
  - (iii) pass in one paper from the Services Subject Area below and a Major Project 115.559 which shall count as two papers, and a related Thesis 115.611 which shall count as four papers.

**Papers**

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation: provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree.

- (b) The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

**A. Construction & Technology Subject Area**

115.510	Construction
115.511	Structure
115.512	Acoustics
115.513	Noise Control
115.514	Lighting
115.515	Energy Efficient Design
115.516	Building Services
115.517	Environmental Aerodynamics
115.518	Computer Applications (a)
115.520	Elective
115.521	Elective

**B. Practice & Management Subject Area**

115.560	Documentation
115.561	Building Economics
115.562	Project Management
115.563	Practice Management
115.564	Construction Management
115.565	Marketing Architectural Services
115.566	Quality Control
115.567	Computer Applications (b)
115.570	Elective
115.571	Elective

**C. Services Subject Area**

115.550	Fire Protection and Security Services
115.551	Selection and Maintenance of Building Services
115.552	Health Aspects of Building Services
115.553	Co-ordination of Building Services
115.554	Inventories of Building Services

- (c) Consideration shall also be given to the selection of appropriate Masters level papers offered by the Department of Mechanical Engineering in consultation with the Head of that Department.

*Note:* Not all of the above papers will be available in a given year.

**Major Project**

4. A candidate must submit the project report not later than twelve months after enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Thesis**

5. The following conditions apply to the thesis (115.611):

- The thesis shall be of the value of four papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of Department.
- A candidate shall present the thesis in the year in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
- The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.

*Note:* An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 16.

**Classes of Pass**

6. The Degree of Master of Building Science may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.

**Commencement**

7. These Regulations shall come into force 1 January 1993.

## JOINT NZIA/AERB SPECIAL EXAMINATION

*Note:* These regulations are made by the Council of the New Zealand Institute of Architects (NZIA) and the Architects Education and Registration Board (AERB) for the purpose of prescribing the form and conduct of the Joint NZIA/AERB Special Examination which is administered by a Special Examination Committee representing both the NZIA and the AERB. The completion of the requirements of the Joint Special Examination is recognised by the AERB as a qualification for registration (see The Architects Act, Section 16). Persons who have completed the Joint Special Examination and who wish to become registered under the Architects Act 1963 are required to make separate application for registration to the AERB and are required to attend the Board's professional interview.

The completion of the requirements of the Joint Special Examination is recognised by the NZIA for corporate unclassified Membership. Registration is a prerequisite for corporate membership as an Associate of the NZIA.

- Persons who fulfil the conditions set out in Clause 2 or Clause 3 below may apply to the Joint Special Examination Committee for admission to this Examination. Applications must be made on the official application form.
- The Committee will consider applications from persons who:
  - hold an overseas qualification acceptable in the country in which it was obtained as being of professional standard in architecture and in the opinion of the Committee of comparable standard to a recognised certificate granted in New Zealand (Architects Act 1963 Sec 16(1)(c)(i));
  - provide documentary evidence of the qualification obtained, including where possible details of the course prescriptions and grades obtained;
  - are New Zealand citizens or hold valid residence or work visas and provide substantiating documentary evidence thereof;
  - provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the examples provided shall be certified by statutory declaration;
  - provide a recently written article, thesis or review in English, the sole work of the applicant, on an architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;
  - provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.
- The Committee will consider applications from candidates who:
  - by their work have demonstrated a level of achievement worthy of an architect;
  - are not less than 35 years of age and have not less than 10 years' suitable architectural experience in New Zealand;

- provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the examples provided shall be certified by statutory declaration;
- (d) provide a written article, thesis or review, the sole work of the applicant, on an architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;
  - (e) provide evidence of age;
  - (f) provide current statements from at least three registered architects attesting to the applicant's experience, achievements and suitability for the profession;
  - (g) provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.
4. A fee shall be paid by the applicant to the NZIA upon making formal application to the Examination, as follows:
    - (a) for candidates under Clause 2, \$100.00 + \$12.50 GST = \$112.50;
    - (b) for candidates under Clause 3, \$300.00 + \$37.50 GST = \$337.50.
 This fee is not refundable.
  5. Each applicant shall be interviewed by the Committee or by a sub-committee comprising at least two members thereof.
  6. Following the interview, the Committee shall, at its discretion, admit applicants to the Examination or refuse admission.
  7. On admitting a candidate to the Examination, the Committee:
    - (i) shall require the candidate to pass a written examination in professional practice as set out in Clause 8, provided that where the Committee is satisfied that the candidate has passed an acceptable written examination in professional practice the candidate may be exempted from this requirement; and
    - (ii) may at its discretion require the candidate to pass any other subject or subjects prescribed for a recognised qualification in architecture in New Zealand; and
    - (iii) shall require of the candidate such period of approved practical experience (up to 140 weeks from the date of application) as it sees fit.
  8. The following examinations are recognised by the Committee for the purpose of Clause 7(i):
    - (i) 111.460 Practice and Law, as conducted for the BArch degree of the University of Auckland (may be taken extramurally by candidates outside Auckland); or
    - (ii) ARCH 204 Communication and Management and ARCH 361 Professional Practice, as conducted for the BArch degree of the Victoria University of Wellington.
  9. On passing the required subjects and satisfying the Committee that any period of required practical experience has been satisfactorily completed, the candidate shall be entitled to a Certificate stating that he/she has completed the requirements of the Joint Special Examination.
  10. On refusing an applicant admission to the Examination, the Committee shall provide reasons for its decision in writing. The Committee will consider a further application after not less than three years from the date of the previous application.
  11. Application forms for admission to the Examination may be obtained from the Secretary, Joint NZIA/AERB Special Examination Committee, School of Architecture Property and Planning, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland, to whom all applications shall be sent; or from the Executive Director NZIA, P O Box 438, Wellington.
  12. These regulations shall apply to all applicants who apply for admission after 30 June 1990

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### BArch

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BArch are listed below.

#### Design Subject Area

##### 111.100 Design 100

Introductory exercises exploring the abstract nature of design; aesthetics and composition; design expression through drawing and model-making; architecture as the design of form.

##### 111.101 Design 101

Introductory exercises exploring contextual considerations in design; the physical, social and cultural environment of design; considerations of "place" and "occasion"; architecture as the design of settings for human activities.

##### 111.200 Design 2A to

##### 111.503 Design 5D

(refer to Schedule)

Introductory and advanced study and practice in architectural design in the studios and laboratories, with related lectures and seminars. The scope includes the development of architectural skill and understanding and the co-ordination of the subject matter of papers in the other four Groups.

Alternative programmes will be offered in each paper in each year. Each student will take at least one programme to developed design stage at both Design 2 and Design 3 levels.

##### 111.509 Thesis

#### Construction & Technology Subject Area

##### 111.110 Principles of Architectural Technology

Introduction to materials science; principles of structural action; principles of construction; the manufacture and application of architectural materials; elementary geology; site surveying; laboratory-based studies.

##### 111.111 Principles of Architectural Science

Introduction to architectural physics (heat, light and sound); the

physiology and psychology of vision, hearing and thermal sensation; psychophysics and quantification in environmental design; an introduction to anthropometrics and ergonomics; scientific method and experimental techniques for simple laboratory-based studies.

##### 111.210 Construction & Structure 1

A study of the principles and applications of building construction, materials study and structure in the New Zealand industry involved in small-scaled buildings.

##### 111.211 Environment & Services

Climate and energy considerations in buildings. Thermal performance, ventilation and condensation. Day lighting and artificial lighting design. Noise control and acoustical design. Domestic-scale building services.

##### 111.310 Construction & Structure 2

A development of the study of the principles and applications of building construction, materials study and structure to a full range of building types.

##### 111.311 Sound

A consolidation of the material previewed in Environment & Services concerning acoustics and noise control. The origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound, and the elements of noise control, room acoustics and the hearing process, together with an introduction to the design of music rooms.

##### 111.312 Lighting

A detailed study of light, light sources and luminaires; and of the interaction of people with light. The course includes both natural light and artificial light, their characteristics and their distribution within buildings; the perception of light and colour and people's responses to them; the quantitative description of light and lighting, ergonomics, photometrics and codes of practice.

##### 111.313 Thermal Environment

A study of the thermal response of the building fabric in steady-state and fluctuating conditions as applied to both residential and commercial-type buildings. Assessment techniques for the design

of high-comfort environments.

#### **111.314 Services**

The principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services for commercial and industrial buildings. Integration of services into building fabric. Energy considerations.

#### **111.315 Ergonomics**

The limitations and capacities of people as affecting the design of buildings, equipment and the environment. The influence of Anatomy, Physiology, and Psychology as it affects design, in order to make the best possible use of human resources.

#### **111.316 Workshop Project**

A workshop-based project intended to introduce students to woodwork and/or metalwork skills through the production of a small piece of furniture or joinery or such other project as may be approved by staff.

#### **111.410 Advanced Structure**

Mathematical modelling of structure by computer. Laboratory testing of structural systems. Study of structural design codes. Extension of Struotographic analysis. Survey of "State of the Art" structural systems given by practising consultants.

#### **111.411 Multi-storey Construction**

A detailed study of multi-storey construction techniques and constraints, both on-site and off-site. Legislative impact along with acceptable risk considerations. Quality control and long term maintenance philosophies, all as determinants of architectural form.

#### **111.412 Timber Technology**

Rationalisation of timber performance in structure, and discussion of engineering use including historical, current and predicted techniques.

#### **111.413 Alternative Technologies**

The use of ambient energy (solar, wind) in building design. Aerogenerators. Alternative energy sources. Alternative services systems. Alternative materials construction technology and structural systems. A study of traditional environmental systems and their application to New Zealand architecture.

#### **\*111.414 Acoustics**

Advanced studies in room acoustics and acoustical design of communications spaces. Control of reverberation, electronic assistance of reverberation, psychophysics of audience preference and objective measurements in rooms, acoustical models, mathematical models of rooms.

#### **111.415 Noise Control**

Noise control by planning, isolation and enclosure. Assessment of community noise and application of the local noise nuisance standards and legislation. Evaluation of noise by statistical measures and the instrumentation for this. Materials for noise control, their performance specification, and theory of vibrating systems. Noise control in buildings and plant machinery, application of vibration isolation techniques. Recent developments in reactive barriers and active noise control. Design and calculation work by computer will be encouraged.

#### **111.416 Audio Systems Design**

Sound reinforcement and P/A system design, covering a design method for mating a sound system with existing architecture. Required site measurements and system evaluation and how to specify the required equipment. Recent trends in direct sound designing and audience coverage.

#### **111.417 Advanced Lighting**

The design of artificial and natural lighting of building interiors. Artificial lighting of building exteriors, landscape and sports grounds. Alternative calculation procedures. Considerations of glare, contrast and visibility. Photometrics and colorimetry. Modelling and computer techniques. Lighting for display and drama. Case studies of lighting for particular building types.

#### **111.418 Energy Efficient Design - Residential**

A detailed study of energy efficient techniques and their integration into the design process to produce high comfort environmentally connected residential buildings. Design and calculation by computer will be encouraged.

#### **111.419 Energy Efficient Design - Commercial**

A detailed study of available techniques, including computer methods, for assessing the energy efficiency factors involved in the design of commercial-type buildings in New Zealand. Aspects of daylighting, atria, worker efficiency and energy management

along with economic assessment techniques.

#### **\*111.420 Advanced Services**

Advanced studies of the principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services with special reference to tall buildings. Studies of the servicing requirements and design approaches for specialised buildings (e.g., hotels, hospitals) and atrium buildings. Maintenance, replacement and energy considerations.

#### **111.421 Lighting Project**

An individual study in lighting design, to be approved prior to commencement. Suitable studies may include the detailed development of lighting for a significant space in a Design programme, the study of a particular type of architectural setting using models or existing examples, or the study of the lighting philosophy and practice of a particular architect or architects.

#### **111.422 Multi-Storey Construction Project**

A personal investigation of an aspect of the construction of multi-storey buildings leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **111.423 Energy Efficient Design Project**

A detailed personal investigation of an aspect of energy efficient design - either residential or commercial, leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **111.424 The NZ House Construction Project**

A personal investigation of an aspect of the construction of the New Zealand House - either historical or present day, leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **111.425 Architectural Aerodynamics**

A study of the influence of building shape and spacing on airflow through and around buildings. Introduces basic concepts of fluid flow and wind tunnel techniques appropriate to qualitative and simple quantitative studies.

#### **\*111.426 - \*111.429 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **111.510 - 111.513 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the Construction and Technology Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

#### **111.514 Advanced Energy Studies - Residential**

Advanced studies of active and passive techniques and the properties of available materials and construction methods to achieve energy efficient design approaches. Marketing, legislative and economic assessments.

#### **111.515 Advanced Energy Studies - Commercial**

Advanced studies of design and management techniques for producing energy efficient environmentally connected commercial-type buildings. Marketing, legislative and economic assessments.

#### **111.516 Advanced Multi-storey Construction**

Advanced studies of the design implications of available materials, construction techniques, quality performance and economic considerations on the construction of multi-storey buildings.

#### **111.520 - 111.521 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Construction and Technology.

#### **111.529 Thesis**

### **History, Theory & Criticism Subject Area**

#### **111.130 History of Architecture**

An introduction to the history of Western architecture. Architecture in New Zealand. The origins and development of modern architecture, and contemporary manifestations.

#### **111.131 Theories of Architecture**

An introduction to the main aspects of the architectural discipline, its derivations, purposes, processes, products and philosophical directions; a prospectus and basis for advancing theory papers.

#### **111.230 Egyptian Architecture**

An introduction to Ancient Egyptian Architecture from the Old Kingdom (3200 BC) to the New Kingdom (1085 BC) with selected case studies.

#### **\*111.231 Byzantine Architecture**

An introduction to Byzantine Architecture from 4th - 15th centuries with selected urban case studies including Constantinople.

**111.232 Renaissance & Baroque Architecture**

An examination of the principal architects, works and theories from the period 1400-1700.

**111.233 Modern Italian Architecture**

A survey of Italian Architecture from 1900 to the present day.

**\*111.234 Ancient & Medieval Architecture**

An examination of Western architecture together with relevant theory and criticism, from the Ancient World to the Renaissance.

**111.235 Contemporary Dutch Architecture**

The course focuses on the recent work of a number of key figures in contemporary Dutch architecture, with emphasis on the contributions of Herman Hertzberger and Aldo van Eyck. Aspects of Dutch culture, social life, and architecture in the 20th Century are introduced in support of this focus.

**111.236 Vernacular Architecture**

A study of vernacular architecture and its special relationship to time and place, climate and materials, traditions and building processes as well as to other forms of architecture.

**\*111.237 Design Procedures**

This course establishes the idea of 'design process', examines the nature of that process, and reviews a variety of procedures which support the decision making process.

**111.238 The House**

An outline in Western history of the house and its development in plan, form and elements with particular reference to the changing events, lifestyles and ideas in society.

**111.239 Composition, Scale & Proportion**

Syntactic and semantic relationships found in architectural compositions of plan and elements with reference to their organisation, scale and proportion.

**111.240 Architectural Interpretation**

Studies and interpretations of selected worldwide examples of architectural and urban form, considering their identity and signification as expressive systems in relation to context, style and epoch as well as contemporary theory and criticism.

**\*111.241 Organic Architecture**

This course traces that strand of 20th Century architecture to which the term 'organic' has been applied. It examines possible meanings of the term and characteristics of an 'organic architecture'. Selected contemporary examples from Northern European countries are studied.

**111.242 Women & Architecture**

An introduction to theoretical positions and an examination of selected architectural works relevant to studies of women and architecture.

**111.243 Oceanic Architecture**

An introduction to the indigenous architecture of the Pacific. A study of the architecture of New Zealand Maori and a selection of Pacific Islands in depth. The particular Pacific Islands selected will vary from year to year.

**111.244 Built Form & Culture**

This is a study of the relationship between various cultures and their architecture. Specifically it is concerned with settlement patterns, dwellings and other buildings and relates these to various aspects of the cultures.

**111.245 New Zealand Architecture**

Studies in architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments.

**111.330 Urban Design 1**

Concepts of urban design, the history of theory, urban form, elements of urbanism, public space, selected case studies.

**111.331 Architectural Psychology**

Physical, social and cultural aspects of people's interaction with the natural and built environment. Environmental perception and cognition. Individual and group spatial behaviour. Research findings and methods of relevance to architectural theory.

**\*111.333 Representation in Architecture**

An examination of representational modes in architectural discourse and historical works examined in relation to contemporary theories. This course will be largely concerned with the role of metaphors such as those of construction, shelter, body, primal geometry, cosmology, history and identity.

**111.334 Introduction to Building Conservation**

An introduction to theory, legislation and technology concerning building conservation. Assessment will be based largely on practical conservation planning.

**\*111.335 Beginnings of Modern Architecture**

An examination of selected architectural works, writings and philosophies that contributed to the development of modern architecture.

**\*111.336 Design & Building Performance**

Studies and assessment of the performance of the designed environment, based on its people-environment interactions and seeking to assemble a comprehensive theory of its function. Techniques and applications of performance measurement and appraisal including post-occupancy research and pre-design briefing.

**\*111.337 Introduction to Community Design**

A course intended to introduce the student to the wide diversity of processes and skills which comprise the discipline of community architecture. The origins of the discipline will be outlined, together with its growth and development, including current examples. Communication and group facilitation techniques will be analysed and tested in the context of a typical community design process.

**111.338 - 111.344 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**111.430 Urban Design 2**

Advanced urban studies. Contemporary theory, historical research, development strategies and guidelines.

**111.431 Architectural Discourse & Criticism**

An examination of architectural writing on criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

**111.432 Designing for Institutions**

This course has two syllabus components. The first examines the special nature of design tasks which institutional settings present, and reviews a variety of strategies and procedures for managing the design decision making process in these settings. The second analyses a number of contemporary buildings that represent significant contributions in the field of institutional and public architecture.

**\*111.433 Architectural Semiotics**

A review of the evolution of semiotic and related theory, its influence on recent architectural theorists and critics and on contemporary architects and their work.

**\*111.434 Myth & Metaphor**

Introduction to the theory of myth criticism in architecture.

**111.435 Design for Sustainability**

A review of the evolution of environmentally sustainable settlements and buildings. A study of the main determinants and possible architectural design responses.

**111.436 - 111.440 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**111.530 - 111.533 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the History, Theory and Criticism Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

**111.540 - 111.541 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in History, Theory and Criticism.

**111.549 Thesis**

---

**Practice & Management Subject Area****111.260 New Zealand Building Industry**

The architectural profession and the building industry in New Zealand. Historical background and controlling legislation.

**111.360 Contract Documentation**

Preparation of documentation at all stages of architectural services; briefs, feasibility studies, reports, working drawings, certification; developments in this area. Principles and practice involved in the preparation of specifications, interpretation; performance specifications. Computer assistance in documentation.

**111.361 Building Economics**

Microeconomics as parameters in building decisions. Urban building economics. Building efficiency. Energy considerations in design, materials and services. Buildings as investments.

**†111.362 Town Planning**

The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice. The planning process. Contemporary town planning in New Zealand.

**111.460 Practice & Law**

The appointment, authority, duties, responsibilities and liabilities of the architect. Contract administration. Financing of building projects. Relationships with clients and related professions. Aspects of law as they affect the practice of architecture, building, land and related property.

**111.461 Commercial Practice and Management**

A general appreciation of the principles and practice of accounting and commercial practice relevant to the practice of architecture. Management theory organisation; administration, production, distribution and control aspects; economic, financial and investment theories and techniques.

**111.462 Cost Control**

Cost planning and control in relation to the design team and design process. Economic feasibility. Cost in use studies. The quantity surveyor. Pricing.

**111.463 Construction Management**

Introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.

**111.464 Computers in Practice**

A study of the utilisation and potential of computers in architectural practice and their support of information systems, and the implications of rapid change for management and planning.

**111.465 - 111.470 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**111.560 - 111.561 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level or 400-level papers in the Practice and Management Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

**111.570 - 111.571 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Practice and Management.

**111.579 Thesis**

---

**Drawing and Related Skills Subject Area****111.180 Architectural Drawing 1**

Introduction to the practice and analysis of architectural drawing. Freehand and instrumental drawing. Conventional projections and basic descriptive geometry.

**111.181 Freehand Drawing 1**

Freehand drawing techniques, sketching, basic perspective, the use of various media.

**111.182 Architectural Drawing 1a**

Introduction to the practice and analysis of architectural drawing. Freehand and instrumental drawing. Conventional projections and basic descriptive geometry.

**111.183 Freehand Drawing 1a**

Freehand drawing techniques, sketching, basic perspective, the use of various media.

**111.280 Architectural Drawing 2**

Relationship between architectural form and its graphical representations. Analytical and critical value of drawing. Representation and rendering techniques related to studio drawing.

**111.281 Freehand Drawing 2**

Advanced techniques in freehand drawing, two-and three-point perspective.

**111.282 Introduction to Architectural Computing**

A 'hands-on' introduction to current computing practice in architecture. Use of available software to produce textual and graphical documents and architectural drawings. No prior knowledge of computing is expected.

**111.283 Communications in Design**

The application of communications theory to design practice and education. Notions of the inter-communication processes will be analysed, as will the concept of the 'hidden curriculum'. The deep structure of communication processes will be studied in terms of their impact on design with respect to both intra-personal communication and inter-personal communication, using a wide variety of communications media.

**111.380 Architectural Drawing 3**

Theories and practical exercises in architectural drawing. The value and purpose of drawing in its relationship to the design process and understanding architecture. Contemporary presentation techniques relating to drawing architecture.

**\*111.381 Human Figure in Architecture**

A drawn study of the structure and detail of the human figure and its relationships to architecture.

**\*111.382 Life Drawing**

Analysis and understanding of proportion, structure, scale and how the human figure relates to architectural space and form.

**111.383 Measured Drawing**

Measure, record and draw existing New Zealand architecture of historical and cultural significance.

**111.384 Audiovisual Techniques**

Co-ordination of skills and techniques in photography, multiple image projection, video, audio and other media.

**111.385 Computer Aided Design**

Extended exposure to CAD and graphical information processing techniques. Introduction to the management and utilisation of computers in practice

**111.480 Advanced Architectural Computing**

Exploring new and more complex applications in technical draughting, architectural representation and animation - and other computer based architectural techniques.

**111.481 - 111.489 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**111.580 - 111.581 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the Drawing and Related Skills Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

**111.590 - 111.591 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Drawing & Related Skills.

**111.599 Thesis**

---

**MArch and MBldgSc****Design Subject Area****115.500 Project****115.501 Major Project** (Value two papers)

An advanced project on which the candidate is required to submit a report. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

**115.559 Major project** (Value two papers)

An advanced project on which the candidate is required to submit a report. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

---

**Construction & Technology Subject Area****115.510 Construction**

Advanced studies in methods of construction, materials used and services included, with reference to issues such as long term maintenance, energy management.

**115.511 Structure**

Advanced studies in structural design and the behaviour of buildings and building components under stress.

**115.512 Acoustics**

Advanced studies in selected aspects of room acoustics, including reverberation control, electronic assistance, design principles theory, measurement, physical and mathematical models.

**115.513 Noise Control**

Advanced studies in aspects of noise control. Measurement and evaluation of noise. Control theory and techniques.

**115.514 Lighting**

Selected aspects of natural and artificial lighting of building interiors, artificial lighting of building exteriors, landscapes.

**115.515 Energy Efficient Design**

Advanced studies in available techniques for the efficient use of passive and active energy in selected building types.

**115.516 Building Services**

Advanced studies in the provision, installation and control of all forms of building services.

**115.517 Environmental Aerodynamics**

Aspects of the effects and modification of air movement in and around buildings.

**115.518 Computer Applications (a)**

Applications of computer technology to problems in building construction and technology.

**115.520 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in building construction and technology to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**115.521 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in building construction and technology to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

---

**History, Theory & Criticism Subject Area****115.530 Building Conservation**

Advanced studies in the theory, legislation and technology of building conservation.

**115.531 NZ Architecture**

Selected aspects of the history of architecture in New Zealand with reference to particular developments and influences.

**115.532 Community Architecture**

Advanced studies in the processes of community architecture, including communication and group facilitation techniques, in the context of specific community design opportunities.

**115.533 Architectural Criticism**

Advanced studies of architectural writing on criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

**115.534 Urban Design**

An advanced paper on the history, theory and development guidelines in relation to urbanism and urban forms.

**115.535 Oceanic Architecture**

Selected aspects of the indigenous architecture of the New Zealand Maori, the Pacific Islands and Asian Pacific Rim countries.

**115.536 Contemporary Architectural Theory**

Advanced studies in contemporary architectural theory from writings, design, and built work.

**115.537 Design and Building Evaluation**

Extended studies in observing, measuring and assessing the performance of designed environments. Development of theory and techniques including post-occupancy research and pre-design briefing.

**115.540 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in the history or theory of architecture to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**115.541 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in the history or theory of architecture to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

---

**Services Subject Area****115.550 Fire Protection & Security Services**

This course deals with fire resistance of materials and construction and related regulations and the role of fire engineering in building design. Security services for fire detection and control, access and egress in buildings are discussed in a systems context to explore their interaction and management.

**115.551 Selection and Maintenance of Building Services**

This course explores a variety of criteria for the selection of building services equipment along with techniques for its programmed maintenance and eventual upgrading or replacement.

**115.552 Health Aspects of Building Services**

This course identifies possible sources of bacteria and particles associated with building services equipment proven to be harmful or toxic to humans. Procedures for their detection and control are discussed along with strategies to minimize their presence.

**115.553 Co-ordination of Building Services**

This course explores techniques for co-ordinating the

interdependence and interaction of building services equipment and with the building structure and fabric.

**115.554 Inventories of Building Services**

This course explores manual and computerised techniques for establishing and maintaining inventories of building services equipment for the purposes of programmed maintenance and reorganisation during partial or major building refurbishment.

---

**Practice & Management Subject Area****115.559 Major project** (value two papers)

An advanced project on which the candidate is required to submit a report. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

**115.560 Documentation**

Advanced studies in communication and documentation at all stages in architectural practice, from briefing to certification.

**115.561 Building Economics**

Advanced studies in the application of economics to decisions as to what, whether and how to build. Energy and investment considerations.

**115.562 Project Management**

Advanced studies in the management of building projects, from economic feasibility through the engagement and briefing of consultants, the design and construction process, letting and leasing.

**115.563 Practice Management**

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of managing an office engaged in the practice of architecture. Management, accounting, control systems.

**115.564 Construction Management**

Advanced studies in the management of the construction process. Quantitative and other techniques in management.

**115.565 Marketing Architectural Services**

Studies in marketing research and marketing strategies in relation to the provision of architectural services.

**115.566 Quality Control**

The specification and management of quality. Policies, objectives, process control, inspection, costs and economics. Systems and their auditing.

**115.567 Computer Applications (b)**

Applications of computer technology to problems in architectural practice and management.

**115.570 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in architectural practice, economics, management, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**115.571 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in architectural practice, economics, management, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

---

**Drawing & Related Skills Subject Area****115.580 Architectural Drawing**

Advanced studies in architectural drawing. Studies of contemporary presentation techniques and historical precedents.

**115.581 Computer Graphics**

Advanced applications of CAD and computer graphics techniques.

**115.582 Communication**

Advanced studies in communication: verbal, written, graphic, photographic, cinematography, video, multiple image projection, audio-visual, computer-aided and other media.

**115.590 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in drawing, audio-visual techniques or computer graphics, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

**115.591 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in drawing, audio-visual techniques or computer graphics, to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUILDING SCIENCE PGDipBldgSc

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture or the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering.
2. Every candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma shall:
  - (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
  - (b) (i) pass in each of four papers (including at least three from the Services Subject Area below); or
  - (ii) pass two papers (including at least one from the Services Subject Area below) and a major project 115.559 related to building services to count as two papers.

#### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation: provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Postgraduate Diploma.
  - (b) The papers for this Postgraduate Diploma are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

#### A. Architectural Technology Subject Area

- 115.510 Construction
- 115.511 Structure
- 115.512 Acoustics
- 115.513 Noise Control
- 115.514 Lighting
- 115.515 Energy Efficient Design
- 115.516 Building services
- 115.517 Environmental Aerodynamics
- 115.518 Computer Applications (a)
- 115.520 Elective
- 115.521 Elective

#### B. Practice & Management Subject Area

- 115.560 Documentation
- 115.561 Building Economics
- 115.562 Project Management
- 115.563 Practice Management
- 115.564 Construction Management
- 115.565 Marketing Architectural Services
- 115.566 Quality Control
- 115.567 Computer Applications (b)
- 115.570 Elective
- 115.571 Elective

#### C. Services Subject Area

- 115.550 Fire Protection and Security Services
  - 115.551 Selection and Maintenance of Building Services
  - 115.552 Health Aspects of Building Services
  - 115.553 Co-ordination of Building Services
  - 115.554 Inventories of Building Services
- (c) Consideration shall also be given to the selection of appropriate Masters level papers offered by the Department of Mechanical Engineering in consultation with the Head of that Department.

**Note:** Not all of the above papers will be available in a given year.

#### Major Project

4. A candidate must submit the project report not later than twelve months after enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

#### Commencement

5. These Regulations shall come into force 1 January 1993.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF PROPERTY

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PROPERTY BProp

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for General provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, and except as elsewhere provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Property shall:
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than three years, and



- (ii) pass the papers as required under Regulation 3 of this Degree.
- (b) Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall take in any one year Property examinations worth more than 42 credits.

**Examinations**

2. (a) No candidate may enrol for any paper of the Second Property Examination without having passed at least 30 credits from the First Property Examination. No candidate may enrol for any paper of the Third Property Examination without having passed at least 30 credits from the Second Property Examination.
- (b) No candidate may enrol for any paper in the Third Property Examination without having completed the First Property Examination (or the graduate Property Examination under Regulation 8).
- (c) Notwithstanding the provisions of Regulations (a) and (b) above a candidate may at the discretion of Senate be allowed in exceptional circumstances to proceed to the Second and Third Property Examinations.

**First Property Examination**

3. The First Property Examination shall comprise:

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Credits	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>Part A: Context Papers (14 Credits)</b>				
110.100	Information, Communication and Presentation	5		
110.101	Law, Government & Politics	5		
110.102	Economics & Society	4		113.141
<b>Part B: Core Papers (16 Credits)</b>				
112.100	Valuation 1	4		
112.101	Introduction to Property	4		
112.105	Finance 1	2		
112.106	Business Accounting 1	2		
112.115	Construction 1	2		
112.118	Land Use Planning 1	2		
<b>Part C: Applied Papers (6 Credits)</b>				
112.130	Applied Valuation 1	2	112.100	
112.131	Applied Investment 1	2	112.105	
112.135	Applied Construction 1	2	112.115	

**Second Property Examination**

4. The Second Property Examination shall comprise:

**Part A: Core Papers****Valuation: (4 Credits)**

112.200 Valuation 2

4

**Investment: (4 Credits)**

112.205 Finance 2

2

112.206 Business Accounting 2

2

**Management: (6 Credits)**

112.210 Principles of Property

4

Management

112.211 Law 2

2

**Development: (8 Credits)**

112.215 Construction 2

2

112.216 Property Economics

2

112.217 Principles of Development

2

112.218 Land Use Planning 2

2

**Marketing: (2 Credits)**

112.220 Principles of Marketing

2

**Part B: Applied Papers: (8 Credits)**

Four papers from the following schedule:

112.230 Applied Valuation 2

2

112.200

112.231 Applied Investment 2

2

112.205

112.232 Applied Management

2

112.210

112.233 Applied Development

2

112.217

112.234 Applied Marketing

2

112.220

**Part C: Elective Paper (4 credits)**

Any paper offered in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce or Science, or any paper or papers in the Departments of Architecture or Planning, to a total of at least 4 credits.

**Third Property Examination**

5. The Third Property Examination shall comprise:

**Part A: Core Papers****Valuation: (4 Credits)**

112.300 Valuation 3

4

**Investment: (4 Credits)**

112.305 Finance 3

2

112.306 Investment Markets & Strategies

2

**Management: (6 Credits)**

112.310 Advanced Property Management

4

112.311 Law 3

2

**Development: (6 Credits)**

112.315 Construction 3

2

112.316 Urban Land Economics

2

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Credits	Corequisites	Restrictions
112.317	Advanced Development	2		
<b>Marketing: (2 Credits)</b>				
112.320	Advanced Marketing	2		
<b>Research: (4 credits)</b>				
112.321	Research Project	4		
<b>Part B: Applied Papers (6 Credits)</b>				
Three papers from the following schedule including a topic not previously passed from those listed in Part B of Regulation 4.				
112.330	Applied Valuation 3	2	112.300	
112.331	Applied Investment 3	2	112.305	
112.332	Applied Advanced Management	2	112.310	
112.333	Applied Advanced Development	2	112.317	
112.334	Applied Advanced Marketing	2	112.320	
112.335	Applied Special Topic	2		

**Part C: Elective Paper (4 credits)**

Any paper offered in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce or Science, or any paper or papers in the Departments of Architecture or Planning, to a total of at least 4 credits.

**Corequisites**

6. A candidate shall comply with the corequisites relating to any Property Examination; except as the Head of Department may otherwise permit.

**Substitutions**

7. (a) A candidate, subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Property, may take a paper or papers prescribed for a Degree or Diploma in any Faculty of this University up to an equivalent of 30 credits for this Degree.
- (b) A candidate enrolled in a paper from another Degree shall comply with the requirements for that paper including those relating to pre-enrolment, corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work unless any of those requirements are waived by the Department from which the paper is taken.
- (c) The credits allowed for the purpose of this regulation shall be:

Faculty	Segment of Study	Equivalent credits for this degree
Arts	per paper	5 credits
Commerce	per paper	5 credits
Engineering	Paper 50.002	3 credits
	per half-year paper	4 credits
	per full-year paper	6 credits
Law	per 23 hours of lectures	2 credits
Science	per credit	1 credit

Credits in any paper prescribed by any other Faculty or Joint Board of Study shall be as determined by the Head of Department

Note: where a paper appears in both the Science Schedule and the Arts or Commerce Schedule, then the Science credits shall be used.

**Graduate Entry**

8. Subject to the Admission Regulations and Regulation 7 of these Regulations a candidate who has been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, or the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (provided that the candidate has passed at least six papers in Economics, Geography, Mathematics or Management Studies and Labour Relations), or the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, or the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or the Degree of Bachelor of Planning, or the Degree of Bachelor of Science may complete this Degree by:
- (i) substituting for the First Property Examination a Graduate Property Examination which shall consist of Valuation 1 (112.100), Finance 1 (112.105) and Construction 1 (112.115), and
- (ii) completing the Second and Third Property Examinations, less the Part C: Elective Papers.

**Revocation & Transitional Arrangements**

9. (a) The course of each candidate shall be governed by these Regulations and the Regulations governing the Bachelor of Property Administration published in the University of Auckland Calendar for 1992 ("The 1992 Degree Regulations") are revoked subject to the later provisions of this Regulation.
- (b) A candidate who has completed at an acceptable standard the whole or at least six papers including 37.100 of the Intermediate Examination under Regulation 3 of the 1992 Degree Regulations may transfer to the Bachelor of Property Degree subject to completing the Second and Third Property Examinations.
- (c) A candidate who was enrolled in but failed to complete at least six papers of the Intermediate Examination under Regulation 3 of the "1992 Degree Regulations" at an acceptable standard may complete that Examination by substituting as necessary for the paper or papers shown in the column headed "1992 Degree Regulations" the corresponding paper or papers shown in the column headed "Corresponding Papers" together with additional papers approved by the Head of Department to provide the equivalent credits.
- (d) A candidate who has completed the whole of the First Professional Year of the "1992 Degree Regulations" shall be deemed to have completed the Second Property Examination towards the Degree of Bachelor of Property. In order to complete the Bachelor of Property Degree such candidates must complete the whole of the Third Property Examination.
- (e) Any candidate who has failed to complete a Professional Examination under the "1992 Degree Regulations" shall in order to complete that examination substitute for the papers shown in the column headed "1992 Degree Regulations" the corresponding paper or papers shown in the column headed "Corresponding Papers" together with additional papers approved by the Head of Department to provide equivalent credits.
- (f) The provisions of Regulation 7(c) shall apply for the purpose of calculating credits for subjects taken in other Faculties.

1992 Degree Regulations		Credits	Corresponding Papers		Credits
Intermediate Year			First Property Examination		
37.100	Introduction to Property	5	112.101	Introduction to Property	4
13.100	Microeconomics	6	110.103	Economics of Society	4
13.101	Macroeconomics	6			
First Professional Year			Second Property Examination		
37.200	Valuation Method 1	4	112.200	Valuation 2	4

37.202	Property Law 1	3	112.211	Law 2	2
37.203	Residential Construction	4	112.115	Construction 1	2
37.204	Financial Appraisal	4	112.106	Business Accounting 1	2
37.205	Land Use Planning	3	112.118	Land Use Planning 1	2
37.206	Building Technology	3	112.215	Construction 2	2
37.209	Building Economics	3	112.216	Property Economics	2
37.210	Principles of Land Admin	3	112.210	Principles of Property Management	4
<b>Second Professional Year</b>			<b>Third Professional year</b>		
37.300	Valuation Method 2	4	112.300	Valuation 3	4
37.302	Property Law 2	3	112.311	Law 3	2
37.303	Commercial Construction	4	112.315	Construction 3	2
37.304	Advanced Financial App	2	112.306	Investment Markets & Strategies	2
37.305	Urban Land Economics	4	112.316	Urban Land Economics 2	2
37.310	Advanced Land Admin	4	112.310	Advanced Property Management	4
37.312	Research Project	8	112.321	Research Project	4
37.321	Development Process	2	112.217	Principles of Development	2
37.324	Development Management	2	112.317	Advanced Development	2
37.325	Property Finance	2	112.305	Finance 3	2

**Commencement**

10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PROPERTY MProp

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. (1) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Property shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Property and have:
    - (i) attained an average grade of C+ or higher in the course of study of that Degree; or
    - (ii) had at least two years' relevant postgraduate experience in the field of study for this Degree; or
    - (iii) otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Head of Department capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree; or
- (2) Where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may approve the enrolment for this Degree of a candidate who has completed either:
  - (a) (i) the Diploma in Urban Valuation, or
  - (ii) the Diploma in Valuation, or
  - (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration; and who has:
  - (b) through other university study, through relevant practical experience, or otherwise, shown capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.

**Course Content**

2. Every candidate for this Degree shall
  - (a) in the first year take the examinations in three of the papers prescribed in Regulation 3 of these Regulations, except that a candidate who provides evidence of being engaged in full-time employment may be permitted by the Head of Department to present one or two papers in the first year and the remainder in the second year; and
  - (b) in the second year or, in the case of a student engaged in full-time employment in the third year, present a thesis (112.600) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 4.

**Papers**

3. The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

112.400	Property Valuation
112.401	Property Investment
112.402	Property Management
112.403	Property Marketing
112.404	Property Development
112.405	Special Topic
112.406	Special Topic
112.407	Special Topic
112.408	Special Topic
112.409	Special Topic

and not more than one of any other 400 level or higher paper from any department approved by the Head of the Department.

**Thesis**

4. (a) The thesis shall be of the value of four papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some aspect of Property.
- (b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the year following that in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
- (c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.

**Honours**

5. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Where
  - (i) on first examination, a candidate fails a paper; or

- (ii) on first submission, a candidate's thesis is of inadequate standard, Honours shall not be awarded, but a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances (certified as such under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of the candidate's first enrolment for this Degree, but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.

#### Revocation & Transitional Arrangements

- 6. (a) The course of each candidate shall be governed by these Regulations and the Regulations governing the Master of Property Administration published in the University of Auckland Calendar for 1992 ("The 1992 Degree Regulations") are revoked subject to the later provisions of this Regulation.
- (b) A candidate who in or before 1992 was enrolled for MPA under the 1992 Degree Regulations, but has not completed that Degree, may elect
  - (i) to complete MPA under those Regulations, provided the degree is completed by the end of the 1994 calendar year; or
  - (ii) to complete MProp under these Regulations, in which case a candidate who has completed any paper prescribed in Regulation 3 of the 1992 Degree Regulations shown in the column headed "1992 Degree Regulations" shall be deemed to have completed the corresponding paper shown in the column headed "Corresponding Papers".

#### 1992 Degree Regulations

- 37.401 Building Construction
- 37.402 Land Administration
- 37.403 Property Law
- 37.404 Urban Land and Building Economics
- 37.405 Valuation
- 37.406 Appraisal
- 37.407 Real Estate Financing
- 37.408 Property Marketing
- 37.409 Building Restoration
- 37.410 Construction Management

#### Corresponding Papers

- 112.405 Special Topic
- 112.402 Property Management
- 112.406 Special Topic
- 112.404 Property Development
- 112.400 Property Valuation
- 112.401 Property Investment
- 112.407 Special Topic
- 112.403 Property Marketing
- 112.408 Special Topic
- 112.409 Special Topic

#### Commencement

- 7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### BProp

Prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding regulations for BProp are given below.

#### 110.100 Information, Communication & Presentation

Data collection and analysis; written and graphic communication. Keyboarding, document design and editing; numerical and verbal skills, the media.

#### 110.101 Law Government & Politics

Political theory; societies and the nature of development; the idea of law, legal institutions and reasoning; property rights and government regulation; taxation and redistribution; the Treaty of Waitangi.

#### 110.102 Economics & Society

The economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Price determination in various markets. National and International economic issues including banking and government policy.

#### 112.100 Valuation 1

The principles of property valuation. The residential property market and the techniques used in the valuation of single and multi-unit residential land and improvements.

#### 112.101 Introduction to Property

An introduction to the real property market including Maori land issues. The organisation and interaction between land related professions. An historic overview and future trends within a global perspective.

#### 112.105 Finance 1

Introductory concepts in finance. The time value of money and the use of discounted cash flow in appraisal under conditions of certainty.

#### 112.115 Construction 1

Historical and contemporary trends in house design. The principles of residential construction, services, maintenance, defects and repair.

#### 112.118 Land Use Planning 1

Planning history, law and practice. The statutory processes at regional, district and maritime scheme levels. The Resource Management Act including planning application procedures.

#### 112.106 Business Accounting 1

The nature and scope of accounting. Accounting records and journals. Income statements and balance sheets.

#### 112.130 Applied Valuation 1

Applied studies in residential valuation.

#### 112.131 Applied Investment 1

Applied studies in finance and investment.

#### 112.135 Applied Construction 1

Applied studies in residential construction.

#### 112.200 Valuation 2

Valuation of industrial and commercial property. Techniques used in the valuation of income producing properties. Valuation of Land Act. Insurance and asset valuations. Valuation reporting. Valuation of going-concerns and specialised uses.

#### 112.205 Finance 2

Techniques of financial appraisal. Risk and uncertainty and an introduction to portfolio theory. Discounted cash flow approaches to the analysis of development and investment projects.

#### 112.206 Business Accounting 2

Structures of firms. Analysis and interpretation of accounting statements. Forecasting. Accounting for going concerns. Real estate accounting. Taxation and property.

#### 112.210 Principles of Property Management

Principles of management. Fundamentals of property management. Management methodologies and reporting procedures. Residential, industrial and commercial property management.

#### 112.211 Law 2

Contract Law and legal personality.

#### 112.215 Construction 2

The principles of design, construction and servicing of lowrise commercial and industrial buildings.

#### 112.216 Property Economics

Economics of land use and building. Urban growth and status. Competitive land and building rents and values. Development economics and building efficiency.

#### 112.217 Principles of Development

The development process. Titles and marketing. Market Analysis. Land subdivision. Community involvement and control.

#### 112.218 Land Use Planning 2

Current planning and local government issues. Environmental impact reporting. The Resource Management Act including

objection and appeal procedures. Planning tribunal decisions. Effects on property rights and values.

### **112.220 Principles of Marketing**

The marketing plan, market research, buyer behaviour, market segmentation and targeting. Promotion, the listing process and selling techniques.

### **112.230 Applied Valuation 2**

Applied studies in commercial, industrial, or going-concern valuations.

### **112.231 Applied Investment 2**

Applied studies in Finance and Investment.

### **112.232 Applied Management**

Applied studies in Management.

### **112.234 Applied Marketing**

Applied studies in Marketing.

### **112.233 Applied Development**

Applied studies in Development.

### **112.300 Valuation 3**

The valuation of CBD commercial property including computer applications. Valuation of leasehold interests. Ground rental valuations. Compensation valuations. Arbitration practice and expert evidence. Professional practice and ethics.

### **112.305 Finance 3**

Advanced risk and return analysis. Concepts of efficient markets and the measurement of portfolio performance.

### **112.306 Investment Markets & Strategies**

A comparative analysis of different asset markets both nationally and internationally. Property as a corporate asset and an introduction to strategic decision making. Sources of property finance and methods of funding. Loan documentation and the Credit Contracts Act.

### **112.310 Advanced Property Management**

Property portfolio management. Building management techniques including computer applications. Maintenance policies. Lease documentation. The management of specialised properties.

### **112.311 Law 3**

Sale, purchase and lease agreements. Tenancy agreements. Partnerships and companies. Leases, mortgages and arbitration.

### **112.315 Construction 3**

The principles of construction of multi-storey commercial buildings. Human comfort, environmental control and building services.

### **112.316 Urban Land Economics**

Location theory. The property market and real estate cycle. Urban regeneration and investment patterns. Transportation economics.

Urban institutions. Land policies. Housing.

### **112.317 Advanced Development**

The process of planning and evaluating development projects. Appointing and briefing consultants. Feasibility studies. Arranging finance. Building Contracts. The management of development projects.

### **112.320 Advanced Marketing**

The Sale and Purchase Agreement. Legislation affecting real estate agency. Negotiation skills, services marketing and international marketing.

### **112.321 Research Project**

An individual research essay on a specific topic in property.

### **112.330 Applied Valuation 3**

Applied studies in CBD and specialised valuations.

### **112.331 Applied Investment 3**

Applied studies in finance and investment.

### **112.332 Applied Advanced Management**

Applied studies in advanced management.

### **112.333 Applied Advanced Development**

Applied studies in advanced development.

### **112.334 Applied Advanced Marketing**

Applied studies in advanced marketing.

### **112.335 Applied Special Topic**

Applied studies in a special topic.

## **MProp**

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MProp are listed as follows:

### **112.400 Property Valuation**

Advanced studies in valuation theory, methodologies and issues including the development of computerised valuation models.

### **112.401 Property Investment**

The study of advanced investment appraisal techniques applied to property.

### **112.402 Property Management**

Advanced studies in property management, including the management of specialised property and property portfolios.

### **112.403 Property Marketing**

The study of advanced property marketing techniques.

### **112.404 Property Development**

Advanced studies in property development and development management.

### **112.405 to 112.409 Special Topic**

Directed study in property topics as approved by the Head of Department of Property.

## **DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS**

### **DEPARTMENT OF PLANNING**

### **THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PLANNING BPlan**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning shall:
  - (i) follow a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (ii) complete a course of study gaining at least 144 credits from four Planning Examinations comprising 36 credits each in the subjects set out in these Regulations;
- (b) Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall enrol for more than 42 credits in any one year.

#### **Concessions**

2. Candidates who have been awarded or qualified for admission to a degree of this University or have completed a recognised degree from another tertiary institution may be granted admission with such credits as approved by the Senate and be required to:
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than two years comprising a Graduate Planning Examination each year of 42 credits; and
  - (b) take the non-elective papers of the Fourth Planning Examination but not in the first year and to take such other papers as prescribed by the Senate.

3. A candidate who has completed with outstanding merit a relevant recognised tertiary qualification may be granted admission with such credits as approved by the Senate.

Note: The tertiary qualifications currently recognised under Regulation 3 of these Regulations are the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Town and Country Planning or Architecture) and the New Zealand Certificate in Town Planning.

#### Examinations

4. (a) Candidates shall be required to pass as a whole each Planning Examination so that their performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; but
- where a candidate fails to pass a Planning Examination as a whole the candidate may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the next succeeding Planning Examination;
  - a candidate who has not passed the whole of a Planning Examination but has passed 30 credits of that Examination (including all of the papers prescribed in Part A of that Examination) may enrol for a paper or papers of the subsequent Planning Examination as well as the remaining credits of the Planning Examination not completed;
  - a candidate who has passed less than 30 credits of a Planning Examination, whether or not these include the papers prescribed for Part A of that Examination, may not proceed in core papers higher in the degree but must enrol in the Planning Examination papers not passed and may enrol concurrently in non-core papers from the subsequent Planning Examination.
- (b) Candidates whose course in any year consists of more or fewer papers than a full Examination or whose course is taken from more than one Examination shall have their performance in all papers taken in that year considered as a whole.

#### First Planning Examination

5. The First Planning Examination shall consist of:

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Availability	Credits
<b>Part A : Core Papers</b>			
<i>Planning Studios</i>			
113.100	Studio 1A		2
113.101	Studio 1B		2
113.102	Studio 1C		2
<i>Planning Concepts</i>			
113.110	Planning & Community		5
<i>Technical Skills</i>			
110.100	Information, Communication and Presentation		5
<b>Part B: Context Papers</b>			
<i>Context</i>			
110.101	Law Government & Politics (Restriction 110, 102)		5
113.140	Environment & Society		5
113.141	Economics & Community		5
113.142	Social Issues in Planning		5

#### Second Planning Examination

6. The second Planning Examination shall consist of:

##### Part A : Core Papers

##### *Planning Studios*

113.200	Studio 2A	2
113.201	Studio 2B	2
113.202	Studio 2C	2

##### *Planning Concepts*

113.210	Settlement Planning	5
113.211	Design and the Built Environment	4

##### *Technical Skills*

113.220	Techniques for Analysis and Decision Making	5
113.221	Research Methods: Theory and Practice	2

##### *Planning Practice and Management*

113.230	Planning & Resource Management Law	4
---------	------------------------------------	---

##### *Context*

113.240	Environmental Studies	5
---------	-----------------------	---

##### Part B : Elective papers

Not less than 5 credits from the following:

110.200	Introduction to Landscape	3
113.250	Development Planning	2
113.252	Landscape Planning	2
113.260 -		
113.264	Special Topics in Planning Concepts	2
113.265 -		
113.269	Special Topics in Technical Skills	2
113.270 -		
113.274	Special Topics in Planning Practice & Management	2

Up to 5 credits from any other papers prescribed for any other degree or diploma in the University subject to the approval of the Head of the Department.

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Availability	Credits
<b>Third Planning Examination</b>			
7. The Third Planning Examination shall consist of:			
<b>Part A : Core Papers</b>			
<i>Planning Studios</i>			
113.300	Studio 3A		2
113.301	Studio 3B		2
113.302	Studio 3C		3
<i>Planning Concepts</i>			
113.310	Theories of Planning		3
113.311	Planning & Design		4
113.312	Economic Development & Planning		4
113.313	Housing		2
<i>Technical Skills</i>			
113.320	Major Study		2
<i>Planning Practice and Management</i>			
113.330	Resource Management: Regulation & Control		4
113.331	Resource Management Case Studies		2
<i>Context</i>			
113.340	Infrastructure Planning		3
<b>Part B: Elective Papers</b>			
Not less than 5 credits from either Part B of the Second Planning Examination not taken in that Examination or the following:			
113.350	Pacific Development Issues	*	2
113.351	Cultural Planning	*	2
113.352	Economics for Resource Management	*	2
113.353	Tourism Planning	*	2
113.354	Recreation and Reserves Planning	*	2
113.360 -			
113.364	Special Topics in Planning Concepts	*	2
113.365 -			
113.369	Special Topics in Technical Skills	*	2
113.370 -			
113.374	Special Topics in Planning Practice and Management	*	2
113.375 -			
113.379	Elective Studies	*	3
Up to 5 credits from any other papers prescribed for any other degree or diploma in the University subject to the approval of the Head of the Department.			
<b>Fourth Planning Examination</b>			
8. The Fourth Planning Examination shall consist of:			
<b>Part A : Core Papers</b>			
<i>Planning Studio</i>			
113.400	Studio 4A		3
113.401	Studio 4B		3
113.402	Studio 4C		3
<i>Planning Concepts</i>			
113.410	Sustainable Futures		2
113.411	Gender & Planning		2
113.412	Maori Planning Issues		2
113.413	Settlement Design		2
<i>Technical Skills</i>			
113.420	Research Study		5
<i>Planning Practice and Management</i>			
113.430	Professional Practice		2
<b>Part B: Elective Papers</b>			
Not less than 12 credits from Part B of the Third Planning Examination not taken in that Examination, including up to a further 5 credits from any other papers prescribed for any other degree or diploma in the University subject to the approval of the Head of the Department.			
Note: * Starred papers will not be taught during the current <i>Calendar</i> year			
† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current <i>Calendar</i> year unless sufficient staff is available			
<b>Credit for papers in other Faculties</b>			
9. (a) A candidate subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Planning, may take a paper or papers prescribed for a Degree or Diploma in any Faculty of this University up to an equivalent of 15 credits for this degree.			
(b) A candidate enrolled in a paper from another Degree shall comply with the requirements for that paper including those relating to pre-enrolment, corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work unless any of those requirements are waived by the Department from which the paper is taken.			
(c) The credits allowed for the purpose of this regulation shall be:			
<b>Faculty</b>	<b>Segment of Study</b>	<b>Equivalent credits for this degree</b>	
Arts	per paper	5 credits	
Commerce	per paper	5 credits	
Engineering	Paper 50.002	3 credits	
	per half-year paper	4 credits	
	per full-year paper	6 credits	
Law	per 23 hours of lectures	2 credits	
Science	per credit	1 credit	

Credits in any paper prescribed by any other Faculty of Joint Board of Study shall be as determined by the Head of Department.  
 Note: where a paper appears in both the Science Schedule and the Arts or Commerce Schedule, then the Science credits shall be used.

### Substitutions

10. In any case where a candidate enrolled for this Degree has been credited with a paper the content of which is substantially similar to any paper prescribed for this degree the candidate may be required to take in substitution for that paper such paper or papers of equivalent credit value as the Head of the Department determines.

### Honours

11. The Degree of Bachelor of Planning may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work in the best 36 credits in papers at the 300 level or higher, including 12 credits drawn from Fourth Planning Examination Part A. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

### Exceptions

12. (a) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
 (b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### Transitional

13. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who gained credits in any subject or paper under any former Regulation for this degree shall:  
 (i) in the case of a student who has passed either the Graduate Professional Examination or the Second Professional Examination of the 1992 Regulations, complete the Third Professional Examination Prescribed in those Regulations;  
 (ii) in the case of a student who has passed the First Professional Examination of the 1992 Regulations, shall complete an examination comprising 113.220, 113.221, 113.230, the whole of Part A of the Third Planning Examination of these Regulations, except for 113.313, 113.320 and 113.331; and, in the following year the whole of the Fourth Planning Examination in which 113.313 may be included as an elective.  
 (iii) in the case of a student who has passed the Planning Intermediate Examination of the 1992 Regulations, shall complete an examination comprising 113.110 and the whole of Part A of the Second Planning Examination of these Regulations.

### Commencement

14. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PLANNING MPlan

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall before enrolment:  
 (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Planning, and  
 (b) have obtained, in the opinion of the Head of the Department, a sufficiently high standard in Part A of the Third Professional Examination, with no paper graded lower than C.  
 2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate shall take all papers required for this Degree in the same year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of the Department to present three or four papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.  
 3. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper that is the same or substantially equivalent to any other paper being taken or already passed and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

### Course Content

4. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall be required to pass in five papers and a research essay (36.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (36.601) which shall count as two papers. At least two papers and the thesis or three papers and the research essay shall be chosen from Part A; not more than two papers can be chosen from Part B.

#### PART A

- 36.500 Planning Theory  
 36.501 Planning Techniques  
 36.502 Planning Law and Administration  
 36.503-512 Special Topics approved by the Head of Department of Planning  
 36.601 Thesis  
 36.603 Research Essay

#### PART B

- 52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)  
 52.473 Transportation Planning (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)  
 20.436 Urban Geography (as prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA)  
 30.402 A topic on Urban Government and Politics (as prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA)  
 82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology (as prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA)  
 25.383 Social Control of Land (as prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons).  
 115.500 Project (as prescribed for the Degree of MArch) provided that the Head of the Department of Planning approves the relevance of paper 115.500 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

### Thesis

5. Where a thesis (36.601) is required the following conditions shall apply:  
 (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of Planning.  
 (b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the final year in which the papers are taken or within the next three years, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.  
 (c) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be



returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the Examiner.  
**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### Honours

6. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### BPlan

#### First Planning Examination

##### Part A

#### 113.100 Studio 1A

##### 113.101 Studio 1B

##### 113.102 Studio 1C

Introductory exercises and the development of planning skills.

#### 113.110 Planning and Community

Evolution of planning thought and the role of planning in society; planning and development in New Zealand; concepts of critical rationality, procedure and substance.

#### 110.100 Information Communications & Presentation

Data collection and analysis: written and graphic communication. Keyboarding, document design and editing; numerical and verbal skills; the media.

#### 113.140 Environment and Society

Sustainability and equity: responses to the environment and environmental change; environmental basis for settlement patterns.

#### 110.101 Law Government and Politics

Political theory; societies and the nature of development; the idea of law; legal institutions and reasoning; property rights and government regulation; taxation and redistribution; the Treaty of Waitangi.

#### 113.141 Economics and Community

Economic systems; public policy; macro-economics; micro-economics; political economy; settlement economics; resource economics.

#### 113.142 Social Issues in Planning

Social relationships and social institutions. Social issues. Equity, poverty and access to resources.

#### Second Planning Examination

##### Part A

#### 113.200 Studio 2A

#### 113.201 Studio 2B

#### 113.202 Studio 2C

Comparative planning systems; development issues; regional, metropolitan, rural urban and coastal planning.

#### 113.211 Design and the Built Environment

Forces that shape settlements. Theories of sustainable development; modernism and democratic environments. The equitable city; gendered space; the urban village; the creative city.

#### 113.220 Techniques for analysis and decision-making

Inventory, analysis, modelling, evaluation and strategic choice in resource management.

#### 113.221 Research Methods: Theory & Practice

Research techniques and practical applications.

#### 113.230 Planning and Resource Management Law

The Resource Management Act 1991 and other laws affecting local government planning; planning instruments and procedures.

#### 113.240 Environmental Studies

Introduction to global environmental problems of population, resources and pollution.

##### Part B

#### 110.200 Introduction to Landscape

Appreciation and interpretation of landscape values; design in the development of landscape and the management of resources.

#### 113.250 Development Planning

Planning, development and administrative traditions in New

Zealand and other nations.

#### 113.252 Landscape Planning

Assessment of landscape quality; design derivation; applications to rural and urban landscapes.

#### Third Planning Examination

##### Part A

#### 113.300 Studio 3A

#### 113.301 Studio 3B

#### 113.302 Studio 3C

Design, development and ecological planning practice.

#### 113.310 Theories of Planning

Planning theory related to environmental and social ethics. Theoretical approaches concerning the nature, scope and purpose of planning.

#### 113.311 Planning and Design

Design theory, tradition, history, skills and practice.

#### 113.312 Economic Development and Planning

Economics and planning. Local and regional economic development planning. The role of the public, private and nonprofit sectors.

#### 113.313 Housing

National housing resource and housing policy. Housing markets: structure, functions and failures. Housing need and access to housing.

#### 113.320 Major Study

A supervised study developing in detail a particular aspect of planning.

#### 113.330 Resource Management: Regulation and Control

Theory and practice of land use control techniques, plan preparation, implementation and review.

#### 113.331 Resource Management Case Studies

Observing applications for resource consents. Environmental impact studies; mitigation and avoidance of adverse effects.

#### 113.340 Infrastructure Planning

Planning for urban utility services, refuse disposal, communication and travel facilities, and the use of energy.

##### Part B

#### \*113.350 Pacific Development Issues

Role of planning in developing countries with particular reference to the South Pacific region.

#### \*113.351 Cultural Planning

Heritage values, conservation; values of indigenous people; community arts; cultural equity.

#### \*113.352 Economics for Resource Management

Identification and measurement of worth and value in resource management. Economic instruments and cost-benefit evaluation. The economics of sustainability.

#### \*113.353 Tourism Planning

Opportunities, implications and management of tourist resources in New Zealand.

#### \*113.354 Recreation and Reserves Planning

Planning for leisure and recreation; provision and management of open space and other recreational facilities.

#### Fourth Planning Examination

##### Part A

#### 113.400 Studio 4A

#### 113.401 Studio 4B

#### 113.402 Studio 4C

Project work linked to planning at the city/regional level. Discussion and application of advanced planning methodology; regulatory approaches; implementation of the plan.

### **113.410 Sustainable Futures**

Views of the future and alternative societal directions; the multiple dimensions of sustainable futures; developing appropriate policies.

### **113.411 Gender and Planning**

An analysis of urban spatial structure; environmental design; economic development; planning practice and policies with regard to gender.

### **113.412 Maori Planning Issues**

Traditional land and social concepts; the Waitangi Tribunal; the Maori Land Court; contemporary Maori land issues; the Maori Affairs Act; local planning provisions for Maori interests

### **113.413 Settlement Design**

Traditional town development, equity and democracy; public realm; sustainability; the village.

### **113.420 Research Study**

An original investigation in the field of environmental planning.

### **113.430 Professional Practice**

The role and function of planners in public agencies and private consultancies; organisation and management theories and techniques; professional ethics.

## **MPlan**

The prescriptions of the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MPlan are given below:

### **36.500 Planning Theory**

National, regional and metropolitan planning. National resources and policies for development. Theoretical studies to be grounded in Case Studies.

### **36.501 Planning Techniques**

Evolution of planning techniques. Special land use and development controls. Methods of assessing and testing planning proposals. Studies of technique from case studies.

### **36.502 Planning Law and Administration**

Evolution of statutory planning. Methods of land use regulation. Public participation in planning. Development and functions of local government and other planning agencies. Planning administration to be grounded in case studies.

### **Special Topics**

**Approved by the Head of the Department of Planning.**

**36.503 36.508**

**36.504 36.509**

**36.505 36.510**

**36.506 36.511**

**36.507 36.512**

**36.601 Thesis**

**36.603 Research Essay**

**52.491 Public Health Engineering**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

**52.473 Transportation Planning**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

**20.436 Urban Geography**

As prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA.

**30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics**

As prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA.

**82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

As prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA.

**25.383 Social Control of Land**

As prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons).

**115.500 Project**

As prescribed for the Degree of MArch, provided that the Head of the Department of Planning must approve the relevance of paper 115.500 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

# Faculty of Arts

## Contents

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Faculty of Arts	116
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Arts	116
	Schedule of Papers for Bachelor of Arts	118
	Degree of Master of Arts	178
	Schedule of Papers for Master of Arts	179
	Degree of Master of Literature	183
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Department of Anthropology	183
	Department of Art History	185
	Department of Asian Languages and Literatures	186
	Department of Classics and Ancient History	189
	Development Studies	192
	Department of Economics	193
	Department of Education	193
	Department of English	194
	Film and Television Studies	196
	Department of Geography	196
	Department of Germanic Languages and Literature	197
	Hebrew	199
	Department of History	199
	Department of Management Studies & Labour Relations	201
	Department of Maori Studies	202
	Department of Mathematics and Statistics	203
	Department of Music	203
	Pacific Studies	203
	Department of Philosophy	203
	Department of Physics	205
	Department of Political Studies	205
	Department of Psychology	205
	Department of Romance Languages	207
	Department of Russian	210
	Samoan	211
	Social Work	211
	Department of Sociology	211
	Theatre Studies	212
	Women's Studies	212
<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Arts	212
	Diploma in Arts Administration	212
	Diploma in Broadcast Communication	213
	Diploma in Drama	213
	Diploma in English Language Teaching	213
	Diploma in Labour Studies	214
	Diploma in Local Government and Administration	215
	Diploma in Performing Arts	215
	Diploma in Politics and the News Media	215
	Diploma in Professional Ethics	216
	Postgraduate Diploma in Arts	216
	Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research	217
	Postgraduate Diploma in Translation	217
	Diploma Course Prescriptions	218

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### FACULTY OF ARTS

The Faculty of Arts offers a first degree, the Bachelor of Arts, and a Master of Arts, which may be awarded with or without Honours. The BA is intended to be a general Degree, containing a number of different subjects, but at least one subject has to be carried to Stage III level (sometimes informally called a 'major'). Students can choose from a very large number of subjects including some in Science, Commerce and Theology. They can thus partially prepare themselves for a range of occupations, and credits may be granted in respect of College of Education courses. But the concept behind the Degree is more that of a liberal education than a vocational one. In the MA a student usually works within one particular discipline, and more often than not the Degree will include a research component. The BA is, if taken full-time, a 3 year Degree, but it may be taken part-time. The MA, an Honours Degree, must be taken within a limited period, varying according to discipline, but not more than three years in any case. Several diplomas are available within the Faculty, normally post-graduate, and with a vocational emphasis. They include the Diplomas in Broadcast Communication, Drama, Labour Studies, Local Government and Administration, and Performing Arts and Postgraduate Diplomas in Social Research and in Translation. The Diploma in Arts is designed to provide graduates with an opportunity to update or amplify their knowledge in subjects on which their degree concentrated or amplify their knowledge of cognate or relevant disciplines. The Postgraduate Diploma in Arts is designed to give Masters graduates the opportunity to gain a further qualification wholly or substantially in their main subject. The MLitt degree is open to students who have the qualification to attempt a PhD but wish, at least initially, to write a thesis of lesser dimensions. It is expected that the following additional diplomas will be introduced in 1993: Diploma in Arts Administration, Diploma in Politics and the News Media, and Diploma in Professional Ethics.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS BA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are in a range of subjects and classified in three stages, I, II, III.
3. No course of study for the Degree shall include more than seven papers selected from subjects in Group B, nor more than eighteen in total from Pure and Applied Mathematics and subjects in Group B.
4. Every course of study for the Degree shall include:
  - (a) at least six papers in one subject of which three are at Stage III level;
  - (b) at least eleven papers higher than Stage I level selected from two or more subjects;
  - (c) no more than eleven papers in any one subject.
5. Every course of study shall consist of four, five or six subjects: provided that a student may exceed this limit in respect of no more than one paper.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.
7. Except with the permission of the Senate, no candidate in the first year of study for this degree may attempt more than four subjects.

#### Requirements for Particular Subjects

8. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall comply with such of the course Regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.

#### Botany, Chemistry, Economics, Geography, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology

9. (a) A candidate may with the permission of the Senate enrol for Stage II papers of a subject to which this Regulation applies without having been credited with the Stage I papers. Candidates credited with Stage II papers shall not also have the Stage I papers of the subject credited to their courses. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at a Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.
  - (b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects:
 

Applied Mathematics	Chemistry	Geography	Pure Mathematics
Botany	Economics	Physics	Zoology
10. (a) A candidate with previous knowledge of any subject to which this Regulation applies may be required by the Senate to take Stage II papers of that subject without having passed Stage I papers. A candidate who passes Stage II papers shall be credited with Stage II papers but shall not be credited with Stage I papers as papers for any University degree or diploma. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.
 

In a subject where a Beginners and Advanced paper is offered at Stage I level, a candidate with previous knowledge in any subject to which the Regulation applies may be required by the Senate to take the Advanced level paper. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing an Advanced level paper, attained the standard of a pass at Beginners level, the candidate shall have the Beginners level paper credited to his or her course.

  - (b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects: Asian, Germanic, Romance Languages; Greek; Latin; Russian.

#### Law

11. (a) This Regulation applies (notwithstanding the provisions of Regulations 2, 4, and 5) to a candidate for this Degree who has been credited for this Degree with not fewer than fifteen papers (in this Regulation called 'arts papers'), of which three are at Stage III level in one subject and five others are at a higher level than Stage I, and who is not fulfilling Regulation 4(a) above with

- a subject listed in Group B.
- (b) Where the candidate:
- has been credited with fifteen papers and
  - has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with six subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10 (f) below, of which at least three are from Part II - the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with those six subjects as the remaining six papers for this Degree.
- (c) Where the candidate:
- has been credited with more than fifteen but fewer than twenty-one arts papers and
  - has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with one or more subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10 (f) below the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with it or them as the remaining paper or papers for this Degree, provided that only subjects listed in Part II shall be credited as papers at Stage II.
- (d) A candidate who has completed or is completing the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) under the Regulations published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1966, and who invokes this Regulation, may be credited with the subjects Constitutional and Administrative Law in place of the subject Constitutional Law.
- (e) This present regulation being in substitution for that which appeared in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1987 ("the old regulation") - a candidate who before 1988 enrolled for this Degree and for any part of the First Law Examination for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) may proceed under the old Regulation but with the substitution of the Schedule to this present Regulation; upon condition that the candidate completes the course for this Degree in 1988 or 1989.
- (f) **Part I**
- |                |  |         |  |
|----------------|--|---------|--|
| 25.102         | Constitutional Law (before 1989)   | 25.304  | Advanced Family Law                                      |
| 25.103         | Legal System   | 25.306  | Advanced Industrial Law                                  |
| 25.106         | Public Law   | 25.307  | Advanced International Law                               |
| 25.205         | Administrative Law   | 25.310  | Comparative Law  |
| 25.207         | Advanced Criminal Law (after 1991)   | 25.311  | Conflict of Laws   |
| 25.209         | Intellectual Property (previously Copyright, Patents, Trademarks & Unfair Competition) | 25.313  | Environmental Law  |
|                |  | 25.315  | International Trade                                      |
|                |  | 25.316  | Law Reform   |
|                |  | 25.317  | Advanced Legal Philosophy (previously Legal Philosophy)  |
| 25.210         | Criminology  |         | Planning Law   |
| 25.211         | Family Law   | 25.319  | Restitution  |
| 25.212         | Industrial Law   | 25.320  | Air & Space Law  |
| 25.213         | International Institutions   | 25.324  | Maori Land Law   |
| 25.214         | International Law  | 25.325  | Remedies (after 1991)                                    |
| 25.220         | Local Government Law   | 25.331  | Negotiation, Mediation & Dispute Resolution (after 1991) |
| 25.222         | Roman Law (after 1991)   | 25.333  | Advanced Law & Society                                   |
| 25.223         | Women and the Law (after 1991)   |         | Natural Resources Law                                    |
| 25.224         | Pacific Legal Studies  | 25.335  | Environmental Law (after 1991)                           |
| 25.228         | Competition Law (after 1991)   | 25.336  | Medico-Legal Issues (after 1991)                         |
| 25.232         | Legislation  | 225.352 | Problems in Criminal Law                                 |
| 25.234         | Welfare Law  | 225.369 | Advanced Studies in a Selected Topic (after 1991)        |
| 25.239         | Matrimonial Property (after 1991)  | 225.374 | Advanced Studies in a Selected Topic (after 1991)        |
|                |  | 225.301 |  |
| <b>Part II</b> |  |         |  |
| 25.217         | Jurisprudence  | 225.302 | Advanced Studies in a Selected Topic (after 1991)        |
| 25.218         | Legal History  |         |  |
| 25.301         | Advanced Administrative Law  | 225.303 | Advanced Studies in a Selected Topic (after 1991)        |
| 25.303         | Advanced Constitutional Law  |         |  |
| 25.304         | Advanced Criminology   |         |  |
- (g) (i) Passes in 25.225 and 25.226 as published in the 1992 *Calendar* may be credited as subjects for Part II.
- (ii) Students may not include credit for 25.217 if they have passes in 25.225 or 25.226.

### Music

12. (a) Except with the leave of the Senate, no candidates may advance in Music (that is take any papers in that subject beyond Stage II level) unless they have, before enrolling for any Stage I paper in Music, satisfied the Head of Department that they have attained a suitable standard in the subject.
- (b) Candidates advancing in Music shall comply with Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music as if they were enrolled for that Degree.

### Cross-credits, Credit and Exemptions

13. (a) Except in the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the total cross-credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 10, 11 and 12, of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed ten papers for this Degree.
- (b) In the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the maximum number of cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulation 10, 11, and 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be determined by the Dean.
14. A candidate who has successfully completed:
- a course or courses at Teacher's College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council; or
  - the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education; or
  - the course either for the Diploma in Nursing or the Diploma in Physiotherapy at the Auckland Technical Institute and the course for the Diploma in Nursing at Carrington Technical Institute or Manukau Technical Institute or Northland Polytechnic or
  - Studio I for BFA but is not completing that Degree;
  - Legal System for LLB but is not completing that Degree;
  - Introduction to Property for PropAdminInt but is not completing the BPA Degree as listed in the Schedule to Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), may be granted credit for this Degree as provided by that Regulation.
15. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

16. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate shall determine.  
 (c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.  
 (d) A candidate who gained credit in any paper under any of the former Regulations may complete the Degree under these present Regulations.  
 (e) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1981.

#### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, subjects, restrictions and other conditions applying to courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.  
 2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
 3. (a) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>SCHEDULE - GROUP A</b>				
<b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>				
<b>Egyptian Options</b>				
12.100	Near Eastern History			
12.200	Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	*		12.100
12.210	Egyptian Language I			As for 12.200
12.220	Egypt in Dynasties XI-XVII			As for 12.200
12.300	Egypt in Dynasties XI-XVII			12.200
12.310	Egyptian Language II			12.210
12.320	Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	*		12.220
<b>Mesopotamian Options</b>				
12.201	The Neo-Assyrian Empire	*		12.100
12.211	Akkadian Language I			As for 12.200
12.221	Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.			As for 12.200
12.301	The Neo-Assyrian Empire	*		12.221
12.311	Akkadian Language II			12.211
12.321	Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.			12.201
<b>Greek Options</b>				
12.102	Greek History			
12.202	Greece and Persia	*		12.102
12.212	Political Theory & Practice in Imperial Athens	*		As for 12.202
12.222	Tyranny			As for 12.202
12.312	Political Theory & Practice in Imperial Athens	*		12.202 or 12.204 or 12.222 or approved alternative.
12.322	Tyranny			12.202 or 12.204 or 12.212
12.332	Greece and Persia	*		12.204, 12.212 or 12.222
<b>Roman Options</b>				
12.103	Roman History			
12.203	Pax Romana	*		12.103
12.213	Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic			As for 12.203
12.214	Historians of Rome	*		As for 12.203
12.313	Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic			12.203 or 12.204
12.323	Pax Romana	*		12.204 or 12.213
<b>Other Options</b>				
12.104	Literature and Thought of Archaic Greece and Republican Rome			
12.114	Literature and Thought of Classical Greece and Imperial Rome	*		
12.204	Art & Society in Ancient Greece and Rome			12.102 or 12.103 or 12.114 or 12.151

- (b) Where a prerequisite has been waived by a Head of Department and re-imposed as a corequisite the paper or papers as to which that corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless and until the candidate has passed that corequisite.
4. (a) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, if a corequisite of a paper is failed then the paper passed cannot be used as a prerequisite to other courses.
- (b) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, the corequisites marked ♦♦ in the Schedule are linked in the sense that they:
- (i) must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately;
- (ii) will be treated as a unit for the purpose of Examination Regulation 5 (b), of the Examination Regulations.
5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.
- The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
12.102 or 12.103	12.320	By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived.	
As for 12.200	12.300 12.220  12.200	As for 12.200	
As for 12.200	12.301	As for 12.200	
As for 12.200	12.321 12.201  12.221	As for 12.200	
12.100 or 12.103	12.332	As for 12.200	
As for 12.202	12.312 or 10.309	As for 12.202	
As for 12.202	12.322 or 10.309 12.212 10.309  12.222 or 10.309  12.202 or 10.309	As for 12.202	
12.100 or 12.102	12.323 or 09.308	As for 12.200	
As for 12.203	12.313 or 09.308	As for 12.203	
As for 12.203	12.314 12.213 or 09.308  12.203 or 09.308	As for 12.203 As for 12.203  As for 12.203	
	73.105		
	73.105		
12.102 or 12.103 if not already taken as a prerequisite			

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
12.224	Greek Philosophy			73.105 or 12.104 or 12.114.
12.314	Historians of Rome	*		12.103 and any Stage II Ancient History paper
12.324	Historians of Greece			12.102 and any Stage II Ancient History paper

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

03.100	Introduction to Social Anthropology
03.101	Introduction to Archaeology and Biological Anthropology
03.102	Introduction to Maori Society
03.103	Introduction to Ethnomusicology

### Anthropology II

03.200	Ethnography of Island Polynesia	03.100
--------	---------------------------------	--------

03.201	Melanesian Ethnography	†	03.100
03.206	Origins of Civilisation		03.101
03.207	Human Evolution		03.100 and 03.101
03.208	The Coming of the Maori		03.101
03.209	Ethnomusicology		03.100 and 03.103 or 28.114
03.210	Ethnic Groups and Interethnic Relations	†	03.100
03.211	The Ancient Maori World/Te Ao Tawhito		03.100 and 03.102 or 04.101
03.214	Issues in Social Theory	†	03.100
03.215	Method and Theory in Archaeology		03.100 and 03.101
03.216	Maori Kinship and Community	*	03.102 or 04.101
03.217	The Languages of the Pacific		Any Stage I paper
03.218	Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori	*	03.100 or 03.102 or 04.101
03.219	Anthropological Perspectives on Gender		03.100 or 03.101
03.220	Theories in Social Anthropology		03.100 and 03.101

### Anthropology III

03.300	History of Social Anthropology	*	03.220
--------	--------------------------------	---	--------

03.302	Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology	*	03.220
--------	--	---	--------



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	29.204, 73.204		
	12.214	Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Latin III may enrol without prerequisites. Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Greek III may enrol without prerequisites	
		Note: One approved paper from another subject may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be substituted and counted as part of the subject Ancient History for the purposes of Regulation 4 and MA Regulation 1 (b). With the consent of the Head of Department students may offer as Stage III papers one or two of the 12.400-12.409, 12.412, 12.419, 12.422 as prescribed for the MA Degree	
28.105 or permission of Head of Department	04.101, N04.101, T04.101, 04.108 28.114	With permission of the Head of Department at Stage II level (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200	
	04.203, N04.203 28.214	As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200	
	04.202	As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200	
	04.207 83.205	As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200 As for 03.200	
		With permission of the Head of Department at Stage III level (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites As for 03.300	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
03.304	Social History of Maori Land Legislation	*		03.220
03.305	Topics in Contemporary Melanesia	†		03.201 and 03.220
03.306	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	†		03.220
03.308	Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology			03.215
03.309	Advanced Biological Anthropology			03.207
03.313	Contemporary Polynesia	†		03.200 and 03.220
03.314	East Asian Archaeology & Biological Anthropology	*		03.215
03.315	Oceanic Prehistory			03.215
03.316	Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society			03.215 or 03.220
03.318	Ethnomusicology: Music of Oceania			03.209 or 28.214
03.320	The Anthropology of Agriculture			03.215 or 03.220
03.322	Urban Anthropology	†		03.214 and 03.220
03.325	Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology	†		03.215
03.326	Statistical Methods in Anthropology			03.207 or 03.209 or 03.215 or 03.220
03.327	Human Osteology for the Archaeologist	†		03.207
03.330	New Zealand Archaeology			03.215
03.331	Archaeological Resource Management			03.215
03.333	Economic Anthropology			03.220
03.334	Special Topic in Social Anthropology			03.220
03.335	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	†		03.220
03.338	Special Topic in Biological Anthropology			03.207
03.340	Field Methods in Archaeology			03.215
03.341	Regional Approaches to Maori Society	†		03.220
03.342	Approaches to Archaeological Science			03.215
03.343	History of Anthropology			03.207 or 03.209 or 03.215 or 03.220
03.344	Special Topic in Archaeology			03.215

## ART HISTORY

### Art History I

- 19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520  
 19.153 Maori and Other Polynesian Arts  
 19.154 Introduction to New Zealand Art  
 19.155 Topics in Mid to Late 19th Century European Art 1848-1900

19.156 20th Century Western Art

### Art History II

19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art

Any two of 19.151  
 19.152, or 19.153,  
 19.154, 19.155, or  
 19.156

- 19.260 Topics in Baroque Art  
 19.261 Topics in 17th and early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe  
 19.262 Topics in 20th Century Art

As for 19.259  
 As for 19.259

### Art History III

19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art to be prescribed by the Head of Department

Two of 19.257,  
 19.258, 19.259,  
 19.260, 19.261,  
 19.262 or two  
 of 19.251,  
 19.252 or 19.253

- 19.302 Mid 19th Century Painting in France and Britain  
 19.304 Dürer and his Sources and Influence

As for 19.301  
 As for 19.301

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	04.308	As for 03.300	
	03.329	As for 03.300	
	04.302	As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
	03.329	As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
	28.314	As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
	04.315	As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
	04.310	As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	
		As for 03.300	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
19.305	NZ Art (General)			As for 19.301
19.306	Special Topic in Western Art after 1500	†		As for 19.301
19.307	Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day			As for 19.301
19.308	Topics in Early 20th Century Art			As for 19.301
19.309	1993: 20th Century Sculpture Women in Art	*		As for 19.301
19.310	Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art	*		As for 19.301
19.311	Contemporary New Zealand Art			As for 19.301
19.312	Topics in 19th and 20th Century Architecture and Design			As for 19.301
19.313	Michelangelo			As for 19.301

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

### Asian Geography I

20.130	Geography of East Asia		2nd half	
--------	------------------------	--	----------	--

### Asian Geography II

20.240	Geography of Malaysia Singapore and Indonesia	*		
--------	--	---	--	--

## ASIAN HISTORY

### Asian History I

24.130	China Since the Opium War		2nd half	
24.132	Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia		1st half	
24.133	The Development of Modern Japan			

### Asian History II

24.222	China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties		2nd half	Two Stage I papers in History and/or Asian History
24.223	State and Society in pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia	*		As for 24.222
24.224	State and Society in pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia		2nd half	As for 24.222

### Asian History III

24.312	Sino-Japanese relations since the Meiji restoration	*		Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History
24.330	British Imperialism in S.E. Asia		1st half	As for 24.312
24.340	Theravada Buddhism and Islam in S.E. Asian History		2nd half	As for 24.312
24.341	Special Topic: A Paper on Chinese History		1st half	As for 24.312

## ASIAN POLITICS

### Asian Politics II

30.210	Southeast Asian Foreign Policies	*		Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I
--------	----------------------------------	---	--	--

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	19.306 under 1981 Regulations		
	20.310	With permission of the Head of Department a student may enrol in this course without fulfilling prerequisites if two papers in Asian Studies have been passed	
	24.221 under 1980 Regulations	If a candidate attempts papers in both History and Asian History at the same level they will count as papers in separate subjects but not otherwise	
	24.220 under 1980 Regulations 24.220 under 1980 Regulations	The Head of Department may waive one or both of the prerequisites if a candidate is advancing in an Asian language, or, exceptionally in other cases As for 24.222 As for 24.222	
		In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite As for 24.312 As for 24.312  As for 24.312	
		The Head of Department may exempt students who wish to enrol in 30.210, 30.216 or 30.313 from prerequisites, if they have passed other relevant papers in, for example, Asian Geography, Asian History, Asian Politics, or Asian Languages & Literature	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
30.216	Politics of Japan	†	1st half	
<b>Asian Politics III</b>				
30.313	Politics of China		2nd half	Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II

## ASIAN STUDIES

### Asian Studies I

97.100	Introduction to Chinese Thought		1st half	
97.101	Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture	*		
97.102	Introduction to Modern China Through Literature			
97.103	Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese	†	2nd half	
97.120	Indonesian Cultures and Civilizations			
97.121	Introduction to Islam			
97.122	Literary Traditions and Religions of India			
97.140	Japanese Literature in Translation	*		
97.141	Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture			
97.160	Buddhism, Confucianism and Shamanism in Korean Culture	*		

### Asian Studies II

97.200	Major Schools of Chinese Thought		1st half	97.100 or 48.102
97.221	Islamic Civilization	*		97.121
97.222	Early Indian Thought	*		97.122
97.223	Indian Buddhism			97.122

## CHINESE

### Chinese I

48.100	Introduction to Modern Chinese Language A			
48.101	Introduction to Modern Chinese Language B			
48.102	Introduction to Chinese Thought		1st half	
48.104	Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture	*		
48.105	Introduction to Modern China through Literature			
48.106	Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese	†	2nd half	
48.107	Academic Chinese for Native Speakers			

### Chinese II

48.200	Intermediate Modern Chinese			48.100, 48.101
48.201	Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature			48.100, 48.101 or 48.107 and one of 48.102, 48.104, 48.105 or 48.106 As for 48.201
48.202	Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature			
48.203	Major Schools of Chinese Thought		1st half	48.102
48.204	Introduction to Translation	*		48.107 and one of 48.102, 48.104, 48.105 or 48.106

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
		As for 30.210	
	30.108	As for 30.210	
	48.102		
	48.104		
	48.105		
	48.106		
	80.103		
	80.104		
	80.105		
	81.102		
	81.103		
	449.102		
	48.203	Prerequisite may be waived by the Head of Department	
	80.203	As for 97.200	
	80.205	As for 97.200	
	80.206	As for 97.200	
48.101	48.107		
48.100	48.107		
	97.100		
	97.101		
	97.102		
	97.103		
One of 48.102, 48.104, 48.105 or 48.106	48.100, 48.101		
48.201, 48.202	48.204	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
48.200 or 48.204, 48.202		As for 48.200	
48.200 or 48.204, 48.201		As for 48.200	
48.201, 48.202	97.200	As for 48.200	
	48.200	For students entering Stage II under Regulation 10(a), enrolment by permission of Head of Department	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>Chinese III</b>				
48.300	Advanced Modern Chinese			48.200, 48.201, 48.202
48.301	Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature			48.200 or 48.204, 48.201, 48.202
48.302	Readings in Classical Chinese Literature			48.200 or 48.204, 48.201, 48.202
48.303	Translation in Theory and Practice			48.201, 48.202, 48.204 or 48.300

CLASSICAL STUDIES

Papers in the art, thought and literature of Ancient Greece and Rome are taught in Ancient History.

DUTCH

<b>Dutch I</b>				
421.100	Language Acquisition			
421.102	Aspects of Civilisation of the Low Countries			
<b>Dutch II</b>				
421.200	Language Acquisition			

ECONOMICS

<b>Economics I</b>				
13.100	Microeconomics		1st half	
T13.100	Microeconomics		1st half	
13.101	Macroeconomics		2nd half	
T13.101	Macroeconomics		2nd half	
<b>Economics II</b>				
13.200	Microeconomics			13.100 or T13.100 and 13.101 or T13.101
T13.200	Microeconomics			As for 13.200
13.201	Macroeconomics			As for 13.200
T13.201	Macroeconomics			As for 13.200
13.203	Managerial Economics			As for 13.200
13.204	New Zealand Public Economics	*		As for 13.200
13.205	Introduction to Econometrics			13.100 or T13.100 and 13.101 or T13.101. plus one of 26.188 13.102, 26.180 or 26.181
T13.205	Introduction to Econometrics			As for 13.205
13.210	Industrialisation and Economic Development		1st half	As for 13.200
13.211	The International Economy since 1870		2nd half	As for 13.200
13.213	Economic History of USA 1776-1940	*		As for 13.200
13.214	The New Zealand Economy	*		As for 13.200
<b>Economics III</b>				
13.300	Advanced Microeconomic Analysis			13.200 or T13.200



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
48.301, 48.302		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
48.300 or 48.303, 48.302		As for 48.300	
48.300 or 48.303, 48.301		As for 48.300	
48.301, 48.302		As for 48.300	
See papers 12.104, 12.114, 12.204 and 12.224 in the entry for Ancient History.			
		Enrolment by permission of Head of Department	
			Students intending to advance beyond Stage I Economics require an adequate mathematical background and are advised to include 26.108 (or equivalent) in their first year course
13.101 or T13.101 T13.101 or 13.101 13.100 or T13.100	T13.100, 13.103 13.100.13.103 T13.101, 13.103	The corequisite for 13.101 is unlikely to be waived	
T13.100 or 13.100	13.101, 13.103	As for 13.101	
26.108, or one of 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140 26.141, 26.142	T13.200, 13.203	Students who passed 13.103 and 13.104 with at least B- average prior to 1987 can proceed to any Economics II papers other than 13.205, for which a statistical prerequisite is also needed	
As for 13.200	13.200, 13.203	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	T13.201	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	13.201	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	13.200, T13.200	As for 13.200	
	T13.205	As for 13.200	
	T13.205	As for 13.200	
	13.205	As for 13.200 As for 13.200	
	17.201	As for 13.200 As for 13.200 As for 13.200	
			Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302 or 13.305 should have previously passed at least one paper in pure mathematics, and are also strongly advised to have taken 13.205 or T13.205

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
13.301	Macroeconomic Theory and Policy			13.200 or T13.200 and 13.201 or T13.201
13.302	Econometrics			13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201 or T13.201 and 13.205 or T13.205 or 26.280 or 281
13.304	International Trade			13.200 or T13.200
13.305	Financial Economics			13.200 or T13.200
13.306	Classical Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas			13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201 or T13.201
13.307	Public Economics			13.200 or T13.200
13.308	Economics of Labour			13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201 or T13.201
13.309	International Finance			13.200 or T13.200, 13.201 or T13.201 and 13.205 or T13.205
13.310	Economic History of Australia and NZ	†		13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201
13.311	Special Topic			
13.312	Special Topic	*		
13.313	Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939	*		13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201 or T13.201
13.314	Law and Economics			13.200 or T13.200 and 02.100 or T02.100 (or 25.104 and 25.105) or approval of Head of Department
13.315	Special Topic 1993: International Economic Policy Studies			13.200 or T13.200
13.320	Industrial Organisation			13.200 or T13.200

EDUCATION

Education I

14.100      Schooling, Education and Society

14.101      Introduction to Developmental Psychology

Education II

14.200      Comparative Education

A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers must have 14.100 (or with approval of Head of Department, 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101 or 14.109

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
			As for 13.300
			As for 13.300
			As for 13.300
	17.300	With permission of the Head of Department students may take 13.205 or T13.205 as a corequisite for 13.309	
		Enrolment in Special Topic papers requires Head of Department approval As for 13.311	
		As for 13.311	
13.304 or 13.309		Corequisites may be waived for students with a good pass in 13.222	
	14.102	A candidate intending to take Stage III papers or more than two Stage II papers in Education must have passed 14.100 (or with approval of Head of Department, 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101	
	14.109	As for 14.100	
		The Head of Department may waive the prerequisites or restrictions in special circumstances	
		A candidate intending to take two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers A candidate intending to take only one Stage II paper must have the permission of the Head of Department A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage II papers not having passed 14.100 and 14.101 must have the permission of the Head of Department	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
14.201	History of Education			As for 14.200
14.202	New Zealand Education	*		As for 14.200
14.203	Educational Psychology			As for 14.200
14.204	Measurement & Evaluation in Education			As for 14.200
14.206	The Sociology of Education			As for 14.200
14.208	Educational Philosophy			As for 14.200
14.209	Introduction to Methods of Research in Education	*		As for 14.200
14.210	Introduction to Curriculum Studies			As for 14.200
14.211	Child Development: Language processes in early childhood			As for 14.200
14.212	The State and Indigenous Education in Aotearoa			As for 14.200
<b>Education III</b>				A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers.
14.300	Educational Philosophy			
14.301	Comparative Education			As for 14.300
14.302	History of Education			As for 14.300
14.303	School and Society			As for 14.300
14.305	The Guidance Process			As for 14.300, 14.203
14.306	Introduction to Counselling in the Community			As for 14.300
14.308	Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach			As for 14.300, 14.203 or 32.210
14.309	Developmental Psychology		1st half	As for 14.300
14.310	The Psychology of Adolescence			As for 14.300
14.311	Special Education			As for 14.300, 14.203
14.313	Methods of Research in Education			As for 14.300
14.316	Early Determinants of Behaviour			As for 14.300, 14.203
14.317	Organisational Effectiveness	*		As for 14.300
14.319	Special Topic: The Reading Process			As for 14.300
14.320	Cognition and Motivation in the Classroom			As for 14.300, 14.203
14.322	Adult Learning and Education			As for 14.300
14.327	Aspects of Science Education			As for 14.300
14.328	Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education			As for 14.300
14.329	Special Topic: 1993 Pedagogy			As for 14.300
14.330	The Seriously Ill Child			As for 14.300
14.331	Computers in Education			As for 14.300
14.333	Akonga Maori: Nga Take E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga Maori			As for 14.300
14.334	Education Policy Studies	†		As for 14.300
14.335	Historical Perspectives on the Family, School and Society	†		As for 14.300
14.336	Special Topic: Issues in Pacific Island Education			As for 14.300
14.337	Special Topic: Schooling and Ethnic Relations			As for 14.300



Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>ENGLISH</b>				
<b>English I</b>				
18.100	Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare			
18.101	20th Century Literature			
18.103	New Zealand Literature I			
18.104	19th Century Literature			
18.105	Introduction to the Linguistic Study of English			
T18.106	English Language: An Introduction	†		
T18.107	Poetry, Prose and Drama: Past and Present	†		
18.113	New Zealand Literature I			
18.115	Introduction to the Linguistic Study of English			
<b>English II</b>				
18.200	Mediaeval Literature			Any two English I papers
18.201	Language, Literature and Culture			As for 18.200
18.206	Historical and Comparative Linguistics			18.105 or T18.106 or 18.115 and one other English paper or 83.102 and two English I papers
18.210	The Age of Shakespeare: Poetry			As for 18.200
18.213	The Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy			As for 18.200
18.220	20th Century Fiction			As for 18.200
18.221	New Zealand Literature II			As for 18.200
18.222	Modern Poetry 1900-1945			As for 18.200
18.223	Phonetics and Phonology			18.105 and one other English I paper or 83.102 and two English I papers
18.224	Grammatical Analysis			As for 18.223
18.250	English Language for Teachers			

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
		Candidates intending to take 18.200 are advised to take paper 18.100. Candidates should note that for entry to English II it is essential to have passed <i>two</i> English I papers. Candidates may not include more than two English I papers as part of their degree.	
		As for 18.100	
	18.113	As for 18.100	
		As for 18.100	
	T18.106, 18.115, 83.102	As for 18.100	
	18.105, 18.115, 83.102	As for 18.100	
		As for 18.100	
	18.103	BEd candidates may enrol only in 18.113 and 18.115 except in exceptional circumstances	
	T18.106, 18.105, 83.102	As for 18.113	
See Note		Students are advised that it is in their interest to take three English II papers in the same year. Candidates may take a fourth paper in English II either concurrently or in a later year. The taking of a fifth paper requires Head of Department's permission, which will only be given in rare cases. By permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived; such action will however be virtually limited to single papers for students who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4 (a) with three Stage III papers in another subject.	Candidates should note that (i) for entry to English III it is essential to have passed one of 18.200, 18.201, 18.205 or 18.206; one of 18.210 or 18.213; and one other English II paper. (ii) for 18.302, 18.200 is a prerequisite. For 18.304, 18.105 or 18.201 is a prerequisite and for 18.330, 18.224 is a prerequisite. 18.223 is a prerequisite for 18.410 (iii) 18.250 may not be substituted for any Stage III prerequisite papers, though it may be taken in addition.
See Note	18.205, 83.202, 03.212	As for 18.200	
See Note	83.103, 83.200	As for 18.200	
See Note		As for 18.200	
See Note	18.211, 18.212, 18.313, 18.204	As for 18.200	
See Note	18.321	As for 18.200	
See Note		As for 18.200	
See Note		As for 18.200	
See Note	83.203	As for 18.200	
See Note	83.204	As for 18.200	
See Note		18.250 may be taken by students who have passed any four University papers or the equivalent credits, and obtained the permission of the Head of Department	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>English III</b>				
18.301	Old English: Language, Literature and Society			18.200 or 18.201 or 18.205 or 18.206, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper
18.302	Middle English Literature			18.200, 18.210 or 18.213, and one other English II paper
18.303	The Linguistic Analysis of Literature			As for 18.301
18.304	New Zealand English			18.105 or 18.201, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper
18.305	Semantics			As for 18.301
18.314	16th and 17th Century Poetry and Prose			As for 18.301
18.315	16th and 17th Century Drama	*		As for 18.301
18.306	Literature and Culture of the 18th Century			As for 18.301
18.307	Romantic Literature			As for 18.301
18.308	18th Century Novels			As for 18.301
18.320	Victorian Literature			As for 18.301
18.323	American Literature: Poetry			As for 18.301
18.310	Shakespeare: Selected Plays: Comedies and Tragicomedies			As for 18.301
18.319	The History of Literary Criticism			As for 18.301
18.325	Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World			As for 18.301
18.326	Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the 20th Century			As for 18.301
18.327	Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature			As for 18.301
18.328	Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing			As for 18.301



[illegible]

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
18.329	Special Tonic VI as prescribed by the Head of Department: Canadian Literature	*		As for 18.301
18.330	Grammatical Theory			18.224, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper
18.331	Shakespeare on Screen	*		As for 18.310

## FILM AND TELEVISION STUDIES

85.200	Film and Television Studies			Six BA papers: at least four must be from Group A with grades of B+ or better in two of these.
--------	-----------------------------	--	--	--

## FRENCH

### French I

#### Language Papers

34.100	Language Acquisition			
34.102	Language Comprehension	*		
34.104	Language Comprehension in specific areas A: Science	*		
34.106	Language Comprehension in specific areas B: ¶Social Science, ¶Art History	*		
34.108	Language Comprehension in Music	*		
34.151	French for Beginners 1			

34.152	French for Beginners 2			
--------	------------------------	--	--	--

#### Text Papers

34.101	20th Century Literary Texts			
--------	-----------------------------	--	--	--

### French II

34.200	Language Acquisition			34.100
34.201	19th and/or 20th Century Literary Texts			34.100 and one of its corequisites As for 34.201
34.202	19th and/or 20th Century Literary Texts	*		As for 34.201
34.203	19th Century literary texts			As for 34.201
34.205	Mediaeval texts	*		As for 34.200
34.210	Le français des métiers	*		As for 34.200
34.214	Applied language studies			As for 34.200
34.218	Historicity and variation in French	*		As for 34.200

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
As for 18.310		As for 18.301	
As for 18.310	83.300	As for 18.301	
As for 18.310		As for 18.301	As for 18.310
<hr/>			
<hr/>			
<hr/>			
One French I Text paper	All French I language papers other than 34.100 and 34.108 are mutually exclusive except that subject to consent of the Head of Department, 34.100 may be taken after passing any other French I language paper	Selection of a French I language paper is subject to the consent of the Head of Department. Corequisite requirements refer to the courses of students advancing in French	
	As for 34.100	As for 34.100	
	As for 34.100	As for 34.100	
	As for 34.100	As for 34.100	
34.152	As for 34.100 As for 34.100	As for 34.100 The corequisite requirement will not normally be waived. As for 34.100	
34.151	As for 34.100	As for 34.151. As for 34.100	
34.100			
Two French II papers		Corequisite requirements refer to the course of students advancing in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department in exceptional circumstances	
34.200 and one other French II paper		As for 34.200	
As for 34.201		As for 34.200	
As for 34.201		As for 34.200	
As for 34.201		Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department	
As for 34.201		As for 34.200	
As for 34.201		As for 34.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>French III</b>				
34.300	Language Acquisition			34.200
34.302	17th and 18th Century Texts	*		34.200 and two other French II papers
34.306	Mediaeval French Language			As for 34.302
34.307	A Literary Topic	*		As for 34.302
34.308	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century Literature	*		As for 34.302
34.309	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century Literature			As for 34.302
34.310	17th and 18th Century Literary Texts			As for 34.302
34.318	L'Espace francophone: French in France and Overseas			As for 34.302
34.320	Traduction et interprétation consécutive du français	*		As for 34.300
34.322	A linguistic topic	*		As for 34.300

## GEOGRAPHY

### Geography I

20.101	Geography of the Natural Environment		2nd half
T20.101	Geography of the Natural Environment		2nd half
20.102	Society, Space and Place		1st half
T20.102	Society, Space and Place		1st half

### Geography II

20.201	Processes in the Natural Environment			20.101 and 20.102
20.202	Society, Economy and Environment			As for 20.201
20.203	Remote Sensing Techniques			As for 20.201
20.204	Statistical Techniques in Geography			As for 20.201
20.205	Human Impact in the Environment			As for 20.201
20.206	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries	*		As for 20.201

### Geography III

20.302	Regional Processes and Development			Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202
20.303	Geomorphology and Hydrology Biogeography and Climatology			As for 20.302 As for 20.302
20.305	Population Health and Society			As for 20.302
20.306	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries	*		As for 20.302
20.310	Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia	*		As for 20.302
20.312	Special Topic: Development in the Asia-Pacific Region			As for 20.302
20.313	Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography			As for 20.302

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
Two other French III papers		Corequisite requirements refer to the course of students taking more than two Stage III papers in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department in exceptional circumstances	
34.300 and one other French III paper		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
As for 34.302		Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department	
As for 34.302		As for 34.300	
<hr/>			
		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites	
		As for 20.201	
		As for 20.201	
		As for 20.201	
	20.306	As for 20.201	
20.315		Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305	
		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites	
		As for 20.302	
		As for 20.302	
20.315	20.206	As for 20.302	
	20.240	As for 20.302	
		As for 20.302	
		As for 20.302	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
20.314	Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing			As for 20.302
20.315	Research Design and Methods in Human Geography			As for 20.302
20.320	Resources and Environmental Management			As for 20.302
20.321	Special Topic	†		As for 20.302

GERMAN

German I

22.100	Language Acquisition			
22.101	Introduction to German Literature			
22.102	German Civilisation			
22.103	Reading Knowledge of German		2nd,3rd terms	

22.105	Introductory Language Acquisition			
German II				
22.200	Language Acquisition			22.100, 22.101
22.202	20th Century Literature			As for 22.200
22.203	German Linguistics			As for 22.200
German III				
22.300	Language Acquisition			22.200, 22.202, 22.203
22.301	Mediaeval and Romantic Literature			As for 22.300
22.302	18th and 19th Century Literature			As for 22.300
22.303	Post-war Literature	*		As for 22.300
22.304	Special Topic in German Literature	*		As for 22.300
22.309	Special Topic in German Studies 1993: Das deutschsprachige Europa und Neuseeland im 19. und 20. Jahrhundert			As for 22.300
22.350	Translation			22.300, 22.202 22.203

GREEK

Greek I				
10.100	Introduction to Ancient Greek Literature			
10.102	Introduction to the Ancient Greek Language			
Greek II				
10.200	Prescribed Texts			10.100 and 10.101 or 10.102
10.201	Greek Literature			As for 10.200
10.202	Language			As for 10.200
Greek III				
10.300	Prescribed Texts			10.200, 10.201, 10.202
10.301	Greek Literature			As for 10.300

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
		As for 20.302	
20.302 or 20.305		As for 20.302	
		As for 20.302	
		As for 20.302	
22.101	22.103 and 22.105 may not be taken concurrently with 22.100	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage I papers may be waived	
22.100		As for 21.100	
22.105	22.100 and its corequisite 22.101 may be taken after passing 22.105 and 22.103	As for 22.100	
22.103	As for 22.103	As for 22.100	
22.202, 22.203	A student who presents or has presented 22.200 without having passed 22.100 may not enrol in 22.103 or 22.105	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage II papers may be waived	
22.200, 22.203		As for 22.200	
22.200, 22.202		As for 22.200	
22.301, 22.302		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage III papers may be waived	
22.300, 22.302		As for 22.300	
22.300, 22.301		As for 22.300	
22.300, 22.301		As for 22.300	
22.300, 22.301		As for 22.300	
			Enrolment by special permission of Head of Department only
10.102	10.101		
10.201, 10.202		The Head of Department may waive prerequisites for students with sufficient previous knowledge and corequisites in special cases	
10.200, 10.202		As for 10.200	
10.200, 10.201		As for 10.200	
10.301, 10.302			
10.300, 10.302		As for 10.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
10.302	Language and History of Language			As for 10.300
10.303	Prescribed texts			10.300, 10.301, 10.302
10.304	Literature			10.300, 10.301, 10.302

## HEBREW

### Hebrew I

23.110	Introduction to Biblical Hebrew
--------	---------------------------------

## HISTORY

### History I

24.100	From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: issues of peace and war		2nd half
24.101	The Russian Revolution		1st half
24.105	The U.S.A. in the 20th Century		2nd half
24.107	Women in New Societies		1st half
24.109	Special Topic: A topic in Modern European History	*	
24.122	New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the 19th Century		1st half
24.123	New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori, Pakeha and Polynesian in the 20th Century		2nd half
24.140	Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700		1st half
24.141	Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875	*	
T24.150	Invention, Science and Society	†	2nd half
T24.151	New Zealand and the Wider World		1st half

### History II

24.200	Rome and the Barbarians		1st half	Two Stage 1 papers in History and/or Asian History or two of 12.100, 12.102, 12.103
24.201	Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III		2nd half	As for 24.200
24.214	Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1500-1660		1st half	As for 24.200 but excluding 12.100, 12.102, 12.103
24.215	Seventeenth-Century England: A Social History		2nd half	As for 24.214
24.216	Modern France 1871 to the Present	*		As for 24.214
24.217	Special Topic: A Topic in Modern European History	†	2nd half	As for 24.214
24.218	Special Topic: A Topic in New Zealand History	†	2nd half	As for 24.214
24.219	Special Topic	†		As for 24.214
24.230	Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific		1st half	
24.233	Australian Social History 1788-1990		1st half	As for 24.214
24.234	New Zealand Communities 1840-1940		2nd half	As for 24.214
24.235	German History 1871 to the Present		2nd half	As for 24.214
24.236	Special Topic: Colonial America	†	2nd half	As for 24.214
24.237	The First 100 Years: Mexico and Peru in the Sixteenth Century, and New Zealand in the Nineteenth Century; a History of the Colonised		1st half	As for 24.214



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
10.300, 10.301	10.300 (except with syllabus change) 10.301 (except with syllabus change)		
	23.100, 23.101 375.160		
	24.322		
	24.120, 24.121 24.120. 24.121		
	82.102 after 1984		
		In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive prerequisites or require them to be taken as corequisites As for 24.200	
	24.210	As for 24.200	
	24.211	As for 24.200  As for 24.200 As for 24.200  As for 24.200  As for 24.200  As for 24.200 As for 24.200 As for 24.200 As for 24.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>History III</b>				
24.301	The Mexican Revolution		2nd half	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History
24.302	The Reign of Henry VIII	*		As for 24.301
24.305	New Zealand Legal History		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.307	The Origins of the First World War		1st half	As for 24.301
24.315	Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.320	Special Topic: A Topic in New Zealand History		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.321	German Conservatism in the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries		1st half	As for 24.301
24.323	Special Topic	†		As for 24.301
24.325	Immigration and Settlement in Australia		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.329	Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the present day		1st half	As for 24.301
24.332	Early Monasticism		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.333	A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair		1st half	As for 24.301
24.334	Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.336	Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe		2nd half	As for 24.301
24.342	Special Topic	†		As for 24.301
24.343	Special Topic	†		As for 24.301
24.351	Waitangi: the Treaty and the Tribunal		1st half	As for 24.301
24.354	Radicals and Dissenters in American Culture and Politics, 1840s to present		1st half	As for 24.301

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

80.100	Language Acquisition A	
80.101	Language Acquisition B	
80.103	Indonesian Cultures and Civilizations	
80.104	Introduction to Islam	
80.105	Literary Traditions and Religions of India	
80.106	Beginning Sanskrit	†

### Indonesian II

80.200	Intermediate Language Acquisition		80.100, 80.101
80.201	Introduction to Modern Indonesian Literature		80.100, 80.101
80.202	Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay Poetry	†	80.100, 80.101
80.203	Islamic Civilizations	*	80.104
82.205	Early Indian Thought	*	80.105
80.206	Indian Buddhism		80.105
80.207	Modern Javanese	†	80.100, 80.101
80.208	Culture and Society in Contemporary Indonesia		80.100, 80.101

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
		<p>In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite.</p> <p>Students taking History III papers should note that it may prove impossible, owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes, to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p> <p>As for 24.301</p>	
80.101 80.100	97.120 97.121 97.122  80.303		
80.201, 80.202 or 80.208		<p>By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived.</p> <p>As for 80.200</p>	
80.200, 80.202 or 80.208 80.200, 80.201		As for 80.200	
	97.221	As for 80.200	
	97.222	As for 80.200	
	97.223	As for 80.200	
	80.307 under 1992	As for 80.200	
	Regulations		
80.200, 80.201		As for 80.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>Indonesian III</b>				
80.300	Advanced Language Skills			80.200, 80.201, and one of 80.202 or 80.208
80.301	Introduction to Classical Malay Language and Literature			As for 80.300
80.302	Modern Indonesian Literature			As for 80.300
80.306	Language of the Media			80.200
80.308	Literary Javanese	†		80.207
80.309	An Approval Special Topic	†		As for 80.300

## ITALIAN

<b>Italian I</b>				
35.104	Italian Language in Opera and Song	†		
35.106	Italian Language Studies (i)			
35.107	Italian Language Studies (ii)			
35.110	Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature	†		
35.111	A special topic	†		
<b>Italian II</b>				
35.200	Language Acquisition			35.106, 35.107
35.204	Italian Fiction and Cinema			35.106, 35.107
35.209	Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (i) (Texts in Italian)			As for 35.204
35.210	Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (ii) (Texts in English)			Any six Stage One Arts papers from Group A in the <i>Calendar</i> . In the case of Fine Arts Students, a candidate must have passed the first Professional Examination
35.230	20th Century Poetry	*		
35.231	20th Century Poetry and Drama			As for 35.204
<b>Italian III</b>				
35.300	Language Acquisition			35.200 and two other Italian II papers except 35.210
35.302	14th Century Texts: Dante			35.200 and two other Italian II papers except 35.210
35.303	14th Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca			As for 35.302
35.321	Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian			As for 35.302

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
80.300		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived As for 80.300	
80.300		As for 80.300	
80.300		As for 80.300	
80.300		As for 80.300	
80.300		As for 80.300	
35.107	35.102, 35.103		
35.106	35.102, 35.103		
Two from 35.202-35.231	Students not fulfilling BA Regulation 4 (a) in Italian who wish to take 35.200 by itself or 35.200 and one other paper may seek Departmental approval		
35.200 and one other Italian II paper As for 35.204	35.210		
	This paper does not qualify as a Prerequisite for Stage III Italian, 35.209		
As for 35.204	As for 35.204	As for 35.204	
Two from 35.302 -35.333	No paper may be taken at Stage III whose content corresponds to that of a paper already passed at Stage II	Students not fulfilling BA Regulation 4 (a) in Italian who wish to take 35.300 by itself or 35.300 and one other paper may seek Departmental approval	
35.300 and one other Italian III paper	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
35.322	L'italiano nel mondo del lavoro: Working with Italian			As for 35.302
35.331	A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film	†		As for 35.302
35.332	Breaking the Frame: A Problem in Italian Literature and Visual Arts			As for 35.302
35.333	20th Century Poetry and Drama	*		As for 35.302

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

81.100	Introduction to the Japanese Language A			
T81.100	Introduction to the Japanese Language A	†		
81.101	Introduction to the Japanese Language B			
T81.101	Introduction to the Japanese Language B	†		
81.102	Japanese Literature in Translation	*		
81.103	Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture			
81.110	Oral Japanese for Beginners	*		

### Japanese II

81.200	Intermediate Japanese A			81.100 or T81.100. 81.101 or T81.101
81.201	Intermediate Japanese B			As for 81.200
81.202	Intermediate Japanese C			As for 81.200

### Japanese III

81.300	Modern Japanese A			81.200, 81.201, 81.202
81.301	Modern Japanese B			81.200, 81.201, 81.202
81.302	Classical Japanese Language and Literature			81.200, 81.201, 81.202
81.303	Japanese Communicative Skills			81.200, 81.201, 81.202

## KOREAN

### Korean I

449.100	Language Acquisition A			
449.101	Language Acquisition B			
449.102	Buddhism, Confucianism and Shamanism in Korean Culture	*		
449.103	Korean Study Abroad			

### Korean II

449.200	Intermediate Korean A			449.100, 449.101
449.201	Intermediate Korean B			449.100, 449.101
449.202	Translation from and into Modern Korean			449.100, 449.101
449.203	Korean Study Abroad			449.200, 449.201, 449.202

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	Enrolment by permission of Head of Department	
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	
As for 35.302	As for 35.300	As for 35.300	
<hr/>			
81.101 or T81.101	T81.00		
As for 81.100	81.100		
81.100 or T81.100	T81.101		
As for 81.101	81.101		
	97.140		
	97.141		
81.100 or T81.100, 81.101 or T81.101			
81.201, 81.202		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
81.200, 81.202		As for 81.200	
81.200, 81.201		As for 81.200	
81.301 and 81.302 or 81.303		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
81.300 and 81.302 or 81.303		As for 81.300	
81.300, 81.301		As for 81.300	
81.300, 81.301		As for 81.300	
<hr/>			
449.101			
449.100	97.160		
449.100, 449.101	449.203		
449.201, 449.202		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage II papers may be waived	
449.200, 449.202		As for 449.200	
449.200, 449.201		As for 449.200	
	449.103	As for 449.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>Korean III</b>				
449.300	Advanced Korean A			449.200, 449.201 449.202
449.301	Advanced Korean B			449.200, 449.201 449.202
449.302	Translation from and into Modern Korean			449.200, 449.201 449.202
449.303	Traditional and Modern Korean Literature	*		449.200, 449.201 449.202

LATIN

<b>Latin I</b>				
09.100	Introduction to Latin Literature			
09.102	Introduction to the Latin Language			
<b>Latin II</b>				
09.200	Prescribed Texts			09.100 or 09.103. 09.101 or 09.102 or equivalent qualifications
09.201	Latin Literature			As for 09.200
09.202	Language			As for 09.200
<b>Latin III</b>				
09.300	Prescribed Texts			09.200, 09.201. 09.202
09.301	Latin Literature			As for 09.300
09.302	Language and History of Language			As for 09.300
09.303	Prescribed texts			09.300, 09.301, 09.302
09.304	Literature			09.300, 09.301. 09.302

LINGUISTICS

Linguistics I

83.102	Introduction to Linguistics
83.104	Language and Society

Linguistics II

83.200	Historical and Comparative Linguistics		83.102 or 18.105
83.203	Phonetics and Phonology		83.102 or 18.105
83.204	Grammatical Analysis		83.102 or 18.105
83.205	Languages of the Pacific		Any Stage I paper

Linguistics III

83.300	Grammatical Theory		Permission of Head of Department
83.301	Special Topics in Linguistics	†	Permission of Head of Department
83.302	Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics	†	Permission of Head of Department
83.303	Languages of Polynesia	†	83.103 or 04.204



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
449.301, 449.302		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage III papers may be waived	
449.300, 449.302		As for 449.300	
449.300, 449.301		As for 449.300	
09.102	09.103	Enrolment in Latin I is restricted to not more than three years' school experience in Latin	
		As for 09.100	
09.201, 09.202		The Head of Department may waive corequisites and prerequisites at Stage II level for those with equivalent qualifications	
09.200, 09.202		As for 09.200	
09.200, 09.201			
09.301, 09.302		The Head of Department may waive corequisites at Stage III level in special cases	
09.300, 09.302		As for 09.300	
09.300, 09.301		As for 09.300	
	09.300 (except with syllabus change)	As for 09.300	
	09.301 (except with syllabus change)	As for 09.300	
	18.105, 18.115 83.202, 03.212, 18.205, 18.201		
	83.103, 18.206		
	18.223		
	18.224		
	03.217		
	18.330		
	04.305	Available to a candidate who has not passed 83.103 or 04.204 provided that four papers in any subject or subjects have been passed and 83.200 is taken as corequisite	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
83.305	Linguistic Analysis of Literature			Permission of Head of Department
83.306	Philosophy of Language	*		Permission of Head of Denartment
83.307	New Zealand English			Permission of Head of Department
83.309	Field Methods	†		83.203 and 83.204, or permission of Head of Denartment
83.310	Special Topic in Linguistics	†		Permission of Head of Department
83.311	Language and Statistics	*		Permission of Head of Denartment
83.312	Semantics			Permission of Head of Department
83.313	Conversational Analysis			83.104
83.314	Sociolinguistics	*		83.104

MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

Management Studies & Labour Relations I				
72.101	Organisation & Management			
T72.101	Organisation & Management			
Management Studies & Labour Relations II				
72.204	Oreanisational Behaviour			72.101 or T72.101: and one of 32.108, 32.118, 82.100
T72.204	Organisational Behaviour			As for 72.204
72.207	Labour Relations		2nd half	72.101 or T72.101: and one of 13.100, 13.101, 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103
T72.207	Labour Relations	†	2nd half	As for 72.207
Management Studies & Labour Relations III				
72.303	Comparative Labour Relations		1st half	72.207 or T72.207
72.313	Business and Society		2nd half	Permission of Head of Denartment
72.316	Organisational Psychology			As for 32.301; or 72.204 or T72.204
72.317	Women in Organisations		2nd half	72.101 or T72.101 or permission of Head of Denartment
72.325	Organisation Theory & Development		1st half	72.203 or 72.204 or T72.204
72.340	Special Topic		1st half	Permission of Head of Denartment
72.341	Snecial Tonic	†		Subject to permissionof Head of Department
72.342	Special Topic	†		As for 72.342

MAORI STUDIES

Maori Studies I				
04.101	Introduction to Maori Society			
N04.101	Introduction to Maori Society			
T04.101	Introduction to Maori Society			
04.106	Introduction to Written Maori			
04.107	Introduction to Spoken Maori			

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	18.303		
	29.202		
	18.304		
	04.313		
	18.305		
	T72.201, 72.203 72.201, 72.203		
	T72.204		
	72.204 T72.207		
	72.207		
	32.312		
04.107 or T04.107 04.106 or T04.106	03.102, N04.101, T04.101, 04.108 03.102, 04.101, T04.101, 04.108 03.102, 04.101, N04.101, 04.108		

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
04.109	Maori Language: Structure and Translation			
T04.109	Maori Language: Structure and Translation	†		
04.110	Maori Language: Maori Literature and Writing			
T04.110	Maori Language: Maori Literature and Writing	†		
04.111	Maori Language: Oral and Aural			
04.112	Structure of Te Reo	†		
04.113	Introduction to Maori Material Culture	†		
<b>Maori Studies II</b>				
04.202	The Ancient Maori World/ Te Ao Tawhito			03.102 or 04.101 or N04.101 or T04.101 or 04.108 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department
04.203	The Coming of the Maori			
N04.203	The Coming of the Maori			
04.204	Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts			04.100 as taught in or before 1992 or 04.110 and either 04.109 or 04.112
04.205	Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills			04.104 as taught in or before 1992 or 04.110 and 04.111
04.206	A Topic in Maori Material Culture	†		
04.207	Maori Kinship and Community	*		04.101 or 03.102 or 04.108
04.208	Treaty of Waitangi Issues	†		03.100 or 04.101 or 03.102 or 04.108
<b>Maori Studies III</b>				
04.302	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	†		One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology
04.303	Maori Oratory: Whaikōrero, Non-Casual Speech Forms	†		Permission of Head of Department
04.304	Maori Poetry and Song	†		04.204 or 04.205
04.305	Languages of Polynesia	†		83.103 or 04.204
04.306	Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts			04.204
04.307	Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills			04.204 and 04.205

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
04.110 or T04.110 and 04.111	T04.109	Enrolment is restricted to fluent speakers or those with three or more years of school Maori or good passes in 04.106 and 04.107. Corequisites may be waived in special cases	
04.110 or T04.110 and 04.111	04.109	As for 04.109	
04.109 or T04.109 and 04.111	T04.110	As for 04.109	
04.109 or T04.109 and 04.111	04.110	As for 04.109	
04.109 or T04.109 and 04.110		As for 04.109	
04.109 or T04.109		Available only to fluent speakers. Corequisite may be waived in special cases.	
	03.211		
03.102 or 04.101 or N04.101 or T04.101 or 04.108 or permission of Head of Department	03.208, N04.203		
As for 04.203	03.208, 04.203		
04.204, 04.205		Corequisites 04.204, 04.205 waived for native speakers of Maori	
	03.216		
	04.209		
04.306 and 04.307	03.306	Head of Department may waive the corequisites for Stage III papers for students who are not taking Maori Studies papers as fulfilment of BA Degree Regulation 4(a)	
As for 04.302		As for 04.302	
As for 04.302 As for 04.302 04.307	83.303	As for 04.302 As for 04.302 As for 04.302	
04.306		As for 04.302	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
04.308	Social History of Maori Land Legislation	*		One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology or permission of Head of Department
04.309	Whanaungatanga-Whakapapa	*		One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies
04.310	Regional Approaches to Maori Society	†		One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology or permission of Head of Department
04.311	Special Topic in Maori Studies	†		Permission of Head of Department
04.312	Computer Text Analysis and Research in Maori Studies	*		Permission of Head of Department
04.313	Language and Statistics	*		Permission of Head of Department
04.314	Te Kauwata Waahine Maori	†		04.204 and 04.205 or permission of Head of Department
04.315	Special Topic in Maori Studies: New Zealand Archaeology			03.215 or 04.203 or 03.208

## MATHEMATICS APPLIED

A detailed schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations.

The following rules must be read in conjunction with the Schedule:

Six credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MUSIC

### Music I

28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint

28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music

28.103 Music in Society

28.104 Music and the Twentieth Century

28.105 Basic Musical Techniques

28.106 History of Jazz

28.113 Acoustics for Musicians

28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology

### Music II

28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis

28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
As for 04.302	03.304	As for 04.302	
As for 04.302		As for 04.302	
As for 04.302	03.341	As for 04.302	
As for 04.302		As for 04.302	
As for 04.302		As for 04.302	
As for 04.302	83.311	As for 04.302	
As for 04.302		As for 04.302	
As for 04.302	03.330	As for 04.302	

## MATHEMATICS PURE

A detailed Schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations.

The following rules must be read in conjunction with the Schedule:

Six credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult *Calendar Degree course Prescriptions* for Department of Music.

28.101, 28.103	28.122	A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II
28.100, 28.103		As for 28.100
28.100, 28.101		As for 28.100
28.104 or 28.114 28.100, 28.101, 28.103 28.100, 28.101, 28.103 28.101 or 28.105 or permission of Head of Department	28.101    03.103	
28.202: one of 28.203-208	28.209	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint			As for 28.201
28.203	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ○			As for 28.201
28.204	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era □	*		As for 28.201
28.207	The Classic-Romantic Era ○			As for 28.201
28.208	The Twentieth Century □	*		As for 28.201
28.214	Ethnomusicology			28.114; as for 28.201
28.223	Musicology			As for 28.201
Music III				
28.301	Analysis			28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208
28.302	Harmony and Counterpoint	†		As for 28.301
28.303	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ○			As for 28.301
28.304	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era □	*		As for 28.201
28.307	The Classic-Romantic Era ○			As for 28.301
28.308	The Twentieth Century □	*		As for 28.301
28.314	Ethnomusicology: Music of Oceania			28.214; as for 28.301
28.322	Special Topic	†		
28.323	Musicology			28.223; as for 28.301
28.324	Special Topic	†		

PACIFIC STUDIES

79.100	The Political Economy ○ of the Pacific		2nd half	
79.101	Topics in Pacific Arts □	*		

PHILOSOPHY

Philosophy I

29.100	Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge			
29.101	Introduction to Logic			
29.104	Introduction to Ethics and Social Philosophy			

Philosophy II

29.200	Philosophy of Mind	*		Any two Philosophy I papers
29.201	Logic II		1st , 2nd terms	29.101 and one other Philosophy I paper
29.202	Philosophy of Language	*		As for 29.200
29.203	Philosophy of Science		1st, 2nd terms	Either any two Philosophy I papers or two Political Studies I papers including either 30.102 or 30.109



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
28.201			
28.201			
28.201	28.205		
28.201	28.206		
28.201			
28.201	03.209		
28.201			
one of 28.303 -	28.309		
28.308			
28.301			
28.301	28.203		
28.301	28.205		
28.301	28.207		
28.301	28.208		
28.301	03.318		
28.301			
28.301			
28.301			
			<b>Transitional:</b> A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the 1986 <i>Calendar</i> and who has passed 28.101, 28.102 and 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better shall complete the course under those Regulations but, where required by Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.
		By special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived	
	29.102, 29.103		
		By special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage II papers may be waived As for 29.200	
	83.306	As for 29.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
29.204	Greek Philosophy			As for 29.200
29.205	Political Philosophy II			As for 29.203
29.206	History of Philosophy IIA	*		As for 29.200
29.207	Philosophy of Religion	*		As for 29.200
29.208	Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge II			As for 29.200
29.209	Continental Philosophy II			As for 29.200
29.210	Applied Ethics			Either any two Philosophy I papers or one Philosophy I paper and either 30.102 or 30.109
29.211	History of Philosophy IIB	*		As for 29.200
29.212	Philosophy of the Arts			As for 29.200
29.213	Philosophical Issues in Feminism			As for 29.203
29.214	Special Topic		2nd, 3rd terms	As for 29.200
29.215	Special Topic	*		As for 29.200
Philosophy III				
29.300	Theory of Knowledge III	*		Any two Philosophy II papers
29.301	Metaphysics III	*		As for 29.300
29.302	History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)		1st, 2nd terms	As for 29.300
29.303	Continental Philosophy III			As for 29.300
29.304	Ethics III			Either two Philosophy II papers including 29.205 or 29.210 or else 29.102 or 29.104 plus any two Philosophy II papers
29.305	Logic III			29.201 and any one other Philosophy II paper
29.306	Language, Truth and Meaning			29.101 and any two Philosophy II papers
29.307	Topics in Recent Philosophy			As for 29.306
29.308	Special Topic	†		As for 29.300
29.309	Special Topic		2nd, 3rd terms	As for 29.300
29.310	Political Philosophy III			As for 29.300

PHYSICS

Physics I			
31.101	The Physical Universe		
31.102	The World of Physics		

POLITICAL STUDIES

Political Studies I			
30.106	Foreign and Defence Policies World Survey	1st half	
30.107	An Introduction to New Zealand Politics		
30.109	Major Political Thinkers in the Western Tradition		
30.110	An Introduction to Comparative Politics	2nd half	

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	73.204, 12.224	As for 29.200 As for 29.200  As for 29.203 As for 29.203 As for 29.200  As for 29.200 As for 29.200    As for 29.200 As for 29.200 As for 29.200	
	29.309	As for 29.200  As for 29.200  By special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage III papers may be waived As for 29.300 As for 29.300  As for 29.300 As for 29.300	
	26.315	As for 29.300  As for 29.300  As for 29.300 As for 29.300  As for 29.300	
	29.214	As for 29.300	
	30.305	As for 29.300	
	31.100 31.140, 31.141, T31.122		
	T30.111		
	30.202		
	30.102		
	T30.112		

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
T30.111	Introduction to International Relations		2nd half	
T30.112	Introductory Comparative Politics		1st half	
<b>Political Studies II</b>				
30.201	British Politics		2nd half	Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I
30.204	New Zealand Foreign Policy		1st half	As for 30.201
30.209	Modern Political Ideologies		1st half	As for 30.201
30.211	Public Administration: Central and Local		1st half	As for 30.201
30.213	Special Topic	†	2nd half	As for 30.201
30.214	Democracy in Theory and Practice		1st half	As for 30.201
30.215	Russian and Post-Soviet Politics	†	2nd half	As for 30.201
30.217	South Pacific Foreign Affairs	*		As for 30.201 and/or Pacific Studies
30.218	US Politics		1st half	As for 30.201
<b>Political Studies III</b>				
30.301	A Topic in the Structure of International Relations and the Formulation of Foreign Policy	*		Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II
30.302	A Topic in Conflict Resolution: Regulation v. Revolution in Southern Africa			As for 30.301
30.304	Political Learning and Political Behaviour		1st half	As for 30.301
30.305	Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas			As for 30.301
30.306	Data Analysis in Political Studies		1st half	As for 30.301
30.307	Integration and Nationalism in Europe		1st half	As for 30.301
30.309	The Television Audience		2nd half	As for 30.301
30.310	Public Administration: Theory and Process	*		As for 30.301
30.311	Comparative Public Policy	†		As for 30.301
30.312	Green Politics		2nd half	As for 30.301
30.314	Special Topic: Political Elites in Anglo-American Democracies		1st half	As for 30.301
30.315	Australian Politics	*		As for 30.301
30.318	Special Topic	†	2nd half	As for 30.301
30.319	God, Reason and History: Political Thinking in Europe c.1640-c.1848			As for 30.301
30.320	Special Topic	†		As for 30.301
30.321	Special Topic	†		As for 30.301

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	30.106		
	30.110	<p>If T30.112 is not concentrating on European Politics, the restriction will be waived.</p> <p>In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage II papers may be waived or or taken as corequisites As for 30.201</p>	
	30.105	<p>As for 30.201 As for 30.201</p> <p>As for 30.201</p>	
	30.101	<p>As for 30.201</p> <p>As for 30.201</p>	
	30.100	<p>As for 30.201</p> <p>In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage III papers may be waived or taken as corequisites As for 30.301</p> <p>As for 30.301</p>	See also Asian Politics 30.210, 30.216
	29.310	As for 30.301	
	30.303	As for 30.301	
		<p>As for 30.301 As for 30.301</p> <p>As for 30.301 As for 30.301 As for 30.301</p>	
30.212		<p>As for 30.301 As for 30.301 As for 30.301</p> <p>As for 30.301 As for 30.301</p>	See also Asian Politics 30.313

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>				
<b>Psychology I</b>				
32.108	Introduction to General Psychology			
32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology			
32.118	Introduction to General Psychology			
32.119	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	*		
T32.128	Psychology as a Social Science			
T32.129	Psychology as an Experimental Science			
<b>Psychology II</b>				
32.220	Human Experimental Psychology			32.108 or 32.118 or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129
32.230	Introduction to Neuroscience			32.108 or 32.118 or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129; or 38.102
32.240	Social and Developmental Psychology			32.108 or 32.118 or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129
32.250	Animal Learning and Behaviour			32.108 or 32.118 or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129; or 39.103
<b>Psychology III</b>				
32.301	Psychology of Individual Differences			3 papers from 32.210, 32.220, 32.225, 32.230, 32.240, 32.250; or all of 32.209, 32.211, 32.212, 32.213, 32.214, 32.215 and from 1995 26.181 or 26.182
32.303	Cognitive Science			As for 32.301
32.304	Personality and Psychotherapy			As for 32.301
32.305	Human Neuroscience			As for 32.301 or 67.201
32.306	Research Methods in Psychology			As for 32.301
32.307	The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing			As for 32.301
32.308	Research Topic			As for 32.301
32.309	Learning			As for 32.301
32.311	Social Psychology			As for 32.301
32.312	Organisational Psychology			As for 32.301
32.313	Special Topic in Psychology	†		As for 32.301
32.314	Ergonomics			As for 32.301
32.315	Abnormal Psychology			As for 32.301
32.316	Life-span Developmental Psychology			As for 32.301

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	32.118, T32.128 32.119, T32.129 32.108, T32.128 32.109, T32.129 32.108, 32.118 32.109, 32.119		
	32.207, 32.209, 32.211	In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage II papers may be waived or taken as corequisites As for 32.220	
	32.207, 32.212, 32.213		
	32.214, 32.215	As for 32.220	
	32.206, 32.210	As for 32.220	
		In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites for Stage III papers may be waived or taken as corequisites	
		As for 32.301 As for 32.301	
		As for 32.301	
		As for 32.301	
		As for 32.301	
Four of 32.301-32.316		Enrolment requires approval of Head of Department As for 32.301 As for 32.301 As for 32.301 As for 32.301	
	72.316	As for 32.301 As for 32.301 As for 32.301	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>RUSSIAN</b>				
<b>Russian I</b>				
43.100	Russian Language Acquisition 1			
43.101	Russian Language Acquisition 2			
43.111	Introduction to a Slavonic Language 1993: Croatian			
43.112	Russian Civilisation			
43.113	The Classics of Russian Literature			
<b>Russian II</b>				
43.210	Language Acquisition: Russian			43.100, 43.101
43.211	(i) Introduction to Modern Russian and (ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century			43.100, 43.101
43.212	The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century			43.100, 43.101
<b>Russian III</b>				
43.310	Language Acquisition: Russian			43.210, 43.211, 43.212
43.311	Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics			43.210, 43.211, 43.212
43.312	The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century □	*		43.210, 43.211, 43.212
43.313	Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century ○			43.210, 43.211, 43.212
<b>SAMOAN</b>				
<b>Samoan I</b>				
478.100	Samoan for Beginners		2nd, 3rd terms	
478.101	Spoken and Written Samoan for fluent speakers		1st, 2nd terms	
<b>SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES</b>				
<b>Scandinavian Studies I</b>				
46.100	Language Acquisition 1			
46.101	Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation			
46.102	Language Acquisition 2			
<b>Scandinavian Studies II</b>				
46.200	Language Acquisition			46.100 and 46.102
46.201	Introduction to Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics			46.100 and 46.102
46.202	Scandinavian Drama and Film			46.100 and 46.102
46.203	Modern Swedish Novels and Short Stories	*		46.100 and 46.102



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
❖43.101			
❖43.100			
❖43.211, ❖43.212		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
❖43.210, ❖43.212		As for 43.210	
❖43.210, ❖43.211		As for 43.210	
Two from ❖43.311 to ❖43.313		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	
❖43.310 and either 43.312 or 43.313		As for 43.310	
❖43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.313		As for 43.310	
❖43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.312		As for 43.310	
			❖ Linked corequisite papers must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately.
46.102			
46.100			
Either 46.201, 46.202 or 46.203, 46.204		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage II papers may be waived	
46.200, 46.202		As for 46.200	
46.200, 46.201	22.409	As for 46.200	
46.200, 46.204		As for 46.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
46.204	Swedish Poetry	*		46.100 and 46.102
<b>Scandinavian Studies III</b>				
46.300	Language Acquisition			46.200 and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 and 46.204
46.301	Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics			46.200, 46.203 and 46.204
46.302	Scandinavian Drama and Film			46.200, 46.203, 46.204
46.303	Modern Scandinavian Novels and Short Stories	*		46.200, 46.201 and 46.202
46.304	Scandinavian Poetry	*		46.200, 46.201 and 46.202

## SOCIOLOGY

### Sociology I

82.100	Issues and Themes in Sociology		2nd half	
82.101	New Zealand Society: Structure and Change		1st half	
82.102	Sociology and the Origins of the Modern World		1st half	
82.103	Debates in Social Policy	*		
82.104	An Introduction to Sociological Analysis: Gender, Ethnicity and Class in New Zealand		2nd half	

### Sociology II

82.200	Social Theory and Modern Society		1st half	Two from 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104
82.201	Social Research Methods: an Informal Introduction	*		One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104, As for 82.201
82.202	A Topic in Comparative Sociology: New Zealand Community Studies		2nd half	
82.204	Sociology and Social Problems	*		As for 82.201
82.205	Class Analysis		1st half	As for 82.201
82.207	Sociology of the Family	*		As for 82.201
82.208	Special Topic: Sociology of Occupations/Work		1st half	As for 82.201
82.209	Social Change and Modernisation: an Introduction to the Sociology of Development		1st half	One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104, 79.100
82.210	Special Topic	*		As for 82.201
82.211	Sociology and Popular Culture	*		As for 82.201
82.212	Class, Race and Gender Inequality in Australia and New Zealand	*		As for 82.201
82.213	Ethnicity		2nd half	As for 82.201
82.214	Sociology of Gender		2nd half	
82.215	Special Topic: Law, Inequality and the State		2nd half	

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
46.200, 46.203		As for 46.200	
Either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites for Stage III papers may be waived	
46.300, 46.302	46.201	As for 46.300	
46.300, 46.301	46.202, 22.409	As for 46.300	
46.300, 46.304	46.203	As for 46.300	
46.300, 46.303	46.204	As for 46.300	
	82.104		
	24.141		
	82.101	In 1993 this paper will be taught only on the premises of Manukau Polytechnic	
		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites or corequisites may be waived in any paper.	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		Not available to students who have taken 82.302.	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		Not available to students who have taken 82.307	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		Not available to students who have taken 82.305	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	
		As for 82.200	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>Sociology III</b>				
82.300	Industrial Sociology	*		82.200 and one other Stage II Sociology paper As for 82.300
82.301	A Topic in Political Sociology: Capitalist Restoration in the Worker States		1st half	
82.302	Family and Gender in the Pacific		1st half	As for 82.300
82.303	A Topic in the Sociology of Religion	*		As for 82.300
82.304	A Topic in Minority and Ethnic Relations: Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups	*		As for 82.300
82.305	Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand: Class, Race and Gender		1st half	As for 82.300
82.307	Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernisation: The Pacific in the World System		2nd half	As for 82.300
82.308	Law in Society	*		As for 82.300
82.309	Special Topic	*		As for 82.300
82.310	Special Topic: Social Research	*		As for 82.300
82.311	Special Topic	*		As for 82.300
82.312	Sociological Analysis and Method	*		As for 82.300
82.313	Sociology of a Selected Region	*		As for 82.300
82.314	Women/Deviance: The Politics of Naming		2nd half	As for 82.300
82.315	Sociology of the Arts	*		As for 82.300
82.316	Research Projects: Design and Practice	*		As for 82.300
82.317	Sociology of the Welfare State	*		As for 82.300
82.318	Sociology of the Media		1st half	As for 82.300
82.319	A Topic in Contemporary Social Theory: Postmodern Social Theory		2nd half	As for 82.300
82.320	Qualitative Sociological Methodologies		1st half	
82.321	Quantitative Sociological Methodologies		2nd half	
82.322	Crime and Society		1st half	

**SPANISH****Spanish I**

45.101	20th Century Literary Texts	*		
45.102	Language: Oral, Aural and Translation from Spanish to English	*		
45.103	Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation			
45.104	Language Acquisition			
45.105	Language Acquisition			

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
		Not available to students who have taken 82.208 in 1989	
		Not available to students who have taken 82.212	
		Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department	
			Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their Degree must attempt 82.320 or 82.321 as one of them.
	45.100 45.104/ 45.105		
45.105	45.100;		
45.104	45.102 45.100; 45.102		

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
45.107	Language Acquisition (Advanced)			
45.108	Language Acquisition (Advanced)			
<b>Spanish II</b>				
45.200	Language Acquisition			45.100/45.104/ 45.105
45.201	Golden Age Literary Texts	*		45.100 and 45.101 or 45.103; or 45.104/45.105 or 45.107/45.108 As for 45.201
45.202	19th and 20th Century Literary Texts			
45.203	Literary Analysis with Prescribed Texts			As for 45.201
45.204	20th Century Latin American Texts			As for 45.201
45.206	Spanish Study Abroad Programme			As for 45.201
45.207	Modern Hispanic Literature	*		As for 45.201
45.208	Language Acquisition (Advanced)			45.107/45.108
45.209	"Practising Critics" in the Hispanic World	*		As for 45.201
45.210	Introduction to Spanish Literature and its Context	*		As for 45.201
<b>Spanish III</b>				
45.300	Language Acquisition			45.200
45.301	Medieval Literary Texts	*		45.200 or 45.208 and two other Spanish II papers As for 45.301
45.302	Golden Age Literary Texts	*		
45.303	19th Century Literary Texts	*		As for 45.301
45.304	20th Century Literary Texts			As for 45.301
45.305	20th Century Latin American Literary Texts	*		As for 45.301
45.306	Spanish Study Abroad Programme			As for 45.301

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
45.108	45.100, 45.102, 45.104/ 45.105	Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department	
45.107	45.100, 45.102, 45.104/ 45.105	Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department	
Two other Spanish II papers	45.208	By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present one or more papers at Stage II level provided that he/she has passed in one Stage I paper As for 45.200	
45.200 or 45.208 and one other Spanish II paper		As for 45.200	
As for 45.201		As for 45.200	
As for 45.201		As for 45.200	
As for 45.201		As for 45.200	
45.200	45.306	As for 45.200	
45.200 or 45.208 and one other Spanish II paper		As for 45.200	
Two other Spanish II papers	45.200	By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.104/45.105 may enrol in 45.208 instead of 45.200. As for 45.200 As for 45.200†	
As for 45.201		As for 45.200	
As for 45.201		As for 45.200	
Two from 45.301-45.307 or 309	45.308	By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present: (a) 45.300 only provided that he has passed in 45.200, (b) one or more papers other than 45.300, provided that he has passed in 45.200 or one Stage I paper As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.302-45.307 or 309		As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301 45.303-45.307 or 309		As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301, 45.302, 45.304- 45.307 or 309		As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301- 303, 45.305-307, 45.309		As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-304, 306, 307 or 309		As for 45.300	
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-305, 307 or 309	45.206	As for 45.300	

Paper No	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
45.307	Modern Hispanic Literature			As for 45.301
45.308	Language Acquisition (Advanced)			45.208
45.309	Introduction to Professional Translation			45.208

THEATRE STUDIES

486.201	Theatre Studies	*		4 BA papers including at least one with a literary content
---------	-----------------	---	--	--

WOMEN'S STUDIES

Women's Studies I				
488.100	Women, Gender and Society	†	2nd half	
488.101	Representing Women: Images and Words	†	1st half	
Women's Studies II				
488.200	Feminist Theories	*		488.100 and 488.101 or CCE Certificate in Women's Studies
Women's Studies III				
488.300	Feminist Research and Scholarship	*		488.200 and one other Stage II Women's Studies paper

SCHEDULE - GROUP B

Accounting and Finance				
01.104	Introduction to Accounting and Finance			
T01.104	Introduction to Accounting and Finance			
Planning				
113.240	(Environmental Studies)			
Biochemistry				
Botany				
Chemistry				
Computer Science				
Environmental Science				
Geology				
Physics				
Physiology				
Zoology				
Hebrew Bible	Papers from Groups C and D of the BTheol Schedule			
New Testament	Papers from Groups C and D of the BTheol Schedule			
Systematic Theology	Papers from Groups C and D of the BTheol Schedule			
Church History	Papers from Groups C and D of the BTheol Schedule			



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-45.306 or 309 Two from 45.301-45.307	45.300	(As per all Stage III papers). As for 45.300  By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.200 may enrol in 45.308 instead of 45.300. As for 45.300. By special permission of Head of Department 45.300 may be a corequisite, or 45.200 a prerequisite. As for 45.300.	
45.308 and one from 45.301-45.307			
	CCE Certificate in Women's Studies CCE Certificate in Women's Studies	By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived  By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived	
	01.102 or 01.103 or 01.100 or T01.100 or 01.101 or T01.101 01.100 or T01.100 or 01.101 or T01.101 64.200, 84.200, 36.262	Six credits in each subject at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in that subject (BA) Four credits in each subject at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in that subject (BA) Four credits in each subject at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in that subject (BA)  As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry As for Biochemistry	

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. † Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

☐ Taught in even numbered years

'T' prefix - taught at the Tamaki Campus

○ Taught in odd numbered years

'N' prefix - taught at Northland Polytechnic

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARTS MA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Arts shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, except as provided in Regulation 2 below, and
  - (b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for a subject as listed in the Schedule to these Regulations and have obtained a grade higher than an average of C in the Stage III papers in that subject;
  - (ii) provided that in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having completed at least nineteen papers, including eleven papers at advanced level, for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, provided that:
  - (a) the course proposed for this Degree will extend over not fewer than two academic years;
  - (b) they have obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree of the subject which they propose to take for this Degree;
  - (c) they satisfy the conditions in Regulation 1 (b) above, or are exempted from them;
  - (d) the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree are not prerequisite to the course for this Degree;
  - (e) they enrol for these two papers in the first year of their course for this Degree;
  - (f) should they not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of their Master of Arts course, their Master's course shall be suspended until they have passed the remaining paper or papers.
3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more according to the requirements for the respective subjects in the schedule but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed three years in duration.
4. A candidate presenting subject 18, Languages and Literature, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1 (b) (i) in respect of each of the languages in his or her course. A candidate presenting subject 22, Mathematics, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1 (b) (i) in respect of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.
5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule provided that the Head of Department may require a student who fails to achieve a sufficient level in his paper or papers to substitute a further paper or papers for a thesis, dissertation or research essay where these are prescribed.
6. A candidate for this Degree may not:
  - (a) substitute a paper or papers for any paper in which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree;
  - (b) resit any paper for this Degree except as provided in Regulation 13.
7. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate for this Degree in any subject listed in the appended Schedule other than the subject 18, Language and Literature, may with the permission of the Senate take:
  - (i) one Stage III or Master's paper or;
  - (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper or;
  - (iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one being taken for this Degree, or;
  - (iv) two Master's papers or one Master's and one Stage III paper in subjects that both differ from the one being taken for this Degree, if in each case such a paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
8. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper he or she has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
9. No candidate who has previously failed in a subject for this Degree shall enrol a second time in the same subject without the permission of the Senate. For the purpose of this Regulation, subject 18, Languages and Literature and any one of the individual subjects which under Clause 18 of the appended Schedule may be used to make up a combined Languages and Literature course, shall be regarded as the same subject.
10. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department.

### Thesis

11. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject; or with the approval of the Senate shall consist of a review of the literature of some special problem, which may be combined with the reception of some standard investigation on an aspect of that problem.
  - (b) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a certificate shall be supplied to the Registrar by the supervisor stating that laboratory work has been carried out within the University.
  - (c) Except where otherwise provided in the Schedule, candidates must present their thesis in the year in which they first sit for their degree or, with the consent of the Head of Department concerned, in either of the subsequent two years, provided that the time may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate.
  - (d) Candidates shall submit their thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of the Department. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis to the Head of Department concerned.
12. Where a dissertation or research essay is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The candidate shall present the dissertation or research essay in the year prescribed under the appropriate Departmental heading in the Schedule.
  - (b) Except as provided in the Schedule, the candidate shall submit the dissertation or research essay to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is due to be completed or at a subsequent date within the same academic year if so approved by the Head of Department concerned, provided that the period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate. The Registrar shall deliver the dissertation or research essay to the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis, see Examination Regulations 16.

### Honours

13. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or

compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:

- (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or
  - (ii) to sit or resit in the year following all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass of passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.
- (c) A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than three academic years shall not be eligible for Honours unless the Senate so decides.
14. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject already passed for the Degree of Master of Commerce, or for the Degree of Master of Science, or as a principal subject for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).
15. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.

## SCHEDULE

### (1) Ancient History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Ancient History including three Stage III papers in Ancient History OR six papers in Ancient History if a student has passed three Stage III papers in Latin or Greek. From 1990 candidates must have two papers in a relevant ancient language, either 12.210, 12.310 or 12.211, 12.311 or 10.100, 10.101 or 09.102, 09.103. In 1993 the prerequisites will be 12.210, 12.310 or 12.211, 12.311 or 10.100, 10.102 or 09.100, 09.102.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a research essay which counts as one paper, OR four papers and a thesis which counts as three papers. Normally a candidate will present three papers and one paper of documents in the ancient language associated with one of those papers in the first year, and either a further paper with a paper of associated documents and an associated research essay (12.603), or a three paper thesis (12.601) in the following year. First year papers will be selected from 12.400 to 12.460. One or two papers not taken at Stage III may be substituted for first year papers, but will not have associated papers of documents in the ancient language.

A candidate in full time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to take two papers with one associated paper of documents in the ancient language in the first year, two papers with one associated paper of documents in the second year, and the research essay in the third, or one paper with its paper of associated documents in the second and three paper thesis in the third.

### (2) Anthropology

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in Anthropology, or Anthropology and Maori Studies, or Anthropology and Linguistics, including three Stage III papers in Anthropology;

*Requirements:* Either four papers (at least two at the 400 level, and 03.343 if not already passed) and a thesis (03.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers (at least three at the 400 level, and 03.343 if not already passed) and a research essay (03.603) counting as one paper. The papers shall be selected from 03.400 to 03.425, 03.300 to 03.344, 83.300 to 83.313, 04.302 to 04.314; with no more than three papers from the following group of papers: 03.300 to 03.343, 83.300 to 83.313, 04.302 to 04.314.

A candidate shall normally present four papers in the first year, although a candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances, two papers in the first year.

### (3) Art History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Art History including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers or four papers and a thesis (19.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 19.400 to 19.414; except that among the first four papers presented for the Degree one paper may be taken from options presented for Art History III, and that a second paper prescribed for Art History III may be presented by students presenting three further papers instead of a thesis; but no paper that has been credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall be taken for this Degree. All candidates shall present four papers in the first year: except that a candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in each of two years. Candidates presenting papers only shall present the remaining three papers in one year.

### (4) Asian Studies

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III papers in an Asian Language: and such Stage II or III papers in the other subjects as the respective Heads of Departments shall approve.

*Requirements:* Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Masters level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Masters papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Masters papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

### (5) Chinese

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Chinese including 48.300 or 48.303, 48.301 and 48.302.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (48.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers and a dissertation (48.604) which counts as one paper. Candidates shall present all papers and the dissertation or the thesis in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining two papers and dissertation or thesis in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with the permission of the Head of Department. The papers to include 48.419 and papers selected from 48.400 to 48.421. The dissertation or the thesis must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with the permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

### (6) \*Development Studies

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers, including three at Stage III level, in any one of Anthropology (Social), Economics, Education, Geography, History, Maori Studies, Political Studies, Sociology or in exceptional cases such other subject approved by the Co-ordinating Committee on behalf of the Senate. Before being admitted to this course of study candidates will need to satisfy the Co-ordinating Committee on behalf of the Senate that they have sufficient experience in the appropriate area.

*Requirements:* Either (a) four papers and a thesis (487.601) which shall count as three papers; or (b) with the special permission of the Co-ordinating Committee, six papers and a research essay (487.603).

In respect of (a) and (b), paper 487.400 must be included and the remaining papers shall be selected from Master's papers listed in this Schedule from not more than two departments. Candidates must complete a coherent course of study approved by the Co-ordinating Committee on behalf of the Senate.

**(7) Economics**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Economics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (13.603) which shall count as one paper. The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.422.

**(8) Education**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Education including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 14.400 to 14.428, 04.401, 04.402.

OR (ii) Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper.

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit a candidate who has attempted a thesis or a dissertation or a folio of casework to complete the MA as

(iii) Seven papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following.

Note: In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

**(9) English**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in English including 3 papers at Stage III chosen in accordance with the corequisites.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or five papers and a thesis (18.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation (18.604) which counts as one paper. Students presenting seven papers in the same year must include 18.413 if they are not presenting a dissertation.

A candidate presenting:

(a) Seven papers or

(b) Six papers and a dissertation shall present all papers or all papers and the dissertation in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining three papers or two papers and dissertation in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year. The papers shall be selected from 18.400 to 18.433 and from (but shall include not more than one of) the Stage III English papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

**(10) French**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of French including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 34.400 and a thesis (34.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 34.400 and a research essay (34.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 34.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers.

Paper 34.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

Paper 34.417 is not available to students who have passed paper 34.214.

Paper 34.425 is not available to students who have passed paper 34.310.

**(11) Geography**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Geography including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (20.601) which counts as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. A candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year.

Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.447.

**(12) German**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject German including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* (i) Four papers and a thesis (22.611) which counts as three papers. Paper 22.400 and three papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440. OR (ii) Six papers and a research essay (22.603) which counts as one paper. Paper 22.400 and five papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440. OR (iii) Seven papers. Paper 22.400 and six papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440.

Candidates shall present four papers in the first year and either the thesis, or the research essay and two papers, or three papers in the year next following. In exceptional cases, candidates may present seven papers in one year.

Those students taking their MA over two years may present all papers at the end of their second year, if they have within the first year been officially admitted to a university of a German-speaking country to pursue a course of bona-fide study for no longer than six months.

**(13) Greek**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Greek including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a research essay (10.603) which counts as one paper. Papers are to be selected from 10.400 to 10.409 and must include 10.400 and one of 10.401 or 10.404. Normally a candidate will present four papers in the first year, and two papers and a research essay (counting as one paper) in the second. A candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over three years, normally three papers in the first two years and the research essay in the third.

**(14) History**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects History or Asian History or both including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Either (a) six papers, and a dissertation (24.604) counting as one paper; or (b) (with the permission of the Head of Department) four papers and a thesis (24.611) counting as three papers.

In respect both of (a) and (b), papers are to be selected from 24.400 to 24.425, and must include 24.410. With the permission of Head of Department, however, a student following the (a) option may include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included.

In respect both of (a) and (b) students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 431 but including 24.410) in the first year. Those following the (a) option must complete their remaining work in their second year. However, a student in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to pursue the (a) option by attempting fewer papers in the first year and spreading the remaining work over the one or at most two years following.

**(15) Indonesian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Indonesian including three papers at Stage III.

*Requirements:* Five papers together with a thesis (80.601) which counts as two papers on a selected topic; or six papers together with

a dissertation (80.604) which counts as one paper; or alternatively seven papers to be selected in consultation with the Head of Department. One of the papers must be 80.400. The dissertation or the thesis must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

#### **(16) Italian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Italian including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 35.400 and a thesis (35.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 35.400 and a research essay (35.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 35.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers.

Paper 35.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

#### **(17) Japanese**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 81.401 and a thesis (81.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (81.603) which counts as one paper. A candidate shall normally complete the degree in two years and present four papers in the first year, although a candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in each of two years and the remaining papers in a third year. The thesis or research essay must be presented by 1 November in the final year of the course. For the thesis, however, this date may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department, and may be further extended by the Senate in special cases.

#### **(18) Languages and Literature**

*Prerequisites:* For the specific prerequisites for the individual courses a candidate is referred to the individual subjects making up a combined Languages and Literature course.

*Requirements:* Seven papers or their equivalents (see below) in any two of the subjects (i) to (xii); three papers to be taken from each language chosen and the seventh paper to be taken from either language chosen to be approved by the Head of the Department concerned.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (i) English   | (vii) Russian  |
| Three or four papers from 18.400 to 18.433.                     | Paper 43.410 and two or three from 43.411 to 43.425  |
| (ii) Greek  | (viii) Spanish                                       |
| Paper 10.400, and two or three from 10.401 to 45.428.           | Paper 45.400 and two or three from 45.401 to 10.409. |
| (iii) Latin   | (ix) Chinese   |
| Paper 09.400 and two or three from 09.401 to 09.409.            | Three or four papers from 48.400 to 48.421.          |
| (iv) French   | (x) Indonesian                                       |
| Paper 34.400 and two or three from 34.603 and 34.401 to 34.429. | Three or four papers from 80.400 to 80.409.          |
| (v) German  | (xi) Japanese  |
| Paper 22.400 and two or three from 22.401 to 22.440.            | Three or four papers from 81.400 to 81.413.          |
| (vi) Italian  | (xii) Maori Studies                                  |
| Paper 35.400 and two or three from 35.401 to 35.424.            | Three or four papers including 04.400 and 04.401.    |

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the first year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present three papers in the year next following.

Candidates taking the degree over two years may with the approval of the Head(s) of Department concerned substitute in their second year either a dissertation or research essay for one paper or a thesis for two or three papers.

#### **(19) Latin**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Latin including three Stage III papers, together with Greek 10.100, 10.101 or approved alternatives.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a research essay (09.603) which counts as one paper. Papers are to be selected from 09.400 to 09.409 and must include 09.400 and one of 09.401 and 09.404. Normally a candidate will present four papers in the first year, and two papers and a research essay (counting as one paper) in the second. A candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over three years, normally three papers in the first two years and the research essay in the third.

#### **(20) Linguistics**

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in the subject Linguistics including three papers at Stage III level; or with the permission of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, five papers in the subject Linguistics and three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (83.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 83.400 to 83.406, 83.300 to 83.313 except that not more than two papers may be selected from 83.300 to 83.313.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

#### **(21) Maori Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Maori Studies including three papers at Stage III level, two of which must be Maori Language papers 04.306 and 04.307.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (04.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 04.400 to 04.406 and 04.302 to 04.315 with not more than two papers being selected from 04.302 to 04.315.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

#### **(22) Mathematics**

*Prerequisites:* Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least three (or, in exceptional cases, two) of 26.225, 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, 26.290, 26.293 plus sixteen 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics including at least 12 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics.

*Requirements:* Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis (26.601) which will count as 20 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an Advanced Course of Study (26.605) which will count as 20 credits.

The selection of papers is to be made, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics, from the papers Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499. Up to eight of these credits may be replaced by eight Stage III credits taken from papers in Mathematics

not taken for any other degree or diploma.

### **(23) Music**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Music including 28.301 at least one of 28.303 to 28.308, at least one of 28.314 and 28.323; where necessary a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of the Department of his or her proficiency as a performer, or the ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.423. All candidates must enrol for 28.423 (Seminar in Musicology) and one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414 in their first year of enrolment. Candidates may with the approval of the Head of Department include one paper not previously taken from those listed for Music III, but their course must include two examinable papers from those listed above.

### **(24) Philosophy**

*Prerequisites:* Eight Philosophy papers, including 29.101 and four Philosophy III papers (or 29.101 and three Philosophy III papers in the case of students who are taking or have taken three Stage III papers in another subject). Students will also be required to satisfy the Head of Department that they have adequately covered the areas of (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy in their BA Degree. Adequate coverage normally means passes in papers in at least three of the areas at Stage III.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (29.601) which shall count as three papers. One and only one paper may be selected from those at Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.310) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers must be selected from 29.400 to 29.422. A candidate shall present either all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, either present the remaining three papers in the year following or, with the approval of the Head of Department, a thesis.

The Head of Department may, in special circumstances (e.g. if the student is part time), approve a different sequence of papers over a period of time which accords with Regulation 3, no less than two papers being taken in any one year.

### **(25) Political Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.424, and 30.500 as prescribed for DipLGA except that one paper not already taken may be drawn from 30.300 to 30.318.

Each candidate shall present four papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following, except that, with the consent of the Head of Department, the candidate may present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following or, in special circumstances, four papers in the first year, two in the second year and the remainder in the third. Other combinations of papers may be approved by the Head of Department in special cases provided that: they comply with Regulations 3 & 13 (c) at the MA Regulations and; no candidate may present fewer than two papers in either of the first two years.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it by 1 November in the year of presentation.

### **(26) Psychology**

*Prerequisites:* Either: (i) Nine papers in the subject Psychology including 32.306 and three other Stage III papers in Psychology or (ii) In special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department eight papers in the subject Psychology including 32.306 and two other Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (32.601) which shall count as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. In exceptional circumstances a candidate with demanding responsibilities may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year. The papers shall be selected from 32.401 to 32.430.

### **(27) Russian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Russian including three Stage III papers (43.310 and two from 43.311, 43.312 and 43.313).

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (43.611) which shall count as three papers, or six papers and a research essay (43.603) which shall count as one paper. Papers 43.410 and at least one paper from 43.311 and 43.411 to 416 and at least one from 43.312, 43.313 and 43.419 to 43.425. A candidate presenting seven papers may present four papers in the first year and the remaining three papers in the year next following, or, with the consent of the Head of Department, three papers in the first year and the remaining four in the year next following. A candidate presenting a thesis shall present either three or four papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any) and the thesis in the year next following.

### **(28) Social Work**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers, including three at Stage III level, in any one of Anthropology (Social), Maori Studies, Economics, English, Education, Geography, History, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology, Sociology; together with a professional social work qualification and three years' approved post-qualification experience.

*Requirements:* Either (a) Four papers and a thesis (690.601) which counts as three papers; or (b) four papers, a thesis (690.611) which counts as two papers, and a research project (690.420) which counts as one paper. The four papers are to include two relevant papers at the MA level in the subject with which the prerequisite requirement was fulfilled, one other paper, at Stage III or MA level, selected on the advice of the co-ordinating committee and with the approval of the relevant Head of Department and a compulsory paper in the theory and practice of social work (690.400). The thesis and the research project are to be on subjects within the Social Work area approved by the committee.

A candidate may present the four papers and the thesis or the thesis and the research project in one year or, having completed the four papers in the first year, present the thesis or the research project in the year next following. In addition one of the examiners of a thesis or a research project must be a social worker.

### **(29) Sociology**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Sociology including 82.320 or 82.321 and two other Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Either: Four papers and thesis (82.601) equivalent to three papers;

or: Six papers and a research essay (82.603) equivalent to one paper.

Papers to be drawn from 82.400 to 82.425, except that one paper not already taken may be drawn from 82.300 to 82.322. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the remaining papers in the second year: except that a candidate who is engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year, the remaining papers to be completed within the following two years. The date for the presentation of the research essay (82.603) shall be not later than 1 November in the year for which enrolment in this paper is accepted.

### **(30) Spanish**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Spanish including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 45.400 and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 45.400 and a

research essay (45.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 45.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers.

Paper 45.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LITERATURE MLitt

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Literature shall before enrolment have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Master's Degree with First or Second Class Honours, or, in exceptional cases, one of the other preliminary qualifications that would be required for enrolment for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.
2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of full-time supervised study of not less than one year, nor more than two years, or the equivalent in part-time study.

### Course Content

3. The course of study for this Degree shall comprise the presentation and preparation of a thesis, based on original research in one of the subjects available in the Faculty of Arts. The research topic shall be approved by the Head of Department and by the Senate.
4. The Senate shall, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a supervisor or supervisors for the thesis.

### Other Provisions

5. The Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. The Degree may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.
7. Notwithstanding Regulation 12 (b) of the Regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a thesis rejected for that Degree shall not be submitted for this Degree.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

Prescriptions are listed by Department.

Most subject names are synonymous with the Department to which they belong. The prescriptions for the following subjects, however, may be found under the Departmental headings as listed below:

Subject	Department
Ancient History	Classics and Ancient History
Asian Studies	Asian Languages and Literature
Chinese	Asian Languages and Literature
Dutch	Germanic Languages and Literature
French	Romance Languages
German	Germanic Languages and Literature
Greek	Classics and Ancient History
Indonesian	Asian Languages and Literature
Italian	Romance Languages
Japanese	Asian Languages and Literature
Korean	Asian Languages and Literature
Latin	Classics and Ancient History
Linguistics	Anthropology
Samoan	Pacific Studies
Scandinavian Studies	Germanic Languages and Literature
Spanish	Romance Languages

### DEPARTMENT OF ANTHROPOLOGY

The Department of Anthropology teaches two subjects: Anthropology and Linguistics. Within the subject Anthropology, four sub-disciplines are distinguished: Archaeology, Biological Anthropology, Ethnomusicology and Social Anthropology.

Some papers are listed under both Anthropology and Linguistics, with the same short title but with different code numbers. For example, The Languages of the Pacific is listed under Anthropology as 03.217 and under Linguistics as 83.205. Students must enrol for such papers under one subject or the other, and no paper may be credited twice to the same degree.

In planning their degree course, students should be aware that at each level there are papers which are prerequisite to certain papers at higher levels. This applies particularly to the Stage II core papers 03.207, 03.209, 03.215 and 03.220. These prerequisites are listed in the Schedule to the BA Degree Regulations. Full details

concerning Anthropology papers are contained in the Anthropology Course Handbook 1993 available from the Department.

### ANTHROPOLOGY

#### Anthropology I

##### 03.100 Introduction to Social Anthropology

Basic anthropological issues and approaches to the study of culture and society.

##### 03.101 Introduction to Archaeology and Biological Anthropology

Biological variation and evolution of the human species; evolution of culture up to the emergence of the first cities and the prehistory of the Pacific region.

##### 03.102 Introduction to Maori Society

As prescribed for 04.101, Department of Maori Studies.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.101 and 04.108.

##### 03.103 Introduction to Ethnomusicology

Introduces the study of music structure and music behaviour, and surveys the music of selected non-western societies.

Note: The same paper is offered as Music 28.114.

#### Anthropology II

##### 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia

A survey of a number of pre-European and contemporary rural Polynesian societies.

##### \*03.201 Melanesian Ethnography

A survey of Melanesian societies, with emphasis on traditional and changing social, economic, political and cultural features, especially on the village level.

##### 03.206 Origins of Civilisation

The study of the early civilisations of the Near East and a comparative survey of early Chinese, American and other civilisations.

##### 03.207 Human Evolution

Examination of the fossil and contemporary genetic, anatomical and behavioural evidence for the evolution of humankind and of human origins.

##### 03.208 The Coming of the Maori

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic

Maori society, history to 1840 A.D.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.203.

### **03.209 Ethnomusicology**

English Folksong; African music south of the Sahara; American Indian and South American music.

Note: The same paper is offered as Music 28.214.

### **†03.210 Ethnic Groups and Inter-ethnic Relations**

Ethnicity in relation to notions of race, culture and social classes examined in the political and economic contexts of New Zealand, Peru and the Caribbean.

### **03.211 The Ancient Maori World/Te Ao Tawhito**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.202.

### **†03.214 Issues in Social Theory**

An introduction to theoretical issues in Social Anthropology.

### **03.215 Method and Theory in Archaeology**

An examination of current concepts in archaeological research and their place in the development of archaeological thought.

### **\*03.216 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.207.

### **03.217 The Languages of the Pacific**

General introduction to the languages and linguistics of the Pacific Islands and Australia, with commentary on associated cultural institutions, conceptual systems and oral literatures.

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.205.

### **\*03.218 Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori**

A study of the history of ethnographic and other accounts of contemporary Maori society, examining the derivation of various social theories and their application to the Maori under changing political economic circumstances in New Zealand since industrialisation.

### **03.219 Anthropological Perspectives on Gender**

An examination of diverse social, cultural and biological constructions of gender differences.

### **03.220 Theories in Social Anthropology**

A critical survey of major theories and debates in Social Anthropology since c. 1950.

## **Anthropology III**

### **\*03.300 History of Social Anthropology**

Anthropology and its history of ideas - the theorists, the theories and their social contexts.

### **\*03.302 Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology**

Selected contemporary issues in social anthropology.

### **\*03.304 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation in its political economic context, oriented toward learning to research library, government and archive resources.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.308.

### **†03.305 Topics in Contemporary Melanesia**

A survey of changing social, economic and political institutions in Melanesia since the late nineteenth century.

### **†03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.302.

### **03.308 Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology**

### **03.309 Advanced Biological Anthropology**

A choice of topics in advanced biological anthropology that allows a consideration of the relevance of information from the study of human biology to the understanding of our species.

### **†03.313 Contemporary Polynesia**

A survey of recent social, economic and political changes in Fiji and Island Polynesia.

### **\*03.314 East Asian Archaeology and Biological Anthropology**

The study of recent archaeological discoveries and of theoretical frameworks with particular reference to China, Japan, Thailand and island South East Asia.

### **03.315 Oceanic Prehistory**

Archaeology, prehistory, historical linguistics, colonisation, settlement pattern and ethnohistory of a region.

### **03.316 Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society**

Understanding the past and present of Aboriginal Australia, primarily through the study of archaeology, but relevant aspects of aboriginal society such as trade, ceremonies and economic and

social organisation will also be dealt with.

### **03.318 Ethnomusicology: Music of Oceania**

Maori music and music styles of Polynesia, Melanesia, Micronesia and Aboriginal Australia.

Note: Also offered as Music 28.314.

### **03.320 The Anthropology of Agriculture**

Ecological and economic aspects of interactions between plants and human subsistence activities in traditional and developing societies, with emphasis on Pacific humid tropics.

### **†03.322 Urban Anthropology**

Urban social conditions and subcultures in developed and developing nations.

### **†03.325 Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology**

Experimental approaches to the interpretation of archaeological data, involving basic training in techniques of field and laboratory analysis and practical experimental research projects.

### **03.326 Statistical Methods in Anthropology**

Introduction to analytical approaches to anthropological data. Basic statistical concepts and methods, computer skills and their uses within anthropology.

### **†03.327 Human Osteology for the Archaeologist**

Designed for those interested in the human skeleton and its biological and cultural contexts. Focuses on bone as an organ and tissue as well as on interpretation of present and past adaptation and variation; nutrition, pathology, demography.

### **03.330 New Zealand Archaeology**

Aspects of New Zealand archaeology from first colonisation through to the colonial era. Includes site recognition, recording and interpretation within a regional context and period, as appropriate.

### **03.331 Archaeological Resource Management**

An investigation of the legislation, philosophy and practical implications of archaeological resource management within bicultural New Zealand.

### **03.333 Economic Anthropology**

### **03.334 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

### **†03.335 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

### **03.338 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

Human biocultural adaptation in the Pacific. Contemporary, historic and archaeological populations.

### **03.340 Field Methods in Archaeology**

An introduction to archaeological excavation fieldwork methods, laboratory analysis and the writing of reports.

### **†03.341 Regional Approaches to Maori Society**

Students will be familiarised with research methods and resources for research into topics of regional and tribal significance.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.310.

### **03.342 Approaches to Archaeological Science**

The application of scientific techniques in archaeology.

### **03.343 History of Anthropology**

An integrated approach to the history of ideas in the sub-disciplines of Anthropology.

Note: This paper is prerequisite to an MA in Anthropology.

### **03.344 Special Topic in Archaeology**

## **Anthropology for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate may present either four papers (at least two at the 400 level and 03.343 if not already passed) and a thesis (03.601) counting as three papers, or six papers (at least three at the 400 level and 03.343 if not already passed) and a research essay (03.603) counting as one paper.

## **Social Anthropology Papers**

### **03.400 Theory in Social Anthropology**

A study of some major theoretical domains in anthropological thought.

### **03.402 Topic in the Social Anthropology of Polynesia**

Recent studies of Polynesian culture are examined and past studies re-examined from a comparative and structural/historical perspective.

### **†03.404 Ritual and Symbolism**

Anthropological interpretations of religion, ritual and systems of belief.

### **\*03.405 Ethnohistory**

An examination of theories of history and oral tradition and the redefinition of Pacific history.



**03.408 Ethical Problems in Social Research**

Historical and contemporary problems concerning rights of all parties in social research; theory, method and practice.

**†03.411 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

**03.413 Anthropology and History**

An examination of the ways in which Anthropology deals with the past, and cross-cultural differences in the production of histories in New Zealand and the Pacific Islands.

**†03.414 Field Methods in Social Anthropology**

An examination of the experience, methods and techniques of anthropological field work in relation to particular research problems.

**†03.419 Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

**\*03.423 Maori Ethnicity**

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.402.

**\*03.424 Topics in the History of Social Anthropology**

An examination of the historical background of contemporary anthropological theories and ethnographic practices.

**Archaeology and Biological Anthropology Papers****03.401 Archaeological Method**

Field, laboratory and analytical techniques.

**†03.403 Prehistoric Ecology and Economics**

Ecological and economic approaches to the study of prehistoric society from both a conceptual and a practical point of view.

**03.412 Theory in Biological Anthropology**

A study of evolutionary theory, its history and its application to humans, primates and hominids for the understanding of anatomical behavioural and/or social attributes.

**03.416 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to field of research.

**\*03.418 Research Design and Methodology**

The course is designed to introduce students to procedures used in the definition of research problem, development and implementation of research design and the presentation of results. It is focused on the use of concepts and methods from anthropology and historical research in the examination and interpretation of archaeological evidence.

**†03.421 Topic in Biological Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students for doing research in a selected subfield of biological anthropology.

**03.422 Special Topic in Archaeology**

Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to the student's field of research.

**03.425 Regional Studies of Prehistoric Settlement, Interaction and Culture Change**

A study of concepts, methods, and archaeological evidence.

**Ethnomusicology****03.410 Advanced Theory and Method in Ethnomusicology**

Field method; transcription and analysis; study of selected scholars.

Note: The same paper is offered as Music 28.414.

**03.601 Thesis****03.603 Research Essay in Anthropology**

Topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.

**LINGUISTICS**

Fuller details concerning Linguistics papers are contained in Courses in Linguistics for 1993 available from the Department.

**Linguistics Stage I Level****83.102 Introduction to Linguistics**

The structure of human languages. Methods of analysis and formal description.

**83.104 Language and Society**

The study of language in its cultural and social context

**Linguistics Stage II Level****83.200 Historical and Comparative Linguistics**

The study of language change and historical relationship among

languages.

**83.203 Phonetics and Phonology**

Phonological and phonetic theory. The study of sound systems. Problems of analysis.

Note: The same paper is offered as English 18.223.

**83.204 Grammatical Analysis**

Grammatical theory. Types of grammatical systems. Descriptive problems in morphology and syntax.

Note: The same paper is offered as English 18.224.

**83.205 The Languages of the Pacific**

General introduction to the languages and linguistics of the Pacific Islands and Australia. With commentary on associated cultural institutions, conceptual systems and oral literatures.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.217.

**Linguistics Stage III Level****83.300 Grammatical Theory**

Modern theories of syntax and morphology. Syntactic and morphological topics.

Note: The same paper is offered as English 18.330

**†83.301 Special Topic in Linguistics****†83.302 Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics****†83.303 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.305.

**83.305 Linguistic Analysis of Literature**

As prescribed for English 18.303.

**\*83.306 Philosophy of Language**

As prescribed for Philosophy 29.202.

**83.307 New Zealand English**

As prescribed for English 18.304.

**†83.309 Field Methods**

Practical work with a native speaker of an unfamiliar language. Phonological and grammatical description of the language.

**†83.310 Special Topic in Linguistics****\*83.311 Language and Statistics**

Descriptive, inferential and multivariate statistical methods as applied to language.

Note: The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.313.

**83.312 Semantics**

As prescribed for English 18.305

**83.313 Conversational Analysis.**

The organisation of conversation as an interactive activity.

**\*83.314 Sociolinguistics**

The interrelationship between linguistic variation and social structure.

**Linguistics for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (83.601) counting as three papers.

A candidate who has passed three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English and five papers in Linguistics may proceed to MA in Linguistics with the permission of Senate upon recommendation of the Head of Department.

Up to two papers listed under Stage III Linguistics, if not credited for a BA Degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

**83.400 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics****83.401 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics****†83.402 A Topic in Sociolinguistics****†83.403 A Topic in Comparative Linguistics****\*83.404 Special Topic in Linguistics****†83.405 Advanced Studies in Syntax**

Theories of syntax grammar and topics currently of interest to linguists; metatheory.

Note: The same paper is offered as English 18.408.

**†83.406 English Linguistics**

Note: The same paper is offered as English 18.410.

**83.601 Thesis****DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY**

For Art History prescriptions for BA, BFA, MFA see Faculty of Fine Arts, Degree Prescriptions.

**Art History for MA and Honours**

four papers from 19.400 to 19.414, or three papers from 19.400 to

19.414 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

and either:

(a) A Thesis, 19.601, (value 3 papers)

or

(b) Three papers from 19.400 to 19.414, or two papers from 19.400 to 19.414 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

**\*19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing**

**19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)**

**\*19.402 Special Topic in Western Art Before 1600**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

**\*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influence**

**19.404 Film Studies**

**\*19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism**

Note: A candidate who has been credited with a pass in paper 19.303 may not take this paper.

**19.406 Art Historiography**

**\*19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art**

**19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art**

**19.409 Topics in the Theory of Modern Art**

**19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture**

**19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)**

**19.413 Topics in Maori Art**

**19.414 Image and Text**

The thesis (19.601) shall not exceed 30,000 words, and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar, not later than 1 November.

The subjects for the thesis shall be chosen in consultation with the Head of Department.

Book lists will be distributed at the beginning of the year.

## DEPARTMENT OF ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

The Department offers five subjects for the BA Degree. Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese and Korean may be taken to the Stage III Level. Asian Studies does not proceed to Stage III, but makes more freely available general papers that do not involve a language component.

Other Departments also offer teaching in this field. See, in particular, the entries for the subjects Asian Geography, Asian History and Asian Politics.

Detailed guides are available from the Department concerned. A general guide, *The study of Asia at the University of Auckland*, is also available.

### ASIAN STUDIES

The following papers are taught entirely in English, and are open to students whether or not they are taking language papers. Where they are also available for Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese or Korean, they may be regarded as papers in those subjects or as papers in the subject Asian Studies. Students may choose the way such papers are designated, provided they comply with the Regulations for the Degree.

#### Asian Studies I

##### 97.100 Introduction to Chinese Thought

A survey in English translation of traditional Chinese philosophical and religious literature (Confucian, Taoist, Buddhist, etc.) and of the ideas which have helped shape Chinese culture.

Note: The same paper is offered as Chinese 48.102.

##### \*97.101 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture

This course explores many diverse but related aspects of Chinese culture within the framework of the great 18th century novel, *The Story of the Stone* (to be studied in English translation).

Note: The same paper is offered as Chinese 48.104.

##### 97.102 Introduction to Modern China Through Literature

This paper deals with Chinese literature in the modern era, since the 1911 revolution. It covers the May 4th period, the literary trends in the 20's and 30's, the establishment of the Maoist orthodoxy at Yan'an, the politico-literary events of the post-1949 and post-Mao periods, and the recent developments since the 1989 massacre.

Note: The same paper is offered as Chinese 48.105.

##### †97.103 Ethnic Chinese abroad, with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese

This paper will survey factors which motivated Chinese migrants to go abroad, and the problems of discrimination and integration they face in various host societies, New Zealand in particular. Special issues like the preservation of culture and the identity crisis will be explored from a cultural perspective, using literary materials ranging from essays to fiction. Samples of creative works such as poetry and essays by Chinese New Zealanders will also be used.

Note: The same paper is offered as Chinese 48.106.

##### 97.120 Indonesian Cultures and Civilizations

A two part course to be taught concurrently. Part I: Indigenous cultures of Indonesia, the development of Javanese culture before modern times (Hindu-Javanese and Islamic periods), and the religion of Bali. Part II: Aspects of contemporary Indonesian culture and society.

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.103.

##### 97.121 Introduction to Islam

This course will focus on the Qur'an, the Roots of Islamic Jurisprudence (Usul al-Fiqh), the Shari'ah (Islamic Law), the origins of Shi'ism, and the development of Islamic mysticism (Tasawwuf).

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.104.

##### 97.122 Literary Traditions and Religions of India

Part I: the Rigveda and the Atharvaveda. Part II: the Upanishads. Part III: the Bhagavadgita; philosophy in the Mahabharata.

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.105.

##### \*97.140 Japanese Literature in Translation

A survey of Japanese literature in English translation from earliest times to the modern period.

Note: The same paper is offered as Japanese 81.102.

##### 97.141 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture

A survey of Japanese intellectual and cultural traditions from earliest times.

Note: The same paper is offered as Japanese 81.103.

##### \*97.160 Buddhism, Confucianism and Shamanism in Korean Culture

This course examines continuity and change in Korean values as reflected in the Korean culture with a special emphasis on Buddhism, Confucianism and Shamanism.

Note: The same paper is offered as Korean 449.102.

### Asian Studies II

##### 97.200 Major Schools of Chinese Thought

A study of the major schools of Chinese Thought. Texts in English translation representative of Confucianism, Mohism, Taoism, Legalism, Chinese Buddhism and Neo-Confucianism will be analysed and discussed.

This course will normally be offered in alternative years.

Note: The same paper is offered as Chinese 48.203.

##### \*97.221 Islamic Civilizations

A summary of the development of thought and literature in the formative period (632-1400 A.D.), in particular theology, philosophy, historiography, geography and mysticism, in Arabic and Persian.

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.203.

##### \*97.222 Early Indian Thought

Selected topics in Indian philosophy, Indian religions, and Indian (especially Sanskrit) literature.

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.205.

##### 97.223 Indian Buddhism

A survey of Indian Buddhism from 500 B.C. till 1200 A.D.

Note: The same paper is offered as Indonesian 80.206.

### Asian Studies for MA and Honours

Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Master's level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Master's papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Master's papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

## CHINESE

### Chinese I

Papers 48.100 and 48.101 are corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching per week plus conversation class.

#### 48.100 and 48.101 Introduction to Modern Chinese Language A and B

A beginners' course in the written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, listening comprehension and reading, re-arrangement of words and phrases, sentence-making and conversation.

#### 48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.100.

#### \*48.104 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.101.

#### 48.105 Introduction to Modern China Through Literature

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.102.

#### †48.106 Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to New Zealand Chinese

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.103.

#### 48.107 Academic Chinese for Native Speakers

This course will develop appropriate language skills for native speakers of Chinese in the areas of grammar, character forms, dictionary use, romanisation, pronunciation and translation into and out of Chinese.

### Chinese II

Candidates must take either 48.200, 48.201 and 48.202 or 48.201, 48.202 and 48.204. Paper 48.200 is not normally available to native speakers of Chinese.

#### 48.200 Intermediate Modern Chinese

Intermediate written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, dictation, reading, listening comprehension and conversation.

#### 48.201 Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature

Readings of selected passages from the works of representative authors, prose and poetry written in Baihua.

#### 48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature

#### 48.203 Major Schools of Chinese Thought

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.200.

#### \*48.204 Introduction to Translation

The emphasis of this course will be on practical translation from and into the Chinese language together with other exercises designed to develop the language skills of students of Chinese speaking backgrounds.

### Chinese III

Candidates seeking to satisfy Regulation 4(a) in the subject Chinese must take three papers, 48.300 or 48.303, 48.301 and 48.302. Paper 48.300 is not normally available to native speakers of Chinese.

Candidates for paper 48.300 may take paper 48.303 as an additional paper and students intending to take MA papers 48.420 and 48.421 are recommended to take it.

With approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Chinese for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

#### 48.300 Advanced Modern Chinese

Written and oral use of Modern Chinese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

#### 48.301 Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature

#### 48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature

#### 48.303 Translation in Theory and Practice

Students will normally be required to have passed 48.300 or achieved a comparable standard of language competence. Native speakers of Chinese may be required to take this paper instead of 48.300.

### Chinese for MA and Honours

Four papers (which must include 48.419) and a thesis (48.601) of 25,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Chinese sources will be used; or six papers (which must include 48.419) and a dissertation (48.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected

topic for which Chinese sources will be used. Students intending to enrol for MA should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers and obtain advice on vacation reading.

#### 48.400 Advanced Language Skills for Practical and Research Use

#### 48.402 Chinese Prose Literature of the Tang and Song Dynasties

#### 48.403 Introduction to Chinese Historiography and Translation of Historical Texts

#### 48.405 Chinese Poetry of the Tang and Song Dynasties

#### 48.406 Readings in the Confucian and Taoist Classics

#### 48.411 The Novel in Imperial China

#### 48.412 Modern Chinese Fiction

#### 48.413 Traditional Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the *Xixiang Ji*

#### 48.414 Modern Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the Plays of Cao Yu

#### 48.415 A Study of Newspaper and other Nonliterary Forms of Modern Chinese

#### 48.416 Special Topic

#### 48.417 Special Topic

#### 48.418 Advanced Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature

#### 48.419 Bibliography and Research Methodology

#### 48.420 Principles and Practice of Chinese-English Translation

#### 48.421 Principles and Practice of English-Chinese Translation

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination in the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in Coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

Papers 80.100 and 80.101 are corequisites and entail five hours of teaching per week plus language lab. No previous knowledge of Indonesian is required.

#### 80.100 and 80.101 Language Acquisition A and B

#### 80.103 Indonesian Cultures and Civilizations

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.120.

#### 80.104 Introduction to Islam

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.121.

#### 80.105 Literary Traditions and Religions of India

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.122.

#### †80.106 Beginning Sanskrit

An introduction to the morphology, syntax and *sandhi* rules of the language of the Indian epics, the *Mahabharata* and *Ramayana*.

### Indonesian II

#### 80.200 Intermediate Language Acquisition

Entails two hours of teaching per week plus language lab.

#### 80.201 An Introduction to Modern Indonesian Literature

#### †80.202 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay Poetry

#### \*80.203 Islamic Civilizations

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.221.

#### \*80.205 Early Indian Thought

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.222.

#### 80.206 Indian Buddhism

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.223

#### †80.207 Modern Javanese

#### 80.208 Culture and Society in Contemporary

#### Indonesia

A study of selected materials in Indonesian.

### Indonesian III

Candidates seeking to satisfy Regulation 4(a) in the subject Indonesian must offer 80.300 and two other papers. With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Indonesian for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

#### 80.300 Advanced Language Skills

#### 80.301 Introduction to Classical Malay Language and Literature

**80.302 Modern Indonesian Literature****80.306 Language of the Media****†80.308 Literary Javanese****†80.309 An Approved Special Topic****Indonesian for MA and Honours**

Five papers (which must include 80.400) and a thesis (80.601) of 15,000 to 20,000 words on a selected topic for which Indonesian sources will be used; or six papers (which must include 80.400) and a dissertation 80.604 of 7,000 to 10,000 on a selected topic for which Indonesian sources will be used; or seven papers (which must include 80.400). Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

**80.400 Advanced Language Proficiency****80.401 A Study of Modern Indonesian/Malay Literature****80.402 A Study of Selected Classical Malay Texts****80.404 An Introduction to Textual Criticism with Special Reference to Classical Malay****80.405 Muslim Mysticism in Classical Malay Literature****80.406 An Introduction to the Structural Analysis of Indonesian/Malay****80.407 A Study of Another Indonesian Language****80.409 An Approved Special Topic**

In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the thesis, the oral examination and in Coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

**JAPANESE****Japanese I**

Papers 81.100 or T81.100 and 81.101 or T81.101 are corequisites and entail six hours of classes per week.

**81.100 Introduction to the Japanese Language A**

A basic course in grammar and reading comprehension.

**†T81.100 Introduction to the Japanese Language A**

As prescribed for 81.100. T81.100 is taught on the Tamaki Campus.

**81.101 Introduction to the Japanese Language B**

Written and oral use of modern Japanese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, writing of *kana* and *kanji* scripts, aural comprehension, conversation and dictation.

**†T81.101 Introduction to the Japanese Language B**

As prescribed for 81.101. T81.101 is taught on the Tamaki Campus.

**\*81.110 Oral Japanese for Beginners**

An optional paper open to students with one year or less previous study of Japanese.

**\*81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation**

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.140.

**81.103 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture**

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.141.

**Japanese II**

Six hours of classes per week.

**81.200 Intermediate Japanese A**

Reinforcement and expansion of knowledge of grammar and script through English-Japanese translation and structural analysis. Candidates will be examined on structural analysis and at sight translation into Japanese.

**81.201 Intermediate Japanese B**

Expansion of vocabulary and script through readings. Candidates will be examined by some or all of the following ways: Japanese-English translation (at sight/sighted), comprehension, composition, grammatical and *kanji* exercises.

**81.202 Intermediate Japanese C**

Oral and aural practice in modern Japanese. Candidates will be examined by some or all of the following ways: conversation, aural comprehension, dictation, composition, reading and grammar.

**Japanese III**

Either six or eight hours of classes per week.

Candidates must take either 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 or 81.300, 81.301 and 81.303.

Papers 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 are prerequisites for the MA Degree.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Japanese for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III Level papers.

**81.300 Modern Japanese A****81.301 Modern Japanese B****81.302 Classical Japanese Language and Literature****81.303 Japanese Communicative Skills**

Written and oral use of Japanese in a variety of situations.

**Japanese for MA and Honours**

Four papers including 81.401 with a thesis (81.601) of 20,000 to 30,000 words, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or an annotated translation of a Japanese text; or six papers with a research essay (81.603) not exceeding 7,000 to 10,000 words, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or a translation of a Japanese text.

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302.

Students are strongly advised to take 81.102, 81.103 and 81.303 as part of their BA Degree.

**81.400 Translation at Sight into Japanese and Free Composition****81.401 Japanese Research Materials and Methodology****81.402 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Prose Literature****81.403 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Prose****81.404 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Poetry****81.405 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Drama****81.406 An Approved Special Topic in Japanese Language, Literature, Thought or Culture****81.407 Translation of and Comments on Modern Non-Literary Texts Including Selections from Newspapers and Periodicals****81.408 Introduction to Japanese Linguistics****81.409 Advanced Language Acquisition****81.410 Special Topics in Japanese Linguistics****81.411 Major Works of Traditional Japanese Thought****81.412 Major Works of Modern Japanese Thinkers****81.413 History of Japanese Literary Criticism**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

**KOREAN****Korean I**

Papers 449.100 and 449.101 are corequisites and entail a total of seven hours of classes per week.

**449.100 Language Acquisition A**

A beginners' course in modern Korean emphasizing oral and aural comprehension together with an introduction to basic grammar.

**449.101 Language Acquisition B**

A beginner's course in modern Korean emphasizing reading comprehension and composition.

**\*449.102 Buddhism, Confucianism and Shamanism in Korean Culture**

Note: The same paper is offered as Asian Studies 97.160

**449.103 Korean Study Abroad**

This will consist of a short (c. 10 weeks) intensive language acquisition programme at the Yonsei University Korean

Language Institute, preceded by a series of preparatory lectures in Term 3.

### Korean II

Papers 449.200, 449.201 and 449.202 are corequisites, and entail a total of seven hours of classes per week.

#### 449.200 Intermediate Korean A

This paper is a continuation of 449.100.

#### 449.201 Intermediate Korean B

This paper is a continuation of 449.101. Basic Hanja (Chinese Characters) will be introduced.

#### 449.202 Translation From and Into Modern Korean

This paper will develop translation skills from and into Korean.

#### 449.203 Korean Study Abroad

This will consist of a short (c.10 weeks) intensive language-acquisition programme at the Yonsei University Korean Language Institute, preceded by a series of preparatory lectures in Term 3.

### Korean III

Paper 449.300, 449.301 and 449.302 are corequisites and entail a total of seven hours of classes per week.

#### 449.300 and 449.301 Advanced Korean A and B

These papers are designed to reinforce the Korean language skills that students have learned during the previous two years. A variety of audio and written material covering various aspects of modern Korea will be used.

#### 449.302 Translation From and Into Modern Korean

This paper is an advanced level version of 449.202 and follows basically the same course structure. The materials will be drawn from newspaper articles and a variety of other sources covering the society, geography, culture, economy and daily life of Korea.

#### \*449.303 Traditional and Modern Korean Literature

This paper explores Korean Literature from the Three Kingdom period through the Koryo and the Chosun dynasties to the present. Important literary works throughout Korean history will be introduced and commented on.

## DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY

The Department of Classics and Ancient History includes three subjects: Latin, Greek and Ancient History, all taught to MA with Honours Level. Please note that papers in the translated literature and thought and art of Ancient Greece and Rome are taught inside the subject Ancient History. All students wishing to advance beyond Stage I should plan their courses carefully in consultation with a member of staff.

All students enrolling in Latin at university for the first time should consult the Head of Department about their course. It is normal for students with not more than three years' experience of Latin at school to enrol in Latin I and for students with more than three years' experience of Latin at school to begin at Stage II level. Students who intend to advance to MA with Honours in Latin or Greek are strongly advised to enrol for both languages in their first year. Greek I is a prerequisite to MA in Latin.

An MA with Honours in Latin and Greek (Combined Honours) requires that students pass Latin III and Greek III before enrolling in their MA year. Students planning this course should therefore start Latin and Greek together in their first year.

Students who intend to advance to MA in Ancient History must study at least one ancient language. They must fulfil certain prerequisites for MA, including, normally, two papers in a language. Students who wish to take the Egyptian option must pass 12.210 and 12.310 and must plan to take 12.210 in their Stage II year to enable them to progress to 12.310 in their Stage III year before MA.

Students who wish to take the Mesopotamian option must likewise pass 12.211 and 12.311 before MA. Students in the Greek option must pass 10.100, 10.102 and in the Roman option 09.100, 09.102, or have equivalent qualifications.

Students who wish to take the Greek or Roman options at MA are advised to enrol in Greek or Latin papers in their first year, and do more than the prerequisite minimum. As much of the scholarly work on Ancient History (especially Egyptian and Akkadian

subjects) is in foreign languages, students planning to take these options should enrol for German I and French I papers, in their first year preferably.

Students who intend to take Latin or Greek are advised that Ancient History papers, at least in the field relevant to their language, will be most useful, especially for those advancing beyond Stage I, since outlines of History are now no longer taught within the language courses.

Students considering enrolling for any subject in the Department are strongly advised to come and see a member of staff during the pre-enrolment period. External students should consult the Department as early in the year as possible.

## LATIN

### Latin I

(Four hours per week plus tutorial.)

#### 09.100 Introduction to Latin Literature

Latin texts will be prescribed for reading, literary appreciation and grammatical study.

#### 09.102 Introduction to the Latin Language

An introductory course in Latin grammar and vocabulary.

Note: Students enrolling in 09.100 must also enrol in, or have previously passed, 09.102. Students may enrol in 09.102 without 09.100. It is normal for students with not more than three years' experience of Latin at school to enrol in Latin I and for students with more than three years' experience of Latin at school to begin at Stage II level.)

### Latin II

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 09.100, 09.102 unless direct entry is approved.

#### 09.200 Prescribed Texts

Texts will be prescribed for detailed linguistic and literary study.

#### 09.201 Latin Literature

Texts will be prescribed for detailed study with emphasis on the acquisition of reading skills and on the literary appreciation of the texts.

#### 09.202 Language

A course on the structure of the Latin language with exercises requiring translation from and into Latin.

### Latin III

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 09.200, 09.201, 09.202.

#### 09.300 Prescribed Texts

Texts will be prescribed for detailed linguistic and literary study.

#### 09.301 Latin Literature

An author or literary genre or topic will be studied by means of prescribed texts.

#### 09.302 Language and History of the Language

An advanced course on the structure and use of the Latin language including a study of the early history of the language.

#### 09.303 Prescribed Texts

(Two hours per week.)

As prescribed for 09.300. Students who have passed 09.300 will not be permitted to enrol in 09.303 unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.304 Literature

(One hour per week.)

As prescribed for 09.301. Students who have passed 09.301 will not be permitted to enrol in 09.304 unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### Latin for MA and Honours

#### Honours in Latin (Seven papers).

This is normally a two year course, in which candidates offer four papers in their first year and two papers plus a research essay (counting as one paper: 09.603) in their second. Candidates must offer 09.400, either 09.401 or 09.404, and 09.603; the selection of optional papers must be approved by the Head of Department. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, as not all papers will be available every year.

*Prerequisite:* Eight papers in Latin, including 09.300, 301, 302.

#### 09.400 Unprepared Translation of Latin Prose and Verse

#### 09.401 Language

(One hour per week.)

Any or all of the following: translation into Latin, grammatical,

syntactical, linguistic and stylistic analysis of passages of Latin prose and/or verse.

### **09.402 Latin Poetry**

(One hour per week.)

Two subjects will normally be set, with reference to prescribed texts.

### **09.403 Latin Prose Authors**

(One hour per week.)

Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts.

### **09.404 Vulgar Latin or Early Latin**

(One hour per week.)

Either Vulgar and Late Latin

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Vulgar and Late Latin as seen in the prescribed texts. Comparison with inscriptional material will be made where relevant.

Or Early Latin

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Early Latin as seen in the prescribed texts. Comparison with inscriptional material will be made where relevant.

### **09.405, 09.406 Roman History**

(Two hours per week.)

The topic will be that of the Ancient History Roman Topic for MA. There will be a final examination in each paper.

### **09.407 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week.)

The topic will be prescribed.

### **09.408 Special Topic**

### **09.409 Special Topic**

### **09.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to one paper)

### **Combined Honours (Languages and Literature)**

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## **GREEK**

### **Greek I**

(Four hours per week plus tutorial)

#### **10.100 Introduction to Ancient Greek Literature**

Ancient Greek texts will be prescribed for reading, literary appreciation and grammatical study.

#### **10.102 Introduction to the Ancient Greek Language**

An introductory course in the grammar and vocabulary of Ancient Greek.

Note: Students enrolling in 10.100 must also enrol in, or have previously passed, 10.102. Students may enrol in 10.102 without 10.100.

### **Greek II**

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisites:* 10.100 and 10.101 or 10.102 or direct entry.

#### **10.200 Prescribed Texts**

Texts will be prescribed for detailed linguistic and literary study.

#### **10.201 Greek Literature**

Texts will be prescribed for study, with emphasis on the acquisition of reading skills and on the literary appreciation of the texts.

#### **10.202 Language**

A course on the structure of the ancient Greek language, with exercises requiring translation from and into Greek.

### **Greek III**

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 10.200, 10.201, 10.202.

#### **10.300 Prescribed Texts**

Texts will be prescribed for detailed linguistic and literary study.

#### **10.301 Greek Literature**

An author or literary genre or topic will be studied by means of prescribed texts.

#### **10.302 Language and History of Language**

An advanced course on the structure and use of the ancient Greek language, including a study of the early history of the language.

#### **10.303 Prescribed Texts**

(Two hours per week.)

As prescribed for 10.300. Students who have passed 10.300 will not be permitted to enrol in 10.303 unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### **10.304 Literature**

(One hour per week.)

As prescribed for 10.301. Students who have passed 10.301 will not be permitted to enrol in 10.304 unless there has been a change of syllabus.

## **Greek for MA and Honours**

### **Honours in Greek**

(Seven papers.)

This is normally a two year course, in which candidates offer four papers in their first year and two papers plus a research essay (counting as one paper: 10.603) in their second. Candidates must offer 10.400, either 10.401 or 10.404, and 10.603; the selection of optional papers must be approved by the Head of Department. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, as not all papers will be available every year.

*Prerequisite:* Eight papers in Greek, including 10.300, 301, 302.

### **10.400 Unprepared Translation**

Passages of prose and verse will be set for translation into English.

#### **10.401 Language**

(One hour per week.)

Any or all of the following: translation into Greek, grammatical, syntactical, linguistic and stylistic analysis of passages of Greek prose and/or verse.

#### **10.402 Greek Poetry**

(One hour per week.)

Two subjects will normally be set, with reference to prescribed texts.

#### **10.403 Greek Prose Authors**

(One hour per week.)

Two subjects will normally be set, with reference to prescribed texts.

#### **10.404 New Testament Greek or Classical Greek Dialects**

(One hour per week.)

*Either* New Testament Greek

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of New Testament Greek as seen in the prescribed texts. Comparison with papyrus material will be made where relevant.

*Or* Classical Greek Dialects

The non-Attic dialects of Classical Greek, studied from inscriptional material

#### **10.405, 10.406 Greek History**

(Two hours per week.)

The topic will be that of the Ancient History Greek Topic for MA. There will be a final examination in each paper.

#### **10.407 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week.)

The topic will be prescribed.

#### **10.408 Special Topic**

#### **10.409 Special Topic**

#### **10.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to one paper)

Combined Honours (Language and Literature)

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## **ANCIENT HISTORY**

### **Ancient History I**

#### **12.100 Near Eastern History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

An outline history of the ancient civilisations of Egypt, Mesopotamia and Israel from neolithic times to Alexander the Great; the course will include artistic and cultural questions, and the civilisations of Anatolia, Syria and Iran will be considered in less detail.

#### **12.102 Greek History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

An introduction to Greek History and Civilisation from the Mycenaean Age to the death of Alexander the Great.

#### **12.103 Roman History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

An introduction to the History and Civilisation of Rome, with particular reference to the Republic and Early Empire.

#### **12.104 Literature and Thought of Archaic Greece and Republican Rome**

(Two hours per week plus a fortnightly tutorial)

A study of the literature and thought of the Archaic Age of Greece with special emphasis on Homer, and the Republican Era of Rome, with special emphasis on Plautus.

**\*12.114 Literature and Thought of Classical Greece and Imperial Rome**

(Two hours per week plus a fortnightly tutorial.)

A study of the literature and thought of the Classical Age of Greece with special emphasis on Aristophanes and of the Imperial Era of Rome, with special emphasis on Ovid.

**Ancient History II**

**\*12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA Egyptian option must take paper 12.210 with this paper.

This course concentrates on the internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of the 18th dynasty, c.1570-1320 B.C.

**\*12.201 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take paper 12.211 with this paper.

This course on the Neo-Assyrian Empire (c.884-612 B.C.) will include a study of the Assyrian State, the aims, methods and historical importance of Assyrian imperialism, and its reflection in art, literature and religion. Special attention will be paid to contemporary documents.

**\*12.202 Greece and Persia**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.102 with this paper. Greece and Persia (c.546-323 B.C.) will involve a study of Herodotus' history and the first Persian War, the Greek counter measures and the organisation of the Athenian Confederacy, Persian interventions in Greek inter-state struggles in the fifth and fourth centuries, and Alexander's Anabasis.

**\*12.203 Pax Romana**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option should consider taking 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

A study of the Roman Empire during the first two centuries A.D. Special attention will be given to the social and religious history of the period, and there will be extensive use of ancient texts in translation.

**12.204 Art and Society in Ancient Greece and Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Greek or Roman option should consider taking 09.100, 09.102 or 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

**12.210 Egyptian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week.)

The Egyptian Language, hieroglyphic writing, and selected documents up to Dynasty XVIII.

**12.211 Akkadian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week.)

The Akkadian Language, cuneiform writing and selected documents of the Neo-Assyrian Empire.

**\*12.212 Political Theory and Practice in Imperial Athens**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

Classical Athens will provide the historical context for a study of the Greek city-state as interpreted by ancient historians, poets, orators and philosophers.

**12.213 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option should consider taking 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

A thematic study of the Middle and Late Republic. The main themes considered are: the debate about Rome's acquisition of an empire; the practical functioning and nature of Republican politics; and analysis of the major groupings in Republican society - slaves, freemen, peasants, aristocrats, etc.

**\*12.214 Historians of Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance in MA Roman option should

consider taking 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman History; all works will be studied in English. The authors will include Polybius, Livy, Sallust, Caesar, Tacitus, Suetonius.

**12.220 Egypt in Dynasties XI-XVII**

(Three hours per fortnight)

Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take paper 12.210 with this paper.

This course deals with the reunification of Egypt at the end of the First Intermediate Period and goes on to study the Middle Kingdom (the so-called Classical Age of Ancient Egyptian Culture) in depth. The reasons for the collapse of Dynasty 12 are next considered, followed by the loss of unity in Dynasty 13, the origins and nature of the foreign Hyksos (Asiatic) rule over Egypt, and finally the first stirrings of renewed nationalist feelings, leading to the reunification of Egypt under a native Pharaoh at the start of Dynasty 18.

**12.221 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take paper 12.211 with this paper.

Assur, Mari, Babylon: Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C. This is a period of immense documentary wealth, with important archives of documents found in several centres and relating to all aspects of life during the period. The most notable political event of the time was the gradual rise of Babylon to the position of imperial mistress of the entire region, under one of its most famous kings, Hammurabi.

**12.222 Tyranny**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

A study of the causes of the tyrannies in the Greek city-states, the aims and methods of the tyrants and the reasons for their expulsion. The course will consider the 7th-6th century tyrants at the Isthmus of Corinth, in Ionia, and in Sicily, and the connections between tyranny and imperialism (collaboration and resistance), the tyranny in Athens, and the tyrants in Sicily and elsewhere in the late 5th and following centuries.

**12.224 Greek Philosophy**

(Two hours per week)

An introduction to the main themes and figures of Ancient Greek Philosophy.

**Ancient History III**

**12.300 Egypt in Dynasties XI-XVII**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.220. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take 12.310 with this paper.

**\*12.301 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as for 12.201. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take 12.311 with this paper.

**12.310 Egyptian Language II**

(Four hours per fortnight.)

Hieroglyphic writing and a study of more advanced documents of either Dynasty XVIII of dynasties V-XI.

**12.311 Akkadian Language II**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

A selection of texts of the Old Babylonian period will be read in the original cuneiform. These will include letters from Mari and Babylonia and excerpts from the Hammurabi Law Stele. All materials supplied by the Department.

**\*12.312 Political Theory and Practice in Imperial Athens**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.212. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

**12.313 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as for 12.213. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

**\*12.314 Historians of Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.214. A higher standard is expected.

Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

**\*12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.200. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take 12.310 with this paper.

**12.321 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.221. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take 12.311 with this paper.

**12.322 Tyranny**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.222. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

**\*12.323 Pax Romana**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.203. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.100, 09.102 with this paper.

**12.324 Historians of Greece**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

A study of the Greek writers on Greek History; all writers will be studied in English. The authors will include Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Aristotle, The Old Oligarch, Polybius, Diodorus Siculus, Arrian, and Plutarch. This paper will be taught in alternate years (from 1987). Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

**\*12.332 Greece and Persia**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

Syllabus as 12.202. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.102 with this paper.

**Ancient History MA and Honours**

There will normally be two sets of four papers on historical topics, one paper in each option, alternating year by year. Papers on historical topics will normally carry associated papers in the ancient language relating to that topic. Candidates may choose to do seven papers, which includes a one-paper extended essay, or four papers and a three-paper thesis. Normally candidates will be required to take one paper with an associated paper of ancient language and two other papers without language in their first year, and one paper with an associated language paper and an associated research essay paper in their second, or the alternative three-paper thesis. Those with two language prerequisites for MA will be permitted to take two papers with two associated ancient language papers in first year. One or two papers at Stage III not taken for BA may be taken as substitute for MA papers, but these will not carry associated papers of language.

**\*12.400 The Jews in the Graeco-Roman World**

A study of the political and social developments in Judaea and the Diaspora, together with their cultural and ideological implications, from the Conquest of Alexander the Great to the outbreak of the First Revolt against Rome.

**\*12.420 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****12.401 The Sumerians**

This is a study of the people who created the first literate civilisation in Western Asia in the fourth and third Millennia B.C. and were responsible for major achievements in the field of art, architecture, literature and thought.

**12.411 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.403 Roman Britain****\*12.423 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****12.404 A Topic in the Social History of the Ancient World:****Egypt from Alexander to Augustus**

A study of Egypt from 331 to 31 BC, focusing on government, society and religion under the Ptolemies.

**12.424 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.405 A Topic in the Economic History of the Ancient World****\*12.425 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.406 Political Thought and Practice in the Ancient World****\*12.426 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.407 A Topic in the Intellectual History of the Ancient World****\*12.427 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****12.408 The Late Roman Empire**

A study of the Roman Empire in the late 3rd and 4th centuries AD, special attention being given to the emperors Diocletian, Constantine and Julian, and to the significant administrative, social and religious trends of the period.

**12.428 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.409 Medicine in the Ancient World**

A study of medical knowledge and practitioners in the Near East, Greece and Rome, with special reference to the study of anatomy, the creation of an anatomical nomenclature and the career and social status of the physician.

**\*12.429 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.419 Babylonian and Egyptian Mathematics and Astronomy**

No associated paper of documents is available.

**\*12.421 The Neo Babylonian Period**

The reconstruction of Babylon under Esarhaddon (681-669), its rise to imperial status under Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar II, and conquest by Cyrus of Persia (539). Social and cultural themes will be included.

**\*12.431 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.422 Agesilaus of Sparta**

The life and times of Agesilaus of Sparta, 396-360 B.C. A study of Spartan society and its relationship with other Greek States and with Persia in this period, based on the Greek sources (in translation).

**\*12.432 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****12.430 Social and Economic History of the Middle and New Kingdoms**

A wide ranging study of specific facets of ancient

Egyptian history in the period stated.

**12.440 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****\*12.450 Political History of the Ramesse Period**

An examination of the history of Dynasties 19 and 20.

**\*12.460 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment****12.601 Thesis**

(3 papers.)

**12.603 Research Essay**

(1 paper.)

The topic may be associated with the history paper and its associated documents taken in the second year of MA.

**CLASSICAL STUDIES**

Papers in Classical Studies are now taught inside Ancient History. See papers 12.104, 12.114 in Ancient History.

**\*DEVELOPMENT STUDIES**

An MA in Development Studies is available to students who have majored in Anthropology (Social), Economics, Education, Geography, History, Maori Studies, Political Studies or Sociology and whose under-graduate degree includes papers in these disciplines, on development.

This degree allows for specialised study and research in development including programme and policy analysis and formulation, and impact or evaluation assessment. Entry is restricted, and will be determined by the Co-ordinating Committee. They may allow entry to graduates who do not comply with the pre-requisites but who have worked in development.

Students must complete four papers, including the compulsory paper, Issues and Debates in Development Theory and Practice, and three others chosen from those listed in the Handbook of Development Studies and selected from not more than two departments, and a three paper thesis. With special permission they may substitute six papers and a research essay.

Course details and enrolment requirements are outlined in the Handbook of Development Studies, available from the co-operating departments.

**\*487.400 Issues and Debates in Development Theory and Practice**

A critical examination of concepts of development in their



historical and philosophical contexts, and an introduction to comparative study of the development process in different societies. The paper will emphasise contemporary debates on aspects of development theory and strategy, including measurement of development, culture, gender, and economic and political structures.

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

For Economics prescriptions see Faculty of Commerce.

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### Education I

#### 14.100 Schooling, Education & Society

An examination of issues of race, gender and class in, essentially, a New Zealand context.

#### 14.101 Introduction to Developmental Psychology

An introduction to human development.

### Education II

#### 14.200 Comparative Education

Issues in New Zealand education viewed from a comparative perspective.

#### 14.201 History of Education

The origins and early development of the modern mass educational system in the nineteenth century.

#### \*14.202 New Zealand Education

Issues and problems associated with the organisation, administration and practice of education in New Zealand.

#### 14.203 Educational Psychology

This course focuses on learning theory, motivation and cognition, evaluation of individual differences and special education.

#### 14.204 Measurement and Evaluation in Education

Critical insights into the social and political contexts, and the skills required for measurement and evaluation.

#### 14.206 The Sociology of Education

An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

#### 14.208 Educational Philosophy

An introduction to contemporary philosophy of education with an emphasis on ethics.

#### \*14.209 Introduction to Methods of Research in Education

An introduction to techniques used in Social Science research.

#### 14.210 Introduction to Curriculum Studies

The analysis of existing curricula and proposals for curriculum change.

#### 14.211 Child Development: Language Processes in Early Childhood

An introduction to the study of language development in infants and children, with particular emphasis on acquisition in home and early childhood education settings.

#### 14.212 The State and Indigenous Education in Aotearoa

An examination of the interaction of the State and the Indigenous peoples in the contested area of education and schooling.

### Education III

A course of Prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with many Education III papers. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

#### 14.300 Educational Philosophy

A study of selected educational philosophies.

#### 14.301 Comparative Education

An introduction to comparative theory and methodology through a study of educational issues in New Zealand and other countries.

#### 14.302 History of Education

Educational Reform in the twentieth century.

#### 14.303 School and Society

A sociological perspective on some aspects of current concern in New Zealand education. These may vary from year to year.

#### 14.305 The Guidance Process

An introduction to the theory and practice of counselling and guidance within New Zealand educational institutions. A course of practical work must be completed concurrently.

### 14.306 Introduction to Counselling in the Community

An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.

### 14.308 Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach

A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.

### 14.309 Developmental Psychology

A study of selected aspect of infant and child development including the development of perception, cognition, language and problem solving.

Note: In 1993 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1994 in full-time hours.

### 14.310 Psychology of Adolescence

A critical examination of development in the adolescent period.

### 14.311 Special Education

An examination of the special educational needs of children showing a typical development and of the effectiveness of current special educational strategies.

Note: In 1993 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1994 in part-time hours.

### 14.313 Methods of Research in Education

An introduction to the varieties of qualitative and quantitative approaches available to educational and social researchers. Students will be able to gain practical experience through completion of a supervised research project.

### 14.316 Early Determinants of Behaviour

A study of research dealing with the influence on later behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

### \*14.317 Organisational Effectiveness

A study of structural and interpersonal factors which influence the effectiveness of educational organisations.

Note: This course has special relevance to those with experience or interests in administration of educational social service or voluntary organisations.

### 14.319 Special Topic: The Reading Process

A study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

### 14.320 Cognition and Motivation in the Classroom

This course examines psychological theory and research relating to the interaction of cognitive and motivational factors in classroom learning.

### 14.322 Adult Learning and Education

An introductory survey of Adult Education and an overview of adult human development.

### 14.327 Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the Science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

### 14.328 Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education

A critical study of feminist theory and research in education, with emphasis on the New Zealand context.

### 14.329 Special Topic

1993: Pedagogy

### 14.330 The Seriously Ill Child

A study of the needs, problems, and development of seriously ill children.

### 14.331 Computers in Education

A study of the role of computers in primary and secondary education.

### 14.333 Akonga Maori: Nga Take E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga Maori

Critical analysis of key issues in Maori Education, incorporating Maori language and cultural perspectives through Maori pedagogy.

### †14.334 Education Policy Studies

An investigation of key areas of educational policy with special emphasis given to issues of race, gender and class. While the major focus is on New Zealand education policy, international cases will be considered as appropriate.

### †14.335 Historical Perspectives on the Family, School and Society

A critical analysis of the changing educative relationship between families and schools in particular societies, with emphasis on class, gender, race and age issues.

### 14.336 Special Topic: Issues in Pacific Island Education

A critical examination of the role of Western education in the change from pre-contact autonomous societies to incorporation

into a regional/world political and economic system.

#### **14.337 Special Topic: Schooling and Ethnic Relations**

A critical examination of strategies, structure and theories such as 'multiculturalism' and 'anti-racist education', employed in schooling in New Zealand and elsewhere, to deal with ethnic diversity.

#### **Education for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers or, six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper or, in exceptional circumstances a candidate who has commenced a thesis, or a dissertation may complete the MA as seven papers.

#### **14.400 Educational Philosophy**

Philosophical issues in education.

#### **14.401 Comparative Education**

An examination of issues in New Zealand education in light of comparative theory and method.

#### **14.402 Historical Studies in Education**

An examination of issues involved in historical studies and research related to education, including supervised investigation of a selected aspect.

#### **14.404 Sociology of Education**

A systematic discussion of the origins, history, scope and methodologies of sociological thinking about education.

#### **14.405 Education and Work**

A theoretical and practical examination of selected economic, sociological and psychological aspects of the transition from school to work.

Note: (i) This course has special relevance to careers teachers and vocational guidance and employment officers.

(ii) In 1993 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1994 in full-time hours.

#### **14.406 Educational Psychology**

An advanced treatment of the behaviour of normal children with special reference to learning and the conditions which promote it.

#### **14.407 Developmental Psychology**

An advanced treatment of research in selected aspects of cognitive and personality development.

#### **14.409 Methods of Research in Education**

An advanced treatment of selected aspects of the processes of research.

#### **14.410 Principles of Counselling and Consultation**

*Prerequisite:* 14.306 and 14.317 or their equivalent will normally be prerequisites for this course plus approved work experience in guidance and access to an appropriate fieldwork setting.

An advanced examination of principles of counselling and consulting, together with practical experience in selected procedures.

Note: In 1993 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1994 in full-time hours.

#### **14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education**

An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education including supervised research and field experience.

#### **14.413 Special Education**

*Prerequisite:* 14.311 will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced study of special educational provisions for exceptional children, including an intensive analysis of provision for mentally retarded children.

Note: In 1993 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1994 in full-time hours.

#### **†14.414 Curriculum Development and Evaluation**

A consideration of some issues concerning curriculum design and development, assessment of learning and curriculum evaluation.

#### **14.416 Special Topic**

To be Approved by Head of Department.

The topic to be proposed by the student after consultation with staff members and approved by the Head of Department. The topic must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### **\*14.417 Special Topic in Adult Education**

A more intensive examination of some of the matters introduced at Stage III papers in Adult Education.

#### **14.418 Marriage and Family Counselling**

*Prerequisite:* 14.306 or its equivalent will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within marital and family relationships.

Note: In 1993 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1994 in part-time hours.

#### **14.419 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

An advanced study of research dealing with the influence on behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

#### **†14.420 Special Topic**

To be Approved by Head of Department.

Subject to be proposed by a staff member or a student and approved by the Head of Department not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### **14.421 Perspectives on Science Education**

A study of concept development in science, the relationship between philosophy of science and science curricula and the factors that influence science curriculum change.

#### **†14.422 Education and Development Policy**

An examination of the nature and role of education within the process of economic, political and social development in selected countries.

#### **14.423 Kaupapa Maori: Te Reo Maori I**

#### **Waenganui I Te Ao Pakeha**

An examination of the social, political and historical implications for Maori language through a critical analysis of the interaction between Maori language and the dominant Pakeha education system.

#### **14.424 Maori Education Policy Development and Practice**

*Prerequisite:* Experience in Maori education.

An analysis of Maori education policy development and practice in New Zealand schooling.

#### **14.425 Feminist Issues in Education**

An examination of selected issues in current feminist debates on education.

#### **14.426 Science, Philosophy and Western Culture**

The interaction between science and culture and the ways in which the rich cultural and intellectual dimensions of science can be conveyed in science, history and literacy education.

#### **14.427 Research Topic in Education**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of an essay or essays in a field of educational inquiry

#### **14.428 The Psychology of Mathematics Education**

A critical examination of theories and recent research into the ways in which learners develop mathematical concepts, and the relationship of learning and teaching in this curriculum area.

#### **04.401 A Topic in Maori Literature**

#### **04.402 Maori Ethnicity**

#### **14.601 Thesis**

(Value 3 papers.)

#### **14.604 Dissertation**

(Value 1 paper.)

A candidate presenting a thesis or dissertation shall forward it no later than 1 November in the year in which it is to be examined. A research seminar will be held periodically during the year for those preparing to write MA theses.

A timetable for these seminars will be available at enrolment.

### **DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH**

Note: (i) Since the supply of text-books continues to be uncertain, some changes in courses may be unavoidable. Students will be notified of any such changes at the beginning of the academic year. The books mentioned in the appendix are prescribed books - i.e. those which students must have. Students should obtain from the department the fuller version of prescriptions and book lists, which include recommended books (i.e. additional to those prescribed); and also lists of further prescribed books which are required for those papers not mentioned in the appendix.

All students should possess a good dictionary: *Collins English Dictionary* and the *Concise Oxford* are recommended.

(ii) Attention is directed to the MA prerequisites as set out in the Regulations for that Degree. Students intending to take MA in English should plan their course with these requirements in mind.

#### **English I**

To advance to English II two English I papers must have been passed. Students may not include more than two English I papers in their degree. BED students must enrol in the English I papers taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education. This restriction will only be waived in exceptional circumstances. Students intending to take 18.200 are advised to take 18.100. In addition to lectures (see Timetable), all courses have weekly tutorials.

#### **18.100 Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare**

#### **18.101 Twentieth Century Literature**

**18.103 New Zealand Literature I**

New Zealand Literature I is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 18.113.

**18.104 Nineteenth Century Literature****18.105 Introduction to the Linguistic Study of English Language**

Introduction to the Linguistic Study of English Language is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 18.115.

**†T18.106 English Language: An Introduction**

This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**†T18.107 Poetry, Prose and Drama: Past and Present**

This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

Students may chose a combination of papers taught on the Main and Tamaki campuses.

**18.113 New Zealand Literature I**

As prescribed for 18.103. This paper is taught at the Auckland College of Education.

**18.115 Introduction to the Linguistic Study of English**

As prescribed for 18.105. This paper is taught at the Auckland College of Education.

**English II**

To advance to English III three specific English II papers must have been passed. See BA Schedule under English II : Note.

Note: Each paper involves one lecture per week except 18.206, 18.223 and 18.224 which have two hours; tutorials are also given.

**18.200 Mediaeval Literature****18.201 Language Literature and Culture****18.206 Historical and Comparative Linguistics****18.210 The Age of Shakespeare: Poetry****18.213 the Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy****18.220 Twentieth Century Fiction****18.221 New Zealand Literature II****18.222 Modern Poetry: 1900-1945****18.223 Phonetics and Phonology****18.224 Grammatical Analysis****18.250 English Language for Teachers****English III**

The course consists normally of a minimum of three papers, and a maximum of six papers; students must take one paper from 18.301-18.305, 18.314, 18.315, one from 18.306-18.308, 18.320 and one other English III paper. See BA Schedule under English III: Qualifications, and also MA prerequisites. Each paper involves one lecture per week (except 18.301 and 18.330 which have two lectures per week), with tutorial work as arranged.

**18.301 Old English: Language, Literature and Society****18.302 Middle English Literature****18.304 New Zealand English****18.305 Semantics**

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.312.

**18.314 Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Prose and Poetry****\*18.315 Sixteen and Seventeenth Century Drama****18.306 Literature and Culture of the Eighteenth Century****18.307 Romantic Literature****18.308 Eighteenth Century Novels****18.320 Victorian Literature****18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays**

For 1993: Comedies and Tragicomedies

**18.319 The History of Literary Criticism****18.323 American Literature: Poetry****18.325 Special Topic II as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World****18.326 Special Topic III as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the Twentieth Century****18.327 Special Topic IV as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature****18.328 Special Topic V as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing**

Entry to this course is restricted. Details for the procedure to be followed for pre-enrolment are available from the Department.

**\*18.329 Special Topic VI as Prescribed by the Head of Department****18.330 Recent Trends in Grammar****\*18.331 Shakespeare on Screen**

Entry to this course is restricted. Information is available from the Department.

Note: 18.301 and 18.302 are normally prerequisites for MA paper 18.403, 18.301 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.400, 18.302 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.411 and normally a prerequisite for 18.401, 18.301 is normally a prerequisite for MA paper 18.402, 18.330 is a prerequisite for 18.408, 18.305 is a prerequisite for 18.429.

**English for MA and Honours**

Intending MA students must consult the Head of Department about their proposed choice of courses.

**(1) Single Honours - English**

Students will select seven of the papers set out below, their selection of papers to be approved by the Head of the Department. One paper listed under Stage III English, if not already credited for a BA degree, may be offered as a paper for an MA. With the permission of the Head of Department, a thesis (18.601) may be substituted for two papers or dissertation (18.604) for one paper. The dissertation will normally take the form of a documented essay of about 12,000 words; while the length of the thesis is approximately 25,000 words upon a topic requiring detailed research.

Candidates who present their papers in two years are required to complete the specified coursework before sitting the examination for each paper. Those who present all their papers in one year are, in most cases, exempt from coursework but will be given the opportunity to submit it if they desire. All students taking a paper from English III will be required to submit the prescribed coursework for that paper.

**\*18.400 Old English**

*Prerequisite:* Old English at Stage III level.

**\*18.401 Middle English**

*Prerequisite:* Normally Middle English at Stage III level.

**18.402 Norse (Icelandic)**

*Prerequisite:* Normally Old English at Stage III level.

**\*18.403 Introduction to English Philology**

*Prerequisite:* Normally Old English and Middle English at Stage III level.

**\*18.404 Victorian Studies (24.415 History Paper)**

An interdisciplinary paper concerned with selected topics from English literature and British social and cultural history of the 19th Century.

**18.405 Twentieth Century Poetry****18.406 Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems****18.407 Literary Theory****18.408 Advanced Studies in Syntax**

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.405.

**18.409 Twentieth Century Drama****\*18.410 English Linguistics**

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.406.

**18.411 Selected Author or Authors I, to be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1993: Chaucer

*Prerequisite:* Middle English at Stage III level.

**\*18.412 Bibliography and Textual Criticism****18.413 Research Essays Paper**

This course consists of research in a field or genre proposed by the student written up in the form of a series of essays. It is compulsory for students presenting seven papers in one year and not presenting a dissertation.

**18.414 Selected Author or Authors II**

To be Prescribed by the Head of Department

For 1993: Modern Irish Authors

**\*18.415 Nineteenth Century American Prose and Fiction****18.416 Poetics in Modern American Poetry****18.417 New Zealand Literature**

The course will be based mainly on authors of prose and verse writing after 1910.

**18.418 Restoration Literature****\*18.419 Special Topic I**

To be Prescribed by Head of Department

For 1993: Literature and Society: 1400-1550

**18.420 Film Studies**

This inter-departmental paper - shared by the Departments of English and Art History - will examine film as an art by studying the work of some major film-makers and also the major theories

of film criticism.

Note: The same paper is offered as Art History 19.404.

#### **18.421 Special Topic II**

To be Prescribed by Head of Department  
For 1993: Literature and Thought 1590-1650

A course in which literature is studied in relationship to the history and religion of the time.

#### **\*18.422 Literature from the Old and New Commonwealths**

#### **\*18.423 Twentieth Century American Prose**

#### **\*18.424 Selected Author or Authors III**

#### **\*18.425 A Topic in Sociolinguistics**

#### **18.426 The Sublime 1700-1805**

#### **18.427 Special Topic III**

For 1993: Women and the Medieval Devotional Tradition

#### **\*18.428 Special Topic IV**

To be Prescribed by Head of Department

For 1993: Nabokov

#### **18.429 Special Topic V**

To be Prescribed by Head of Department

For 1993: Discourse Analysis

#### **18.430 Special Topic VI**

To be Prescribed by Head of Department

For 1993: Nineteenth Century Women Novelists

#### **18.431 Feminist Literary Theory**

#### **18.432 Popular Fiction**

#### **18.433 New Zealand and Australian Women Writers**

#### **18.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent of two papers.)

#### **18.604 Dissertation**

(Equivalent of one paper.)

#### **(2) Combined Honours - English with Another Language (Languages and Literature)**

Students will select three or four papers (set out above for Single-Honours) as approved by the Heads of Department concerned.

## **FILM AND TELEVISION STUDIES**

### **85.200 Film and Television Studies**

This paper will examine film and television in terms of their cultural and social importance. It covers the history, political significance, and critical reception of the two media.

Entry to the course is restricted. Course details, including details of pre-enrolment are available from the English and Political Studies Departments.

## **DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY**

The Schedule to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

### **Geography I**

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work and tutorials form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

#### **20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment**

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

#### **T20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment**

As prescribed for 20.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **20.102 Society, Space and Place**

Social and economic processes that determine variation, accessibility and inequality in the spatial allocation of resources both within and between nations.

#### **T20.102 Society, Space and Place**

As prescribed for 20.102. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Asian Geography I**

#### **20.130 Geography of East Asia**

A topical and regional approach to the geography of China and

Japan. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, industrialisation and urbanisation, population problems, and environmental management are emphasised.

### **Geography II**

Six papers are offered for Geography II. Students planning to advance in geography should enrol for 20.204 (or equivalent), 20.201 and 20.202. Students advancing in other subjects may take papers separately. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

#### **20.201 Processes in the Natural Environment**

Environmental processes in biogeography, climatology, geomorphology and hydrology are considered with energy flow and transformation as a unifying theme.

#### **20.202 Society, Economy and Environment**

The location and organisation of economic activities in Western societies and their relationship to other aspects of social organisation. Principles and models that are used in geography to represent and interpret these relationships are considered.

#### **20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques**

Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

#### **20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography**

Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing (SAS).

#### **20.205 Human Impact in the Environment**

An examination of humanity as a modifier of the soil, atmosphere, land and other aspects of the natural and cultural world.

#### **\*20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations.

### **Asian Geography II**

#### **\*20.240 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Political composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource are emphasised.

### **Geography III**

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

#### **20.302 Regional Processes and Development**

The interplay between agents and mechanisms shaping the nature and distribution of economic activity on the one hand, and the characteristics of regions on the other. Attention is given to the features of firms, labour, industries, markets, institutions, the state, cities and territories as they relate to the geography of capitalist production. These topics are discussed in the context of different sectors, systems of government, and nations.

#### **20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology**

Geomorphological and hydrological systems with special reference to coasts, slopes and karstic environments. 20.303 includes a residential field trip.

#### **20.304 Biogeography and Climatology**

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

#### **20.305 Population Health and Society**

Components of change in human populations (fertility, mortality, migration), population structure (sex and age, ethnicity, economic activity) and population distribution (urbanisation, segregation, regional development), patterns of health and morbidity, and systems of service delivery.

#### **\*20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and

industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations.

**\*20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised.

**20.312 Special Topic: Development in the Asia-Pacific Region**  
Development processes and issues in the countries of South-East Asia and the Pacific Islands. Themes include development theory, colonialism and historical change, population dynamics, agrarian systems and change, migration, urbanisation, international linkages, and development strategies.

**20.313 Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

**20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing**

Principles, techniques and applications of geographic information systems, including computer analysis and presentation of cartographic and remotely sensed data.

**20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course which considers the principles of research design, methods and practice of data collection, sources of published and unpublished data, experience in analytical techniques and the presentation of results. The paper includes a residential field course of at least seven days normally held in the first week of the May study break.

**20.320 Resources and Environmental Management**

Planning for the effective utilisation of natural resources through understanding the functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

**†20.321 Special Topic**

**Geography for MA and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis (which is the equivalent of three papers) in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.447. Further information (including recommended books) is included in the *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

There is an overall limit on the number of Masters students for 1993. Students should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelors Degree in order to discuss the graduate programme.

**†20.400 History and Nature of Geography**

**20.410 Change and Transition in the Pacific**

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

**20.420 Biogeography**

Analysis of theories and quantitative methods in biogeography.

**20.421 Climatology**

Topics in environmental climatology and climate resource evaluation.

**20.422 Geomorphology**

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with a focus on the S.W. Pacific and New Zealand.

**20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

**20.430 Land Use Studies**

The role of natural resources, the state and economic and social forces in influencing the use of land in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

**20.431 Cultural Geography**

Cross cultural themes in the study of people - nature relationships.

**20.432 Regional Development Studies**

Studies of regional economic growth and restructuring, focussing on development models and contemporary events in the global economy.

**20.434 Population Geography**

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

**20.436 Urban Social Geography**

Emphasis is on the social processes that underlie spatial patterns of Western cities.

**20.440 Remote Sensing**

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

**20.441 Coastal Studies**

Topics in historical coastal geomorphology and coastal management with process as the unifying theme.

**20.442 Evaluation in Environmental and Resource Planning**

An examination of methods for the evaluation of resource development proposals.

**20.443 Digital Mapping Systems**

The study of computer assisted cartography with special reference to its role in Geographic Information Systems in New Zealand.

**20.444 Special Topic**

1993: The Geography of the Built Environment

An analysis of the socio-economic processes shaping the evolution of built environments.

**†20.445 Special Topic**

**†20.446 Special Topic**

**†20.447 Special Topic**

---

## DEPARTMENT OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

The Department teaches three subjects: Dutch, German and Scandinavian Studies.

---

### DUTCH

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and in the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the Enquiries Office, Registry. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road. In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

#### Dutch I

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Paper 421.102 may be taken on its own.

**421.100 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of Dutch, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

**421.102 Aspects of the Civilisation of the Low Countries**

An outline of the history, geography, society and culture of the Low Countries (Netherlands, Belgium) with reference also to Indonesia.

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying 421.100 or 421.200.

#### Dutch II

**421.200 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of Dutch with special emphasis on the structure of the standard language, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

---

### GERMAN

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the Enquiries Office, Registry. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

#### German I

Two language acquisition courses are provided, either 22.100 or 22.103 and 22.105. Students who have studied German previously must enrol for 22.100. Students without previous knowledge of German must enrol for 22.103 and 22.105.

Papers 22.100 and 22.101 and papers 22.103 and 22.105 are corequisites. See BA Schedule.

### **22.100 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

### **22.101 Introduction to German Literature**

Literary history and criticism with special reference to modern poetry and short prose.

### **22.102 Aspects of Modern German Civilisation**

A survey of modern German civilisation including aspects of 19th and 20th century German history and thought; literature (studied in translation), music, art and cinema of the period.

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying German language and literature. The paper is strongly recommended to students of German at all stages.

### **22.103 Reading Knowledge of German**

The study of German vocabulary and sentence structure; comprehension of general and subject-related texts and translation into English.

### **22.105 Introductory Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of German designed specifically for students without previous knowledge of the language.

## **German II**

Papers 22.200, 22.202 and 22.203 are corequisites. See BA Schedule.

### **22.200 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

### **22.202 Genres of 20th Century German Literature**

Literary criticism with special reference to drama; aspects of 20th century drama, prose and poetry with reference to the visual arts, including film.

### **22.203 German Linguistics**

An introduction to the linguistic study of the structure and use of the standard language in the German-speaking countries.

## **German III**

Students will normally take 22.300, 22.301 and 22.302.

### **22.300 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

### **22.301 Mediaeval and Romantic Literature**

### **22.302 18th and 19th Century German Literature**

### **\*22.303 Post-war German Literature**

### **\*22.304 Special Topic in German Literature**

### **22.309 Special Topic in German Studies**

1993: Das deutschsprachige Europa und Neuseeland im 19. und 20. Jahrhundert.

### **22.350 Translation in Theory and Practice**

Students will normally be required to have passed 22.300 or achieved a comparable standard of language competence. The paper will also be open to native speakers of German.

## **German for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (22.611) or six papers and a research essay (22.603) or seven papers including 22.400. The specific requirements for German are given in MA Schedule (11), and for Languages and Literature including German in MA Schedule (17). All courses need to be approved by the Head of Department. Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss their choice of papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

### **22.400 Language Acquisition: Written and Oral German**

### **\*22.401 Mediaeval Studies with Special Reference to the Nibelungenlied and Hartmann von Aue**

### **22.402 Mediaeval Studies with Special Reference to Wolfram von Eschenbach**

### **\*22.404 Literatur der Goethezeit**

### **\*22.405 The Poetry of Rilke**

### **\*22.407 Selected Works of Brecht**

### **22.408 Post-war German Prose**

### **\*22.410 Linguistic Analysis of Contemporary Written German**

### **22.411 The Märchen**

### **\*22.413 Selected Works of Thomas Mann**

### **\*22.415 German Language Developments, Past and Present**

### **\*22.417 Twentieth Century German Poetry**

### **22.418 An Approved Special Topic in German Language**

### **22.419 An Approved Special Topic in German Literature**

### **22.420 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **\*22.421 Literatur und Film**

### **22.422 German Lexicography**

### **22.423 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **22.424 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **22.440 An Approved Special Topic in Germanic Languages, Literature, Thought or History**

### **22.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to one paper)

### **22.611 Thesis**

(Equivalent to three papers)

## **SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES**

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the Enquiries Office, Registry. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

## **Scandinavian Studies I**

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Paper 46.101 may be taken on its own, papers 46.100 and 46.102 must be taken together - see BA Schedule.

### **46.100 and 46.102 Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

These two papers must be taken together.

### **46.101 Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation**

An outline of Scandinavian history, geography and society; selected works of modern Scandinavian literature studied in English translation. This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are taking 46.100 and 46.102 or advancing Scandinavian Studies. The paper is strongly recommended to students of Scandinavian Studies at all stages.

## **Scandinavian Studies II**

Papers 46.200 and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 and 46.204 are corequisites - see BA Schedule.

### **46.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

### **46.201 Introduction to Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics**

### **46.202 Scandinavian Drama and Film with Special Reference to Ibsen, Strindberg and Ingmar Bergman**

### **\*46.203 Modern Swedish Novels and Short Stories**

### **\*46.204 Swedish Poetry from Mediaeval Ballads to the Present Day.**

## **Scandinavian Studies III**

Papers 46.300 and either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304 are corequisites - see BA Schedule.

### **46.300 Language Acquisition**

Advanced oral and written Swedish; comprehension of written Danish and Norwegian ("Bokmaal").

### **46.301 Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics**

### **46.302 Scandinavian Drama and Film with Special Reference to Holberg, Ibsen, Strindberg, Lagerkvist and Ingmar Bergman**

- \*46.303 Modern Scandinavian Novels and Short Stories  
 \*46.304 Scandinavian Poetry from Mediaeval Ballads to the Present Day.

## HEBREW

### Hebrew I

#### 23.110 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew

The basic skills of listening to, speaking, writing and reading of Biblical Hebrew.

## DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

Fuller details concerning the Department's teaching programme and its requirements of students are contained in a Guide which students can obtain from the Department at 5 Wynyard Street. Students are advised to call at the Department before enrolment to discuss courses and to obtain leaflets entitled Advice on Books to Buy.

These will list recommended texts for papers for which there are not prescribed texts.

### History I

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, with three lectures and one tutorial per week for each. The following will be the sequence in 1993: 24.140-24.100; 24.101-24.105; 24.122-24.123. 24.107 will be taught in the first half of the year.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

#### 24.100 From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: Issues of Peace and War

The origins of the Second World War in Europe and Asia. The course examines the challenges Germany and Japan presented to the status quo and considers the outcome.

#### 24.101 The Russian Revolution

The origins of the 1917 revolution and the development of the Soviet state and society.

Paper 43.112 Russian Civilisation is complementary to 24.101

#### 24.105 The USA in the 20th Century

An introduction to U.S. history from the 1890s to the end of the Cold War. Emphasis on the U.S. as a global power, race, the constitution, and cultural issues.

#### 24.107 Women in New Societies

The social, economic and political history of women in the USA, New Zealand and Australia. Special themes will be women's domestic and family role, the changing work of women, the education of women, the women's rights movement and women's participation in social reform movements.

#### \*24.109 Special Topic: A topic in Modern European History 24.122 New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the Nineteenth Century

Te Ao Hurihuri, the world turned around. A history of a Maori world, settled by Europeans; the evolution of a colonial economy, political system, and society.

#### 24.123 New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori, Pakeha and Polynesian in the Twentieth Century

Te Ao Hou, the new world. A history of New Zealand's development in the twentieth century, with particular reference to Maori and Pakeha, the growing relationship with the Polynesian Island communities, the evolution of a modern society, economy and government, and international relations.

#### 24.140 Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700

An introduction to the history of late medieval and early modern Europe, with emphasis on the development of European states and changes in habits of thought, social order and life styles.

#### \*24.141 Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875

#### †24.150 Invention, Science and Society

This course will examine the impact of science, invention and technology across a range of societies and cultures since the eighteenth century.

#### T24.151 New Zealand and the Wider World

This course will focus on New Zealand's technological, economic and trading development and its relationships with the wider world from the time of earliest discovery.

### Asian History I

Note: Papers 24.132 and 24.130 are taught in sequence and on a half-year basis, with three lectures and one tutorial a week for each. 24.133 will be taught throughout the year, three lectures and a tutorial each fortnight.  
 Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable

permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

#### 24.130 China Since the Opium War

The collapse of Imperial China under the impact of foreign imperialism and internal upheavals and the subsequent struggle to rebuild a modern nation.

#### 24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia

An examination of the nineteenth century roots of nationalism and the significance of the revolutionary struggle in the twentieth century.

#### 24.133 The Development of Modern Japan

Offering some explanations for the rise of Japan as a major world power, the paper first discusses the feudal order in Tokugawa Japan and the policy of seclusion. The next section analyses the transition to a unified nation state and the opening of Japan to the West. The third section deals with the modernisation of Japan, its expansion into East Asia and the Pacific, the American occupation, and the reconstitution of the political order after 1945.

### History II

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week. The following will be the sequence in 1993: 24.200-24.201; 24.214-24.215; 24.233-24.235; 24.237-24.236. 24.218 and 24.217 will be taught in the second half of the year.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

#### 24.200 Rome and the Barbarians

Can we still talk about the 'decline and fall' of the Roman Empire? Does the period witness the collapse of a 'slave economy' and the beginnings of medieval 'feudalism'? Were the 'barbarians' marauders, colonists, or refugees? Were they welcomed into the Mediterranean world by a selfish and skilful aristocratic élite? What was the resulting impact upon Roman institutions, culture and economy? In 1993, attention will focus on the barbarian kingdoms of the fifth and sixth centuries.

#### 24.201 Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III

Studies in the development of royal power in England from the Anglo-Saxon period until the thirteenth century.

#### 24.214 Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1500-1660

A study of representation and consent in early modern Europe and of the parliamentary assemblies which were the embodiment of these principles. The course falls into two parts: (1) a study of individual assemblies and their varying fortunes, e.g. dramatic rise of the Swedish Riksdag, weak and dependent assemblies in France, Castile and Ireland; the English parliaments; (2) a comparative study of the rise, decline or eclipse of European assemblies, and particularly of their role in the crises of the mid-seventeenth century.

#### 24.215 Seventeenth-Century England: A Social History

This course attempts to recapture the material, mental and social worlds of seventeenth-century England: social and gender divisions, family life, communities, education and literacy, witchcraft, plague, government and order, religion, and the origins and impact of the English Revolution of 1640-60.

#### \*24.216 Modern France 1871 to the Present

#### †24.217 Special Topic

1993: A Topic in Modern European History

#### †24.218 Special Topic

1993: A Topic in New Zealand History

#### †24.219 Special Topic

#### 24.230 Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific

European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migrations of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand.

#### 24.233 Australian Social History 1788-1990

This paper surveys the history of Australia from European settlement to the present. It focuses on the lives and experiences of ordinary Australians, as well as providing an overview of the major political and economic developments across two centuries.

#### 24.234 New Zealand Communities 1840-1940

A study of the origins, social structure, cultural and economic change, politics and government of different types of New Zealand communities. Case studies will be made of certain communities e.g. a Wakefield community, a sheep station, a Maori community, an urban community.

#### 24.235 German History 1871 to the Present

The unification of East and West Germany has once again raised fundamental questions about this "restless nation". This paper on

German history will discuss the problems of its specific development, its political and cultural identity and its international relations.

#### †24.236 Special Topic

1993: Colonial America

#### 24.237 The First 100 Years: Mexico and Peru in the Sixteenth Century, and New Zealand in the Nineteenth Century; A History of the Colonised

This paper will look at the historical experience of colonised peoples, from their perspectives. It will contrast two European colonising cultures (set apart in time and by distinct philosophies of colonisation). It seeks to cross the frontiers of the more traditional colonial history, to illuminate the 'other side' of that history.

#### Asian History II

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week. Papers 24.222 and 24.224 will be taught in the second half of the year. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or both.

#### 24.222 China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties

The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world, and the development of her cultural heritage.

#### \*24.223 State and Society in Pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia

24.224 State and Society in Pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia  
An introduction to the history and culture of Burma, Thailand, and the Indo-China states until the end of the nineteenth century. The main concern of the course is to show how a number of different ethnic units which shared a similar geographic, economic and religious environment developed in time to become distinct polities. These historic experiences in turn determined how they responded to the Western challenge in the nineteenth century.

#### History III

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two hour period per week. The following will be the sequence for 1993: 24.307-24.334; 24.321-24.325; 24.329-24.315; 24.333-24.332; 24.351-24.305; 24.354-24.336. 24.301 will be taught in the second half of the year.

Second half-year papers will start in the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper or two or more papers from different sequences. It may prove impossible owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.

#### 24.301 The Mexican Revolution

The armed revolution (1910-1920) and the subsequent attempts to carry out its objectives: a study in the problems of reforming a society in an inherited environment of internal political corruption and external economic exploitation.

#### \*24.302 the Reign of Henry VIII

#### 24.305 New Zealand Legal History

This paper will provide an introduction to the history of the law, legal institutions and the legal profession in New Zealand. Students do not need a legal background to take this paper.

#### 24.307 The Origins of the First World War

The origins of the First World War through discussion of the foreign policies of the main European countries involved, including Italy, and an analysis of international relations from 1870, and particularly from 1890 to 1915.

#### 24.315 Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900

An examination of the relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, travellers and missionaries) up to the colonial period.

#### 24.320 Special Topic

1993: A Topic in New Zealand History

#### 24.321 German Conservatism in the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries

This paper will examine conservative politics and thought in German history. By focusing on crucial turning points in its history, we will examine the important role conservatism displayed in the shaping of a development specific to Germany.

#### †24.323 Special Topic

#### 24.325 Immigration and Settlement in Australia

This paper examines the peopling of the Australian continent. It explores why immigrants came to Australia, where they settled and how they adjusted to the new society, as well as Australian attitudes towards immigration.

#### 24.329 Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the present day

This paper explores the development of the welfare state in New Zealand from 1840 to the present. It will examine the reasons for the introduction of welfare measures, the form the legislation took, and its impact on society.

#### 24.332 Early Monasticism

The paper explores the background (including pagan and Jewish elements) and the development of Christian asceticism, between roughly 250 and 650 A.D. Both ideas and institutions will claim attention, and in particular the shifting relations between ascetics and society. Are we dealing with dropouts, rebels, critics, or careerists?

#### 24.333 A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair

Designed as a successor to 24.201, this paper will cover approximately the same period (c.800-c.1296) and will deal with the political and cultural history of medieval European States (excluding England).

#### 24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict

During the nineteenth century one of the major factors in the formulation of British foreign policy was fear of the growth of Russian power. Why did that fear arise? What was British policy in response? To what extent does an examination of Russian foreign policy warrant the nineteenth century British interpretation of it?

#### 24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe

This paper will deal with the attitudes and values of ordinary people in Europe, c.1500-1750; in other words, popular culture in the wider sense of the term. Topics will include supernatural world views, oral culture, literature, sexuality, the law, protest, medicine, festivity, and the relationship between élite culture and popular culture. The emphasis will be on England and France.

#### †24.342 Special Topic

#### †24.343 Special Topic

#### 24.351 Waitangi: The Treaty and the Tribunal

An examination of the Treaty of Waitangi in its international context – in relation to treating with indigenous peoples in the U.S., Canada and other British colonies – and in New Zealand history, with special reference to the alienation of Maori resources and inquiries into Maori grievances, culminating in the work of the Waitangi Tribunal.

#### 24.354 Radicals and Dissenters in American Culture and Politics, 1840s to the present

Lectures, primary readings, and discussion of significant non-mainstream thinkers in the U.S. from Henry David Thoreau to Edward Abbey.

#### Asian History III

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week, in the following sequence: 24.330-24.340. 24.341 will be taught in the first half of the year.

Second half year papers start during the week beginning 21 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper or two or more papers from different sequences.

#### \*24.312 Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration

#### 24.330 British Imperialism in Southeast Asia

A survey of British imperialism in the Southeast Asian context from the late eighteenth century to the years following the Second World War, with an emphasis on selected topics and areas.

#### 24.340 Theravada Buddhism and Islam in Southeast Asian History

The first section of the course will discuss the history and major teachings of these religions and their nature in Southeast Asia. The second section will examine the impact of these religions in the history of Southeast Asia.

#### 24.341 Special Topic

1993: A Paper on Chinese History

#### History for MA and Honours

Students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 24.431 but including 24.410) in their first year and complete their remaining work in their second year. Students in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may (with the permission of the Head of Department) attempt fewer papers in their first year and spread their remaining work over the one or, at most, two years following.

The thesis shall not exceed 50,000 words and two copies must be



handed in to the Registrar in accordance with MA Regulation 11 (d). The dissertation shall be between 10,000 and 15,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 December in the student's final year.

The Head of Department may permit a student not attempting a thesis to include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included. Students are expected to report regularly to their supervisors and to attend a research seminar in their second and (where applicable) third year.

#### **24.400 Topics in New Zealand History**

An examination of approaches to New Zealand history and the way in which aspects of the past, such as race relations, class, gender, politics, national identity, war, foreign policy have been presented and debated.

#### **24.401 The Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870**

An examination of political and related social change in the Pacific Islands from annexation to decolonisation.

#### **\*24.402 Race and Class in Southern Africa in the 19th and 20th Centuries**

#### **24.404 Kings, Lords and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485-1603**

This course involves the extensive use of primary materials. It concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.

#### **24.406 Individual and Community in Western Europe 1050-1200**

The developments and changes in the relationship between communities (intellectual, religious, commercial, heretical) and the individuals which made them up. A reading knowledge of French is particularly important, although Latin (or perhaps German) may be substituted.

#### **24.407 Indonesia and the Philippines: Colonial Experience and Post-colonial Problems**

This paper examines the similarities and contrasts in the colonial history of Indonesia and the Philippines and discusses some of the problems the two Republics have faced since independence.

#### **\*24.409 British Social History 1870-1914**

#### **24.410 The Historian's Craft: Theories, Methods and Techniques**

The course is designed to achieve two aims: (1) to provide a basic knowledge of the evolution of history as a discipline through a selective study of some of the most influential schools of history in the past; and (2) to establish a sound understanding of some modern trends in history. The latter would involve the examination of ideas and the application of methodologies which have been developed by the French Annales School, by the closer links being forged between history and the social sciences, and by the unique developments which have evolved in the historiography of Asia, Africa and the Pacific.

#### **\*24.413 The Origins of the Second World War**

#### **24.414 Law, State and Society in Twentieth Century United States history**

This paper introduces students to issues of power and liberty in the context of a constitutional democracy. The primary focus is on the process of state-building empowering the executive in the late 18th and 19th centuries, and on the development of civil liberties and civil rights in the 20th century.

Students who have taken 24.353 in 1991 may not enrol in this paper.

#### **24.417 The Irish in North America, Australia and New Zealand**

This paper will consist of a comparative study of Irish emigration to and settlement in North America, Australia and New Zealand.

#### **\*24.420 China's Struggle for Modernity:**

The Republican Era

#### **†24.421 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **24.422 Topics in Late Roman Religion**

The course is designed to provide opportunity and guidance for

seminar work on a variety of issues, pagan as well as Christian and Jewish. In 1993, lectures will focus on secular-religious relations in the period 364-410.

#### **\*24.424 Labouring Life in Nineteenth-Century Britain**

#### **24.425 Health, Medicine and Society in New Zealand and Britain, 1840-present day**

Topics to be investigated in this course include the development of the medical and allied professions, hospital and medical services, public health, mental health, Maori health, and women and health.

#### **24.430 Special Study**

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.425, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

#### **24.431 Special Study**

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.425, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

Note: (i) There is no guarantee that all papers listed above will be available in any one year.

(ii) If enrolment for any MA paper other than 24.430 and 24.431 falls below five, students may be asked to transfer to another MA paper, or to pursue study in the field by enrolling in 24.430 or 24.431.

(iii) All students intending to enrol for MA must see the Head of Department before formally enrolling, preferably before the end of the previous year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS**

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations I**

#### **72.101 Organisation and Management**

Introduction to organisational behaviour, including motivation, interpersonal relations, communication, leadership, and group processes. Organisations as mechanistic, organic, and political systems. Organisations as cultures. Psychic phenomena in organisations. Organisations as instruments of domination. Organisational analysis. Principles of management, including strategy, organising and control. Principles of labour relations, including employment, industrial legislation, trade unions, industrial conflict.

#### **T72.101 Organisation and Management**

As prescribed for 72.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations II**

#### **72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

This paper provides a framework for understanding human behaviour in the context of organisations. It explores the interacting effects of the individual and the organisation. The course begins by focussing on the individual and then progressively broadens. It includes perception, learning, motivation and attitudes to work, stress, interpersonal and group communication, conflict, women managers, power, politics, organisational structures, culture and development.

#### **T72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

As prescribed for 72.204. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **72.207 Labour Relations**

An introduction to the subject of labour relations with special reference to New Zealand. The objective of the course will be to develop overall understanding of industrial relations theory and practice. The institutional and legal frameworks of labour relations in New Zealand will be discussed with particular reference to the history and organisation of trade unions and employers' associations, the role of government, the legislation relating to employment and to the resolution of industrial disputes, and the procedures for determining pay and conditions of employment in the public and private sectors.

#### **†T72.207 Labour Relations**

As prescribed for 72.207. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations III**

#### **72.303 Advanced Labour Relations**

Issues in Comparative Labour Relations. A number of labour relations systems are studied (including Britain, France, USA, Sweden, Japan, and West Germany) in order to assess the

similarities and dissimilarities which exist between systems, Also topics relating to comparative collective bargaining, transnational corporations, industrial democracy, political unionism and supply-side labour relations.

### **72.313 Business and Society**

The course examines the relationship between business institutions and the social, cultural and political climate within which they operate, exploring the effects of business on society and of society on business. The content of the course will include a mix of (a) issues (eg business/government relationships, business and the environment, individual privacy, business ethics) and (b) industry case studies.

### **72.316 Organisational Psychology**

Organisations as psychological environments; functions and meanings of work; work attitudes; introduction to personnel psychology; occupational mental health; stress, quality of working life; groups and social influence at work; intergroup behaviour.

### **72.317 Women in Organisations**

A study of the economic, social and political environment in which women join and participate in the workforce. Structural and attitudinal barriers limiting women's access to organisational positions. Women in management. Equal employment opportunities and other current issues.

### **72.325 Organisation Theory and Development**

Theories of organisations, including formation of new organisations, organisational change, and organisational death. Traditional and contemporary approaches to organisational structure and design. Organisational development and effectiveness. Organisational inertia and adaptation.

### **72.340 Special Topic**

1993: Trade Union Studies

A study of the history and development of trade unions in New Zealand, plus consideration of contemporary issues and challenges for the movement, with guest lectures from labour practitioners.

### **†72.341 Special Topic**

1993: Industrial Relations in the Post-modern Firm

### **†72.342 Special Topic**

## **DEPARTMENT OF MAORI STUDIES**

Full details concerning Maori Studies papers are contained in Courses in Maori Studies for 1993 available from Maori Studies secretary.

### **Maori Studies Stage I Level**

Students who are beginners or near beginners in Maori Language should take the Introduction papers 04.106 and 04.107. Fluent speakers of Maori or those with three or more years of Maori Language at school should take the Maori Language papers 04.109, 04.110 and 04.111. Students who gain good passes in the Introduction Papers, may take these Maori Language papers also. Students intending to advance in Maori Language must pass 04.110, 04.111 and either 04.109 or 04.112.

Papers 04.109 and 04.111 are designed to be taken together and students should be enrolled in these concurrently.

### **04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102, N04.101 and T04.101.

### **N04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

As prescribed for 04.101. This paper is taught at Northland Polytechnic, Whangarei.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102, and Maori Studies 04.101 and T04.101.

### **T04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

As prescribed for 04.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102, and Maori Studies 04.101 and N04.101.

### **04.106 Introduction to Written Maori**

This paper will introduce students, who have no background in the Maori Language, to basic skills in writing Maori.

### **04.107 Introduction to Spoken Maori**

This paper will introduce students, who have no background in the Maori Language, to basic skills in speaking Maori.

### **04.109 Maori Language: Structure and Translation**

This paper introduces translation techniques between the Maori and English languages and explains the grammatical vocabulary and the theoretical model of Maori grammar. It also teaches the structure of simple sentences.

### **†T04.109 Maori Language: Structure and Translation**

As prescribed for 04.109. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **04.110 Maori Language: Maori Literature and Writing**

This is a course in the written use of Maori tested by translation, reading, comprehension and composition. This paper will also study written and oral Maori literature and advanced comprehension and composition.

### **†T04.110 Maori Language: Maori Literature and Writing**

As prescribed for 04.110. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **04.111 Maori Language: Oral and Aural**

The aim of the course is to develop skills in speaking, writing and hearing Maori.

### **†04.112 Structure of Te Reo**

This paper on Maori grammatical metalanguage will be taught in Maori.

### **†04.113 Introduction to Maori Material Culture**

This course will teach the theory and symbolism underlying the material arts and crafts of weaving, tukutuku, taniko and carving.

## **Maori Studies Stage II Level**

Students should note that 04.204 and 04.205 are designed to be taken together and should be enrolled in concurrently.

### **04.202 The Ancient Maori World/Te Ao Tawhito**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.211.

### **04.203 The Coming of the Maori**

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 A.D.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.208, and Maori Studies N04.203.

### **N04.203 The Coming of the Maori**

As prescribed for 04.203. This paper is taught at Northland Polytechnic, Whangarei.

### **04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

### **04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills**

### **†04.206 A Topic in Maori Material Culture**

### **\*04.207 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.216.

### **†04.208 Treaty of Waitangi Issues**

A multi-disciplinary course on the Treaty of Waitangi.

## **Maori Studies Stage III Level**

The language papers 04.306 and 04.307 are designed to be taken together and students should enrol in them concurrently. Students who are taking Maori Studies papers in fulfilment of BA Degree Regulation 4 (a) must pass 04.306 and 04.307.

### **†04.302 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.306.

### **†04.303 Maori Oratory**

Whaikōrero and other Non-Casual Speech Forms.

### **†04.304 Maori Poetry and Song**

A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.

### **†04.305 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative historical survey.

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.303.

### **04.306 Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

### **04.307 Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills**

### **\*04.308 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation and its social context, oriented towards critical analysis of contemporary New Zealand society.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.304.

### **\*04.309 Whanaungatanga - Whakapapa**

**†04.310 Regional Approaches to Maori Society**

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.341

**†04.311 Special Topic in Maori Studies****\*04.312 Computer Text Analysis and Research in Maori Studies****\*04.313 Language and Statistics**

Descriptive, inferential and multivariate statistical methods as applied to language.

Note: The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.311.

**†04.314 Te Kaupapa Waahine Maori**

A study and analysis of the customs and ritual of traditional and contemporary Maori women.

**04.315 Special Topic in Maori Studies: New Zealand Archaeology**

Aspects of New Zealand archaeology from first colonisation through to the colonial era. Includes site recognition, recording and interpretation within a regional context and period, as appropriate.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.330.

**Maori Studies for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (04.601) counting as three papers. Up to two papers listed under Stage III level Maori Studies, if not credited for a BA Degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

**†04.400 A Topic in Maori Language**

1993: Recent Developments in the Study of Maori and Polynesian Grammar.

**04.401 A Topic in Maori Literature****\*04.402 Maori Ethnicity**

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.423.

**†04.403 Tikanga Maori****†04.404 Special Topic in Maori Culture and Society****†04.405 Special Topic in Maori Studies****04.406 Maori Myths and Tribal Traditions****04.601 Thesis****DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

For prescriptions see Index.

**DEPARTMENT OF MUSIC**

Restrictions on entry to Courses:

1. A student wishing to advance in Music for BA (that is beyond Stage I) who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made. A limited number of first-year places is available in the Department. Students should refer to the Faculty of Music Prescriptions for details.

**Music I****Music I (as prescribed for BMus)**

28.100, 28.101, 28.103, 28.104, 28.105, 28.106, 28.113, 28.114  
Prescriptions for BA

**28.104 Music and the 20th Century**

A listening-based approach to music and its various types and forms in the period 1900-1960.

**28.105 Basic Musical Techniques**

Fundamental written skills in music, and practice in keyboard and aural perception.

**28.106 History of Jazz**

A study of the development of Jazz from 1900. In addition to the general and regional study of the growth of the music, there will also be some concentration on particular styles, performers and performances.

**Music II****Music II (as prescribed for BMus)**

28.201, 28.202, 28.203, \*28.204, 28.207, \*28.208, 28.214, 28.223.

**Music III****Music III (as prescribed for BMus)**

29.301, †28.302, 28.303, \*28.304, 28.307, \*28.308, †28.314, †28.322, 28.323, †28.324.

**Music for MA and Honours**

Seven papers are required for MA in Music: four papers and a thesis (which counts as three papers), as prescribed for MMus.

Entry to the course depends on interview by the Board of teaching members of the Music Faculty.

Where necessary, a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of Department as to his or her proficiency as a performer, or ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

Note: (1) The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice of papers.

(2) The specific requirements for choice of papers are given in MA Schedule (22).

**PACIFIC STUDIES**

Two Stage I Pacific Studies are offered in alternate years. An asterisk shows which one is not taught in 1993. Additionally, two Pacific language papers, both at Stage I, are available in 1993. Enquiries about them should be directed to the Director, Centre for Pacific Studies, 22 Wynyard Street, three doors up from the Marae.

Pacific Studies papers are accepted as pre or corequisites for various papers on the Pacific which are offered by the Departments of Anthropology, Sociology, History, Geography, Education and Political Studies. See course descriptions offered by these departments.

**79.100 Topics in the Political Economy of the South Pacific**

○ An introduction to the processes of political, economic and social change in the region, with case studies where appropriate.

**\*79.101 Topics in Pacific Arts**

○ A survey of traditional and modern history of the Pacific and the impact of change on languages, music, oratory, dance, arts and craft and identity as a result of migration etc.

**478.100 Samoan Language for Beginners**

The course will focus on acquisition of basic Samoan to develop skills in listening, speaking and writing.

**478.101 Samoan Language for Fluent Speakers**

A course for those who passed the beginners course offered in 1991 and 1992 and speakers who wish to improve their speech styles, and reading and writing skills within a cultural context.

**DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY**

Fuller details concerning the content of Philosophy papers are contained in a booklet entitled *Guide to Undergraduate Philosophy, 1993*. Free copies are available from the Secretary, Room 7, 1 Alfred Street. This booklet also contains general information about the Department, a guide to prerequisites and choice of papers, information about coursework and assessment, and a list of the prescribed and recommended texts for each paper. Students are strongly advised to consult this booklet and seek advice concerning their proposed course of study before enrolment.

Prerequisites and restrictions for Philosophy papers are set out in detail in the BA Schedule and should be studied carefully before enrolment. Several Philosophy II papers may be relevant to students majoring in other subjects; students wishing to take these papers without the normal prerequisites are advised to consult the Head of Department. Note that certain Political Studies I papers are accepted as prerequisites for some Philosophy II papers of interest to students majoring in Political Studies. Note that 29.101 is a prerequisite for 29.201, 29.305, 29.306 and for the MA in Philosophy.

**Philosophy I**

Note: Two hours per week for each paper including lectures and tutorials.

**29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge**

Metaphysics deals with fundamental problems about the nature of the world and human beings (for example, the question of the existence of God, the relationship between mind and body, and the nature and identity of the self); the Theory of Knowledge studies the sources, limits and justification of human knowledge. The paper includes the study of extracts from the works of various great philosophers, such as Plato and Descartes.

**29.101 Introduction to Logic**

Logic is the study of argument. After an informal discussion of notions of truth, consistency, modes of truth, and the ideas of soundness, deductive validity and inductive strength as applied to arguments, this paper provides an introduction to formal logic through the study of syllogistic logic, propositional logic and quantificational logic.

**29.104 Introduction to Ethics and Social Philosophy**

Ethics is the philosophical study of morality, while social philosophy is the philosophical study of social concepts (individual liberty and the state, for example). This paper provides an introduction to several ethical and social theories (including Kantianism, utilitarianism, virtue ethics, existentialism, and theories about rights); relates these theories to some practical moral and social issues; and provides an introduction to fundamental questions about the nature of morality, such as the objectivity or subjectivity of values.

**Philosophy II**

Note: Except where noted otherwise, each paper has one two-hour class per week.

**\*29.200 Philosophy of Mind****29.201 Logic II**

An introduction to set theory and its importance for logic and philosophy; a study of important classical and non-classical logical systems (e.g., intuitionistic logic, multi-valued logics, modal logic).

Note: Three one-hour classes per week, in first and second terms only.

**\*29.202 Philosophy of Language****29.203 Philosophy of Science**

A study of scientific method; the distinction between science and non-science; and the status of scientific theories. Some important episodes in the history of science will be discussed.

Note: Three one-hour classes per week, in first and second terms only.

**29.204 Greek Philosophy**

An introduction to the main themes and figures of Greek philosophy. Following a survey of early philosophy up to the time of Socrates, the course involves study of one or more major works of Plato, and an introduction to Aristotle's logic, metaphysics, and ethics.

Note: The same paper is offered as Ancient History 12.224.

**29.205 Political Philosophy II**

Philosophical problems concerning the relationship amongst the members of society, involving issues of liberty, autonomy and authority. Topics will include a study of contractarian views and their application to the Treaty of Waitangi.

**\*29.206 History of Philosophy IIA****\*29.207 Philosophy of Religion****29.208 Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge II**

More advanced study of topics in these two areas, which in 1993 will include problems in theory of knowledge and the philosophy of perception, based on a study of the British empiricists, John Locke and George Berkeley; David Hume on causation; and topics in contemporary theory of knowledge.

**29.209 Continental Philosophy II**

A study of Kant, Hegel (*The Phenomenology of Spirit*) and Schopenhauer.

**29.210 Applied Ethics**

Philosophical analysis of contemporary moral problems, such as the morality of nuclear deterrence, abortion, reverse discrimination, pornography and environmental ethics.

**\*29.211 History of Philosophy IIB****29.212 Philosophy of the Arts**

A range of philosophical questions about the creation of artworks, what kinds of things artworks are, and the conditions for their interpretation, appreciation and evaluation.

**29.213 Philosophical Issues in Feminism**

A selection of philosophical issues which arise within feminist thinking (for example, the nature of sexual equality; concepts of patriarchy, oppression and exploitation and their use in feminist analyses of women's social position; the nature of sexual harassment).

**29.214 Special Topic: Topics in Continental Philosophy**

A study of selected topics from Jean-Paul Sartre's *Being and Nothingness*, including freedom and responsibility, self-deception, "human nature" and relations with others; a critical examination of the post-modernist notion of the "death of the

author", and a study of the work of Michel Foucault.

Note: Two two-hour classes per week in second term and one two-hour class per week in third term.

**\*29.215 Special Topic****Philosophy III**

Note: (i) Students wishing to advance to MA in Philosophy should note the prerequisites set out in section (24) of the MA Schedule.

(ii) Except where noted otherwise, each paper has one two-hour class per week.

**\*29.300 Theory of Knowledge III****\*29.301 Metaphysics III****29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)**

A study of mediaeval philosophy (including the work of Abelard, Aquinas, Augustine, Duns Scotus and Ockham) in relation to its ancient roots in Platonism and Aristotelianism.

Note: One two-hour and one one-hour class per week, in first and second terms only.

**29.303 Continental Philosophy III**

A study of Nietzsche and Heidegger.

**29.304 Ethics III**

Advanced philosophical study of moral theory (in both normative and meta-ethics), including Aristotelian ethics, moral dilemmas, feminist ethics, objectivity.

**29.305 Logic III**

A course in mathematical logic.

Note: Three one-hour classes per week throughout the year. The same paper is offered as Mathematics 26.315.

**29.306 Language, Truth and Meaning**

The relationship between language, thought and reality. Topics include: the nature of reference and meaning, Quine's sceptical views on meaning, classical theories of truth, Tarski's semantic conception of truth and Kripke on truth.

**29.307 Topics in Recent Philosophy**

Contemporary issues in Metaphysics, Theory of Knowledge and Philosophy of Mind.

**†29.308 Special Topic****29.309 Special Topic: Topics in Continental Philosophy**

A study of selected topics from Jean-Paul Sartre's *Being and Nothingness*, including freedom and responsibility, self-deception, "human nature" and relations with others; a critical examination of the post-modernist notion of the "death of the author"; and a study of the work of Michel Foucault.

Note: Two two-hour classes per week in second term, and one two-hour class per week in third term.

**29.310 Political Philosophy III**

A study of current ideas about justice, equality, power and rights.

Note: The same paper is offered as Political Studies 30.305, and in 1993 will be taught by that Department.

**Philosophy for MA and Honours**

Prerequisites for enrolment for this degree are set out in the MA degree regulations and section (24) of the MA Schedule.

Note that 29.101 is a prerequisite for the M.A. in Philosophy. Students may obtain an exemption from this prerequisite by passing a special examination in Logic to be held before enrolment week. Students wishing to sit this examination should apply to the Head of Department. A pass in this special examination carries no credit towards a degree.

Seven papers, or, with the approval of the Head of Department, four papers and a thesis, are required for this degree. One paper may be chosen from those offered in Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.310) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers are to be selected from 29.400 to 29.422, not all of which are offered in any one year. The selection must be approved by the Head of the Department, who will generally require that the chosen papers fall within at least three of the following areas of Philosophy: (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc.); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc.); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy. Students intending to enrol for the MA in Philosophy must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year. The choice of papers is to be made from the following list:

**29.400 Ethics****29.401 Kant****29.402 Wittgenstein****29.403 Metaphysics****29.404 Philosophy of Language****29.405 Philosophical Psychology****29.406 Philosophy of Natural Science****29.407 Philosophy of Social Science****29.408 Philosophy of History****29.409 Philosophy of Mathematics**

- 29.410 Philosophical Logic
- 29.411 Mathematical Logic
- 29.412 Topics in the History of Philosophy I
- 29.413 Topics in the History of Philosophy II
- 29.414 Topics in the History of Philosophy III
- 29.415 Topics in Modern Philosophy
- 29.416 Modern Continental Philosophy
- 29.417 Aesthetics
- 29.418 Special Topic
- 29.419 Special Topic
- 29.420 Special Topic : Essay Paper

Candidates will be required to write a long essay (or essays) within a field of Philosophy to be specified by the Head of Department. There will be no examination paper.

- 29.421 Special Topic
- 29.422 Special Topic
- 29.601 Thesis

Equivalent to three papers.

Note: Under Clause 7 of the MA degree regulations, permission may be given for a candidate for the MA to take up to two papers in another subject or subjects related to the candidate's research interests.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

### Physics I

#### 31.101 The Physical Universe

The paper is descriptive in nature, requires a minimal background in mathematics and physics and will give an overview of the major developments in physics from the times of Aristotle, Galileo and Newton to the developments of quantum physics and relativity in more recent times. For further details consult the BSc schedule.

#### 31.102 The World of Physics

This paper seeks to provide an understanding of many of the phenomena of the natural world around us and the physics of many human activities. For further details consult the BSc schedule.

## DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL STUDIES

### Political Studies I

- 30.106 Foreign and Defence Policies World Survey
- 30.107 An Introduction to New Zealand Politics
- 30.109 Major Political Thinkers in the Western Tradition
- 30.110 An Introduction to Comparative Politics
- T30.111 Introduction to International Relations
- T30.112 Introductory Comparative Politics

### Political Studies II

- 30.201 British Politics
- 30.204 New Zealand Foreign Policy
- 30.209 Modern Political Ideologies
- 30.211 Public Administration: Central and Local
- †30.213 Special Topic
- 30.214 Democracy in Theory and Practice
- †30.215 Russian and Post-Soviet Politics
- \*30.217 South Pacific Foreign Affairs
- 30.218 U.S. Politics

### Asian Politics II

- \*30.210 Southeast Asian Foreign Policies
- †30.216 Politics of Japan

### Political Studies III

- \*30.301 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations and the Formulation of Foreign Policy
  - 30.302 A Topic in Conflict Resolution
  - 30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour
- Social Change, Political Environment and Voting Behaviour in Western Democracies.
- 30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas
  - 30.306 Data Analysis in Political Studies
  - 30.307 Integration and Nationalism in Europe
- Nationalism versus Integration in East and West Europe.
- 30.309 The Television Audience
  - \*30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process
  - †30.311 Comparative Public Policy
  - 30.312 Green Politics

### 30.314 Special Topic

1993: Political Elites in Western Democracies

### \*30.315 Australian Politics

### †30.318 Special Topic

1993: International Relations

### 30.319 God, Reason and History: Political Thinking in Europe c.1640-c.1848

### †30.320 Special Topic

### †30.321 Special Topic

### Asian Politics III

### 30.313 Politics of China

### Political Studies for MA and Honours

Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers. The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.424 and 30.500 as prescribed for DipLGA. A candidate presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

All candidates shall take four papers in their first year, and will be expected to complete the remainder, being three papers, or a thesis, or two papers and a research essay, in the following year. Only in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department will permission be given for a candidate taking seven papers or six papers and a research essay either to present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the following year, or to spread the course over three years by taking either one paper or the research essay in the third year. Other combinations may be approved in special cases under certain conditions.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation. The research essay must be on a topic approved by the Head of Department and shall not exceed 20,000 words.

The thesis shall not, without express permission of the Head of Department, exceed 60,000 words. The prerequisites for the MA course are eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

### \*30.400 Ideology and Politics in Asia

### \*30.401 A Topic on the Role of Minority Ethnic Groups in Politics

### 30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics

### 30.403 The Political Economy of Information

### 30.407 Thomas Hobbes and His Times

### 30.408 The Political Context of Television

### 30.410 Public Choice and Liberal Theory

### 30.412 The American Presidency and Supreme Court.

### \*30.413 Public Administration

### 30.416 Scandinavian Democracies in Comparative Perspective

### \*30.417 Special Topic

1993: Public Policy: Models of the Welfare State

### †30.418 To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### 30.419 A Topic in New Zealand Politics

1993: Political Parties

### 30.420 Elections and Voters

### 30.422 Conflict Resolution

### 30.423 Special Topic

### †30.424 Special Topic

### \*30.500 The Local Government System in New Zealand.

## DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY

Note: (i) Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

(ii) The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

### Psychology I

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour. The papers may be taken separately. However, passes in 32.108 or 32.118, or T32.128 and in 32.109 or T32.129 are necessary for entry to Stage II.

### 32.108 Introduction to General Psychology

Topics covered may include: the neurobiological basis of behaviour; developmental psychology; social psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; causes and treatment of

psychopathology; research design and analysis. (Tutorial attendance of 1 hour per fortnight is required).

### **32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered may include: learning; sensation and perception, memory, cognition and language.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required).

### **32.118 Introduction to General Psychology**

As prescribed for 32.108. This paper is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

### **\*32.119 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

As prescribed for 32.109. This paper is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

### **T32.128 Psychology as a Social Science**

An introduction to psychology as a social science, including the study of social and organisational psychology, developmental psychology, the measurement of mental abilities, and abnormal psychology.

### **T32.129 Psychology as an Experimental Science**

This course stresses the scientific bases of modern psychology, including the study of biological psychology, the psychology of learning, sensation, perception, cognition, and language. Topics in applied experimental psychology may also be introduced.

## **Psychology II**

A pass in three Stage II papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III. From 1995 a further prerequisite, paper 26.181 or 26.182, will be required.

### **32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of perception and cognition. Topics covered include visual and auditory perception, attention, memory, language and thinking, and psychophysics. The value of experimental methods in this area of psychology is illustrated with a variety of tutorials, laboratory demonstrations and experiments.

### **32.230 Introduction to Neuroscience**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

### **32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the life-span in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such topics as social cognition, social influence, attitudes, small group processes, social interaction, altruism and aggression. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Socioemotional developments will be emphasised in the Developmental Psychology section.

### **32.250 Animal Learning and Behaviour**

A consideration of the environmental factors that control and modify animal (including human) behaviour. Generally, an experimental laboratory approach is taken, though some topics require also an ecological approach. Theories, especially quantitative theories, are stressed. Topics include: law of effect, contingencies of reinforcement, antecedent control, choice, foraging, memory, signal detection, experimental design, and self control.

## **Psychology III**

Either a pass in 32.306 and three other Stage III papers in Psychology or in special circumstances and with approval of the Head of Department 32.306 and two other Stage III papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to MA and Honours in Psychology.

### **32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences and their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

### **32.303 Cognitive Science**

Cognitive theories of the mind, including symbol-based and connectionist models. Topics covered include attention, pattern recognition, memory, language and thinking.

Note: Prior experience with computers is not necessary.

### **32.304 Personality and Psychotherapy**

A study of theories of personality with emphasis on their relevance to psychotherapy, various social contexts, and personal growth.

### **32.305 Human Neuroscience**

This course deals with issues relating central nervous system function to psychological performance. In particular the relationships between cognitive and perceptual processes and measures of EEG; the effects of drugs and other substances in biological and psychological variables; and the biological basis of

normal and abnormal memory function.

### **32.306 Research Methods in Psychology**

This course deals with principles and methods relevant to psychological research. Topics include research design, measurement of behaviour, describing and analysing data, and interpreting research findings. The scope is broad, including applied as well as pure research, and research with single cases as well as groups. Qualitative and quantitative methods are covered.

### **32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviour in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

### **32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

### **32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

### **32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

### **32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, and the individual and social psychology of work and the development of group and teams in organisations.

### **+32.313 Special Topic in Psychology**

### **32.314 Ergonomics**

An overview of methods of improving human well-being and productivity by optimising person-machine-environment systems

### **32.315 Abnormal Psychology**

This course is concerned with the major problems of children and adults that cause people to seek or receive psychological help. Topics include classification and effects of defining and labelling individuals as 'abnormal', models and practice of service delivery (institutions, community mental health, prevention).

### **32.316 Life-span Developmental Psychology**

Social and cognitive aspects of human development will be considered in depth, with emphases on both empirical and theoretical approaches.

## **Psychology for MA and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

### **\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

### **32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

### **32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An examination of issues in the study of perception.

### **32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

### **32.409 Theory and Practice in Clinical Psychology**

This course is concerned with the categories of psychological problems most commonly encountered by practitioners. Included are problems of children and adults. In respect of each disorder attention will be given to the different theories of causation that inform clinical practice. Models of therapy derived from such theories will be dealt with. Attention will be given to research and evaluation methods in clinical psychology.

### **32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

### **32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

### **32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on aspects of socioemotional

development.

### **32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

### **32.418 Special Topic in Psychology**

1993: Learning Disabilities: Assessment and Intervention

### **32.419 Psychological Research**

An advanced treatment of research techniques in psychology, emphasising analysis of variance, regression, categorical analysis, quasi-experimental designs and evaluation, and computer solutions for these techniques.

### **32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

### **32.421 Theories and Practices of Psychotherapy**

A study of a variety of psychotherapies with emphasis on their local relevance, problems of matching methods to individual people as well as to social contexts, and the importance of emotional processes in the maintenance of well-being.

### **32.422 Learning Disabilities**

This course provides training in the theory, identification and treatment of learning disabilities. Both developmental and acquired disabilities are covered.

*Prerequisites:* 32.210 and 32.301

*Corequisite:* 32.403

### **32.423 Issues in Cognitive Science**

An introduction to cognitive science with a principal focus on cognitive psychology. The course will discuss both fundamental issues concerning the mind-computer analogy, and also practical issues concerning the impact and use of information technology in everyday life.

### **32.424 Mind and Brain**

This course provides an introduction to cognitive neuropsychology. Topics covered will include studies of perception, memory, and language from a neuropsychological perspective.

### **\*32.425 Gender Issues in Human Development**

A study of the impact of gender on psychological and social development and functioning, with an emphasis on theories and recent research.

### **32.426 Human Factors**

An investigation of the effects on psychological and task related performance of: sleep deprivation, circadian dysrhythmia in travel and shift work, environmental stressors, alcohol, prescription medication and other commonly used psycho-active substances. A particular emphasis running through the course will be the influence of these and other factors on work related accidents.

### **32.427 Contemporary Theory and Clinical Psychology**

An introduction to contemporary theory (e.g. postmodernisms, feminisms) and issues which have important implications for clinical psychology practice and research.

### **32.428 Applied Social Psychology**

An introduction to the application of social psychological theory and research methods in a community setting. This course will build on the theoretical skills students have developed in 32.306 and 32.311. *Prerequisites:* 32.306 and 32.311 *Restriction:* 32.420.

### **32.429 Language and Speech**

A study of selected topics in the literature on language and speech. The main focus of the course will be speech and language processing by normal adults, but other potential topics include language development and artificial intelligence approaches to natural language processing.

### **32.430 Applied Psychophysics: From Research to Practice**

The course considers the application of detection theory, ROC analysis, and other psychophysical techniques to a range of problems in psychology, medicine, and industry.

## **DEPARTMENT OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES**

### **FRENCH**

#### **French Stage I**

A guide to French Studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, Arts I Building.

### **Language Papers**

#### **34.100 Language Acquisition**

Students with a minimum of four years' Secondary School French. Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension of French.

Three hours per week.

#### **\*34.102 Language Comprehension**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts on contemporary issues.

#### **\*34.104 Language Comprehension in Specific Areas A: Science**

Aural and reading comprehension using general science texts.

#### **\*34.106 Language Comprehension in Specific Areas B: \*Social Science, \*Art History**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts in areas or disciplines to be specified each year. (A minimum of five candidates per area is required.)

#### **\*34.108 Language Comprehension in Music**

Comprehension of written and sung French for music students. For performance students, the listening comprehension examination will be replaced by performance of songs and arias in French.

#### **34.151, 34.152 French for Beginners 1 and 2**

This is a four-skill language course for beginners or near-beginners. It is taught as an integrated course, entry to which is by consent of the Head of Department; the corequisite requirements will not normally be waived. Six hours per week.

*Note:* Students are advised that those eligible for 34.100 will not be accepted for this course.

### **Text Papers**

#### **34.101 Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

An introduction to Twentieth Century French

Literature through a selection of four texts: prose, poetry and drama.

### **French Stage II**

#### **34.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic; translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **34.201 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1993: Shorter Fiction.

#### **\*34.202 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

#### **34.203 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

1993: Romanticism and After

#### **\*34.205 Mediaeval Texts**

#### **\*34.210 Le Français des Métiers**

Written and oral application of the language to tourism, secretariat, the professions.

#### **34.214 Applied Language Studies**

A study of the structure of French with reference to different linguistic models and their relevance for teaching.

#### **\*34.218 Historicity and Variation in French**

Introduction to French linguistics, the history of French, and regional variation in French.

### **French Stage III**

#### **34.300 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic; translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **\*34.302 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Texts**

#### **34.306 Mediaeval French Language**

#### **\*34.307 A Literary Topic**

#### **\*34.308 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

#### **34.309 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1993: Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Literature and Society

#### **34.310 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Literary Texts**

1993: Classical Theatre

### **34.318 L'Espace Francophone: French in France and Overseas**

**\*34.320 Traduction et Interprétation Consécutive du français**  
(Enrolment by permission of the Head of Department.)

**\*34.322 A Linguistic Topic**

### **Foreign Language Reading Examination (French)**

#### **34.500 FLRE in French**

(Without lectures.)

#### **\*34.501 FLRE in French**

(With lectures.)

Note: Students wishing to gain this qualification are advised as follows:

If you passed in French at Bursaries or Scholarship levels, you should with some reading in French in your own subject be able to pass in 34.500.

A pass in 34.500 or in 34.501 gives a prerequisite qualification but does not count towards a degree.

### **French for MA and Honours**

The requirements are given in section (10) of the MA Schedule, and Languages and Literature including French in section (18) of the MA Schedule. Paper 34.400 is compulsory, and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

#### **34.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of French, tested by: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

(Prerequisite: 34.300.)

### **Pre-Modern Language and Literature:**

**\*34.401 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature**

**\*34.412 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature**

**\*34.402 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

**34.413 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

1993: Sixteenth Century French Vocabulary: An Introduction to Lexicology.

### **Modern Literature (17th to 20th Centuries):**

**34.423 A Special Topic**

1993: Twentieth Century Theatre

**†34.424 A Special Topic**

**34.425 A Special Topic**

1993: Classical Theatre

**\*34.426 A Special Topic**

**\*34.427 An Approved Topic**

### **French Linguistics:**

**\*34.416 A Special Topic**

**34.417 Applied Linguistics**

**34.419 Creolization of Language: French**

**\*34.420 An Approved Topic**

### **Other Aspects of French Civilisation:**

**34.410 A Special Topic**

1993: La femme en France au 19<sup>e</sup> siècle

**\*34.411 A Special Topic**

**\*34.428 A Special Topic**

**\*34.429 An Approved Topic**

### **Research Options:**

**34.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

**34.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

## **ITALIAN**

### **Italian I**

A guide to Italian studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, Arts I Building. Students are warmly invited to visit the Italian lecturers before enrolment to discuss courses. It is best to phone to make an appointment.

### **†35.104 Italian Language in Opera and Song**

Primarily intended for singers. Comprehension and pronunciation. Study of Italian texts of operatic libretti, madrigals, songs. May be taken by both BA students and students from the Faculty of Music.

### **35.106 and 35.107 Italian Language Studies (i) and (ii)**

Open to beginners and more advanced students, these papers must be taken together. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, and in addition, aspects of the history of Italian culture, contemporary life, society, politics and thought will be studied.

### **†35.110 Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature**

A study of the representation of women's experience in works by Italian women and men, using texts translated into English. One lecture and one tutorial per week. (Separate tutorial for students taking Italian language papers, who will read short texts later in the year in Italian.)

### **†35.111 A Special Topic**

## **Italian II**

### **35.200 Language Acquisition**

Developing writing, reading, aural and oral skills at a more advanced level through practice on a wide range of written texts and current audio-visual material. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian II:

#### **35.204 Italian Fiction and Cinema**

Introduction to the Study of Italian narrative.

#### **35.209 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (i)**

General topics are covered in English but texts are read in Italian. This paper is for students advancing in Italian.

#### **35.210 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (ii)**

This paper is taught entirely in English for students not advancing in Italian and has no Italian language prerequisite or corequisite.

#### **\*35.230 Twentieth Century Poetry**

Introduction to Poetics and Italian Poetry in the Twentieth Century.

#### **35.231 Twentieth Century Drama and Poetry**

## **Italian III**

### **35.300 Language Acquisition**

This paper builds on the language skills acquired in Italian 35.200 focusing on selected topics in more specialised contexts. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian III:

#### **35.302 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Dante**

**35.303 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca**

**†35.321 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian**

**35.322 L'Italiano nel Mondo del Lavoro: Working with Italian**

A practical course in translation from Italian to English.

#### **†35.331 A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film**

**35.332 Breaking the Frame: A Problem in Italian Literature and Visual Arts.**

#### **\*35.333 Twentieth Century Poetry and Drama**

## **Italian for MA and Honours**

The specific requirements for Italian are given in MA Schedule (15) and Languages and Literature including Italian in MA Schedule (17). Paper 35.400 is compulsory and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

In any given year only a small number of the following papers will be available.

**35.400 Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian**  
Tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, conversation, comprehension, reading.

**35.402 L'italiano nel mondo del Lavoro: Working with Italian.**

**35.403 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian**

**35.404 A Special Linguistics Topic**

**35.405 Thirteenth Century Literature**

**35.406 The Works of Dante**



**35.407 The Works of Boccaccio and the Genesis of Italian Prose****35.408 The Italian Theatre of the Renaissance: Teatro Erudito and Commedia dell'Arte****35.411 Verismo, with Special Reference to the Works of Verga****35.412 Pirandello and 20th Century Drama: Futurism, Pirandello, Dario Fo****35.413 A Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Poetry****35.414 A Special Topic in the 20th Century Italian Novel****35.415 Politics and the Novel****\*35.420 Methodologies of Literary Criticism****35.421 An Approved Topic in Linguistics****\*35.422 Cinematic Discourse****35.423 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic****35.424 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic**

Intending MA students should consult with the Italian staff during their final BA year.

**35.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

**35.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

---

**SPANISH**
**Spanish Stage I****\*45.101 Selected Texts in Twentieth Century Literature**

One lecture a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays.

**\*45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Reading Comprehension, Translation from Spanish to English**

One lecture per week; one oral class; one language laboratory session.

**45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation**

One lecture and one video hour a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.104, 45.105 Language Acquisition**

This is a course for beginners or near beginners.

Four lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory session; total 6 hours per week.

Language acquisition; oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.107, 45.108 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

Four lectures, one oral class, one optional audio-visual session, total six hours per week.

A special advanced course for students who already have a good command of Spanish. Acceptance into the course is on the basis of a preliminary test and permission of the Head of the Section. Students seeking admission to this course should consult with the Head of Section prior to making their application.

**Spanish Stage II****45.200 Language Acquisition**

Two lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory with tape. Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: Comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**\*45.201 Golden Age Literary Texts**

One lecture weekly; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.202 Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.203 Literary Analysis, with Prescribed Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.204 Twentieth Century Latin American Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials, two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.206 Spanish Study Abroad Programme**

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one

tutorial paper, and one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

**\*45.207 Modern Hispanic Literature**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

**45.208 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

One lecture; one oral class and one practical language class. The follow-up course to Spanish 45.107, 45.108 developing and consolidating language skills acquired in the Stage I course.

**\*45.209 'Practicing Critics' in the Hispanic World**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

This paper provides a study of the intellectual currents in contemporary Hispanic writing. The texts will consist of critical works by well-known creative Hispanic writers.

**\*45.210 Introduction to Spanish Literature and its Context**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

This course will seek to generate a core of basic knowledge and critical awareness concerning the history of Spanish literature and its social and cultural context.

**Spanish Stage III****45.300 Language Acquisition**

One lecture; one practical language class; one oral class.

Language acquisition; oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**\*45.301 Mediaeval Literature**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**\*45.302 Golden Age Literature**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**\*45.303 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays; one tutorial paper.

**45.304 Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**\*45.305 Twentieth Century Latin American Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.306 Spanish Study Abroad Programme**

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one tutorial paper, and one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

**45.307 Modern Hispanic Literature**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

**45.308 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

One lecture; one oral class and one practical/language audio-visual session.

This is the third year advanced stream following on from 45.208.

**45.309 Introduction to Professional Translation**

Two lectures per week.

**Spanish for MA and Honours**

Four papers including 45.400 and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 45.400 and a research essay (45.603) which counts as one paper.

The requirements are given in Section (29) of the MA Schedule (29); and Languages and Literature including Spanish in section (17) of the MA Schedule. Paper 45.400 is compulsory and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

**45.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways:

comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading: with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.401 A Topic in Mediaeval Literature**

**45.402 Golden Age Poetry**

**45.403 The Picaresque Novel**

**45.404 Major Dramatists of the 17th Century**

**45.405 Minor Dramatists of the 17th Century**

**45.406 Cervantes**

**45.407 The Nineteenth Century Novel**

**45.408 The '98 Generation**

**45.409 The Contemporary Spanish Novel**

**45.410 Twentieth Century Spanish Poetry**

**45.411 Twentieth Century Spanish Theatre**

**45.412 Twentieth Century Latin American Novel**

**45.413 Twentieth Century Latin American Poetry**

**45.414 Twentieth Century Latin American Theatre**

**45.415 Portuguese Language and a Topic in Twentieth Century Portuguese Literature**

**45.416 A Topic in Twentieth Century Brazilian Literature**

**45.417 Eighteenth Century Literature**

**45.418 Applied Linguistics as Related to Spanish**

**45.419 Research Techniques in Language and/or Literature**

**45.420 Special Topic in Spanish Literature**

**45.421 Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

**45.422 The History of Ideas**

**45.423 Linguistic Analysis of Spanish**

**45.424 Hispanic Women Writers**

**45.425 Introduction to Professional Translation**

**45.426 A Linguistic Topic**

**45.427 Special Topic**

**45.428 Special Topic**

**45.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

**45.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

## DEPARTMENT OF RUSSIAN

### Russian I

Students may enrol for Stage I papers without any prior knowledge of the subject areas. The two Russian language papers, 43.100 and 43.101, are linked corequisites and are also prerequisites for all students advancing to Stage II except, with the approval of the Head of Department, those with Bursary-level knowledge of the language; 43.111, 43.112 and 43.113 can be taken independently of each other and of any other papers in the Department. Students intending to advance in Russian are strongly advised to take paper 43.112 during either their first or second year of study.

Note: The readings for papers 43.112 and 43.113 are entirely in English.

**43.100 and 43.101 Russian Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Written and oral use of Russian, tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, composition, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Russian.

The two papers must be taken together.

Five hours and one language laboratory oral session per week; regular computer work and assignments.

**43.111 Introduction to a Slavonic Language**

1993: Croatian

Reading, comprehension and major grammatical features of the language. Differences between Standard Croatian and dialects of Dalmatia, and between Croatian and Serbian.

Two hours per week.

**43.112 Russian Civilisation**

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces which historically have helped to shape Yeltsin's Russia.

Two hours per week; two essays.

**43.113 The Classics of Russian Literature**

Studies in major examples of Russian prose fiction and drama.

Two hours per week; two essays.

### Russian II

Papers 43.210, 43.211 and 43.212 are linked papers. Students who have not already taken paper 43.112 are strongly advised to do so

alongside their Russian II papers.

**43.210 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours per week; regular computer work and assignments. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

**43.211 (i) Introduction to Modern Russian**

Linguistic analysis of modern non-literary texts, with special reference to morphology and word-formation.

One hour per week.

**(ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century**

Studies in 19th Century lyric poetry. Introduced by a series of lectures on literary theory.

One hour per week.

**43.212 The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century**

Selected short prose works by major Russian writers from Karamzin to Chekhov.

Two hours per week in the second and third terms.

### Russian III

Papers 43.310 and any two from 43.311, 43.312 and 43.313 are linked corequisites.

**43.310 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading; regular computer work and assignments.

Three hours per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

**43.311 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics**

An introduction to the scientific study of language as related to Russian and the group of Slavonic languages; historical explanation of so-called "anomalies" in Modern Russian.

**\*43.312 The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century □**

Pushkin's Evgenii Onegin and one major novel each by Dostoevskii and L. Tolstoy.

Two hours per week.

**43.313 Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century**

Representative short literary texts by major Russian writers active since 1905.

Two hours per week.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers from Russian MA and Honours may be offered as additional Stage III level papers.

### Russian for MA and Honours

No student may offer any paper for the MA Degree in which he has already been credited with a pass at Stage III.

The specific requirements for Russian are given in MA Schedule (26); and for Language and Literature including Russian in MA Schedule (17). In both cases paper 43.410 is compulsory.

**43.410 Language Acquisition: Russian**

**\*43.411 The Structure of Russian**

**\*43.412 The History of Russian From its Origins to 1800**

**\*43.413 The Russian Language in the 19th and 20th Centuries**

**\*43.414 Lexicology and Practical Stylistics of Contemporary Standard Russian**

**43.415 A Special Topic in Russian or Slavonic Linguistics**

1993: A linguistic study of Czech and Croatian/Serbian through Russian.

**\*43.416 A Special Topic in the Russian Language or Russian Linguistics**

**\*43.417 An Approved Special Topic in Slavonic Languages, Literature or Cultures**

**\*43.418 Research Methods in Russian and Slavonic Studies**

**\*43.419 Studies in Early Russian Literature**

**\*43.420 Studies in Eighteenth Century Russian Literature**

**\*43.421 A Special Topic in Russian Poetry**

**\*43.422 A Special Topic in Russian Prose**

**\*43.423 A Special Study of a Russian Writer**

**\*43.424 A Special Topic in Russian Literature or Culture**

**\*43.425 A Further Special Topic**

Intending MA students should consult the Head of Department during their final BA year about the availability of MA papers and the possibility of their presenting a thesis (43.611) in lieu of three papers or a research essay (43.603) in lieu of one paper.

**43.611 Thesis**

**43.603 Research Essay**

## SAMOAN

See under PACIFIC STUDIES.

Papers in Samoan are co-ordinated by the Centre for Pacific Studies.

## SOCIAL WORK

There is no undergraduate course in this field, but a MA course is offered. This does not provide basic professional training in social work. It is available to give advanced training to practitioners linking degrees or programmes of study in Anthropology, Maori Studies, Economics, English, Education, Geography, History, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology, Sociology and other topics to social work. As such it allows for directed or specialist study in areas such as advanced clinical practice, social service management, policy development, historical analysis, Maori and iwi development, health education/primary prevention, habilitation studies and other contemporary areas for social work training.

To enter the course students must have a bachelors degree and recognised social work qualifications and have at least three years' experience in the practice of social work. The co-ordinating committee for the degree may recommend entry to the degree for students who do not comply with the prerequisites but who have equivalents to them. Further details are available from the School of Social Work, Auckland College of Education, the office of the Dean of the Faculty of Arts, or Professor Marshall, Education.

**690.400 Contemporary Social Work: Principles & Practice**

This paper is a required course for all students doing a Master of Arts Degree in Social Work. It is taught by the School of Social Work at the Auckland College of Education. Any research project or thesis undertaken for the degree will also be co-supervised by the School of Social Work.

**690.420 Research Project**

**690.601 Thesis**

**690.611 Thesis**

## DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

### Sociology I

**82.100 Issues and Themes in Sociology**

**82.101 New Zealand Society: Structure and Change**

**82.102 Sociology and the Origins of the Modern World**

**\*82.103 Debates in Social Policy**

**82.104 An Introduction to Sociological Analysis: Gender, Ethnicity and Class in New Zealand.**

Note: In 1993, 82.104 will be taught only on the premises of Manukau Polytechnic.

### Sociology II

**82.200 Social Theory and Modern Society**

**\*82.201 Social Research Methods: An Informal Introduction**

**82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology**

1993: New Zealand Community Studies.

**\*82.204 Sociology and Social Problems**

**82.205 Class Analysis**

**\*82.207 Sociology of the Family**

**82.208 Special Topic**

1993: Sociology of Occupations/Work

**82.209 Social Change and Modernisation: An Introduction to the Sociology of Development**

**\*82.210 Special Topic**

**\*82.211 Sociology and Popular Culture**

**\*82.212 Class, Race and Gender Inequality in Australia and New Zealand**

**82.213 Ethnicity**

**82.214 Sociology of Gender**

**82.215 Special Topic**

1993: Law, Inequality and the State

### Sociology III

**\*82.300 Industrial Sociology**

**82.301 A Topic in Political Sociology**

1993: Capitalist Restoration in the Worker States

**82.302 Family and Gender in the Pacific**

**\*82.303 Sociology of Religion**

**\*82.304 Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups**

**82.305 Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand**

1993: Class, Race and Gender Inequality.

**82.307 Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernisation**

1993: The Pacific in the World System

**\*82.308 Law in Society**

**\*82.309 Special Topic**

**\*82.310 Special Topic**

**\*82.311 Special Topic**

**\*82.312 Sociological Analysis and Method**

**\*82.313 Sociology of a Selected Region**

**82.314 Women/Deviance: The Politics of Naming**

**\*82.315 Sociology of the Arts**

**\*82.316 Research Projects: Design and Practice**

Students intending to enrol for 82.316 must discuss this intention with the Head of Department before Enrolment Week.

**\*82.317 Sociology of the Welfare State**

**82.318 Sociology of the Media**

**82.319 A Topic in Contemporary Social Theory**

1993: Postmodern Social Theory

**82.320 Qualitative Sociological Methodologies**

**82.321 Quantitative Sociological Methodologies**

**82.322 Crime and Society**

Note: Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must attempt 82.320 or 82.321 as one of them.

### Sociology for MA and Honours

Four papers and a thesis (82.601) which shall count as three papers, or six papers and a research paper (82.603). The subject of the thesis or research paper must be approved by the Head of Department. An outline is to be submitted to the Head of Department by 31 March of the year for which enrolment for the research paper is accepted. The main text of the research paper should not exceed 10,000 words.

Not fewer than seven papers will be offered from the following list.

**82.400 Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory**

**82.401 Advanced Problems in Sociological Method**

**\*82.402 Sociology of a Selected Region**

**\*82.403 Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology**

**82.404 Advanced Topics in Political Sociology**

1993: The Rise and Fall of the Soviet State

**\*82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

**82.407 Rural Sociology**

**82.408 Complex Organisations**

**\*82.410 Applied Sociology**

**\*82.412 Special Topic**

**82.413 Sociology of Law:**

1993: Recent Law and Literature, Feminist Jurisprudence and Critical Race Theories

**82.414 Special Topic**

1993: Marxism and Sociology.

**82.415 Special Topic**

1993: The State in Third World Development.

**\*82.416 Historical Sociology**

**82.417 Feminist Social Theory**

**82.418 Research Projects: Design and Practice**

The course is designed to allow students to work through all phases of a research programme and to make them familiar with intellectual and practical issues in planning, design and implementation of research programmes.

In this paper students define a research problem, complete a literature review, redefine the problem if necessary, design an appropriate research programme, formulate a full funding proposal, carry out and report on a pilot study.

**82.419 Governing Bodies - Modern Sport, Culture and Politics**

**\*82.420 Research Issues in the Sociology of Gender**

**\*82.421 Consuming Interests: The Sociology of Food**

**\*82.422 Issues in the Analysis of New Zealand Society**

**82.423 Reading Paper: A**

(First half of year)

**82.424 Reading Paper: B**

(Second half of year)

**82.425 Community Processes and Mediation**

Note: All graduate students are expected to attend and contribute to the Staff/Graduate Seminars. A programme will be published.

**THEATRE STUDIES****\*486.201 Theatre Studies**

This paper is designed to provide a course relevant to students involved in dramatic productions and to recognise practical work in the theatre. It is interdisciplinary in approach. Lectures and tutorials will relate to a number of prescribed dramatic texts to be studied in English and the plays will be studied with reference to historical conditions and conventions of performance. An examination will relate to these studies. Credit will also be offered in respect of work done in approved productions on or off campus or in respect of workshop or critical activity. The course co-ordinator will be responsible for monitoring and assessing this credit. The number of places available will be very limited and applicants are likely to be subject to selection.

**WOMEN'S STUDIES**

The subject Women's Studies is being introduced into the Arts Faculty in 1993. Two core Stage I papers 488.100 and 488.101 will be taught this year. Stages II and III will be offered in subsequent years. A *Handbook*, available from the Arts Faculty Office, provides further information on the subject and the way students may put together a major in Women's Studies. Papers 488.100 and 488.101 will be taught in half year blocks.

Each paper will have 2 lectures and a 2-hour tutorial for approximately 12 weeks. Note that 488.101 will be taught in the first half of the year and 488.100 in the second half of the year.

**Women's Studies I****†488.100 Women, Gender and Society**

This paper will address central issues in the analysis of women's lives. It will draw primarily upon substantive studies from New Zealand and Pacific societies both past and present. Differences in women's economic, familial and political activities will be explored and related to changing economic and political conditions.

**†488.101 Representing Women: Images and Words**

This paper provides a critical introduction to the ways in which women have been represented through selected visual and literary media. Historical and contemporary representations will be discussed with a focus on the ways women have been portrayed by themselves and others. Although the paper draws on a wide range of literature and scholarship, emphasis will be placed on the Maori, Pacific and New Zealand contexts.

**Women's Studies II****\*488.200 Feminist Theories****Women's Studies III****\*488.300 Feminist Research and Scholarship**

Note: \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
 † Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.  
 □ Taught in even numbered years.  
 ○ Taught in odd numbered years.  
 "T" Prefix - taught at the Tamaki Campus.  
 "N" Prefix - taught at Northland Polytechnic.

**DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS****DIPLOMA IN ARTS DipArts**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma shall, before enrolment, have qualified for admission to a degree at a University in New Zealand; and have had since so qualifying five years' experience deemed relevant by Senate.
2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. Candidates will be required to attempt a coherent course of study which shall consist of:
  - (a) four papers at advanced level, including at least two Stage III or Master's papers; and
  - (b) an essay, or special directed study, or project (99.500), the equivalent of one paper, which shall involve work in one subject or inter-disciplinary work involving one subject among others.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Department and the Dean.
5. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma candidates must pass all the components of their course.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
7. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.

**\* DIPLOMA IN ARTS ADMINISTRATION DipArtsAdmin**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Arts Administration should before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) Have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and have had not less than two years' employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate, or
  - (b) Have had not less than five years' employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate; and in either case, have in the opinion of the Senate the prospect of successfully completing the course of study.
2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolment for the Diploma.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of the following papers:
  - \*571.501 The Arts Milieu
  - \*571.502 The Economics of the Arts
  - \*571.503 Business Organisation and Management
  - \*571.504 Accounting and Financial Management
  - \*571.505 Marketing of Services

**\*571.506 Special Issues in Arts Administration**

4. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma a candidate must obtain a pass in each of the papers specified in Regulation 3.
5. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

**Note:** \*This Diploma will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION **DipBrC**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Broadcast Communication shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or (in exceptional circumstances) such other University Degree as the Senate may approve in the particular case.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

#### Part I

30.408 The Political Context of Television

30.510 The Television and Video Industry

A candidate who has already been credited with 30.408 should substitute either 30.403 or 18.420 or 82.318 as prescribed for MA or a Research Essay (30.613).

With the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned, a candidate may substitute either 30.403 or 18.420 or 82.318 for 30.408.

#### Part II

Such written and practical work as may be prescribed in Television Production and related fields, the whole counting as two papers (30.700).

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole. An overall grade will be awarded for the Diploma as a whole.
5. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

## DIPLOMA IN DRAMA **DipDrama**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Drama shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma: Either
  - (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts having passed in not fewer than three papers in Stage II in English, or a language other than English, or such other subject or subjects as the Senate may approve; or
  - (ii) have been admitted or qualified for admission to some other university degree approved for this purpose by the Senate; or hold or have qualified for an award or qualification in dramatic work approved for this purpose by the Senate; and in any case have had in the opinion of the Senate sufficient experience in the theatre or in the writing or teaching of drama.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for a period of one year, but in exceptional circumstances this period may be extended by the Senate.
3. The Course shall consist of such written and practical work as may be prescribed in theatrical, dramatic, and related fields.
4. A candidate shall throughout his or her enrolment for this Diploma carry out such practical work and shall participate in such approved theatrical work or plays as the Lecturer in charge of the Course shall require.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING **DipELT**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in English Language Teaching shall before his or her enrolment for this diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand or produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of adequate training and/or experience to undertake the proposed course of study for the Diploma, and
  - (b) have had, normally, at least two years' teaching experience.
2. (a) A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study or a two year course of part-time study. Candidates who follow a part-time course of study for the Diploma shall take Part 1 in their first year and Part 2 in their second year, as set out below. Full-time students take both parts concurrently in the one year.
  - (b) Bilingual Maori and Pacific Island students who have already passed Maori or Pacific Island language papers may, in exceptional circumstances, apply to have one such paper credited to the Diploma.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:
 

#### Part I

  - (a) **18.250 English Language for Teachers**

A candidate who has already been credited with 18.250 shall substitute one of the following papers: 18.205/83.202/03.212 Sociolinguistics; 18.304/83.307 New Zealand English; 03.217/83.205 The Languages of the Pacific; 18.201 Language, Literature and Culture or a paper approved by the Head of Department on the recommendation of the Lecturer responsible for the DipELT.

(b) **18.502 Applied Linguistics for Language Learning and Teaching**

(c) **18.503 The Theory and Practice of Teaching to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)**

Part II

(d) **04.100 The Structure of Maori Language (or substitute)**

(e) **04.104 Spoken and Written Maori (or substitute)**

(i) A candidate who has already been credited with 04.100 and 04.104 may substitute for those papers:

(i.i) an approved language paper in a language other than English. Strongly recommended are: 04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts; 04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills; other papers selected from Maori studies subject to the approval of the Heads of Department of Anthropology and English; 478.100 Samoan Language.

(i.ii) language papers from: Chinese: 48.100 and 48.101 Language Acquisition A and B; Indonesian: 80.100 and 80.101 Modern Spoken Indonesian 1 and 2; Japanese: 81.100 Language Acquisition A and 81.101 Language Acquisition B; Korean: 449.100 and 449.101 Language Acquisition A and B.

(i.iii) papers other than language papers from: Anthropology: 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia; English: 18.304 New Zealand English; 18.205 Sociolinguistics; 18.201 Language, Literature and Culture.

(ii) Students who have not been credited with (d) and (e) may, in exceptional circumstances, substitute for them papers from (i.i), (i.ii) or (i.iii)

(f) **18.506 Classroom Observation: Independent Research**

4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
5. Where a candidate is enrolled in any paper for this diploma that is scheduled for another degree or diploma, he or she shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations as are applicable (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions) unless exempted from these by the Senate.
6. Candidates shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and Part 2.
7. Candidates may, at the discretion of the Senate, be permitted to repeat a paper they have not passed.
8. These Regulations may be varied by the Senate in particular circumstances.
9. This Diploma may be awarded with or without Distinction.
10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## **DIPLOMA IN LABOUR STUDIES DipLabourStudies**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the course not later than the date prescribed by the Senate for the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Labour Studies shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and have had not less than two years of employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate, or
  - (b) have had not less than five years of employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on the recommendation of the Board of Studies.

### **Course requirements**

3. A candidate for the Diploma in Labour Studies shall be required to:
  - (a) follow a course of study of duration not less than one academic year and not more than four academic years, and
  - (b) pass the examinations in respect of one compulsory paper (275.550) and each of five elective papers selected from those listed in Regulation 4(i).
4. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of
  - (i) Five papers selected with the approval of the Board of Studies from
 

275.501	Labour History in New Zealand
275.502	Macro-economic Policy Issues for Unions
*275.503	Work and Society
275.504	Industrial Law
*275.505	Research Methods and Statistics
†275.506	Contemporary Issues in Union Organisation
275.507	Organisational Behaviour and Culture
275.508	Comparative Industrial Relations Systems
†275.509	Management Theory and Practice
†275.510	Contemporary Issues in Industrial Relations
†275.511	Unions and Regional Development
275.512	Technology and Occupational Health and Safety
*275.521	Special Topic
*275.522	Special Topic
(ii) 275.550	Action Research (one paper)

This consists of an introduction to research methods and a supervised practicum approved by the Board of Studies, leading to a final written project.
  - (ii) No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper passed for another degree or diploma.
  5. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND ADMINISTRATION DipLGA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration shall before enrolment have been awarded or qualified for the award of a degree or diploma of this University, provided that,
  - (a) the degree or diploma does not include the three Part I DipLGA papers specified in Regulation 6 or
  - (b) if not so qualified, a person may with the leave of the Senate be a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration if before enrolment he or she:
    - (i) holds or has qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Accountancy, Management, or other approved discipline; or
    - (ii) has had not less than five years responsible practical experience in a responsible position in local government or administration.
2. A candidate for the Diploma shall pursue a course of study for a period of not less than one year, provided that for part-time students the course of study shall extend over a period of not less than two years.
3. Except with the permission of the Senate in exceptional circumstances:
  - (i) the course of study must be completed within four years of the date of first enrolment for the Diploma; and
  - (ii) the Research Essay (Paper 30.623) must be submitted within two years of the date of first enrolment for that paper.
4. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which has been passed for another degree or diploma.
5. Papers for Part II shall not be taken until the candidate has passed, or is enrolled concurrently in the papers for Part I.

### Subjects

6. The subjects for examination for the Diploma shall be:

#### Part I

- \*30.500 The Local Government System in New Zealand
- \*30.413 Public Administration, as prescribed for MA.
- 30.402 Urban Government and Politics, as prescribed for MA

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with one or two of the Part I papers for another degree or diploma shall substitute a paper or papers as approved by the Head of Department.

#### Part II

#### Either

Two papers from the following:

- 25.313 Environmental Law, as prescribed for LLB
  - 25.340 Resource Management Law, as prescribed for LLB
  - 25.366 Local Government Law, as prescribed for LLB
  - 36.252 Law, Government & Planning, as prescribed for BPlan
  - 01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector, as prescribed for MCom
  - 13.307 Public Expenditure, as prescribed for BA and BCom
  - 72.101 Organisation and Management, as prescribed for BCom
  - 72.207 Comparative Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom
  - 72.303 Advanced Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom
  - 72.307 Personnel Policy & Practice, as prescribed for BCom
- One paper as prescribed for any other degree or diploma of this University and specifically approved by the Head of Department.
- or
- 30.623 Research Essay (which counts as two papers).

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with the Research Essay, see Examinations Regulation 14.

### Prerequisite for Papers in Part II

7. Candidates should note that, unless a waiver is obtained from the relevant Head of Department, they will be required to comply with the prerequisites stipulated in the *Calendar* for the respective papers in Accountancy, Economics and Management Studies.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

## DIPLOMA IN PERFORMING ARTS DipPerformArts

The Diploma in Performing Arts is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

## DIPLOMA IN POLITICS AND THE NEWS MEDIA DipPolNewsMed

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Politics and the News Media shall, before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted to or qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand, or
  - (b) have produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of being capable of undertaking the proposed course of study and have had, normally, at least five years experience as a practising journalist as approved by the Senate.
2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent part-time study. Except with the approval of the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements, if full-time within two years or if part-time within four years

of first enrolment for the Diploma.

3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of:

30.403 The Political Economy of Information

30.633 Extended Essay.

Note: The Extended Essay (10,000 - 15,000 words) shall involve critical analysis of a media-related topic.

and three selected papers with the approval of the Head of Department of Political Studies to comprise a coherent course from: One paper selected from Political Studies 30.400 to 30.402, 30.404 to 30.420 and 30.300 to 30.314

Two papers, relevant to the candidate's course of study, selected from those available at masters or Stage III level or equivalent in the Faculties of Arts, Architecture Property and Planning, Commerce, Law or Science approved by the Senate.

4. To be eligible for the award of this Diploma candidates must pass all components of the course.
5. No candidates shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma. A candidate who has already been credited with 30.403 for another degree or diploma shall substitute a paper as approved by the Head of Department.
6. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## DIPLOMA IN PROFESSIONAL ETHICS DipProfEthics

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admissions Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma shall, before enrolment, have either
  - (i) qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand, or
  - (ii) have had a minimum of five years' experience in professional practice deemed relevant by the Senate.
2. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements of the course within three years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of four parts:

#### Part I

Paper 29.104 as prescribed for the BA

#### Part II

Paper 29.510 Professional Ethics Seminar

#### Part III

Three papers chosen from Groups A and B in the appended Schedule, not more than two of which papers may be chosen from Group A.

#### Part IV

Paper 29.520 Professional Ethics Project

- (i) The project shall be on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context.
  - (ii) The candidate shall submit the project to the Course Co-ordinator not later than the last day of January in the year following his or her final year of enrolment for this Diploma.
4. The course of study of each candidate will require the specific approval of the Diploma Course Co-ordinator and the Dean of the Faculty of Arts.
5. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma candidates must pass separately each of the papers required under Regulation 3 of this Diploma.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper passed for another degree or diploma, except that a candidate who has already passed paper 29.102 or paper 29.104 or an equivalent paper shall be credited with the completion of Part I of the course for this Diploma.
7. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

### Schedule:

This Schedule should be read in conjunction with the foregoing Regulations for the Diploma in Professional Ethics, and sets out those papers pertaining to Part III of the course requirements. Note that no prerequisites apply for Diploma students taking any of the papers in this schedule:

#### Group A

20.205 Political Philosophy II

29.210 Applied Ethics

29.213 Philosophical Issues in Feminism

29.304 Ethics III

#### Group B

29.501 Medical Ethics

29.502 Business Ethics

29.503 Environmental Ethics

29.504 Ethics and the Law

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ARTS PGDipArts

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall, before enrolment, have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Master's Degree at a University in New Zealand.



2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one years full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. Candidates will be required to attempt a coherent course of study which shall consist of:
  - (a) four papers, at least two papers of which shall be papers currently available for Masters students in the subject of the candidate's Masters Degree or the major part of the candidate's first degree, the remaining papers being Stage III or Master's papers in a cognate subject or subjects;
  - (b) an essay, or special directed study, or research project (99.550), the equivalent of one paper, which shall involve work in the main subject or interdisciplinary work involving that subject and others.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Department and the Dean.
5. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma, which may be awarded with or without Distinction, candidates must pass all the components of their course.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
7. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.

---

## **\*POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SOCIAL RESEARCH PGDipSocRes**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the diploma in Social Research shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts in one of the subjects listed in paragraph (b) of this Regulation: or, if not so qualified, and provided Senate approves, have completed not fewer than four papers for that Degree in one of those subjects.
- (b) The subjects in which a candidate shall have qualified in terms of paragraph (a) of this Regulation are Anthropology, Maori Studies, Economics, Geography, Sociology, Political Studies, Education, Psychology, and History.
- (c) In exceptional circumstances, Senate may approve the enrolment of a candidate who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree other than a Master of Arts or who has included in their qualifying degree subjects other than those specified in paragraph (b) of this Regulation.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study, or a two year course of part-time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts.

### **Part I**

- \*82.500 The Uses of Social Research
- \*82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I
- \*82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II

### **Part II**

A report on an original social research investigation counting as two papers (82.503).

The report shall be not more than 20,000 words long. Two copies must be submitted to the registrar not later than the last day of February in the calendar year following examinations.

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole.
5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1987.

---

## **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN TRANSLATION PGDipTrans**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma shall, before enrolment:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts of this University and have passed for that Degree at least three Stage III papers in each of two foreign or second languages with a minimum overall grade of A-;
  - (b) have satisfied the Senate through an interview and written aptitude test that he or she has the prospect of successfully completing the course of study.
2. The Postgraduate Diploma shall be administered by a Board of Studies consisting of representatives of the contributing departments or sections of departments.
3. A candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Translation shall be required to follow a programme of not less than three years' full-time study or its equivalent.
4. The course of study for this Postgraduate Diploma shall consist of three parts: Parts 1, 2 and 3. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper in Parts 1 and 3 of the course and be credited with the completion of Part 2 of the Postgraduate Diploma by receiving satisfactory attestation from the institution or institutions at which study has been undertaken.
5. The language papers in Regulation 6 shall be selected with the approval of the Board of Studies from the following subjects: Chinese, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish.
6. The course of study shall consist of the following:
  - (a) **Part I**
    - (i) Either two 400-level papers in each of two subjects listed in Regulation 5 or two 400-level papers in one subject and one 400-level paper and one 300-level paper in a second subject listed in Regulation 5;
    - (ii) 460.501 Theory, Principles and Problems of Translation;
    - (iii) Two papers relevant to specific areas of translation and approved by the Board of Studies from papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws;

- (iv) 83.312 Semantics.
- (b) **Part II**
  - (i) One year's overseas study including attendance at and satisfactory completion of recommended courses in translation and subsidiary studies at an institution or institutions expressly approved by the Board of Studies (460.700);
  - (ii) A practicum (460.750) involving the satisfactory completion of assignments under the guidance of a translator approved by the Board of Studies.
- (c) **Part III**
  - (i) *Either* one 500-level paper and an associated translation project in both of the subjects taken under Regulation 6(a)(i) *or* one 500-level paper and an associated translation project in the first subject chosen under Regulation 6(a)(i) and two 500-level papers in the second subject taken under Regulation 6(a)(i);
  - (ii) Two papers relevant to specific areas of translation and approved by the Board of Studies from papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws;
  - (iii) A practicum (460.550) involving translation experience in both the languages chosen under Regulation 6(a)(i).
- 7. In exceptional cases the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of Studies, permit a candidate who has been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts to credit to this Diploma one or two language papers where otherwise these would be required under Regulation 6(a)(i).
- 8. Except as provided by Regulation 7 no candidate shall be credited for Part 1 or Part 3 of this Diploma with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper passed for another qualification.
- 9. The Senate may, in such exceptional case as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- 10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DipBrC

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a theoretical and practical preparation in broadcasting and communications.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications, by 30 November of the previous year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### Part I

(See Regulation 3 of the Diploma.)

#### 30.408 The Political Context of Television

#### 30.510 The Television and Video Industry

#### 30.613 Research Essay

The research essay must be on a subject connected with the candidate's previously passed papers 30.403, 30.408, 18.420 or 82.318 or, with the permission of the Head of Department of Political Studies, a topic on the structure and organisation of broadcasting. The research essay shall be between 10,000 and 20,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of January in the calendar year following the examinations.

#### Part II

#### 30.700

(Two papers.)

The course will include the following:

1. Introduction to the technical principles of television broadcasting including international standards, recording, transmission, sound, and lighting.
2. Introduction to the grammar of television and film.
3. Introduction to single-camera production techniques including planning, direction, editing and post-production.
4. Introduction to multi-camera studio production including planning, direction, personnel and post-production technology.
5. Instruction and experience in the techniques of both studio and location based interviewing.
6. Post-production techniques, including editing, sound production, scriptwriting and graphics.
7. Experience in planning, researching, writing, producing and directing a programme to a broadcast level, each student to present one or more such programmes as a course submission.
8. Development of critical awareness in television and film.

### DipDrama

The Diploma in Drama is directed by the Lecturer in Drama aided by other professional tutors and University lecturers.

The purpose of the Diploma in Drama is to offer a basic training in theatre and playwriting to those wishing to work in schools, the theatre or in the community. It should not be seen as a training course for professional actors.

Candidates wishing to enrol in 1993 in the Course for the Diploma in Drama (75.100) are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University not later than 8 January 1993.

Candidates who have not previously been enrolled at a New Zealand University must submit their application by 9 December of the preceding year. Details of the procedure to be followed by all applicants are available from the English Department.

Candidates should have a Bachelor of Arts Degree from Auckland or some other university or should hold an award or qualification in dramatic work or have had experience in the theatre or in the teaching of drama. Generally, candidates under 20 years of age are not considered for the course.

Candidates may be called for an interview. All candidates will be required to produce evidence of academic qualifications and a variety of theatrical skills.

The Course is full-time and extends over one year. Permission to take other courses or do other theatre work will be granted only in rare instances.

The Course will include a selection of the following:

- (i) Fundamentals of acting including speech, movement and improvisation.
- (ii) Basic techniques of the theatre, e.g. lighting, design, wardrobe, direction.
- (iii) Television acting and the use of television equipment.
- (iv) Practical study from selected texts.
- (v) Selected aspects from the history of the theatre and drama.
- (vi) Selected aspects from the theory of drama.
- (vii) Theatre Criticism.
- (viii) Practical work in production.
- (ix) Brief exercises in the making of theatre for young people.
- (x) Exercises in group theatre and playmaking.

A list of books required for study will be available from the Department. All students should obtain this.

### DipELT

The purpose of the Diploma in English Language Teaching is to provide a specialised course in the theory and practice of teaching English in multi-lingual contexts, with special emphasis on the needs of English language learners in the Auckland, New Zealand and South Pacific regions. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma in English Language Teaching are required to pre-enrol on the Preparatory Application Form by 30 October of the preceding year. Candidates may be called for interview. Entry to the course will be restricted to twenty four candidates in

any one year.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

### **18.250 English Language for Teachers**

A linguistic analysis of the English language in an educational context. This paper will enable students to describe and account for (a) similarities and differences among a range of spoken and written texts across the curriculum and (b) divergences from appropriate norms in texts produced by both native and non-native learners of English. A limited number of places are available for non-DipELT students, who are teachers in training. Applicants will be interviewed and must have passed at least four papers or the equivalent credits.

### **18.502 Applied Linguistics for Language Learning and Teaching**

Socio-cultural aspects of English Language Teaching in multilingual contexts. Factors influencing second

### **18.503 Theory and Practice of Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)**

Language teaching methodology, programme design and evaluation, language development through content areas. Students taking this paper will be required to undertake regular teaching practice throughout the academic year.

### **18.506 Classroom Observation: Independent Research**

Planning and implementing a classroom based research project. Developing and using observation and assessment instruments in a multilingual classroom. Carefully recording, interpreting and evaluating results of a study.

Further papers for the Diploma are described in the General Provisions and prescribed in the Bachelor of Arts Degree Prescriptions.

## **DipLabour Studies**

### **275.501 Labour History in New Zealand**

This paper will cover the history of New Zealand's working class activities, including the development of trade unions, industrial disputes and politics. It will consider gender and ethnic issues in their historical context.

### **275.502 Macro-economic Policy Issues for Unions**

An examination of the range of economic and social theories which workers have advanced and been exposed to in New Zealand and elsewhere and a discussion of contemporary and historical options which address union concerns.

### **\*275.503 Work and Society**

This paper will consider the development of work as an organised practice and social phenomenon, and will look at the changing trends in gender and ethnic composition of the workforce in New Zealand and elsewhere. It will also consider the impact of technology, information systems and the issue of work design as these affect workers and unions.

### **275.504 Industrial Law**

A consideration in detail of the effects of industrial legislation and its development, including some examination of contract law as it applies in the industrial arena.

### **\*275.505 Research Methods and Statistics**

This paper will introduce students to different models and practices in economic and social research. It will also cover fundamental concepts in statistics and their usage for analysis as well as other methods of qualitative research such as case studies and interviews.

### **†275.506 Contemporary Issues in Union Organisation**

This paper will consider modern challenges to the organisation methods and structures within unions and workplaces and develop alternative models to current practices. It will also address the maintenance and development of internal union democracy.

### **275.507 Organisational Behaviour and Culture**

The psychological and sociological aspects of how workers are organised and how people affect organisations, with particular reference to the workplace and business, and issues of gender and culture.

### **275.508 Comparative Industrial Relations Systems**

This paper will consist of a study of a number of industrial relations systems in order to assess the similarities and differences between them and New Zealand's comparative position. It will include a comparison of bargaining structures.

### **†275.509 Management Theory and Practice**

An introduction to management and organisation theory, covering the principles of management and labour relations. It will also include practical skills such as time and stress management, conflict resolution, negotiating skills, budget preparation and consultative work practices.

### **†275.510 Contemporary Issues in Industrial Relations**

A consideration of the key issues facing unions today: the role of the state, the functions of legislation, the challenges of ethnic and gender issues and the pursuit of social justice. The paper will also address the fundamental need and rationale for collective organisation.

### **†275.511 Unions and Regional Development**

This paper will consider and develop union initiatives in the area of job creation, resource development, infrastructure development and sustainability in regional localities. Issues of local resource and infrastructure investment decisions will be examined, with particular reference to plant closures, relocation of workers and job creation.

### **275.512 Technology and Occupational Health and Safety**

This paper will look at the impact of technology on workers' health and safety and will examine the importance this has had on New Zealand's labour relations. It will also consider a set of activities that are needed to identify, monitor, assess and control technological hazards.

### **\*275.521 Special Topic**

### **\*275.522 Special Topic**

### **275.550 Action Research – a practical individual project**

This paper will consist of an introduction to research methods and a supervised practical research project of a workplace based nature.

## **DipLGA**

The course for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration may be completed in not less than one year of full-time study or two years of part-time study. Students are required to take available papers from Part I in their first year of study.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

### **\*30.500 The New Zealand Local Government System**

The evolution, structure and characteristics of the system. Reorganisation schemes and functional features. Local politics, elections and public participation.

### **30.623 Research Essay**

A research essay may be presented in lieu of two papers from Part II of the course. It shall consist of 18,000 to 20,000 words on an approved topic in Local Government Administration or Politics.

## **DipProfEthics**

The purpose of the Diploma is to enable students to strengthen and develop their understanding of ethics as it relates to the practice of the professions – for example, medicine, business, law, environmental management and the teaching profession. The Diploma course is flexible enough to meet the particular needs and interests of individual students, but within a structure which requires that each student achieve a good background in ethical theory and a sound practical orientation in dealing with the ethical dimensions of concrete professional problems.

The course may be taken full-time in one year, or part-time over two or three years. Entry to the course will be restricted.

Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give written notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by the date prescribed under the Pre-Enrolment Application Regulations (General). Further details of the application procedure are available from the Diploma Course Coordinator, Department of Philosophy.

### **Part I**

#### **29.104 Introduction to Ethics and Social Philosophy**

The prescription for this paper is given under the Faculty of Arts, Degree prescriptions, Philosophy.

### **Part II**

#### **29.510 Professional Ethics Seminar**

A course of seminars covering core topics concerning the nature

of professional ethics and practice as they are relevant to a wide range of professions. Topics will be chosen so as to indicate how theoretical issues in ethics are grounded in concrete problems, and the course will be taught in such a way as to enable students from different professional backgrounds to learn from each other's experience and understanding.

Students undertaking the Diploma part-time will normally enrol in this paper in their final year of part-time enrolment, but will be encouraged to attend the seminars in (each of) their previous year(s) of part-time enrolment.

### Part III

#### Group A

##### 29.205 Political Philosophy II

##### 29.210 Applied Ethics

##### 29.213 Philosophical Issues in Feminism

##### 29.304 Ethics II

The prescriptions for these papers are given under the Faculty of Arts, Degree prescriptions, Philosophy.

#### Group B

##### 29.501 Medical Ethics

A study of theoretical perspectives and a range of topics in medical ethics – for example, beneficence versus autonomy, both patient autonomy and doctors' autonomy; informed consent in treatment and research; ethics and professional relationships; euthanasia; abortion. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

##### 29.502 Business Ethics

A study of a range of topics in business ethics – for example, the ethics of management; the moral status of business firms; the ethics of hiring and firing practices; sexual harassment; privacy and loyalty in employment; ethical issues in investment policy; the ethics of advertising; the ethics of labour negotiations; moral controversies in international business (paying "bribes" abroad, marketing in third world countries, etc.); worker safety. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

##### 29.503 Environmental Ethics

A study of theoretical perspectives and a range of topics in environmental ethics – for example, "deep ecology" positions, value pluralism, sentience-based positions; anthropocentric versus non-anthropocentric perspectives; rationales for the preservation of species and ecologies; treatment of animals. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

##### 29.504 Ethics and the Law

A selection of topics in both the ethics of the legal profession and theoretical issues concerning morality and the law.

### Part IV

#### 29.520 Professional Ethics Project

Completion of a project approved by the Course Co-ordinator on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context. Candidates will be required to submit a report on their project to the Course Co-ordinator not later than the last day of January in the year following their final year of enrolment.

### \*PGDipSocRes

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a preparation in the methodological principles and practice of social research.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year or two years of part-time study. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the

course for the Diploma are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications by 15 January each year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### \*82.500 The Uses of Social Research

This paper will examine the literature on the roles of social research and social theory in the formulation, monitoring and evaluation of social policy; and the role of social policy concerns in the development of social science knowledge. The paper will apply themes from this literature to the New Zealand context.

#### \*82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I

#### \*82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II

These papers will provide an advanced critical education and training in a range of qualitative and quantitative social research methods. These will include social surveys, use of official social data, field observation studies, and documentary studies. Analytical devices specifically intended to assist policy making and evaluating theories also will be reviewed.

#### \*82.503 Supervised Social Research Project (Practicum)

This exercise will involve an empirical research study within an explicit theoretical and/or policy relevant framework. The exercise will be reported in an essay of up to 20,000 words, written specifically to communicate the findings to appropriate audiences. Where possible the practicum will be carried out, at least in part, in an appropriate policy setting, or as a group research project.

### PGDipTrans

48.400, 48.416, 48.420, 48.421 as prescribed for Chinese

34.400, 34.420 as prescribed for French

22.350, 22.400, 22.418 as prescribed for German

35.400, 35.402 as prescribed for Italian

81.400, 81.407, 81.410 as prescribed for Japanese

04.306, 04.307, 04.401, 04.403 as prescribed for Maori Studies

43.410, 43.411, 43.414 as prescribed for Russian

45.400, 45.425 as prescribed for Spanish

02.100, 02.204 as prescribed for Commercial Law

13.100, 13.101 as prescribed for Economics

24.123, 24.133 as prescribed for History

25.103 as prescribed for Law

30.107 or 30.204, 30.216, 30.303 as prescribed for Political Studies

71.201 as prescribed for Marketing and International Business

72.204 and/or 72.207 as prescribed for Management Studies and Labour Relations

83.312 Semantics as prescribed for Linguistics

Also offered as English 18.305.

#### 460.501 Theories, Principles and Problems of Translation

A paper taught at the ATI providing an introduction to the theories of translation including aspects of context, professional translation practice and translation criticism. (2 hours per week).

#### 460.550 Practicum

Involves practical translation experience.

#### 460.520 Translation Project (a)

Advanced translation from second language into first and vice versa, in specialised fields.

#### 460.521 Translation Project (b)

Long translation project into first language with ensuing discussion and criticism.

#### 460.750 Practicum

Involves practical translation experience.

#### Note:

\* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
† Dagged papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

---

# Faculty of Commerce

---

## Contents

		<i>Page</i>
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	General Information	222
	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce	223
	Schedule for Bachelor of Commerce	226
	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)	244
	Schedule for Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)	244
	Degree of Bachelor of Technology	245
	Degree of Master of Commerce	245
	Schedule for Master of Commerce	246
	Degree of Master of Business Administration	246
	Degree of Master of Commercial Law	248
	Degree of Master of Taxation Studies	248
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Department of Accounting and Finance	249
	Department of Commercial Law	250
	Department of Computer Science	251
	Department of Economics	251
	Department of Management Science and Information Systems	252
	Department of Management Studies and Labour Relations	253
	Department of Marketing and International Business	254
	Department of Mathematics and Statistics	255
	Master of Taxation Studies	255
	Bachelor of Technology	256
	New Zealand Society of Accountants	256
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Business	256
	Diploma in Commerce	256
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Business	258
	Diploma in Commerce	261

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## FACULTY OF COMMERCE

The Faculty of Commerce consists of six Academic Departments and the Graduate School of Business. Each Department is involved in undergraduate and graduate level teaching as well as major research components. The Graduate School of Business offers management and executive Masters of Business Administration, seven separate Diplomas of Business and a growing range of Executive Programmes and Post-experience Programmes.

### Bachelor of Commerce

Undergraduates have a range of over 150 papers in six Departments to choose from. Currently twelve major study areas or combined specialisations are offered.

#### Department

Accounting and Finance

Commercial Law

Economics

Management Science and Information Systems

Management Studies and Labour Relations

Marketing and International Business

Combined Specialisations

#### Major Study Area

Accounting

Finance

Commercial Law

Economics

Operations Management

Operations Research

Information Systems

Organisations and Management

Industrial Relations

Marketing and International Business

Finance and Economics

Accounting and Finance and Taxation

In addition many papers may be taken in the Science Departments of Computer Science and Mathematics. Undergraduates may also take up to seven papers from another course of study, such as a language.

### Conjoint Degrees

Undergraduates may also choose to undertake two courses of study in the following:

- BCom/LLB
- BCom/BA
- BCom/BSc

This is more demanding and has the advantage that both can be completed in one year less than taking the two degrees separately.

### BCom(Honours)

Students of high ability may be invited to complete a Bachelor of Commerce with Honours at the end of their second or third years. This entails one extra year of study and those who successfully complete are recognised as the best students by the School and the community. In addition students who have been awarded BCom(Hons) may undertake a PhD without first completing a Masters programme. Currently Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law and Economics offer this programme.

### Diploma of Commerce

For students who have completed a BCom but still have interest in either more specialisation or another major study area, a Diploma in Commerce is offered in all six Departments. The DipCom consists of six advanced papers which are generally completed in one or two years.

### Master of Commerce and Master of Philosophy

Graduates with good grades from Commerce or from another course of study with appropriate pre-requisites may choose to undertake advanced academic study. All six Departments currently offer these two options. In addition Master of Arts may be undertaken in the Economics Department.

### Master of Commercial Law and Master of Taxation Studies

These two specialist postgraduate degrees are currently offered by the Department of Commercial Law. The first is for Law graduates or Commerce graduates who have sufficient background in Commercial Law. The Master of Taxation Studies is a highly specialised degree for graduates with a similar background to MComLaw.

### Doctor of Philosophy

All Departments offer this highest level of study for PhD which can be undertaken as a body of research in a thesis or may be undertaken with specific advanced papers.

### Diploma of Business

In 1993 the Graduate School of Business will offer seven Diplomas in Business:

- Engineering Management
- Finance
- Information Systems
- Maori Business Development
- Marketing
- Operations Management
- Personnel Management and Employee Relations

These DipBus programmes are part-time and designed principally for business people in full time employment. Entry into these are based on experience and/or undergraduate, and previous study.

### Executive Programmes

These are a range of generally short, intensive programmes designed for more senior managers to enhance or empower their existing skills.

### Masters of Business Administration

The Graduate School of Business offers both an Executive and Management MBA. These are designed for working managers who have a minimum of five to eight years of business experience and who may or may not have other formal qualifications. The MBA is a part-time two year course of study which has a large time commitment from participants but a small time commitment during normal working hours.

All of the Programmes in the School of Commerce and Economics and Graduate School of Business are constantly upgraded to apply to participants from all walks of life and all stages of learning and career development.

The current staff have degrees from more than seventy Universities from all over the globe and offer a breadth of international experience unrivalled in most places in the world.

# DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE BCom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### Admission

1. (a) Admission to a course of study in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission shall be made to the Registrar in writing before the dates set out in the pre-enrolment regulations.
- (b) Admission shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in university and public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

### Minimum Time for Degree

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.

### Definition of a Paper

3. In these Regulations a paper means an examinable part of one year's work in a subject. Papers are classified in three Stages I, II, III, prescribed for this Degree in the Schedule to these Regulations.

### Course Content

4. Every candidate's course of study for this Degree:
  - (a) shall comply with the requirements specified below for Part I and Part II;
  - (b) shall comply with the requirements specified in the Schedule to these Regulations.
  - (c) shall include at least ten papers above Stage I.

### Part I

5. Except where provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part I a candidate shall be required:
  - (a) to pass in two papers selected from:
    - Mathematics, Pure 26.108;
    - Mathematics, Applied 26.188;
    - Management Science and Information Systems 74.100 or T74.110;
 Other papers in Applied Mathematics, Pure Mathematics and Computer Science may be substituted with the approval of the Senate.
  - (b) to pass the following papers:
    - Accounting and Finance 01.100 or 01.104;
    - Commercial Law 02.100 or 02.204;
    - Economics 13.100, 13.101;
    - Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101.
 Note: Accounting and Finance 01.102 and 01.103 were listed in the Arts Schedule prior to 1993 and were not available to Commerce students. Candidates transferring to Commerce may receive credit for these papers, which satisfy the Part I Accounting and Finance requirement.

### Order of Presenting Course

- (c) before taking any other paper for Part I of this Degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (a) of this Regulation;
- (d) to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (b) of this regulation before taking any further papers for this degree: provided that
  - (1) a candidate who has passed or enrolled concurrently in a least four of the papers required by paragraph (b) of this Regulation may enrol in one or two other papers for Part II of this degree;
  - (2) the Senate may waive the requirements of paragraph (c) or paragraph (d) of this Regulation for a candidate:
    - (i) who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree of this University; or
    - (ii) enrolled under Regulation 13(1) of these Regulations, conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Arts; or
    - (iii) enrolled under Regulation 14(a)(i) of these Regulations, conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or
    - (iv) enrolled under Regulation 12(1) of these Regulations conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

### Part II

6. (a) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part II a candidate shall be required to pass a minimum of fourteen papers, including *no fewer than* three stage III papers selected from one of the subjects Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business, or from the papers listed for an approved combined specialisation listed in the Schedule.
- (b) A candidate may include up to seven papers for this Degree from papers not already passed for this Degree from any subject prescribed for any other Degree of this University. Papers for this Degree will be awarded for passes under this Regulation in accordance with the following:
 

Architecture Property & Planning	5 credits
Arts	1 paper
Engineering	full year paper or equivalent
Fine Arts	1 paper
Law	1 paper
Medicine & Human Biology	1 paper
Music	1 paper
Science	6 Stage I credits or
	4 Stage II credits or
	4 Stage III credits or equivalent

### Maximum Course Load

7. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.

### Direct Entry

8. (a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 4, 5 and 6 of these Regulations a candidate may with the leave of the Senate take Stage

II papers of any subject to which this Regulation applies without having passed Stage I. A candidate who passes a Stage II paper in a subject shall not be credited with any prerequisite Stage I paper of that subject. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper attained the standard of a pass in a Stage I paper the candidate shall be credited with a pass in a Stage I paper of that subject.

- (b) Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 4, 5 and 6 of these Regulations a candidate may with the leave of the Senate substitute one or more papers for one or more papers prescribed in Regulation 5 and to which this Regulation applies.
- (c) This Regulation applies to the following subjects:  
Accounting and Finance  
Economics  
Mathematics.
- (d) The candidate must have attained a high standard of performance approved by the Senate in the University Bursaries Entrance Scholarship Examination, or equivalent standard, to be granted direct entry or substitution.
- (e) Candidates granted direct entry or substitution shall be deemed, on passing the relevant Stage II or substituted paper or papers, to have satisfied Part I requirements for the relevant paper or papers. The papers passed under this Regulation shall be credited only to Part I of this Degree.

#### Credits

9. (1) (a) A candidate who has passed for another degree of this University two Stage II level papers in Pure Mathematics or equivalent and has passed two papers 13.200 and 13.201 of Economics shall be credited with papers 13.100 and 13.101 of Economics.
- (b) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has passed Engineering Mathematics I and Engineering Mathematics II shall be credited with two unspecified papers in Stage II Mathematics. Provided that the total credits granted to a candidate under paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause of this Regulation and Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed eight.
- (2) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has been exempted from the Intermediate Examination shall be exempted without credit from the two papers required by Regulation 5 (a).
10. A candidate for this Degree who abandoned another course of study and passed in a paper listed in the Schedule to these Regulations without receiving credit for that paper for any degree or diploma, may be credited with that paper for this Degree.

#### Concessions

11. (1) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has completed the Professional Examination in Accountancy may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, 01.200, 01.202, Commercial Law 02.100, 02.200, and two papers as required by Regulation 5 (a).
- (2) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has passed with merit in at least six subjects of the Professional Examination in Accountancy, may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for up to six papers as determined by the Senate.
- (3) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified with merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Commerce may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100 and two other unspecified papers.
- (4) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified at a standard acceptable to the Senate for the National Certificate in Business may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for up to seven 100 level papers as determined by the Senate.
- (5) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified for the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100, Management Science and Information Systems 74.100, Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101, Marketing and International Business 71.200 and one other unspecified paper.

#### BCom/LLB, BCom/LLB(Hons)

12. (1) With the permission of Senate a candidate may be admitted to a conjoint course of study for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) (in this Regulation called 'a conjoint course').
- (2) A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.
- (3) A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who:
  - (a) for this Degree or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours), has passed the following papers:
    - (i) to pass in two papers selected from: -  
Mathematics, Pure, 26.108;  
Mathematics, Applied, 26.188;  
Management Science and Informations Systems 74.100 or T74.110.  
Other papers in Applied Mathematics, Pure Mathematics and Computer Science may be substituted with the approval of the Senate.
    - (ii) Accounting and Finance 01.100 or 01.104 and one other Commerce paper;
    - (iii) Economics 13.100, 13.101;
    - (iv) Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101;
  - (b) for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) has passed:
    - (v) Legal System, 25.103;
    - (vi) Law of Contract, 25.105;
    - (vi) Commercial Law, 25.204 ;
    - (viii) Company Law and Partnership, 25.208;
    - (ix) two or more papers having in aggregate at least four hours of instruction per week selected with the approval of Senate from Intellectual Property, 25.209;  
Industrial Law, 25.212;  
Income Tax, 25.221;  
Competition Law, 25.228;  
Company Finance, 25.309;  
Creditors Remedies, 25.312;  
International Trade, 25.315;  
Other papers related to the study of Commerce as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or of Bachelor of Laws (Honours);  
Other papers in Stage III Commercial Law as prescribed for this Degree;



- (c) for this Degree has in addition passed no fewer than nine Stage II or Stage III papers (01.101 may be substituted for one of these) selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule in the subjects Accounting and Finance, Computer Science, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business and Mathematics and Statistics, including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from one of the subjects Accounting and Finance, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations and Marketing and International Business, or from the papers listed for an approved combined specialisation listed in the Schedule.
- (d) has completed the requirements for either the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or of Bachelor of Laws (Honours), shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.
- (4) The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be.

**BCom/BA**

- 13. (1) With the permission of Senate a candidate whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may be admitted to the conjoint course for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (in this Regulation called a 'conjoint course').
- (2) A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.
- (3) A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who:
  - (a) for Part I of this Degree has passed the seven papers prescribed in Regulation 5;
  - (b) for Part II of this Degree has passed no fewer than nine Stage II or Stage III papers (01.101 may be substituted for one of these) selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule, in the subjects Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from one of the subjects Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business, or from the papers listed for an approved combined specialisation listed in the Schedule.
  - (c) Has completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.
- (4) The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be.

**BCom/BSc**

- 14. For the purposes of the conjoint degrees BCom/BSc, the "BCom component", as defined by the Conjoint Degree BCom/BSc Regulations, shall be:
  - (i) for Part I of the BCom, seven papers as defined in Regulation 5 of these Regulations.
  - (ii) for Part II of the BCom, a minimum of nine papers at Stage II or Stage III (01.101 may be substituted for one of these) selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule for the Bachelor of Commerce, in the subjects of Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business,
  - (iii) at least three of the papers under (ii) above shall be Stage III papers selected from one of the specified subjects, or from the papers listed for an approved combined specialisation listed in the Schedule.

**Note:** Refer also to BSc Regulation 11 and the Conjoint Degrees of BCom/BSc in the Inter-Faculty section of this *Calendar*.

**Elective Papers**

- 15. Except as provided in Regulation 6 (b), a candidate wishing to take for this Degree any unit, course or paper which is also prescribed for any other degree, shall comply with such of the Regulations for each of those degrees as apply to that unit, course or paper.

**Restrictions**

- 16. No candidate shall take a subject, unit or paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other subject, unit or paper, and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

**Savings and Transitional Provisions**

- 17. (1) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (2) A candidate who passed under any of the former Regulations for this Degree in any unit of which the papers are also papers under these Regulations shall be credited with passes in those papers under these Regulations provided that the Senate is satisfied that the prescription in any such paper is at least the equivalent of that prescribed under these Regulations.
- (3) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- 18. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1990.

**Schedule**

- 1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions and other conditions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.
- 2. The Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
- 3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- 4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
- 5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
- 6. A candidate may not take a further stage of a subject until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that stage of the subject.
- 7. Prerequisite and corequisite restrictions and qualifications may be waived or varied on the recommendation of the Head of Department. (Students are to apply for concessions on the appropriate form from the Faculty Office.)
- 8. Where a prerequisite has been waived on the recommendation of the Head of Department and reimposed as a corequisite, the paper or papers as to which the corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless or until that corequisite has been passed.

SCHEDULE

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
----------------------------	----------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE

Accounting and Finance - Stage I

01.100	Accounting (a)			
T01.100	Accounting (a)			
01.101	Accounting (b)			
T01.101	Accounting (b)			
01.104	Introduction to Accounting and Finance			
T01.104	Introduction to Accounting and Finance			

Accounting and Finance- Stage II

01.200	Financial Accounting			01.100 or T01.100
T01.200	Financial Accounting			As for 01.200
01.201	Accounting for Special Entities			As for 01.200
01.202	Cost & Management Accounting			01.101 or T01.101 or 01.102, 01.103
T01.202	Cost & Management Accounting			As for 01.202
01.203	Accounting Information Systems			01.101 or T01.101; 74.100 or T74.110 or 07.100 or 07.111
T01.203	Accounting Information Systems			As for 01.203
01.204	Accounting & Financial Management Issues in Government	†		01.100 or T01.100, 01.101 or T01.101
01.205	Financial Management			01.100 or T01.100, 01.101 or T01.101; or 01.102, 01.103
T01.205	Financial Management			As for 01.205
01.206	Introduction to Investments			As for 01.204

Accounting and Finance - Stage III

01.300	Financial Accounting			01.200 or T01.200
01.301	Auditing			01.200 or T01.200, 01.203 or T01.203
01.302	Cost & Management Accounting			01.202 or T01.202
01.306	Advanced Financial Management			01.205 or T01.205
01.307	Modern Investment Theory & Management			01.206
01.308	Risk & Insurance			01.206
01.309	Public Sector Management			As for 01.302
01.314	Accounting and Control			
01.315	Special Topic in Accounting			
	Special Topic in Finance			

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
01.100 or T01.100 As for 01.101	T01.100, 01.102		The two papers 01.102 and 01.103 may be regarded as equivalent to 01.100 or T01.100 and 01.101 or T01.101 for students transferring into a BCom, as stated below in the Qualifications for Stage II Accounting and Finance papers.
	01.100, 01.102		As for 01.100
	T01.101, 01.103		As for 01.100
	01.101, 01.103		As for 01.100
	01.100, T01.100, 01.101, T01.101 or 01.102 or 01.103, T01.104		
	01.100, T01.100, 01.101, T01.101 or 01.102 or 01.103, 01.104		
	T01.200	The Head of the Department may waive the corequisites for candidates with sufficient knowledge (including candidates with at least a B+ in 01.102 and 01.103)	
	01.200	As for 01.200	
	T01.202	As for 01.200	
	01.202	As for 01.200	
	T01.203	As for 01.200	
	01.203	As for 01.200	
	T01.205	As for 01.200	
	01.205 01.303	As for 01.200 As for 01.200	
	01.303		
	01.303		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
----------------------------	----------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

## COMMERCIAL LAW

### Commercial Law - Stage I

02.100	Introduction to Law
T02.100	Introduction to Law

### Commercial Law - Stage II

02.200	Contracts and Restitution			02.100 or T02.100
T02.200	Contracts and Restitution			As for 02.200
02.201	Credit & Security			As for 02.200
T02.201	Credit & Security			As for 02.200
02.202	Law of Business Organisations			As for 02.200
T02.202	Law of Business Organisations			As for 02.200
02.203	Labour Law			As for 02.200
02.204	Legal Environment of Business		1st half	25.103
02.205	Law of Marketing and Information Technology			As for 02.200

### Commercial Law - Stage III

02.301	Taxation and Estate Planning			02.202 or T02.202
02.303	Corporate Rescue and Insolvency			02.202 or T02.202, 01.200 or T01.200
02.305	Investment Law			02.201 or T02.201 or 02.202 or T02.202
02.306	Competition Law	†		02.202 or T02.202
02.307	International Trade Law			02.200 or T02.200 or 02.201 or T02.201
02.308	Banking Law	†		02.201 or T02.201
02.320	Special Topic in Commercial Law	*		
02.321	Special Topic in Commercial Law	*		

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

### Computer Science - Stage I

07.100	Principles of Computing (a)		1st half	
07.105	Principles of Computing (b)		2nd half	

07.111	Introduction to Computing and Applications
T07.115	Computers and Programming

### Computer Science - Stage II

07.211	Computer Systems			07.100 or 07.111
07.222	Data Base Management Systems			07.100 or 07.111 or 74.100

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	T02.100, 25.103 02.100, 25.103		
	T02.200	A pass in 25.103 and a concurrent enrolment in 02.204 will serve as a substitute for 02.100 or T02.100 as a prerequisite for Stage II Commercial Law papers	
02.200 or T02.200	02.200	As for 02.200	
As for 02.201	T02.201	As for 02.200	
As for 02.201	02.201	As for 02.200	
As for 02.201	T02.202, 02.300	As for 02.200	
As for 02.201	02.202, 02.300	As for 02.200	
	02.100 or T02.100	As for 02.200	
	02.304	As for 02.200	
07.100 or (07.111 as a prereq.)	07.101, 07.111, 50.002, 72.100		With permission of the Head of Department, paper 50.002, Introduction to Computing for Engineers, may be used as an alternative corequisite for 07.105
T74.110	07.100, 07.101, 50.002, 72.100 07.105		
	07.210		With permission of the Head of Department, paper 50.002, Introduction to Computing for Engineers, may be used as an alternative corequisite for 07.211
	07.320, 72.322, 74.222 or T74.222, 74.322		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
07.231	Introduction to Software Engineering		1st half	07.100 or 07.111; 07.105; any 6 credits in Mathematics and Statistics
07.232	Software Reliability and Design		2nd half	07.100 or 07.111; 07.105; 26.120 or 26.121 or 26.122
<b>Computer Science - Stage III</b>				
07.301	Tonic in Computer Science (a)		2nd half	Permission from Head of Department
07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b)		2nd half	As for 07.301
07.303	Topic in Computer Science (c)		1st half	As for 07.301
07.304	Topic in Computer Science (d)			As for 07.301
07.305	Topic in Computer Science (e)			As for 07.301
07.306	Topic in Computer Science (f)			As for 07.301
07.310	Computer Organisation			07.211; 07.230 or 07.231
07.315	Computer Graphics		1st half	07.221 or 07.232; 07.230 or 07.231; 26.120 or 26.121 or 26.122
07.330	Language Implementation			07.211; 07.230 or 07.231
07.340	Operating Systems			As for 07.330
07.342	Data Communications	*		As for 07.330
07.351	Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science			(07.221 or 07.232; 26.220 or 26.222 or 29.101) or (07.105; 26.221)
07.352	Design and Analysis of Algorithms			07.221 or 07.232; 07.230 or 07.231
07.361	Functional and Logic Programming		1st half	As for 07.352
07.362	Artificial Intelligence		2nd half	As for 07.352
07.380	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (a)			07.211; 07.230 or 07.231; 07.221 or 07.232; permission of Head of Department
07.381	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (b)			As for 07.380
07.382	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (c)			As for 07.380

## ECONOMICS

### Economics - Stage I

13.100	Microeconomics		1st half	
T13.100	Microeconomics		1st half	

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	07.230		With the permission of the Head of Department, alternative Mathematics prerequisites may be accepted for 07.231 and 07.232, such as another Stage 1 Mathematics paper, or Bursary Mathematics As for 07.231
07.231	07.220, 72.221	07.301, 07.302 and 07.303 are 2 credit papers and must be aggregated to 4 credits before they can be credited as one paper for BCom.	
	07.302 (before 1989)		
	07.305 in 1984		
	74.324 (before 1992) 07.250, 07.350		
	07.250, 07.350		
	07.360	07.361 and 07.362 are 2 credit papers and must be aggregated to 4 credits before they can be credited as one paper for the BCom	
07.361	07.360		
13.101 or T13.101	T13.100, 13.103		Students intending to advance beyond Stage 1 Economics require an adequate mathematical background and are advised to include 26.108 (or equivalent) in their first year course. As for 13.100
As for 13.100	13.100, 13.103		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
13.101	Macroeconomics		2nd half	
T13.101	Macroeconomics		2nd half	
<b>Economics Stage II</b>				
13.200	Microeconomics			13.100 or T13.100 and 13.101 or T13.101
T13.200	Microeconomics			As for 13.200
13.201	Macroeconomics			As for 13.200
T13.201	Macroeconomics			As for 13.200
13.203	Managerial Economics			As for 13.200
13.204	New Zealand Public Economics	*		As for 13.200
13.205	Introduction to Econometrics			13.100 or T13.100 and 13.101 or T13.101, plus one of 26.188, 13.102, 26.180 or 26.181
T13.205	Introduction to Econometrics			As for 13.205
13.210	Industrialisation and Economic Development		1st half	As for 13.200
13.211	The International Economy since 1870		2nd half	As for 13.200
13.213	Economic History of USA 1776-1940	*		As for 13.200
13.214	The New Zealand Economy	*		As for 13.200
<b>Economics - Stage III</b>				
13.300	Advanced Microeconomic Analysis			13.200 or T13.200
13.301	Macroeconomic Theory and Policy			13.200 or T13.200 and 13.201 or T13.201
13.302	Econometrics			(13.200 or T13.200) or (13.201 or T13.201) and (13.205 or T13.205 or 26.280 or 26.281)
13.304	International Trade			As for 13.300
13.305	Financial Economics			As for 13.300
13.306	Classical, Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas			13.200 or T13.200 or 13.201 or T13.201
13.307	Public Economics			As for 13.300
13.308	Economics of Labour			As for 13.306
13.309	International Finance			13.200 or T13.200, 13.201 or T13.201 and 13.205 or T13.205
13.310	Economic History of Australia & NZ	†		As for 13.306
13.311	Special Topic			
13.312	Special Topic	*		



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
13.100 or T13.100	T13.101, 13.103	The corequisites for T13.100 are unlikely to be waived	As for 13.100
As for 13.101	13.101, 13.103	As for 13.101	As for 13.100
26.108 or T26.108, or one of 26.120, 26.121, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142	T13.200, 13.203	Students who passed 13.103 and 13.104 with at least a B-average prior to 1987 can proceed to any Economics II papers other than 13.205 or T13.205, for which a statistical prerequisite is also needed	
As for 13.200	13.200, 13.203	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	T13.201	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	13.201	As for 13.200	
As for 13.200	13.200, T13.200	As for 13.200	
	T13.205	As for 13.200	
	13.205	As for 13.200 As for 13.200	
	17.201	As for 13.200  As for 13.200  As for 13.200	
			Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302 or 13.305 should have previously passed at least one paper in Pure Mathematics, and are also strongly advised to have taken 13.205 or T13.205. As for 13.300
			As for 13.300
			As for 13.300
		With the permission of the Head of Department students may take 13.205 or T13.205 as a corequisite for 13.309	
		Enrolment in Special Topic papers requires Head of Department approval As for 13.311	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
13.313	Management and Enterprise in the British Economy (1750-1939)	*		As for 13.306
13.314	Law and Economics			13.200 or T13.200 plus 02.100 or T02.100 (or 25.104 and 25.105) or approval of Head of Department
13.315	Special Topic 1993: International Economic Policy Studies			As for 13.300
13.320	Industrial Organisation			As for 13.300

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage I

74.100	Business Computing
T74.110	Computers and Information Systems
T07.115	Computers and Programming

### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage II

26.293	Introduction to Operations Research			Either 26.165. or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100 or T74.110
T26.293	Introduction to Operations Research			As for 26.293
74.200	Operations Management			74.100 or T74.110 and (26.188 or T26.188 or 13.102 or 26.181)
T74.200	Operations Management			As for 74.200
74.220	Systems Analysis			(i) 01.100 or T01.100 and 01.101 or T01.101 or (01.102 and 01.103), and (ii) 74.100 or T74.110
T74.220	Systems Analysis			As for 74.220
74.221	Programming Laboratory			74.100 or T74.110
T74.221	Programming Laboratory			As for 74.221
74.222	Data Base Management Systems			74.100 or T74.110
T74.222	Data Base Management Systems			As for 74.222
T74.223	Information Technology for Management			74.100 or T74.110
T74.224	Introduction to Data Communications	*		T74.110 and T07.115

### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage III

74.300	Advanced Operations Management			74.200 or T74.200 and 26.293 or T26.293
--------	--------------------------------	--	--	---

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
13.304 or 13.309		Corequisites may be waived for students with a good pass in 13.222	
T74.110	T74.110, 07.101, 72.100 74.100, 07.100, 07.111 07.105  T26.293  26.293  T74.200   74.200 T74.220   74.220 T74.221, 07.235  74.221, 07.235 T74.222, 07.320, 74.322 74.222, 07.320, 74.322	Students who passed 26.293 and/or 74.200 prior to 1992 may not enrol in either 26.293 or T26.293 or 74.200 or T74.200 under these Regulations As for 26.293  As for 26.293   As for 26.293	Students advancing in Management Science and Information Systems must have their choice of Stage III papers approved by the Head of Department. Students wishing to specialise in Information Systems will normally be expected to include 74.320, 74.321, and 74.323 in their course of study.

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
74.301	Project in Operations Management			As for 74.300
74.302	Information Integrated Operations			As for 74.300
74.310	Total Quality Management			As for 74.300
26.391	Optimisation in Operations Research			74.100 or T74.110 or 07.100 or 07.111; 26.208 or T26.208 or 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222
26.395	Mathematical Modelling in Operations Research			26.180 or 26.188 or T26.188; 74.100 or T74.110 or 07.100 or 07.111; 26.208 or T26.208 or 26.240 or 26.241
74.320	Systems Design			74.220 or T74.220 and 74.221 or T74.221 and 74.222 or T74.222
74.321	Systems Project			As for 74.320
74.323	Management of Information Systems			As for 74.320
74.324	Data Communications			(74.220 or T74.220 and 74.221 or T74.221) or (07.211 and 07.230 or 07.231)
74.325	Special Topic: Expert Systems	†		
74.326	Special Topic	†		
74.327	Special Topic			
74.328	Special Topic	*		

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

### Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage I

72.101	Organisation and Management			
T72.101	Organisation and Management			

### Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage II

72.204	Organisational Behaviour			72.101 or T72.101
T72.204	Organisational Behaviour			As for 72.204
72.207	Labour Relations		2nd half	72.101 or T72.101
				Head of Department
T72.207	Labour Relations	†	2nd half	As for 72.204
72.210	Communication Processes	†	2nd half	As for 72.204

### Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage III

72.303	Comparative Labour Relations		1st half	72.207 or T72.207
72.305	Interpersonal and Group Relations	†	2nd half	72.203 or 72.204 or T72.204
72.307	Personnel Policy and Practice		2nd half	72.207 or T72.207 (and 72.303 or 72.204 or T72.204)
72.311	Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management		1st half	(72.101 or T72.101 or 72.203) and two Stage II papers
72.313	Business and Society		2nd half	Subject to permission of Head of Department
72.314	Organisational Communication	†	2nd half	72.204 or T72.204

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
74.300			As for 74.300
			As for 74.300
	54.251		As for 74.300 As for 74.300
	54.351		As for 74.300
			As for 74.300
74.320 and 74.323			As for 74.300 As for 74.300
07.342			As for 74.300
		Recommended papers related to 74.325 are 07.361 or 07.362 Enrolment is subject to approval of the Head of Department	As for 74.300 As for 74.300
		As for 74.326 As for 74.326	As for 74.300 As for 74.300

T72.201, 72.203  
72.201, 72.203

T72.204  
72.204  
T72.207

72.207  
72.314 if passed  
before 1993

72.210 will be a prerequisite  
for this paper from 1994

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
72.316 72.317	Organisational Psychology Women in Organisations		2nd half	As for 72.305 Subject to permission of Head of Department As for 72.305
72.325	Organisation Theory and Development			As for 72.305
72.326	Management Theory and Practice	†	2nd half	As for 72.314
72.340	Special Topic 1993: Trade Union Studies		1st half	Subject to permission of Head of Department As for 72.340
72.341	Special Topic 1993: Industrial Relations in the Post-modern Firm	†		As for 72.340
72.342	Special Topic	†		As for 72.340

MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

Marketing and International Business - Stage II

71.200	Marketing Management			13.100 or T13.100, 13.101 or T13.101 As for 71.200
T71.200	Marketing Management			As for 71.200
71.201	International Business			As for 71.200
T71.201	International Business			As for 71.200

Marketing and International Business - Stage III

71.300	Marketing Strategy		2nd half	71.200 or T71.200, 71.201 or T72.201, and (72.101 or T72.101 or 72.203) As for 71.300
71.301	Consumer Behaviour		1st half	71.200 or T71.200 and 71.201 or T71.201, and (72.101 or T72.101 or 72.203), and (26.188 or T26.188 or 13.102 or 26.181) As for 71.300
71.302	Marketing Research			(72.101 or T72.101 or 72.203) and any two Stage II papers
71.304	Marketing Practice			As for 71.300
71.310	Stakeholder Analysis and Business Ethics			(72.101 or T72.101 or 72.203) and any two Stage II papers
71.311	Special Topic	†		
71.312	Special Topic	†		

MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

Mathematics, Applied - Stage I

26.180	Principles of Statistics			
26.181	Introduction to Probability and Statistics			
26.182	Introduction to Probability and Statistics			
26.188	Probability and Statistics for Commerce			
T26.188	Probability and Statistics for Commerce			

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	32.312		
	72.203		
	T71.200		
	71.200		
	T71.201		
	71.200		
71.302 74.200 or T74.200			
		Enrolment is subject to approval of the Head of Department As for 71.311	
26.140 or 26.141 or 26.142 or 26.241	26.181, 26.182, 13.102, 26.188, T26.188	No candidate may be credited with more than one of 26.180, 26.181, 26.182, 13.102, 26.188 or T26.188	
	26.180, 26.182, 13.102, 26.188, T26.188		
	26.180, 26.181, 13.102, 26.188, T26.188		
	26.180, 26.181, 26.182, T26.188, 13.102	26.108 or T26.108 and 26.188 or T26.188 are available to Commerce students and students in other courses of study who are enrolled in an economics paper As for 26.188	
	26.180, 26.181, 26.182, 26.188, T26.188, 13.102		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
<b>Mathematics, Applied - Stage II</b>				
26.280	Statistical Theory			26.180 or with approval of Head of Department,
26.281	Data Analysis			26.181 or 26.182
26.288	Data Analysis for Commerce			26.181, 26.182 or 26.180
T26.288	Data Analysis for Commerce			26.188 or T26.188
26.293	Introduction to Operations Research			As for 26.288
				Either 26.165, or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100 or T74.110
T26.293	Introduction to Operations Research			As for 26.293
<b>Mathematics, Applied - Stage III</b>				
26.380	Applied Probability			26.180, 26.208 or T26.208 and as in BSc Schedule
26.381	Advanced Statistical Theory			26.280, 26.208 or T26.208 and as in BSc Schedule
26.382	Design of Surveys & Experiments			26.280 or 26.281 or 26.288 or T26.288
26.385	Advanced Data Analysis			As for 26.382
26.391	Optimization in Operations Research			74.100 or T74.110 or 07.100 or 07.111; 26.208 or T26.208 or 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222
26.395	Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research			26.180 or 26.188 or T26.188; 74.100 or T74.110 or 07.100 or 07.111; 26.208 or T26.208 or 26.240 or 26.241
26.399	Applied Mathematics Laboratory		2nd half	07.100 or suitable computing experience
<b>Mathematics, Pure - Stage I</b>				
26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			
T26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			
26.102	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			



Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
26.208 or T26.208 26.240 or 26.241			
	26.288, T26.288		
	26.281, T26.288		
	26.281, 26.288 T26.293	Refer Management Science and Information Systems Stage II Schedule. Students who passed 26.293 and/or 74.200 prior to 1992 may not enrol in 26.293 or T26.293 or 74.200 or T74.200 under these Regulations	
	26.293	As for 26.293	
	54.251		
	54.351		
At least two of 26.371, 26.375, 26.382, 26.385 26.391, 26.395			
	T26.101, 26.102, (26.142 before 1991), 13.105, 26.108, T26.108	Students may not enrol in 26.101 or T26.101 or 26.102 at the same time as, nor subsequent to passing, any other Pure Mathematics paper (including 26.108 or T26.108). In order to enrol in any other Pure Mathematics paper after passing 26.101 or T26.101 or 26.102, a grade of B- or better is recommended in these papers. As for 26.101	
	26.101, 26.102, (26.142 before 1991), 13.105, 26.108, T26.108		
	26.101, T26.101, (26.142 before 1991), 13.105, 26.108, T26.108	As for 26.101	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Prerequisites
26.108	Algebra and Calculus for Commerce			
T26.108	Algebra and Calculus for Commerce			
26.120	Principles of Algebra			
26.121	Introductory Algebra			
26.140	Principles of Calculus			
26.141	Introductory Calculus			
26.142	Concepts of Calculus			

**Mathematics, Pure - Stage II**

26.208	Mathematics for Commerce	26.108 or T26.108
T26.208	Mathematics for Commerce	As for 26.208

One or two papers from courses as prescribed for BSc.

**Mathematics, Pure - Stage III**

One, two or three papers from courses as prescribed for BSc.

**ELECTIVE PAPERS - any Stage**

Up to seven papers as prescribed for any other degree not already taken for this Degree.

**COMBINED SPECIALISATIONS**

<b>Accounting and Finance and Taxation</b>	Any two of 01.300 Financial Accounting, 01.301 Auditing, 01.302 Cost and Management Accounting and Control, 01.306 Advanced Financial Management, 01.307 Modern Investment Theory and Management and 01.308 Risk and Insurance together with 02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning.
--	---

\* Starred papers will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

'T' prefix - taught at the Tamaki Campus.

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications	Notes
	<p>T26.108, 13.105 and all Stage I Pure Mathematics papers except 26.101, T26.101, 26.102</p> <p>26.108, 13.105 and all Stage I Pure Mathematics papers except 26.101, T26.101, 26.102</p> <p>26.121, 26.221, 26.108, T26.108</p>	<p>26.108 or T26.108 and 26.188 or T26.188 are available to Commerce students and students in other courses of study who are enrolled in an economics paper</p> <p>As for 26.108</p>	<p>Streaming for papers 26.120, 26.121, 26.140, 26.141 will be based on student's preparation. Students with an A Bursary are encouraged to enrol in papers 26.120, 26.140 and students with a qualification of B Bursary or less, 26.121, 26.141 or 26.142</p> <p>As for 26.120</p>
	<p>26.120, 26.221, 26.108, T26.108</p>	<p>Students scoring 50% or more in any Bursary Mathematics paper are strongly encouraged to enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101 or T26.101 or 26.102</p>	<p>As for 26.120</p>
	<p>26.141, 26.142, 26.241, 26.108, T26.108</p>		<p>As for 26.120</p>
	<p>26.140, 26.142, 26.241, 26.108, T26.108</p>	<p>As for 26.121</p>	<p>As for 26.120</p>
	<p>26.140, 26.141, 26.241, 13.105, 26.108 or T26.108, (26.101, 26.102 before 1991)</p>		<p>As for 26.120</p>
	<p>T26.208 and all other Stage II Pure Mathematics papers</p> <p>26.208, and all other Stage II Pure Mathematics papers</p> <p>At the discretion of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics.</p>		
	<p>At the discretion of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics.</p>		
	<p>The Head of Department of the subject concerned may require the candidate to pass in a paper or course as prescribed for any other degree.</p>		
<b>Finance and Economics</b>	<p>Any two of: 01.306 Advanced Financial Management, 01.307 Modern Investment Theory and Management, 01.308 Risk and Insurance together with any one of 13.300 Advanced Micro Economic Analysis, 13.302 Econometrics or 13.309 International Finance</p>		

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE (HONOURS) BCom(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours shall pursue a course of study for not less than four years.
2. The Degree may be awarded in each of the following subjects: Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law and Economics.
3. Admission to the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be given to a candidate who has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce either fourteen or twenty-one papers. A candidate who has completed the requirements for a conjoint Bachelor of Commerce degree programme shall for this Degree be deemed to have passed twenty-one papers, but shall not normally be exempted from any other prerequisite requirements for entry to Honours.
4. No candidate shall be admitted to an Honours subject without the approval of the Head of Department and of the Senate. Such approval shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the candidate's performance in the courses of University study already pursued by the candidate and particularly in the papers required as pre-requisites to that Honours Programme.
5. No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) if he or she has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce of this University.
6. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12, a candidate for this Degree may substitute:
  - (a) One paper in another subject in which the degree is being taken.
  - (b) Up to one Stage III paper not already taken for any other degree or diploma.
7. A candidate shall sit the final examinations for the Degree within:
  - (a) two years for those admitted with fourteen papers towards the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or
  - (b) one year for those admitted with twenty-one papers towards the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce except that a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may have his or her course of study under (a) and (b) extended by one year, provided the individual course of study is determined by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department prior to first enrolment.
8. A candidate shall be required to pass the whole of Part III of the Honours Programme so that the performance in all papers comprising this part shall be considered.
9. A candidate who, on the results of the examinations, does not reach the standard required in the Honours Programme in which he or she is enrolled, shall be excluded by the Senate from the Honours Programme but he or she may be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce together with appropriate credits towards the Diploma of Commerce and or the Degree of Master of Commerce as the Senate shall determine.
10. A candidate may withdraw from Honours and be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce and or the Diploma of Commerce or the Master of Commerce as the Senate shall determine.

### Classes of Honours

11. The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of honours awarded shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in the examinations in his or her final year but account may be taken of the candidate's work throughout his or her course of study.

### Requirements of Honours Programme

12. Subject to the provision to Regulation 5, an Honours Degree shall consist of Part I and Part II of the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce and Part III as prescribed in the Schedule to these regulations.
13. Unless otherwise provided in the Schedule to these regulations, no candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part III before completing Parts I and II.
14. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
15. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## SCHEDULE

### Honours Part III

#### Accounting and Finance

A candidate entering the Honours Programme after the completion of fourteen papers shall complete 01.412 Research Methods in Accounting as part of the remaining seven papers required for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce

- (i) 01.412 Research Methods in Accounting or if completed, another paper approved by the Head of the Department from those listed below
- (ii) One paper selected from; 01.401 Contemporary Financial Accounting Issues; 01.415 Contemporary Management Accounting Issues; 01.416 Modern Corporate Finance
- (iii) either one other paper in (ii) above, or 01.425 Special Topic or 01.426 Special Topic
- (iv) One paper selected from 01.410 Evaluation of Accounting Information; 01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector; 01.417 Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis
- (v) 01.623 Research Essay

#### Commercial Law

A candidate entering the Honours Programme after the completion of fourteen papers shall complete 02.440 Legal Research as part of the remaining seven papers required for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce

- (i) 02.440 Legal Research, or if completed another paper approved by the Head of Department from those listed under (ii)
- (ii) Three papers selected from 02.420 to 02.431
- (iii) 02.623 Research Essay

#### Economics

- (i) Four papers selected from 13.400 to 13.422
- (ii) 13.623 Research Essay

In respect to Regulation 12, an Economics candidate must have completed at least eight Economics papers prior to selection for Part III Honours. At least one of the Stage III papers taken must be 13.300 or 13.301.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY BTech

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*. Prescriptions for individual papers may be found in the Prescriptions for the Degrees of BCom, BE and BSc in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE MCom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Students not qualified to enrol for MCom by reason of Clause 1 (a) of these Regulations may be permitted to enrol for MPhil.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Commerce shall before the candidate's enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, and
  - (b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for the candidate's subject as shown in the Schedule to these Regulations, and either (ii) have obtained a grade of C+ or better on average in the Stage III paper in the subject which the candidate proposes to take for this Degree, provided that, in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit, or (iii) For BCom(Hons) candidates, a pass in the final BCom(Hons) year in the subject offered for this degree.

*Note: Relevance and standard of undergraduate study are the main criteria for approval.*
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may, after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree, enrol for this Degree, upon the following conditions:
  - (a) that the candidate:
    - (i) proposes for this Degree a course to extend over not fewer than two academic years;
    - (ii) has obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree of the subject proposed for this Degree;
    - (iii) satisfies the conditions in Regulation 1(b) of these Regulations, or is exempt from them;
    - (iv) enrolls for the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Commerce degree in the first year of the candidate's course for this Degree; and
  - (b) that no such remaining paper shall be prerequisite for this Degree; and
  - (c) that, should the candidate not pass each such remaining paper in the first year of his or her course for this Degree, that course shall be suspended until that paper is passed.
3. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements of and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule, except that a thesis only may, with the permission of the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department be presented by a BCom(Hons) candidate for this Degree.
4. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 3, a candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take:
  - (i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or
  - (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper, or
  - (iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one being taken for the Degree, if each such paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
5. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper the candidate has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
6. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject in which the candidate has already passed for the Degree of Master of Arts or the Degree of Master of Philosophy.
7. Subject to Regulation 9(d) a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty four months of the date of first enrolment for the Degree. However, a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfill the requirements for this Degree within thirty six months of first enrolment for the Degree, with eligibility for Honours, the individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

### Honours

8. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) BCom(Hons) candidates for this degree may not be awarded Honours in the Master's Degree in the same subject.
- (c) The Degree may be awarded with distinction to any BCom(Hons) candidate who has achieved the standard equivalent to First Class Honours.
- (d) The Degree may be awarded with merit to any BCom(Hons) candidate who has achieved the standard equivalent to Second Class Honours, Division One.
- (e) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory, provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control (certified as under the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to present himself or herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of Regulation 7 above, and to Regulation 9 and 10 of the Examination Regulations.

### Thesis

9. (a) A thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.

- (b) A thesis may be presented in the first year of enrolment for this degree:
  - (i) if the candidate has achieved the degree of BCom(Hons) or
  - (ii) in exceptional cases, approved by the Head of Department.
- (c) A candidate may enrol for a thesis in any year subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if the candidate obtains an average grade of at least B- in the papers sat in the first year (provided a thesis is not a compulsory requirement for the candidate's subject).
- (d) (i) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than twenty-four months after the date of first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.  
 (ii) A candidate taking this degree by thesis only shall present a thesis within eighteen months of first enrolment, but the time may be extended in exceptional circumstances as approved by the Senate.
- (e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to represent it subject to Regulation 9 (d) above by a later date specified by the Head of Department.

*Note:* An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

#### **Personal Course of Study**

- 10. The personal course of study of a candidate shall require the approval of the appropriate Head of Department.
- 11. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- 12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.

### **SCHEDULE**

#### **(1) Accounting and Finance**

Prerequisites: Eight papers in the subject Accounting and Finance including three Stage III papers.

Requirements: Four papers and a thesis (01.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (01.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 01.400 to 01.426.

#### **(2) Commercial Law**

Prerequisites: Two Stage III Commercial Law papers and one other Stage III paper in Commerce approved by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

Requirements: Seven papers; or six papers and a research essay (02.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (02.601) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 02.400 to 02.416.

#### **(3) Economics**

Prerequisites: Eight papers in the subject Economics including three Stage III papers.

Requirements: Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (13.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.422.

#### **(4) Management Science and Information Systems**

Prerequisites: Three Stage III Management Science and Information Systems papers.

Requirements: Four papers and a thesis (74.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (74.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol in paper 71.403 (Research Methods in Marketing) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 74.400 to 74.422.

#### **(5) Management Studies and Labour Relations**

Prerequisites: Three Stage III Management Studies and Labour Relations papers.

Requirements: Four papers and a thesis (72.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (72.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol for paper 72.410 (Research Methods) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 72.400 to 72.424.

#### **(6) Marketing and International Business**

Prerequisites: Three Stage III Marketing and International Business papers.

Requirements: Four papers and a thesis (71.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (71.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol for 71.403 (Research Methods in Marketing) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 71.400 to 71.402 and 71.409 to 71.413.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION MBA**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study, students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the course not later than 15 October, or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the candidate proposes to enrol.*

#### **General Provisions**

- 1. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall be admitted to either the Executive Course or the Management Course.
- 2. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate taking the Executive Course for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or
  - (ii) hold a Senate approved professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering, Science, or other approved discipline or
  - (iii) perform outstandingly in such tests of academic aptitude as may be prescribed by the Senate, and
  - (b) have had not less than five years of managerial experience and ten years of relevant work experience, and

- (c) have taken the Graduate Management Admission Test.
3. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate taking the Management Course for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or
    - (ii) hold a Senate approved professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering, Science, or other approved discipline or
    - (iii) perform outstandingly in such tests of academic aptitude as may be prescribed by the Senate, and
  - (b) have had not less than five years of relevant work experience, and
  - (c) have taken the Graduate Management Admission Test.
4. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
5. A candidate may be required by the Senate to undertake a transitional course of study.

#### **Course Requirements**

6. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall be required to:
  - (a) follow a course of study with a duration equivalent to not less than two academic years, and
  - (b) pass the examination for either the Executive Course or the Management Course, and
  - (c) perform laboratory and practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate.

#### **Executive Course**

7. A candidate admitted to the Executive Course shall be required to pass in each of fifteen papers and a project equivalent to three papers, and to complete not less than fifteen days of laboratory and practical work as prescribed by the Senate.

270.451 Microeconomics  
 270.452 Macroeconomics  
 270.455 Legal Studies  
 270.460 Accounting  
 270.463 Financial Management  
 270.470 Quantitative Methods  
 270.471 Operations Management  
 270.472 Management of Information Systems  
 270.475 Marketing Management  
 270.485 Organisation and Management  
 270.488 Human Resource Management  
 270.490 International Business  
 270.492 New Zealand and the International Business Environment  
 270.495 Strategic Management  
 270.496 Advanced Business Strategy  
 270.499 Management Project (value 3 papers)

#### **Management Course**

8. A candidate admitted to the Management Course shall be required to pass in each of eighteen papers and to complete not less than fifteen days of laboratory and practical work as prescribed by the Senate.

270.401 Microeconomics  
 270.402 Macroeconomics  
 270.405 Legal Studies  
 270.410 Accounting  
 270.413 Financial Management  
 270.420 Quantitative Methods  
 270.421 Operations Management  
 270.422 Management of Information Systems  
 270.425 Marketing Management  
 270.435 Organisation and Management  
 270.438 Human Resource Management  
 270.442 New Zealand and the International Business Environment  
 270.445 Strategic Management

plus five papers to be selected from:

†270.414 Investment Analysis  
 †270.415 International Finance  
 †270.418 Case Studies in Finance  
 †270.419 Special Topic in Finance  
 †270.423 Management of Quality  
 †270.424 Technology, Organisation and Change  
 †270.426 Strategic Marketing  
 †270.427 New Ventures  
 †270.431 Business to Business Analysis and Marketing  
 †270.432 Services Marketing  
 †270.433 Information Technology and the New Marketing  
 †270.434 Special Topic in Marketing  
 †270.437 Organisational Development and Change  
 †270.439 Special Topic in Human Resource Management  
 †270.440 International Business

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

#### **Credits**

9. With the approval of the Senate a candidate admitted to either the Management or Executive Course of study for this Degree who has been awarded or completed the requirements for the award of a diploma offered in or after 1989 by the Graduate School of Business may be credited with up to two papers for this Degree.
10. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1992.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCIAL LAW MComLaw

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Commercial Law shall, before enrolment to this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to:
    - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce with two Stage III papers in Commercial Law, or
    - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
    - (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours), or
    - (iv) such other degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case.
2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study of not less than one year.
3. No candidate shall be credited for this Degree with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper already passed for any other Degree or Diploma.
4. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
5. A candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within 24 months of first enrolment for this Degree. However, with the approval of the Senate, a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfil the requirements for this Degree within 36 months of first enrolment for this Degree, with eligibility for Honours, the individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.
6. The course of study shall consist of six papers selected from Commercial Law 02.400 to 02.416 as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Commerce, or five of those papers and a research essay (02.613) which shall count as one paper, or four of those papers and a thesis (02.615) which shall count as two papers.
7. A candidate for the Degree may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty concerned and with the approval of the Senate, take one 400 or 500 level paper prescribed for any of the following Degrees in substitution for one of the papers required by Regulation 6 of these Regulations:
  - Degree of Master of Commerce
  - Degree of Master of Jurisprudence
  - Degree of Master of Laws
  - Degree of Master of Taxation Studies

### Thesis

8. Where a thesis is required, the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (b) The thesis may be presented in the first year of enrolment for this Degree only with the approval of the Head of Department concerned.
  - (c) A candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date required by Regulation 5. However, in exceptional circumstances, a candidate may submit the thesis later than the date required by Regulation 5, provided that he or she shall not be eligible for Honours unless the Senate so determines.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis. See Examination Regulation 15.

### Honours

9. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its final presentation is unsatisfactory, provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control (certified as under the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to present himself or herself at a subsequent written examination and shall be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of Regulations 5 and 8(c) of these Regulations and to Regulations 9 and 10 of the Examination Regulations.
10. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Transitional

11. A candidate may with the consent of the Senate transfer to the Degree of Master of Commercial Law papers passed for the Degree of Master of Philosophy only in 1991.

### Commencement

12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DEGREE OF MASTER OF TAXATION STUDIES MTaxS

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Taxation Studies shall, before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to:
    - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, or
    - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
    - (iii) such other degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case, and
  - (b) be otherwise entitled to proceed to the Degree of:



- (i) Master of Commerce, or
- (ii) Master of Laws, or
- (iii) Master of Jurisprudence, and
- (c) have obtained a pass in:
  - (i) 02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning, or
  - (ii) 25.221 Income Tax.
- 2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study for not less than one year.
- 3. No candidate may present for this Degree a paper which is the same or substantially equivalent to any paper the candidate has passed for another degree or diploma.
- 4. Admission to the course of study for the Master of Taxation Studies shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
- 5. Subject to regulation 7 a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty-four months of the date of first enrolment for this Degree.

#### Course Content

- 6. The course of study of each candidate shall consist of:
  - (a) Four of the following papers:
    - 01.480 The Impact of Taxation on Financial Reporting and Control
    - 01.481 Special Topic in Taxation Accounting
    - 02.480 The Tax Base - Definition and Manipulation
    - 02.481 The Taxation of Corporations and Investors
    - 02.482 Indirect and Asset Based Taxation
    - 02.483 Current Developments in Taxation
    - 02.484 International Taxation
    - 02.485 Discretions, Disputes and Procedures
    - 02.486 Avoidance Provisions
    - 02.487 Special Topic in Taxation Law
    - 02.488 Special Topic in Taxation Law
    - 13.480 Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy
  - and one of the following:
    - (b) 01.614 Dissertation in Taxation Accounting (value two papers)
    - 02.614 Dissertation in Taxation Law (value two papers)
    - 13.614 Dissertation in the Economics of Taxation (value of two papers).
- 7. A candidate shall present the dissertation not later than twenty-four months after the date of first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.
- 8. The Senate may in exceptional cases approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

#### Honours

- 9. This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.
- 10. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

#### Transitional

- 11. A candidate may with the consent of the Senate be permitted to transfer to this Degree from any other masters degree for which the candidate was enrolled at the time these Regulations came into force and be credited with such papers as the Senate shall deem appropriate.

#### Commencement

- 12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE

#### Accounting and Finance I

##### 01.100 Accounting (a)

Basic financial accounting method including an introduction to external reporting.

**Note:** Assumed knowledge: Division I, nil; Division II, to trial balance, pass in University Bursaries/Entrance Scholarships Examination.

##### T01.100 Accounting (a)

As prescribed for 01.100. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

##### 01.101 Accounting (b)

Introduction to management accounting and the design and operation of business information systems.

##### T01.101 Accounting (b)

As prescribed for 01.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

##### 01.104 Introduction to Accounting and Finance

Introduction to financial statements, financial statement analysis and management accounting.

##### T01.104 Introduction to Accounting and Finance

As prescribed for 01.104. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### Accounting and Finance II

##### 01.200 Financial Accounting

External financial reporting by companies: the presentation of financial statements and techniques for their analysis; the

conceptual and regulatory considerations and financial statement impact of accounting policy choice; the theory and practice of accounting for corporate combinations.

##### T01.200 Financial Accounting

As prescribed for 01.200. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

##### 01.201 Accounting for Special Entities

Trust accounting; farm accounting and other selected topics.

##### 01.202 Cost and Management Accounting

Budgetary and standard cost control systems, internal control and divisional performance appraisal.

##### T01.202 Cost and Management Accounting

As prescribed for 01.202. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

##### 01.203 Accounting Information Systems

Accounting systems for information and control, computerised accounting systems, computer tools for accountants.

##### T01.203 Accounting Information Systems

As prescribed for 01.203. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

##### †01.204 Accounting and Financial Management Issues in Government

Central, regional and local government accounting and finance including the accounts of government trading corporations and other statutory bodies.

##### 01.205 Financial Management

Introduction to finance within the firm. Concepts of value, risk

and required rates of return. Capital budgeting, capital structure and dividend decisions.

### **T01.205 Financial Management**

As prescribed for 01.205. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **01.206 Introduction to Investments**

An introduction to a broad range of investments and how those investments are valued. The principles of portfolio construction and evaluation.

## **Accounting and Finance III**

### **01.300 Financial Accounting**

Contemporary issues in financial accounting theory and practice.

#### **01.301 Auditing**

#### **01.302 Cost and Management Accounting**

The relationship between cost and management accounting and manufacturing and marketing strategy.

#### **01.306 Advanced Financial Management**

Advanced study of contemporary issues in financial management. Topics covered include capital structure, agency theory, dividend policy, complexities in capital budgeting and international issues. Case study applications.

#### **01.307 Modern Investment Theory and Management**

Security analysis, portfolio construction and administration. Valuation of equity investments. Regulation of capital markets. The evaluation of portfolio performance.

#### **01.308 Risk and Insurance**

Risk and insurance as theoretical concepts, and as problems and opportunities facing firms and individuals. The use of financial securities to manage risk.

#### **01.309 Public Sector Management Accounting and Control**

The application of Management Accounting and Control concepts in public sector organisations particularly in the New Zealand context. Topics covered include: public sector reform in New Zealand, the input/output/outcomes and framework, planning and budgeting, costing and pricing of outputs, cost management, performance evaluation and control, performance auditing, public sector reporting requirements.

#### **01.314 Special Topic in Accounting**

#### **01.315 Special Topic in Finance**

## **Accounting and Finance for BCom(Hons), MCom and Honours**

### **01.400 Accounting Theory**

#### **01.401 Contemporary Financial Accounting Issues**

#### **01.402 Management Accounting**

#### **01.403 Contemporary Price Level Accounting Issues**

#### **01.404 History of Accounting Thought**

#### **01.405 Accounting Information Systems**

#### **01.406 Behavioural Accounting**

#### **01.408 Auditing**

#### **01.410 Evaluation of Accounting Information**

#### **01.411 Contemporary Issues in Accounting for the Primary Industry**

#### **01.412 Research Methods in Accounting**

#### **01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector**

#### **01.414 International Accounting**

#### **01.415 Contemporary Management Accounting Issues**

#### **01.416 Modern Corporate Finance**

#### **\*01.417 Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis**

Contemporary issues in investments will be examined in this seminar series. The material will largely focus upon empirical evidence. Topics will include: market efficiency, risk-return relationships, anomalies and alternative investment strategies.

#### **01.425 Special Topic**

#### **01.426 Special Topic**

#### **01.601 Thesis**

#### **01.603 Research Essay**

For MCom.

#### **01.623 Research Essay**

For BCom(Hons).

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year. Students intending to read for the BCom(Hons) or MCom degree should consult the staff towards the end of the previous year about preliminary vacation reading.

## **DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCIAL LAW**

### **Commercial Law I**

#### **02.100 Introduction to Law**

An introduction to the New Zealand legal system and fundamental legal concepts relevant to commerce and industry.

#### **T02.100 Introduction to Law**

As prescribed for 02.100. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Commercial Law II**

#### **02.200 Contracts and Restitution**

The law of contract and the principles of "unjust enrichment" in a business context.

#### **T02.200 Contracts and Restitution**

As prescribed for 02.200. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **02.201 Credit and Security**

Legal methods of raising and securing finance including chattel mortgages, agreements for hire purchase and sale of goods, suretyship, insurance and negotiable instruments.

#### **T02.201 Credit and Security**

As prescribed for 02.201. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **02.202 Law of Business Organisation**

The law relating to business organisations, with special emphasis on companies, partnerships, trading trusts, agency relationships and state-owned enterprises.

#### **T02.202 Law of Business Organisation**

As prescribed for 02.202. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **02.203 Labour Law**

The law relating to employment and labour relations.

#### **02.204 Legal Environment of Business**

Introduction to trusts, equity, property, comparative view of business structures. A detailed examination of fiduciary obligations, business torts and legal remedies.

#### **02.205 Law of Marketing and Information Technology**

The law concerning the marketing of goods and services and the protection of technological innovation with special emphasis on fair trading, intellectual property, trade secrets, consumer protection and the law as it effects communications and information technology.

### **Commercial Law III**

#### **02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning**

The law and practice of income tax, Goods and Services Tax, estate and gift duties and estate planning.

#### **02.303 Corporate Rescue and Insolvency**

Bankruptcy, schemes of Arrangement, Receivership and Liquidation.

#### **02.305 Investment Law**

The law relating to corporate finance and investment; offshore borrowing; takeovers and mergers, public floats, first and second board listing, futures trading and unlawful investment practices.

#### **\*02.306 Competition Law**

A study of the law relating to competition as it affects mergers, monopolies, restrictive trade practices together with an introduction to the economics of competition.

#### **02.307 International Trade Law**

A study of the law relating to the export of goods from New Zealand.

#### **†02.308 Banking Law**

A study of the law relating to domestic banking and the finance of international trade.

#### **\*02.320 Special Topic in Commercial Law**

#### **\*02.321 Special Topic in Commercial Law**

## **Commercial Law for BCom(Hons), MComLaw, MCom and Honours**

### **02.400 Immigration and International Travel Law**

#### **02.401 Export and Shipping Law**

#### **02.402 Professional Responsibility and the Courts**

#### **02.403 The Commercial Laws of Europe**

#### **02.404 Information Technology and the Law**

#### **02.405 Competition Law and Policy**

#### **02.406 Transnational Litigation and Arbitration**

**02.407 Advanced Banking Law****02.408 Law of International Finance****02.409 Marine Aviation Insurance****02.410 Business Law in East Asia and Japan****02.411 Corporate Distress and Rescue****02.412 Capital Markets and Securities Regulation****02.413 Corporate Governance****02.415 Special Topic**

In 1993: Employment Law

**02.416 Special Topic**

In 1993: Intellectual Property

**02.420 Equitable Obligations and Business Ethics**

An analysis of the interaction between ethical principles and the judge made concepts of fiduciary obligations, breach of confidence and unconscionability.

**02.421 Public Sector Management and the Law**

Legal structures and rules which shape and confine decision making in public sector organisations.

**02.422 Advanced Competition Law**

Selected legal problems concerning business acquisitions and restrictive trade practices.

**02.423 Selected Issues in Corporate Law**

Studies relating to corporate governance and finance and the operation and regulations of capital markets.

**02.424 Case Studies in Comparative Business Law**

An examination of business law in non common law countries with particular emphasis on the EEC and the Pacific Rim.

**02.425 Analysing the Tax Base**

Concepts of income and capital as they affect taxation. Legislative response to tax minimisation schemes.

**02.426 International Trade Regulation**

Public law issues in international trade with particular focus on the tension between free trade and protectionism.

**02.427 Protecting Innovation and Competitive Advantage**

An analysis of legal mechanisms used to protect technological innovation and competitive strategies.

**02.428 International Sales Contracts**

Current legal issues arising from the international sale of goods and associated contracts of carriage, insurance and finance.

**02.429 Legal Problems in Offshore Borrowing**

Selected legal problems arising out of the transnational activities of merchant banks and investment houses.

**02.430 Receivership and Liquidation**

Aspects of corporate insolvency including the conduct of receiverships, statutory management and reconstructions.

**02.431 Legal Protection for Sensitive Information**

Current legal issues concerning privacy, confidentiality and insider dealing.

**02.440 Legal Research**

A methodology for investigating legal issues in a business context.

**02.601 Thesis**

For MCom.

**02.603 Research Essay**

For MCom.

**02.613 Research Essay**

For MComLaw.

**02.614 Thesis**

For MComLaw.

**02.623 Research Essay**

For BCom(Hons).

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year. Students intending to read for BCom(Hons), MComLaw and MCom should consult the staff towards the end of the previous year about preliminary vacation reading.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**

For Prescriptions see under BSc.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS**
**Economics I**

Students intending to advance beyond Stage I Economics require an adequate mathematical back-ground and are advised to include

26.108 (or equivalent) in their first year course..

**Note:** Knowledge of Mathematics up to 6th form level will be assumed in Stage I Economics.

**13.100 Microeconomics**

Introduction to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Output and price determination in the various types of market. Market structures, income distribution and public policies. Theories and selected applications will be presented.

**T13.100 Microeconomics**

As prescribed for 13.100. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**13.101 Macroeconomics**

The economic activity of the nation at large and its interrelationships with the rest of the world. Included are the measurement of economic activity, determination of aggregate income, money, banking and prices, government macroeconomic policy and international trade.

**T13.101 Macroeconomics**

As prescribed for 13.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**Economics II****13.200 Microeconomics**

Analysis of the economic behaviour of individuals, firms and industries. Introduction to the economics of uncertainty and of general equilibrium.

**T13.200 Microeconomics**

As prescribed for 13.200. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**13.201 Macroeconomics**

A more advanced study of the determination and interaction of basic macroeconomic variables including output, employment, money supply and price level.

**T13.201 Macroeconomics**

As prescribed for 13.201. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**13.203 Managerial Economics**

A survey of the use of techniques of microeconomics and operations analysis to solve problems in business and resource management.

**\*13.204 New Zealand Public Economics**

The theory of the public sector and public sector issues in New Zealand. Efficiency and equity aspects of government spending and taxation. Special topics of current interest; such as tax and benefit reform are also covered.

**13.205 Introduction to Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and research methods in economics. Emphasis on use and interpretation of single equation regression techniques in testing both micro and macroeconomic hypotheses.

**T13.205 Introduction to Econometrics**

As prescribed for 13.205. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**13.210 Industrialisation and Economic Development**

Use of historical methods to analyse the industrialisation process in Europe and Pacific Rim countries.

**13.211 The International Economy Since 1870**

The development of the institutional framework of trade and international monetary arrangements of the principal trading nations.

**\*13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940****\*13.214 The New Zealand Economy****Economics III**

Students intending to take any Economics III papers are advised to consult in the Department before enrolment for advice on available papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

**13.300 Advanced Microeconomic Analysis**

An advanced course in microeconomics covering theories of value and distribution from classical and neoclassical perspectives. Includes an introduction to the philosophical foundations of economic knowledge and environmental economics.

**13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**

Output, employment and price level theory, experience and policy. The theoretical perspective is predominantly transaction constrained.

**13.302 Econometrics**

Economic models and their estimation, testing and uses for policy

and prediction.

### **13.304 International Trade**

Theory and policy in the international economy.

### **13.305 Financial Economics**

Microeconomic theory of production extended to cover topics relating to finance including time, uncertainty, taxation, and legal entities such as companies. Economic aspects of financial intermediaries, insurance and other areas.

### **13.306 Classical, Marxist & Modern Economic Ideas**

An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.

### **13.307 Public Economics**

Efficiency criteria for the public sector. Welfare economics, social policy and public sector spending decisions.

### **13.308 Economics of Labour**

### **13.309 International Finance**

### **†13.310 Economic History of Australia and New Zealand**

### **13.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### **\*13.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### **\*13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939**

### **13.314 Law and Economics**

Economic theory will be used to analyse rules and legal structures and their implications for economic behaviour.

### **13.315 Special Topic**

1993: International Economic Policy Issues. Application of economic analysis to key international economic policy issues with particular emphasis on those of special significance to New Zealand.

### **13.320 Industrial Organisation**

The study of firms in their markets, focusing on imperfect competition. Oligopoly, monopolistic competitors, analysis of strategic behaviour, government policies aimed at regulating oligopolistic and monopolistic behaviour, empirical applications.

### **Economics for BCom(Hons), MA, MCom, MPhil and Honours**

Note: Except by permission of the Head of the Department no candidate shall take Economics for BCom(Hons), MA, MCom, etc., unless he or she has passed either 13.300 or 13.301.

Candidates proposing to take paper 13.402 should consult the lecturer in charge or the Head of Department regarding Mathematical papers to be taken in the Bachelor's Degree course.

Students intending to take any postgraduate economics should consult in the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on availability of papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

### **\*13.400 Growth and Fluctuations**

### **13.401 Topics in Monetary Economics and Macroeconomics**

### **13.402 Econometrics**

### **13.404 Development and Planning**

### **13.405 Public Economics**

### **13.406 The History of Economic Thought**

### **\*13.407 Comparative Economics: Primitive, Peasant, Industrial and Socialist Economies**

### **\*13.408 Urban Economics**

### **13.410 Special Topic - Growth of the Corporate Economy**

### **13.411 Economics of Population Change**

### **13.412 Economic Forecasting**

### **13.413 Special Topic: Energy, Resource and Environmental Economics**

### **13.414 Special Topic: Labour Economics**

### **13.415 Special Topic: International Economics**

### **13.416 Special Topic: Public Policy**

### **†13.417 Special Topic: Development of the Chinese Economy**

### **13.418 Special Topic: The International Business Cycle**

### **13.419 Special Topic: Topics in Microeconomics**

### **13.420 Special Topic**

### **13.421 Special Topic**

### **13.422 Special Topic**

### **13.601 Thesis**

### **13.603 Research Essay**

For MCom.

### **13.623 Research Essay**

For BCom(Hons).

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

### **Management Science and Information Systems I**

#### **†14.100 Business Computing**

The concepts, issues and importance of information systems are emphasized. This course covers types of information systems, their components, their development, and operations. It includes practical experience in a laboratory environment using personal computers.

#### **T†14.110 Computers and Information Systems**

This paper concerns the concepts, issues and importance of computers and information systems for organisational and personal use. It includes an introduction to components of information systems and how they may be developed. The paper has a considerable laboratory component. The paper is taught at Tamaki and is intended both for students who wish to take a single paper in computing and for those who intend to advance in Information Systems, Computer Science or Information Technology (students wishing to advance should also take T07.115 Computers and Programming).

### **Management Science and Information Systems II**

#### **26.293 Introduction to Operations Research**

This course emphasises the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated Operations Research models. Computer package software is used to solve practical problems. Topics include linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models and simulation.

#### **T26.293 Introduction to Operations Research**

As prescribed for 26.293. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **†14.200 Operations Management**

Quantitative methods to improve productivity and competitiveness of manufacturing and service organisations: forecasting and linear programming, planning and control of production and inventories, MRP and master scheduling, project management and statistical quality control.

#### **T†14.200 Operations Management**

As prescribed for 14.200. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **†14.220 Systems Analysis**

Methods of developing user requirements specifications for computer-based systems.

#### **T†14.220 Systems Analysis**

As prescribed for 14.220. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **†14.221 Programming Laboratory**

Practice and experimentation in the use of a major business programming language.

#### **T†14.221 Programming Laboratory**

As prescribed for 14.221. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **†14.222 Data Base Management Systems**

Determination of information needs and patterns of data flow within a data base environment.

#### **T†14.222 Data Base Management Systems**

As prescribed for 14.222. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **T†14.223 Information Technology for Management**

This paper will assist in the development of information technology skills and knowledge applicable to business and organisations. Emphasis will be placed on planning evaluating information and communication systems essential to enterprises. A variety of workshops and laboratory exercises will be available to develop skills in the use of information technology tools. This paper is intended for students specialising in subjects outside Management Science and Information Systems.

#### **\*T†14.224 Introduction to Data Communications**

An introduction to architecture, hardware and software of computer based data communication systems.

### **Management Science and Information Systems III**

#### **†14.300 Advanced Operations Management**

Advanced inventory and distribution systems, Material Requirements Planning and Master Production Scheduling,

modern manufacturing technologies (JIT, FMS, CIM), quality and productivity management, facilities layout and design of production lines.

#### **74.301 Project in Operations Management**

Application of POM techniques to operations problems in a real setting.

#### **74.302 Information Integrated Operations**

Study of the role of information technology in operations management including both manufacturing and services industries. Customer order entry, Manufacturing Planning and Control, Automated Materials Handling, CAD, Computer Technology, Group Technology, robotics. Development of CIM strategy. An organisational perspective will be used throughout.

#### **74.310 Total Quality Management**

Statistical quality control. Quality planning. Total quality management. Demming approach. Costs of quality. Integration of operations management and quality, in both manufacturing and services. Relationship between quality management and information systems. Material will be considered from a managerial perspective.

#### **26.391 Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming; Simplex and revised Simplex methods; duality and the dual Simplex method; post optimal analysis; decomposition and column generation, integer programming; cutting planes and branch and bound; dynamic programming; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

#### **26.395 Mathematical Modelling in Operations Research**

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as queuing theory, inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling, digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods.

#### **74.320 Systems Design**

Concepts and practices of computer software architects with applications to the design of business systems.

#### **74.321 Systems Project**

Systems analysis, design, and development techniques are combined to solve a specific information systems problem. A team of students will usually work on a problem within a business or organisation outside the University.

#### **74.323 Management of Information Systems**

Planning, designing and implementing of computerised information systems from a managerial point of view, in both PC and mainframe computer environments, with special reference to New Zealand.

#### **74.324 Data Communications**

An introduction to data communication technology: equipment, software, systems, services. The design methods and management of data communication networks. Managerial aspects of data communication problems in New Zealand conditions.

#### **†74.325 Special Topic: Expert Systems**

Potential and limitations of commercial expert systems. Development of advisor systems. Commercial expert system shells.

#### **†74.326 Special Topic:**

#### **74.327 Special Topic**

#### **\*74.328 Special Topic**

### **Management Science and Information Systems for MCom and Honours**

#### **74.400 Operations Management**

#### **74.401 Operations Research**

#### **74.402 Mathematical Programming**

#### **74.405 Management Information Systems Concepts**

#### **74.411 Special Topic**

#### **74.412 Special Topic**

#### **74.419 Special Topic**

#### **74.420 Special Topic**

#### **†74.421 Special Topic**

#### **74.422 Special Topic**

#### **74.601 Thesis**

For MCom.

#### **74.603 Research Essay**

For MCom.

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS**

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations I**

#### **72.101 Organisation and Management**

Organisation theory; organisational behaviour; principles of management and labour relations.

#### **T72.101 Organisation and Management**

As prescribed for 72.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations II**

#### **72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

A framework for understanding human behaviour in the context of organisations, focussing on the individual (personality, motivation, leadership); groups (communication, group dynamics, conflict management, power and politics) and the impact organisational structure, culture and change have on behaviour.

#### **T72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

As prescribed for 72.204. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **72.207 Labour Relations**

Introduction to subject of labour relations with special reference to New Zealand. Institutional and legal frame works. History and organisation of trade unions and employers' associations. Role of government. Legislation relating to employment and to resolution of industrial disputes. Procedures for determining pay and conditions of employment in the public and private sectors.

#### **†72.207 Labour Relations**

As prescribed for 72.207. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **†72.210 Communication Processes**

Broad-based theories of communication with a focus on interpersonal and small group communication with a Commerce orientation. The syllabus includes communication technologies, communication variables, perceptual processes, critical thinking, models of listening, verbal, vocal and non-vocal communications and group communication.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations III**

#### **72.303 Comparative Labour Relations**

Issues in Comparative Labour Relations. A number of labour relations systems are studied (including Britain, France, USA, Sweden, Japan and West Germany) in order to assess the similarities and dissimilarities which exist between systems. Also topics relating to comparative collective bargaining, transnational corporations, industrial democracy, political unionism and supply-side labour relations.

#### **†72.305 Interpersonal and Group Relations**

A course of study on both the 'process' and 'content' of interpersonal and group relations including the following topics: interpersonal communication; interpersonal perception; group dynamics; problem management; business management by team; managing multi-group work; managing diversity, and; leadership practices vis-à-vis individuals and groups.

#### **72.307 Personnel Policy and Practice**

An analysis of the history and contemporary nature of personnel management. The framework adopted addresses contextual, philosophical and process issues, as well as such policy domains as work and organisation design, staffing, rewards and employee development.

#### **72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management**

This course aims to prepare third year students for managing a new firm, either as proprietor or as an executive in a diversifying organisation: or for acting in an advisory capacity. The subject of small firm start ups in competitive and/or co-operative situations will be covered.

#### **72.313 Business and Society**

The course examines the relationship between business institutions and the social, cultural and political climate within which they operate, assessing the effects of business on society and of society on business.

#### **†72.314 Organisational Communication**

Study and training in the practices of Communications in business

organisations. Topic and skill development include: effective presentations, interpersonal and group communication (including verbal and non-verbal communications), communicating in meetings (including conflict resolution), interviewing, report, letter and memo writing, and the impact of office technology. The course will include review of appropriate theory.

#### **72.316 Organisational Psychology**

Psychological aspects of how organisations affect people, and how people affect organisations. Topics include: functions and meaning of work, work attitudes, introduction to personnel psychology, occupational mental health, stress, quality of working life, group interactions and social influence at work, intergroup behaviour including gender and culture issues.

#### **72.317 Women in Organisations**

The economic, social, and political environment in which women join and participate in the workforce; structural and attitudinal barriers to women's access to organisational positions; women in trade unions, management, and the professions; equal employment opportunities, sexual harassment, pay equity, and other current issues.

#### **†72.325 Organisation Theory and Development**

Theories of organisations, including formation of new organisations, organisational change, and organisational failure. Traditional and contemporary approaches to organisational structure and design. Organisational development and effectiveness. Power, politics and systems of control in organisations.

#### **†72.326 Management Theory and Practice**

A course of study on the world and work of the modern manager including: the history of management thought, ethics and social responsibility; is management rational?; management and motivation; new approaches to leadership; management and culture; self management; the nature of managerial work; "Human Resource" management; organisation change, innovation and development.

#### **†72.340 Special Topic**

1993: Trade Union Studies

A study of the history and development of trade unions in New Zealand, plus consideration of contemporary issues and challenges for the movement, with guest lectures from labour practitioners.

#### **†72.341 Special Topic**

1993: Industrial Relations in the Post-modern Firm.

#### **†72.342 Special Topic**

1993: Business Culture

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations for MCom and Honours**

#### **72.405 Organisation Development**

#### **72.407 Empirical Study in Labour Relations or Management**

#### **72.410 Research Methods**

#### **†72.411 Special Topic**

1993: The Political Economy of Industrial Relations

#### **72.412 Special Topic**

1993: Business and Culture

#### **72.413 Special Topic**

1993: Work in Post Industrial Society

#### **72.414 Special Topic**

1993: Theories of Human Resource Management

#### **†72.415 Special Topic**

1993: Management of Professionals

#### **72.416 Special Topic**

1993: Contemporary Themes of Women and Organisations.

#### **†72.420 Contemporary Themes in Labour Relations**

#### **72.421 Advanced Organisation Theory and Behaviour**

#### **72.422 Comparative Labour Relations**

#### **72.423 Strategic and Comparative Human Resource Management**

Examination of theoretical development at public policy/societal, industry and firm levels in human resource management. The focus is on the total strategic direction of the firm as articulated with human resource direction and addresses variations in human resource strategies across industries and variations across national boundaries, e.g. North American versus Japanese human resource management models. Public policy issues such as comparative rates of human capital formation and the implications of different approaches to labour market regulation.

### **†72.424 Theories of Human Resource Practice**

The theoretical bases and multi-disciplinary research literature underpinning the practice of human resource management. Topics include the theoretical bases and contemporary research on recruitment and selection, reward management, remuneration, training and development, organisational culture and employee satisfaction and commitment, work systems and design, organisational culture, employee diversity and other pertinent areas of contemporary practice.

#### **72.601 Thesis**

For MCom.

#### **72.603 Research Essay**

For MCom.

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS**

### **Marketing and International Business II**

#### **71.200 Marketing Management**

Study of the principles of marketing management within the framework of the strategic management model. Identification of market opportunities, buyer behaviour, marketing research, segmentation and targeting, and planning the tactical elements of the marketing mix. Examination of relationships between marketing and other business functions.

#### **T71.200 Marketing Management**

As prescribed for 71.200. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **71.201 International Business**

An investigation of the environment within which international companies work; upon this framework is developed an understanding of the rationale and methods of international business. The course places an emphasis upon the formulation of marketing strategies and the particular problems and opportunities of New Zealand companies operating internationally.

#### **T71.201 International Business**

As prescribed for 71.201. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Marketing and International Business III**

#### **71.300 Marketing Strategy**

The capstone course in marketing management, aimed at providing students with the knowledge and skills required by an effective marketing executive assistant. The course utilises the strategic management framework and emphasises experiential learning in marketing measurement and appraisal, preparation of strategies and plans, and analysis of market performance. Students are encouraged to develop further skills for continuing appraisal of marketing theory and techniques. A major practical project is included.

#### **71.301 Consumer Behaviour**

Examination of the behaviour of the consumer through several buyer behavioural models. The following concepts are covered; group influences, including social stratification, reference groups and the family; individual influences, including information processing, learning, attitudes and personality; persuasive communication and its effect on attitudes; decision processes, including problem recognition, search evaluation and post-purchase experience; current research in consumer behaviour. Study of the implications for the practice of marketing management.

#### **71.302 Marketing Research**

The course examines the principles of marketing research and their application to marketing problems. The course will cover research problem definition, research design, data collection, data analysis and reporting.

#### **71.304 Marketing Practice**

Study of marketing practice and management in selected fields of application drawn from: industrial marketing, channel management, international marketing, primary products marketing, advertising and promotions management, marketing services, and retail marketing.

#### **71.310 Stakeholder Analysis and Business Ethics**

Examination of the ethical foundations of strategic management practice. The philosophy and practice of business ethics is

considered in the context of the ethical relationships between any type of organisation and its stakeholders.

**†71.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**†71.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**Marketing and International Business for MCom and Honours**

**71.400 Advanced Marketing**

**71.401 Advanced Buyer Behaviour**

**71.402 Advanced Information Study Technology in Marketing**

**71.403 Research Methods in Marketing**

**71.409 Special Topic**

**71.410 Futures Research**

**71.411 Special Topic**

1993: International Business

**71.412 Special Topic**

1993: Strategic Management

**71.413 Special Topic**

**71.601 Thesis**

**71.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

**26.108 Algebra and Calculus for Commerce**

Algebra and calculus and their application in business and economics: sets; real numbers; integers; matrices; linear algebra including linear functions, equations and inequalities, linear programming; non-linear algebra including non-linear functions, equations and inequalities; limits and continuity; differential calculus of univariate and multivariate functions; integral calculus of univariate functions.

**T26.108 Algebra and Calculus for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.108. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**26.188 Probability and Statistics for Commerce**

Probability and statistics and their application in business and economics: probability axioms; random variable; expected value and variance; probability distribution; Markov processes; decision theory; sampling; descriptive statistics; statistical inference applied to small and large samples; analysis of frequencies; analysis of variance; correlation and regression; time series analysis; use of statistical computer packages.

**T26.188 Probability and Statistics for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.188. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**26.208 Mathematics for Commerce**

Background mathematical skills for third and fourth year Economics, Finance, Marketing Research, and Operations Research. Matrix-vector algebra, multivariable calculus, differential equations, and the use of symbolic computing is discussed with applications to the Commerce subjects listed above and Theoretical Statistics.

**T26.208 Mathematics for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.208. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**26.288 Data Analysis for Commerce**

Computer based analysis of statistical data. Topics include: data collection, exploratory data analysis, multiple regression, analysis of variance, contingency tables, industrial applications of statistics, and forecasting. This paper is very similar to 26.281, but is targeted towards Commerce.

**T26.288 Data Analysis for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.288. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

For further Prescriptions see Index.

---

## MASTER OF TAXATION STUDIES

**01.480 The Impact of Taxation on Financial Reporting and Control**

This course examines the interaction between accounting and

taxation concepts of income and studies the different objectives underlying their measurement together with the associated financial reporting problems. Because taxes are an important form of wealth transfer, it is necessary to review the political and institutional environment while at the same time highlighting the two-way exchange between taxation and financial reporting. Some empirical studies documenting the accounting-taxation interface are looked at. Finally, the course examines the role of taxation in the firm's investment, financing and dividend decisions.

**01.481 Special Topic in Taxation Accounting**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Accounting and Finance.

**02.480 The Tax Base - Definition and Manipulation**

The nature of income, its timing and recognition, its distinction from capital and methods of calculation. Deductions and rebates. The limited role of capital in the existing tax base and the likelihood of its expansion. Tax minimisation in the courts. Statutory responses to tax avoidance. The Commissioner's discretions and appeal and review mechanisms.

**02.481 The Taxation of Corporations and Investors**

The impact of business structures on tax liabilities of business organisations and their members. Trusts, partnerships, joint ventures, groups of companies are considered but the primary focus is on the allocation of the tax burden between companies, shareholders and other investors.

**02.482 Indirect and Asset Based Taxation**

Existing transactional and property taxes such as the Goods and Services Tax and Land Tax. A comparative study of overseas experience with wealth and capital gains taxes and their possible application to New Zealand.

**02.483 Current Developments in Taxation**

Selected in-depth studies of recent or imminent changes in the tax laws. The topics chosen will vary from year to year. Only those areas capable of rigorous academic analysis will be chosen for examination.

**02.484 International Taxation**

Tests of residence for individuals and corporations. The wider tax base for off-shore income of New Zealand residents. Income derived by overseas residents from New Zealand activities. The Double Tax Treaty System. Selecting the country of residence. Anti-avoidance measures directed at transnational activity. The use of tax havens. As well as New Zealand taxation law the course also examines the municipal revenue law of some of our trading partners.

**02.485 Discretions, Disputes and Procedures**

The nature of a tax return and obligations in relation thereto. Commissioner's powers to obtain records and information. Assessments, financial arrangements and determinations. Public law restraints on the Commissioner's powers. The Commissioner's discretions and appeal and review mechanisms. Procedure, evidence and pleading in tax cases. The jurisdiction of the High Court and taxation Review authorities. Recovery of underpaid or overpaid tax.

**02.486 Avoidance Provisions**

An examination of the general and specific anti-avoidance provisions contained in the Income Tax Act 1976 and the Income Tax legislation of other jurisdictions including Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States. An analysis of the structure and function of anti-avoidance provisions and of their relation to the tax system. An analysis of the relationship of statutory and common law responses to tax-avoidance.

**02.487 Special Topic in Taxation Law**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

**02.488 Special Topic in Taxation Law**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

**13.489 Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy**

Desirable characteristics of a tax system. Equity, neutrality, simplicity, public acceptance. Administrative efficiency, responsiveness to economic changes, optimum levels for revenue need. The use of taxation to meet welfare and social goals. The machinery of tax reform.

## BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*. Prescriptions for individual papers may be found in the Prescriptions for the Degrees of BCom,

BE and BSc in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.  
 † Daggered papers may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.  
 "T" prefix - taught at the Tamaki Campus.

## THE NEW ZEALAND SOCIETY OF ACCOUNTANTS

For those students intending a professional career as a Chartered Accountant, in either private practice or commerce, it is possible for a graduate to complete a degree which is recognised by the New Zealand Society of Accountants as meeting their academic requirements for admission, apart from the Business Communication module and the society's final qualifying examination. This arrangement has provided benefits both for the University and the profession. Full details are available from the Department of Accounting and Finance. Those with queries should write directly to the Education Officer, New Zealand Society of Accountants, P.O. Box 11342, Wellington. Exemptions from examinations of the Cost and Management Accounting Division of the New Zealand Society of Accountants are also granted to students who have passed certain degree subjects. Full details are available from the Department of Accounting and Finance.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS DipBus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the course not later than the date prescribed by the Senate for the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol. A candidate who has completed a Diploma in Business in one subject may proceed with permission to attempt the Diploma in Business in another subject.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Business shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and have had not less than two years of employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate, or
  - (b) hold a professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering, Science or other discipline approved for this purpose by the Senate and have had not less than two years of employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate, or
  - (c) have had not less than five years of employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
3. A candidate for this diploma who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any paper the same as or similar to that prescribed under Regulation 6 of this Diploma shall substitute for each paper so credited such additional paper or papers as the Head of Department may approve.
4. A candidate who has completed a Diploma in Business in one subject may not cross credit those papers to another Diploma in Business.

#### Course Requirements

5. A candidate for the Diploma in Business shall be required to:
  - (a) follow a course of study of duration equivalent to not less than one academic year, and
  - (b) pass each of six papers from one of the following subjects:  
 Engineering Management  
 Finance  
 Information Systems  
 Maori Development  
 Marketing  
 \*New Venture Management  
 Operations Management  
 Personnel Management and Employee Relations, and
  - (c) perform laboratory and practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate, and attend workshops as required by the Senate.
6. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of six papers from one of the following subjects.

#### Engineering Management

- \*70.592 Project in Engineering Management  
 \*70.593 Engineering Management in Practice  
 and either (i)  
 two papers selected with the approval of Senate from:  
 Group A  
 \*70.594 Advanced Manufacturing Technology  
 \*70.595 Engineering Project Management  
 70.596 Resource Management  
 \*70.597 Quality Management for Engineers

two papers selected from:

#### Group B

- 70.433 Marketing Management  
 70.554 Services Marketing  
 70.563 Business to Business Analysis and Marketing  
 70.530 Financial Accounting  
 70.426 Financial Management  
 70.583 Management of Quality  
 70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change  
 70.546 Organisational Behaviour  
 70.571 Analysis and Design  
 70.575 Data Communications

One other paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma (not PMER)

or (ii) one paper selected from Group A and three papers selected from Group B.



**Finance**

- 70.426 Financial Management
- 70.532 Investment Analysis
- and four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:
- 70.529 Special Topic in Finance
- 70.530 Financial Accounting
- \*70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance
- 70.533 Risk and Insurance
- 70.534 Case Studies in Finance
- \*70.535 Management of Financial Institutions
- \*70.536 Investment Administration
- 70.537 Property Finance and Investments
- 70.538 International Finance
- 70.539 Business Taxation

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

70.426 and 70.532 are pre-requisites for all other Finance papers, except 70.530.

**Information Systems**

- 70.571 Analysis and Design
- 70.572 Database Management
- and four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:
- 70.570 Programming Languages
- 70.574 Information Systems Project
- 70.575 Data Communications
- 70.576 Advanced Management of Information Systems
- 70.577 Strategic Information Systems
- 70.578 Project Management
- 70.579 Information Systems Control and Security
- 70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

**Maori Development**

- 70.511 Maori Society: History & Resources
- 70.512 Finance and Accounting
- 70.513 Marketing and Management
- \*70.514 Law and Legal Issues
- \*70.515 Entrepreneurship
- \*70.516 A Research Project in Maori Development

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

**Marketing**

- 70.433 Marketing Management
- 70.551 Strategic Marketing
- and four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:
- 70.552 Buyer Behaviour
- 70.553 New Ventures
- 70.554 Services Marketing
- 70.556 Special Topic in Marketing
- 70.558 International Business Management
- 70.559 Special Topic in International Business
- 70.561 Marketing Research
- 70.562 Advertising and Communications Management
- 70.563 Business to Business Analysis and Marketing
- 70.564 Information Technology and the New Marketing
- 70.565 Statistics and Computing for Marketing
- 70.566 Special Topic
- 70.568 Corporate Venturing

One or two papers as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

**\*New Venture Management**

- \*70.553 New Ventures
- \*70.568 Corporate Venturing
- and four papers selected with the approval of Senate from:
- \*70.501 Management of Small Business
- \*70.502 Management of Innovation and New Products or Services
- \*70.503 Finance for New Enterprise
- \*70.504 Internationalisation of Product or Service Marketing
- \*70.505 Information Systems and Control in New Ventures
- \*70.506 New Enterprise and the Law

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma

**Operations Management**

- 70.581 Operations Planning and Control
- 70.582 Management of Service Operations
- and four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:
- 70.578 Project Management
- 70.583 Management of Quality
- 70.584 Project in Operations, Quality, or Technology Management
- 70.585 Strategic Operations
- 70.586 Information Integrated Operations

70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change  
One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

### **Personnel Management and Employee Relations**

- 70.541 Labour Relations
- 70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice
- 70.546 Organisational Behaviour
- and either (a) three papers selected from:
  - 70.523 Equity Issues in Employment
  - 70.543 Organisational Development
  - 70.544 Training and Development
  - 70.545 Strategic Human Resource Management
- \*70.547 Advanced Labour Relations
- 70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change
- or (b) two papers from (a) and
  - 70.522 Labour Relations Project or
  - 70.549 Personnel Management Project

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

7. In exceptional circumstances, Senate may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1992.

---

## **DIPLOMA IN COMMERCE DipCom**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than the date prescribed by Senate for the year in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Commerce shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or such other university degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case, or
  - (b) hold or have qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Commerce approved by the Senate.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate may enrol for the Diploma in Commerce after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree, or the equivalent in such other degree as may be approved by Senate in a particular case, provided that the Diploma will not be awarded until the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce has been completed.
3. Admission to the course of study for the Diploma in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate.

### **Course Regulations**

4. A candidate for the Diploma in Commerce shall be required to:
  - (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
  - (b) pass the examinations in not less than six papers selected with approval of Senate from 200, 300 and 400 level papers in Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business,
  - (c) select at least three papers at 300 or 400 level from one, or with the permission of the Senate more than one, of the subjects Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business,
  - (d) select no more than two of the papers at 200 level.
5. A candidate may with the permission of the Senate take one paper at 200, 300 or 400 level from a degree of this University in a subject not listed in Regulation 4 of this Diploma provided such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to any other paper in this Diploma.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate, no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this course of study.
7. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially equivalent in content to any paper the candidate has passed for another degree or diploma.
8. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
9. The Senate may in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

---

## **DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS**

### **DipBus**

#### **Engineering Management**

##### **\*70.592 Project in Engineering Management**

A supervised project requiring the application of engineering management techniques to investigate and solve a particular problem within the candidate's own organisation or business.

##### **\*70.593 Engineering Management in Practice**

A course dealing with contemporary issues relating to the application of management principles across a range of engineering disciplines. The course will include case studies presented by practising engineering managers and, where

appropriate, site visits.

##### **\*70.594 Advanced Manufacturing Technology**

A course designed to introduce students to the concepts and practice of modern advanced manufacturing technology (AMT). The topics covered will include: Designing for AMT, through the use of concurrent engineering techniques; planning for AMT using computer modelling and simulation; management and control of AMT through the use of knowledge based systems, computer aided engineering, CAD/CAM and computer integrated manufacturing.

##### **\*70.595 Engineering Project Management**

The principles, processes and techniques involved in the management of engineering projects. Topics include: networks

and programming procedures; decision theory; contractual arrangements; statutory approvals; cost control procedures; quality assurance; organisational structures; motivation and conflict avoidance.

#### **70.596 Resource Management**

Management of natural and physical resources including air, land, water, energy, minerals and the built environment. Topics include: resource sustainability; environmental protection, management planning and legislative issues.

#### **\*70.597 Quality Management for Engineers**

Total Quality Management (TQM) is an evolving body of philosophies and techniques developed primarily by industry to create higher quality products and services. This course will consist of topics and case studies illustrating the techniques and applications of TQM in engineering management. Topics will include: planning for quality improvement; strategic tools for TQM implementation; experimentation in service and production industries; the elements of process control; effective use of data; tools for quantitative decision making.

### **Finance**

#### **70.426 Financial Management**

The conceptual framework of modern finance theory and application of that theory to the major decisions facing a corporate financial manager. Particular attention will be given to the topics of capital budgeting, valuation, financial structure and dividend policy. Implications of the theory and evidence for corporate financial decision making are emphasised.

#### **70.530 Financial Accounting**

A broad coverage of the theory, concepts and practice of financial accounting from the perspective of a user of financial statements. The material is oriented to New Zealand practices but important differences with international procedures are noted. This paper is for students with limited or no previous formal training in accounting.

#### **\*70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance**

#### **70.532 Investment Analysis**

An intensive study of the basic concepts and tools of investment analysis. The environment of investment decision making in New Zealand is covered, including international considerations. Financial statement analysis is studied in detail. Efficiency of capital markets, the role of diversification, risk assessment and the relationship between risk and expected return are covered.

#### **70.533 Risk and Insurance**

Risk and insurance are presented as theoretical concepts and then as problems and opportunities facing firms and individuals. Particular emphasis is placed upon the use of financial securities to manage risk. This will include securities available through organised markets or contracted with financial institutions, as well as those designed for a specific circumstance.

#### **70.534 Case Studies in Finance**

The focus of this course will generally be on corporate financial management including cases on management of working capital, raising long-term capital and capital budgeting. The precise content may vary with the changing economic climate, preferences of students and interests of the lecturer.

#### **\*70.535 Management of Financial Institutions**

#### **\*70.536 Investment Administration**

#### **70.537 Property Finance and Investments**

The theory and practice of property finance including the development perspective as well as the investment and management aspects. Regulatory and legal aspects will be discussed. However, the main emphasis will be upon valuation models, investment evaluation and financing issues.

#### **70.538 International Finance**

Analysis of issues arising from business activities in the international economic community. Covers the determinants of exchange rates and foreign investments, characteristics of international financial institutions and markets and the international monetary system.

#### **70.539 Business Taxation**

Analysis of the economic effects of business taxation in the framework of the total tax structure in New Zealand. Implications of taxation for business management and decision making are stressed. International business taxation issues are addressed

although they are not central to the course.

#### **70.529 Special Topic in Finance**

Supervised independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of financial management. The participant will be required to present a detailed investigative report.

### **Information Systems**

#### **70.570 Programming Languages**

An introduction to the procedural component of modern system development methods. Practical assignments of a procedural language are given in conjunction with screen and data-oriented non-procedural facilities. Appropriate applications of each type of language will be discussed. Strengths and weaknesses of current operation systems and computer hardware will be briefly reviewed.

#### **70.571 Analysis and Design**

An appreciation of, and initial experiences in, the attitudes, skills and knowledge required for successful systems analysis and design. A variety of approaches are investigated and applied to a business case. Students will also analyse success and failure in a variety of New Zealand cases in Information Systems.

#### **70.572 Database Management**

An introduction to the key concepts and techniques required for the rational management of data in an organisation. Topics include planning and behavioural issues, data modelling, and the functions provided by common commercial data base management software environments. Extensive "hands-on" experience will be provided using a highly-rated DBMS.

#### **70.574 Information Systems Project**

An in-depth literature study and report on a well-defined subject from the field of Information Systems application in business. Topics associated with students' workplaces are strongly recommended. If desired, students may combine an abbreviated feasibility study with the analysis, design and implementation of a working system. Students consult staff members on an individual basis.

#### **70.575 Data Communications**

Includes both Local Area Networks (LAN) and Wider Area Networks (WAN). Describes the major components of Data Communication systems, including transmission media, terminals and other DC hardware units, link protocols, networks and DS software. Introduces DC design techniques. Networks currently used by New Zealand organisations are presented and discussed.

#### **70.576 Advanced Management of Information Systems**

The paper deals with the management of information systems and technology as it is being practised in organisations today. A broad number of issues are covered including: management of end-user computing, information systems planning, conversion to new technologies, project management and the assessment of systems development productivity.

#### **70.577 Strategic Information Systems**

A framework for corporate level performance and competitive analysis in designing enterprise-wide information systems architectures. Information Systems, strategy and marketing views are synthesised in support of this aim. The framework will be studied in conjunction with Harvard Business School and local cases. Active student participation required.

#### **70.578 Project Management**

Methods of planning programmes and projects. Organisational structures and information management for project teams. Optimising techniques for project plans. Communications, motivational factors and conflict resolution techniques.

#### **70.579 Information Systems Control and Security**

Examination and evaluation of managerial controls over information systems. Discussion of data security issues in business organisations with special emphasis on the New Zealand environment.

#### **70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change**

Models of Technology and Change; Technology and Organisations: from Hawthorne to Robotics; Post-Fordism and the future of work; Japanisation and the Internationalisation of Technology; The Management of Technological Change; Technological Change and Participation.

## **Maori Development**

### **70.511 Maori Society: History and Resources**

A survey of Maori society and economic activity; the uses of Maori land and resources; the interaction of culture and commerce, incorporating a comparison of the Maori experience with those of other indigenous peoples.

### **70.512 Finance and Accounting**

An overview of standard accounting practice and a review of contemporary information technology and systems; an introduction to financial and risk management; an analysis of the types of commercial and information accounting systems utilised by Maori organisations.

### **70.513 Marketing and Management**

An analysis of the nature of Maori enterprise, and consideration of the Maori manager in relation to modern marketing and management practice and theory; the impact of national and international influences; development of ideas about the education and training requirements of Maori enterprises, formulation of options for delivery of such requirements at a variety of educational levels.

### **\*70.514 Law and Legal Issues**

A review of the statutory and regulatory environment as it pertains to Maori resource use and commercial development, with regard to specific legislation and the Maori Land Court; relevant findings, and implications of Waitangi Tribunal negotiations and decisions.

### **\*70.515 Entrepreneurship**

An introduction to market assessment and evaluation of business opportunities; developing a business checklist and presenting a case for finance; incorporating an analysis of successful collective-entrepreneurship models nationally and internationally.

### **\*70.516 Research Project**

A research project related to the candidates own organisation, business background or experience which can be supervised by any of the teaching departments individually or inter-departmentally.

## **Marketing**

### **70.433 Marketing Management**

An introduction to the principles of marketing, the role of marketing in an organisation and the relationship of marketing to other business areas. It also examines the component parts of marketing.

### **70.551 Strategic Marketing**

Procedures for analysing internal competencies and competitive advantages, strategies for growth and development and the management of innovation and new product development. Students will study and apply the techniques for managing a strategic business unit, the development of strategies and the preparation of marketing plans.

### **70.552 Buyer Behaviour**

The study of concepts, theories, models and the practical observation of the process through which consumers and industrial executives make purchasing decisions. The implications of these insights for marketing management practice are studied.

### **70.553 New Ventures**

The study of techniques in the launch of the fast growth stand alone venture. Entrepreneurial approaches to business management, including individual motivation and working in or with small start up teams. Resource constraints and how to handle them (financial, human and technical) are studied.

### **70.554 Services Marketing**

The study of customer defined service quality and the managerial control and communication process explaining service quality gaps; cases and management implications in applied settings.

### **70.556 Special Topic in Marketing**

Supervised independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of marketing. The student will be required to present a detailed investigative report.

### **70.558 International Business Management**

An investigation of the environment within which international companies operate, and an understanding of the rationale and

methods of international business. The formulation of marketing strategies in the international environment.

### **70.559 Special Topic in International Business**

Supervised independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of international business. The student will be required to present a detailed investigative report.

### **70.561 Marketing Research**

The principles of marketing research and their applications to marketing problems. Research problem definition, research design, data collection, data analysis and reporting of results.

### **70.562 Advertising and Communications Management**

A study of the principles of Advertising and Communications including Advertising, Sales Promotion, Public Relations, and Direct Marketing. How these fit into the overall marketing mix and impact on other elements. How to plan and implement a cost-effective promotional mix.

### **70.563 Business to Business Analysis and Marketing**

This course examines aspects of marketing such as the use of numerical analysis in determining the standing of the business in relation to market and competitors. Certain specific aspects of such analysis which are peculiar to the business to business, industrial sector of marketing (as opposed to consumer marketing) will be highlighted.

### **70.564 Information Technology and the New Marketing**

Information Technology (I.T.) is a crucial factor in the development of marketing strategies today. It affects virtually every aspect of running a business. I.T. is now recognised as a principal means of achieving strategic success. Information technologies will cause a revolution in the way marketing will be done in the 1990s. If you want to remain a competitive marketing person you must be aware of these events. This paper will help you do so.

### **70.565 Statistics and Computing for Marketing**

Exploration of statistical data using spreadsheets and other PC computer software. Ways of collecting reliable marketing data and looking at it graphically to expose patterns and exceptions, will be emphasised. Especially useful for those intending to take Marketing Research.

### **70.566 Special Topic**

Details to be advised.

### **70.568 Corporate Venturing**

The study of tools and techniques for the planning, establishing and managing of project groups within or alongside the larger firm. Objectives, performance and likely trends in Corporate New Ventures: process and stage models. Project management skills.

## **\*New Venture Management**

### **\*70.553 New Ventures**

As prescribed for Marketing Management.

### **\*70.568 Corporate Venturing**

As prescribed for Marketing Management.

### **\*70.501 Management of Small Business**

An intensive study of the skills basis for management of a small firm by an owner manager, taking a contingency approach to planning, organising, staffing and directing, setting budgets and monitoring performance (by manual and computer systems), understanding and serving a particular market, selling, giving credit and managing cash flow, detecting and controlling fraud and theft, taking insurance, dealing with the bank, selling the business, and planning for succession.

### **\*70.502 Management of Innovation and New Products or Services**

Specialist study of the measurement of new product or service demand, the management of the process of innovation, the examination of launch strategies for radically new products or services, the management of the diffusion of innovation process, the management of joint ventures and other forms of collaboration, and the management of the sale and licensing of inventions and new ventures.

### **\*70.503 Finance for New Enterprise**

Fundamental principles of financial management and risk management with a specific orientation towards new enterprise. Topics of direct relevance will include start up, bridge, mezzanine and public financing measurement of new venture proposals, funding packages (equity versus debt), cash and cash flow

management, venture capital in New Zealand and overseas, and buy in and buy out strategies from the financial viewpoint.

**\*70.504 Internationalisation of Product and Service Marketing**

Developing international marketing opportunities for small and medium sized firms, from an established base in the domestic market. Strategies for exporting through agents and distributors, establishing offshore marketing branches and subsidiaries, and eventual foreign direct investment in manufacturing. Consideration of joint venturing and licensing arrangements in overseas countries. Review of particular internal capabilities that must be developed. Financing of international developments.

**\*70.505 Information Systems and Control in New Ventures**

The need for and the design of a new firm information base, dealing with information professionals, value of information, timeliness of paperwork and computer systems, management and control issues, budgeting, performance comparisons, inventory management, new venture advantage through the use of information.

**\*70.506 New Enterprise and the Law**

Study by the new venture manager of business formats - limited liability, partnership, own account, joint venture, co-operatives, intellectual property - patents, trademarks, copyright, design marks, protection of confidential information, and the law relating to passing off. Basic principles of Contract Law with particular respect to creditors, customers, and employees.

**Operations Management**

**70.578 Project Management**

Methods of planning programmes and projects. Organisational structures and information management for project teams, optimisation techniques for project plans, communications, motivational factors and conflict resolution techniques.

**70.581 Operations Planning and Control**

Design of information and decision systems for allocating resources and scheduling activities. Topics include inventory control, forecasting, capacity planning, scheduling, material and resource requirements planning, aggregate planning, and integrated manufacturing control systems.

**70.582 Management of Service Operations**

Management of service operations and efficient use of resources in the short term. Topics include service systems taxonomy, customer contact models, service factory concept, service quantity measurement and management, project management, planning and resources allocation in service systems, staffing and work planning, service system design, task sequencing, and shift scheduling.

**70.583 Management of Quality**

Management of quality to gain strategic and competitive advantage. Quality as a management philosophy is stressed throughout the course. Quality management techniques such as Quality Function Deployment, Continuous Improvement and Statistical Process Control will be covered.

**70.584 Project in Operations, Quality, or Technology Management**

A supervised project related to candidate's own organisation or business.

**70.585 Strategic Operations**

Development and implementation of production and service strategies within corporate, business, and other functional strategies of the organisation. Topics include trade-offs in operations objectives and decisions, process positioning, product profiling, focused operations, experience curves and organisation design for operations.

**70.586 Information Integrated Operations**

Study of the role of information technology in operations management including both manufacturing and services industries. The paper will cover customer order entry, manufacturing planning and control, automated material handling, CAD, computer technology and robotics, the development of a CIM strategy. An organisational perspective

will be used throughout the study.

**70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change**

As prescribed for Information Systems.

**Personnel Management and Employee Relations**

**70.522 Labour Relations Project**

**70.523 Equity Issues in Employment**

An introduction to the theory and practice of equity in the workforce. Changing demographic profile of N.Z. labour force and the effective management of this diverse workforce. The experience of women and minority groups and effects on workplace relations. Equal employment opportunity and pay equity legislation, policy development and effects on recruitment, promotion and performance appraisal. Implications for future work practices.

**70.541 Labour Relations**

The study of labour relations. Historical perspectives. Employer and employee organisations. The law of employment and of disputes. Labour market issues. Collective bargaining and conflict. Management, union and government roles and ideologies. Contemporary concerns.

**70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice**

The evolution of the personnel management specialism. Critical contemporary perspectives and issues in personnel strategy. Job design and analysis. Human resource planning. Recruitment and selection. Remuneration and other rewards. Performance planning and appraisal. Introduction to training and development. The management of labour relations.

**70.543 Organisational Development**

The history of Organisational Development, its value bases, methodologies, and relationship to management consultancy. The theory of "interventions". Types of "intervention". Theories of organisational change and growth.

**70.544 Training and Development**

Critical reflection of content, context and process of training and development policy and practice; theoretical underpinnings of education, training and development; examination of issues such as identification of need, evaluation, selection and construction of content, access and equity; training as intentional activity in the management of change - technological innovation, attitudes and relationship in the workplace, critical awareness and emancipatory learning. This course does not provide initial training in programme planning and design.

**70.545 Strategic Human Resource Management**

An analysis of the relationship between strategic management and human resource management in the firm. Strategic management styles and their implications for human resource management. The marketing paradigm and human resource management. The management accounting paradigm and human resource management. Theories of strategic human resource management.

**70.546 Organisational Behaviour**

The foundations of organisational behaviour. Perception and personality. Attitudes to work. Motivation and job satisfaction. Communication and group dynamics. Leadership and power in the workplace. Implication of gender and cultural difference.

**\*70.547 Advanced Labour Relations**

Advanced topics relating to comparative collective bargaining, transnational corporations, industrial democracy, political unionism and supply-side labour relations.

**70.549 Personnel Management Project**

**70.591 Technology, Organisation and Change**

As prescribed for Information Systems.

**DipCom**

See the prescriptions for the BCom and MCom courses. The DipCom is designed as a two-year part-time course, or as a one-year full-time course.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

---

# Faculty of Education

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Faculty of Education	263
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Bachelor of Education	263
	Bachelor of Science Education	264
	Master of Education	264
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Bachelor of Education	265
	Bachelor of Science Education	265
	Master of Education	265
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Educational Psychology	265
	Diploma in Guidance and Counselling	266
	Diploma in Mathematics Education	267
	Diploma in Science Education	267
	Diploma in Special Education	267
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Guidance and Counselling	267
	Diploma in Mathematics Education	267
	Diploma in Science Education	267
	Diploma in Special Education	267

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

The Bachelor of Education (BEd) is a four year degree taught in co-operation with the Auckland College of Education. Students would be enrolled at Auckland College of Education or would have completed in whole, or in part, a Diploma in Teaching.

The Master of Education (MEd) Degree is offered in special areas only. These are Education Administration, Guidance and Counselling, Higher Education, Maori Education, Mathematics Education and Science Education. The Department of Education should be consulted for details of programmes available in any one year.

For additional information see *Faculty of Education Handbook*, the *Calendar of the Auckland College of Education*, and *Departmental Handbooks*.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION BEd

The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Education shall follow a course of study of not fewer than four years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-eight papers.
3. Every course of study for the Degree shall include:
  - (a) seven papers in the subject Education as prescribed for this Degree including three at Stage III;
  - (b) teaching studies, to the equivalent of eleven papers of which two are at 300-level;
  - (c) professional practice, to be counted as the equivalent of three papers;
  - (d) seven papers in a subject or subjects other than Education, as prescribed for other degrees of the University of Auckland, including at least three above Stage I.
4. The course of study of each student shall be subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Education.
5. The Senate, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, may, on the advice of Dean of the Faculty of Education, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### Schedules

6. The papers in Education available for this degree under Regulation 3(a) shall include those set out in Schedule A.
7. Teaching Studies under Regulation 3(b) shall include units in those subjects set out in Schedule B, except that the Dean of the Faculty of Education may waive such compulsory parts of these requirements or modify the options available in the light of the content of the papers the student chooses to attempt under Regulation 3(d); but in no case shall the total value of units under Regulation 3(b) be less than the equivalent of 11 papers.
8. Professional Practice under Regulation 3(c) shall be as prescribed and programmed, on behalf of the Faculty of Education, by the Auckland College of Education.
9. The papers to be attempted under Regulation 3(d) are to be selected by the student on the advice of the Dean of the Faculty of Education and with the consent of the relevant Head of Department of the University from either the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or both of these Schedules, except that the Senate may approve the inclusion of papers of equivalent weighting from other degrees.

Note: A limit may be set on the number of such papers as occur in Group C and Group D of the Schedules for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology that a student may attempt.

#### Schedule A

Paper No.	Title of Paper	Restrictions
14.150	Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms	N14.150
N14.150	Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms	14.150
14.151	Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education	N14.151
N14.151	Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education	14.151

Any Education paper as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and approved by the Senate for inclusion in this Degree.

Note: 'N' prefix - taught at Northland Polytechnic

#### Schedule B

Units in

Subject	Subject Code	Subject	Subject Code
Education	624	Maori Culture and Language	631
Art Education	626	Mathematics Education	625
Cultural Equity	627	Music Education	632
Educational Media	628	Physical Education	633
Health Studies	629	Science Education	634
Home Economics	637	Social Studies Education	635
Integrated Studies	640	Workshop Technology	639
Language and Reading	630		

The above subjects will be taught as units with two units at any level being deemed equivalent to one paper at that level. The 200-level units will have as prerequisites the appropriate 100-level material together with the compulsory Professional Practice I and Language and Reading 630.100. Papers at 300-level will have 200-level prerequisites as specified together with the compulsory Professional Practice II. Normally the progression in any area will be .100; .200; .201 (.202); .300; .301 (.302).

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE EDUCATION BScEd

The Bachelor of Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF EDUCATION MEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Education shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree or have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma, approved by the Senate, and
  - (b) hold or have qualified for the award of a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work, or other approved profession, and
  - (c) have had not less than three years practical experience in that or a related profession.
- Note:** In any one year no more than 12 students will be admitted to the Educational Administration, Higher Education and Mathematics Education options and no more than 15 students to the Folio of Casework. Students will be chosen on academic and professional criteria. Details on these criteria can be obtained from the Department of Education.
2. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department of Education.
3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed four years in duration.
4. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examinations for the papers and a thesis or dissertation or folio of casework prescribed.
5. A candidate for this Degree may not
  - (a) substitute a paper or papers for any paper in which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree;
  - (b) resit any paper for this Degree except as provided in Regulation 11.
6. A candidate for this Degree must include one Stage III paper or one Masters paper in a subject other than Education, unless the Head of Department waives this requirement. The choice of paper will require the Head of Department's approval. A further paper from that or another subject may, with the approval of the Head of Department, be included provided it is at Masters level.
7. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper passed or being taken and obtain credit for both.
8. No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Master of Education if he or she has been awarded a Degree of Master of Arts in Education at this University, except with the permission of the Senate.
9. No candidate who has previously failed this Degree shall enrol a second time without the permission of the Senate.

### Thesis/Folio of Casework/Dissertation

10. Where a thesis or folio of casework is required, the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis or folio of casework or dissertation shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some aspect of Education.
  - (b) The candidate shall present the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation in the year prescribed in the Schedule.
  - (c) The candidate shall submit the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of the Department of Education. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation to the Head of Department of Education. An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis or folio of casework (Exam Regulation 15).
  - (d) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis or folio of casework which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date specified by the examiner and approved by the Senate.

### Honours

11. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis or folio of casework at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or
  - (ii) to sit or resit in the year following all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.
- (c) A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than four academic years shall not be eligible for Honours unless the Senate so decides.
12. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Education, may in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.

## SCHEDULE

### Requirements:

- (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.621) which counts as three papers, or
- (ii) Four papers and a folio of casework (14.626) in the area of guidance and counselling which counts as three papers.
- (iii) Six papers and a dissertation (14.624) which counts as one paper.
- (iv) In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department of Education may permit a candidate who has attempted a thesis or dissertation or a folio of casework to complete the MEd as seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from:

- (a) 14.400 to 14.428, 04.401, 04.402
- (b) 14.450 to 14.459



## (c) Papers in other subjects under Regulation 6.

**Note:** Not all papers in the 14.45x range may be offered in any one year. Prospective candidates should consult with the Department of Education on the availability of particular papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department of Education, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following. A candidate presenting a folio of casework will normally be required to submit it in the year after which papers have been completed. Refer Regulation 3 of these regulations for the deadline for submitting a thesis or dissertation.

**Note:** In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department of Education may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### Faculty of Education

#### Education for BEd

In 1990 the University introduced a four-year Bachelor of Education degree in co-operation with the Auckland College of Education.

##### Schedule A Papers

##### 14.150 Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms

An examination of education issues, particularly of inequality as related to class, gender and ethnicity.

##### N14.150 Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms

An examination of education issues, particularly of inequality as related to class, gender and ethnicity.

##### 14.151 Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education

An introduction to the psychology of human development and learning with special emphasis on New Zealand educational settings.

##### N14.151 Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education

An introduction to the psychology of human development and learning with special emphasis on New Zealand educational settings.

And other papers in education as presented for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

##### Schedule B Papers

As presented by the Auckland College of Education.

Full prescriptions are published by the Auckland College of Education

##### Other papers

As presented for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

### Bachelor of Science Education

The Bachelor of Science Education is an Inter-faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this Calendar.

### Education for MEd and Honours

Four papers and a thesis (14.621) which counts as three papers or four papers and a folio of casework (14.626) in the area of guidance and counselling which counts as three papers or six papers and a dissertation (14.624) which shall count as one paper.

Papers to be selected from

##### (a) Any paper in MA schedule for Education

##### (b) 14.450 Curriculum Design and Development in Science

#### Prerequisite 14.421

A consideration of the major influences on contemporary science curriculum, policy and practice.

#### 14.451 School and Organisational Effectiveness

An examination of various conceptual, policy, and empirical debates involved in the topic of school and organisational effectiveness. There will be a particular focus on the development of models of effectiveness applicable to New Zealand schools and organisation.

#### 14.452 Theory and Process in Educational Administration

A critical examination of the role of the educational administrator in New Zealand.

#### 14.453 Cultural and Group Counselling

A critical examination of the cultural and group dimensions present in counselling activities.

**Note:** In 1993 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1994 in full-time hours.

#### 14.454 A Critical Approach to Higher and Adult Education

A critical examination of selected issues in higher and adult education from a number of theoretical perspectives.

#### 14.455 Teaching and Learning in Higher Education ○

A critical examination of research material in higher education and the implications for teaching and curriculum development.

#### \*14.456 Adult Education and Development □

A critical examination of philosophical, psychological and sociological literature relating to adult education.

#### 14.457 Mathematics Education in Change

A critical examination of theories and recent writing on the way in which mathematics is conceived and communicated, and how this has changed through time and across cultures.

#### 14.458 History, Philosophy and Science Teaching

An examination of the connections between science teaching and the history, philosophy and sociology of science.

#### (c) Any paper in another subject for MA

Any paper as prescribed in Regulation 6 of the MEd Regulations.

#### 14.621 Thesis

(Value 3 papers)

#### 14.626 Casework Folio

(Value 3 papers)

#### 14.624 Dissertation

(Value 1 paper)

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

○ taught in odd numbered years;

□ taught in even numbered years.

'N' prefix - taught at Northland Polytechnic

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### DIPLOMA IN EDUCATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY DipEdPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions:

- Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Educational Psychology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree; and
  - have passed the following four papers in Education as prescribed for the Master of Arts Degree:
    - 14.407 Developmental Psychology
    - 14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling

14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education

14.413 Education of Exceptional Children

or equivalent papers as approved by the Senate; and

- (c) have passed 5 papers in Education and 5 papers in Psychology, including, in each subject, at least 3 papers above Stage I as prescribed for the Bachelor of Arts or Science Degree; and

- (d) the Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this Diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, youth work, or counselling will be required under 1 (d).

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of not less than two years' full-time study nor more than four years' study (whether full or part-time); provided that the latter period may with the permission of the Senate be extended in exceptional circumstances.
3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

#### Part I

Satisfactory participation in and completion of a full-time professional training course including passing each stage of the on-course assessment requirements (16.100).

**Note:** The professional training courses are designed to follow on from the theory introduced in each of the four Masters papers listed in 1 (b). Course prescriptions may be obtained from the Department.

#### Part II

- (a) Satisfactory supervised participation in the work of approved psychological, special educational, and social work services, and in seminars on case work and professional practice (16.200).
- (b) A comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course (16.201).
4. (a) A candidate shall be required to pass each paper or section of each part of the Diploma.
- (b) A candidate who has not passed a section of Part I may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take that section concurrently with work in Part II, in the second year.
- (c) A candidate shall not be permitted to resubmit case work and professional practice material (16.200) nor to resit the oral examination (16.201), more than once.
5. A candidate shall be required to have completed a Master's Degree or an equivalent research study before the Diploma may be awarded.
6. (a) The Diploma may be awarded with Honours.
- (b) A candidate for Honours shall be required, after completing the requirements of Part I and II, to submit a Dissertation (16.604) reporting an advanced study of one of the following types, as approved by the Head of Department:
  - (i) a survey of the literature bearing on a topic relevant to clinical or professional practice; or
  - (ii) an original or replication research study; or
  - (iii) an evaluation of a clinical procedure.
- (c) The Dissertation shall be:
  - (i) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part II; and
  - (ii) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.
- (d) Honours shall be awarded upon the results of the Dissertation but if the Dissertation is not of sufficient standard the Diploma shall be awarded to the candidate without Honours.
7. Under exceptional circumstances the Senate may grant exemption from any of the requirements under Regulations 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

## DIPLOMA IN GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING DipGuid

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Guidance and Counselling shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma:
    - (a) have been awarded or qualified for the award of a degree of a university in New Zealand, or qualified for the award of a university diploma approved by Senate, or hold an appropriate qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or other professional qualification approved by Senate; and
    - (b) have had not less than three years practical experience in that or a related profession; and
    - (c) the Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this diploma.
- Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching personnel work or community counselling will be required under 1 (b).
2. A candidate shall complete a coherent course of study approved by the Head of Department. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

#### Part I

Paper 14.410 and three others selected from the Stage III and Masters papers in Education, not already passed for any other degree or diploma; provided that in exceptional circumstances a candidate may substitute for any or all these papers a course or courses of study approved by the Head of Department.

**Note:** A practicum placement will be associated with papers in Part I.

#### Part II

Preparation and presentation of a folio of casework, 14.501, counting as two papers; together with satisfactory participation in such seminars and related activities as the Head of Department may require.

**Note:** Most students will require 1000 hours or more of face to face counselling work and related activities to attain competence in casework.

3. No more than fifteen students chosen on academic and professional criteria shall in any one year be admitted for Part II.
4. The folio of casework required for Part II shall be:
  - (a) submitted within two years of the year in which the candidate completed Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit; and
  - (b) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.
5. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and to fulfil all requirements for Part II.
6. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION DipMathsEd

The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

## DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE EDUCATION DipSciEd

The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

## DIPLOMA IN SPECIAL EDUCATION DipSpecEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Special Education shall before enrolment for this diploma:
  - have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand, or
  - have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma approved by the Senate, or
  - hold an appropriate qualification in teaching, nursing or other professional qualification approved by the Senate, or
  - have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession approved by the Senate
 and
  - have had not less than three years of teaching experience;
  - have attained a level of competence to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Education sufficient to perform satisfactorily in each paper chosen for the Diploma.
- Note:** An interview will normally be required under 1(d)(ii).
- A candidate shall be required to pursue a course of study for a period of not less than two years and except with the approval of the Senate, shall complete the requirements within four years of first enrolment for the Diploma.
- A candidate for this Diploma who has been credited for another Degree or Diploma with any paper the same as or similar to that prescribed under Regulation 4 of this Diploma shall substitute for each paper so credited such additional paper or papers as the Head of the Department of Education may approve.
- A candidate shall be required to pursue a course of study consisting of two parts. Neither of these parts constitutes a full-time course of study.

### PART I

Three papers: 14.101, 14.203 and 14.571.

### PART II

Four papers: 14.308, 14.311, 14.572 and 14.573.

- A candidate must complete Part I before commencing Part II.

The Research Topic (14.572) will normally be submitted in the final year.

- A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and Part II.
- The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1993.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DipMathsEd

The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty section of this *Calendar*.

### DipSciEd

The Diploma in Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty section of this *Calendar*.

### DipSpecEd

#### 14.571 Curriculum Development in Special Education

An introduction to assessment and curriculum development for children with moderate and severe disabilities using a problem solving and data-based approach.

#### 14.572 Research Topic in Special Education

This paper will provide an introduction to research methods and procedures in special education. The major component of the course will be empirical study of some aspect of special education for children with disabilities. Students will be required to plan a

study, to gather and analyse the research data, and to undertake, and write a report of their findings. This report will be of approximately journal article length, and will be required to be of publishable or near publishable standard.

#### 14.573 Folio of Case-work

Students will be required to plan, execute, and report fully on field-work involving a series of three case-studies, each of which examines a particular individualised teaching programme for a child with disabilities. Students will be encouraged to focus their case-studies on one particular curriculum area. Each case-study report should provide a basis for evaluation the particular teaching programme which has been developed and implemented, and should contain fully documented sections dealing with:

- the particular child's developmental status and learning needs in the curriculum area prior to the onset of the teaching programme,
- a detailed description of the teaching programme,
- a description of the involvement of parents and other professionals in the development and implementation of the programme, and
- an analysis of the progress made by the child concerned.

---

# Faculty of Engineering

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	General Information	269
	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering	269
	Degree of Bachelor of Technology	274
	Degree of Master of Engineering	274
	Research in Engineering	276
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering	276
	Degree of Bachelor of Technology	284
	Degree of Master of Engineering	284
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology	287
	Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology	287
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology	287
	Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology	288
<hr/>		
<b>Certificate Regulations</b>	Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology	288

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## FACULTY OF ENGINEERING

### Bachelor of Engineering (BE)

The Faculty of Engineering offers one undergraduate qualification, the Bachelor of Engineering Degree, which is of four years duration. It is awarded with or without Honours depending on the standard achieved. Within the Faculty there are six departments: Chemical and Materials Engineering, Civil Engineering, Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Engineering Science, Mechanical Engineering and Mining Engineering. Between them these departments offer seven different specialised courses for the BE degree, designed to satisfy the diverse engineering needs of New Zealand. The first year of each course is common to all engineering disciplines; in later years there is more specialisation and the subject matter becomes specific to one degree course only.

The BE degree courses are accredited by the Institution of Professional Engineers New Zealand (IPENZ) and by a number of overseas professional engineering societies. This requires that they are regularly monitored by IPENZ members and by overseas representatives. Because the courses are accredited, graduates can eventually qualify to become professional members of these societies.

### Master of Engineering (ME)

In addition to the Bachelor of Engineering Degree the Faculty offers the Degree of Master of Engineering. Students taking the ME Degree usually take three papers and write a research thesis which has the weight of five papers. An alternative, often preferred by students who are not progressing straight from a BE Degree, is to take eight papers which may include one or more projects. There are also opportunities for students with a good degree in the physical sciences to enrol for a Master of Philosophy Degree in an engineering discipline.

### Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology

### Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology

### Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology

These postgraduate diplomas and certificate are offered to small groups of students who satisfy the entry requirements of the relevant Boards of Studies. The Geothermal Energy Technology courses are organised and taught by the Geothermal Institute of the University of Auckland which is part of the Faculty of Engineering. The Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology is organised and taught in conjunction with the Pulp and Paper Research Organisation of New Zealand.

### Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)

All Departments undertake graduate teaching of the research degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) in accordance with the regulations of the University.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING BE

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering shall be required to:
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than four years, and
  - (ii) pass the four Examinations, and
  - (iii) perform Practical Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering, and
  - (iv) perform Laboratory and Field Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering.
- (b) Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, a candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each of the four Examinations (including an Examination under Regulation 4); so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be taken into consideration. A candidate who has failed to pass any Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers forming part of the Examination; and may in a subsequent year take the remaining papers of that Examination together (subject to Regulation 8) with such papers of the succeeding Examination, if any, as the Senate may permit. The candidate shall then be required to pass a composite Examination under the same conditions as those in this paragraph.

#### Honours

2. The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Concessions

3. The Senate may exempt from the First Examination a candidate:
  - (i) who has reached a satisfactory standard in the Universities Bursaries Examination if the subjects the candidate has taken include Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics with Calculus and Mathematics with Statistics; or
  - (ii) who has reached an exceptional standard in the Universities Bursaries Examination if the subjects the candidate has taken include three of the subjects Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics with Calculus and Mathematics with Statistics; or
  - (iii) who has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not less than 42 credits or its equivalent in any other course of study and attained a satisfactory standard.
4. A candidate for this Degree who:
  - (i) has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or
  - (ii) has completed within two years the examination requirements for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or

- (iii) was permitted to enrol for Stage II or Stage III papers in a subject without first presenting that subject at Stage I and who, if the Stage I papers not taken were included, would have qualified within two years for the Degree of Bachelor of Science; shall be required to pursue a course of study for a period of not less than two years in such papers for the degree as the Senate may prescribe and to pass Examinations in each year in the papers so prescribed for that year, and the following provisions shall apply:
- All papers of the Fourth Examination shall be included in the candidate's course of study but none such in the first year;
  - the candidate shall be exempt from the papers of the First Examination and from such other papers of the degree as are not prescribed under this Regulation.

**Note:** Candidates who have taken papers in the Physical Sciences and obtained good grades can normally expect to complete the BE Degree in two years.

5. A candidate who has by examination qualified with merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering and who has completed all the requirements for the award of that Certificate, may be exempted by the Senate from the First and Second Examinations or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

**Note:** Candidates who have obtained a B pass average on the papers of Stages 3, 4 and 5 of the Certificate can normally expect to be exempted all the papers of the First and Second Examinations.

### Practical Work

6. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Practical Work.

### Laboratory and Field Work

7. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Laboratory and Field Work.

### Prerequisites

8. No candidate may enrol
- for any paper of the Third Examination without having completed the whole of the First Examination;
  - for any paper of the Fourth Examination without having completed the whole of the Second Examination.

### Elective Papers

9. (a) The First Examination and the Fourth Examination shall include elective papers where specified in Regulation 12.  
 (b) A candidate's choice of elective papers shall require approval by the Senate.  
 (c) An elective paper chosen from another degree course shall be of an appropriate weight and academic level. The syllabus for it shall not be the same as or substantially overlap that of any other paper in the candidate's course.

**Note:** (i) Approval of a candidate's choice of elective papers will generally depend on the compatibility of the chosen papers with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, their mutual compatibility and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course.

(ii) An elective paper in the Fourth Examination of this Degree course will be considered equivalent to one Stage II or Stage III paper from the BA or BCom schedules or to 3 credits from Stage II or Stage III papers of the BSc schedule or to 4 credits from subjects of the Third or Fourth Professional Examinations of the BArch Degree course.

(iii) An elective paper in the First Examination of this Degree course will be considered equivalent to one Stage I paper from the BA or BCom schedules or to 6 credits from Stage I papers of the BSc schedule.

### Approval of Courses

10. (a) The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate.  
 (b) The Senate may delegate to the Faculty the power to approve personal courses of study and also the discretionary powers conferred in Regulations 3, 4, 5 and 9 of these Regulations.  
 (c) The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

### Degree Courses

11. The candidate shall follow one of the following degree courses:

Chemical and Materials Engineering  
 Civil Engineering  
 Electrical and Electronic Engineering  
 Engineering Science  
 Mechanical Engineering  
 Metallurgical and Materials Engineering  
 Mining Engineering

### Papers

12. The papers for this Degree are:

### Arrangement:

First half year papers	Full year papers	Second half year papers
<b>First Examination</b>	08.121 Chemistry 26.140 or 26.141 Mathematics 31.144 Physics for Engineering 50.001 Engineering Mechanics and Design Two approved papers from another University course or courses	31.114 Physics
50.002 Introduction to Computing for Engineers		

### Other Examinations

#### Chemical and Materials Engineering Second Examination

50.111 Engineering Design	50.101 General Studies I
51.115 Fluid Mechanics	51.117 Process Thermodynamics II
54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	51.141 Applied Chemistry
51.116 Process Thermodynamics I	
51.121 Materials I	
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I	

First half year papers	Full year papers	Second half year papers
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	51.215 Chemical Reactor Engineering	
	51.221 Materials II	
	51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis	
	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations		51.214 Separation Processes
51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry		53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
	51.322 Materials IIIA	
	51.335 Equipment and Process Design	
	51.361 Project in Chemical and Materials Engineering	
50.201 General Studies II		51.314 Particulate Technology
51.311 Process Control		55.231 Industrial Administration
<b>Civil Engineering</b>		
<i>Second Examination</i>		
	50.111 Engineering Design	
	52.142 Structural Mechanics I	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
	52.112 Civil Engineering Materials	
52.121 Fluid Mechanics I		50.101 General Studies I
52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers		52.151 Surveying
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	52.231 Geomechanics I	
	52.242 Structural Mechanics II	
	52.261 Structural Design I	
	52.272 Transportation Engineering I	
	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
52.222 Fluid Mechanics II		52.292 Environmental Mechanics
52.291 Public Health Engineering		
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
	52.381 Civil Engineering Administration	
50.201 General Studies II		52.395 Resource Management
Three elective papers from the list below:		Three elective papers from the list below:
52.303 History of Engineering		*21.388 Engineering Geology
52.304 Project in Civil Engineering A		52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering B
52.305 Special Topic in Civil Engineering A		52.307 Project in Civil Engineering B
52.321 Engineering Hydrology		52.311 Mechanics and Properties of Materials
52.331 Geotechnical Engineering		52.322 Fluid Mechanics III
52.342 Structural Mechanics III		52.323 Water Resources Engineering
52.363 Structural Design II		52.332 Geomechanics II
52.372 Transportation Engineering II		52.343 Applied Structural Mechanics
52.392 Water Quality Engineering		52.364 Structural Seismic Design
An approved paper from another University course		52.365 Structural Concrete Theory
		52.371 Traffic Systems Design
		52.382 Management Techniques
		52.383 Accounting for Engineers
		52.393 Maritime Engineering
		52.394 Environmental Management
		52.383 Accounting for Engineers
		52.393 Maritime Engineering
		52.394 Environmental Management
		An approved paper from another University course

**Note:** Transitional Provisions, Fourth Examination. For 1993 only, 52.291, Public Health Engineering, must be selected in place of one elective paper.

## Electrical and Electronic Engineering

### *Second Examination*

	53.121 Networks	
	53.181 Digital Electronics & Computer Systems	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
50.112 Graphics		50.101 General Studies I
51.121 Materials I		53.132 Linear Electronics

First half year papers	Full year papers	Second half year papers
53.141 Engineering Electromagnetics		55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE
<i>Third Examination</i>		
51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials	53.204 Electrical Engineering Design	53.251 Transmission Lines & Fields
53.222 Networks & Signals	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	53.271 Control Systems
53.232 Analogue Electronics		53.281 Microcomputer Engineering
53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems		55.231 Industrial Administration
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
50.201 General Studies II	53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering	<i>Four</i> elective papers from list below:
<i>Three</i> elective papers from the list below:		53.305 Special Topic in Electrical & Electronic Engineering B
53.304 Special Topic in Electrical & Electronic Engineering A		53.321 Applied Network Synthesis
53.313 Analytical Techniques in Electrical Engineering		53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design
53.322 Signal Processing		53.343 Advanced Power System Topics
53.342 Power Systems		53.353 Digital Communications
53.352 Communication Systems		53.362 Microwave & Optical Engineering
53.363 Radio Systems		53.371 Advanced Control Engineering
53.382 Software Engineering		53.383 Computer Systems
An approved paper from another University course		53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications
		55.333 Engineering Economics
		An approved paper from another University course
<b>Engineering Science</b>		
<i>Second Examination</i>		
	50.111 Engineering Design	50.101 General Studies I
	54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS	53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
51.121 Materials I		55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I		
55.121 Applied Mechanics		
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	54.221 Computational Techniques I	
	54.241 Continuum Mechanics I	
	54.251 Operations Research I	
	54.291 Engineering Science Design	
54.212 Engineering Mathematics IISA		54.213 Engineering Mathematics IISB
55.224 Vibrations and Control		53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS
55.241 Mechanics of Solids II		55.231 Industrial Administration
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
	54.304 Project in Engineering Science	
	54.341 Continuum Mechanics II	
	54.351 Operations Research II	
50.201 General Studies II		<i>Two</i> elective papers from list below:
<i>Two</i> elective papers from the list below:		54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B
54.301 Special Topic in Engineering Science A		54.315 Engineering Mathematics IIISB
54.312 Engineering Mathematics III SA		54.343 Mechanics of Structures
54.321 Computational Techniques II		54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research
		54.353 Deterministic Methods in Operations Research
		54.361 Control Theory
		One or two approved papers from other University courses.

**Note:** In addition to the papers listed for the Engineering Science Fourth Examination, candidates are required to attend the Engineering Science Laboratory (three hours per week or equivalent), carry out assignments and submit reports, to a required standard.



First half year papers	Full year papers	Second half year papers
<b>Mechanical Engineering</b>		
<i>Second Examination</i>		
51.121 Materials I	50.111 Engineering Design	50.101 General Studies I
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
55.121 Applied Mechanics		55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
55.213 Thermo Fluid Dynamics II	55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I	55.231 Industrial Administration
55.223 Dynamics & Control		55.251 Heat Transfer
55.241 Mechanics of Solids II		55.271 Production Technology
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
	55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering	
50.201 General Studies II	55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II	
<i>Two elective papers from the list below:</i>		
55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics		<i>Three elective papers from list below:</i>
54.313 Engineering Analysis A		55.303 Special Topic in
55.321 Control Engineering		Mechanical Engineering
55.322 Mechanical Vibrations		53.311 Applied Electricity
55.331 Industrial Engineering		55.312 Applied Aerodynamics
55.342 Strength of Materials		55.323 Microprocessors in
55.351 Heat and Mass Transfer		Mechanical Control Systems
One or two approved papers from		55.324 Acoustics
other University courses		55.333 Engineering Economics
		55.334 Manufacturing Technology
		55.352 Applied Thermodynamics
		One or two approved papers from
		other University courses
<b>Metallurgical and Materials Engineering</b>		
<i>Second Examination</i>		
	50.111 Engineering Design	
	51.115 Fluid Mechanics	
51.116 Process Thermodynamics I	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	50.101 General Studies I
51.121 Materials I		51.117 Process Thermodynamics II
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I		51.141 Applied Chemistry
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	51.221 Materials II	
	51.225 Elements of Materials Science	
	51.251 Chemical Processing of Materials	
51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
Operations		55.271 Production Technology
55.241 Mechanics of Solids II		
<i>Fourth Examination</i>		
	51.334 Materials Engineering Design	
50.201 General Studies II	51.362 Project in Metallurgical	
51.311 Process Control	& Materials Engineering	51.324 Materials Engineering
51.323 Materials IIIB		51.326 Non-metallic Materials
51.325 Solid State Materials		55.231 Industrial Administration
<b>Mining Engineering</b>		
<i>Second Examination</i>		
	50.111 Engineering Design	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
51.121 Materials I	56.101 Mineral Engineering	50.101 General Studies I
52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers		55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I		56.215 Bulk Materials Handling
<i>Third Examination</i>		
	52.231 Geomechanics I	
	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
	56.214 Unit Operations in Mining	

First half year papers	Full year papers	Second half year papers
21.314 Introduction to Mineral Deposits		Two elective papers from list below:
56.203 Mineral Processing Technology		21.384 Exploration and Mining
56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation		Geology
		52.394 Environmental Management
		56.215 Bulk Materials Handling
		56.231 Mine Surveying
		56.319 Special Topic in
		Mining Engineering
		56.320 Special Topic in Mineral
		Process Engineering
<b>Fourth Examination</b>		
	56.312 Evaluation and Mineral	
	Economics	
	56.313 Mine Design	
	56.315 Project in Mining Engineering	
21.381 Advanced Mining Geology		55.231 Industrial Administration
50.201 General Studies II		Two elective papers from list below:
56.314 Rock Mechanics		52.394 Environmental Management
56.317 Mine Production Engineering		56.319 Special Topic in Mining
		Engineering
		56.320 Special Topic in Mineral
		Process Engineering

Note: \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### Savings and Transitional Provisions

13. Civil Engineering Fourth Examination for 1993 only, 52.291 Public Health Engineering, must be selected in place of one elective paper.
14. These Regulations shall govern the course of every candidate; but any candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1990 shall be credited for the purpose of these present Regulations with such papers as the Senate may determine.
15. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1991.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY BTech

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ENGINEERING ME

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering shall:
  - (a) before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering; and
  - (b) follow a course of study of not less than one year.
2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:
  - (a) pass in each of eight papers where those papers do not include Project D; or
  - (b) pass in Project D and six other papers; or
  - (c) (i) pass in each of three papers, and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as equivalent to five papers).

### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of his or her Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the Degree are:
    - (i) 50.401 Project A1                      50.402 Project A2
    - 50.411 Project B1                      50.412 Project B2
    - 50.421 Project C1                      50.422 Project C2
    - 50.431 Project D (value 2 papers)

Note: Not all of the following papers will be available in a given year.

- 51.411 Advanced Process Control
- 51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar
- 51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering
- 51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar
- 51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering
- 51.421 Advanced Materials
- 51.422 Materials Seminar

- 51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering
- 52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A
- 52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B
- 52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar
- 52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar
- 52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics
- 52.423 Coastal Engineering

- 52.424 Advanced Water Resources
- 52.431 Earthquake Engineering
- 52.432 Geomechanics Seminar
- 52.433 Applied Geomechanics
- 52.434 Earth Structures
- 52.441 Structural Dynamics
- 52.442 Structures Seminar
- 52.443 Structural Analysis
- 52.444 Space Structures
- 52.451 Environmental Law
- 52.461 Structural Design
- 52.471 Traffic Engineering
- 52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar
- 52.473 Transportation Planning
- 52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis
- 52.475 Highway Operations and Evaluation
- 52.481 Project Management A
- 52.482 Case Studies in Project Management
- 52.483 Project Management B
- 52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar
- 53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A
- 53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B
- 53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C
- 53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems
- 53.441 Heavy Current Electronics
- 53.451 Digital Signal Processing
- 53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication
- 53.461 Electromagnetic Theory
- 53.471 Advanced Control Systems
- 53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques
- 54.401 Studies in Engineering Science
- 54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics
- 54.421 Finite Element Methods
- 54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation
- 54.423 Advanced Linear Optimization
- 54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A
- 54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B
- 54.451 Studies in Operations Research A
- 54.452 Studies in Operations Research B
- 54.455 Advanced Systems Analysis A
- 54.456 Advanced Systems Analysis B
- 54.461 Studies in Control Theory
- 54.481 Geothermal Modelling
- 54.491 Bio-Engineering
- 55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering
- 55.411 Fluid Dynamics
- 55.412 Aerodynamics
- 55.413 Wind Engineering
- 55.422 Mechanical Control Systems
- 55.434 Computer Integrated Manufacturing and Robotics
- 55.435 Computers in Manufacturing
- 55.441 Mechanics of Materials
- 55.442 Vibrations
- 55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines
- 55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design
- 55.471 Production Technology
- 55.472 Metal Forming
- 55.491 Computational Fluid Dynamics and Numerical Heat Transfer
- 55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer
- 56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing
- 56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering
- 56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering
- 56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation
- 56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics
- 86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology
- 86.402 Geothermal Production Technology
- 86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation

(ii) Those papers approved by the Head of Department from any of those offered at Fourth Examination level for the BE Degree.

(iii) Subject to the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned, one or two papers chosen from those offered in any other Faculty at the final-year undergraduate level or the Master's level provided:

- (a) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and
- (b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any paper prescribed for this Degree, and
- (c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an Engineering paper.

#### **Project Work**

- 4. (a) No candidate shall take:
  - (i) Project A1, A2, B1, B2, C1, C2 or D if he or she submits a thesis for this Degree;
  - (ii) more than one of the Projects A1, A2, B1, B2, C1 or C2 if Project D is also taken;
  - (iii) both Projects A1 and A2, or both Projects B1 and B2, or both Projects C1 and C2.
- (b) A candidate who takes Project D must submit the project report not later than twelve months after enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.
- (c) A candidate who takes Project A1, B1 or C1 must submit the project not later than the first day of lectures in the second half-year of the year in which the project is taken. A candidate who takes Project A2, B2 or C2 must submit not later than 30 November of the year in which the project is taken. An extension of time may, in exceptional circumstances, be approved by the Senate.

#### **Thesis**

- 5. The following conditions apply to the thesis (50.601):
  - (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of the Department.
  - (b) The investigation shall be carried out personally by the candidate at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff; provided that:
    - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
    - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine.
  - (c) (i) The supervisor shall be the principal examiner.  
 (ii) The Senate acting on the advice of the Head of the Department shall appoint either an external assessor or a second internal examiner.
  - (d) At the discretion of the Head of the Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis, which shall take place within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances approve.
  - (e) If the supervisor with the consent of the assessor or second examiner as the case may be so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.
  - (f) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than 18 months, or if he or she is a part-time candidate not later than 36 months, after the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

#### **Classes of Pass**

- 6. The Degree of Master of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.
- 7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

## RESEARCH IN ENGINEERING

Facilities are available for research by PhD students and postdoctoral fellows in each of the Departments of Engineering in a wide range of topics.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the Honours Degree qualifying a PhD student for registration need not necessarily be one in Engineering. Graduates with a good Honours Degree in Physics, Chemistry, or Mathematics, for example, could be considered for registration in Engineering.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### BE

#### 08.121 Chemistry

#### 21.314 Geology

#### 21.381 Geology

#### \*21.382 Geology

#### 21.384 Geology

#### \*21.386 Geology

#### \*21.388 Geology

#### 26.140 Mathematics

#### 26.141 Mathematics

#### 31.114 Physics

#### 31.144 Physics for Engineering

Geology papers  
for Mining  
and Civil Engineering

Refer to Science Degree Prescriptions for prescriptions for the above papers.

#### 50.001 Engineering Mechanics and Design

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. One lecture and two design office hours per week, second half-year) Concepts of statics, dynamics, equilibrium. Free body concepts, frameworks, velocity and acceleration in planar mechanisms, equations of motion, motion of particles in 2 and 3 dimensions, rigid bodies, rotation. Work and Energy. Use of vectors to illustrate force equilibrium, kinematics of simple mechanisms. Views, sections, developments. Elements of Design - stress, deformation. Materials selection. Allowable loads, factors of safety. Design exercises.

This paper will also include three general lectures on Engineering.

#### 50.002 Introduction to Computing for Engineers

(One lecture and two laboratory hours per week. First half-year) Introduction to computer programming, keyboard use including word processing, the Pascal language, algorithms and structured program design, applications to engineering systems.

#### 50.101 General Studies I

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A course that considers aspects of human development; origins, societies, politics, human nature, and creativity.

#### 50.111 Engineering Design

(One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week) The elements of engineering draughting and graphics. Introduction to the application of mechanics to the design of mechanical and structural components.

#### 50.112 Graphics

(One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year)

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics and an illustrative design application.

#### 50.201 General Studies II

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

A course that gives some insights into the problems of contemporary society. Economic, ecological, social and resource constraints affecting the work of the engineer are examined as is the impact of technology and engineering on the environment and the future of society.

#### 51.115 Fluid Mechanics

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week, first half-year. Three lectures and one tutorial per fortnight, second half-year)

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow-measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery. Incompressible Newtonian flow; turbulent flow; pumping and piping networks. Non-Newtonian fluid flow. Multiphase flow.

#### 51.116 Process Thermodynamics I

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year)

The first law of thermodynamics. Material balances with and without chemical reactions and with re-cycle. Energy balances in reacting and non-reacting systems. Simultaneous mass and energy balances.

#### 51.117 Process Thermodynamics II

(Five lectures and three tutorials per fortnight. Second half-year) The second law of thermodynamics. Classical chemical thermodynamics including the concept of chemical potential, fugacity and activity; their applications to reacting systems. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles, and flow processes.

#### 51.121 Materials I

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Mechanical properties and testing of engineering materials; atomic and structural aspects; deformation and strengthening mechanisms; annealing; working processes; temperature dependent properties of materials; microstructures; solidification and phase equilibria; heat treatment; non-destructive testing; corrosion; non-metallic materials including polymers, wood, ceramics and concrete.

#### 51.141 Applied Chemistry

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Molecular structure including the structure of atoms, bonding and motion of molecules, forces between molecules. Applied physical chemistry including the physical chemistry of interfaces, solid surfaces and adsorption. Surface and colloid chemistry, surfactants, micelles, stability or emulsions, flocculation, froth flotation and wetting. Kinetics and reaction mechanisms. Heterogeneous catalysts, physico-chemical methods of analysis, UV, IR, AA and NMR spectroscopy. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

#### 51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Heat transfer via steady-state conduction, convection and radiation. Conduction through simple shapes and composite materials. Forces and natural convection. Dimensionless correlation of heat transfer processes with flow processes. Film and overall heat transfer coefficients. Heat transfer with phase change. Film and dropwise condensation. Nucleate and Film boiling of liquids. Heat transfer to particulate solids. Radiation emission. Absorption, reflection and transmission. Radiation exchange in systems of simple geometry. Heat exchanger thermal design. Mass transfer via equimolar diffusion, diffusion through a stagnant gas. Interphase mass transfer theory; mass transfer coefficient, overall coefficient, transfer units.

#### 51.214 Separation Processes

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

General principles of continuous processes. Equilibrium stages, stagewise analysis and cascades. Differential contact processes applied to packed tower. Characteristics of packed columns and stagewise contact processes; pressure drops, flooding and loading. Studies in depth of selected separation processes such as absorption, adsorption, crystallisation, ion exchange. Simple batch and continuous distillation processes. Liquid-liquid and solid-liquid extraction. Evaporation including evaporator types, sizing and performance. Drying mechanisms, drying equipment and the application of drying curves. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

#### 51.215 Chemical Reactor Engineering

(Two lectures and one third tutorial per week)

A review of thermodynamics; thermodynamics of solutions; various stability zone diagrams. The constraints thermodynamics and kinetics place on reactions, the effect of temperature and pressure on equilibria and rates. Batch, continuous stirred tank and plug flow reactors as they apply to homogeneous reactions. Adiabatic, isothermal and varying temperature conditions. Recycle in reactor

engineering. Limitations of idealised models and the use of the residence time analysis. Heterogeneous reactions and catalysis. Reactor engineering for biological systems and applications of biochemical engineering to selected process industries. Electrochemical reactor engineering.

#### **51.221 Materials II**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Kinetics of metallurgical reactions; diffusion, point defects, nucleation and growth, annealing. Imperfections and plastic flow and dislocation theory. Mechanical behaviour of materials; X-ray diffraction. Corrosion and oxidation degradation of materials.

#### **51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Free electron theory; zone theory; electron conduction in metals and alloy. Theory of semiconductors. Semiconducting materials. Superconductivity. Electron emission. Dielectric processes. Magnetic processes. Optical processes. Thermo-electricity.

#### **51.225 Elements of Materials Science**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

A treatment of modern metallographic methods including optical and electron optical techniques such as TEM and SEM: Interpretation of images, macro and micro structures, quantitative metallography, fractography. Modern analytical techniques such as spark emission, EDAX, Auger, SIMS, etc. X-ray diffraction theory and applications. Crystallography. Phase diagrams. Thermodynamics of crystals. Defects in crystals, shear deformations and work hardening. Solid state transformations; diffusion, kinetics, precipitation, eutectoid reactions, shear transformations, effect of alloying. Thermomechanical treatments. Commercial heat treatments. Creep mechanisms. Wear.

#### **51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis**

(One lecture and one tutorial, one drawing office per week)

Flow sheets and line diagrams, standard symbols and conversions. Presentation of information via mass and energy flow sheets. Numerical methods for material and energy balancing including degrees of freedom analysis. Use of charts. The process industries: raw materials and resources, recovery and recycle. Energy sources, conversion and conservation. Products and choice of process routes. Strategies for process synthesis: heuristics morphological analysis, functional analysis. The generation and screening of alternatives. Case studies in process analysis and synthesis. Elementary profitability calculations. Introduction to process modelling and simulation. Use of computer-aided-process-design packages for process material and energy balancing, flow-sheet development and economics.

#### **51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Organic reaction mechanisms; nucleophilic and electrophilic reagents and reactions, types of reaction, substitution, elimination and rearrangement. Petrochemistry and selected organic synthesis based on natural gas, as building blocks. Characteristics of important organic unit processes. Introductory biochemistry. Carbohydrates, proteins and enzymes. Structure and classification of micro-organisms; growth; metabolism and nutrition. Biochemical processes and the kinetics of enzyme catalysed reactions.

#### **51.251 Chemical Processing of Materials**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Thermodynamics and its application to equilibrium involving multi-component solutions such as polymers solutions, liquid metals and slags. Use of diagrams to represent zones of stability or likely reaction. Surface excess properties; phase equilibria and phase diagrams. Fuels and combustion. Aspects of hydrometallurgy. Kinetics of interphase transfer in metallurgical systems with examples associated with selected extractive metallurgical processes. Aspects of reactor design. Electrochemical engineering applied to extractive processes.

#### **51.311 Process Control**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Dynamic modelling of linear open-loop systems; transfer functions; Linear closed-loop systems; analysis and control; control theory; stability analysis using root-locus and frequency response methods. controller tuning; industrial application with simple and complex control systems.

#### **51.314 Particulate Technology**

(Four lectures per week. Second half-year)

A course on particulate technology, including characterisation of particles; fluid dynamics; analysis of separation processes; separation mechanisms; size reduction; particle size measurement; sedimentation; fluidisation; conveying; filtration; packed beds; solid/solid separations; gas cleaning; agglomeration; storage; atomisation; mixing.

#### **51.322 Materials IIIA**

(Three lectures per week, first half-year. Two lectures per week, second half-year)

Deformation processing. Solidification and casting. Joining. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys. Surface properties of materials; treatment of metal surfaces. The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Plastics in chemical engineering plant. Properties of ceramic materials.

#### **51.323 Materials IIIB**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Deformation processing; forging, rolling, drawing, extrusion, etc. Defects. Solidification and casting: theory and application. Joining: Adhesive, soldering, brazing, welding methods. N.D.T. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys: steels, cast irons, alloy steels, tool steels, stainless, nickel alloys, aluminium alloys, copper alloys, zinc and other alloys. Selection and specification of materials.

#### **51.324 Materials Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Advanced aspects of mechanical behaviour including fracture mechanics. Failure analysis. Advanced topics in primary and secondary materials processing. Further topics on materials joining. Surface properties of materials and treatment processes. Advanced structure and properties of metals and alloys including process treatment.

#### **51.325 Solid State Materials**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

A course dealing with the theory of metals and non metals. Conduction in metals, alloys and semiconductor materials. Superconductivity. Dielectric processes and materials. Magnetic processes.

#### **51.326 Non Metallic Materials Engineering**

(Four lectures per week. Second half-year)

The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Temperature dependence and transition from rubbery to glassy states. Analysis and identification of polymers. Degradation and stabilisation of polymer systems. Fabrication processes. Polymers in engineering. Ceramics: Ternary phase diagrams, raw materials, properties of clay-water systems, structure, microstructure, mechanical and thermal properties, glasses, concrete, bricks. Composites. Carbon and carbon technology.

#### **51.334 Materials Engineering Design**

(One lecture, one drawing office hour, first half-year. One lecture, two drawing office hours, second half-year)

Design of a process route for the fabrication of a metallurgical or materials product or the refining of metals and materials. Detailed consideration will be given to particular items of plant within the process route.

#### **51.335 Equipment and Process Design**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. One lecture and five tutorials per week, second half-year).

Materials for construction of equipment. Role and uses of codes and standards. Principles and design consideration of multicomponent distillation. Design of pressure vessel and selected process equipment. Use of CAD packages. Plant layout. Utilities and environmental considerations. Safety and loss prevention. Hazard analysis. Waste disposal and pollution control. Briefing professional teams during construction. Plant start-up and shut-down. Economics of processing.

A single design project undertaken by students working in groups.

#### **51.361 Project in Chemical and Material Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

#### **51.362 Project in Metallurgical & Materials Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Material Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

**52.112 Civil Engineering Materials**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Properties and testing of civil engineering materials. Elements of Materials Science. General principles of the metallurgy of iron and steel. Concretes. Structural timber. Structural steels and reinforcement. Protection systems. Welding. Plastics. Adhesives.

**52.121 Fluid Mechanics I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year)

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

**52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers**

(Three lectures per week and 15 hours laboratory. First half-year)

Principles of physical and structural geology. Elementary stratigraphy. Applied geomorphology. Geologic surveying and mapping. Elementary seismology; microzoning and seismotectonic hazard evaluation. Engineering properties, description and identification of geologic materials. Geology of water supply and the general applications of geology to engineering.

**52.142 Structural Mechanics I**

(Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Appreciation of structural systems. Analysis of statically determinate structures. Elementary elasticity, stress, strain, Mohr's circle, material models, failure theories. Flexural stresses and deformations in beams. Deflections of determinate structures. Plastic analysis of frames. Stability of columns. Shear stresses in beams. Torsion of thin walled sections.

**52.151 Surveying**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to land surveying theory and practice for Civil Engineers. Principles of typical surveying equipment and of its operation and application.

**52.222 Fluid Mechanics II**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year.)

Modelling and similarity. Pipe flow: laminar and turbulent flow, fluid resistance, simple pipe flow and minor losses, steady-state pipe flow and pipe networks. Turbomachinery, pumps, turbines, cavitation. Open channel flow: energy and momentum, uniform flow and flow resistance, backwater analysis, channel structures and transitions.

**52.231 Geomechanics I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Nature and classification of soils. Physical properties of soils and rocks: density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, strength. Fluid flow in soils. Consolidation theory. States of stress in earth masses. Settlement analysis. Stability problems: bearing capacity, slope stability, earth pressures on retaining structures.

**52.242 Structural Mechanics II**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Analysis of statically indeterminate structures. Moment distribution. Introduction to matrix methods of analysis. Approximate methods. Lateral buckling of beams. Structural dynamics and earthquake effects. Introduction to theory of elasticity, plate flexure and stability, yield line theory.

**52.261 Structural Design I**

(Two lectures and two hours design office per week)

An introduction to structural design using timber, reinforced concrete and structural steel.

**52.272 Transportation Engineering I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Transportation technology and its impact on land development and the economy. Highway location and alignment geometrics. Aesthetic and other impact considerations. Setting out and earthwork volumes. Pavement design and road materials. Construction techniques. Highway capacity and levels of service. Street network planning, land subdivision and parking design. Basic analyses of traffic flow at intersections and signal control design. Driver characteristics related to road safety.

**52.291 Public Health Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Water use, supply and treatment. Urban drainage. Waste-water treatment and disposal. Water pollution control. Solid waste management. Air pollution control. Planning and environmental factors relevant to provision of public health engineering works.

**52.292 Environmental Mechanics**

(Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year)

The atmosphere, lakes, rivers, estuaries and the ocean. Laminar and turbulent flow. Diffusion and the dispersion of pollution. Sewer outfalls and cooling water outlets. Groundwater engineering and pollution. Landfill engineering. Erosion and land instability. Sediment movement in rivers and on coasts.

**52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering B**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.303 History of Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Contributions of Egyptian, Greek and Roman civilisations to theory and practice of engineering.

The Renaissance, building in timber and masonry, beginnings of the Quantitative Method.

Seventeenth and eighteenth century European engineering. The rise of the sciences. The canal era. The Industrial Revolution. The railway era. Twentieth century engineering - the road and road vehicle era. Communications. The computer revolution.

There are requirements to complete the reading of sections of a booklist. In particular, selected biographies must be included. An emphasis in the course is on people-related matters, biographical material and questions of motivation. Where possible, original source material is referred to.

An individual project contributes one-third of the course credit.

**52.304 Project in Civil Engineering A**

(First half-year)

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff. No final examination: grade assessed on project report and half year's work.

**52.305 Special Topic in Civil Engineering A**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.307 Project in Civil Engineering B**

(Second half-year)

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff. No final examination: grade assessed on project report and half year's work.

**52.311 Mechanics and Properties of Materials**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection of topics from the following:

Elasticity and plasticity; experimental methods; beams, plates and shell theory; stability of structural sections, analysis of joints; shear walls and deep beams; civil engineering materials; further material on traditional materials as well as information on modern advances.

**52.321 Engineering Hydrology**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First-half year)

Introduction to engineering hydrology, precipitation, interception, transpiration, infiltration, surface runoff, groundwater flow. Hydrographs. Storage. Flood estimation and routing. Introduction to river engineering. Fluvial sediment transport.

**52.322 Fluid Mechanics III**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Fluid mechanics and hydrodynamics, solution of fluid flow problems in two and three dimensions. Irrigation and drainage. Unsteady flows in pipelines, water hammer. Floods and waves in rivers and channels. Computational hydraulics.

**52.323 Water Resources Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection from the following: Introduction to synthetic hydrology. Reservoir capacity and yield analysis. Flood control and design of flood control structures; spillways, gates and outlet structures. Hydro-electric engineering. Urban drainage. Water resources systems engineering. River engineering and river control. Loose boundary hydraulics. Bridge hydraulics.

**52.331 Geotechnical Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Site investigation. Application of engineering geology. Foundation engineering: selection; design; construction. Problems associated with house foundations. Foundation instrumentation and observed performance. Geotechnical processes, compaction. Applications of rock mechanics.

### **52.332 Geomechanics II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection from the following:

Further strength and stress strain properties of soils and rocks. Numerical methods applied to steady and transient fluid flow in soils. Soil dynamics applied to earthquake engineering and foundation vibrations. Earth and rock fill dams: design and construction. Soil structure interaction: beams on elastic foundations, laterally loaded piles, flexible bulkheads, tunnels, culverts, conduits and silos: design loadings. Reinforcement of soil and rock masses. Computer-oriented design methods.

### **52.342 Structural Mechanics III**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Matrix methods of structural analysis with applications to two and three dimensional structures. Theory of elasticity and applications. Variational principles of mechanics.

### **52.343 Applied Structural Mechanics**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Dynamics of multi degree of freedom structures with applications to seismic design. Studies on the analysis and design of selected structural systems such as eccentrically and concentrically braced frames, moment resisting frames, box girders, thin walled sections, suspension and cable stayed bridges, tension and membrane structures, folded plates, tanks, silos, domes, arches and towers.

### **52.363 Structural Design II**

(Two lectures and one two hour design office per week. First half-year)

The design of reinforced concrete and structural steel with an emphasis on continuity in structures. An introduction to seismic design.

### **52.364 Structural Seismic Design**

(Two lectures and one two hour design office per week. Second half-year)

The design of multi-storey structures in seismic zones.

### **52.365 Structural Concrete Theory**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

An introduction to prestressed concrete as related to bridge structures and the design and detailing of concrete bridges for seismic resistance.

### **52.371 Traffic Systems Design**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Signal timing and capacity analysis, area control. Channelisation. Local area traffic management and calming techniques. Delay and capacity models, introduction to queueing theory and simulation. Transportation planning modelling. Impact studies. Town planning legislation. Vehicle operating costs and benefits. Economic appraisals.

### **52.372 Transportation Engineering II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Operational, economic and environmental assessment of transport projects, techniques and procedures. Rehabilitation techniques and pavement management systems. Road safety investigation and prevention techniques.

### **52.381 Civil Engineering Administration**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

An introduction to financial, legal and managerial principles, and their application to problems in civil engineering management. Systems approach to decision making. Topics related to professional engineering practice.

### **52.382 Management Techniques**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to project planning and the making and implementation of decisions.

### **52.383 Accounting for Engineers**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

An introduction to the principles of accounting practice.

### **52.392 Water Quality Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Chemistry and microbiology of water. Unit operations and process design in water and waste-water treatment. Engineering

management of natural water quality.

### **52.393 Maritime Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Waves, tides and currents. Wave forces. Wave structure interaction. Floating structures. Offshore structures. Pipeline design and construction. Coastal processes. Ports and harbours. Breakwaters.

### **52.394 Environmental Management**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Ecology and engineering; global environmental issues; New Zealand environmental issues; environmental legislation and administration; environmental planning processes; integration of environmental assessment into engineering projects; case studies.

### **52.395 Resource Management**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Management of natural and physical resources including air, land, water, energy, minerals, and the built environment. Resource sustainability, environmental protection, management planning and legislative issues.

### **53.111 Electrical Engineering IG**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

An introductory course, with principal emphasis on electric circuit theory and electronics.

### **53.121 Networks**

(Two lectures in the first half-year, one in the second half-year and one tutorial per week)

Basic network theory and network theorems. Signal waveforms. Network response. Introduction to single and three-phase A.C. circuits. A.C. bridges.

### **53.132 Linear Electronics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Biasing BJTs and FETs, SOAR curves, hybrid  $\pi$ -circuits,  $h$  and  $y$  parameters, active circuit analysis, operational amplifiers - biasing, simple low-pass all-pass and high-pass filters, feedback amplifiers, frequency response of linear amplifiers.

### **53.141 Engineering Electromagnetics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Review of electromagnetic theory. Magnetic materials and their properties with D.C. and A.C. excitation. The magnetic circuit. The single phase transformer.

Introduction to electrical machines.

### **53.181 Digital Electronics and Computer Systems**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Digital electronics: decision elements, basic logic, logic memory elements, logic families, sequential logic systems. Computer systems: Finite state systems, microprocessor systems, mathematical operations, operations on analogue signals, microprogramming.

### **53.204 Electrical Engineering Design**

(Three hours per week)

Electric wiring conventions. Regulations, standard and codes. The protection of circuits and equipment. The properties and selection of materials. Thermal design. Reliability of circuits and systems. Printed circuit techniques. Electromagnetic shielding. Computer-aided circuit analysis.

### **53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Electronic devices, small signal amplifier theory. Analogue computing systems, simulation. Electronic logic elements, digital systems, digital arithmetic, microprocessor operation. Hybrid computation.

### **53.222 Networks and Signals**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Bridge circuits; resonance,  $Q$ , gain bandwidth considerations, tuned coupled circuits; Laplace transforms; pole-zero diagrams and applications; Two Port coupling networks; filter design using Image Parameters, frequency and impedance transformation; filter design using appropriate methods; active filter design. Signal levels and logarithmic units, signal spectrum and transmission in band limited channels, modulation techniques, electrical noise.

### **53.232 Analogue Electronics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Noise, bandwidth, power amplifiers, switching circuits, thyristors, power supplies, linear and switched mode, non-linear operational amplifier circuits, multipliers, dividers, log amplifiers, analogue-digital and digital-analogue conversion, sample-and-hold.

**53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)  
Multi-circuit and polyphase transformers. Motor starting and speed control. Power electronics. Synchronous machines; infinite busbar operation; load sharing; stability. Elements of power supply systems.

**53.251 Transmission Lines and Fields**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)  
Vector analysis revision; static fields; the electric field and materials; field varying in time; Maxwell's equations; electromagnetic waves; Poynting's theorem; skin effect. Transmission lines with distributed constants; surges on lines; AC lines; standing waves, resonance and antiresonance; Smith chart; common transmission lines, parameters, higher order modes; high frequency lines, communication lines and high power lines. Introduction to antennas and radio systems.

**53.271 Control Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Introduction to linear control systems, speed control, positional servos, process control, three term controllers, the off-set problem, closed-loop stability. Design methods based on Bode, Nyquist and Nichols plots. Root locus methods. State-space representation of dynamic systems. State variable feedback.

**53.281 Microcomputer Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)  
Central processor architecture, memory systems, input-output, system buses, assemblers and assembly language programming, development systems, real-time industrial control using microprocessors, examples

**53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering**

(Six hours per week in the first half-year, seven in the second half-year)

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

The report shall carry the weight of three papers.

**53.304 Special Topic in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A**

(Three hours per week. First half-year)  
An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**53.305 Special Topic in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B**

(Three hours per week. Second half-year)  
Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**53.311 Applied Electricity**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
A course on electrical and electronic components and circuits leading to the study of industrial instrumentation, control systems and application of electrical energy.

**53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)  
(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

The study of a number of advanced mathematical techniques appropriate to the broad field of electrical engineering applications.

**53.321 Applied Network Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Passive Network Synthesis: Filter concepts and Network Functions. Review of approximation techniques including Butterworth, Chebyshev, Elliptic and Bessel approximations. Frequency transformations. Foster and Cauer synthesis. Synthesis of singly and doubly terminated LC networks. Design of LC filters using filter tables.

Active Filter Synthesis: Basis of active filter synthesis. Single amplifier Biquad circuits. The 3 amplifier Biquad. Gyrators and generalised Immittance Converters. Multiple feedback filter structures. Sensitivity considerations. The effects of finite operational amplifier bandwidth on filter performance. Allpass circuits and delay equalisation. Constant phase difference networks. Operational simulation of LC ladder networks. Switched capacitor filters.

**53.322 Signal Processing**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Analysis and processing of continuous signals. Quantitative and statistical treatment of signal distortion, random signals and electrical noise. Discrete-time signals and introduction to digital signal processing.

**53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Semiconductor device modelling. Thick film circuits. Surface mounting techniques. Gate arrays. Programmable gate arrays. LSI/VLSI technology. Computer aided design of printed circuits, thick film circuits, and gate arrays. Computer aided design, checking and simulation of VLSI circuits. Testing of VLSI circuits. Application of these technologies.

**53.342 Power Systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Broad overview of the generation, transmission and distribution systems. characteristics of load and generation. System economics. The power transmission line. Plant models. Behaviour under normal and abnormal conditions.

**53.343 Advanced Power System Topics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Computer analysis, control and protection. State estimation. Economic optimisation. Reliability. Dynamic behaviour.

**53.352 Communication Systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
The Generalised Communication System, Electrical Noise, Analogue Modulation: AM and FM. Broadband Systems: FDM TDM PCM. Transmission topics: Radio Propagation; Optical Fibre Transmission; Large Signal Behaviour; Switched Telecommunication Systems: structure and planning traffic theory. Television.

**53.353 Digital Communications**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Advanced principles and techniques in digital transmission systems: signal coding, data compression, digital modulation, digital transmission, error detection and correction. Digital networks. Information theories. Traffic theories.

**53.362 Microwave and Optical Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Microwave systems; waveguides; passive components, resonators and filters. Microwave network theory, waveguide discontinuities. Microwave sources. Aperture antennas. Optical communication systems; propagation in optical fibres, attenuation, step-index and graded-index fibres, sources and detectors.

**53.363 Radio Systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Systematic approach to electromagnetics as a basis for more advanced work in electromagnetic wave propagation, antennas and microwaves.

**53.371 Advanced Control Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
State-space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods, controllability and observability, multivariable plant. Computer simulation. Stability considerations. State variable feedback. Digital control system, design and realisation of digital controllers, adaptive controllers. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques, design of controllers for nonlinear systems. Variable structure systems.

**53.382 Software Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
The software life cycle, requirements definition document, software prototyping and specification, implementation issues. data representation. software cost estimation, testing and quality assurance, testing and debugging, system delivery, maintenance. Computer aided software engineering (CASE), object oriented programming, real time executives, programmers toolkit.

**53.383 Computer Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Computer Architecture - Main frames/microprocessors; Multiprocessing systems; Memory systems - disk, main, virtual, distributed processing; Special purpose processors; Commercial computer networking.

**53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Power devices and device physics; thyristors, GTOs, transistors, FETs, IGTs. Conversion processes: AC-DC, DC-DC, DC-AC, UPS, switched mode power supplies. DC motor drives: thyristor



control, chopper control. AC motor drives: current source inverters, voltage source inverters. Motor control techniques: inverter control, reduced voltage starters. Drive systems/economics.

#### **54.111 Engineering Mathematics I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week)

Basic algebra and calculus of elementary functions of a real variable, introduction to complex arguments, linear algebra and matrix methods, geometrical properties such as curvature and arch length, power-series and indeterminate forms, differentiation and integration. Application to engineering problems will be stressed and assisted by curve sketching in rectangular and polar forms and by numerical methods. Ordinary differential equations including first order, second order constant coefficient and elementary simultaneous equations. Introduction to Laplace transforms.

Partial differentiation, evaluation of multiple integrals, vector analysis, grad, div, curl and integral theorems.

Statistical and probabilistic methods, sampling theory, estimation and confidence intervals, regression and correlation, exploratory data analysis.

Problem solving, formulation and representation of algorithms, the FORTRAN language, use of the undergraduate computer system.

#### **54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week)

As for 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I, plus: Introductory Computer modelling.

#### **54.211 Engineering Mathematics II**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

A selection from the following topics:

Ordinary differential equations, Laplace transforms, systems of equations analytical and numerical methods.

Linear algebra: vector spaces, computational methods for solving systems of equations and eigenproblems.

LU factorization. Applications.

Linear programming, simplex procedure.

Nonlinear optimisation.

Complex variable theory, analytic functions, conformal mappings, evaluation of integral. Laurent expansions, residues. Partial differential equations. Derivation of equations, one-dimensional heat and wave equations. Fourier series. Separation of variables, boundary conditions, solution of Laplace's equations in rectangular and polar co-ordinates, Bessel functions. Numerical Methods for solving PDEs.

#### **54.212 Engineering Mathematics IISA**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Linear algebra, eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Ordinary differential equations, linear equations and applications, stability and phase planes. Partial differential equations, Fourier Series, separation of variables, wave, diffusion and Laplace's equation.

#### **54.213 Engineering Mathematics IISB**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Engineering statistics. Model fitting, linear models and the least squares principle. Linear regression, least-squares estimates, Gauss-Markov Theorem, parameter prediction, multiple regression. Analysis of variance, confidence intervals, paired and multiple comparison problems.

#### **54.221 Computational Techniques I**

(Two contact hours per week)

Computational arithmetic, computational linear algebra, solution of equations, the eigenproblem, quadrature, interpolation and approximation. Numerical methods for ordinary differential equations. Finite differences. Nonlinear equations, Newton's methods. Software design and advanced Pascal programming.

#### **54.241 Continuum Mechanics I**

(Two lectures per week, first half-year. Three lectures per week, second half-year. One tutorial per week)

Vector and tensor analysis; analysis of stress and strain; constitutive relations and field equations; analytical and numerical solutions or problems in fluid mechanics and linear elasticity; finite difference and finite element methods. Open channel flow.

#### **54.251 Operations Research I**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality and dual simplex, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis, modelling and applications. Integer programming, including cutting planes and branch and bound techniques; dynamic programming with

applications; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

#### **54.291 Engineering Science Design**

(Two contact hours per week)

Study of the design process, including conceptualization and analysis with particular reference to the design of simple structures. Systems analysis and design concepts applied to the computer solution of engineering problems in continuum mechanics and operations research, including formulation and preparation of initial specifications, implementation of algorithms, and presentation and interpretation of results.

#### **54.301 Special Topic in Engineering Science A**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

#### **54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

#### **54.304 Project in Engineering Science**

(Equivalent in weight to two elective papers)

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science. A written report on the work must be submitted.

*No final examination. Grade assessed on the work done and the report.*

#### **54.312 Engineering Mathematics IIISA**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as theory of partial differential equations, method of characteristics, separation of variables in non-Cartesian co-ordinates, special functions, integral transforms, similarity solutions, nonlinear ordinary differential equations, and the calculus of variations.

#### **54.313 Engineering Analysis A**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science. The list include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

#### **54.315 Engineering Mathematics IIISB**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as the theory and application of complex variables, integral transforms and integral equations.

#### **54.321 Computational Techniques II**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Numerical methods for solving partial differential equations. Finite differences, finite element and boundary element methods. Computational linear algebra, the QR algorithm and solution to least squares and eigenproblems. Introduction to unconstrained nonlinear optimisation.

#### **54.341 Continuum Mechanics II**

(Two lectures per week)

(a) Mechanics of solids including such topics as elastostatics in two and three dimensions, elastodynamics, thermoelasticity, principles of structural analysis, etc.

(b) Mechanics of fluids including such topics as potential flow, vorticity dynamics, boundary layer analysis and an introduction to compressible flow, turbulence, wave motion and hydrodynamic stability.

#### **54.343 Mechanics of Structures**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Such topics as the static, stability and dynamic analysis of framed structures, shells, membrane and cable structures.

Assignments will require a reasonable facility at computer programming.

#### **54.351 Operations Research II**

(Two lectures per week)

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling; digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods. (Professional practice in O.R., case studies, and computer packages with applications will be covered in Engineering Science Laboratory).

#### **54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

The application of non-deterministic methods in Operations Research, including topics such as Markov processes, stochastic programming, time series analysis, forecasting.

#### **54.353 Deterministic Methods in Operations Research**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Topics associated with the application of deterministic optimization including complexity, data envelopment analysis, networks, set partitioning and dynamic programming.

#### **54.361 Control Theory**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

As for 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering.

#### **55.101 Mechanics of Solids I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Review of principles of static equilibrium; analysis of forces and moments using three-dimensional cartesian vectors. Reactions and degrees of freedom of joints; analysis of space frames. Axial and shear forces, bending moments and torsion. Concept of stress, principal stresses, transformation equations. Mohr circle of plane stress. Linear elastic behaviour and small strain theory. Approximate analysis of stress and strain in axial loading, bending and torsion including moments of area and other section properties; deflection of slender beams and column behaviour. Design of thin-walled pressure vessels.

#### **55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to the fundamentals of thermodynamics, power cycles and heat transfer. Elementary stress analysis. Miscellaneous topics.

#### **55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Thermodynamic variables, thermostatics and hydrostatics. Dimensional analysis, fluids in motion and viscosity. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy, first and second laws of thermodynamics, entropy. Introduction to cycles.

#### **55.121 Applied Mechanics**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Vector methods in mechanics. Kinematics of mechanisms. Kinetics of particles and rigid bodies in two dimensions. Linear and angular momentum, impulse, potential and kinetic energy. Control volume and applications.

#### **55.213 Thermo Fluid Dynamics II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Conservation laws, compressible flow, internal and external flows, gas mixtures and psychrometry, combustion, power and refrigeration cycles.

#### **55.223 Dynamics and Control**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Kinetics of rigid bodies in two and three dimensions; moments of inertia, momentum, energy, gyroscopic motion and applications. Free and forced vibration of one and two degree of freedom systems. Damping. Rayleighs method. Derivation of transfer functions for mechanical systems. Time response and performance characterisation. Stability tests. Frequency response analysis: Bode and Nyquist methods.

#### **55.224 Vibrations and Control**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Free and forced vibration of one and two degree of freedom systems. Derivation of transfer functions for mechanical systems. Time response and performance characterisation. Stability tests. Frequency response analysis: Bode and Nyquist methods.

#### **55.231 Industrial Administration**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

An introductory course for engineering students on the organisational, financial and human relations aspects of management theory and practice.

#### **55.241 Mechanics of Solids II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations. Yield and fracture in metals. Bending of beams, elastic and plastic analysis of simple indeterminate beams and frames; torsion of shafts, non-circular and thin-walled sections; stability. Experimental stress analysis, testing methods; non-destructive testing.

#### **55.251 Heat Transfer**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Heat transfer by conduction, radiation and convection. Steady

conduction through plane walls, curved shells, and fins; diffusion equation, heat generation, transient thermal response. Forced convection in external and internal flows; film coefficient; free convection from surfaces and in enclosed spaces. Radiation heat exchange between black or grey surfaces; three surface enclosures. Two stream heat exchanger analysis, log mean temperature difference; effectiveness, number of transfer units; heat exchanger design.

#### **55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I**

(One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week)

The concept, design and specification of machines, mechanical plant and structures. Relationship of production and design.

#### **55.271 Production Technology**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Principles of plastic flow theory; yield criteria, incremental strain, incompressibility, flow rule, plastic work; analyses of bulk forming processes like extrusion, wire-drawing, forging, etc; introduction to sheet metal forming; theory of metal cutting, tool life, tool wear and machinability, introduction to economics of metal cutting, principles of numerical control, development of NC technology, computer-aided part programming techniques, processing of polymers, introduction to casting processes, continuous casting, gating, nucleation, heat flow and shrinkage, gas production and porosity, casting defects, solidification processes during welding.

#### **55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering**

(Equivalent in weight to two elective papers)

A comprehensive investigation and report on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*No final examination: Grade assessed on project report and year's work.*

#### **55.303 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Either first or second half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

#### **55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Boundary-layer equations, turbulent flow, compressible pipe flow, water-hammer, tribology; turbomachinery and cavitation.

#### **55.312 Applied Aerodynamics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Wing theory, aircraft performance and stability. VTOL and STOL aircraft, ground effect vehicles. Propellers, windmills. Natural winds, the earth's boundary layer. Wind effects on buildings and structures. Aeroelasticity. Compressible flow.

#### **55.321 Control Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Classical linear control theory as applied to mechanical and other relevant systems: an introduction to state-space methods and to digital control techniques.

#### **55.322 Mechanical Vibrations**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Vibration of multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems. Vibrations in rotating machinery. Vibration control: isolation, absorption, damping. Vibration measurement, frequency analysis and modal analysis. Sound and structural vibration.

#### **55.323 Microprocessors in Mechanical Control Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

An introduction to modern control methods as applied to mechanical and other systems. Digital control algorithms and state-space techniques. Incorporation of microprocessors into mechanical systems.

#### **55.324 Acoustics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Subjective reactions. Noise control, absorption, dissipation, insulation and planning. Performance of materials. The acoustics of enclosures, rooms and electroacoustics.

#### **55.331 Industrial Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

An introduction to the problems associated with effective industrial management and the techniques used to solve them. The course considers both the human and technological aspects of productivity improvement procedures, applied to NZ industry.

#### **55.333 Engineering Economics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

A course intended to familiarise the student with the financial aspects of engineering management. Emphasis will be placed on

topics such as alternative forms of costing, budgeting and profit planning, breakeven analysis, transfer pricing, replacement and maintenance policies, make or buy decisions and project cost estimation.

Techniques of evaluating project and capital equipment expenditure, including consideration of the sociological and environmental factors, will be studied for both private and public sector investments.

### **55.334 Manufacturing Technology**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Theory and practice of modern manufacturing technology: selection of optimum cutting parameters, theory of sheet metal forming: shearing, blanking and bending processes, deep drawing and punch stretching, cold roll forming and CAD in roll design, computer applications in materials testing, die design and failure analysis; computer-aided design, manufacture and assembly, robotics, materials handling, flexible manufacturing systems, concept of computer-integrated manufacturing, planning and design of manufacturing systems.

### **55.342 Strength of Materials**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Stresses, deflections and buckling conditions in flat plates, shells and structural frames. Fatigue in brittle and ductile materials. Thermal and impactive loadings on bars, beams and plates. Design of load-carrying systems constructed from brittle isotropic and fibre-composite materials, including the applications of the theories of linear fracture mechanics and orthotropic elasticity. Non-destructive testing. Failure analysis - methodology and case studies. Material selection.

### **55.351 Heat and Mass Transfer**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Multidimensional heat conduction, shape factors, unsteady conduction, temperature response charts. Pool boiling. Condensation. Combined modes of heat transfer. Concentrations. Fick's law, mass diffusion and convection, mass exchangers. simultaneous heat and mass transfer.

### **55.352 Applied Thermodynamics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Energy Resources; Various power generating options; Concepts, terminology and definitions; Irreversibility and availability. Vapour cycles; steam cycles including effects of terminal conditions, feed heating and reheating. Cogeneration and process steam. Advanced gas turbine plants, combined cycles. Combustion processes. Internal combustion cycles, dissociation and equilibrium, mechanical and turbo superchargers.

### **55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II**

(Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week)

*Either A. Plant and process design:* Design of mechanical structures. Handling of unit loads and bulk materials. Building services and environmental equipment. Selected plant equipment, e.g. pressure vessels.

*Or B. Machine design:* Manufacturing machinery. Engines, turbo machines, rotating assemblies. Vehicles. Dynamic structures. Jig and tool design. Product design.

*And* Lectures on professional mechanical engineering practice.

*No final examination: Grade assessed on course assignments.*

### **56.101 Mineral Engineering**

(Two lectures per week)

An introduction to the mineral industry as a basis for subsequent studies in mining and mineral processing. Mineral industry, world/New Zealand; economic importance. Stages in a mineral enterprise - exploration, development, production. Selection of method of exploitation - surface, underground, in situ. Importance of reserve and grade. Introduction to the processing of minerals. Principles governing underground and surface mining methods and processing. Environmental aspects and impact of mining and processing. Computer application in the mineral industry.

### **56.203 Mineral Processing Technology**

(Two lectures, one tutorial per week, first half-year)

Introduction to characteristics of particulate systems: sizing separation, separability and washability analysis. Comminution: theory and mechanics of breakage, crushing and grinding. Mineral separation.

### **56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Introduction to heat and mass transfer, assessment of underground

comfort conditions; gases, dusts, humidity, heat flow and cooling. Air flow distribution; networks, mechanical and natural ventilation. Methane drainage. Mine lighting. Noise. Environmental considerations of surface mining. Environmental statements.

### **56.214 Unit Operations in Mining**

(Two lectures, half tutorial per week)

Rock breaking: cutting, ripping, drilling and blasting. Materials handling: mechanics of hoisting and haulage systems. Equipment: selection, reliability and maintenance. Shaft sinking and tunnelling.

### **56.215 Bulk Materials Handling**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Analysis of bins, hoppers, conveyors. Flow and mixing of mineral slurries: thickening, filtration and drying. Pelletising. Stacking, blending, homogenising, reclaiming.

### **56.231 Mine Surveying**

(Three lectures per week and field work. Second half-year)

Introduction to land (including topographic) surveying theory and practice. Principles of typical surveying equipment and its operation and application. Introduction to mine surveying. Photogrammetry. This paper will include attendance at a four-day field exercise prior to Fourth Year.

### **56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics**

(Two lectures per week and 12 hours laboratory, first half-year.

Two lectures per week, second half-year)

Orebody evaluation, geostatistics. Mineral economics feasibility, taxation, metal pricing and marketing. Concept of exhaustibility and cut-off grade.

### **56.313 Mine Design**

(One lecture per week and 12 laboratory hours, first half-year. One

lecture and three design office hours per week, second half-year)

Design of mine layouts including services; environmental and economic assessments. Students will be required to do design exercises in surface and underground mining in both metalliferous and coal.

### **56.314 Rock Mechanics**

(Three lectures per week and 15 laboratory hours. First half-year)

Behaviour of rock masses; rock properties, strength, deformation and failure. Laboratory and in situ testing, instrumentation. Analytical models of rock as linear elastic, plastic and visco-elastic media, numerical solutions. Underground excavation stability, rock-support interaction and slope stability. Ground control, rock improvement techniques and subsidence.

### **56.315 Project in Mining Engineering**

The candidate is required to submit a report on a topic in mining engineering assigned by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

### **56.317 Mine Production Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Mine production techniques in coal and metalliferous mining. Special topics in coal and metalliferous mining. Safety.

### **56.319 Special Topic in Mining Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half year)

An advanced paper on a topic in Mining Engineering to be determined by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

### **56.320 Special Topic in Mineral Process Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half year)

An advanced paper on a topic in Mineral Process Engineering to be determined by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

### **Practical Work**

1. Before enrolling for papers of the Third Examination, candidates for the BE Degree are required to have completed to the approval of the Faculty of Engineering a recognised course in Workshop Practice. A candidate who has attended a similar course elsewhere before enrolling at the University of Auckland may apply to the Faculty for that course to be approved. Candidates who have been exempted by the Senate from the Second Examination are not required to complete a course in Workshop Practice.
2. (a) Except as otherwise provided, candidates may not be admitted to the Degree until they have obtained approved practical experience in engineering works for at least 800 hours. Candidates should undertake such practical experience during Summer vacations and it is expected that they will have completed at least one period of work before enrolling for papers of the Third Examination. All

practical work must be approved by Faculty and shall meet the requirements of the appropriate department as set out in the current School of Engineering Handbook.

- (b) The first period of practical work should permit candidates to become familiar with engineering processes and trade skills, particularly those appropriate to the branch of engineering being followed. Subsequent periods shall be related to the particular branch of engineering and may include work of a sub-professional nature. It is expected that the experience gained will be as broad as possible. The advice of the appropriate departmental member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering may be sought before employment is accepted.
- (c) At the conclusion of each period of practical work a candidate must submit to the Faculty:
- a certificate signed by the employer showing the type of work carried out, the dates covered, the number of hours worked and the standard of attendance and performance;
  - a satisfactory report on the work performed.
- Official certificates and instructions on the form of report required may be obtained from the School of Engineering office. Reports shall be submitted not later than 31 March following completion of the work period. They will then be assessed and graded. Only in exceptional circumstances will late submissions be accepted. In order to allow sufficient time for assessment, final reports for candidates who wish to take part in the graduation ceremony should be submitted before 1 March.
- (d) The Faculty of Engineering may approve the reduction in the 800 hours practical work requirement for candidates who hold a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or who have obtained substantial practical experience in engineering work before enrolment in the BE Degree Course. Any such reduction will depend on the nature and extent of employment undertaken. Evidence of such work may be required. In all cases at least one report on a total work period of not less than 400 hours must be submitted. Candidates must make application in writing to the Faculty by 1 April in the year of first enrolment in order to ascertain the requirements that must be fulfilled in each case. They are advised to consult a member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering before submitting such application.

#### **Laboratory and Field Work**

- Laboratory work related to papers of the Second and Third Examinations of the course is undertaken in integrated programmes designated Second Year Laboratories and Third Year Laboratories.
- In order to gain the formal recognition of having completed the laboratory work necessary for admission to the Degree, a candidate shall attend the Second Year Laboratory and Third Year Laboratory courses, carry out the experiments and submit reports, to a required standard.
- Laboratory work related to papers of the Fourth Examination is an integral part of each paper. A candidate's satisfactory attendance and performance, including the submission of reports, forms a part of the requirement for a pass in each paper.
- Candidates taking the papers Surveying and Traffic and Highway Engineering shall, to a required standard, undertake Field Work, including the submission of reports.
- As part of their Degree course, candidates may be required to go on field trips to study engineering plant and works. The requirements in respect of such plant visits will be specified each year.

#### **BTech**

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*. Prescriptions for individual papers may be found in the Prescriptions for the Degrees of BCom, BE and BSc in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

#### **ME**

**50.401 Project A1**

**50.402 Project A2**

**50.411 Project B1**

**50.412 Project B2**

**50.421 Project C1**

**50.422 Project C2**

**50.431 Project D** (Value two papers)

A candidate may take the equivalent of three single-paper projects. For example, a candidate may take Projects A1, B2 and C2, or Project D and one of the other single-paper projects. A candidate is required to submit a report on each project carried out. These projects may include design studies, a survey and evaluation of modern advances in a branch of engineering, a small experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

#### **51.411 Advanced Process Control**

Advanced concepts of control, stability and optimisation. Analysis of non-linear systems. Computer control.

#### **51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate paper on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.

#### **51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering**

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate paper on selected topics in biochemical engineering; biological reactors, fermentation, protein processing and enzymology.

#### **51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering**

An advanced paper on selected topics such as fluid flow, rheology, heat transfer, mass transfer, separation processes.

#### **51.421 Advanced Materials**

An advanced paper on selected topics in materials science or materials engineering.

#### **51.422 Materials Seminar**

A graduate paper on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering**

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A**

An advanced paper on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

#### **52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B**

An advanced paper on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

#### **52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar**

Special topics selected from recent developments in the mechanics and properties of selected materials used in civil engineering.

#### **52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar**

Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.

#### **52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics**

Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.

#### **52.423 Coastal Engineering**

Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow induced oscillations, resonance problems, tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.

#### **52.424 Advanced Water Resources**

Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering

#### **52.431 Earthquake Engineering**

The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.

#### **52.432 Geomechanics Seminar**

Advanced studies of recent developments in theoretical soil mechanics.

**52.433 Applied Geomechanics**

Application of the principles of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering geology to practical problems in civil engineering.

**52.434 Earth Structures**

The stability, deformation, design and construction of earth structures.

**52.441 Structural Dynamics**

Vibration theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

**52.442 Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

**52.443 Structural Analysis**

Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: space frames and grids, shear wall systems, folded plate structures, bridges superstructures. Solution techniques will include approximate methods, matrix and computer methods. Optimisation techniques and computer-aided design may also be included.

**52.444 Space Structures**

Selected topics in the analysis of space structures such as cable structures, plate and shell structures. Special consideration for stability, elasticity and plasticity may also be included.

**52.451 Environmental Law**

See prescriptions for LLB, paper 25.313.

**52.461 Structural Design**

Design philosophies. Special considerations in steel, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and masonry structural design. The background to and the use of design codes.

**52.471 Traffic Engineering**

Selected topics from: Signal performance measures (queues, delays, stops). Coordination of signals, platoon dispersion. One-way street systems. Pedestrian activity design, capacity analysis and levels of service. Queueing theory and applications. Simulation. Design of large scale parking, street lighting.

**52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.

**52.473 Transportation Planning**

Land use, transport and travel. Spatial interaction models. Data surveys. Forecasting techniques. Analytical models for trip generation/attraction, distribution, assignment and modal split. Urban planning models. Model and network tests. Operational, economic and environmental evaluations. Computer programmes.

**52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis**

Selected analytical techniques taken from: probability and statistics, queueing theory, simulation, linear and dynamic programming, network flow and allocation algorithms, as applied to the planning and design of transport facilities. Characteristics of transport systems and urban structure. Economic evaluation of transport projects. Transport systems planning techniques applied to urban planning.

**52.475 Highway Operations and Evaluation**

Selected topics from: Highway capacity and level of service analyses for motorways, urban arterials and rural two-lane highways. Speed prediction and vehicle operating cost modelling. Passing/climbing lane evaluation. Computer simulation packages. Economic evaluation models and appraisal techniques.

**52.481 Project Management A**

Planning, organisation and control of large engineering projects.

**52.482 Case Studies in Project Management**

Analysis of the management of some large engineering projects currently in hand or recently completed.

**52.483 Project Management B**

Estimating and cost control, contracts and decisions.

**52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from water and wastewater engineering pollution control.

**53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A****53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B****53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C**

Advanced papers on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems**

A graduate paper covering state of the art topics in Advanced Electronics including: computer aided circuit analysis; non-linear circuit concepts; oscillators; mixers; power amplifiers; stability; noise.

**53.441 Heavy Current Electronics**

Selected topics in the utilisation of thyristor devices in industrial electrical engineering applications.

**53.451 Digital Signal Processing**

Fast Fourier transform (FFT) discrete operations via FFT digital filters, finite impulse (FIR) and infinite impulse response (IIR); design techniques for FIR and IIR filters; hardware implementations and noise analysis. State-space synthesis and non-linear behaviour of digital filters. Signal coding and bandwidth compression techniques. Two dimensional signal and image processing.

**53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication**

A paper concerned with the planning and design of VHF and UHF Radio Communication Systems. Consideration will be given to analogue and digital systems, and both mobile and point-to-point services.

**53.461 Electromagnetic Theory**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. The emphasis is on mathematical analysis.

**53.471 Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimisation techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State-space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Examples of applications and discussion of computational problems.

**53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques**

Review of the hardware and architecture of 8 and 16-bit devices; introduction to bit-slice technology, microprogrammed control. Input-output interfacing techniques, DMA control, interrupts, etc. Development tools - both hardware and software assemblers, high level languages. Application devices, e.g. digital signal processors, single-chip micro controllers.

**54.401 Studies in Engineering Science**

A graduate paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

**54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics**

A graduate paper in Mathematics applied to Engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.

**54.421 Finite Element Methods**

A graduate paper on finite element formulations and applications to problems such as stress analysis, seepage, heat transfer and fluid flows.

**54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation**

A study of theoretical conditions for optimality in non-linear optimisation and numerical methods for the solution of systems of non-linear equations and constrained and unconstrained optimisation problems including the non-linear least-squares problem.

**54.423 Advanced Linear Optimization**

This paper discusses advanced topics in linear optimization including degeneracy resolution, LU basis handling techniques, elastic LP, the Primal/Dual method, decomposition methods and interior point methods.

**54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A****54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B**

Graduate papers in Continuum Mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

**54.451 Studies in Operations Research A****54.452 Studies in Operations Research B**

Graduate papers in recent developments in Operations Research and applications.

**54.455 Advanced Systems Analysis A**

A graduate-level paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

**54.456 Advanced Systems Analysis B**

A graduate-level paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

**54.461 Studies in Control Theory**

A graduate paper in modern Control Theory including such topics as optimal control, stochastic and non-linear systems.

**54.481 Geothermal Modelling**

A study of mathematical methods currently used in geothermal reservoir engineering, and an introduction to the computer modelling of geothermal flows.

**54.491 Bio-Engineering**

An introduction to the application of engineering principles and methods in biomedical research. Mechanical properties of living tissue: constitutive laws, structure/function relationships, myocardial and lung mechanics, haemodynamics. Biological control mechanisms. Electrophysiology. Instrumentation and measurement: principles and applications.

**55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering**

(Either half-year)

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**55.411 Fluid Dynamics**

(First half-year)

Equations of fluid motion, laminar duct flow, laminar boundary layers and free shear layers, structure of turbulence, turbulent duct flow and turbulent shear layers.

**55.412 Aerodynamics**

(Second half-year)

Thin-airfoil theory, distributed singularity methods, lifting-line and lifting-surface theory, vortex lift; computation of boundary layers, prediction of drag and separation; bluff body flows, wind loading.

**55.413 Wind Engineering**

(Second half-year)

Basic meteorology and extreme wind speed analysis; planetary boundary-layer flow; wind structure; loads on engineering structures; dynamic response to turbulence; vortex shedding and aeroelastic effects; wind tunnel testing.

**55.422 Mechanical Control Systems**

(Second half-year)

A selection of topics from modern control theory, directed towards the application of appropriate techniques in the description and simulation of mechanical systems. Emphasis will be placed on a structured approach to the analysis of control systems.

**55.434 Computer Integrated Manufacturing and Robotics**

(First half-year)

A study of computer integrated manufacturing (CIM) appropriate to the needs of New Zealand industry. The course will deal with the integrated use of robots, workstations, materials handling and control systems.

**55.435 Computers in Manufacturing**

(Second half-year)

A paper dealing with the development of manufacturing management and information systems through the use of planning, modelling, simulation and artificial intelligence computing techniques.

**55.441 Mechanics of Materials**

(First half-year)

Theory of elasticity: equations of elasticity, stress functions, energy theorems, stress waves, elastic instability. Theory of plasticity: criteria for yield and plastic flow, load bounding, the slip-line field theory. Fracture mechanics. Composite materials.

**55.442 Vibrations**

(Second half-year)

A selection from topics including analysis of multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems, numerical methods, random vibrations and spectral analysis, vibration measurement and testing methods, modal analysis, wave propagation, sound radiation and sound-structure interaction.

**55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

(Second half-year)

Combustion processes; calculations for Diesel and Otto cycles, including turbocharging; ideal, fuel-air and real cycles; use of alternative fuels as supplements or replacements.

**55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design**

(Second half-year)

Fundamentals of computer graphics as related to applications in

engineering, the mathematics of surface and solid geometry as applied to design and manufacturing, computer aided draughting and design systems.

**55.471 Production Technology**

(First half-year)

Tribology and lubrication applied to metal working. Joining and assembly processes. Tool and die design. Metal cutting. Deformation processing.

**55.472 Metal Forming**

(Second half-year)

Plasticity, analysis of deformation processes, application of upper bound and slip-line field techniques to bulk forming of metals. Properties and behaviour of sheet metals, anisotropy, strain mapping, determination of forming limits.

**55.491 Computational Fluid Dynamics and Numerical Heat Transfer**

(First half-year)

The application of computational methods to fluid dynamics and heat transfer. Finite difference, finite volume, finite element, spectral and panel methods. Convergence and stability. Mesh generation and post-processing. Application of commercial computer programs to industrial problems.

**55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer**

(Second half-year)

The application of the principles of heat and mass transfer to geothermal energy technology. Topics include transmission of geothermal fluids within the reservoir and through pipe networks; heat exchangers; condensers; waste heat rejection; economic considerations.

**56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mineral processing to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering**

A graduate-level paper on a selected aspect or aspects of mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation**

Theoretical and practical geostatistics, including the application of commercial—scale computer packages to problems of natural resource evaluation. Further study of extraction policy formulation and cutoff grade decisions.

**56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics**

Further topics in rock mechanics.

**86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology**

Scope of geothermal projects, features of geothermal systems, properties of geothermal fluids. Introduction to geothermal exploration, production and utilisation technology. Reservoir engineering, economics, environmental and legal aspects. Case histories.

*Either*

**86.402 Geothermal Production Technology**

Drilling technology and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis. Reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials.

*or*

**86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation**

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat, process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence, environmental effects and reporting, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

Note: \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### DIPLOMA IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY DipGeothermTech

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree in Science or Engineering, or
  - (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering to the approval of the Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of study of one year.
4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of three parts. The Diploma shall be granted by examination.

#### Part I

A core paper in Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100) (two paper value)

#### Part II

EITHER

- (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101) and
- (b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102)

OR

- (c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103) and
- (d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104).

#### Part III

A project (86.606) on some aspect of Geothermal Energy.

5. The project (86.606) shall be delivered to the Registrar by October 25 of the year of the candidate's enrolment for the Diploma, or such later date as may be approved by Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

### DIPLOMA IN PULP AND PAPER TECHNOLOGY DipPulpPaper

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree in Engineering, Forestry or Science, or
  - (b) have reached the satisfaction of Senate an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering, or
  - (c) have a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or Science (or equivalent) and have completed a minimum of three years relevant industrial experience to the satisfaction of Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Pulp and Paper Technology Diploma.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a formal course of study of 15 full-time weeks followed by a further 12 weeks full-time industrial project approved by the Board of Studies, Pulp and Paper Technology Diploma.
4. Every candidate for the Diploma shall pass in each of six papers and pass in respect of a project as follows:
  - The Forest Products Industry (191.501)
  - Mechanical Pulping (191.502)
  - Chemical Pulping (191.503)
  - Papermaking (191.504)
  - Process and Environmental Control (191.505)
  - Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper (191.506)
  - and
  - Project (191.607)

#### Project

5. A candidate must submit the written project not later than 1 December in the year of enrolment provide that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend the period.

#### Time limit

6. The requirements for the Diploma shall be completed by 1 December in the year of enrolment for the Diploma.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DipGeothermTech

The Course of study for this Diploma is taught under the auspices of the Geothermal Institute which was established within the University of Auckland by funding from the United Nations Development Programme and the New Zealand Government. Funds are now provided by the Ministry of External Relations and Trade. Teaching will be carried out within the Faculty of Science

and the School of Engineering by the academic staff, and by visiting lecturers from Government agencies and private organisations engaged in geothermal exploration and development.

Applications for admission to this Diploma course by foreign students must be made to the Board of Studies, Geothermal

Institute by 1 September (15 October for New Zealand students) for entry to the course in the following year. The number of students accepted for the course will be restricted each year.

**Note:** Any prospective student who has not passed the University Entrance Examination, who has been previously enrolled at a New Zealand University other than the University of Auckland, or who last attended an overseas university must apply for admission under the Admission Regulations as defined elsewhere in the *Calendar*. The examination for the Diploma shall be in three parts and must be passed as a whole.

#### Part 1

##### 86.100 Geothermal Systems and Technology

Scope of geothermal projects. Basic facts of geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids. Economic, environmental and legal aspects. Case Studies.

#### Part 2 *Either*

##### (a) 86.101 Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists

Petrology, secondary mineralisation and alteration. Drillhole logging. Geochemistry of geothermal fluids. Geophysical investigation of geothermal fields. Estimation and assessment of thermal field potential, and

##### (b) 86.102 Geothermal Exploration Technology

Geological mapping techniques. Mapping and sampling of geothermal discharges. Geophysical prospecting techniques. Geochemical analysis. Drillhole logging techniques and instrumentation. Geological assessment of reservoirs.

*Or*

##### (c) 86.103 Geothermal Production Technology

Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis, reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials for geothermal plant, and

##### (d) 86.104 Geothermal Energy Utilisation

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence. Environmental effects of geothermal wastes. Environmental Impact Report preparation. Assessment of geothermal fields as undeveloped natural resources, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

### DipPulpPaper

The course of study for this Diploma is carried out in conjunction with the Pulp and Paper Research Organisation of New Zealand (PAPRO). Teaching will be carried out by staff from PAPRO and the Forest Research Institute (FRI), specialists from the pulp and paper industry, and academic staff from the University. Lectures and laboratories will be held at FRI in Rotorua, and students are expected to be domiciled in Rotorua for the duration of the formal coursework. The course fee is costed on a user-pays basis; one full-fee scholarship will be offered each year by the industry to unsponsored candidates.

#### 1. 191.501 The Forest Products Industry

(Five lectures and three laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)

Forest resources of the World in general and of New Zealand in particular. Study and measurement of wood quality. Growing and harvesting wood. Industries based on wood.

#### 2. 191.502 Mechanical Pulping

(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)

The science and technology of mechanical pulping of wood. Control of pulp quality. Energy consumption. Bleaching mechanical pulps. Environmental effects. Semi-chemical pulping. Mechanical pulping of non-wood raw materials.

#### 3. 191.503 Chemical Pulping

(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)

The science and technology of chemical pulping of wood. The Kraft and sulphite processes. Chemical recovery. Pulp bleaching. Chlorine free bleaching. Environmental effects. Pulp cleaning and drying. Chemical pulping of non-wood raw materials.

#### 4. 191.504 Papermaking

(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week for the full length of the course)

The science and technology of stock preparation, sheet forming, pressing, drying, calendaring, winding and coating. New developments in papermaking.

#### 5. 191.505 Process and Environmental Control

(Three lectures and three laboratory hours per week. Second half of the course)

Review of control theory. Applications of control theory to pulp and paper industry processes. Modern trends in industrial control. Effects of pulp and papermaking processes on waterways. Control by aerobic and anaerobic treatment. Disposal of non-aqueous wastes.

#### 6. 191.506 Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper

(Seven lectures and two laboratory hours per week. Second half of the course)

Paper as a fibrous structure. Fibre properties and their effects on paper properties. End-use requirements of paper and paperboard. Science and technology of printing. Paper grades and their applications. Uses of types of pulp.

#### 7. 191.607 Project

(Full-time project, 12 weeks duration)

The industrial project will be either a research project or a professional level investigation set by the course organisers in conjunction with industry and must be approved by the Board of Studies.

There will also be eleven plant visits, each occupying one day.

## CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS

### CERTIFICATE IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY

#### CertGeothermTech

Each candidate for the Certificate has to enrol for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology. The course for the Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology normally involves attendance at all lectures, laboratories and field trips of the papers 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. However, during the year the candidate may be advised by Director of the Geothermal Institute *EITHER* not to submit the project (86.606) and to continue with only those courses proceeding to a final written examination (i.e. 86.100, and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104) *OR* to submit the project 86.606 and to continue with only two of the courses proceeding to a final written examination (86.100, 86.101, 86.102, 86.103, 86.104).

**Examinations:** Candidates will be assessed on their practical work and written tests during the course. The Certificate may be awarded for a pass in the following papers: 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. *Alternatively*, the Certificate may be awarded for a pass in two of the following papers: 86.100, 86.101, 86.102, 86.103, 86.104 and a pass in the 86.606 project.

**Prerequisites:** As for Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.



---

# Faculty of Fine Arts

---

<i>Contents</i>		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Elam School of Fine Arts	290
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts	290
	Degree of Master of Fine Arts	291
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Art History	292
	Studio Theory	292
	Studio for Bachelor of Fine Arts	293
	Studio for Master of Fine Arts	293

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS

In celebration of the University Centenary, the name of the School reverted in 1983 to Elam School of Fine Arts, acknowledging John Edward Elam who, when he died in 1888, bequeathed funds to establish an art school in Auckland. The Elam School of Art & Design opened in 1890 in rooms at the Auckland Art Gallery, with E.W. Payton its first Director. The School quickly became an important influence on the artistic life of the city, becoming registered in 1900 and adding evening classes in 1902. A new building in Rutland Street provided space for the growing School from 1914, and, in 1925, A.J.C. Fisher was appointed Director, remaining in that post until his death in 1959. During the mid-30s the School moved to more spacious accommodation in the Old Grammar School in Symonds Street, using the Old Newton West Primary School after the January 1949 fire. In 1950 the School became part of Auckland University College, and began offering Diploma courses. The first Chair of Fine Arts was established in 1961 and Professor Paul J. Beadle was appointed. In 1962 the School moved to its present building in Whitaker Place. Degree courses began in 1967, and, in 1968, a separate Department of Art History was established. Professor Jolyon D. Saunders became Head of Department and Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts in 1977 when Professor Beade assumed the first Personal Chair in Fine Arts.

The Elam School of Fine Arts offers the Bachelor of Fine Arts Degree of four years' duration, and the Master of Fine Arts Degree and the Master of Philosophy Degree, each of two years' duration. Courses of study for each of these Degrees involves a proportion of studio activities and theoretical studies which can be varied to accommodate the needs of individual students.

#### Bachelor of Fine Arts (BFA)

All students entering the first year of the BFA course take a common programme which consists of practical studio activities conducted in the School of Fine Arts and two papers presented by the Department of Art History. Studio sessions are held in the morning from 9 am - 1 pm and the Art History study in the afternoons between 2 pm and 4 pm.

The first year studio programme consists of assignments and concentrated workshop sessions in design, drawing, painting, sculpture, intermedia and photography. Upon the completion of the first year, some degree of specialisation is normally expected. Regular seminars and personal tutorials are essential features of the courses, as are studio theory papers dealing with historical, critical and technical topics.

#### Master of Fine Arts (MFA)

Any person wishing to enrol for the Master of Fine Arts Degree shall have passed the final year of the Bachelor of Fine Arts course with a Studio grade higher than B-.

Two course options allow the proportion of practical to theoretical studies to be varied. Studio work consists of a practical performance in an aspect of painting, sculpture, printmaking, photography, intermedia or design.

Candidates are required to present a course outline of their proposed programme to the Dean prior to 31 March. Graduate students are expected to base their activities in their studios during School hours, and to participate in a series of seminars on theoretical, critical and historical issues. In addition they are required to present a dissertation on a topic other than the main subject of their studio work, and to present an exhibition of their work at the end of the final year.

#### Master of Philosophy (MPhil)

The course requirements are the same as for the MFA Degree.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ARTS BFA

#### OPTION I AND OPTION II

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts shall:
  - follow a course of study of not fewer than four years, taking either Option I or Option II prescribed in these Regulations and
  - pass four Professional Examinations.
- In these Regulations:
  - 'Papers' includes Studio I, Studio II, Studio III and Studio IV.
  - 'Prescribed' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:  
Art History I: Any two of the following: 19.151, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155, 19.156.
  - 'Approved papers' in relation to any candidate means any of the following:  
Studio Theory: 27.201 - 27.206, 27.209 - 27.211, 27.213 - 27.216, 27.233, 27.301, 27.302, 27.313.  
Art History I: 19.151, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155, 19.156 if not taken as a prescribed paper.  
Art History II: 19.259, 19.260, 19.261 and 19.262.  
Art History III: 19.301, 19.302, 19.304, 19.305, 19.306, 19.307, 19.308, 19.309, 19.310, 19.311, 19.312, 19.313 and any other paper (or the equivalent credits)
  - prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc or any other degree and
  - approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate for this Degree and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.
- The subjects of Examination for the Degree shall be:
  - First Professional Examination* 6 papers, consisting of:
    - Studio I: 27.150 having the value of 4 papers, and
    - Art History I: Two papers from the following: 19.151, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155, 19.156.

#### Option I

*Second Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.250 having the value of 6 papers and

- (ii) Three approved papers.  
 Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.251 having the value of 7 papers and  
 (ii) Two approved papers.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

**Third Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.350 having the value of 6 papers and  
 (ii) Three approved papers.  
 Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.351 having the value of 7 papers and  
 (ii) Two approved papers.

**Note:** 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture but with special permission of the Head of Department may be taken as a corequisite.

**Fourth Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) Studio IV: 27.450 having the value of 9 papers  
 Or (b) (i) Studio IV: 27.451 having the value of 7 papers and  
 (ii) Two approved papers.

### Option II

This option has been deleted pending the introduction of new regulations.

4. All students will be required to make a formal presentation of work in Studio, or to fulfil the course work in any subject or tutorial as may be determined by the Faculty from time to time. A student who fails to comply with these requirements may be declined permission to sit the final examination.

### Studio

5. In each Professional year work for Studio shall consist of:  
 (a) a formal presentation of work at the conclusion of each study period; and  
 (b) a final formal presentation of work; which may include written examination papers, as required by the Dean of the Faculty.
6. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Professional Examination consisting of more than one subject, so that his/her performance in all the papers of the Examination shall be considered; provided that:  
 (a) a candidate who has failed to pass any such Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and permitted in a subsequent year to take the papers not so credited; and  
 (b) a candidate who does not pass the Second Professional Examination as a whole, but is credited with a paper or papers of that Examination may, if the Senate permits, take with the papers being re-presented for that Examination a paper or papers for the Third Professional Examination.
7. Notwithstanding the provisions of Regulation 6, a student who, after two years of academic studies for this Degree, has failed to pass all the papers of the First Professional Examination shall not be permitted to enrol for the Third Professional Examination until the remaining papers of the First Professional Examination are passed.
8. In respect of every prescribed or approved paper prescribed for a Degree other than this (that is, every paper taken for this Degree other than Studio I, II, III and IV and the papers in Studio Theory) a candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for the Degree of BA, BSc or other degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

### Credits

9. A candidate who has successfully completed a course or courses at a Teachers College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
10. The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1975.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ARTS MFA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts shall:  
 (a) before his/her enrolment for this Degree shall have been admitted or have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, and  
 (b) have passed with a higher Grade than B - in Studio IV in their Bachelor of Fine Arts course provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department recommends the Senate may accept a B - pass, and  
 (c) follow a course of study of not less than two years, taking either of the Options prescribed under these Regulations.
2. In these Regulations:  
 'approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:  
 Studio Theory, and any paper other than a paper in Art History, prescribed for any degree other than this Degree and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.

### Course Content

3. The subjects of examination for the Degree shall be:

#### Option I

First Year Part I: Advanced Studio V Practice and Theory 27.550 having the value of four papers.  
 Second Year Part II: Studio VI 27.650 having the value of four papers.

A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

#### Option II

First Year Part I: (a) Art History IV: Two papers approved by the Head of Department of Fine Arts being either two papers chosen from 19.400-19.414, or one paper chosen from 19.400-19.414 and one of the papers prescribed for Art History III not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts; or  
 (b) Any two approved papers not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts.

- First Year** Part II Studio V 27.551 which shall have the value of three papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.
- Second Year** Part III: One of the following which shall have the value of three papers:
- Thesis 19.601 on a special topic of Art History approved by the Head of the Department of Art History, or
  - Thesis 27.601 on a special topic related to the candidate's programme of work for Studio V and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts.
- (1) No candidate taking Option I shall take Studio VI without having first passed in Studio V unless the Head of the Department permits the work for Studio V to be examined with the work for Studio VI in the second year of the course.
  - (2) A candidate taking Option II shall not take Art History IV unless he/she has either passed eight papers in Art History including three Stage III papers or complied with such prerequisites as the Head of the Department of Fine Arts may otherwise prescribe for him/her.
  - (3) In respect of any prescribed or approved paper taken in Option II and prescribed for a degree other than this, a candidate shall be required to comply with all regulations applicable thereto for that other degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).
- Honours**
- (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions: First Division and Second Division.
  - (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate is examined in Art History for this Degree are unsatisfactory or either the work in Studio V, VI, or the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided that, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, a candidate whose performance at the written examination has been seriously impaired by illness (certified as under the aegrotat Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat award, to present himself/herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours.
  - (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only upon completion of the requirements for Honours within three years of his/her first enrolment for this Degree; but this period may be extended in exceptional circumstances by the Senate.
- These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

#### Art History I

(Two papers)

**19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520**

**19.153 Maori and other Polynesian Arts**

**19.154 Introduction to New Zealand Art**

**19.155 Topics in Mid to Late 19th Century European Art 1848-1900**

*Restriction:* 19.152

**19.156 20th Century Western Art**

*Restriction:* 19.152

#### Art History II

(Three papers)

**19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art**

*Prerequisites:* any two of 19.151, 19.152, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155 or 19.156.

**19.260 Topics in Baroque Art**

*Prerequisites:* any two of 19.151, 19.152, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155 or 19.156.

*Restriction:* 19.257.

**\*19.261 Topics in 17th and Early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe**

*Prerequisites:* any two of 19.151, 19.152, 19.153, 19.154, 19.155 or 19.156.

*Restriction:* 19.258.

**19.262 Topics in 20th Century Art**

*Prerequisites:* Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153, 19.154, 19.155 or 19.156.

#### Art History III

(Three papers)

**19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.302 Mid-19th Century Painting in France and Britain**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.304 Dürer and his Sources and Influence**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.305 New Zealand Art (General)**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262

**†19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.308 Topics in early 20th Century Art (Sculpture)**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**\*19.309 Women in Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

*Restriction:* Paper 19.306 under 1981 Regulations.

**\*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.311 Contemporary New Zealand Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.312 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Architecture and Design**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.313 Michelangelo**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

#### Art History for MFA

**†19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing**

**†19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)**

**†19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**\*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influence**

**19.404 Film Studies**

**†19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism**

*Note:* A candidate who has been credited with a pass in 19.303 may not take this paper.

**19.406 Art Historiography**

**\*19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art**

**19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art**

**19.409 Topics in The Theory of Modern Art**

**19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture**

**19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)**

**19.413 Topics in Maori Art**

**19.414 Image and Text**

### FINE ARTS

#### Studio Theory

**27.201 Art Critique**

The objective is twofold; (a) to foster the student's ability to formulate and communicate concepts and opinions about art; (b) to know what is at present happening in the art community.

Written reviews of contemporary art events, such as exhibitions in the city, and verbal participation during meeting sessions are essential components of the paper.

**\*27.203 Design Methodology**

The study of methods used in the collection and collation of information, the recognition, analysis and description of complex problems, and the generation and presentation of solutions.

**\*27.205 History of 19th Century Photography**

**\*27.206 History of 20th Century Photography**

**\*27.209 History of Photography in New Zealand**

The aim of this paper is to encourage research, documentation and dialogue on aspects of the History of Photography in New Zealand. Working on individual and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study and documentation of available primary source material: photographs, albums and literature. Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

**\*27.210 Intermedia Theory**

This paper will combine practical and technical lessons, relating to the use of audio visual equipment available at Elam, with seminars which aim to generate analysis through viewing and listening to time-based art works.

**\*27.211 Art Practice by Women**

This is a programme of lectures, seminars, reviews, visits, a co-operative project, and creative book making in which the issues facing visual artists who are women, are encountered and discussed. The students gain a knowledge of the achievements of artists working in a wide range of media and in a variety of cultures.

**27.213 Introduction to Computer Graphics**

A practical introduction to fundamental concepts, covering "painting", "drawing", scanning, three dimensional modelling, word processing and typographic applications.

**27.215 Art and Society**

A seminar programme which considers the creative, professional and social-economic dimensions of the visual arts. It also involves a workshop undertaking for candidates to explore or advance in some idiom distinct from their primary Studio methods. All candidates are expected to maintain seminar and workshop notations and collate information pertaining to topics-considered.

**\*27.216 Workshop Practice (Sculpture)**

Paper 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture. Issues of theory affecting the practice of sculpture including: perception, critique, materials, health hazards and professional practice.

**\*27.233 History of Photography in New Zealand and USA**

**27.301 Professional Practice for Designers**

Business methods and procedures commonly used by professional designers; topics may include:

- (a) Preparation of a portfolio; (b) What to expect after graduation;
- (c) Correspondence; (d) Reports and report writing; (e) Fee structure; (f) Estimating fees, fee letters and contracts; (g) Business structure; (h) Setting up an office; (i) Running an office;
- (j) Budgeting (overheads, etc); (k) Securing work and clients; (l) Accountants and taxation; (m) Design and the Law; (n) Ethics; (o) Design organisations; (p) Special topics related to the individual student's requirements.

**\*27.302 History of Photography in New Zealand (Advanced)**

The research, documentation and analysis of aspects of the history of photography in New Zealand. Working on individual and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study of primary source material: photographs, albums, literature.

Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

**27.313 Advanced Computer Graphics Applications**

An examination of the computer as a visual medium / problem solving tool; involving an introduction to advanced two, three and four dimensional applications and enquiry in depth, centred on a specific visual discipline.

*Prerequisite:* 27.213.

**Studio for BFA**

**Studio I**

**27.150**

Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods of techniques such as welding, casting, print-making, painting and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

**Studio II**

**Option I 27.250, 27.251 and Option II 27.252, 27.253**

Individually planned programme as approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements. For example, drawing and one or more of the following: painting, print-making, photography, sculpture and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

*Note:* Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

**Studio III**

**Option I 27.350, 27.351 and Option II 27.352, 27.353**

Development of Studio II in selected fields.

*Note:* Prerequisite for Studio III Sculpture: 27.216. With special permission of the Head of Department 27.216 may be taken as a corequisite.

**Studio IV**

**Option I 27.450, 27.451 and Option II 27.452**

Development of Studio III in selected fields.

**Studio for MFA**

**Studio V**

**Option I 27.550 and Option II 27.551**

The candidate's programme shall be a practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Studio VI**

**Option I 27.650**

The work in Studio VI may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio V. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Thesis for MFA**

**Option II Either**

**19.601**

A thesis on a topic in Art History, to be approved by the Head of the Department of Art History. The thesis must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November

or

**27.601**

A thesis to embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or advanced study relative to the candidate's programme in Studio V. The proposed topic shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

*Note:* \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

---

# Faculty of Law

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Faculty of Law	295
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Laws	295
	Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	298
	Professional Legal Studies Course	299
	Degree of Master of Laws	299
	Degree of Master of Jurisprudence	300
	Degree of Doctor of Jurisprudence	301
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Laws and Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	301
	Law and Practice in N.Z. Examinations	303
	Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	303
	Professional Legal Studies Course	305
	Degree of Master of Laws and Master of Jurisprudence	305
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Criminology	306
	Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies	306
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies	307

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## FACULTY OF LAW

The Faculty of Law offers degrees at the undergraduate and postgraduate levels.

At the basic undergraduate level, the Law School aims to provide a sound academic exposure to the discipline of law, and to meet the requirements of the Council of Legal Education for Admission to the New Zealand Bar. The curriculum is also the most diverse in New Zealand, thus enabling students to substantially structure a degree to their own interests. Conjoint degree programmes can be pursued (BA/LLB, BA/LLB(Hons); BCom/LLB, BCom/LLB(Hons)). There is an Honours programme to enrich the undergraduate offerings. And, at the postgraduate level, the Law School offers Masters and Doctoral programmes, and a postgraduate diploma.

### The Undergraduate Degrees

Through its undergraduate programme, the Faculty of Law is one of five law schools in New Zealand responsible for the basic legal education of legal practitioners. The prescriptions for the two undergraduate degrees - the LLB and LLB(Hons) - provide for all students to receive a thorough grounding in core legal subjects, in analytical reasoning and effective communication.

In the second and third years of the degrees a wide range of options is available. Students may choose from these options according to their interests and their likely career paths. The Faculty recognises that not all its students will practise law, but may take positions in commerce, industry, community-based groups and even politics. Within the range of optional courses there is scope for a law degree to be oriented accordingly.

Entry to the LLB programme is restricted, and competitive.

Details of the Faculty's selection quotas, criteria and procedures are contained within the *Law School Applicants' Guide*, available on request from the Law Faculty Office.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS LLB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws shall be required to:
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
  - (c) carry out work and undergo experience in the detailed application of law and in relation to the provision of legal services, to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty").

#### Examinations

2. (1) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Law Examination, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the examination shall be taken into consideration: provided that:
  - (a) A candidate who has failed to pass any Law Examination as a whole may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of that examination and permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Law Examination.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed the Intermediate Examination may at the discretion of the Senate be permitted to present part only of the First Law Examination, presenting the remaining part in a subsequent year together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
  - (c) A candidate who is undertaking the Degree or any part of the Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree shall be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine, and present the remaining part of the examination in a subsequent year, together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
- (2) A candidate to whom any of the foregoing provisions apply shall be required to pass as a whole an examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.
- (3) A candidate who has failed only one subject of a Law Examination may be required by the Senate to pass in the following February a special examination in that subject to be credited with a pass in the examination as a whole.
- (4) Subject to Regulation 5, no candidate shall enrol for the First Law Examination or any part of it without first passing the whole of the Intermediate Examination.

#### Subjects

3. The examinations and subjects for this Degree are:

#### Intermediate Examination

- (a) 25.103 The Legal System; and
- (b) any six papers -
  - (i) chosen from not more than three, or in the case of a Law-Commerce candidate not more than four, subjects; and
  - (ii) of which each is an arts paper or a science paper: except that a Law-Commerce candidate may take Accounting and Finance 01.100 and 01.101 or 01.104 and one other Commerce paper as two of the six papers.

For the purpose of the foregoing -

"Law-Commerce candidate" means a candidate admitted to a conjoint course of study under Reg 12 of the Regulations for the degree of Bachelor of Commerce;

"arts paper" means a paper accepted for the degree of Bachelor of Arts;

"science paper" means a paper accepted for the degree of Bachelor of Science and carrying (i) not fewer than 6 credits if the paper is at Stage I and (ii) not fewer than 4 credits if the paper is advanced (that is, at Stage II or Stage III).

**First Law Examination**

- 25.101 Criminal Law
- 25.104 The Laws of Torts

**Second Law Examination**

- 25.201 Land Law
- 25.202 Equity
- Together with selected subjects from:
  - 25.204 Commercial Law
  - 25.205 Administrative Law
  - 25.207 Advanced Criminal Law
  - 25.208 Company Law and Partnership
  - 25.209 Intellectual Property
  - \*25.210 Criminology
  - 25.211 Family Law
  - 25.212 Industrial Law
  - \*25.213 International Institutions
  - 25.214 International Law
  - 25.217 Jurisprudence
  - 25.218 Legal History
  - \*25.220 Local Government Law

- 25.105 The Law of Contract
- 25.106 Public Law

- 25.203 The Law of Personal Property

- 25.221 Income Tax Law
- 25.222 Roman Law
- 25.223 Women and the Law
- 25.224 Pacific Legal Studies
- 25.228 Competition Law
- 25.229 Advanced Contract
- \*25.230 Advanced Tort
- \*25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations
- \*25.232 Legislation
- \*25.233 Succession & Matrimonial Property
- \*25.234 Welfare Law
- 25.235 Community Law Project
- \*25.236, \*25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

**Third Law Examination**

Selected subjects from:

- 25.301 Advanced Administrative Law
- \*25.302 Advanced Commercial law
- 25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law
- \*25.304 Advanced Criminology
- 25.305 Advanced Family Law
- 25.306 Advanced Industrial Law
- \*25.307 Advanced International Law
- 25.308 Civil Procedure
- †25.309 Company Finance
- 25.310 Comparative Law
- \*25.311 Conflict of Laws
- \*25.312 Creditors' Remedies
- 25.313 Environmental Law
- 25.314 Evidence
- †25.315 International Trade
- \*25.316 Law Reform
- 25.318 Psychiatry and the Law
- 25.319 Planning Law

- 25.320 Restitution
- 25.321 Supervised Research
- 25.322 Vendor and Purchaser
- 25.323 Estate and Tax Planning
- \*25.324 Air and Space Law
- 25.325 Maori Land Law
- 25.326 Insurance Law
- \*25.328 Advocacy
- \*25.329 Advanced Agency & Partnership
- \*25.330 Legal Ethics
- 25.331 Remedies
- \*25.332 Consumer Law
- 25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution
- \*25.334 Advanced legal Philosophy
- \*25.335 Advanced Law and Society
- \*25.336 Natural Resources Law
- \*25.337, \*25.338, \*25.339, \*25.340 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

and any one or more optional subjects prescribed for the Second Law Examination. The subject 25.217 Jurisprudence must be taken as part of the Second or Third Law Examination.

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**Intermediate Credits**

4. In respect of the arts papers and science credits for the Intermediate Examination a candidate shall be required to comply with all relevant Regulations for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree as the case may be (including regulations and requirements relating to corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work).

**Exemptions**

5. (1) A candidate who has been credited for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree with any papers or credits required for the Intermediate Examination shall be credited with them for the purposes of this Degree also.
- (2) A candidate who is a graduate of any University in New Zealand shall be exempted from passing the Intermediate Examination but shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination and shall pursue a course of study for this Degree for a period of not less than three years.
- (3) In granting admission *ad eundem statum* to a candidate from an overseas University in one or more subjects of the Degree the Senate may require that the candidate shall pass an examination in the law and practice in New Zealand, covering such matters as may from time to time be prescribed by the Senate. The examination shall be at a time and place fixed by the Vice-Chancellor at a fee to be determined by the University from time to time.

**Maximum courses**

6. (1) Except with the permission of the Senate -
- (a) A candidate enrolled for the First Law Examination as a whole or the Second Law Examination as a whole may not take
    - (i) any extra Law subject or Law subjects;
    - (ii) more than one non-Law subject;
  - (b) A candidate enrolled for the Third Law Examination as a whole may take *either* not more than one extra Law subject or not more than one non-Law subject.
- (2) Except with the permission of the Senate -
- (a) A candidate enrolled for any parts of the First and Second Law Examinations may not take more than seven subjects, including not more than five Law subjects;
  - (b) A candidate enrolled for any parts of the First, Second and Third Law Examinations, or of the First and Third Law Examinations, may not take more than seven subjects, including not more than five Law subjects; except that (within that maximum of seven subjects) he or she may take either one or two extra Law subjects if that would complete the course for this degree;
  - (c) A candidate who has passed the First Law Examination and is enrolled for any parts of the Second and Third Law



Examinations may not take more than seven subjects, including not more than six Law subjects; except that (within that maximum of seven subjects) he or she may take one extra Law subject if that would complete the course for this degree.

- (3) In this regulation – “Law subject” means a subject prescribed or permitted for the First, Second or Third Law Examination; “extra Law subject” means a subject beyond the requirements of a particular Law Examination or beyond the specified maximum number of subjects, as the case may be; “non-Law subject” means a subject prescribed or permitted for any course of study offered by the University of Auckland other than that for this degree; “subject” means a Law subject or a non-Law subject.
- (4) This regulation shall apply to all students enrolled for this degree notwithstanding the provisions of Regulation 5(a) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Practical Courses

7. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of Regulation 1 (c).

**Note:** Legal Practice: A student completing his or her First Law Examination is required to enrol for 25.406 Legal Practice I, his or her Second Law Examination 25.407 Legal Practice II and his or her Third Law Examination 25.408 Legal Practice III.

### Course Requirements

8. Every candidate shall be required:
  - (a) To undertake in both the candidate's Second and Third Law Examinations a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 13 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.
  - (b) To undertake and satisfy in any subject such tutorial, practical, writing, attendance or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may be barred from sitting the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

### Courses in Other Faculties

9. (1) In lieu of optional law subjects (totalling not more than one-fifth of the content of the Second and Third Law Examination combined) a candidate may take such papers at Stage II or above offered by other Faculties and related to the candidate's Law studies as are approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. Before enrolling in the papers the candidate shall obtain the permission of the Head of the Department in which they are being taken and of the Dean of the Faculty of Law; but the Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to a candidate who has previously taken papers in another Faculty which would have qualified under this Regulation if prior approval had been obtained.
- (2) Any paper taken by a candidate under this Regulation may be credited only to this Degree.

**Note:** Approval of papers to form part of the candidate's Third Law Examination will ordinarily be confined to those at Stage III or above.

### Research Paper

10. A candidate for this Degree may with prior approval of the Dean elect to submit a research paper in lieu of examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination, if the teacher in the subject has certified that the research paper is related to that subject.

### BCom/LLB

11. (1) A candidate shall be credited with any subject named in the left hand column of the schedule to this paragraph of this Regulation if he or she has (i) passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce the paper or papers named opposite that subject in the right hand column of the schedule, and (ii) otherwise completed the requirements for that Degree.

#### Schedule

Company Law and Partnership 25.208	Company Law and Partnership 02.300
Industrial Law 25.212	Industrial Law 02.302
Revenue Law 25.221 or Income Tax 25.221	Taxation and Estate Planning 02.301

- (2) Credits under this Regulation shall be additional to any permitted to a candidate under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Commencement

12. (1) These Regulations shall apply to all students taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws from 1 January, 1988.
- (2) Subject to (3) and (4) hereof passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January, 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree regulations shall be credited as passes in the corresponding subjects in the Regulations for this Degree.
- (3) Passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January, 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree Regulations for which there is no direct equivalent in the Regulations for this Degree, including the Introductory courses in Commercial Law, Family Law, and Company Law and Partnership, shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.
- (4) No candidate may credit passes in both an Introductory course in Commercial Law, Family Law or Company Law and the full course in the same subject under the Regulations for this Degree or in both a subject prescribed under the 1987 Regulations and a subject prescribed under the Regulations for this Degree if, in the opinion of the Dean, the subject matter of the former forms a substantial proportion of the subject matter of the latter.
- (5) A candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed Land Law but not before 1 January, 1989 Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law shall be required to pass 25.204 Commercial Law under the Regulations for this Degree and a candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law but not Land Law shall be required to pass 25.201 The Law of Property under the Regulations for this Degree.
- (6) A candidate who before 1 January, 1992 passed 25.201 Law of Property shall be credited with passes in both 25.201 Land Law and 25.203 Law of Personal Property.
- (7) A candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed the Intermediate Examination and who has not passed Legal System, shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination in the Regulations for this Degree.
- (8) A pass in 1988 in the subject 25.102 Constitutional Law as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as a pass in 25.106 Public Law under the Regulations for this Degree and passes in 1988 in the subjects 25.203 Introduction to Commercial Law, 25.215 Introduction to Company Law and Partnership, 25.216 Introduction to Family Law, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.
- (9) A candidate who passed not fewer than two subjects in the First Law Examination before 1 January 1988 or who passed any one of 25.218 Legal History, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Theory, or 25.310 Comparative Law, before 1 January 1993, shall not be required to take 25.217 Jurisprudence as part of the Second Law or Third Law Examination.
- (10) Regulation 11 of the Regulations for this Degree as published in the 1987 *Calendar* shall (notwithstanding that it has been

- revoked) apply to any candidate who, before 1 January, 1988, (i) passed Finance Law 02.201 or an 'approved commerce paper' within the meaning of paragraph (2) of that Regulation and (ii) otherwise complied with the requirements of that Regulation.
- (11) For the purposes of this Regulation, a pass shall include a Conceded Pass or a pass in a February Special examination.
- (12) A candidate who began his or her Law course before 1973 shall be entitled to the benefit of any transitional provisions then applicable.
- (13) Where the course of any candidate is not specifically covered by the above provisions and in other cases where there is doubt concerning the course of any candidate such course shall be settled by the Dean.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (HONOURS) LLB(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) shall be required to:
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) (i) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations; and  
(ii) carry out work and undergo experience in the detailed application of law and in relation to the provision of legal services, to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty"): in all respects as prescribed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws ("the LLB Degree"), excepting Regulation 10 (as to the substitution of a research paper in lieu of an examination in the Third Law Examination); and
  - (c) present the additional work prescribed in Regulation 2; and
  - (d) maintain a superior standard of work throughout the course, as prescribed in Regulation 6.

### Additional Work

2. In addition to the foregoing requirements, every candidate shall during his or her course undertake the following work:
  - (a) Two additional subjects from those listed in Regulation 3, carrying out to the satisfaction of the Faculty such written or other work as may be prescribed by the Dean in connection with those subjects.
  - (b) The submission, not later than twelve months after completing the Third Law Examination, of a dissertation (25.604) embodying the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of a University teacher in the Faculty. The Senate may in its discretion extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 15.

### Subjects

3. The additional subjects provided for in Regulation 2 shall be:

225.301, *225.302, 225.303, *225.304, 225.305, *225.306,	225.366	Local Government Law
225.307, 225.308, 225.309, 225.310, *225.311, *225.312,	*225.367	Maori Land Law
*225.313, *225.314, *225.315 Studies in a selected topic	*225.368	Marine Insurance Law
as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law	225.369	Medico-Legal Problems
*225.341 Admiralty Law	*225.370	Military Law
*225.342 Air and Space Law	*225.371	Penology
*225.343 Aspects of Industrial Law	*225.372	Problems in Choice of Law
*225.344 Business Regulation	*225.373	Problems in Contract and Tort
*225.345 Causes of Crime	225.374	Problems in Criminal Law
225.346 Civil Rights	*225.375	Problems in Equity
*225.347 Commercial Letters of Credit	*225.376	Problems in Legal Philosophy
*225.348 Consumer Law	*225.377	Professional Responsibility
*225.349 Copyright and Patent Law	*225.378	Registration of Title to Land
*225.350 Corporation Finance	*225.379	Remedies against the Government
*225.351 Economic Regulation	*225.380	Securities Law
225.352 Environmental Law	*225.381	Selected Topics in Comparative Law
*225.353 Estate Planning	*225.382	Shipping Law
*225.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law	*225.383	Social Control of Land
*225.355 International Business and Finance, Law of	*225.384	State and Local Taxation
*225.356 Law and Social Problems	*225.385	The Law Relating to Damages
*225.357 Law of Banking	*225.386	The Legal Process
*225.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant	*225.387	Trial Practice
*225.359 Law Reform	*225.388	United Nations Law and Problems of World Order
*225.360 Law Relating to Computers	*225.389	Pacific Legal Studies
*225.361 Legal Accounting	*225.390	Women and the Law
*225.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations	*225.391	Restitution
*225.363 Legal Education	25.604	Dissertation
*225.364 Legal History	<b>Note:</b> * Starred papers will not be taught during the current <i>Calendar</i> year	
*225.365 Legal problems of the European Common Market		

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### Maximum courses

4. Regulation 6 of the LLB Regulations (prescribing maximum courses) shall apply to a candidate's course for this Degree: but nothing in that Regulation shall apply to the additional work that a candidate is required to undertake for this Degree; except that, where a candidate proposes to enrol for both the additional Honours subjects required under Regulations 2 and 3 in the same year, one of those subjects shall count as an extra Law subject for the purpose of Regulation 6 of the LLB Regulations.

### Research Paper

5. Any candidate may with the approval of the Dean elect to present a research paper in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination or a subject listed in Regulation 3, on condition that the teacher certifies that the research paper is related to that subject.

**Standards**

6. This Degree shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled the requirements of these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of a sufficiently high standard.

**Transfer to LLB (Hons)**

7. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate who has completed only the First Law Examination and, in special circumstances any other candidate, and without payment of a fee, permit the candidate to transfer to a course under these Regulations; for which the candidate may then be credited with the subjects already passed for the LLB.

**Transfer to LLB**

8. A candidate whose work does not in the opinion of the Faculty satisfy the standard prescribed in Regulation 6 or who at any stage elects to withdraw from this Degree, shall be entitled to have credited to the LLB Degree without payment of a fee those subjects (being subjects for the LLB Degree) in which the candidate has passed or been credited with a pass.

**Commencement**

9. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) from January 1973, but any candidate who began his or her law course before that date or before 1967 shall be entitled to the credits prescribed in Regulation 12 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

---

## PROFESSIONAL LEGAL STUDIES COURSE

A candidate seeking admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must satisfy the requirements of the Professional Examinations in Law Regulations 1987.

The Regulations are printed in the University Grants Committee Handbook. Details are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS LLM

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Laws shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and also:
  - have attained an average grade of B or higher in the candidate's course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
  - have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.
- No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence.
- (1) Every candidate for this Degree shall:

**EITHER:**

- Pass the examination in six of the papers prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations:
  - in one year in the case of a full-time student, or
  - in not more than two successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time.

**OR:**

- in one year pass the examination in three of the papers so prescribed, and
  - present a thesis (25.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.
- (2) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she:
- is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the two years of the work for this Degree, and
  - furnishes such evidence, of being and of intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.

4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

*25.501,	*25.502 Administrative Law	*25.545,	*25.546 Law Reform
*25.503,	*25.504 Commercial Law	25.547,	*25.548 Local Government Law
*25.505,	*25.506 Comparative Law	*25.549,	*25.550 Pacific Legal Studies
*25.507,	*25.508 Constitutional Law	*25.551,	*25.552 Planning Law
*25.509,	*25.510 Conflict of Laws	*25.553,	*25.554 Restitution
*25.511,	*25.512 Creditors' Remedies	*25.555,	*25.556 Sales and Sales Financing
25.513,	*25.514 Criminal Law	*25.557,	*25.558 Shipping Law
*25.515,	*25.516 Criminology	*25.559,	*25.560 Transport Law
25.517,	*25.518 Environmental Law	*25.561,	*25.562 Air and Space Law
*25.519,	*25.520 Equity	*25.563,	25.564 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.521,	*25.522 Family Law	*25.565,	25.566 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.523,	*25.524 Industrial Law	25.567,	*25.568 Civil Rights
25.525,	*25.526 International Law	*25.569,	25.570 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.527,	*25.528 Jurisprudence	*25.571,	*25.572 Welfare Law
*25.529,	*25.530 Land Law	*25.573,	*25.574 Insurance Law
*25.531,	*25.532 Law and Society	*25.575,	*25.576 New Zealand Legal History
*25.533,	*25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control	25.577,	*25.578 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.535,	*25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporated	25.579,	*25.580 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.537,	*25.538 Law of Contract	25.581,	*25.582 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law
*25.539,	*25.540 Law of Evidence	*25.583,	*25.584 Partnership
*25.541,	*25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning	*25.585,	*25.586 Maori Law
25.543,	*25.544 Law of Torts	*25.587,	*25.588 International Trade

One paper (i) prescribed for the Degree of MCom or the Degree of MComLaw, and (ii) taught in the Department of Commercial Law in the School of Commerce, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is not substantially similar to any paper

offered and taught in that Faculty under this Regulation. One paper, offered in any Faculty at Stage III or Masters level, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is relevant to and appropriate to be included in the candidate's course of study for this Degree.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### Thesis

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.601) the following conditions shall apply:
- The thesis shall be of the value of three papers, and shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition, or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher, upon a subject approved by the Dean.
  - A candidate may submit the thesis in the year in which the examination is taken or in a subsequent year.
  - The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.
  - At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required to attend, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
  - Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances, when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
  - The thesis shall be presented within three years of the year in which the examination is first taken but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 16.

### Honours

6. (1) This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.  
(2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Honours.

### Transitional

7. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates for the Degree of Master of Laws; except that any candidate for the Degree who first enrolled for it before 1982 shall complete the course under the Regulation last published in the 1981 *Calendar*.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Master's Degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF JURISPRUDENCE MJur

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).  
2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Laws.

### Course Content

3. (a) Every candidate for this Degree shall either:  
(i) in one year pass the examinations in four papers in the subjects prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations, or  
(ii) submit a thesis (25.611) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.  
(b) The choice of subjects to be taken by each candidate proceeding under Regulation 3 (a) (i)  
(i) shall be subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean"), and  
(ii) shall not include any subject with which the candidate has been credited for the Degree of Master of Commerce.
4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:
- |          |  |          |  |
|----------|--|----------|--|
| *25.501, | *25.502 Administrative Law                       | *25.545, | *25.546 Law Reform                                   |
| *25.503, | *25.504 Commercial Law                           | 25.547,  | *25.548 Local Government Law                         |
| *25.505, | *25.506 Comparative Law                          | *25.549, | *25.550 Pacific Legal Studies                        |
| *25.507, | *25.508 Constitutional Law                       | *25.551, | *25.552 Planning Law                                 |
| *25.509, | *25.510 Conflict of Laws                         | *25.553, | *25.554 Restitution                                  |
| *25.511, | *25.512 Creditors' Remedies                      | *25.555, | *25.556 Sales and Sales Financing                    |
| 25.513,  | *25.514 Criminal Law                             | *25.557, | *25.558 Shipping Law                                 |
| *25.515, | *25.516 Criminology                              | *25.559, | *25.560 Transport Law                                |
| 25.517,  | *25.518 Environmental Law                        | *25.561, | *25.562 Air and Space Law                            |
| *25.519, | *25.520 Equity                                   | 25.563,  | 25.564 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law  |
| *25.521, | *25.522 Family Law                               | *25.565, | 25.566 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law  |
| *25.523, | *25.524 Industrial Law                           | 25.567,  | *25.568 Civil Rights                                 |
| 25.525,  | *25.526 International Law                        | *25.569, | 25.570 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law  |
| *25.527, | *25.528 Jurisprudence                            | *25.571, | *25.572 Welfare Law                                  |
| *25.529, | *25.530 Land Law                                 | *25.573, | *25.574 Insurance Law                                |
| *25.531, | *25.532 Law and Society                          | *25.575, | *25.576 New Zealand Legal History                    |
| *25.533, | *25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control      | 25.577,  | *25.578 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| *25.535, | *25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unicorporate | 25.579,  | *25.580 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| *25.537, | *25.538 Law of Contract                          | 25.581,  | *25.582 Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| *25.539, | *25.540 Law of Evidence                          | *25.583, | *25.584 Partnership                                  |
| *25.541, | *25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning      | *25.585, | *25.586 Maori Land Law                               |
| 25.543,  | *25.544 Law of Torts                             | *25.587, | *25.588 International Trade                          |

One paper, offered in any Faculty at Stage III or Masters level, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is relevant to and appropriate to be included in the candidate's course of study for this Degree.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**Thesis**

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.611) the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher; upon a subject approved by the Dean.
  - (b) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.
  - (c) At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
  - (d) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
  - (e) The thesis shall be submitted not later than three years after the candidate's enrolment for the Degree, but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 16.

**Distinction**

6. (1) This Degree may be awarded with or without Distinction.
- (2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Distinction.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Master's Degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

---

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF JURISPRUDENCE DJur

---

**General Provisions**

1. Other than in special circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Jurisprudence shall:
  - (i) be a graduate of the University of Auckland, and
  - (ii) hold an Honours or a Masters degree (or its equivalent) in Law.
2. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree until at least five years after the award of an Honours or Masters degree, as the case may be. Where a person has been awarded more than one degree of the kind specified in 1(ii), the five year period shall run from the date of the last degree to have been awarded.
3. The Degree shall be awarded on the basis of published works in monographs or refereed journals of international standard which, in the opinion of the examiners, have made a substantial contribution to the discipline of law.

**Application to be Examined**

4. A candidate shall apply in writing to the Registrar to be examined and shall submit with the application the fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations and a Statutory Declaration which must:
  - (i) clearly identify the published works submitted in support of the Degree;
  - (ii) state the extent to which these published works are based on the candidate's own work and identify as clearly as possible any parts which are not so based;
  - (iii) state what portion (if any) of the published work has been previously presented for a degree or diploma, and
  - (iv) declare that the published work has not previously been accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.
5. The candidate shall, at the time of applying to be examined, lodge with the Registrar three copies of the works submitted in support of the award of the Degree.
6. On receipt of the materials in Regulations 4 and 5 the application shall be referred to the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Law which shall submit to the Senate a preliminary report indicating whether, in the opinion of the Committee, the examination should proceed. If the Senate decides that the examination should not proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid on the application to be examined.

**Examination of Published Works**

7. If the Senate decides that the examination should proceed, it shall appoint three examiners. One (who shall act as Convenor of the examiners) shall be a member of the academic staff of the University of Auckland; one shall be resident outside New Zealand; and one shall be a member of a Faculty of Law at another University in New Zealand.
8. The duties of the examiners shall be:
  - (i) to report independently on the quality of the published works and their value as a significant contribution to the discipline of law; and
  - (ii) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded.
9. The reports of the Examiners shall be placed before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree should be awarded.
10. Where the Degree is not awarded, the Senate may nevertheless permit the candidate to be re-examined at a later date. This date shall be at least five years after the date on which the applicant lodged the application for the Degree with the Registrar.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

---

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

---

**LLB AND LLB (Hons)****Law Intermediate Examination****25.103 The Legal System**

An introduction to: theories of the nature, functions and origins of law and legal systems; the New Zealand legal system, including its sources of law, the nature of its courts and selected other legal institutions, and its operation in historical and contemporary New Zealand; Maori concepts of law and justice and their relationship to the New Zealand legal system; legal reasoning including both statutory interpretation and case-law reasoning.

**First Law Examination****25.101 Criminal Law**

The general principles of criminal liability. Selected indictable and summary offences chargeable under New Zealand Law. An introduction to the procedure upon indictment and to summary procedure (excluding the law of evidence).

**25.104 The Law of Torts**

General principles of civil liability. The law as to the various kinds of torts. The law relating to compensation for personal injury by accident in New Zealand.

**25.105 The Law of Contract**

The general principles of the law relating to agreements. Selected topics in the law of contract. An introduction to the law of agency.

**25.106 Public Law**

The principles and workings of the constitution, the institutions of government, the exercise of public power and relations between the citizens and the state. Controls on the exercise of public power, including an introduction to judicial review.

**25.406 Legal Practice I****Second Law Examination****25.201 Land Law**

An introduction to the law relating to property in land.

**25.202 Equity**

The general principles of equity.

**25.203 The Law of Personal Property**

An introduction to the law relating to property in goods and other tangible and intangible assets.

**25.204 Commercial Law**

An introduction to the law relating to the sale of goods, hire purchase, personal property, secured transactions, credit contracts, consumer protection and negotiable instruments.

**25.205 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law. Subordinate legislation. Discretionary powers of Ministers, officials and local bodies. Administrative tribunals and their functions. Controls over the exercise of legislative, judicial and other powers.

**25.207 Advanced Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

**25.208 Company Law and Partnership**

An introduction to the principles of company law and the law of partnership. Rights and liabilities of those who form, operate and deal with companies, and partnerships.

**25.209 Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

**\*25.210 Criminology**

An introduction to the theory of criminology. Selected studies in crime and its causes, law enforcement, the administration of criminal justice, and the nature and purpose of the penal system.

**25.211 Family Law**

The law relating to cohabitation and marriage. The establishment of parenthood and the legal incidents of the relationship between parent and child. Adoption.

**25.212 Industrial Law**

Selected studies in the relationship of employer and employee; the rights, responsibilities and organisation of trade unions; the determination of industrial disputes relating to wages, conditions and rights; and the legality of industrial action.

**\*25.213 International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions. The role of international institutions in the settlement of international disputes, particularly the role of the International Court of Justice. Selected projects relating to specific international institutions.

**25.214 International Law**

An introduction to the law of nations. Selected topics in the adjudication and settlement of international disputes, the law of war, peace and neutrality, and the law of international institutions.

**25.217 Jurisprudence**

An introduction to the major schools of jurisprudence, the major contemporary disputes in jurisprudence and the major perspectives on law current in contemporary thought.

**25.218 Legal History**

An introduction to the history of present-day legal rules and institutions. Selected topics in English and New Zealand legal history.

**\*25.220 Local Government Law**

An introduction to the law governing the structure, powers and territorial definition of local government units. Selected studies in

legal problems of local government and its relationship with central government.

**25.221 Income Tax**

The principles of the law relating to income tax.

**25.222 Roman Law**

Outline of Roman private law according to Justinian and Gaius. Sources and historical development of Roman Law. The law of actions; the law of property; obligations; family and succession. (Translation of substantial portions of the Latin text shall not be required.)

**25.223 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

**25.224 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific States and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.225 Law and Society**

A study of relationships between theories of law and justice and social conditions, with particular reference to empirical studies of law internationally and domestically.

**25.226 Legal Theory**

A study of major theoretical perspectives on the nature, values and functions of law, including a study of justice; the structure of legal ideas and the nature of legal reasoning from common law and comparative perspectives.

**25.228 Competition Law**

A study of the principles of competition law.

**25.229 Advanced Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

**\*25.230 Advanced Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

**\*25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

**\*25.232 Legislation**

The making and application of primary and subordinate legislation; legislative drafting and statutory interpretation. Selected topics from the history, evaluation, codification and judicial review of legislation.

**\*25.233 Succession and Matrimonial Property**

An introduction to the laws of wills and succession, testamentary promises and the administration of estates. Matrimonial and family property.

**\*25.234 Welfare Law**

A study of the law relating to income maintenance, physical and mental handicap, housing and homelessness, access to legal and related services.

**25.235 Community Law Project**

Participation in and report on a project involving law in a community context, and evaluation of the issues arising therefrom.

**\*25.236, \*25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.407 Legal Practice II**

**Note:** Some of these courses will be taught for the full-year and others will not. Students should refer to the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of courses they propose to take in any particular year, since this may vary from time to time.

**Third Law Examination****25.301 Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

**\*25.302 Advanced Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Commercial Law.

**25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

**\*25.304 Advanced Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

**25.305 Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

**25.306 Advanced Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

**\*25.307 Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

**25.308 Civil Procedure**

Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other proceedings, with reference to the evolution of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction), appellate procedure.

**†25.309 Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the raising of share and debt capital by companies.

**25.310 Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

**\*25.311 Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgements.

**\*25.312 Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgements.

**25.313 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment. Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, agricultural chemicals, marine pollution. International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.314 Evidence**

The general principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases. A critical evaluation of forensic law in New Zealand, including a comparison with systems of trial in other countries.

**†25.315 International Trade**

The law relating to international business transactions.

**\*25.316 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.318 Psychiatry and the Law**

This paper will provide a general introduction to the formal relationship between psychiatry and law with a particular emphasis on the law as it relates to special patients.

**25.319 Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

**25.320 Restitution**

A study of the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

**25.321 Supervised Research****25.322 Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

**25.323 Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

**\*25.324 Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.325 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.326 Insurance Law**

The principles of the law relating to insurance.

**\*25.328 Advocacy**

The preparation and presentation of cases; the theory and practice of advocacy.

**\*25.329 Advanced Agency and Partnership**

Advanced studies in the law of agency and partnership.

**\*25.330 Legal Ethics**

An examination of the ethical duties of legal practitioners towards their clients, the Courts and other tribunals, other practitioners, and members of the public.

**25.331 Remedies**

Advanced study of civil remedies; and their historical and philosophical backgrounds. Discretionary relief in Equity and under statutes.

**\*25.332 Consumer Law**

The law relating to consumer protection. Consumer remedies.

**25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**

Studies in the theory and practice of negotiation, mediation and dispute resolution.

**\*25.334 Advanced Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of law.

**\*25.335 Advanced Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

**\*25.336 Natural Resources Law**

A study of the law relating to the management and exploitation of natural resources.

**\*25.337, \*25.338, \*25.339, \*25.340 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

Any one or more optional courses prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**25.408 Legal Practice III**

Note: Students should consult the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of these courses, and any prerequisites for taking them since these may vary from time to time.

---

**LAW AND PRACTICE IN NEW ZEALAND**

The prescriptions for the Examination in the law and practice in New Zealand may be obtained from the Dean of the Faculty. Written notice of a candidate's wish to take the Examination should be given to the Registrar with payment of the prescribed fee.

---

**LLB (Hons)****For the Subjects Listed in Regulation 3**

**225.301, \*225.302, 225.303, \*225.304, 225.305, \*225.306, 225.307, 225.306, 225.307, 225.308, 225.309, 225.310, \*225.311, \*225.312, \*225.313, \*225.314, \*225.315 Studies in a Selected Topic**

As prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

**\*225.341 Admiralty Law**

Admiralty jurisdiction, extent of territorial waters, sources of maritime law, nature of maritime liens, bills of lading and charter parties, aspects of conflicts of laws in admiralty, rules established by international law in admiralty cases.

**\*225.342 Air and Space Law**

Same prescription as for 25.324 (LLB).

**\*225.343 Aspects of Industrial Law**

Analysis of selected problems in industrial law and industrial relations.

**\*225.344 Business Regulation**

Government regulation of business, analysis of scope of control, its purposes and dangers, the common law and statutory regulations of trade and industry, restraint of trade and monopoly, restrictive trade practices.

**\*225.345 Causes of Crime**

The significance of primary and secondary criminogenic factors.

**225.346 Civil Rights**

A comparative study of recognised human rights and existing legal safeguards. Aspects include protection of minority rights, speech and assembly, police practices, race relations.

**\*225.347 Commercial Letters of Credit**

The law and practice relating to commercial letters of credit.

**\*225.348 Consumer Law**

A study of legislative and judicial attempts to protect the consumer.

**\*225.349 Copyright and Patent Law**

Common law, statutory and international rules governing copyright and patents.

**\*225.350 Corporation Finance**

Problems of corporate finance, including the rules governing raising capital and loans, rights to dividend and distribution of assets, amendment of corporate instruments, re-organisation, holding and subsidiary companies.

**\*225.351 Economic Regulation**

Legal problems encountered in regulating economic behaviour and alternative techniques for resolving them; anti-trust and labour problems.

**225.352 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment. Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, chemicals, marine pollution. International aspects of environmental problems.

**\*225.353 Estate Planning**

An analysis of the factors which deserve consideration in planning for the future management and disposition of income and capital.

**\*225.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law**

The law governing insurance other than marine insurance.

**\*225.355 Law of International Business and Finance**

A study of problems of commercial law, administrative law and international law arising from international trade, business and finance, including New Zealand's relationship with the European Economic Community.

**\*225.356 Law and Social Problems**

Selected aspects of the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, the role of law in the modern state.

**\*225.357 Law of Banking**

The law relating to banking, with particular reference to the relationship of banker and customer and the banker's duty to third parties.

**\*225.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant**

The law of landlord and tenant, including statutory tenancies and fair rents legislation.

**\*225.359 Law Reform**

Methods of law reform with particular reference to New Zealand.

**Note:** Students may be required to prepare research papers for Law Reform Committees.

**\*225.360 Law Relating to Computers**

An introduction to selected topics related to computers, including a brief introduction to elementary programme preparation, computerisation of statute and case law, protection of software, labour relations affected by computers and databank privacy.

**\*225.361 Legal Accounting**

A critical examination of generally accepted accounting principles, an introduction to corporate financial problems, accounting problems of a law office.

**\*225.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations**

Investigation of legal efforts to combat discrimination, and an inquiry into the validity of law in this field.

**\*225.363 Legal Education**

The objectives, methods and development of legal education and the functions and obligations of the law teacher.

**\*225.364 Legal History**

The effect on law of social, economic and constitutional change, with particular reference to England and New Zealand.

**\*225.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market**

The objectives, structures and functions and relationships of the

European Economic Community and other European regional arrangements.

**225.366 Local Government Law**

The law developed and applied in local government, construction and operation of statutory powers of local and public authorities, bylaws, financing, contractual and tortious liability.

**\*225.367 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**\*225.368 Marine Insurance Law**

The law governing marine insurance.

**225.369 Medico-Legal Problems**

A study of the relationship between law and medicine, preparation and presentation of medical proof in litigation, expert medical testimony.

**\*225.370 Military Law**

Aspects of military law, the relation of civil to military jurisdiction, court martial procedure.

**\*225.371 Penology**

An analysis of theory and practice in regard to the punishment and treatment of the offender.

**\*225.372 Problems in Choice of Law**

The application of choice of law methods to specific situations, the feasibility of developing choice of law rules and principles consistent with predictability and uniformity.

**\*225.373 Problems in Contract and Tort**

Analysis of selected problems arising in the law of contract and the law of tort.

**225.374 Problems in Criminal Law**

Analysis of selected problems in criminal law.

**\*225.375 Problems in Equity**

Problems relating to the equitable jurisdiction of the courts, with particular reference to the law of trusts.

**\*225.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy**

Selected jurisprudential problems of definition of law; the concept of justice, relation of law and morality, the function of legal analysis.

**\*225.377 Professional Responsibility**

The role of the legal profession in modern society, the obligations of a barrister and solicitor, conflict of interest, defending the unpopular client or cause.

**\*225.378 Registration of Title to Land**

Legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.

**\*225.379 Remedies Against the Government**

Liability of the Crown in tort and contract, procedure for enforcing rights against the Crown.

**\*225.380 Securities Law**

The law governing securities over personal and industrial property.

**\*225.381 Selected Topics in Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics from foreign law systems, including civil and Soviet law.

**\*225.382 Shipping Law**

Legal principles governing ownership of ships, limitation of liability of shippers, charter-parties and affreightment, collision, salvage, towage, carriage of goods by sea.

**\*225.383 Social Control of Land**

The purposes and effect of legislation controlling the use of land, housing improvement schemes, town and country planning, government and local body powers.

**\*225.384 State and Local Taxation**

Analysis of property, sales, personal and corporate income taxes, tax policy and administration, local body taxation.

**\*225.385 The Law Relating to Damages**

The principles governing damages in contract and in tort.

**\*225.386 The Legal Process**

The function of the courts, counsel, legislature, administrative agencies and officials in decision-making.

**\*225.387 Trial Practice**

Advocacy, procedural and substantive law in trial proceedings, pre-trial preparation, proof.

**\*225.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**

The basic constitutional problems of the United Nations,



regulation of the use of force, definition of aggression, punishment of crimes against the peace, disarmament, control of atomic energy, regulation of the use of outer space, an international police force.

**\*225.389 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**\*225.390 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

**\*225.391 Restitution**

Same prescription as for 25.320 (LLB).

**25.604 Dissertation**

## ADDITIONAL SUBJECTS FOR CANDIDATES SEEKING ADMISSION AS BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS OF THE HIGH COURT OF NEW ZEALAND

A candidate for admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must have completed the requirements of the LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree, achieved passes in certain compulsory degree subjects, and successfully undertaken the Professional Legal Studies Course. Details of the content of the Professional course are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## LLM AND MJur

**\*25.501, \*25.502 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law with special reference to New Zealand.

**\*25.503, \*25.504 Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

**\*25.505, \*25.506 Comparative Law**

Advanced studies in selected systems of law.

**\*25.507, \*25.508 Constitutional Law**

Advanced studies in constitutional and local body law.

**\*25.509, \*25.510 Conflict of Laws**

The nature of private international law. Fundamental conceptions; classification; renvoi; domicile; public policy. The principles of private international law relating to: (a) persons; (b) contracts; (c) torts; (d) property; (e) procedure and evidence.

**\*25.511, \*25.512 Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Advanced studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

**25.513, \*25.514 Criminal Law**

The history and principles of criminal law, comprising selected topics on substantive and adjective criminal law, evidence in criminal cases, the aetiology of crime and the purposes and methods of punishment.

**\*25.515, \*25.516 Criminology**

The nature and extent of crime in our society. Selected studies of the causes of crime: results, underlying assumptions and limitations. Political aspects of the criminal law. The interactionist approach. Selected criminological problems. The criminal justice system. Objectives of the system. The role of the police. A critical analysis of penal measures. Sentencing. Evaluating the effectiveness of penal sanctions. Selected penological problems.

**25.517, \*25.518 Environmental Law**

An examination of the law relating to pollution and other environmental problems with an emphasis on comparative studies. An exploration of various institutional arrangements for

managing the environment. The concept of environmental impact reporting.

**\*25.519, \*25.520 Equity**

The history and principles of equity.

**\*25.521, \*25.522 Family Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child and family relationships generally.

**\*25.523, \*25.524 Industrial Law**

Selected and comparative studies in Industrial Law.

**25.525, \*25.526 International Law**

The principles of the law of nations in peace and war including the status and relations *inter se* of the members of the Commonwealth of Nations and the Republic of Ireland and questions of nationality.

**\*25.527, \*25.528 Jurisprudence**

Theories concerning the origin and development of law. The history of legal theory. Modern schools of thought concerning the nature and purpose of law. Sources of law. Analysis of legal conceptions.

**\*25.529, \*25.530 Land Law**

The history and principles of land law.

**\*25.531, \*25.532 Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, and the role of law in the modern state.

**\*25.533, \*25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control**

The law and practice relating to banking and exchange control regulations, with special reference to New Zealand.

**\*25.535, \*25.536 The Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate**

The principles of the law as to corporations and unincorporated bodies with special reference to registered companies.

**\*25.537, \*25.538 The Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

**\*25.539, \*25.540 The Law of Evidence**

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

**\*25.541, \*25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning**

Advanced studies in the law relating to taxation and gift, death and conveyance duties.

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of estate planning.

**25.543, \*25.544 The Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability with special reference to the law of torts.

**\*25.545, \*25.546 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.547, \*25.548 Local Government Law**

Selected studies of the history, structure, powers and practice of local government units and related aspects.

**\*25.549, \*25.550 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**\*25.551, \*25.552 Planning Law**

Selected studies of land use regulation law, planning structure, practice and theory.

**\*25.553, \*25.554 Restitution**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

**\*25.555, \*25.556 Sales and Sales Financing**

Advanced studies in the law of sales and the financing of domestic sales in New Zealand.

**\*25.557, \*25.558 Shipping Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of carriage of goods by sea, including containerisation.

**\*25.559, \*25.560 Transport Law**

Advanced studies in the history, exposition and comparison of selected topics of the law of transport, including land, sea and air

transport, including rules of international law and of municipal law.

**\*25.561, \*25.562 Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**\*25.563, 25.564 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**\*25.565, 25.566 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.567, \*25.568 Civil Rights**

**\*25.569, 25.570 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**\*25.571, \*25.572 Welfare Law**

**\*25.573, \*25.574 Insurance Law**

**\*25.575, \*25.576 New Zealand Legal History**

**25.577, \*25.578 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.579, \*25.580 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.581, \*25.582 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**\*25.583, \*25.584 Partnership**

**\*25.585, \*25.586 Maori Land Law**

**\*25.587, \*25.588 International Trade**

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Dagged papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CRIMINOLOGY DipCrim

The Diploma in Criminology has been discontinued. In special circumstances arrangements will be made by the Department of Law to enable students already enrolled for the Diploma to complete it under the Regulations published in the 1987 *Calendar* at pp 291-292.

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LEGAL STUDIES PGDipLS

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies shall, before enrolment, have been admitted to or be qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).
2. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of instruction of not less than one year.
3. (1) Every candidate for the Diploma, either within one year in the case of a full-time student, or within not more than three successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time, shall:
  - (a) Fulfil the requirements of the project referred to in Regulation 4.
  - (b) Pass the examination in and fulfil any other requirements of each of four or more papers:
    - (i) which, if taken concurrently, would involve an aggregate of ten hours of instruction per week; and
    - (ii) which include papers listed in Regulation 5 in weighting sufficient when added to the project referred to in Regulation 4 to constitute at least one third of the candidate's course for this Diploma; and
    - (iii) of which the remaining papers are papers offered for the Second or Third Law Examination of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws except that one may be a paper, offered in any Faculty, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is relevant to and appropriate to be included in the candidate's course of study for this Diploma.
    - (iv) of which the remainder are made up of papers offered from time to time for the Second or Third Law Examination of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws; and
    - (v) of which none are, or are substantially similar to, papers already credited to the candidate's Bachelor's Degree.
- (2) For the purposes of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she:
  - (a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the three years of the work for this Postgraduate Diploma, and
  - (b) furnishes such evidence of being and intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.
4. Every candidate shall, during his or her course, complete to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Faculty") a substantial exercise (carrying a weighting of three hours of instruction per week) in the detailed application of law upon the terms as to content, supervision and reporting prescribed therefor by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

Note: A candidate wishing to comply with this requirement should enrol for 25.451 Legal Project.

5. The papers for which provision is made in Regulation 3 shall be:

25.452	Advanced Studies in Criminal Law	*25.464	Studies in Air and Space Law
25.453	Studies in Planning Law	25.465	Studies in Maori Land Law
25.454	Advanced Studies in Administrative Law	25.466	Studies in Intellectual Property
25.455	Advanced Studies in Family Law	*25.467	Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy
25.456	Advanced Studies in International Law	*25.468	Advanced Studies in Law and Society
†25.457	Studies in Company Finance	25.469	Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law
25.458	Studies in Comparative Law	*25.470	Advanced Studies in Criminology
*25.459	Studies in the Conflict of Laws	25.471	Advanced Studies in Industrial Law
*25.460	Studies in Creditors' Remedies	25.472	Advanced Studies in Contract
25.461	Studies in Restitution	*25.473	Advanced Studies in Tort
25.462	Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser	*25.474	Studies in Civil Obligations
25.463	Studies in Estate and Tax Planning	25.475-480	Special topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Dagged papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

6. A candidate who, being a full-time student, has failed within one year or, being a part-time student, has failed within three successive years, to complete the requirements of the Postgraduate Diploma may in exceptional circumstances be permitted by the Faculty to complete those requirements in a subsequent year.
7. A candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma may, with the prior approval of the Dean, elect to submit a Research Paper in lieu of examination in any one of the papers chosen for the Postgraduate Diploma if the teacher in the subject has certified that the Research Paper is related to that subject.
8. A candidate who has passed papers for a Certificate of Proficiency which meet the requirements of Regulation 3 may, subject to the approval of the Dean, credit those papers to the Postgraduate Diploma.

**Note:** Refer Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), Regulation 14.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PGDipLS

#### **25.452 Advanced Studies in Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

#### **25.453 Studies in Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

#### **25.454 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

#### **25.455 Advanced Studies in Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

#### **25.456 Advanced Studies in International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

#### **†25.457 Studies in Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the raising of share and debt capital by companies.

#### **25.458 Studies in Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

#### **\*25.459 Studies in the Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgments.

#### **\*25.460 Studies in Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

#### **25.461 Studies in Restitution**

A study in the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

#### **25.462 Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

#### **25.463 Studies in Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate

planning and tax planning.

#### **\*25.464 Studies in Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating air space and outer space, aircraft spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

#### **25.465 Studies in Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

#### **25.466 Studies in Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

#### **\*25.467 Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of Law.

#### **\*25.468 Advanced Studies in Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

#### **25.469 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

#### **\*25.470 Advanced Studies in Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

#### **25.471 Advanced Studies in Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

#### **25.472 Advanced Studies in Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

#### **\*25.473 Advanced Studies in Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

#### **\*25.474 Studies in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

#### **25.475-25.480 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

# Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology

## Contents

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	School of Medicine	309
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology	310
	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery	310
	Degree of Master of Audiology	311
	Degree of Master of Health Sciences	313
	Degree of Master of Medical Science	314
	Degree of Master of Public Health	315
	Degree of Doctor of Medicine	316
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology	317
	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery	318
	Degree of Master of Audiology	319
	Degree of Master of Health Sciences	319
	Degree of Master of Medical Science	319
	Degree of Master of Public Health	321
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics	321
	Diploma in Mental Health	322
	Diploma in Obstetrics	322
	Diploma in Paediatrics	323
	Diploma in Public Health	323
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics	324
	Diploma in Mental Health	324
	Diploma in Obstetrics	324
	Diploma in Paediatrics	325
<b>Further Information</b>	Higher Academic Training in Obstetrics and Gynaecology	325
	Refresher Training for Family Doctors and Specialists	325
	Postgraduate Medical Committee	325

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

The medical course in the University of Auckland is of six years' duration. The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (BHB) is awarded upon completion of the first three years, and the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBChB), upon completion of the full course.

### Bachelor of Human Biology

The curriculum in Human Biology covers a spectrum of studies from molecular biology to social psychology and the processes of disease. Introductory studies of chemistry, physics and biology lead to specialised studies of the human body and the integration of its responses. During the first year, courses in biology, chemistry and physics provide the language and concepts needed for the understanding of the applications of these sciences in medical biology. Biochemistry, immunobiology and selected aspects of anatomy and physiology are introduced. Opportunities are provided for hospital visits where lectures and case presentations relate the basic and clinical sciences. The first year course in Community Health will focus on the distribution and determinants of disease in human populations and the strategies available for the prevention of disease and the promotion of health. Particular attention will be given to the influence of cultural and environmental factors on health.

The course in Behavioural Science extends over three years, the first focused on general principles, the second on issues of medical risk and the third on medical treatment. Topics include communication, decision-making, culture, behaviour and health, individual psychology and development, and brain-behaviour relationships.

During the second and third years, the course presents a detailed analysis of human structure and function, of the ways in which body mechanisms are disturbed, and of the ways in which disturbances are corrected. Fundamental biochemical and physiological mechanisms - largely expressed at cellular levels - and their structural bases are considered first, then the principal organ systems. The study of the locomotor and nervous systems, of the complex control of body activity, metabolism and nutrition, of reproduction and growth, and of fundamental aspects of pathology, immunobiology and pharmacology form further major units of the course. Over this period students maintain a compulsory continuing study of growth and progress of a normal child.

Admission to the first year of the course is restricted to those students who intend to complete the six year course for entry into the medical profession.

### Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery

The clinical triennium follows qualification for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology. The Auckland Area Health Board has made available for teaching purposes all hospitals under its control; at present instruction has been arranged at the four major hospitals - Auckland, Middlemore, National Women's and North Shore. The Waikato Hospital Board also provides teaching facilities at Waikato Hospital for students.

Subjects studied include medicine, surgery, obstetrics and gynaecology, paediatrics, pathology, immunobiology, behavioural science, psychiatry, clinical pharmacology, general practice and community health together with their main sub-specialties. During their final year Trainee Interns are expected to undertake some supervised responsibility for the care of patients.

The Clinical Methods course of six weeks' duration introduces the students to the clinical examination of patients particularly physical examination and history taking. This is followed by an introductory series of lectures and symposia preceding the sequence of ward attachments in the next two years. These practical studies in hospital wards and outpatient clinics enable the student to observe and increasingly participate in the care of patients with diverse health problems in the general and special fields of medicine and surgery. During formal instruction emphasis is placed on topic teaching in which a particular disease or health problem is studied in its various aspects - medical, surgical, pathological and social.

During the Clinical Course students spend a proportion of their time in elective studies, that is pursuing in depth, subjects of particular interest to them. They also serve a period in general practice under the direction of family doctors.

### Research

Each department in the School of Medicine has a range of active research programmes. These cover areas of basic medical science to clinical medicine. Opportunities exist for students to undertake supervised studies leading to a Master's degree, or to a Doctor of Philosophy. Students interested in research in the School of Medicine are encouraged to consult with the Head of Department of interest, or seek general information concerning financial support or opportunities available from the Sub-Dean. (Research and Graduate Studies).

### Master of Medical Science (MMedSc)

This degree is taken after the completion of the BHB degree and can be taken in any of the basic medical science or clinical departments.

### Master of Audiology

### Master of Health Sciences

### Master of Public Health

### Doctoral Degrees

### Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)

All departments undertake graduate teaching for the research Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) in accordance with the regulations of the University.

### Doctor of Medicine (MD)

This is offered as a non-supervised research Degree by thesis alone and may not be submitted until five years after graduation MBChB. The Degree is usually based on clinical research work which may be undertaken outside the University. It is normally available to medical graduates of the University of Auckland and, under the Ad Eundem Admission Regulations to graduates of other medical schools who are working as members of the University of Auckland academic staff or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.

Candidates do not enrol in the normal fashion but at an appropriate stage in their research seek the recommendation of the Faculty to enrol for the Degree. Faculty's recommendation is based on a preliminary review of the topic, the methods involved in the investigation and the contribution of this work to medical knowledge. Permission to submit the thesis may be obtained after the work is completed or before it is undertaken but there is a five-year upper limitation of time between permission to submit and the actual submission of the thesis.

### Diplomas

Diploma courses are offered in the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology and by the Department of Paediatrics. All clinical departments are associated with the basic and advanced vocational training for the examination and diplomas offered by the various colleges.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF HUMAN BIOLOGY BHB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology shall follow a course of study for not fewer than three years.

#### Admission

2. (a) Admission to the course of study in Human Biology shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission to the course shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 1 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.  
(b) Admission to Part I of the course of study shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.  
(c) In such exceptional circumstances as the Senate may approve or under the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, admission may be granted to an applicant to Part II and Part III.

#### Course Content

3. The course of study shall consist of three Parts. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the course of study: provided that a candidate, who re-enrols for a Part of the course of study having failed to pass it as a whole at the first attempt, may be allowed to carry out, to the satisfaction of the Heads of Departments concerned, alternative work in lieu of the work in that Part where his previous performance was satisfactory. §For the purpose of assessing the grade of this candidate as a whole for a Part of the course of study the Senate may approve that the satisfactory pass grade in that previous work be carried forward.

Note: §Normally a B- grade or better.

4. Except as provided in Regulation 2 (c) hereof no candidate shall be permitted to enrol in Part II of the course until he has passed Part I, or in Part III until he has passed Part II.
5. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate such practical written, and tutorial work in each Part of the course of study as may be required.
6. The papers prescribed for examination for the course of study in Human Biology are:

#### Part I

Biology 60.100, 60.101, 60.102

Physico-Chemistry 60.103, 60.104, 60.105

Behavioural Science and Community Health 60.108

#### Part II

Anatomy 60.205

Biochemistry 60.206

Physiology (Medical) II 60.207

Behavioural Science II 60.208

#### Part III

Immunobiology 60.300

General Pathology 60.301

Neurolocomotor Systems 60.302

Human Reproduction and Development 60.304

Physiology (Medical) III 60.305, 60.306

Pharmacology 60.307

Behavioural Science III 60.308

7. (a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MEDICINE AND BACHELOR OF SURGERY MBChB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall before enrolment have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology not more than one academic year previously, except where the Senate otherwise permits.
2. Each candidate shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
3. (a) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II until work prescribed for Part I has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.  
(b) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part III until the work prescribed for Parts I and II has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.
4. Each candidate shall follow the course of study for Part I, Part II and Part III continuously. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of Senate and on such conditions as the Senate may determine.
5. On the recommendation of the Academic Sub-Dean, and at the discretion of the Senate, a candidate who fails any year of the course may be declined permission to re-enrol in the course as a whole.

**Practical Work**

6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate, such practical and clinical work in each year of the course as may be required.

**Course Content**

7. The course shall consist of three Parts:

**Part I** (Year IV of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.100

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and clinical instruction in the diagnosis and management of patients in the hospital and in the community and the provision of health services in the population at large. Practical work will include experience of bicultural attitudes to health and health practices in New Zealand. Disciplines taught will include Medicine, Surgery, Paediatrics, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Psychiatry, Behavioural Science, Community Health, General Practice, Pathology, Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology and Clinical Pharmacology.

At the end of Part I (Year IV) there will be a written examination consisting of papers of Behavioural Science, in Community Medicine and in General Medicine and Surgical topics and an interdisciplinary clinical and oral examination.

**Part II** (Year V of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.200

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and further clinical instruction in all disciplines building on the work of Part I (Year IV), with increasing emphasis on special areas in Medicine and Surgery.

At the conclusion of Part II (Year V) there will be a major examination, consisting of (a) written papers in Pathology, Clinical Pharmacology, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Paediatrics, General Practice, Behavioural Science and two papers in General Medical and Surgical topics; (b) an inter-disciplinary clinical/oral examination in Medicine Surgery and Pathology; (c) and inter-disciplinary objective structured clinical examination (OSCE) in practical topics.

**Part III** (Year VI of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.300

Clinical work as a trainee intern and with responsibility under supervision for patients during a period of nine months together with a further three-month elective period.

8. (a) A candidate shall be deemed to pass Parts I and II of the course when the Senate so resolves after consideration of a report from the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology as to the candidate's performance and results in his work for those Parts.  
 (b) A candidate shall be deemed to have completed Part III successfully on obtaining passing assessments from each of the periods of that academic year.
9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF AUDIOLOGY MAud

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this Degree must consult the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. The consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

**Prerequisites**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Audiology, before enrolment for the Degree:
- Shall have been admitted (or have qualified for admission to) any of the following qualifying degrees:- Bachelor of Science (Honours); or Bachelor of Science; or Bachelor of Arts; or Bachelor of Human Biology; or shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to a qualifying degree; and
  - Shall (subject to Regulation 2) have fulfilled the further prerequisites in the Schedule to this Regulation.
- (b) For the purposes of these Regulations, candidates for this Degree are classified according to their qualifying degree as:
- 'BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BSc candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BA candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BHB candidates for this Degree'

**Schedule**

The further prerequisites are (subject to Regulation 2):

- (a) For BSc, BSc(Hons) or BA candidates for this Degree:
- a pass with an average grade of C+ or better at Stage III in 12 credits of Physiology, together with at least 4 credits at Stage III level from Psychology;
  - OR a pass with an average grade of C+ or better at Stage III in 12 credits of Psychology, together with at least 6 credits at Stage III level from Physiology;
  - AND passes in the papers listed below:
- |            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| Chemistry  | 08.111 or 08.121                 |
| Biology    | 39.101 or Zoology 38.102         |
| Psychology | 32.108                           |
| Psychology | 32.109                           |
| Physics    | 31.141 or 31.151 or Music 28.113 |
| Physiology | 67.201                           |
| Psychology | 32.220                           |
| Psychology | 32.230                           |
| Psychology | 32.240                           |
| Physiology | 67.302                           |
| Physiology | 67.303                           |
| Psychology | 32.303                           |
| Psychology | 32.307                           |
- (b) For BHB candidates for this Degree:
- a pass with an average grade of C+ or better in 60.305/60.306 Physiology (Medical) III.

**Variation of or Exemption from Prerequisites**

2. In any special case recommended by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Senate may at its discretion:-
- vary in any way; or
  - exempt the candidate wholly or partly from the appropriate prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1; and may accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisites in paragraphs (a) and (b) of the Schedule to Regulation 1.

**General Provisions**

3. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Audiology shall:
- pursue a course of study of not less than two academic years; and
  - undertake the course of study presented under Regulation 4 (subject to Regulation 5); and
  - pass *separately* the clinical or practical components of Audiology 751.401, 751.402, 751.403, 751.411, 751.412; and
  - pass as a whole the examinations as set out in Regulation 4.
4. Every candidate for the Degree shall:
- in the *first* year of study (subject to Regulation 5) pass as a whole in respect of the following subjects:
 

Audiology	751.401	Hearing Science
Audiology	751.402	Basic Diagnostic Audiology
Audiology	751.403	Basic Clinical Audiology;

 and one of the following papers as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science:
 

Physiology	67.401	Mechanisms of Physiological Control
Physiology	67.403	Neurophysiology
Physiology	67.405	Methods in Physiology
Psychology	32.403	Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour
Psychology	32.404	Sensation and Perception
Psychology	32.406	Physiological Psychology
Psychology	32.422	Learning Disabilities
Psychology	32.423	Mind and Computation
Psychology	32.424	Mind and Brain
  - in the *second* year of study pass in each of two papers and pass in respect of a thesis as follows:
 

Audiology	751.411	Advanced Diagnostic Audiology
Audiology	751.412	Advanced Clinical Audiology
Audiology	751.601	Thesis (which shall count as two papers).

**Variation of Course of Study**

5. With the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Dean of Science and the Head of the Department involved, a candidate may be permitted to enrol in an alternative paper prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science instead of one of the Science papers prescribed in Regulation 4 (a) above.
6. A candidate shall not enrol for a paper which he or she has already passed.

**Thesis**

7. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Audiology 751.601
- The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.
  - The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
  - A candidate shall present the thesis in the same academic year as that in which he or she first enrolls for Audiology 751.601 or with the consent of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and subject to Regulation 9 of this Regulation, in any subsequent academic year.
  - The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at such later date as may be agreed to by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulations 15.

**Honours**

8. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Candidates who have completed the full requirements of this Degree are eligible for the award of Honours.
- (c) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis; but (subject to Regulation 9) a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
- to aegrotat or compassionate pass in one paper, or
  - to resit all the papers affected, or
  - for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Note:** In order to be eligible for Honours the candidate must complete all requirements of the Degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 9.

**Time Limits**

9. (a) The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of enrolment.
- (b) In a special case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, grant the candidate:
- a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours;
  - a further time extension of three months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.
- (c) In exceptional circumstances the Senate may, on such written or other evidence as it requires, at its discretion grant a reasonable extension of time to a candidate for medical or compassionate or other compelling reasons. The extension may be granted:
- whether or not there has been any extension under paragraph (b) of this Regulation; and
  - with or without continued eligibility for Honours.
10. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1990.



## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF HEALTH SCIENCES MHSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

### Prerequisites

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences shall before enrolment for the Degree:
  - (a) have to the satisfaction of the Senate been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's or Master's degree which qualifies the candidate to practise in one of the following health professions: Medicine, Dentistry, Physiotherapy, Nursing, Human Nutrition, Optometry, Audiology, Veterinary Surgery, Medical Social Work, Public Health, Biostatistics, Epidemiology;
  - or,*
  - (b) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree and have not less than two years of relevant employment experience approved by the Senate.

**Note:** The following Health Professions are recognised: Medicine, Dentistry, Physiotherapy, Nursing, Human Nutrition, Optometry, Audiology, Veterinary Surgery, Medical Social Work, Public Health, Biostatistics and Epidemiology.

### General Provisions

2. (a) A candidate for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences shall pursue a coherent course of study of not less than twelve months and:
  - (b) (i) pass in each of three papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a thesis under the conditions in regulation 4 of these regulations (which shall count as equivalent to three papers),
  - or*
  - (c) (i) pass in each of five papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a dissertation under the conditions in regulation 5 of these regulations (which shall count as one paper).

### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head(s) of his or her Department(s) from those listed in clause (b) of this regulation and approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology; provided that no paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the degree are:
    - 47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology
    - 47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy
    - 65.401 Neuroanatomy
    - 65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy
    - 65.407 Biology of Connective Tissues
    - 66.401 Biochemistry
    - 66.402 Biochemistry
    - 66.403 Biochemistry
    - 67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control
    - 67.403 Neurophysiology
    - 67.405 Methods in Physiology
    - 67.407 Physiology of Exercise and Rest
    - 68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury
    - 68.404 Cancer Biology
    - †68.407 Musculoskeletal Pathology
    - 91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics
    - 91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health
    - †91.403 Health Economics
    - \*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health
    - †92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine
    - †92.401 Endocrine Medicine
    - 92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition
    - 92.403 Gerontology
    - 93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth
    - 93.406 Perinatal Physiology
    - †94.403 Health Psychology
    - †94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities
    - †94.405 Health Care Ethics
    - †94.406 Developmental Perspectives on Health and Wellbeing
    - †94.420 Special Topic in Psychiatry
    - 96.401 Toxicology
    - 96.404 Drug Disposition and Action
    - 96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology
    - 98.402 Development of Immunity
    - 98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology

Subject to the recommendation of the Heads of Departments concerned and the approval of the Senate, up to two papers may be chosen from those offered at Master's level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, or from those offered in any other Faculty at Masters Degree level.

**Note:** \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. Not all of the remaining papers may be available.

**Thesis**

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Master of Health Sciences (788.601):

- (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
- (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
- (c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
- (d) The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in regulation 7.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis. See Examinations Regulations 14 and 15.

**Dissertation**

5. The following shall apply to the dissertation for Master of Health Science (788.604).

- (a) The Head of Department shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate.
- (b) The dissertation shall embody the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of the supervisor.
- (c) The candidate shall submit the dissertation to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 14.

**Honours**

6. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirement of this degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 7 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis/dissertation or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in up to two papers, or
  - (ii) to resit in the following year all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Time Limits**

7. (a) The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full time enrolment, or by the end of the fifth year of part-time enrolment.
- (b) Candidates will not be eligible for Honours if the course extends beyond three years whether the enrolment is full time or part-time provided that in an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:
  - (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours.
  - (ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.

**Exceptions**

8. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
9. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MEDICAL SCIENCE MMedSc

---

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this Degree must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

**Prerequisites**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Medical Science shall before enrolment for the Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the degree of Bachelor of Human Biology at the University of Auckland.

**General Provisions**

2. (a) A candidate for the degree of Master of Medical Science shall pursue a course of study of not less than twelve months.
- (b) (i) pass in each of two papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations, and
- (ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) under the conditions prescribed in regulation 4 of these regulations.
3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head of the Department in which the student is enrolled for his or her thesis. The papers are those listed in clause (b) of this regulation. No paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the degree are:
    - 47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology
    - 47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy
    - 65.401 Neuroanatomy
    - 65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy
    - 65.406 Special Topic in Anatomy
    - 65.407 Biology of Connective Tissues
    - 66.401 Biochemistry
    - 66.402 Biochemistry
    - 66.403 Biochemistry
    - 67.415 Advances in Physiology
    - 67.416 Research Topics in Physiology
    - 68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury
    - 68.404 Cancer Biology
    - 68.406 Forensic Pathology
    - +68.407 Musculoskeletal Pathology
    - 69.400 General Practice
    - 69.401 General Practice
    - 91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics
    - 91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health

- \*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health
- †92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine
- †92.401 Endocrine Medicine
- 92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition
- 92.403 Gerontology
- 93.400 Special Topic in Paediatrics
- 93.401 Special Topic in Paediatrics
- 93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth
- 93.406 Perinatal Physiology
- 94.400 Psychiatry in Medicine
- 94.401 Neurobiology of Psychiatric Disorders
- †94.403 Health Psychology
- †94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities
- †94.405 Health Care Ethics
- †94.406 Developmental Perspectives on Health and Wellbeing
- †94.420 Special Topic in Psychiatry
- 96.400 Special Topic in Pharmacology
- 96.401 Toxicology
- 96.402 Special Topic in Clinical Pharmacology
- 96.404 Drug Disposition and Action
- 96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology
- 98.402 Development of Immunity
- 98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology.

**Note:** \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. Not all of the remaining papers may be available.

- (c) Subject to the recommendation of the Heads of Departments concerned and the approval of the Senate, one paper may be chosen from those offered at Masters' level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology or from those offered at Masters' level in any other Faculty.

### Thesis

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for the Master of Medical Science (89.651):
- (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University provided that the Senate, in special cases, may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
  - (d) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in regulation 6.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examinations Regulations 15 and 16.

### Honours

5. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirements of this degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 6 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
- (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in two papers, or
  - (ii) to resit in the year following the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass under (i) and to resit the remaining paper affected under (ii).

### Time Limits

6. (a) The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full time enrolment.
- (b) Notwithstanding the requirements of Regulation 6(a), a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfill the requirements for this degree within 36 months of first enrolment for the degree, with eligibility for Honours, this individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

### Exceptions

7. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PUBLIC HEALTH MPH

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 October preceding the year of intended enrolment.

### Prerequisites

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Public Health shall before enrolment for the degree:
- (a) have been admitted to or qualified for admission to a degree approved by the Senate, or
  - (b) have completed the requirements of a postgraduate public health diploma or degree or equivalent as approved by the Senate
  - (c) and have satisfied the Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology that previous training and experience fits the candidate to undertake the course.

### General Provisions

2. A candidate for the degree of Master of Public Health shall:
- (a) pursue a course of study of not less than two academic years full-time or the equivalent part-time.
  - (b) complete both parts of the degree, each of which must be passed as a whole, as follows:
    - (i) To complete Part I the candidate shall pass in four of the papers listed in Regulation 3 of these Regulations and shall not be permitted to advance to Part II unless a pass has been gained in each of the selected papers, including the compulsory

papers;

- (ii) To complete Part II the candidate shall pass either in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) or pass in each of two further papers from among those not already taken for Part I, and/or from those listed in Regulation 3(b)(ii) of these Regulations together with a dissertation (which shall count as two papers).

### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:

- (a) Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head of the Department of Community Health from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.  
(b) The papers of examination for the degree are:

#### †(i) Part I

- 91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics  
91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health

and two papers from:

- \*91.402 Environmental Health and Health Protection  
†91.403 Health Economics  
†91.404 Health Promotion and Health Education  
†91.405 Health Services Management  
\*91.406 Special Topic in Public Health

#### (ii) Part II

- †91.407 Advanced Epidemiology  
\*91.408 Sociology of Health and Health Care

- (c) A candidate admitted to the course of study under Regulation 1(b) may be admitted directly to Part II.  
(d) Subject to approval by the Heads of Department concerned, one paper may be chosen for Part II from those offered at Master's level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology or in any other Faculty, provided:  
(i) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and  
(ii) that the syllabus is not the same or substantially overlapping with any other paper taken for this degree.

### Thesis

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Master of Public Health (91.651):

- (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.  
(b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of public health.  
(c) A candidate shall present the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examinations Regulations 14 and 15.

### Dissertation

5. The following shall apply to the dissertation for Master of Public Health (91.654)

- (a) The head of Department shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate.  
(b) The dissertation shall embody the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of the supervisor.  
(c) The candidate shall submit the dissertation to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

### Honours

6. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.  
(b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirements of this degree within the limit specified under Regulation 7 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and dissertation or thesis; or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:  
(i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in two papers, or  
(ii) to resit all the papers affected, or  
(iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

### Time Limits

7. (a) The requirements for this degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full-time enrolment, or by the end of the fifth year of part-time enrolment.  
(b) Candidates will not be eligible for Honours if the course extends beyond three years whether the enrolment is full-time or part-time provided that in an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate.  
(i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours.  
(ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.

### Exceptions

8. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Department concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
9. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

**Note:** † Part I may not be offered for 1993. \* Starred papers will not be taught in 1993.  
Papers other than compulsory papers will not necessarily be offered every year.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MEDICINE MD

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine shall hold the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery at the University of Auckland.  
**Note:** Except in special cases, admission ad eundem statum is granted only to medical graduates of other Universities who are members of the academic staff of the University of Auckland, or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.  
2. A candidate shall be required to present a thesis (90.701) in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis shall be specifically written for the purposes and shall embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.  
3. No candidate shall submit a thesis for this Degree until at least five years after graduation to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

**Application to be Examined**

4. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined. The application shall be lodged with the Registrar. It shall state the title of the thesis to be examined and be accompanied by an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.
5. As soon as reasonably possible, the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology shall examine the application and shall make its recommendation thereon to the Senate. The Senate shall then determine whether or not the application and the title and outline of the thesis should be approved.

**Submission of the Thesis**

6. The candidate shall (subject to Regulation 3) be required to submit a thesis by lodging three copies of it with the Registrar within five years of the date on which the Senate approves the title and outline of the thesis (or within such further time as the Senate may permit).
7. The thesis shall be accompanied by a Statutory Declaration which shall:
  - (i) state the extent to which the thesis is based on the candidate's own work and identify as clearly as possible any parts which are not so based;
  - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the thesis submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma; and
  - (iii) declare that the thesis in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

**Examination of the Thesis**

8. On receipt of the thesis, the Senate, on recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, shall appoint two External Examiners (of whom at least one is resident outside New Zealand) and one Examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
9. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (i) to report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning, and
  - (ii) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the thesis at a later date.
10. The candidate may be required to take an oral or a written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge in which the thesis lies.
11. The reports of the Examiners shall be placed before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree should be awarded.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

**BHB****Course of Study in Human Biology - Part I**

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Molecular Medicine, Chemistry, Immunobiology, Physics, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Community Health.

**Biology for Medicine**

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102**

Microbiology, molecular biology and bacterial genetics, human genetics; invertebrates and parasitology; introductory physiology; cells and histology; vertebrates; embryology; palaeoanthropology, evolution; current issues in biology.

**Physico-Chemistry**

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105**

A study of the structure and properties of matter covering the following areas:

*Organic Chemistry* (nomenclature, structure, isomerism, functional group reactivity, polymers, lipids, carbohydrates, amino acids, nucleic acids).

*Biochemistry* (proteins, enzymes, polysaccharides, intermediary metabolism).

*Analytical and Physical Chemistry* (spectrophotometry, spectrometry, chromatography, radio-chemistry, chemical energetics, solution chemistry, reaction kinetics).

*Physics* (mechanics, thermodynamics, gases, fluids, surfaces, solids, electromagnetism, oscillations and waves, light and sound, optics, modern physics).

*Computing* (computers in the medical environment, microcomputer operation, analysis of medical records, computer networks and communications).

**Behavioural Science and Community Health**

(One paper and course work)

**60.108**

Behavioural Science is concerned with the scientific study of human behaviour related to health and medicine, with particular emphasis on the individual and group. The aim is to introduce basic concepts focusing on the behaviour of normal adults. Community Health is concerned with the distribution of disease in populations and strategies available for the prevention of disease. Particular attention will be given to the role of cultural and environmental factors.

**Course of Study in Human Biology - Part II**

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science.

**Anatomy**

(One paper and course work)

**60.205**

The study of tissue organisation, microscopic and gross anatomy of the trunk and its organ systems, limbs and the biology of the blood and immune system.

**Biochemistry**

(Two papers and course work)

**60.206**

Extension of subject-matter taught in Part I and the Biochemistry of major topics with particular reference to those relevant to Medicine.

**Physiology (Medical) II**

(Two papers and course work)

**60.207**

The study of circulatory, respiratory, alimentary and renal function and associated topics.

**Behavioural Science II**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.208**

The focus is on individuals and groups at risk for illness, with the main topics being human development across the lifespan, communication skills and health psychology. There is also an introduction to philosophical medical ethics.

**Course of Study in Human Biology -****Part III**

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Molecular Medicine, Pathology, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology.

**Immunobiology**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.300**

An introduction to the disciplines of Microbiology, Immunobiology and Haematology and their clinical importance.

**General Pathology**

(One paper and course work)

**60.301**

An introduction to the mechanisms of disease.

**Neurolocomotor System**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.302**

A study of the head and neck and of the nervous system including the special senses.

**Human Reproduction and Development**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.304**

A study of the biology of human reproduction and sexuality; aspects of human genetics, foetal development, growth and ageing; biochemical aspects of endocrinology and nutrition.

**Physiology (Medical) III**

(Two papers and course work)

**60.305, 60.306**

Studies of the integrated physiology of human organs systems including their control and the corrections of disturbances.

**Pharmacology**

(One paper and course work)

**60.307**

This course covers the absorption, distribution and fate of administered drugs; drug toxicity and abuse; the evaluation of new drugs; and the mechanisms of action of drugs that affect the various homeostatic control systems of the body.

**Behavioural Science III**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.308**

The focus is on the patient in care. Major topics are the health psychology, interviewing and counselling, human sexuality, ethics, and aspects of neuropsychology and life span development.

---

**MBChB**

The duration of the course will be three years.

**MBChB (Part I)****(Fourth year of the Medical Course)****Clinical Methods**

An introduction to clinical medicine is provided during the first section of the first term. Methods of history taking and physical examination are demonstrated and practised by students. Students are also introduced to the principles underlying the application of laboratory techniques and organ imaging to solving of patients' problems. The disciplines of behavioural science, medicine, surgery, paediatrics, psychiatry, obstetrics and gynaecology, pathology and radiology (organ imaging) contribute to the course. Lectures, symposia, case demonstrations, tutorial teaching, and bedside instruction, all play a part in this section of the course.

**Bicultural Health**

During a three day visit to a Marae, there will be practical instruction and discussion of the expectations, needs, health practices and cultural values of both Maori and Pacific Island peoples.

**Ward Attachments**

During the first and second year of the course, there are eight ward attachments, each of which is of four weeks' duration. These ward attachments are not combined with whole class teaching, so that each ward experience is uninterrupted. The first four of these ward attachments take place in the first year. During the two years each student rotates through Paediatrics, Obstetrics & Gynaecology, and Psychiatry once each, through Surgery and Medicine twice each and once through a four-week period of Special Clinical Teaching which includes Geriatrics, Family Medicine, Dermatology, Ophthalmology and Radiology.

**Campus Teaching**

Between ward attachments there are periods of Campus Teaching. During this time the Community Health Programme in Occupational and Environmental Health, Epidemiology and Provision of Health Care is presented. Topic teaching covering Systems of Medicine and principles of Obstetrics & Gynaecology, of Paediatrics and of Geriatrics appropriate to subsequent ward attachments is developed. Subjects appropriate to the topic teaching are covered in Pathology and Clinical Pharmacology programmes.

At the conclusion of the year there is a composite examination consisting of two written papers, and for nominated students only, a clinical/oral (viva) examination.

**MBChB (Part II)****(Fifth year of the Medical Course)****Ward Attachments**

In four ward attachments students complete the series described in Part I.

**Campus Teaching**

The combined topic teaching in the systems of medicine is completed. A number of symposia on topics not included in the Systems of Medicine are covered. These include Medico-legal aspects of practice, a short course in Ethics, management of head injuries, management of patients with malignant disease, alcoholism, aspects of rehabilitation medicine and topics in Behavioural Science.

Community Health projects, small group teaching in Radiology and half class studies in General Practice take place in the last two terms. At the conclusion of the year, there is a composite examination consisting of six written papers, a clinical/oral and an interdisciplinary objective structured clinical examination.

**MBChB (Part III)****(Sixth year of the Medical Course)**

This is a trainee intern year of 52 weeks divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and 4 weeks' holiday. One of these quarters is an 'Elective' period when the student may take optional training in special disciplines of medicine. A list of approved electives is provided from which to choose or students may generate new protocols.

The remaining 36 weeks are spent participating, under supervision, in the responsibility for the care of sick people in hospital and in the home.

Assessment, including clinical and oral examinations where appropriate, of the student's progress will be made at the end of each assignment.

**Community Health**

The Community Medicine Course covers selected topics in preventive medicine, health education, epidemiology and occupational health. The object is to emphasise the importance of prevention, and to give the student an understanding of the health service and how the various arms of the service, both hospital and community based, interact with the population. In Part II students undertake an investigation of some aspects of community medicine which entails practical experience in dealing with health problems.

**General Practice**

There are a series of seminars and visits concerning Primary Health Care and General Practice.

In the Trainee Intern Year the students are attached to an approved teaching practice for four or six weeks, during which time they see patients and discuss their management with the general practitioner, attend house visits and take part in a weekly seminar conducted by a member of the Department of General Practice.

**Gynaecology and Obstetrics**

Gynaecology and Obstetrics will deal with the physiology, endocrinology and pathology of human reproduction and their application to the clinical practice of gynaecological and obstetric medicine. The teaching will emphasise the incorporation of the principles of this subject into total medical practice. The theoretical teaching will be included in whole class Topic Teaching during the first and second years of the course. Practical patient management will be taught during a four-week ward attachment. During the third (Trainee Intern) year, there will be a six-week attachment at National Women's Hospital, Middlemore Hospital, Waikato Hospital, or other selected base hospital. Within this period is a week of attachment to Neonatal Paediatrics.

**Molecular Medicine**

Teaching in Molecular Medicine includes the disciplines of Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology. An introduction to microbiology and molecular genetics is taught in the first year and an introduction to concepts in immunology is taught in the second year of the course in Human Biology. In the third year of the course, medical microbiology and haematology, and clinical immunology are taught. These courses provide an integrated basis for the clinical teaching which continues throughout the course for MBChB. During the first year of the course for MBChB, clinical microbiology is taught as part of the principles of pathology, while immunology, haematology and infectious disease teaching is integrated with teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in Molecular Medicine is available for periods of up to three months during the third year of the course for MBChB.

### Medicine

Various common medical diseases affecting different organ systems of the body will be considered with emphasis on their natural history, clinical presentation, methods of diagnosis, together with principles of treatment and prevention. Clinical clerkship will provide experience both in acute general medicine and, during the second year of the course, on selected aspects of different specialities within internal medicine. Tutorial teaching will play an important part in this teaching programme in which emphasis will be placed on the quality of the written as well as the verbal case presentations.

### Paediatrics

The undergraduate course in Paediatrics commences with an interdisciplinary child development and family study in the second and third years of the course in Human Biology. Patient-based teaching in Paediatrics is carried out in the hospital and community setting over the three years of the clinical course.

Prevention of disease and the effect of disease on the developing child are emphasised in the departmental contribution to the course of lectures given in the first two years of the clinical course on the organic and psycho-social basis of ill health. At the end of this course of lectures students are examined in their knowledge and comprehension of the principles of Paediatrics. In the third year of the clinical course there is a period of trainee internship in Paediatrics which is mandatory and a term of elective study in the broad field of child health is offered.

### Pathology

Teaching in Pathology commences in the third term of the third year of the course in Human Biology, and continues throughout the first, second and third years of the course for MBChB. Subjects under the aegis of Pathology include the Morphological Basis of Disease, Chemical Pathology, and Forensic Medicine. During the first part of the first year of the course for MBChB the principles of pathology are taught on the basis of the teaching in these subjects undertaken during the latter part of the course in Human Biology. During the remainder of the first year, and through the second year, the teaching in pathology is largely integrated with the teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in pathology is available for periods of up to 3 months during the third year of the course.

### Psychiatry and Behavioural Science

With a background in normal human behaviour and the neurosciences from the Human Biology course, students will receive instructions during the clinical triennium in psychopathology and in the application of the behavioural sciences to medicine. Psychiatry teaching, focused on the diagnosis and management of patients with psychiatric and psychological disturbance, is incorporated in full-time rotations combining theory and clinical work in the 4th or 5th and 6th years. The emphasis is on giving students a set of concepts and clinical skills to enable them to recognise psychological and psychiatric disorders in the practice of medicine in all its branches and a sound grasp of psychopharmacology. Behavioural Science teaching takes place in whole class sessions and seminars. It aims to continue at the applied clinical level the themes covered in the first three years as well as to prepare the student to recognise behavioural aspects of medical cases, and be able to plan appropriate behavioural medicine and psychosocial interventions in general medicine.

### Surgery

Surgical diseases will be taught covering their natural history, pathology, methods of diagnosis (including special investigations such as radiology and clinical biochemistry), and general principles of treatment. Included in the surgical diseases will be those related to eye, ear, nose and throat, the musculo-skeletal system, the genito-urinary system, the nervous system and those related to plastic surgery. The theoretical teaching of these subjects will be done within the Topic Teaching course.

Clinical clerkships will be required in general surgery and the special divisions of surgery listed above, including the Accident and Emergency Department. Theoretical and practical teaching in anaesthesia will be given.

The examination in surgery will be part of the composite examination at the end of the second year together with assignments during the first and third years.

## MAud

Students who propose to undertake the MAud Degree should consult the Co-ordinator of the Course in Audiology as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Co-ordinator of the Course in Audiology, students will select one paper from among those listed as options under Regulation 4(a) of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Audiology. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. With the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Dean of Science and the Head of the Department concerned, a Master's paper from among those offered for the Degree of Master of Science may be substituted under Regulation 5 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Audiology.

### Audiology

#### 751.401 Hearing Science

Acoustics; psychoacoustics; anatomy, physiology, neuroanatomy, neurophysiology and pathology of the auditory system; speech perception by the hearing-impaired; signal processing; instrumentation.

#### 751.402 Basic Diagnostic Audiology

Basic audiometric techniques (pure tone audiometry, speech audiometry, impedance audiometry, history taking, non-organic hearing loss); paediatric hearing assessment methods, occupational hearing conservation.

#### 751.403 Basic Clinical Audiology

Hearing disorders; diseases of the ear; speech and language development; aural rehabilitation; counselling; amplification strategies; hearing aid characteristics.

#### 751.411 Advanced Diagnostic Audiology

Evoked response test methods; central auditory perceptual dysfunction; site-of-lesion testing; report writing; case studies.

#### 751.412 Advanced Clinical Audiology

Hearing development in infants and children; deafness in children; genetic aspects of deafness; deafness detection in children; educational audiology; prescriptive hearing aid fitting methods; cochlear implants.

#### 751.601 Thesis in Audiology

This requires the preparation of a thesis (equivalent to two papers) on a research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation and examination instead of written papers. Before 1 November of the preceding academic year, each candidate shall submit a proposed research topic to the Board of Studies in Audiology for approval by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.

**Note:** Prescriptions for other papers constituting part of the Degree of Master of Audiology may be found in the appropriate sections of the *Calendar*.

## MHSc

The papers listed under MHSc Regulation 3(b) are as prescribed for MMedSc

## MMedSc

### Department of Anatomy

#### 65.401 Neuroanatomy

The organisation of the mammalian nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

#### 65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy

#### 65.406 Special Topic in Anatomy

Advanced study in selected areas of anatomy usually in fields related to the thesis topic. The special topics will include developmental biology (inclusive of teratology), cell motility and the cytoskeleton.

#### 65.407 Biology of Connective Tissues

The study of connective tissue structure, composition and function with particular emphasis on the role played by mechanical forces in development, maintenance, repair and pathology.

### Department of Biochemistry

The general study of biochemistry at an advanced level with a specific focus on recent developments in biochemistry and

molecular biology. Considerable emphasis is placed upon directed reading, tutorials and seminars in each paper.

#### **66.401 Biochemistry**

Growth factors and oncogenes, plant glycoproteins, modern methods in protein chemistry, aspects of recombinant DNA technology, methods for determination of 3D structure of proteins.

#### **66.402 Biochemistry**

Plant hormones, animal hormone action, control of gene expression, protein targeting aspects of bacterial biochemistry.

#### **66.403 Biochemistry**

FAB-Mass spectrometry, lysosomal metabolism, clathrin, steroid hormone and DNA, carbohydrate transport in bacteria, comparative oxygen transport.

### **Department of Community Health**

#### **†91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics**

The distribution and determinants of health and disease in human populations. Analytical techniques and methods of investigation. Patterns of morbidity and mortality in the New Zealand population. Sources of health data.

#### **†91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health**

Key concepts in the social sciences and their application to health issues. Analysis of the relationship between health and society, the welfare state, and salient social, cultural and demographic features of New Zealand.

#### **\*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health**

Advanced study in selected areas of Community Health usually in fields related to the thesis topic. The selected topics will be in the areas of health economics and health promotion.

### **Department of General Practice**

#### **69.400 Special Topic in General Practice**

#### **69.401 Special Topic in General Practice**

Advanced study in such areas as community research methodology, continuing education methodology, screening for disease and health risks in the community.

### **Department of Medicine**

#### **†92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine**

The course will be based on basic cardiovascular anatomy and physiology with detailed study of the pathophysiology of common cardiovascular conditions and management principles. Specific areas of study will include atherosclerosis, hypertension, coronary artery disease or heart failure.

#### **†92.401 Endocrine Medicine**

The course involves basic training in endocrinology with a detailed study of homeostatic mechanisms, hormone relationships and mechanisms and measurement of hormone action. A specific research topic will be allocated in the general areas of calcium metabolism, hormone dependent cancer, or thyroid pathophysiology.

#### **92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition**

Core content of normal human physiology and pathophysiology of the gastrointestinal tract and of human nutrition. Detailed studies in selected areas tailored for particular students.

#### **92.403 Gerontology**

Detailed study of aspects of gerontology including demographic and social factors, clinical aspects of old age, principles of rehabilitation, administrative aspects of health services for the elderly, health promotion and education.

### **Department of Molecular Medicine**

#### **98.402 Development of Immunity**

The basis of antigen uptake and processing, genes of the major histocompatibility complex, development of thymus-derived lymphocytes and regulation of classes of immune responses.

#### **98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology**

An indepth analysis of the topic in which the student is undertaking thesis research. These topics will be the development of the thymus, the structure and function of cytokines, or the structure and function of molecules belonging to the integrin family.

### **Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

#### **47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology**

The course will cover various aspects of reproductive endocrinology including: biosynthesis and metabolism of steroidal hormones, regulation of the gonadal function, endocrinology of the menstrual cycle, follicular maturation and ovulation, spermatogenesis, sperm

transport in the female reproductive tract and fertilisation, endocrinology of pregnancy and hormonal contraception.

#### **47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy**

Feto-maternal physiology including placental function, maternal adaptation to pregnancy: physiology and consequences for medical practice, endocrinology and physiology of parturition, endocrinology and physiology of lung maturation.

### **Department of Paediatrics**

#### **93.400 Special Topic in Paediatrics**

#### **93.401 Special Topic in Paediatrics**

Advanced study of specific aspects of paediatrics, usually related to the field of study of the thesis research.

#### **93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth**

The biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian growth with a particular emphasis on the role of genetic, endocrine, paracrine and nutritional influences. The paper will include emphasis on growth in ruminant species, the control of carcass growth, fibre growth and lactation, as well as the regulation of growth in monogastric species (eg. man).

#### **93.406 Perinatal Physiology**

Historical introduction, methodology of fetal investigation, fetal oxygenation, placental physiology, fetal cardiovascular physiology, ontogenesis of sleep, respiratory control, maturation of the lung, maturation of the neuroendocrine axis, control of parturition, uterine function, renal function and fluid balance, regulation of fetal growth.

### **Department of Pathology**

#### **68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury**

An indepth consideration of the mechanisms involved in cell and tissue injury, the ways such injury and the response to it become manifest as disease, and a critical evaluation of the various methods used to conduct research in this field.

#### **68.404 Cancer Biology**

The course provides an introduction to the basic science of oncology, with particular reference to the molecular and cellular processes underlying cancer treatment.

Topics include DNA and the chemistry of its inter-action with reactive anticancer drugs, recognition of DNA by proteins such as topoisomerases, polymerases and regulatory elements, and the exploitation of these processes by anticancer drugs, oncogenes and other regulatory gene products, tumour growth kinetics and tumour architecture with particular reference to cell killing by radiotherapy and chemotherapy, and the role of host responses in cancer therapy.

#### **68.406 Forensic Pathology**

Advanced study of the development of forensic pathology, death and the changes after death, wounds and injuries, hypoxic and related deaths, the forensic autopsy, reconstruction of a crime scene from autopsy findings.

#### **†68.407 Musculoskeletal Pathology**

Advanced study of the pathology of the musculoskeletal system. Topics will include injury and repair, the pathology of selected conditions and the prevention of musculoskeletal disorders.

### **Department of Pharmacology and Clinical**

#### **Pharmacology**

#### **96.400 Special Topic in Pharmacology**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

#### **96.401 Toxicology**

Chemical toxicology (including drugs) - mainly human. Clinical and structural manifestations of toxicity, mechanistic toxicology, principles of toxicokinetics, genetic toxicology and carcinogenesis, reproductive toxicology, teratology and reproductive toxicology, neurotoxicology/immunotoxicology, statistics and epidemiology, toxicology testing, regulatory toxicology, ecotoxicology.

#### **96.402 Special Topic in Clinical Pharmacology**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

#### **96.404 Drug Disposition and Action**

Analysis of processes which affect absorption, disposition, metabolism and excretion of drugs. Sites and mechanisms of drug action.



**96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on the cardiovascular system; drugs that alter the effects of neurotransmitters, hormones and local hormones on the cardiovascular system; drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris, heart failure, circulatory shock and hyperlipoproteinaemia; drugs affecting blood coagulation.

**Department of Physiology****67.415 Advances in Physiology****67.416 Research Topics in Physiology****Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science****94.400 Psychiatry in Medicine**

Psychosomatic relations, abnormal illness behaviour, states of chronic pain, and the interaction of medical and psychiatric disorders.

**94.401 Neurobiology of Psychiatry Disorders**

Neurochemical and electrophysiological aspects of mental disorder, including ischaemia-related neuropathologies.

**†94.403 Health Psychology**

A review of the psychological factors involved in health and illness. Topics include the understanding of patient behaviour in medical settings, preventative health behaviour, psychoneuroimmunology, stress and illness.

**†94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities**

Theory and practice of health promotion based on behavioural and community development principles for those who wish to work directly with people. Topics include health promotion philosophy and concepts, programme design, intervention methods and relevant evaluation.

**†94.405 Health Care Ethics**

Theories of health and theories of moral philosophy are combined in order to improve decision-making in ethically difficult situations. Topics include the nature of health, utilitarianism and deontology, autonomy, rationing health care, and health care purpose.

**†94.406 Developmental Perspectives on Health and Wellbeing**

Study of the relationships among aspects of normal development and physical and psychological wellbeing. The focus will be on phases of the lifespan, including fostering of secure relationships in childhood, adolescent development and health, parenting issues, midlife and wellbeing, optimising old age.

**†94.420 Special Topic in Psychiatry**

Advanced study of specific aspects of Psychiatry usually in a field of study of the thesis.

**MPH****Department of Community Health****91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics**

The distribution and determinants of health and disease in human populations. Analytical techniques and methods of investigation. Patterns of morbidity and mortality in the New Zealand population. Sources of health data.

**91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health**

Key concepts in the social sciences and their application to health issues. Analysis of the relationship between health and society, the welfare state, and salient social, cultural and demographic features of New Zealand.

**\*91.402 Environmental Health and Health Protection**

Description and identification of significant environmental and occupational health problems and their determinants. Strategies and policies for disease and hazard prevention and control, and their evaluation.

**†91.403 Health Economics**

Basic concepts of economic analysis and their application in the health sector. The relationship between health and the economy, consideration of the health care industry, techniques of economic evaluation and planning.

**†91.404 Health Promotion and Health Education**

Principles of health promotion and health education. Building healthy public policy, creating supportive environments, strengthening community action, developing personal skills, re-orienting health services, evaluating interventions.

**†91.405 Health Services Management**

Organisation and funding of the New Zealand health system, service planning, management of change, industrial relationships, decision-making and policy development, organisational dynamics, and principles of management.

**\*91.406 Special Topic in Public Health**

In-depth consideration of some aspect of public health.

**†91.407 Advanced Epidemiology**

Advanced techniques and methods of investigation with special reference to cardiovascular disease and injury research. A problem-based approach will be adopted.

**\*91.408 Sociology of Health and Health Care**

Theoretical and practical grounding in the sociological analysis of health, health processes and health institutions, with particular application to the New Zealand setting. Principal substantive areas, major theoretical and research traditions, empirical findings.

**Note:**

†Daggered papers may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

\*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

---

**DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS**

---

**DIPLOMA IN GYNAECOLOGY AND OBSTETRICS DipG&O**

---

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall:

- (a) enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination and 1 September for the December examination, or such later dates as the Senate approves; and
- (b) before sitting for Part 2 of the examination:
  - (i) hold a qualifying degree or diploma approved by the Medical Council of New Zealand for four years and be registered in New Zealand or hold equivalent Commonwealth registration for three years, or
  - (ii) be a medical diplomate of the Fiji School of Medicine of six years' standing; and
- (c) hold for at least one year the Diploma of Obstetrics of the University of Auckland or of Otago or of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists; and
- (d) have undertaken at least two years' training in the speciality of gynaecology and obstetrics in posts approved by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists provided that only one year of service at the Colonial War Memorial Hospital, Suva, shall count towards the total, and
- (e) prior to his acceptance for Part 2 of the examination, have submitted dissertations on an obstetrical and on a gynaecological subject which has been approved by the Head of the Department.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation, the Vice-Chancellor may on the recommendation of Senate relax or modify these conditions.

**Examinations**

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall consist of two papers which may be taken separately or together.  
**Part 1** shall consist of a written examination (two papers), 47.101, 47.102 on reproductive biology and basic medical sciences as applied to gynaecology and obstetrics. The Part 1 examination may be taken during the training period specified above in 1 (d).  
**Part 2**  
 (a) Written (two papers), 47.103, 47.104  
 (b) Clinical  
 (c) Oral  
 The examination shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology during June and December.
3. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

**DIPLOMA IN MENTAL HEALTH DipMentH**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this diploma must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

**Prerequisites**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Mental Health shall before enrolment for the Diploma
  - (a) have been admitted to a degree in medicine, nursing or social work, or other relevant degree approved by the Senate, or
  - (b) have obtained a relevant professional qualification in clinical psychology, nursing, social work, or occupational therapy approved by the Senate, and have had not less than two years appropriate employment in the health or allied field approved by the Head of the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science.

**General Provisions**

2. A candidate for the Diploma in Mental Health shall:
  - (a) pursue a course of study not less than one academic year of full-time or the equivalent part-time study, and
  - (b) undertake a course of study presented under Regulation 3, and
  - (c) pass separately each of the four papers listed under Regulation 3.

**Papers**

3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of:
  - 94.407 Clinical Psychiatry and Mental Health Services
 and three papers selected with the approval of the Head of Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science from:
  - 25.318 Psychiatry and the Law
  - 94.501 General Forensic Psychiatry
  - 94.502 Community, Preventative and Rehabilitation Mental Health
  - 94.503 Developmental and Family Mental Health
  - 94.504 Psychological Aspects of Medical Practice
  - 94.505 Special Topic in Mental Health
  - any other 300 or 400 level paper approved by the Head of Department

**Note:** Papers other than the compulsory paper will not necessarily be offered every year.

No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper the candidate has already passed for another degree or diploma.

**Time Limits**

4. (a) The requirements for this Diploma shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full-time enrolment, or by the end of the fourth academic year of part-time enrolment.  
 (b) In an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, grant the candidate a time extension of one year.

**Exceptions**

5. The Senate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science may in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

**DIPLOMA IN OBSTETRICS DipObst**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol at the University within the first week of their clinical attachment. (This may change from year to year but would usually be early in the months of March, June, September or December.)
  - (i) Candidates for admission to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics must have held a medical qualification for one year before commencing the course and must satisfy the Faculty of Medicine that previous training and experience fit candidates to undertake the course.
  - (ii) During the course candidates must hold a resident appointment in obstetrics and gynaecology in a hospital recognised for this purpose by Senate.
  - (iii) Candidates must hold a resident appointment for at least 6 months and be engaged in training for a total time, excluding leave, of a minimum of 1600 hours. This minimum time may include up to 100 hours of formal education and up to 400 hours may be spent in a specific attachment to neonatal paediatrics.
  - (iv) Candidates will be required to submit a Logbook of their clinical experience.
  - (v) Auckland. Candidates will be required to enrol with the University of Auckland within the first week of a resident appointment at National Women's, Middlemore and/or St Helens Hospitals.

- (vi) Other Centres. Candidates from other approved centres may be excused the lecture course providing they attend the intensive courses in obstetrics, neonatal paediatrics, family planning and medical gynaecology held by the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology prior to the examination.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation the Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### Examinations

2. The examinations for the diploma in Obstetrics shall be in three parts:
  - (a) Written (one three-hour paper - 47.500)
  - (b) Clinical
  - (c) Oral or objective structured Clinical Examination.
3. The examinations shall be held in the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology twice yearly.
4. Candidates shall apply to sit for the examination not later than 1 February or 1 August for the next succeeding examination.

---

## DIPLOMA IN PAEDIATRICS DipPaed

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall:
  - (a) pre-enrol not later than 5 December or such later date as the Senate approves, and enrol on the day as stated in the Enrolment Timetable in the *Calendar*;
  - (b) on 31 December following his or her enrolment for this Diploma have held a medical qualification registrable in New Zealand, for one year, or have been a graduate from the Central Medical School of Fiji;
  - (c) normally sit the examinations in the year following his or her enrolment;
  - (d) hold or have held a resident appointment in paediatrics for at least six months in a hospital recognised for this purpose by Senate; this time may include up to three months spent in neonatal medicine;
  - (e) complete to the satisfaction of Head of Department any prescribed course requirements before being admitted to the examination; such requirements will include:
    - (i) satisfactory performance of clinical duties,
    - (ii) satisfactory participation during the course in community aspects of child care;
  - (f) be required to submit a logbook of his or her experience in community aspects of child care.

#### Examinations

2. (1) The examinations for the Diploma shall be:
  - (a) Written Paper 93.404
  - (b) Clinical
  - (c) Oral
- (2) The examination for paper 93.404 will consist of a compulsory section and one of two optional sections:
  - (a) Pacific Paediatrics
  - (b) General Paediatrics
- (3) The examination will be held once a year in the Department of Paediatrics.
- (4) The diploma may be awarded with distinction.

#### Exceptions

3. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Paediatrics, may, in exceptional circumstances, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
4. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

## DIPLOMA IN PUBLIC HEALTH DipPH

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this Diploma must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 October preceding the year of intended enrolment.

#### Prerequisites

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Public Health shall before enrolment for the Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted to a degree or diploma of a university of New Zealand, or
  - (b) have obtained a professional qualification acceptable to the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, or
  - (c) have satisfied the Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology that previous training and experience qualifies the candidate to undertake the course.

#### General Provisions

2. A candidate for the Diploma in Public Health shall:
  - (a) pursue a course of study of not less than one academic year of full-time or the equivalent part-time study, and
  - (b) undertake a course of study presented under Regulation 3, and
  - (c) pass separately each of 4 papers approved under Regulation 3.

#### Papers

3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of:
 

91.400	Epidemiology including Biostatistics
91.401	Social Sciences in Public Health

 and two papers selected with the approval of the Head of Department of Community Health from:
 

* 91.402	Environmental Health and Health Protection
† 91.403	Health Economics
† 91.404	Health Promotion and Health Education

† 91.405 Health Services Management

\* 91.406 Special Topic in Public Health

Note: Papers other than compulsory papers will not necessarily be offered every year.

4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper the candidate has already passed for another degree or diploma.

#### Time Limits

5. (a) The requirements for this Diploma shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full-time enrolment, or by the end of the fourth academic year of part-time enrolment.
- (b) In an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Community Health, grant the candidate a time extension of one year.

#### Exceptions

6. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Community Health, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DipG&O

#### Part 1

The subjects covered by two papers will include basic sciences such as anatomy, biochemistry, cell biology, embryology, endocrinology, genetics, immunology, medical sociology, microbiology, pathology, pharmacology, physiology and elementary statistics. The examination will deal with those aspects of these subjects which should form part of the general education of any specialist and particularly those aspects which are applicable to obstetrics and gynaecology.

#### Dissertations

Candidates are advised to discuss the preparation of their dissertations with the Head of the Department at an early stage in their training period. Both obstetric and gynaecological dissertations are designed to give candidates the opportunity to study in detail conditions of their own choice and to express their own views based on personal experience and on a study of the literature. The dissertations should show clear evidence of ability to make use of a reference library and of the English language. Socio-medical topics may be particularly suitable for one or other of the dissertations. The dissertations should be accurately typed in good English and simply bound. In general the size of the dissertations should be in the order of 3000-4000 words each and credit will be given for original contributions.

#### Part 2

Two written papers:

- (a) Obstetrics, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, neonatal paediatrics and surgery as are relevant to the practice of obstetrics.
- (b) Gynaecology, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, medical sociology and surgery as are relevant to the practice of gynaecology.

A clinical examination which will include presentation and discussion of obstetric and gynaecological cases.

An oral examination in obstetrics and gynaecology. In this candidates should be prepared to discuss their dissertations, to be examined on applied anatomy, physiology and pathology, and to be shown radiographs, instruments, specimens and histological slides for comment.

### DipMentH

#### 94.407 Clinical Psychiatry and Mental Health Services

This is focused on the more seriously mentally ill and covers concepts of abnormality, theories of aetiology, classification systems, characteristics of major disorders, and treatment methods. It will also review and critique major reports on psychiatric services in New Zealand, the structure of services in New Zealand and elsewhere, the team concept, model services, needs of special groups, planning, management and evaluation of services.

#### 25.318 Psychiatry and the Law

This paper will provide a general introduction to the formal relationship between psychiatry and law with a particular emphasis on the law as it relates to special patients.

#### 94.501 General Forensic Psychiatry

This is concerned with all aspects of psychiatry and psychiatric ethics relevant to the law, dangerousness, public attitudes and policy.

#### 94.502 Community, Preventative and Rehabilitation Mental Health

This covers community mental health concepts, emergencies, treatment and prevention of mental illness. Also addressed is the evaluation, care and rehabilitation of chronically handicapped patients.

#### 94.503 Developmental and Family Mental Health

This deals with mental health stages, problems and disorders within a developmental context from infancy to old age and within the family, whānau or other support systems.

#### 94.504 Psychological Aspects of Medical Practice

This paper deals with mental health relevant to medical practice including hospital, family and community medicine.

#### 94.505 Special Topic in Mental Health

An in depth, individual study of a specific aspect of mental health.

### DipObst

This is a general practitioner qualification and serves to distinguish those general practitioners who have been trained to handle the common abnormalities encountered in obstetric practice. A six months' resident appointment to the staff of a teaching obstetric and gynaecological unit is required before the candidates are allowed to sit the examinations, but see also provision 1 (iii) of the preceding Regulations. Details of such appointments are available on application.

The examinations shall include questions on the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the newborn during the first month of life. In addition, the candidates will be required to have a knowledge of the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortions, infertility and contraception, ectopic pregnancies and moles, vaginal discharges, the diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetric practice.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1(ii):

- (1) Auckland: National Women's, Middlemore with or without rotation to St Helens Hospital
- (2) Christchurch Women's
- (3) Dunedin
- (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital
- (5) Lower Hutt
- (6) New Plymouth
- (7) Palmerston North
- (8) Rotorua
- (9) Waikato
- (10) Wanganui
- (11) Wellington
- (12) Whangarei
- (13) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during the full tenure of the post.
- (14) Any hospital recognised by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists or the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.

The approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:

- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in obstetrics, gynaecology and neonatal paediatrics.
- (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
- (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in antenatal, postnatal and gynaecological clinics, wards and delivery rooms, including teaching in neonatal paediatrics and family planning. The post must be a continuous one of six months or more if under Regulation 1 (iii).

## DipPaed

The Diploma in Paediatrics is a qualification which serves to recognise medical practitioners who have been trained in Paediatrics and to manage the common paediatric abnormalities. The optional component of this course allows this diploma to be applicable to two groups of medical practitioners: (a) practitioners whose primary responsibility will be focused on Polynesian children: particularly those in remote or medically developing areas and (b) practitioners who are likely to have a dominantly paediatric practice.

The examinations shall include questions on genetic and antenatal factors in development; neonatal paediatrics; assessment of growth and development, hygiene, nutrition and immunization; the diagnosis, treatment and long term management of problems arising from the child's physical, intellectual, emotional, and social needs; epidemiology of childhood disease; cultural factors and child health; general and preventive paediatrics, management of common disorders of childhood, and the practical working of

the statutory and voluntary services available in New Zealand for the care of children.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1(d):

- (1) Auckland: The Children's Hospital, National Women's Hospital, Middlemore (2) Christchurch (3) Dunedin
- (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital (5) Lower Hutt (6) New Plymouth
- (7) Palmerston North (8) Rotorua (9) Waikato (10) Wanganui
- (11) Wellington (12) Whangarei (13) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during tenure of the post.
- (14) Any hospital recognised by the Royal Australasian College of Physicians for paediatric training.

The approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:

- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in general and neonatal paediatrics.
- (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
- (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in clinics and paediatric wards.

## FURTHER INFORMATION

### HIGHER ACADEMIC TRAINING IN OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

- (i) **Membership of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, the New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, and the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.**

Resident posts providing specialist training suitable for the Membership examination are available at the National Women's and associated hospitals. A formal teaching programme for both Part I and Part II examinations is provided for residents. Elective time posts in neonatal paediatrics, anaesthesia and pathology can also be arranged.

- (ii) **MSc or PhD Degrees**

Research appointments are available at the National Women's Hospital and afford the opportunity of preparing for the MSc and PhD Degrees of the University of Auckland.

Applications will be welcome from scientists and medical graduates who wish to carry out research in biochemistry, endocrinology, or the scientific background of obstetrics, gynaecology, and neonatal paediatrics.

## REFRESHER TRAINING FOR FAMILY DOCTORS AND SPECIALISTS

- (i) Practitioners with interests in the fields covered at the School may attend for periods of up to four weeks as visiting postgraduates. During the time they are attending the Postgraduate School attachments to the Auckland Area Health Board as Honorary Medical Officers can be made in order to facilitate the performance of practical procedures. Visitors may attend teaching sessions as well as gain practical experience tailored to their needs.
- (ii) Short courses usually of a week's duration are held at regular intervals. In addition to teaching at Diploma level advanced courses are provided.
- (iii) Departmental staff are available to participate in courses throughout New Zealand by arrangement with the Head of the Department.

## THE POSTGRADUATE MEDICAL COMMITTEE

The Postgraduate Medical Committee, chaired by the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, accepts responsibility for the organisation and supervision of both graduate vocational training and continuing medical education for doctors in the Auckland region. The activities of the Committee are linked with the School of Medicine and with the hospitals under the control of the Auckland Hospital Board. Vocational training courses are run in each major discipline under the general supervision of Speciality Advisory Sub-Committees made up of practising members of the disciplines concerned including members of the academic staff. In the case of Family Medicine the programme is run under the aegis of the Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners.

The Committee arranges in addition a wide range of courses and meetings throughout the academic year in the field of continuing medical education in all disciplines. Visits by overseas medical speakers in both the School of Medicine and the associated teaching hospitals are also arranged through the Postgraduate Office in the School under the general co-ordination of the Postgraduate Committee. A monthly bulletin of postgraduate and continuing educational activities, This Month, is also circulated to all doctors in the Auckland region.

Within the Postgraduate Office in the School of Medicine there is a separate section dealing with continuing education in family medicine under the supervision of the Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice. The Goodfellow Director is ex officio a member of the Committee, and is responsible for the whole range of educational programmes arranged in the field of general practice, and also the administration of a special educational resource service for general practitioners based on the Philson Library of the School of Medicine.

The members of the Postgraduate Committee are the Chairperson, the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, Dr C.H. Maclaurin; the Deputy Chairperson, Dr P.M. Barham; the Honorary Treasurer, Associate-Professor J.G. Richards; Dr K. Bannister; Dr J. Birbeck; Dr J.G. Buchanan; Dr H. Doerr; Dr S.W. Heap; Dr R. McIlroy; Dr P. Patten; Dr R. Varcoe; Dr P. Tan.

---

# Faculty of Music

---

Contents

		Page
<b>General Information</b>	Faculty of Music	327
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Music	327
	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)	330
	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours)	330
	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) Honours	332
	Degree of Master of Music	332
	Degree of Doctor of Music	333
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Music	334
	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours)	335
	Degree of Master of Music	335
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Music	336
	Diploma in Music (Honours)	337
	Diploma in Performing Arts	337
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Music	338
	Diploma in Music (Honours)	338
<b>Course of Instruction</b>	Instruction in a Single Instrument	338

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## FACULTY OF MUSIC

Undergraduate courses offered within the School of Music comprise a 3-year general degree with opportunities for emphases in Composition, Musicology or Performance or a 4-year degree with a 'major' in Composition, Musicology or Performance and a diploma in Performance.

### Bachelor of Music (BMus)

This is a 3-year course which includes a broad study of music.

### Bachelor of Music (Honours) BMus (Hons)

Suitably qualified students may on application towards the end of the year preceding, continue an advanced course of study for one year leading to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) - BMus(Hons). Students are expected to specialise in one of the options listed.

### Diploma in Music (DipMus)

The course for the Diploma extends over 3 years and entry may be made on the basis of special merit in Performance. DipMus students may, in approved cases, enrol for the one year course for DipMus(Hons).

In addition to these courses within the Faculty of Music, Music is offered as a subject for the BA. See the appropriate section in the BA regulations.

### Postgraduate Degrees

Graduates holding the Degree of BMus (Hons) may in approved cases be accepted for a further year of study leading to the Degree of MMus.

Following the Degree of BMus, students may be accepted for a two year Degree of Master of Music (MMus) which can be taken in the area of Composition, or Performance, or Musicology. Students who are BA graduates may elect to follow a course in Musicology for a Master of Arts (MA) or a course in *either* Composition *or* Performance for the Degree of Master of Philosophy (MPhil).

Details of other postgraduate degrees (DMus and PhD) appear in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC BMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music shall before enrolling for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music has been attained.
2. A candidate shall:
  - (a) follow a course of study of not less than three years, and
  - (b) follow a course of study continuously except where and in so far as the Head of Department permits otherwise.

#### Course Entrance

3. (a) A candidate for entrance to the course of study for the Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed forms by the date specified in this *Calendar*.
- (b) For Performance, which requires an audition for entry, the audition application form must be received by the Registrar not later than 30 June of the year immediately preceding that in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

4. (a) The course of study for this Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations.
- (b) Every course of study shall include
  - (i) 28.100, 28.101, 28.103, 28.201, 28.202 and one of 28.203-208.
  - (ii) At least three Stage III papers selected from the Schedule to these Regulations including one of the following alternatives: 28.310, or 28.320, or 28.301 and one of 28.303-308.
- (c) Up to four non-music papers from the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts may be included.

**Note:** A candidate intending to proceed to BMus(Hons) and/or MMus should note the prerequisites contained in the schedule to the BMus(Hons) Regulations.

5. For Performance 28.120<sup>†</sup>, 28.220<sup>†</sup> and 28.320<sup>†</sup>, a candidate shall:

- (a) carry out all performance work and
- (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
- (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:
 

Flute	French Horn	Violin	Piano	Recorder
Oboe	Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	Percussion
Clarinet	Trombone	Cello	Organ	Harp
Bassoon	Tuba	Double Bass	Singing	Guitar
Saxophone				Jazz Studies
Baroque Flute				

**Note:** Not all of these subjects may be available in any one calendar year. The School of Music Handbook gives further details.

- (d) A candidate presenting Singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of Department may require.
  - (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
  - (f) It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course of study that he or she shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.
- (†If failed may be repeated only with permission of the Head of Department)
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.

7. A candidate shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University during enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.

### Special Provision

8. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Credit for Other Qualifications

9. (a) A candidate who has gained any recognised qualification in Music from a non-University Tertiary Institution in New Zealand may with the approval of the Senate be credited with up to three specified or unspecified BMus papers for a two-year qualification or up to six specified or unspecified BMus papers for a three-year qualification.  
 (b) A candidate who has successfully completed a course at a Teachers College under the control of the Auckland Teachers College Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Application of Regulations and Transitional Provisions

10. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units or was entitled to exemptions under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Prerequisites
<b>Music I</b>			
28.100	Harmony and Counterpoint		
28.101	Musicianship and Materials of Music		
28.103	Music in Society		
28.106	History of Jazz		
28.110	Composition		
28.113	Acoustics for Musicians		
28.114	Introduction to Ethnomusicology		
28.120	Performance (three paper value)		
28.131	Second Instrument Study		
<b>Music II</b>			
28.201	Musicianship, Materials and Analysis		28.100, 28.101 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ As for 28.201
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint		As for 28.201
28.203	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ○		As for 28.201
28.204	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era □	*	As for 28.201
28.207	The Classic-Romantic Era ○		As for 28.201
28.208	The Twentieth Century □	*	As for 28.201
28.210	Composition (two paper value)		28.110; as for 28.201
28.214	Ethnomusicology		28.114; as for 28.201
28.215	Orchestration		As for 28.201
28.216	Electronic Music		As for 28.201
28.217	Music Education		As for 28.201
28.218	Conducting		As for 28.201
28.220	Performance (three paper value)		As for 28.201



- (c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1976 the subject prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of Department of Music.

### Commencement

11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.
  2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
  3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
  4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
  5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
  6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule are satisfied.
- The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
28.101, 28.103	28.122	A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II
28.100, 28.103		As for 28.100
28.100, 28.101		As for 28.100
28.100, 28.101, 28.103		
28.100, 28.101, 28.103		
28.100, 28.101, 28.103	03.103	
28.100, 28.101, 28.103		
28.100, 28.101, 28.103, 28.120		Permission of Head of Department required.
28.202, one of 28.203-208	28.209	
28.201, one of 28.203-208		
28.201, 28.202	28.205	
28.201, 28.202	28.206	
28.201, 28.202		
28.201, 28.202, one of 28.203-208	03.209	
28.201		
28.201, 28.110		
28.201		
28.201		
28.201		A pass of at least C in 28.120

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Prerequisites
28.221	Repertory and Pedagogy		As for 28.201
28.223	Musicology		As for 28.201
28.230	Chamber Music		As for 28.201
28.231	Second Instrument Study		28.131
<b>Music III</b>			
28.301	Analysis		28.201, 28.202, one of 28.203-28.208
28.302	Harmony and Counterpoint	†	
28.303	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ○		
28.304	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era □	*	
28.307	The Classic-Romantic Era ○		
28.308	The Twentieth Century □	*	
28.310	Composition (three paper value)		28.210
28.314	Ethnomusicology: Music of Oceania		28.214
28.316	Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music	†	28.216
28.318	Conducting		28.218
28.319	Organology		28.201
28.320	Performance (four paper value)		A pass of at least C in 28.220
28.322	Special Topic	†	28.201
28.323	Musicology		28.223
28.324	Special Topic	†	28.201
28.330	Chamber Music		28.230
28.331	Second Instrument Study		28.231

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

○ Taught in odd-numbered years

□ Taught in even-numbered years

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE) BMus(Perf)

The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) will be discontinued from the end of the 1995 academic year. Candidates who enrolled in this Degree prior to 1993 may continue their course of study under the Regulations for the Degree as published in the 1992 Calendar.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (HONOURS) BMus(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) shall follow a course of study of four years, the first three of these being as for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.
- The Degree may be awarded in each of the following options: Composition, Musicology and Performance.
- Admission to the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be considered towards the end of the third year after matriculation.
- No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) if he or she has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music of this University.
- Every candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) shall be enrolled for a course of study approved by the Head of Department of Music comprising four papers selected from those listed in the Schedule.

Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
28.201, 28.220		
28.201		
28.201, 28.220		Permission of Head of Department required
28.201, 28.220		As for 28.230
	28.309	See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
	28.203	
	28.204, 28.205	See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
	28.206, 28.207	See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
	28.208	See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
28.215, 28.301		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
	03.318	See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
28.320		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
		Permission of Head of Department required
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)
28.320		Permission of Head of Department required
		See Reg.4 (b) (ii)

6. A candidate for this Degree may
  - (a) with the permission of the Head of the Department and the approval of Senate, substitute one paper in another subject at Stage IV.
  - (b) include one Stage III paper in Music.

#### Classes of Honours

7. The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of honours shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in his or her final year but account may be taken of his or her work throughout the course of study.
8. The Senate may determine in respect of any candidate who fails to qualify for the Degree that he or she be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music or be credited with papers towards that Degree or be credited with the Degree of Bachelor of Music together with appropriate credits towards the Degree of Master of Music.
9. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

#### Commencement

10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

### SCHEDULE

#### 1. Composition

*Prerequisites:* 28.301, 28.310

*Requirements:* 28.410 and at least one of 28.409, 28.415 and 28.416

The other papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.604 and the list above.

#### 2. Musicology

*Prerequisites:* 28.301; at least three of 28.203-208/28.303-308 and 28.323 and at least two non-music papers from the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts. Candidates will normally be required to satisfy the Head of Department of their ability to read an approved language other than English.

*Requirements:* 28.423 and at least one of 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414.

The other papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.419 and the list above.

### 3. Performance

*Prerequisite:* 28.320

*Requirements:* 28.424 (two paper value) and at least one of 28.419 and 28.430.

The other paper shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.604 and the list above.

---

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE) (HONOURS) BMus(Perf)(Hons)

The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) (Honours) will be discontinued from the end of the 1996 academic year. Candidates who enrolled in the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) prior to 1993 may enrol for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) (Honours) under the Regulations for this Degree as published in the 1992 Calendar.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC MMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Music shall before enrolling for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours). Candidates who have been admitted to the Degree of Bachelor of Music are referred to Regulation 6.
  - (b) have been accepted by the Board of teaching members of the School of Music for study for the Degree of Master of Music, at an interview held in November prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Master of Music.
2. A candidate for the degree shall follow a full time course of study for at least one year and shall be examined in one of the following options:
  - (a) Composition 28.610 (three paper value)
  - (b) Musicology 28.601 (three paper value)
  - (c) Performance 28.620 (three paper value)

### Composition

3. (a) A portfolio of compositions shall be prepared under the supervision of a University teacher.
- (b) Two copies of the portfolio together with a certificate from the supervisor stating that the work was carried out by the candidate under supervision shall be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is to be presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.

### Musicology

4. (a) A candidate shall present a thesis which shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of Music.
- (b) Two bound copies of the thesis shall be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is to be presented or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 16.

### Performance

5. (a) A candidate shall present a concert recital of one to one and a half hour's duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of the Department. The candidate shall submit the proposed programme to the Head of the Department for approval not later than the end of the second term.
- (b) The recital shall be restricted to ONE of the following:
  - (i) an approved orchestral instrument
  - (ii) the pianoforte
  - (iii) the organ and/or harpsichord
  - (iv) any other instrument approved by the Head of the Department
  - (v) singing.
6. In exceptional circumstances a candidate who has been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Music may follow a full time course of study for a minimum of two years. Such candidates will be expected to show a high level of achievement in their major subject area in Stage III and they will be subject to selection as stated in Regulation (1)b.
7. A candidate pursuing this degree under Regulation 6 will be required to take four papers as listed in the schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music with Honours in the first year of full time study and the composition portfolio, thesis or recital in the second year of full time study as for Regulations 3 to 5.

### Class of Pass

8. The Degree may be awarded with Distinction if a standard equivalent to first class honours has been achieved
- Or
9. A candidate undertaking this degree under Regulation 6 will be eligible for the award of Honours.
  - (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
  - (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which the candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the Composition or Performance or Thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at an examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to be re-examined so that he or she shall be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this Regulation.
  - (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he or she completes the requirements for Honours within three

years of the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may in exceptional cases be extended by the Senate.

### Special Provision

10. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Commencement

11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC DMus

### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall hold the Degree of Master of Music of the University of Auckland or Bachelor of Music of the University of New Zealand.
2. The Degree of Doctor of Music shall be awarded for distinction in musical composition.
3. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall apply to the Head of the Department of Music for registration as such, showing that he or she has:
  - (a) the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 1; and
  - (b) adequate training and ability to pursue a course of advanced study in musical composition.
4. (a) The Senate having received a recommendation from the Head of Department shall determine whether the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of registration.
  - (b) A recommendation shall include:
    - (i) the proposed date of registration
    - (ii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff
    - (iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed course of study.
5. Having been registered as a candidate for the Degree, the candidate shall pursue a full-time course of advanced study in Composition at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of Department of Music and the Supervisor or Supervisors, for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration.
6. Having completed the initial two years of full-time study, a candidate may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate.
7. The Supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavorable report is received.
8. Having complied with the conditions of the foregoing Regulations, a candidate shall, within five years from the date of registration (or such further time as the Senate may permit), apply to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree.
9. (a) A candidate shall submit for examination original and substantial work, consisting of not more than three pieces, each of which may be within any of the following classes:
  - (i) orchestral work
  - (ii) opera
  - (iii) work using vocal keyboard or ensemble resources
  - (iv) presentation of Music Theatre
  - (v) electronic music.
  - (b) Electronic resources may be included in work within classes (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) in paragraph (a) of this Regulation.
10. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major part of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
11. The application to be examined shall be in writing and (accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations) shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work or works to be examined
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.
12. (a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined, the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint as Examiners:
  - (i) the Supervisor or Supervisors
  - (ii) one person who shall be a member of staff of another University within New Zealand, and
  - (iii) one person who shall be resident outside New Zealand.
  - (b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.
13. (a) A copy of the work shall be submitted to each examiner who shall:
  - (i) report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work;
  - (ii) recommend to the Senate whether or not the Degree should be awarded.
  - (b) Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
14. A candidate who has held the qualifying degree for not less than five years may, in exceptional circumstances, be permitted by the Senate to proceed direct (without complying with Regulations 3 to 8) to examination as prescribed in Regulations 9, 10 and 11.
15. (a) In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14, the Senate shall, as soon as possible after the application has been lodged, appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (i) consider the work and submit through the Registrar a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application; and
  - (ii) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners.
  - (b) If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in any such case the candidate may:
    - (i) withdraw the application, being then entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 11 of these Regulations; or

- (ii) elect to proceed with examination.
16. In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14 above, and for whom the examination is to proceed:
- without being restricted in choice to the persons recommended under Regulation 15 (a) (ii), the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside of New Zealand, and may at its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
  - The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
  - the examination shall proceed as prescribed under Regulation 13.
17. Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or (in the case of examination under Regulations 12 and 13) the Head of Department shall submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner; and the Senate shall then appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 13, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.
- Revocation**
18. (i) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (ii) The Regulations governing the Degree of Doctor of Music last published in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1985 are revoked.  
 (iii) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### BMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

- Before enrolling for this Degree, a candidate who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made.
- A maximum of 60 first-year places will be available in the School of Music. Of this number a maximum of 35 places will be offered to Performance students, the remainder being available for BMus and BA (intending to advance in Music). Restriction will be based on previous Music Examinations and/or interview.
- For the following papers, restrictions will be based on results in Stage I Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:

Number	Title of Paper	Limit
28.210	Composition	12
28.215	Orchestration	20
28.216	Electronic Music	20
28.218	Conducting	20

- For the following papers, restriction will be based on results in Stage II Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:

Number	Title of Paper	Limit
28.310	Composition	8
*28.316	Electronic Music	8
28.318	Conducting	5

#### 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint

Renaissance polyphony in 2 and 3 parts, and 17th-Century hymnody and simple 4-part chorales. As this is all vocal music, sight-singing skills are also taught.

#### 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music

The development of musical response by means of aural perception and keyboard skills in conjunction with a study of the elements of music.

#### 28.103 Music in Society

A survey of various aspects of Western music, setting them in the context of social and cultural change. General themes are illustrated by specific case studies, and by reference to non-Western music cultures.

#### 28.106 History of Jazz

A study of the development of Jazz from 1900. In addition to the general and regional study of the growth of the music, there will also be some concentration on particular styles, performers and performances.

#### 28.110 Composition

Creativity and craftsmanship in free composition are studied with some analysis of significant 20th-Century works and exercises in important 20th-Century techniques.

#### 28.113 Acoustics for Musicians

The fundamental principles of oscillations and wave

propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; and the acoustics of rooms.

#### 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology

Historical development of ethnomusicology; music in world society; music as human behaviour; elementary structural analysis; introduction to music styles from selected areas.

#### 28.131 Second Instrument Study

A paper for students who wish to maintain a high level of study in voice or instrumental performance supplementary to their existing Performance Course. The work will include regular performance lessons and ensemble playing.

#### 28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music, from plainsong and early polyphony to the present. The further development of keyboard skills.

#### 28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on 18th & early 19th Century practices.

#### History of Musical Style

A survey of music in the periods as shown. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

#### 28.203 The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance

\*28.204 The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era □

#### 28.207 The Classic-Romantic Era

\*28.208 The Twentieth Century □

#### 28.210 Composition

(Counts as two papers)

The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with a study of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realisation of performances.

#### 28.214 Ethnomusicology

African Music south of the Sahara; North and South American Indian Music.

#### 28.215 Orchestration

Technical aspects of writing for orchestral instruments and problems of scoring, where possible using practical examples and performers within the group. Study of standard repertoire for classical and small orchestras.

#### 28.216 Electronic Music

A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last forty years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis.

#### 28.217 Music Education

A study of many aspects of music education, including the

international and New Zealand perspectives, the psychology of music education and the examination of teaching strategies and techniques.

#### **28.218 Conducting**

Practical work in elementary conducting, repertoire, and choral direction, including a study of rehearsal techniques.

#### **28.221 Repertory and Pedagogy**

Introduction to the evolution of particular instruments, their repertoire and performance practice and a survey of pedagogical practices relating to the interface of teaching with performance. There will also be a special study of certain schools and styles.

#### **28.223 Musicology**

The aims and scope of musicological research. Topics include bibliography research tools, survey of standard reference works, specific areas of debate in the subject, and historical projects in selected areas.

#### **28.230 Chamber Music**

A practical paper in the playing of Chamber Music or other Ensemble work, combined with a special study of certain aspects of the history of chamber music or the development of ensemble techniques. This course is additional to the normal ensemble requirements expected of students in the Performance course, and it presumes a high standard of entry. It will not always be possible to accommodate in any one year every group which applies.

#### **28.231 Second Instrument Study**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the paper 28.131.

#### **28.301 Analysis**

The study and analysis at advanced level of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

#### **†28.302 Harmony and Counterpoint**

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on nineteenth and early Twentieth Century practices.

#### **28.303, \*28.304, 28.307, \*28.308 History of Musical Style**

As for papers 28.203-208 respectively, but taken and examined at Stage III level.

#### **28.310 Composition**

(Counts as three papers)

Continuing study of composition with emphasis on structure and composing for varied resources. Study of major 20th-Century composers and their methods.

#### **28.314 Ethnomusicology : Music of Oceania**

Maori music and music styles of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia and Aboriginal Australia.

#### **†28.316 Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music**

Advanced studio techniques; methods of analog synthesis, FM synthesis, sampling, use of microcomputers for data storage, MIDI and synchronisation. Aesthetics of electronic music, study of selected examples from past and contemporary sources, especially NZ studios.

#### **†28.318 Conducting**

The basic elements of baton technique; rehearsal planning and management, practical work with recordings and with choral and instrumental groups.

#### **28.319 Organology**

The study of instruments, their taxonomy, evolution and context.

#### **†28.322 Special Topic**

To be announced

#### **28.323 Musicology**

Continuation of work begun in 28.223. Work with primary sources, and related bibliographical and reference tools, editing, individual research projects.

#### **†28.324 Special Topic:**

The Music of Tchaikovsky.

#### **28.330 Chamber Music**

Advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing.

#### **28.331 Second Instrument Study**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the papers 28.131 and 28.231.

### **BMus(Hons) and MMus Restriction on Entry to Course**

1. Interview by Board of teaching members of Music Faculty; and
2. Performance where applicable.

**Note:** The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice.

#### **28.400 Special Topic**

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

#### **28.401 Special Topic**

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

#### **28.402 Approaches to Music Aesthetics**

A general outline of music aesthetics, including attitudes towards music in some non-Western societies, and a survey of major writings on music aesthetics from Classical times to the Twentieth Century.

#### **28.406 Studies in Music Notation**

Detailed study of mensural notation of the Fourteenth to Sixteenth Centuries, lute and keyboard tablatures. Basic problems of notation, transcription and editing.

#### **28.409 Advanced Analysis**

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works, and the study of analytical theories with particular attention to those of Schenker.

#### **28.410 Composition**

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, electronic resources.

#### **28.414 Ethnomusicology**

Field method, transcription and analysis; study of selected scholars.

**Note:** 28.314 Ethnomusicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

#### **28.415 Advanced Orchestration**

Orchestration and instrumentation in the 20th-century, including contemporary instrumental and vocal techniques.

**Note:** 28.215 Orchestration is a prerequisite for this paper.

#### **28.416 Electronic Music**

Personal composition using electro-acoustic resources with or without conventional instruments and voices. Detailed study of recent developments in electro-acoustic music.

**Note:** 28.216 Electronic Music is a prerequisite for this paper.

#### **28.419 Studies in Performance Practice**

Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of Performance Practice. The study of source materials; individual projects; performance of music from the area(s) studied.

#### **28.423 Seminar in Musicology**

Musicology method; bibliographical studies; selected problems for discussion and investigation.

**Note:** 28.323 Musicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

#### **28.430 Chamber Music**

More advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing, with particular attention to the literature of the Sonata.

#### **28.424 Performance**

Performance work as under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

#### **28.601 Thesis**

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three paper value)

An investigation into some branch or area of music, under the guidance of a supervisor and embodying some elements of research.

#### **28.604 Dissertation**

(One paper value)

Investigation of an approved topic.

#### **28.610 Composition**

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three paper value)

The preparation and presentation of one or more original compositions, under the guidance of a supervisor.

#### **28.620 Recital**

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three paper value)

The preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well balanced recital programme.

**Note:** The availability of these papers will depend on numbers of students and their choice.

# DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC DipMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music shall:
  - (a) before enrolling for the Diploma satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music including performance has been attained.
2. A candidate shall:
  - (a) follow a course of full-time study of not less than three years, and
  - (b) follow a course of study continuously, except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

### Course Entrance

3. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for this Diploma shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

### Special Admission

4. A candidate, who has not been granted the university entrance qualification but has been selected for a place in the course, shall be eligible to apply for Admission under the Special Admission Regulations if he or she has passed the School Certificate Examination, and has attained the age of sixteen years by 31 December in the year preceding that in which he or she intends to enrol.

### Course Requirements

5. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of not fewer than eighteen papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are listed in three stages - I, II and III.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Diploma.
7. A candidate with previous knowledge in Aural Training or Harmony may be required by the Head of the Department of Music to begin the course by taking subjects in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate passes 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint and 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music, he or she will be credited with a pass in each paper accordingly, and shall continue the course as outlined in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate fails either of papers 28.100 and 28.101 (but not both) and is certified by the examiner to have attained the standard of a pass in 28.105, the candidate shall have a credit as for 28.105 and shall continue the course as outlined in Group A of the Schedule.
8. For Performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.325 a candidate shall:
  - (a) carry out Performance work and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:
 

Flute	French Horn	Violin	Piano	Recorder
Oboe	Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	Percussion
Clarinet	Trombone	Cello	Organ	Harp
Bassoon	Tuba	Double Bass	Singing	Guitar
Saxophone				Jazz Studies
Baroque Flute				

**Note:** Not all of these subjects may be available in any one calendar year. The School of Music Handbook gives further details.

- (d) if presenting Singing for this Diploma attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.
- (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
9. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course of study that he or she:
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.
  - (b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University during enrolment for this Diploma, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music; and
  - (c) shall not enrol for any other course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
10. (a) Except as otherwise provided the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) A candidate who has gained a credit for any subject under any former Regulations under the Diploma in Music shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

### Special Provision

11. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Credit for Other Qualifications

12. A candidate who has gained any recognised qualification in Music from a non-University Tertiary Institution in New Zealand may with the approval of the Senate be credited with up to three papers for a two-year qualification and up to six papers for a three-year qualification.

### Commencement

13. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1993.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Diploma and with the Prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol in any paper unless the prerequisite and corequisite requirements as listed in the Schedule, for the Degree of Bachelor of Music are satisfied.
3. The papers prescribed for this Diploma are:



**STAGE I****Group A**

- 28.103 Music in Society  
 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques  
 28.120 Performance (three paper value)  
 One paper from BMus schedule

**Group B**

- 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music  
 28.103 Music in Society  
 28.120 Performance (three paper value)

**STAGE II****Group A**

- 28.201 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music  
 28.220 Performance (three paper value)  
 One paper from BMus schedule

**Group B**

- 28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis  
 28.220 Performance (three paper value)  
 Two papers from BMus schedule

**STAGE III****Group A**

- 28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis  
 28.325 Performance (four paper value)  
 One paper from BMus schedule

**Group B**

- 28.325 Performance (four paper value)  
 Two papers from BMus schedule

---

**DIPLOMA IN MUSIC (HONOURS) DipMus(Hons)**

---

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music with Honours shall:
  - (a) before enrolling for this Diploma
    - (i) have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Music, and
    - (ii) have satisfied the Senate that in the work presented for the Diploma in Music he or she has attained a high standard, and
  - (b) have been accepted by the Board of teaching members of the School of Music at an interview held in the November prior to first enrolment for the Diploma in Music with Honours.
  - (c) follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year.

**Course Requirements**

2. The course of full-time study for this Diploma shall consist of:
 

28.425 Performance (four paper value)  
 and any two papers listed in the schedule for the Bachelor of Music but not previously taken.
3. For Performance 28.425 a candidate shall:
  - (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:
 

Flute	French Horn	Violin	Piano	Recorder
Oboe	Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	Percussion
Clarinet	Trombone	Cello	Organ	Harp
Bassoon	Tuba	Double Bass	Singing	Guitar
Saxophone				Jazz Studies
Baroque Flute				

**Note:** Not all of these subjects may be available in any one calendar year. The School of Music Handbook gives further details.

- (d) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
  - (e) A candidate presenting Singing for this Diploma shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of Department of Music may require.
4. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue this course of study that he or she:
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of Department of Music, and
  - (b) shall not enrol for any other course without the leave of the Head of Department of Music.
5. A candidate shall be required to pass the course of study as a whole so that performance in both Performance 28.425 and the papers shall be considered.
6. Except as otherwise provided in these Regulations the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

**Special Provision**

7. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

**Commencement**

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

---

**†DIPLOMA IN PERFORMING ARTS DipPerformArts**

---

The Diploma in Performing Arts is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

---

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DipMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

A candidate before enrolment for this Diploma is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at interview to be held during the August/September study break preceding the year of enrolment.

Applications to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year)

The prescriptions for papers for the Diploma in Music shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of

Bachelor of Music (Performance), and in the case of Basic Musical Techniques (28.105) as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, and as follows:

#### Performance

See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

---

### DipMus(Hons)

#### 28.425 Performance

(Four paper value)

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

---

## INSTRUCTION IN A SINGLE INSTRUMENT

Instruction may be offered in a single instrument by a full-time member of the Music staff. The subjects normally include Violin, Viola, Cello, Piano, Harpsichord and Organ. ✓

The Admission Regulations do not apply to students enrolling for such instruction. Enrolment is at the discretion of the teacher concerned, and will be subject to the teacher's existing commitments to full-time students enrolled for a university qualification. Enrolment must be completed, whether on a term-by-term or occasional basis, and the appropriate fee paid, before the first lesson of each term.

By arrangement lessons may be half an hour or one hour in length; they are available on a regular or an occasional basis. The teaching year consists of three ten-week terms.

Instruction will be under the direction of the teacher, who will submit an annual report on each student to the Head of the Department of Music.

Students may be invited, at the discretion of the teacher, to participate in ensemble or Performance class work in the School of Music.

# Faculty of Science

## Contents

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Faculty of Science	340
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Bachelor of Science	341
	Schedule for Bachelor of Science	342
	Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)	372
	Degree of Bachelor of Optometry	375
	Schedule for Bachelor of Optometry	375
	Degree of Bachelor of Science Education	376
	Degree of Bachelor of Technology	376
	Degree of Master of Science	377
	Schedule for Master of Science	377
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	School of Biological Sciences	379
	Department of Chemistry	384
	Department of Computer Science	386
	Department of Education	388
	Environmental Science	388
	Department of Geography	389
	Department of Geology	390
	Department of Mathematics and Statistics	392
	Medical Science	396
	Department of Optometry	396
	Department of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology	397
	Department of Philosophy	398
	Department of Physics	398
	Department of Physiology	401
	Department of Psychology	402
	Science Communication	403
	Science Education	403
	Technology	403
	Tutoring in Science	403
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Diploma in Computer Science	404
	Diploma in Mathematics Education	404
	Diploma in Science	404
	Diploma in Science Education	404
	Diploma in Statistics	404
	Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology	405
	Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	405
	Postgraduate Diploma in Science	406
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Diploma in Computer Science	406
	Diploma in Mathematics Education	406
	Diploma in Science Education	406
	Diploma in Statistics	406
	Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology	406
	Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	406
<b>Certificate Regulations</b>	Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology	407
	Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry	407

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The Faculty of Science consists of fourteen independent Departments covering the full range of mathematical, physical, biological, behavioural and earth sciences. Each Department teaches papers at the undergraduate and graduate levels as well as being involved in research. Students commencing the BSc degree are advised to consult the *Science Handbook* which describes the papers offered and gives advice on planning a course of study. Information on research activities is contained in the *University of Auckland Research Report* which is published each year and lists research publications and thesis topics. In addition each Department issues information on the courses it teaches.

### Bachelor of Science

Over 200 papers grouped under eighteen different subject headings are offered in the BSc Schedule. Students select personal courses of study from among these papers according to their interests and career objectives. There are over 30 Stage I papers each of which provides an introduction to the subject and foundation on which to build further study. The Stage II and III papers progress to a more advanced level, with a greater depth and concentration of subject-matter. The papers differ in their relative sizes and this is indicated by the number of credits awarded for each paper passed. Most of the Science papers involve laboratory or field work which is an integral part of the teaching programme.

The subjects offered in the BSc Schedule are:

Biochemistry	Mathematics - Applied
Botany	Mathematics - Pure
Cellular and Molecular Biology	Pharmacology
Chemistry	Philosophy
Computer Science	Physics
Education	Physiology
Environmental Science	Psychology
Geography	Tutoring in Science
Geology	Zoology

Students should note that not all subjects are available at Stage I. The BSc Schedule gives a breakdown of each subject's papers and their stages.

The minimum requirements for the BSc Degree can be summarised as follows:

- At least three years' study
- A total of at least 96 credits
- At least 36 credits above Stage I
- At least 12 credits in Stage III Science papers
- At least four different Science subjects (at least 6 credits in each).

For the purpose of defining Science subjects, Applied Mathematics and Pure Mathematics are separate subjects, but Biology is not a subject (all Biology credits must count as either Botany or Zoology).

There are two important constraints which must be borne in mind when planning a BSc course. The first is that all prerequisite and corequisite requirements are met. The best way to plan a BSc course is to select first the major subjects which will be taken to Stage III. Then work backwards to ensure that all the necessary prerequisites are taken in the first two years. The other constraint on selection of papers is the problem of timetable clashes. Students should study carefully the timetable information given in this *Calendar*, noting particularly the parts of the year in which each paper is taught. Some of the larger classes will have several alternative laboratory and lecture streams which may help to avoid clashes. Thus most of the common combinations of Stage I papers can be taken without clashes, but the large number of advanced papers means that many combinations of subjects are impossible for timetable reasons. As a general rule it is not possible to take papers which clash in lecture or laboratory times, unless a special arrangement can be negotiated with the Departments concerned.

The BSc Regulations include some special provisions which can be of benefit to some students. Thus students who have performed well in Bursary or Scholarship examinations may be permitted to enrol directly in Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. Students who have been awarded the NZCS or other technical or nursing qualifications before coming to University may be granted credit towards the BSc (maximum 36 credits). Students who abandon 'Intermediates' for Engineering, Architecture and other courses will normally be permitted to credit passes in Science papers to the BSc Degree.

Although the main object of BSc papers is to teach scientific method and to impart knowledge and appreciation of some of the main scientific disciplines it is also possible to acquire a broad educational experience by suitable choice of papers. BSc students may also take up to 20 credits from papers in other Faculties, giving an opportunity to pursue interests outside of the sciences.

### Tamaki Campus

From 1993, two science programmes will be offered at the Tamaki Campus as part of the BSc Degree. The programmes are in the areas of Environmental Management, and Physics, Electronics, Computers and Computing.

### Bachelor of Science (Honours)

This course is available only to students of proven ability in Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology, Mathematics, Psychology and Zoology. Students normally change from the BSc course to the BSc(Hons) course at the end of their second or third year at University. The course covers much of the same advanced material as the MSc course, but it is possible to complete BSc(Hons) within four years. BSc(Hons) graduates are permitted to enrol for PhD studies without completing a Master's degree.

### Bachelor of Science Education

This degree is designed to meet the needs of two groups of students: those who are considering secondary teaching as a career (enrolment for the Diploma in Teaching course at the Auckland College of Education is a corequisite of Part II of BScEd) and those who desire a broad-based science degree that includes detailed considerations of philosophical, socio-economic, historic and moral-ethical issues in Science.

### Bachelor of Technology

This is a new interfaculty degree which prepares students for employment or research in specific areas of technology. This degree is a four year course. The options available in 1993 are Information Technology (Tamaki Campus only) and Optoelectronics (Main Campus).

### Bachelor of Optometry

This is a four-year professional course leading to registration as an Optometrist. The intermediate year (OptomInt) consists of seven Science papers at the 100-level. Entry into the second year (BOptom Part 1) of the course is subject to a quota and selection is made on

the basis of performance in the intermediate year.

#### **Master of Science**

This is a course of advanced study and an introduction to research, based on the study of one scientific discipline in depth. (For the MSc in Environmental Science, a further science subject is studied in addition to Environmental Science.) All of the main Science Departments offer MSc programmes, each consisting of a number of specialist papers plus a thesis on a selected research topic. (In Computer Science and Mathematics the thesis may be replaced by an advanced course of study.) All Departments offer a wide range of MSc research topics and intending students are advised to discuss their proposed course with staff members before completing the BSc Degree.

The prerequisite for the MSc course is a BSc Degree with the required number of Stage III credits as specified for each subject in the MSc Regulations, and an average grade of C+ or better in these Stage III papers.

#### **Doctor of Philosophy**

The PhD Degree has become accepted as the appropriate qualification for a career in scientific research. The PhD course consists of advanced study and supervised research leading to the presentation of a thesis. The thesis must be an original contribution to knowledge and meet the recognised international standards of scientific research.

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology**

This is a three-year course in selected areas of applied psychology which is undertaken in conjunction with the Master's Degree in Psychology.

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology**

This is a three-year course which is undertaken in conjunction with the Master's Degree in Psychology.

#### **Diploma in Computer Science**

This is a specialist course concentrating on topics in Computer Science.

#### **Diploma in Mathematics Education**

This is a course intended for those, not necessarily graduates, who have several years' experience as teachers and wish to broaden their knowledge of both educational theory and mathematics teaching.

#### **Diploma in Science Education**

This course is designed to complement the existing Diploma in Mathematics Education. Like the DipMathsEd it is intended to meet the needs of serving teachers, in this case in the areas of science and science education.

#### **Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology**

This is a course intended for experienced optometrists who wish to broaden their knowledge of theoretical and practical aspects of Ocular Pharmacology.

#### **Diploma in Statistics**

This is a specialist postgraduate course involving papers in Statistics, Mathematics and Computer Science together with a project.

Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry

A pass in 08.350 or 08.352 will entitle students to receive the Elementary Certificate.

#### **Combined Science and Commerce Degrees**

Students who wish to study both Science and Commerce are encouraged to consider the conjoint BCom/BSc, listed under "Interfaculty" degrees. The conjoint programme takes a minimum of 4 years and must be planned very carefully to satisfy the two sets of Degree Regulations and to meet timetable constraints. Intending students, who must be of high quality, must seek advice from the Science and Commerce Deans before enrolling. Students will normally enter the conjoint programme in their first year, or possibly at the end of the first year; it is seldom possible to complete in 4 years if students enter later.

#### **School of Biological Sciences**

The four previously independent departments in the biological sciences - Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology and Zoology - are being integrated to form a School of Biological Sciences. A major revision of the curriculum is being undertaken but no major changes will be implemented until the 1994 academic year. Enquiries should be addressed to the Deputy Director (Curriculum and Teaching), School of Biological Sciences.

## **DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS**

### **THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE BSc**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall follow a course of study of not less than three years.
2. (a) The subjects prescribed for this Degree are:
 

Biochemistry	Mathematics (Applied)
Botany	Mathematics (Pure)
Cellular and Molecular	Biology Pharmacology
Chemistry	Philosophy
Computer Science	Physics
Education	Physiology
Environmental Science	Psychology
Geography	Tutoring in Science
Geology	Zoology
- (b) For the purpose of these Regulations: a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:
  - Stage I (xxx. 100 to xxx. 199)
  - Stage II (xxx. 200 to xxx. 299)
  - Stage III (xxx. 300 to xxx. 399)
- (c) 'Credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ("the BSc Schedule").
3. A complete course of study for this Degree requires the gaining of a least 96 credits, of which:

- (a) at least 12 credits must be from Stage III papers in the BSc Schedule;
- (b) at least 36 credits must be from papers above Stage I; and
- (c) at least 6 credits must be from papers scheduled for this Degree in each of four subjects.
- (d) Credits obtained from the paper 14.327 (Aspects of Science Education) shall not satisfy the requirement of Regulation 3 (a) above.
- (e) Credits obtained from papers in Logic do not count as a subject under 3(c) above.
4. For the purpose of Regulation 3 (c) each paper in Biology shall count for credit as a paper in either Botany or Zoology.
5. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply (i) (before enrolment) with all prerequisite requirements and (ii) with all corequisite requirements, as set out in the BSc Schedule. However, the Head of Department may in exceptional circumstances:
  - (a) waive any of those requirements;
  - (b) waive any prerequisite requirement and impose it as a corequisite.
6. A candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers in the BSc Schedule may not enrol for any papers above Stage I without the prior permission of the Senate.

#### Practical Work Requirements

7. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;
  - (a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;
  - (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

#### Course Load Restrictions

8. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

#### Direct Entry to Stage II Papers

9. Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 5 and 6, the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers.

But where such permission is given:

- (a) a successful candidate shall be credited only with passes in the Stage II papers and not in any of the prerequisite papers;
- (b) a candidate who fails any Stage II paper may be granted a pass in the appropriate Stage I paper if the necessary standard has been attained.

#### Credit for Papers in Other Faculties

10. (a) A candidate for this Degree may obtain up to 20 credits from any other papers or subjects which:
  - (i) are taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and are prescribed for a Bachelor's degree in any of those other Faculties; and
  - (ii) are not the same as, or do not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit to the BSc Degree.
- (b) In exceptional cases, a student abandoning a BCom/BSc in favour of a BSc alone may have up to 12 credits from the other component credited to the BSc, in addition to the credits allowed under Regulation 10(a).
- (c) The credits allowed for the purpose of this Regulation shall be:
 

Architecture, Property & Planning	per credit	1 credit
Arts	per paper	5 credits
Commerce,	including papers 01.102, 01.103 or 01.104	
	per paper	5 credits
Engineering	paper 50.002	3 credits
	per any other half-year paper (but not 31.114)	
	per full-year paper	4 credits
Fine Arts	per paper	5 credits
Law	per 23 hours of lectures in any subject	2 credits

### SCHEDULE

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
-------------------------	----------------	--------------	--------------	---------	-------------------------------	-------------------

#### BIOCHEMISTRY

66.202	Molecular Aspects of Cells			6	46	24x3
66.203	Central Concepts of Metabolism			6	46	24x3
66.301	Biochemistry of Macromolecules		1st half	6	46	12x6
66.302	Metabolic Interrelationships		2nd half	6	46	12x6

#### BOTANY

39.101	Central Concepts of Biology			6	46	12x3
--------	-----------------------------	--	--	---	----	------

Medicine & Human Biology	per paper	6 credits
Music	per paper	5 credits
Theology	per paper	5 credits
BCom/BSc		

11. For the purposes of the conjoint degrees BCom/BSc, the "BSc component", as defined by the Conjoint Degrees BCom/BSc Regulations shall be:

- at least 60 credits from papers in the BSc Schedule, of which
- at least 12 credits must be from Stage III papers in the BSc Schedule,
- at least 6 credits must be from papers scheduled for the Degree of Bachelor of Science in each of three subjects prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, including at least 6 credits from subjects which are not included in the BCom Schedule.

Note: Refer also to BCom Regulation 14 and the Conjoint Degrees of BCom/BSc in the Inter-Faculty section of this *Calendar*.

#### Credits for Papers Abandoned from Other Degree Courses

Note: See Regulation 15 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

12. For the purposes of these Regulations the word 'papers' in Regulation 15 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:

- papers listed in the BSc Schedule;
- papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule as determined by the Senate;
- papers that can be credited towards the BSc Degree under Regulation 10.

#### Credit for Other Qualifications

13. (a) A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate in Science or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.
- (b) A candidate who has gained in New Zealand a Diploma in Nursing may be given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits as the Senate may determine.
- (c) A candidate who has successfully completed a course at a Teacher's College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

#### Transitional Provisions

14. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent papers as may be determined by the Senate.
- (c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

#### Exceptions

15. (a) The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- (b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

#### Validity

16. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1983.

#### Schedule

- This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions applying to courses of study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.
- The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
- The heading 'prerequisite' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
- The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry paper and 39.101 As for 66.202		66.201	
	66.202	66.201	
(a) 66.202 and 66.203 (b) 12 additional Science credits above Stage I As for 66.301	66.302		
	66.301		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours	Minimum Lab Hours
39.103	New Zealand Biology			6	46	24
T39.103	New Zealand Biology			6	46	24
06.102	Form & Function in Plants		2nd half	6	46	12x3
06.250	The Biology of New Zealand Vegetation: Ecology Systematics and Conservation			6	46	12x6
06.251	The Biology of Plant Cell Growth and Development			6	46	12x6
06.252	The Biology of Crop Plants: Breeding, Physiology and Protection		1st half	6	46	12x6
39.311	Freshwater Ecology			3	23	6x6
39.314	Conservation Ecology			3	23	6x6
06.313	Forest Ecology		1st quarter	3	23	6x6
06.326	Pure and Applied Plant Development Biology		1st half	6	46	12x6
06.334	Plant and Environmental Microbiology		3rd quarter	3	23	6x6
06.335	Plant Pathology		4th quarter	3	23	6x6
06.341	Genetics		4th quarter	3	23	6x6
06.361	Plant Biosystematics		2nd quarter	3	23	6x6
06.371	Marine Botany		3rd quarter	3	23	6x6

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

40.303	Cellular and Molecular Biology		1st half	6	46	12x6
40.304	Microbial and Molecular Genetics		2nd half	6	46	12x6
40.305	Plant and Animal Molecular Biology		2nd half	6	46	12x6

## CHEMISTRY

08.111	Organic and Physical Chemistry			6	46	12x3
08.121	Inorganic and Physical Chemistry			6	46	12x3
T08.170	Chemistry and Our World			6	46	36
08.200	Perspectives in Chemistry			3	23	
08.210	Physical Chemistry			6	46	12x6
08.220	Inorganic Chemistry			6	46	12x6
08.230	Organic Chemistry			6	46	12x6
08.250	Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists		1st half	2	10	10x3



Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
		T39.103 39.103	
Two out of 39.101, 06.102, 39.103 or T39.103		39.210 06.202 06.302	
06.102, 39.101			
06.102, 39.101			
15 credits at Stage II in Bot and/or Zoo			
As for 39.311 06.250 6 credits from 06.251 or 06.252		39.313 06.325	Students normally may not enrol for more than 6 credits in Botany III until they have passed at least 12 credits in in Botany II As for 06.313
	06.252		As for 06.313
	06.252	06.331	As for 06.313
	06.252	06.332	As for 06.313 As for 06.313 As for 06.313
12 Stage II credits in Bot and/or Zoo			As for 06.313 As for 06.313
(1) 08.111 and 08.121 (2) 66.202 (3) 12 credits from any papers in Botany, Biology, Zoology or Biochemistry (4) 18 credits from any Stage II or Stage III Science papers	40.303  40.303		
08.111 or 08.121			
08.111 and 08.121 As for 08.210			
As for 08.210 08.111 or 08.121		08.350, 08.352	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
08.260	Analytical Chemistry		1st half	3	23	12x3
08.310	Physical Chemistry			3	23	36
08.311	Physical Chemistry: Applications			3	23	36
08.320	Inorganic Chemistry			3	23	36
08.321	Physical-Inorganic Chemistry			3	23	36
08.330	Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis			3	23	36
08.331	Advanced Organic Chemistry			3	23	36
08.340	Structural Methods in Chemistry			3	32	20
08.352	Radiochemistry		1st,2nd,3rd qu.	3	16	16x3
08.360	Advanced Analytical Chemistry		2nd half	3	23	12x3
08.370	Environmental Chemistry			3	23	12x3
08.390	Advanced Topics in Chemistry (A)	†		3	By Arrangement Head of Department	
08.391	Advanced Topics in Chemistry (B)	†		3	By Arrangement	

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

07.100	Principles of Computing (a)		1st half	6	46	60
07.105	Principles of Computing (b)		2nd half	6	46	60
07.111	Introduction to Computing and Applications			6	46	60
T07.115	Computers and Programming			6	46	60
26.165	Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics			6	46	23
T26.165	Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics			6	46	23
T74.110	Computers and Information Systems			6	46	60
07.211	Computer Systems			4	46	40
07.222	Data Base Management Systems			4	46	40
07.231	Introduction to Software Engineering		1st half	4	35	40

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
08.111 and 08.121		08.210 (before 1989)	
08.210			
08.210	08.310		
08.220			
08.220			
08.230			
08.230	08.330		
08.210, 08.230	08.220		
08.210 or 08.220 or 08.230 or 08.260		08.250, 08.350	
	08.260		
	08.260		
Permission from			
Permission from Head of Department			
		07.101, 07.111, 50.002, 72.100, T74.110	
	07.100 or (07.111 as a prerequisite)		With permission of Head of Department, paper 50.002, Introduction to Computing for Engineers, may be used as an alternative corequisite for 07.105
		07.100, 07.101, 50.002, 72.100, T74.110 07.105 T26.165	
	T74.110		
	26.120 or 26.121; 26.140 or 26.141		
	26.120 or 26.121 26.140 or 26.141	26.165	
		74.100, 07.100, 07.111 07.210	
07.100 or 07.111			With permission of Head of Department, paper 50.002, Introduction to Computing for Engineers, may be used as an alternative prerequisite for 07.211
07.100 or 07.111 or 74.100 07.100 or 07.111; 07.105; any 6 credits in Mathematics and Statistics		07.320, 72.322, 74.222, 74.322 07.230	
			With the permission of Head of Department, alternative Mathematics prerequisites may be accepted for 07.231 and 07.232, such as another Stage I Mathematics paper, or bursary Mathematics.

<b>Paper Number and Campus</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Availability</b>	<b>Part of Year</b>	<b>Credits</b>	<b>Total Lecture Hours Per Paper</b>	<b>Minimum Lab Hours</b>
07.232	Software Reliability and Design		2nd half	4	35	40
26.290	Numerical Computation			4	46	40
07.301	Topic in Computer Science (a)		2nd half	2	23	
07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b): Data Communications Technology		2nd half	2	23	
07.303	Topic in Computer Science (c)		1st half	2	23	
07.304	Topic in Computer Science (d)			4	46	
07.305	Topic in Computer Science (e)			4	46	
07.306	Topic in Computer Science (f)			4	46	
07.310	Computer Organisation			4	46	40
07.315	Computer Graphics		1st half	2	23	20
07.330	Language Implementation			4	46	40
07.340	Operating Systems			4	46	40
07.342	Data Communications	*		4	46	40
07.351	Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science			4	46	
07.352	Design and Analysis of Algorithms			4	46	
07.361	Functional and Logic Programming		1st half	2	23	20
07.362	Artificial Intelligence		2nd half	2	23	20
07.380	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (a)			2		50
07.381	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (b)			2		50
07.382	Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (c)			4		100
26.390	Numerical Analysis			4	46	40
26.391	Optimisation in Operations Research			4	46	12
26.395	Mathematics Modelling for Operations Research			4	46	12
74.324	Data Communications			4	46	

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
07.100 or 07.111; 07.105; 26.120 or 121 or 122 07.100 or 07.111, 26.120 or 121 or 122, 26.140 or 141 or 142 Permission from Head of Department	07.231	07.220, 07.221  07.290	As for 07.231   Even though laboratory hours are not shown explicitly for papers 07.301 to 07.306, they will usually involve a considerable amount of practical work. As for 07.301
Permission from Head of Department			
Permission from Head of Department Permission from Head of Department Permission from Head of Department Permission from Head of Department			As for 07.301 As for 07.301 As for 07.301 As for 07.301
07.211; 07.230 or 07.231 07. 221 or 07.232, 07.230 or 07.231; 26.120 or 26.121 or 26.122 07.211, 07.230 or 07.23 07.211; 07.230 or 07.231 07.211; or 07. 230 or 07.231 (07. 221 or 07.232; 26.220 or 26.222 or 29.101) or (07.105; 26.221) 07. 221 or 07.232, 07.230 or 07.231 07.221 or 232, 07.230 or 07.231 07. 221 or 07.232; 07.230 or 07.231 07.211; 07.230 or 07.231, 07.221 or 07.232; Permission from Head of Department As for 07.380	07.302 (before 1989)  07.305 in 1984  74.324 ((before 1992) 07.250, 07.350  07.250, 07.350 07.360 07.360		
As for 07.380	07.361	07.360	
As for 07.380			
07.290 or 26.290; 26.220 or 221 or 222; 26.240 or 241 07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221 or 222 07.100 or suitable comouting experience; 26.180; 240 or 241 (74.220; 74.221) or (07.211; 07.230 or 07.231)		07.390         07.342 (before 1992)	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
-------------------------	----------------	--------------	--------------	---------	-------------------------------	-------------------

Computer Science Contd.

## EDUCATION

14.327	Aspects of Science Education			4	46	
--------	------------------------------	--	--	---	----	--

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

64.200	Environmental Science			4	46	
--------	-----------------------	--	--	---	----	--

## GEOGRAPHY

20.101	Geography of the Natural Environment			6	35	12x2
T20.101	Geography of the Natural Environment		2nd half	6	35	12x2
20.102	Society, Space and Place		1st half	6	35	12x2
T20.102	Society, Space and Place			6	35	12x2
20.201	Processes in the Natural Environment			4	46	23x1
20.202	Society, Economy and Environment			4	46	23x1
20.203	Remote Sensing Techniques			4	46	23x1
20.204	Statistical Techniques in Geography			4	46	23x1
20.205	Human Impact in the Environment			4	46	23x1
20.206	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries	*		4	46	
20.302	Regional Processes and Development			4	46	23x1
20.303	Geomorphology and Hydrology			4	46	23x1
20.304	Biogeography and Climatology			4	46	23x1

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
			In exceptional circumstances and with the permission of Head of Department, some papers offered for MSc in Computer Science may be taken for the BSc Degree. Each such paper shall carry the credit rating shown in the MSc prescriptions
24 Stage I credits or equivalent from any Faculty including at least 6 credits from papers in the BSc Schedule		36.262 84.200	
20.101 or T20.101 and 20.102 or T20.102		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites As for 20.201	
As for 20.201		As for 20.201	
As for 20.201 As for 20.201 As for 20.201		As for 20.201	
As for 20.201		As for 20.201	
As for 20.201		20.306, as for 20.201	
Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202	20.315,	Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305. With special permission of Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
20.305	Population Health and Society			4	46	23x1
20.306	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries	*		4	46	
20.310	Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only)	*		4	46	23x1
20.312	Special Topic: Development in the Asia-Pacific Region			4	46	23x1
20.313	Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography			4	46	23x1
20.314	Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing			4	46	20x2
20.315	Research Design and Methods in Human Geography			4	40	20x1
20.320	Resources and Environmental Management			4	46	23x1
20.321	Special Topic	†				

## GEOLOGY

T21.108	Earth Materials and Processes			6	46	46
21.110	Planet Earth		2nd half	6	36	12+ 2 days
21.111	Introduction to General and Environmental Geology		1st half	6	48	12x2
21.112	Geological Materials and Methods		2nd half	6	24	24x2
21.200	Introduction to Field Geology		1st half	4		4+7 days
21.211	Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics		2nd half	4	36	12x3
21.212	Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology		1st half	4	36	12x3
21.213	Principles of Mineralogy		1st half	4	24	12x3
21.215	Principles of Petrography		2nd half	4	24	12x3
21.300	Field Methods for Geology		1st half	4		12+10 days
21.303	Advanced Paleontology			6	46	23x3
21.306	Applied Geophysics		1st half	3		36



Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
As for 20.302	20.315	As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		20.206. as for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302	20.302 or 20.305	As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
As for 20.302		As for 20.302	
<hr/>			
		21.110	
		21.100	
	21.100 or 21.111	21.150	
21.100, 21.150 or 21.112		21.201, 21.202	With permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites for 21.200 may be waived.
21.100, 21.150 or 21.112	21.200	21.201	
21.100, 21.150 or 21.112	21.200	21.202	
21.100, 21.150 or 21.112		21.203	
21.100, 21.150 or 21.112	21.213, 21.200	21.203	
21.200	6 Geology III credits 21.200 or 21.300		With special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived for a student enrolling in one Stage II paper.
Either (21.100 and 21.150) or (21.111 and 21.112), or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102			
Either (26.120 or 121), (26.140 or 141), (31.140 or 141) and (21.200 and 211) or 21.201 or 31.225 and either 21.112 or (21.100 and 21.150)	31.330 or 31.335	21.386	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
21.307	Experimental Geophysics		2nd half	3		72+6 days
21.310	Geology of Australasia and the SW Pacific		2nd half		3	24
21.311	Advanced Structural Geology		1st half	3	24	12x3
21.312	Advanced Sedimentology		2nd half	3	24	12x3
21.314	Introduction to Mineral Deposits		1st half	3	24	12x3
21.315	Advanced Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology		1st half	4	24	12x3
21.318	Introduction to Engineering Geology		1st half	3	24	12x2
21.319	Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry		2nd half	3	24	12x2
21.324	Advanced Mineral Deposits		2nd half	3	24	12x3
21.381	Advanced Mine Geology			3	24	12
21.382	Applied Coal Geology	*		3	24	12x2
21.384	Exploration and Mining Geology			3	36	12x2
21.386	Applied Geophysics for Mining	*		3	12	24
21.388	Engineering Geology	*		3	36	12
52.231	Geomechanics I			4	46	11x3
52.331	Geotechnical Engineering		1st half	3	24	12
52.332	Geomechanics II		2nd half	3	36	12
56.101	Mineral Engineering				46	4
56.312	Evaluation & Mineral Economics		2nd half	4	46	12
56.314	Rock Mechanics		1st half	3	36	15

### MATHEMATICS, APPLIED

26.165	Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics			6	46	23x1
--------	---	--	--	---	----	------

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
As for 21.306	21.306, 31.330 or 31.335	21.386, 31.393	
At least 8 Geology II credits Either 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211) and 6 credits in Maths or Physics	2 papers from 21.303-318 21.300	21.301	
Either 21.203, or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.302	
6 Chemistry credits and either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.281, 21.304	
6 Chemistry credits and 21.213 and 21.215	21.300	21.305	
Either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.201	
21.213 or 21.203	6 credits from any Stage II or Stage III papers in Chemistry 21.314	21.304	With the permission of the Head of Department, the prerequisites and corequisites for 21.319 may be waived
21.281, 21.284 Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate As for 21.381	21.381 or 21.314		
As for 21.381	21.314	21.284	As for 21.381
As for 21.381	21.381	21.306, 21.307, 31.393	As for 21.381
Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Civil Engineering as appropriate Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Civil Engineering As for 52.231			
As for 52.231 Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Mining Engineering As for 56.101			
As for 56.101			
26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141		T26.165	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
T26.165	Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics			6	46	23x1
26.175	Introduction to Mathematical Modelling			6	46	23x1
26.180	Principles of Statistics			6	46	23x1
26.181	Introduction to Probability & Statistics			6	46	23x1
26.182	Introduction to Probability & Statistics			6	46	23x1
T26.187	Probability and Statistics			6	46	23x2
26.260	Differential Equations			4	35	12x1
26.270	Principles of Mechanics	†		4	35	12x1
26.280	Statistical Theory			4	35	12x1
26.281	Data Analysis			4	35	12x1
26.290	Numerical Computation			4	46	40
26.293	Introduction to Operations Research			4	35	12x1
T26.293	Introduction to Operations Research	†		4	35	12x1
26.360	Applied Analysis			4	46	12x1
26.362	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (a)	*		4	46	12x1
26.363	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b)	†		2	23	12x1
26.368	Mathematical Theory of Control	†	2nd half	2	23	12x1
26.371	Introduction to Continuum Mechanics			4	46	12x1
26.372	Analytical Mechanics	*		2	23	12x1
26.375	Applied Partial Differential Equations		1st half	2	23	12x1
26.376	Theory of Waves		2nd half	2	23	12x1
26.380	Applied Probability			4	46	12x1
26.381	Advanced Statistical Theory			4	46	12x1
26.382	Design of Surveys and Experiments			4	46	12x1

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
	26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141	26.165	
	26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241 26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241	26.181, 26.182, T26.187, 26.188, T26.188, 13.102 26.180, 26.182, T26.187, 28.188, T26.188, 13.102 26.180, 26.181, T26.187, 26.188, T26.188, 13.102 26.180, 26.181, 26.182, 26.188, T26.188, 13.102	
26.175 or 31.140 or 31.141 26.180 or with permission of Head of Department 26.181 or 182	26.240 or 241 or 330 or 331 26.240 or 241; 26.260 26.240 or 241	26.170	
26.181 or 182 or 180 07.100 or 26.165 or T26.165; 26.120 or 121 or 122; 26.140 or 141 or 142		07.290	
Either 26.165 or or T26.165 or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100 As for 26.293		T26.293, 74.200 before 1992  26.293, 74.200 before 1992	
26.220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241; 260 Enrolment requires permission from the Head of Department As for 26.362			
26.220 or 221 or 222; 26.260 26.240 or 241; 26.260 26.270, 26.260; 26.240 or 241 26.240 or 241; 26.260 26.240 or 241; 26.260	26.375 or 31.210	54.241  26.363 (1984-86)	
26.180; 220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241 26.280; 220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241 26.280 or 281			

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Avail-ability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
26.385	Advanced Data Analysis			4	46	23x1
26.387	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (c)			4	46	12x1
26.390	Numerical Analysis			4	46	40
26.391	Optimisation in Operations Research			4	46	12x1
26.395	Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research			4	46	12x1
26.399	Applied Mathematics Laboratory	†	2nd half	2		12x3
74.310	Total Quality Management			4	46	
MATHEMATICS, PURE						
26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			6	46	23x1
T26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			6	46	23x1
26.102	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus			6	46	23x1
T26.107	Algebra and Calculus			6	46	23x2
26.120	Principles of Algebra			6	46	12x1
26.121	Introductory Algebra			6	46	12x1
26.140	Principles of Calculus			6	46	12x1
26.141	Introductory Calculus			6	46	12x1

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
26.281 or 280: approval from Head of Department Permission of Head of Department			
07.290 or 26.290: 26.220 or 221 or 222; 26.240 or 241		07.390	
07.100 or 26.165 or T26.165 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221 or 222 The special inter- disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed		54.251	
07.100 or 26.165 or T26.165 or suitable computing experience: 26.180 or 26.188 or T26.188; 240 or 241 The special inter- disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed		54.351	
07.100 or 26.165 or T26.165 or suitable computing experience	At least two of 26.371, 26.375, 26.382 26.385, 26.391 26.395		
26.281 or 26.293 or T26.293 or 74.200		26.362 (1992 only)	
		T26.101, 26.102, 122, (142 before 1991); 13.105 See note (i) 26.101, 26.102, 122, (142 before 1991); 13.105 See note (i) 26.101 or T26.101, 122 (142 before 1991); 13.105 See note (i) All other Stage I Pure Mathematics papers except 26.101 or T26.101 and 26.102 26.108, T26.108, 121, 122, 221 26.108, T26.108, 120, 122, 221 26.108, T26.108, 141, 142, 241 26.108, T26.108, 140, 142, 241	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
26.142	Concepts of Calculus			6	46	12x1
26.200	Tutoring in Mathematics			4	27	29
26.210	Principles of Mathematics			4	46	
26.220	Linear Algebra			6	46	23x1
26.221	Algebra (accelerated paper)			8	58	12x1
26.222	Linear Algebra			6	46	23x1
26.225	Discrete Mathematics			4	35	12x1
26.240	Calculus			4	35	12x1
26.241	Calculus & Analysis (accelerated paper)			8	69	
26.310	Special Topic	†		4	46	23x1
26.312	Topics in the History of Mathematics		1st half	2	23	12x1
26.313	Special Topic	†		2	23	12x1
26.314	Introduction to Mathematics Education			4	46	23x1
26.315	Formal Logic			4	46	12x1
26.320	Algebraic Structures			4	46	23x1
26.321	Introduction to Abstract Algebra	†		4	46	23x1
26.325	Combinatorial Structures		2nd half	2	23	12x1
26.330	Introductory Analysis		1st half	2	23	12x1
26.331	Analysis			6	69	



Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
		26.108, T26.108, 140, 141 241, (101, 102 before 1991); 13.105	(i) Students may not enrol in 26.101 nor T26.101 nor 26.102 at the same time as, nor subsequent to passing, any other Pure Mathematics paper (including 26.108 or T26.108 or 26.120 or 26.121). In order to enrol in any other Pure Mathematics paper after passing 26.101 or T26.101 or 26.102, a grade of B- or better is recommended in these papers. Students scoring 50% or more in any Bursary Mathematics paper are strongly encouraged to enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101 or T26.101 or 26.102.
Permission of Head of Department 26.140 or 141 or 142; 26.120 or 121 or 122	At least one other Stage II Mathematics paper		
26.120 <sup>a</sup> or 26.121 <sup>b</sup> Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		26.221, 222 26.120, 121, 122 220, 222	
26.108 <sup>a</sup> , 26.120 or 26.121 26.120 or 121 or 122		26.220, 221 26.310 (1985-86), 26.325 (1987-92)	
(26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141 or 142 <sup>b</sup> ); or 26.108 <sup>a</sup> Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department As for 26.310		26.241	
As for 26.310 As for 26.310		26.140, 141, 142, 240	
		26.311	
26.120 or 121 and at least one Stage II level Mathematics paper 26.220 or 221 or 222		29.305	
26.220 or 221 or 222		26.321 26.320	
26.220 or 221 or 222; 26.225	26.240 or 241	26.310 (1985- 1986)	
26.240 or 241 26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221 or 222	26.340	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
26.335	Metric & Normed Spaces		2nd half	2	23	12x1
26.340	Multivariable Calculus			4	46	23x1
26.345	Techniques of Complex Variables		1st half	2	23	12x1
26.350	Topics in Topology□	*		4	46	23x1
26.355	Geometry○	†		4	46	23x1

## PHARMACOLOGY

96.301	Principles of Pharmacology			6	46	23x3
96.302	Systematic Pharmacology			6	46	23x3

## PHILOSOPHY

29.101	Introduction to Logic			6	46	12x1
29.201	Logic II		1st, 2nd terms	4	46	12x1
29.203	Philosophy of Science		1st, 2nd terms	5	46	
29.305	Logic III			4	46	12x1

## PHYSICS

31.101	The Physical Universe			6	46	23x1
31.102	The World of Physics			6	46	23x1
31.114	Measurement and Instrumentation		2nd half	3	23	6x3
T31.122	Physics of the Environment		1st half	6	46	12x3
T31.132	Physics of Technology		2nd half	6	46	12x3
31.140	Foundations of Classical Physics			6	46	12x3
31.144	Physics for Engineering			6	46	12x3
31.150	Foundations of Modern Physics			6	46	12x3

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221 or 222		
26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221 or 222	26.331	
26.240 or 241			
26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221 or 222		
26.220 or 222			(i) The superscript <sup>b</sup> when associated with the prerequisites 26.108 or 26.120 or 26.121 or 26.142 denotes that a grade of B- or better is required in these papers. (ii) Any number of 400 level papers may be taken with prior permission of the Head of Department. Each such paper shall have the credit value shown in the MSc Prescriptions.
66.202 or 66.203 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science paper above Stage I			
67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I			
29.101, and any one other Philosophy I paper or 24 BSc credits			
Two Stage I Philosophy papers or 24 BSc credits			
29.201, and any one other Philosophy II paper or 48 BSc credits		26.315	
		31.100 31.140, 141, T31.122	
	31.140 or 144	31.104	
		31.102, 31.140, 141, 31.150, 151	
		31.140, 141, 31.150, 151 31.102, 141, 144, T31.122, 132	
	55.001	31.102-141, T31.122, 132 31.100, 151, T31.122, 132	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
31.200	Topics in Contemporary & Applied Physics			4	46	
31.206	Introductory Geophysics		1st half	2	23	
31.225	Classical and Mathematical Physics			6	46	15x3
31.240	Electronic Physics		1st half	3	23	8x3
31.245	Electronic and Applied Physics			6	46	15x3
31.255	Quantum and Statistical Physics			6	46	15x3
31.270	Astronomy and Astrophysics			3	23	6x1
31.297	Digital Logic Laboratory			2		24x2
31.325	Advanced Classical Physics			4	46	
31.326	Laser Physics and Optoelectronics		2nd half	2	23	
31.330	Terrestrial Physics		1st half	2	23	

<b>Prerequisites</b>	<b>Corequisites</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>	<b>Notes</b>
6 credits from 31.101-151, T31.122, 132			
6 credits from 31.102-151, T31.122, 132			
6 credits from 26.101-181, T26.101, T26.107, 108			
12 credits <sup>b</sup> from 31.140-151 T31.122, 132			The superscript <sup>b</sup> associated with the prerequisites indicates that in papers 31.141 and 31.151, the grade required is B- or better.
12 credits from 26.120-175 (or equivalent)			
6 credits <sup>b</sup> from 31.140-144, T31.132		31.245	As for 31.225
6 credits from 26.120-175 (or equivalent)			
12 credits <sup>b</sup> from 31.140-151. T31.122, 132		31.220 31.240	As for 31.225
12 credits from 26.120-175 (or equivalent)			
12 credits <sup>b</sup> from 31.140-151, T31.122, 132			As for 31.225
12 credits from 26.120-175 (or equivalent)			
12 credits from 31.140-151, T31.122, 132			
6 credits from 26.101-175, T26.101, T26.107			
6 credits <sup>b</sup> from 31.140-144, T31.132			As for 31.225
6 credits from 26.120-175 (or equivalent)			
Two of 31.225, 245, 255; 26.240, 26.260 or their equivalent			Normally a course containing more than six credits from 31.325-356 (including any already credited) will not be approved unless it also contains at least one of 31.390-392 (unless these have already been credited). As for 31.325
31.245, 26.240, 26.260 or their equivalent	31.325 or equivalent		
(a) 31.225 or (b) 21.201.		31.335	
6 credits from 31.140-144, T31.122, 132			
12 credits from 26.120-175, T26.107, 108			

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
31.335	Geophysics			4	46	
31.342	Semiconductor Devices		1st half	2	23	
31.345	Analogue and Digital Electronics			4	46	
31.355	Advanced Quantum Physics			4	46	
31.356	Nuclear Physics and Its Applications		1st half	2	23	
31.370	Astrophysics	†	2nd half	2	23	
31.380-31.389	Selected Topics			2	23	
31.390	Experimental Physics A		1st half	3		12x6
31.391	Experimental Physics B		2nd half	3		12x6
31.392	Experimental Physics C			3		12x6
31.393	Experimental Geophysics (the same paper as Geology 21.307)		2nd half	3		23x3

## PHYSIOLOGY

67.201	Introductory Physiology			6	46	23x3
67.301	Systematic Physiology			6	46	23x3
67.302	Physiology of Cells & Excitable Tissues		1st half	3	23	12x3
67.303	Physiology of the Nervous System		2nd half	3	23	12x3

## PSYCHOLOGY

32.108	Introduction to General Psychology			6	46	
32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology			6	23	23x2
32.118	Introduction to General Psychology			6	46	
32.119	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	*		6	23	23x2
T32.128	Psychology as a Social Science			6	46	
T32.129	Psychology as an Experimental Science			6	23	23x2
32.220	Human Experimental Psychology			4	23	23x2

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
31.225	One of 31.390-392	31.330	As for 31.325
31.240 or 245	As for 31.335		As for 31.325
31.245	As for 31.335		As for 31.325
26.240, 26.260 or their equivalent			
31.255	As for 31.335		As for 31.325
26.240, 26.260 or their equivalent			
31.255	As for 31.335		As for 31.325
26.240, 26.260 or their equivalent			
One of 31.225 245, 255			
Prerequisites and/or corequisites as determined by the Head of Department			
One of 31.225. 245, 255	At least two credits from 31.325-31.370 for each one of 31.390, 391, 392 enrolled for As for 31.390		
As for 31.390	As for 31.390		
As for 31.390	21.306,	21.307	
31.225;	31.330		
(21.100, 21.150)			
<hr/>			
08.111 or 121 and 6 credits from any paper in Biology or Zoology			
67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level			
As for 67.301			
As for 67.301			
<hr/>			
		32.118, T32.128 32.119 T32.129	
		32.108 T32.128 32.109 T32.129	
		32.108, 32.118 32.109 32.119	
32.108 or 32.118 or T32.128, and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129.		32.207, 32.209, 32.211	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
32.230	Introduction to Neuroscience			4	46	23x1
32.240	Social and Developmental Psychology			4	46	23x1
32.250	Animal Learning and Behaviour			4	23	23x2
32.301	Psychology of Individual Differences			4	23	23x2
32.303	Cognitive Science			4	23	23x2
32.304	Personality & Psychotherapy			4	23	23x2
32.305	Human Neuroscience			4	23	23x2
32.306	Research Methods in Psychology			4	46	23x1
32.307	The Psychological Analysis of Vision & Hearing			4	23	23x2
32.308	Research Topic			4		23x2
32.309	Learning			4	23	23x2
32.311	Social Psychology			4	23	23x2
32.312	Organisational Psychology			4	23	23x2
32.313	Special Topic in Psychology	†		4		
32.314	Ergonomics			4	23	23x2
32.315	Abnormal Psychology			4	46	23x1
32.316	Life-span Developmental Psychology			4	46	23x1

## SCIENCE COMMUNICATION

T701.101	Science Communication			6	46	23x1
----------	-----------------------	--	--	---	----	------

## TUTORING IN SCIENCE

620.200	Tutoring in Science			4	27 (-)	30 (+)
---------	---------------------	--	--	---	--------	--------

## ZOOLOGY

39.101	Central Concepts of Biology			6	46	12x3
39.103	New Zealand Biology			6	46	24
T39.103	New Zealand Biology				46	24
38.102	Animal Evolution and Diversity		2nd half	6	46	12x3
38.207	Biometry		1st half	3	23	12x3



Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
32.108 or 32.118, or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129; or 38.102		32.207, 32.212, 213	
32.108 or 32.118, or T32.128 and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129		32.214, 215	
32.108 or 32.118, or T32.128, and 32.109 or 32.119 or T32.129; or 39.103 or T39.103		32.206, 32.210	
12 credits from 32.210, 220, 225, 230, 240, 250 or from 32.209, 211, 212 213, 214, 215 and from 1995 paper 26.181 or 26.182			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301 or 67.201			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301	Four of 32.301-316	Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department 72.316	
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
As for 32.301			
At least 2 science papers taught at the Tamaki Campus			
36 Stage I Science Credits			(-) Seminars included (+) Work in classrooms
		39.111  06.103, T39.103 06.103, 39.103 39.112  39.207, 307	

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Avail-ability	Part of Year	Credits	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours
38.250	Bchaviour and Ecology			6	46	72
38.251	Marine Biology		1st half	6	46	72
38.252	Animal Function and Design		2nd half	6	46	12x6
38.303	Biological Timekceping		4th quarter	3	23	6x6
38.305	Arthropods in the Terrestrial Environment		1st quarter	3	23	6x6
38.310	Animal Morphogenesis		2nd quarter	3	23	6x6
39.311	Freshwater Ecology			3	23	6x6
39.314	Conservation Ecology			3	23	6x6
38.315	Evolutionary Genetics		3rd quarter	3	23	6x6
38.316	Biological Oceanography		3rd quarter	3	23	6x6
38.317	Applied Entomology		2nd quarter	3	23	6x6
38.319	Ecological Phvsiologv of Marine Animals		2nd quarter	3	23	6x6
38.320	Marine Ecology and Aquaculture		1st quarter	3	23	36

Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Notes
39.103 or T39.103		38.204, 211	Students who have taken Stage II Zoology papers prior to 1991 may enrol in 38.250-252 only where to do so will not involve substantial overlap with previously credited papers. Details of restrictions will be advised by the Head of Department.
39.101, 38.102		38.201, 212 38.301	As for 38.250
39.101, 38.102,		38.202, 209 38.302	As for 38.250
38.252, 38.207 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology		38.203  38.205	
As for 38.305			
15 credits at Stage II level in Botany and/or Zoology			
As for 39.311 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology		39.315	
12 credits at Stage II in Zoology including 38.251 38.207		39.316  06.252, 38.305	
38.252, 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology 38.207, 38.250 38.251			
			Any candidate majoring in another subject may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take up to two papers in Zoology without fulfilling the prerequisites and corequisites listed in the Schedule. *Starred papers will not be taught during the current <i>Calendar</i> year. †Daggered papers will not be taught during the current <i>Calendar</i> year unless sufficient staff is available. ‘T’ Prefix - Taught at the Tamaki Campus □ Taught in even numbered years. ○ taught in odd numbered years.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (HONOURS)

### BSc(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations*

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with Honours shall follow a course of study of four years, or five years for a student who has completed a conjoint BCom/BSc programme.
2. The Degree may be awarded in each of the following Honours Schools: Biological Sciences (Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Zoology), Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology, Mathematics and Psychology.
3. Admission to the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be given at either the end of the second year or third year after matriculation provided that where the proviso to Regulation 11 applies, admission may be granted at the end of the third or fourth year after matriculation.
4. No candidate shall be admitted to an Honours School without the approval of the Head of Department of that School or, in the case of Biological Sciences, the Director of the School of Biological Sciences, and of the Senate. Such approval shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the candidate's performance in the courses of University study already pursued by the candidate and particularly in the papers required as prerequisites to that Honours School.
5. No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if he/she has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science of this University.
6. In each Honours School a candidate's course of study for the Degree shall comprise:
  - (a) such prerequisites, being papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, and
  - (b) such Honours Parts (being Parts III and IV, or Part IV as the case may be) and
  - (c) such Foreign Language requirements as the Head of the Department within the Honours School may prescribe, and
  - (d) such papers in other subjects as may be required and prescribed in that Honours School under Regulation 16, provided that:
    - (i) except where the Senate in its discretion otherwise permits, the number of prerequisite papers shall be not fewer than 72 credits in a case of entry into an Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation and not fewer than 96 in a case of entry at the end of the third such year;
    - (ii) in the case of any prerequisite subject and with the approval of the Senate, if the candidate has been permitted to enrol for and has passed at Stage II without having passed at Stage I, Stage II may be substituted for Stage I, and Stage III may then be substituted for Stage II;
    - (iii) in the case of a candidate whose mother tongue is not English the Foreign Language requirements shall be waived.
    - (iv) A student who has completed the requirements for a conjoint BCom/BSc programme shall, for the purposes of this Regulation, be deemed to have 96 Science credits, but shall not normally be exempted from any other prerequisite requirements for entry to an Honours School.
7. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 16, a candidate for this Degree may, with the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned (or, in the case of Biological Sciences, the Director of the School of Biological Sciences) and the approval of the Senate,
  - (a) substitute one paper in another subject for one paper of the subject in which the Degree is being taken, or
  - (b) substitute one Stage III paper (or up to 4 Stage III credits) not already taken for any other degree or diploma.
8. A candidate in any subject for this Degree where practical work is prescribed, must pass besides the written examination, in such practical work as may be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

#### Withdrawal and Exclusion from Course

9. A candidate may withdraw from the Honours School and be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.
10. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Honours course of study so that the performance in all papers comprising this Part shall be considered: provided that a candidate who has failed to pass an Honours Part as a whole may in such exceptional circumstances as the Senate approves be credited with a paper or papers of that Part and permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with (if the Senate permits) a paper or papers of the next succeeding Part. The candidate shall then be required in that year to pass as a whole in all the papers so presented upon the same conditions as those herein prescribed.
11. A candidate shall sit his/her final examinations for the Degree within four years of his/her matriculation, provided that at the discretion of the Senate the period may be extended to five years:
  - (a) where a candidate first enrolled in the subject of his/her Honours School in his/her second year after matriculation, or
  - (b) in any special circumstances.
12. A candidate who, on the results of his/her examination, does not reach the standard required in the Honours School in which he/she is enrolled, shall be excluded by the Senate from the Honours School but he/she may be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

#### Classes of Honours

13. The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of Honours awarded shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in the examinations in his or her final year but account may be taken of his or her work throughout his or her course of study.
14. The Senate may determine in respect of any candidate who fails to qualify for the Degree that he or she be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science or be credited with papers towards that Degree or be credited with the Degree of Bachelor of Science together with appropriate credits towards the Degree of Master of Science.

#### Transfer to BSc(Hons)

15. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and without payment of a fee, grant him or her permission to transfer to a course of study under these Regulations and allow him or her to be credited with a pass in such papers as the Senate shall determine.

#### Requirements of Honours Schools

16. Subject to the provisos to Regulation 5, the Honours courses of study with subject and papers of examination are as follows:  
**Biological Sciences** (Honours may be taken in any of the four Honours Schools: Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Zoology).

**Biological Sciences Prerequisites**

- (a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree providing that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisite for entry to Part IV.
- (b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including:

**For Biochemistry**

66.301 and 66.302 plus 12 additional Stage III credits from Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

**For Botany**

18 Stage III credits from Botany plus 6 additional Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology or Zoology.

**For Cellular and Molecular Biology**

40.303, 40.304 and 40.305 plus 6 additional Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

**For Zoology**

18 Stage III credits from Zoology plus 6 additional Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Physiology or Zoology.

**Biological Sciences Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Director of the School of Biological Sciences). Part III shall consist of:

**For Biochemistry**

- (a) 66.301 and 66.302, and
- (b) at least 12 Stage III credits from Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

**For Botany**

- (a) 18 Stage III credits from Botany, and
- (b) at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology or Zoology.

**For Cellular and Molecular Biology**

- (a) 40.303, 40.304, 40.305, and
- (b) at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

**For Zoology**

- (a) 18 Stage III credits from Zoology, and
- (b) at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Physiology or Zoology.

**Biological Sciences Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and a thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Director of Biological Sciences and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic. The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science in one of the four Honours Schools as listed below and a thesis (Biochemistry 66.603, Botany 06.603, Cellular and Molecular Biology 44.603, or Zoology 38.603) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be the equivalent of one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the end of the third term.

**Part IV Papers****For Biochemistry**

66.401, 66.402, 66.403

**For Botany**

Three papers from 06.402 to 06.460

**For Cellular and Molecular Biology**

40.401, 40.402, 40.403

**For Zoology**

Three papers from 38.401 to 38.414

**Note:** Intending students should consult the Director of the School of Biological Sciences about the selection of a research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

**Computer Science Prerequisites**

- (a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree provided that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.
- (b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including at least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.

**Computer Science Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science.)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science totalling 24 credits and including such papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisite to entry to Part IV.

**Computer Science Honours Part IV**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science.)

Part IV shall consist of 24 credits, at least 16 credits of which shall be from Computer Science (07.400 to 07.499). The remaining credits may be selected with the approval of the Heads of the Departments concerned from relevant Masters papers in the subjects Mathematics, Physics (one paper counting as 4 credits) and/or papers prescribed for the degree of Master of Engineering (one paper counting as 2 credits for this Degree.)

**Geology Prerequisites**

- (a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her second year after matriculation, Geology papers totalling 24 credits and 42 credits from other papers in any of the following subjects:  
Botany, Chemistry, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology, or in any other subject approved by the Head of Department.
- (b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her third year after matriculation, structure of course of study as specified for entry at the end of the second year:

24 credits from papers 21.300-21.388.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology Stage III papers.

### **Geology Honours Part III**

(Geology papers totalling not fewer than 24 credits, together with practical work.)

Part III shall contain papers prescribed as Geology second or third year papers, for a total of not fewer than 24 credits. In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, advanced papers in other subjects may be substituted for Geology papers, provided that the course of study contains Geology papers totalling at least 12 credits.

### **Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic.\* The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (21.401 to 21.450 but not 21.484 or 86.404) and a thesis (21.603) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

\*Note: (i) Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

(ii) An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Applied Geology Prerequisites**

- For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation: Geology papers totalling at least 24 credits and at least 18 credits from papers in any of the following subjects: Chemistry, Computer Science, Geomechanics, Mathematics, Mineral Engineering, Physics or any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Geology.
- For any candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation: structure of course of study as specified for entry at end of second year, and at least 24 credits from 21.300, 21.304 to 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314 provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from the Geology Stage III papers.

### **†Applied Geology Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Head of the Department of Geology, together with practical work.) Not fewer than 24 credits from 21.300, 21.304 to 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314, provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology III papers.

### **Applied Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic. The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science in Applied Geology and a thesis (21.613) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

### **Mathematics Prerequisites**

- For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her second year after matriculation a total of 72 credits from the following subjects: Mathematics, Chemistry, Computer Science, Physics, or in any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics provided that prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisite for entry to Part IV.
- For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her third year after matriculation: Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics but 12 credits in Mathematics may be approved in special cases.

### **Mathematics Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics totalling 24 credits and including such Mathematics papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

### **Mathematics Honours Part IV**

(20 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part IV shall consist of 20 credits, at least 12 credits of which shall be from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499.

The remaining credits may be selected with the approval of the Heads of the Departments concerned from relevant Masters papers in the subjects Computer Science, Physics (one paper counting as 4 credits) and/or papers prescribed for the degree of Master of Engineering (one paper counting as 2 credits for this Degree.)

### **Psychology Prerequisites**

- For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, Psychology papers totalling 24 credits. In addition, candidates must have sufficient credits to enable them to have obtained 96 credits from appropriate papers in subjects prescribed for the BSc Degree by the completion of Part III.
- For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from the subjects prescribed for the BSc Degree including at least 20 credits at the 300 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Psychology.

### **Psychology Honours**

The Psychology Honours Degree shall consist of not fewer than 40 credits in Psychology, including 32.306 and 32.603, the remainder to be selected from papers 32.300 to 32.316 and from papers 32.400 to 32.425 (excluding 32.420), each 400 level paper and the thesis (32.603) carrying 4 credits.

### **Psychology Honours Part III**

(Psychology papers totalling not fewer than 16 credits.)

Part III shall consist of 300 level papers in Psychology totalling not less than 16 credits and including 32.306.

### **Psychology Honours Part IV**

(Not fewer than 16 credits in Psychology, including practical work and a thesis.)

Part IV shall consist of not fewer than 16 credits in Psychology, including papers selected from 32.400 to 32.425 (excluding 32.420)

and a thesis embodying the results of an original investigation (32.603) which shall have the value of 4 credits. Students who have not passed 32.306 are required to take 32.419.

17. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF OPTOMETRY BOptom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry shall be required to pursue a course of study of not less than four years.  
(b) A candidate shall pass an Intermediate Examination and the Examinations for Parts I, II and III.
- A candidate shall follow a course of study for the Optometry Examinations continuously. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of the Senate and on such conditions as the Senate may determine.
- A candidate in any paper for this degree where practical or clinic work is prescribed, must pass besides the written examination, in such practical or clinical work as may be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### Examinations

- A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each part of the course of study provided that where a candidate fails to pass a Part as a whole he or she may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Part, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the next succeeding Part.

### Intermediate Examination

- The intermediate shall comprise those papers listed in the Schedule provided that in the case of any or each of the papers listed in the Schedule a candidate may substitute, with the permission of the Senate, an equivalent paper or papers passed at this or another university.
- Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 1 and 4, the Senate may permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Part I without having passed the Optometry Intermediate papers.

### Exceptions

- (a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### Transitional

- Any candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in The University of Auckland *Calendars* for 1991 and 1992 shall complete the course under the respective Regulations but, where required by the Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.
- The Regulations shall come in force on 1 January 1992.

### Course Content

- The examinations and subjects for this Degree are:

### Intermediate Examination

The following papers, all except 26.105 being as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science:

### SCHEDULE

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
----------	----------	----------------	-------------------------------	-------------------	---------	---------------	--------------	--------------

## OPTOMETRY

### Intermediate (OptomInt)

#### Part A A candidate must take all of the following papers:

Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Chem	08.111	Organic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Phys	31.140	Foundations of Classical Physics	46	12x3	6			31.102, 141, 144, T122, 132
Maths	26.105	Algebra and Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.101, 102, 120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142
Maths	26.181	Introduction to Probability and Statistics	46	23x1	6			26.180, 13.102
Comp Science	07.111	Introduction to Computing and Applications	46	60	6			07.100, 07.101, 50.002, 72.100

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>Part B A candidate must take one of the following papers:</b>								
Chem	08.121	Inorganic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Phys	31.150	Foundations of Modern Physics	46	12x3	6			31.100,151, T122,132
Psych	32.108	Introduction to General Psychology	46		6			
Psych	32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	6			
Zoo	38.102	Animal Evolution and Diversity	46	12x3	6			39.112

### Part I Optometry

A candidate must take all of the following papers:

744.201	Optics
744.203	Anatomy
744.205	Ocular Physiology
744.210	Visual Science
744.230	Optometry
744.204	General and Ocular Biochemistry
744.202	General Physiology

### Part II Optometry

A candidate must take all of the following papers:

744.305	Pharmacology (half paper)
744.306	Applied Optics
744.310	Visual Science
744.313	Environmental Optometry
744.322	Microbiology and General Pathology
744.330	Introduction to Clinical Practice I
744.331	Introduction to Clinical Practice II
744.334	Diseases of the Eye (half paper)

### Part III Optometry

A candidate must take all of the following papers:

744.415	Community Optometry
744.421	Project
744.425	Clinical Optometry I
744.426	Clinical Optometry II
744.431	Contact Lenses
744.432	Low Vision
744.433	Binocular Vision and Visual Training

---

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE EDUCATION BScEd

The Bachelor of Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

---

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY BTech

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*. Prescriptions for individual papers may be found in the Prescriptions for the Degrees of BCom, BE and BSc in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.



## DEGREE OF MASTER OF SCIENCE MSc

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

### Prerequisites

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Science, before enrolment for the Degree:
  - (i) shall (subject to Regulation 2) have been admitted (or have qualified for admission to) any of the following qualifying degrees:
    - Bachelor of Science (Honours); or
    - Bachelor of Science; or
    - Bachelor of Optometry; or
 shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to a qualifying degree; and
  - (ii) shall (subject to Regulation 3) have fulfilled the further prerequisites in the Schedule to these Regulations.
- (b) For the purpose of these Regulations, candidates for this Degree are classified according to their qualifying Degree (or equivalent qualification) and are referred to accordingly as:
  - 'BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BSc candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BOptom candidates for this Degree'.
- (c) For the purpose of these Regulations Medical Science will be treated as a subject offered for this Degree. For this subject the role of the Head of Department in these Regulations will be taken by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.
- (d) For the purpose of these Regulations Biological Sciences will be treated as four separate subject areas viz. Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology and Zoology. For any of these subject areas the role of the Head of Department in these Regulations will be taken by the Director of the School of Biological Sciences.

### Schedule

The further prerequisites are (subject to Regulation 3):

- (a) For BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree:
  - a pass in the final BSc(Hons) year in the subject offered for this Degree.
- (b) For BOptom candidates for this Degree:
  - a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better, in the Year IV of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry.
- (c) For BSc candidates for this Degree:
  - a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better in all Stage III BSc papers, in appropriate prerequisite subjects, as follows:
 

<b>Applied Geology</b>	24 Stage III credits including at least 12 from Geology.
<b>Biochemistry</b>	Biochemistry 66.301 and 66.302.
<b>Botany</b>	24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits in Botany and/or Biology (prefix 39.) papers.
<b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b>	Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 and at least 6 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.304 and 40.305.
<b>Chemistry</b>	08.210, 08.220, 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.
<b>Computer Science</b>	At least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.
<b>Environmental Science</b>	18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Pharmacology, Physics, Physiology, Psychology and Zoology.
<b>Geography</b>	At least 16 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geography.
<b>Geology</b>	24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geology, and up to 12 Stage III credits from other papers approved by the Head of Department.
<b>Mathematics</b>	Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least three (or, in exceptional cases, two) of 26.225, 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, 26.290, 26.293 plus sixteen, 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics including at least 12 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics
<b>Medical Science</b>	18 Stage III credits including at least 12 from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Pharmacology, Physiology, Psychology, Zoology and such prerequisites as may be required for specific papers.
<b>Pharmacology</b>	Pharmacology 96.301 and 96.302; one of Biochemistry 66.301 or Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 or Physiology 67.301; and an additional 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physiology, Psychology or Zoology.
<b>Physics</b>	Physics 31.325 (4 credits) and at least 8 credits from Physics 31.326-389; at least 6 credits from the laboratory papers Physics 31.390-393; and at least 4 other credits from Stage II papers in Physics or Mathematics.
<b>Physiology</b>	18 Stage III credits including Physiology 67.301, 67.302 and 67.303, and at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Psychology, Zoology, or other papers approved by the Head of Department.
<b>Psychology</b>	20 Stage III credits, including 32.306 and 12 other Stage III credits in Psychology.
<b>Zoology</b>	18 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Zoology and/or Biology.

### Enrolment with Incomplete BSc

2. With the approval of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having gained at least 90 credits for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, but on the following conditions:
  - (a) the candidate's course for this Degree extends over two academic years;
  - (b) the candidate has fulfilled the prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1 or been exempted from them;
  - (c) the remaining paper or papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science are taken in the first year of the course for this Degree;
  - (d) if any remaining paper for the Degree of Bachelor of Science is not passed in the first year of the Master of Science course, the Master's course shall be suspended until that paper is passed.

**Variation of or Exemption from Prerequisites**

3. In any special case recommended by the Head of Department, the Senate may at its discretion:

- (a) vary in any way; or
- (b) exempt the candidate wholly or partly from the appropriate prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1; and may accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisites in paragraphs (b) and (c) of that Schedule.

**General Provisions**

- 4. Papers shall be taken in either the first or the second year or spread over two years according to the requirements of the Department.
- 5. (a) A candidate for this Degree may, where appropriate, with the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned and with the approval of the Senate, substitute for papers in the subject in which the Degree is being taken papers of equivalent rating in an allied subject or subjects, provided that the total rating of the substituted papers does not exceed one third of the paper component of the Degree.
- (b) In special cases recommended by the Heads of Departments concerned and approved by the Senate, a candidate may take an approved selection of papers from two subjects leading to a Master of Science Degree in both subjects jointly.
- (c) The combination of papers taken for the subject Medical Science must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Papers offered in more than one aspect of Medical Science may be approved.
- (d) The combination of papers taken for the subject Environmental Science must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science of the Faculty of Science.
- 6. Every candidate for this Degree shall be required to pass the prescribed papers and to present a thesis where that is prescribed by Regulation 10:
  - except that a thesis only may, with the permission of the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be presented.:
    - (a) by a BSc(Hons) candidate eligible for this Degree;
    - (b) in the subject Applied Geology by a candidate who has received (or is to receive) the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology, having passed papers 86.100 and 86.102; on condition (in either case) that the candidate fulfils any special requirements set by the Head of Department.

**Thesis Requirements**

- 7. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (c) In the case of a thesis requiring laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be necessary.
  - (d) The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 9.
  - (e) In the subject Computer Science, candidates are required to present a seminar on the thesis and/or submit to an oral examination on the thesis, up to three weeks after submission of the thesis. The Head of Department may waive all or part of this requirement.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 16.

**Honours**

- 8. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Candidates who have completed the full requirements for this Degree in accordance with Regulation 10 are eligible for the award of Honours, except that a BSc(Hons) candidate for this Degree may not be awarded Honours in the Master's Degree in the same subject.
- (c) The Degree may be awarded with Distinction to any:
  - (i) BSc(Hons) candidate for this Degree; or
  - (ii) any candidate who has taken this Degree under exception (b) to Regulation 6; where the candidate has achieved a standard equivalent to First Class Honours.
- (d) Honours shall not be awarded in a particular subject to any candidate who enrolled for and failed to qualify for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) in that subject. Such a candidate may be awarded the Degree with Distinction if a standard equivalent to First Class Honours has been achieved.
- (e) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis; but (subject to Regulation 9) a candidate who qualified for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in one paper (or two papers for a course involving five or more papers), or
  - (ii) to resit all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Note:** In order to be eligible for Honours or a Degree with Distinction the candidate must complete all requirements for the Degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 9.

**Time Limits**

- 9. (a) The requirements for this Degree in Regulation 10 shall be completed:
  - (i) in the subjects Geography and Mathematics by 1 November of the second year of enrolment;
  - (ii) in every other subject, within 24 months of the candidate's first enrolment.
- (b) Notwithstanding the requirements of Regulation 9 (a), a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfil the requirements for this Degree within 36 months of first enrolment for the Degree, with eligibility for Honours or Distinction, the individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.
- (c) In respect of all candidates the Senate may in a special case, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:
  - (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction;
  - (ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours or Distinction.
- (d) In exceptional circumstances the Senate may, on such written or other evidence as it requires, at its discretion grant a reasonable extension of time to a candidate for medical or compassionate or other compelling reasons. The extension may be granted:
  - (i) whether or not there has been any extension under paragraph (c) of this Regulation; and
  - (ii) with or without continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction.
- (e) A candidate taking this Degree by thesis only shall submit the thesis within 18 months of first enrolment; but the time may be extended under paragraphs (c) and (d) of this Regulation.

**List of Subjects**

- 10. The subjects of examination and relative requirements as to theses for this Degree, together with the prescription numbers relative to each examination paper, are as follows:

<b>Applied Geology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 21.611 which shall count as three papers. One paper only from any three of the following five groups 21.408; (21.471 to 21.478); 21.484; 86.404; and any one approved paper listed in the ME Schedule.
<b>Biochemistry</b>	Three papers (66.401 to 66.403) and a thesis 66.601 which shall count as three papers.
<b>Botany</b>	Three papers (selected from 06.402 to 06.460) and a thesis 06.601 which shall count as three papers.
<b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b>	Three papers (40.401, 40.402, 40.403) and a thesis 40.601 which shall count as three papers.
<b>Chemistry</b>	Five papers and a thesis 08.601 which shall count as four papers (08.450 plus four papers from 08.410-08.431).
<b>Computer Science</b>	Papers totalling 24 credits and a thesis 07.601 which shall count as 24 credits or papers totalling 24 credits and an advanced course of study 07.605 which shall count as 24 credits. Normally the papers will be selected from Computer Science 07.400 to 07.499. This selection of papers must be approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science.
<b>Environmental</b>	Four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. The papers are: (i) Environmental Science 64.401 and (ii) two 400 level papers in one subject selected from Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Pharmacology, Physiology, Psychology, Zoology, or in the case of Chemistry or Physics, 3 papers, or in the case of Mathematics, 400 level papers worth eight credits, which in determining the overall result will be treated as the equivalent of 2 papers in the other subjects and (iii) one Stage III or Master's 400 level paper in an approved subject or 64.402 or 64.403. This selection of papers must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science.
<b>Geography</b>	Four papers and a thesis 20.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 20.400 to 20.447).
<b>Geology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 21.601 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 21.401 to 21.450 and 86.404).
<b>Mathematics</b>	Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis (26.601) which will count as 20 credits, or papers totalling 20 credits and an Advanced Course of Study (26.605) which will count as 20 credits. The selection of papers is to be made, with the approval of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics, from the papers Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499. Up to eight of these credits may be replaced by eight Stage III credits taken from papers in Mathematics not taken for any other Degree or Diploma.
<b>Medical Science</b>	Three papers and a thesis 89.601 which shall count as three papers. The combination of papers selected from Biochemistry 66.401-403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401-405, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419, Pharmacology 96.404-407 or Medical Science 89.401-406 must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.
<b>Optometry</b>	Three papers and a thesis 744.601 which shall count as three papers (two papers from 744.551 to 744.554, plus a third paper from another subject for this Degree approved by the Head of Department concerned).
<b>Pharmacology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 96.621 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 96.404 to 96.407). A Master's paper in Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology may be substituted for one of the papers 96.404 to 96.407 with the approval of the Head of Department concerned or, in the case of a Medical Science paper, with the approval of the Chairperson of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.
<b>Physics</b>	Five papers and a thesis 31.611 which shall count as five papers (five papers from 31.401-31.499).
<b>Physiology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 67.621 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 67.401 to 67.407).
<b>Psychology</b>	Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 32.401 to 32.430).
<b>Zoology</b>	Three papers (selected from 38.401 to 38.414) and a thesis 38.601 which shall count as three papers.

**Exceptions**

11. In exceptional cases the Senate may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

---

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### SCHOOL OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

#### BIOCHEMISTRY

##### Stage II

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule. Entry to Biochemistry II is limited.

##### 66.202 Molecular Aspects of Cells

(One paper and practical work.)

An introduction to molecular structures of biochemical importance and their relationships to cellular structure and function. Topics include biochemical thermodynamics; amino acids; carbohydrates and polysaccharides; lipids, nucleic acids, purification of proteins; protein structure; enzymes; cell membranes and transport; mitochondria and chloroplasts; specialised cell functions.

The course is a prerequisite for those advancing to papers 66.301, 66.302, BSc(Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and in practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute 20% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear in the laboratory.

##### 66.203 Central Concepts of Metabolism

(One paper and practical work)

An introduction to metabolism with particular emphasis on regulation and control - highlighting regulatory enzymes, covalent modification and amplification; energy-yielding pathways; comparative metabolism of animal, bacterial and plant cells; hormones; elementary immunochemistry, control of protein synthesis, biochemistry of vision.

The course is a prerequisite for those proceeding to papers 66.301, 66.302, BSc(Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute to 20% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear laboratory coats and covered footwear in the laboratory.

### Stage III

**Prerequisites:** See BSc Schedule.

#### 66.301 Biochemistry of Macromolecules

(One paper and practical work.)

Topics introduced in papers 66.202 and 66.203 are treated in greater depth, emphasis is placed upon the biochemistry of macromolecules with particular reference to structure and its elucidation using contemporary methods of protein, glycoprotein and nucleic acid sequencing, high-field NMR and other forms of spectroscopy and mass spectrometry. Practical work is concerned with the theory and practice of analytical procedures used by biochemists.

#### 66.302 Metabolic Interrelationships

(One paper and practical work.)

This course examines recent advances in biochemistry such as mechanisms of communication in plants, the molecular biology of growth factors, aspects of hormone action, microbial biochemistry.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than six hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear during practical classes.

Entry to Biochemistry III may have to be restricted if the number of applicants exceeds the number of laboratory places. Candidates who lack one or more of the prerequisites listed in the BSc Schedule are also permitted to make preliminary application. Competence in mathematics up to University Entrance level is assumed.

#### Biochemistry for BSc (Hons)

Three papers (66.401, 66.402, 66.403) and a thesis (66.603).

See under MSc below for the course prescriptions but note that the prerequisites and the weighting of the thesis for the BSc Honours programme differ from those for MSc. Admission is at the discretion of the Director, School of Biological Sciences.

#### Biochemistry for MSc and Honours

Three papers (66.401, 66.402, 66.403) and a thesis (66.601).

The papers involve the general study of biochemistry at an advanced level with a specific focus on recent developments in biochemistry and molecular biology. Considerable emphasis is placed upon directed reading, tutorials and seminars in each paper. Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the School's Graduate Studies Coordinator as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

The course will be of a minimum duration of one year; the student should normally expect to complete his or her thesis during the following year.

Students from other Universities must have taken Biochemistry to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced as offered at Otago University).

#### Research in Biochemistry

Research facilities are available for PhD students and post-doctoral workers in various areas of biochemistry and intending applicants should consult the School's Graduate Coordinator in the first instance. Further information may be obtained from the School of Biological Sciences *Guide to Postgraduate Study and Research*.

## BOTANY

### Stage I

The first year course for students in Botany or Biology consists of three 6 credit papers, Biology 101 (Paper 39.101), Botany 102 (Paper 06.102) and Biology 103 (Paper 39.103).

#### 39.101 Central Concepts in Biology

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; cellular differentiation; histogenesis and pattern formation. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

#### 39.103 New Zealand Biology

An introduction to the diversity of animals and plants in New Zealand including endemic, native and introduced; their biogeographical and evolutionary relationships; community structure and inter-relationships; behaviour and ecology; Maori perspectives in biology, as well as current conservation, environmental, social, animal welfare, and economic issues in New Zealand biology. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in Botany and Zoology. The focus is on whole organisms in their environment. Practical work will centre on reports prepared in conjunction with three field trips plus tutorial/seminar time. Two lectures per week throughout the year.

#### T39.103 New Zealand Biology

As prescribed for 39.103. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### 06.102 Form and Function in Plants

An introductory course including the study of major plant groups. Topics covered include aspects of major features of NZ flora and vegetation; cytological and anatomical architecture and their relation to photosynthesis, respiration, translocation and transpiration; the regulation of growth and reproduction. The course will include a number of small group discussions and one or two field trips which students will be expected to attend.

### Stage II

The course consists of three papers, 06.250, 06.251 and 06.252, together with practical work including field trips.

#### 06.250 The Biology of New Zealand Vegetation: Ecology, Systematics and Conservation

The course will cover principles of ecology, systematics and taxonomy with reference to indigenous gymnosperms, angiosperms, bryophytes and lichens. There will be an emphasis on the ecology of native tree communities, their conservation and animal-plant relationships.

Laboratory work includes an introduction to the main characteristics of the plant groups discussed in lectures. An experimental study in the glasshouses will be carried out by all students. Students will be offered a choice of experimental field studies. These will either be through a residential field course or Auckland-based studies. The numbers taking the field course will be limited by the availability of accommodation.

#### 06.251 The Biology of Plant Cell Growth and Development

A study of the structures and functions of plant cells with an emphasis given to development and differentiation. Ultrastructure and anatomy will be related, wherever possible, to the chemistry, biochemistry and biophysics of the cell. Methods of studying plant cells using light and electron microscopy. The use of NMR techniques to study *in vivo* metabolism. Principles and uses of plant tissue cultures. Techniques of cell fractionation. Cell division and expansion. Polarity and cell development. Water relations of single cells. Differentiation of xylem and phloem. Principles of cell-cell recognition.

#### 06.252 The Biology of Crop Plants: Breeding, Physiology and Protection

Characteristics and unique properties of crop plants. Basic genetical principles relevant to plant breeding, including linkage and mapping; continuous variation and polygenic control; selection; breeding systems and population structure. Aims and strategies in crop improvement. *In vitro* techniques in plant breeding. Physiology of growth and development. Seed dormancy and germination. The structure and functions of roots. Shoot growth and leaf production. Modification of form to optimise crop yield. Induction and control of flowering. Fruit development and physiology. An introduction to pests and diseases of crop plants; symptoms; disease cycles; epidemiology; disease assessment and forecasting. Principles of crop protection and of cultural, chemical, breeding and biological control strategies. Integrated pest and disease management.

### Stage III

The course consists of a selection of papers from Biology 311, 314 and Botany 313 to 371 together with practical work, including field trips.

#### 39.311 Freshwater Ecology

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course and four one-day field trips.

normally held in the first week of May vacation (see below for dates).

#### **06.313 Forest Ecology**

The history of New Zealand forests. Gradients in space and time. Techniques in forest description - ordination and classification of communities. Energy flow, nutrient cycling and trophic structure in forests. Disturbance regimes and regeneration patterns. Dendrochronology in the study of forest dynamics and climatic change. A compulsory residential field class is held during enrolment week (see below for dates). Laboratory periods will be devoted partly to interpretation of field course data.

#### **39.314 Conservation Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to the management of natural and modified ecosystems: water, forests, fisheries and wildlife. Planning for land and resource management and protection.

#### **06.326 Pure and Applied Plant Development Biology**

The significance of plant development to biotechnology will be stressed in relation to a range of topics including fruit ripening and storage, flower longevity and the role of plant cell walls (fibre) in nutrition. Specific topics include: the role of plant growth regulators, receptor sites and secondary messengers; the structure, biosynthesis and function of plant cell walls; positional controls in plant development, adventitious root formation and propagation, senescence and abscission, tissue culture, leaf development in native plants, monoecy. Molecular, morphological and physiological approaches will be used to provide an integrated study of plant development. Students will design and conduct research projects under supervision of staff.

#### **06.334 Plant and Environmental Microbiology**

Classification, structure and differentiation of microorganisms. Prokaryotes versus Eukaryotes. Microbial physiology and metabolism; heterotrophy and autotrophy. Aspects of microbial ecology; role in nutrient cycling and decomposition, etc. Microorganisms and the environment; effects of temperature and light. Beneficial and harmful microbial interactions; microbe-microbe and plant-microbe symbioses, disease, pollution and food spoilage. Exploitation of micro-organisms by humans; biological control, etc.

Laboratory classes will cover some of the main techniques used in the study of microorganisms.

#### **06.335 Plant Pathology**

The study of plant pathogenic fungi, bacteria and viruses. Aspects of disease development; pathogen transmission/spread and control. Interactions between hosts and pathogens at the cellular level. Mechanisms of pathogenesis and host plant resistance. Laboratory classes will cover techniques for the diagnosis, isolation, culture and identification/characterisation of plant pathogenic organisms.

Students wishing to complete a course in plant protection should take both 06.335 and 38.317.

#### **06.341 Plant Genetics**

Plant cytogenetics to include chromosome structure and genome organisation; chromosome behaviour in normal cell division and in structural and numerical mutants; B (supernumerary) chromosomes; sex chromosomes; chromosome evolution.

#### **06.361 Plant Biosystematics**

Classical and experimental approaches to the study of taxonomic relationships in metapophytes including cytological, chemical and numerical techniques as well as field and herbarium methods and a knowledge of plant nomenclature rules. Phylogenetic and phenetic systems of classification; analysis of variation; speciation processes. Students should expect to attend a field course at Waipoua in the May vacation (see below for dates).

#### **06.371 Marine Botany**

Marine plants and communities; the sea as an environment for plant growth; photosynthesis and productivity in the sea; reproduction and life histories of marine plants; the utilisation and cultivation of seaweeds and microalgae. The practical work includes a residential three-day class at the Leigh Laboratory during the August vacation (see below for dates).

#### **Laboratory Work**

The practical work in all advanced courses will be assessed separately. A pass in both the written examination and in the practical work is necessary for credit to be awarded for a paper (BSc Regulation 7).

#### **Field Courses in Botany/Biology, 1993**

<b>06.250:</b>	9 - 14 May
<b>06.313:</b>	22 - 27 February
<b>06.361:</b>	24 - 28 May
<b>06.371:</b>	16- 18 August
<b>39.311:</b>	1 - 2 May and 10 - 13 May

#### **Botany for BSc(Hons)**

This course requires a fourth year of study involving three MSc level papers and a research project equivalent to one paper. Admission is at the discretion of the Director, School of Biological Sciences.

#### **Botany for MSc and Honours**

This course takes from fifteen months to two years and requires full-time attendance. It comprises three papers selected from 06.402 to 06.460 inclusive, together with a thesis (06.601) which is equivalent to three papers.

Students intending to read for MSc should consult the School's Graduate Studies Coordinator as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to have sufficient time to establish that appropriate facilities will be available for the research programme.

#### **06.402 Selected Topics in Botany**

A specialist course of study into aspects of current research.

#### **06.410 Plant Ecology**

Selected topics in plant demography. Forest community concepts. Field techniques and computer analysis. Historical plant ecology.

#### **06.412 Conservation Biology**

The theory and application of conservation for the management of New Zealand's biota. Seminars will include topics such as the philosophical and practical basis for conservation, methodologies for description and analysis of communities at risk and their likely demographic and genetic consequences for small populations.

#### **06.420 Plant Physiology and Biochemistry**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

#### **06.430 Plant Pathology**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

#### **06.450 Developmental Botany, Pure and Applied**

A study of contemporary research into aspects of the anatomy, ultrastructure and physiology of plant development.

#### **06.460 Plant Systematics and Genetics**

In depth consideration of selected topics in plant classification and cytogenetics.

#### **Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a wide range of topics in Botany and Biology. Further information may be obtained from the School of Biological Sciences *Guide to Postgraduate Study and Research*.

## **CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY**

### **Stage III**

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

#### **40.303 Cellular and Molecular Biology**

*Lectures:* Optical and electron microscopical methods used in the study of cell structure. The fine structure of cellular organelles and components in relation to their function. The structure, biosynthesis and function of nucleic acids and proteins. The Genetic Code. Genetic regulatory mechanisms in bacteria and eukaryotes. The mammalian cell cycle and control of growth of mammalian cells by hormones and other agents. An introduction to recombinant DNA technology.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used to fix and examine biological material by light and electron microscopy. Experiments will also be performed with proteins and nucleic acids to illustrate their properties and the techniques used to investigate the structure and function of these materials.

#### **40.304 Microbial and Molecular Genetics**

*Lectures:* The units of mutation, function and recombination in bacteria and bacterial viruses. The transmission and recombination of genetic material in bacterial viruses, bacteria and diploid micro-organisms. Eukaryotic somatic cell genetics.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used in bacteriology and microbiology as an introduction to experiments in microbial genetics. Experiments will be performed to illustrate methods of transmission of genetic information in microorganisms and the experimental application of such techniques to the resolution of problems of gene order and

organisation of chromosomes.

#### **40.305 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology**

**Lectures:** The culture of animal cells *in vitro*. Immunity, the structure and synthesis of antibodies, and the cellular basis of the immune response. The molecular biology of viruses infecting animal cells. The molecular basis for the malignant transformation of cells. The molecular assembly of cellular structures. The nuclear, mitochondrial, and chloroplast genomes of plant cells. Plant cells and tissue culture techniques. Plasmid and virus vectors for gene transfer in plants and animals and their application in agriculture and horticulture.

**Laboratories:** An introduction to the culture of animal cells. Techniques used for studying anti-bodies and the cells involved in the immune response. An introduction to plant cell culture, including the isolation of protoplasts. Techniques for the isolation of plant organelles and nucleic acids and aspects of plant transformation using *Agrobacterium* plasmid vectors.

#### **Cellular and Molecular Biology for BSc(Hons)**

This course requires a fourth year of study involving three MSc level papers and a research project equivalent to one paper. Admission is at the discretion of the Director, School of Biological Sciences.

#### **Cellular and Molecular Biology for MSc and Honours**

Three papers and a thesis (40.601). The papers are:

##### **40.401 Cellular and Molecular Biology**

##### **40.402 Microbial and Molecular Genetics**

##### **40.403 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology**

The material for Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303, 304 and 305 is treated in greater depth, involving, in particular, the study of some of the current original literature. The course will be based on selected topics in Membrane Biology, Molecular Biology, Microbial and Molecular Genetics, Immunology, Virology, Gene Transfer and Gene Expression in Plants and Animals.

**Prerequisites:** For Auckland students, at least 12 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303, 304 or 305 (or Cell Biology 301 and 302 prior to 1979). Students from other universities or colleges must have taken some suitable subject to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced II or Microbiology Advanced II as offered at Otago University). For students from other universities the MSc Degree may involve taking part of the course work for Cellular and Molecular Biology Stage III.

Although not a prerequisite, it is strongly suggested that intending Masters students should have taken a Radiochemistry course such as 08.352 or 08.250.

Students are reminded of the requirement of a grade of at least C+ in all Stages III subjects for BSc that are prerequisite for MSc [see MSc Regulations Schedule (c)].

**Thesis:** The preparation of a thesis (40.601) is a most important feature of the work and a large part of the student's time should be devoted to this aspect of the course. The topic of research for the thesis can be in virology, electron microscopy, membrane biology, immunology, molecular genetics, molecular biology or plant molecular genetics.

#### **Research in Cellular and Molecular Biology**

Facilities are available for research by PhD and post-doctoral students in the fields of virology, molecular genetics, electron microscopy, membrane biology, molecular biology and plant molecular genetics. For further information and an outline of courses appropriate to students intending to advance to research in Cellular and Molecular Biology may be found in the School of Biological Sciences *Guide to Postgraduate Study and Research*. Intending students should consult the School's Coordinator of Graduate Studies as early as possible.

## **ZOOLOGY**

### **First Year**

#### **39.101 Central Concepts of Biology**

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macro-molecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; cellular differentiation. Histogenesis and pattern formation. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

#### **39.103 New Zealand Biology**

An introduction to the diversity of animals and plants in New Zealand including endemic, native and introduced; their biogeographical and evolutionary relationships; community structure and inter-relationships; behaviour and ecology; Maori perspectives in biology, as well as current conservation, environmental, social, animal welfare, and economic issues in New Zealand biology. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in Botany and Zoology. The focus is on whole organisms in their environment. Practical work will centre on reports prepared in conjunction with three field trips plus tutorial/seminar time. Two lectures per week throughout the year.

#### **T39.103 New Zealand Biology**

As prescribed for 39.103. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **38.102 Animal Evolution and Diversity**

**Introductory Zoology:** A survey of relationships, form and function within the Animal Kingdom, including aspects of development, phylogenetic groupings, elements of anatomy and physiology and their interactions in both vertebrate and invertebrate animals. The course runs in the latter half of the year.

#### **Biology for Otago Medical Intermediate**

Students are accommodated within existing courses 39.101 and 38.102.

#### **Advanced Courses**

##### **38.207 Biometry**

Most branches of biology now require an understanding of the basic principles of statistics: the design and analysis of experiments and field studies. The emphasis is on understanding how the techniques work, computers are used to do the actual calculations. The course is aimed explicitly at non-mathematical students.

##### **38.250 Behaviour and Ecology**

Patterns and processes in the behaviour and ecology of animals. Learning, communication, and patterns of social and sexual behaviour will be discussed in an evolutionary and practical context. Population patterns and community relationships will be outlined for a wide range of habitats. Principles of population ecology, population genetics, reserve design, and social behaviour are combined as a basis for conservation biology. Where possible New Zealand examples are used as illustration. Practical work will be largely off-campus and will include day field trips.

##### **38.251 Marine Biology**

The classification, structure and functioning of marine organisms and the occurrence of these within coastal marine communities. The course includes formal laboratories dealing with the morphology, development and lifestyles of representative members of selected phyla, using local examples. In addition, a six-day field course at Whangarei Heads is held during the May or August Study Break, when the patterns of occupancy of organisms on rocky and sandy shores will be studied in detail. The course is designed to provide an awareness of the detailed complexity of inshore marine organisms and habitats, as a basis for advanced courses in marine ecology, and as a data base for conservation values for the coastline.

##### **38.252 Animal Function and Design**

The functional organisation of animals with particular emphasis on morphological, physiological and behavioural adaptations to their environments. Sensory and central mechanisms involved in spatial orientation will be discussed within a control systems framework. The practical course emphasizes lower vertebrate morphology and physiological principles using, wherever possible, invertebrate models. It further provides an introduction to methods and instrumentation of value to experimental biologists.

##### **38.303 Biological Timekeeping**

The description, significance and mechanisms of control of temporal patterns of change in behaviour and physiology of organisms covering the tidal, daily and annual time scales. Evidence for the existence of biological clocks and their chemical and physical nature will be examined, together with the ways in which they are synchronised with the environment. The significance of biological timing in human physiology, insect life cycles and the marine environment will be emphasised. The course will develop ideas on the philosophy of modelling timing systems and the computer simulation of biological clocks.

Practical work will consist of formal laboratories covering methods of data collection, analysis of rhythms and the development of models of timing systems. There will also be opportunity for students to perform tests of the internal clock hypothesis on a variety of organisms, and to analyse the patterns of change of environmental factors in the field as they relate to biological timekeeping. There is also a possibility of a field course at the Leigh Laboratory in the August vacation.

### **38.305 Arthropods in the Terrestrial Environment**

Evolution and classification of terrestrial arthropods. Adaptations to terrestrial life as well as adaptations to particular habitats, eg forest floors, deserts, mountains, freshwaters. Biology of the fauna associated with New Zealand's native and exotic forests, grasslands, horticulture, agriculture and stored products and the sampling methods used to study these animals. Arthropods as pollinators, parasitoids and vectors. As terrestrial arthropods constitute close to 75% of all known animal species a thorough understanding of this important group is recommended for all biologists.

### **38.310 Animal Morphogenesis**

Aspects of the cellular structure, cellular recognition, behaviour and biochemistry as these relate to developmental processes. Practical work involves the use of both scanning and transmission electron microscopes, acquaintance with electrophoretic and cell culture techniques as well as grafting experiments designed to illustrate general aspects of animal morphogenesis.

### **39.311 Freshwater Ecology**

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course in late April and four one-day field trips normally held in the first week of the May vacation (see below for dates).

### **39.314 Conservation Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to the management of natural and modified ecosystems: water, forests, fisheries and wildlife. Planning for land and resource management and protection.

### **38.315 Evolutionary Genetics**

In this course we review the roles which genes play in the development of biological form. In particular, the interactions between allelic and non-allelic genes, and the importance of the position of alleles in relation to chromosome structure are investigated. The persistence of forms is considered during a review of the current state of studies in population genetics. Particular attention is paid to the problems of speciation, and to aspects of applied biology. Finally we critically examine recent genetical advances and challenges to contemporary neo-Darwinian theory.

### **38.316 Biological Oceanography**

Characteristics of marine environments and communities away from the shores. Global ocean patterns and processes. Phytoplankton and primary production. Zooplankton and secondary production. Interrelationships and population biology of plankton, nekton, benthos and fisheries. New Zealand marine science research and knowledge. Practical work includes a residential 5-day class at the Leigh Marine Laboratory, involving sampling and analytical exercises, during the mid-term break (see below for dates).

### **38.317 Applied Entomology**

The principles and practice of applied entomology, especially of modern control methods, with reference to New Zealand and South Pacific pest problems. Medical entomology. Practical work includes laboratory study and field work. Students wishing to complete a course in plant protection should take both 06.335 and 38.317.

### **38.319 Ecological Physiology of Marine Animals**

Ecological Physiology examines physiological diversity in relation to the environments in which organisms live. Aspects of behaviour, morphology, biochemistry and evolutionary biology are embraced within this approach. The emphasis is on marine animals. Practical work is project-oriented and includes a mandatory 4-day field course in May at the Leigh Marine Laboratory.

### **38.320 Marine Ecology and Aquaculture**

Patterns and processes in the ecology of benthic marine organisms,

including invertebrates and demersal fishes. Emphasis is placed upon the quantitative description of patterns in distribution and abundance and experimental techniques used to elucidate the causative processes. The conservation and management of shallow marine systems. The application of ecological principles to the culture of benthic marine organisms is considered. Practical work includes obligatory four-day field course at Leigh Marine Laboratory during enrolment week (see below for dates).

### **Laboratory Work**

One practical class each week for first year courses and two classes each week for advanced courses is the minimum requirement. The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks will be included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary. (BSc Regulation 7.)

### **Field Courses in Botany/Biology/Zoology, 1993**

**06.250** 9 - 14 May

**06.313** 22 - 27 February

**06.361** 24 - 28 May

**06.371** 16 - 18 August

**39.311** 1 - 2 May and 10 - 13 May

**38.251** 5-11 May or 17-23 August

**38.316** 2 - 6 July, 7 - 11 July (maximum 24)

**38.319** 24 - 28 May

**38.320** 19 - 23 Feb (max 24) or 9 - 13 April (max 24)

### **Zoology for BSc(Hons)**

This course requires a fourth year of study involving three MSc level papers and a research project equivalent to one paper. Admission is at the discretion of the Director, School of Biological Sciences.

### **Zoology for MSc and Honours**

Students must enrol for and attend three papers selected from the range 38.401 to 38.414. They must also enrol for a thesis (38.601) which is equivalent to three papers. Not all the papers listed will necessarily be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. At present a minimum of four enrolments in each paper is required.

The Zoology MSc course normally takes from fifteen months to two years and is a full time course. It is expected that all papers will be examined at the end of the first year of MSc enrolment. Where a paper is not available in that year it may be taken during the second year at the discretion of the School's Graduate Studies Coordinator. With the approval of the Coordinator, a Masters paper of equivalent weighting in another subject may be substituted for one of the Zoology papers.

All students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Graduate Studies Coordinator towards the end of the previous year. Thesis work, where approved, can begin in the vacation before enrolment.

### **†38.401 Evolution**

The basic structure and logical framework of modern evolutionary theories; the ruling paradigm of neo-Darwinism, the nature of species, developmental biology and epigenetics; ways of looking at biology, eg. functionalism versus structuralism.

### **\*38.403 Chronobiology**

The study of biological clocks: their adaptive significance, location, chemical nature and mathematical models.

### **\*38.404 Behavioural Ecology and Sociobiology**

Selected topics on the evolution of sociality in animals, including humans.

### **†38.405 Entomology and Pest Management**

(a) The functional anatomy and reproductive and life history strategies that make insects so varied and abundant.

(b) Modern views of pest management leading up to a review of integrated strategies.

### **†38.406 Antarctic and Southern Oceans Ecosystem and Environment**

The tectonics and paleoclimatology of southern continents, present day ocean circulations and biogeography. Biology of Antarctica and Southern Ocean ecosystems.

### **\*38.407 Community Ecology**

A series of seminars leading to an understanding of community dynamics as exemplified by succession and island biogeography.

### **†38.408 Marine Ecology**

Part of the course is given to a personal reading of recent work on the causes of patterns of abundance, the rest is a formal

presentation of selected topics on the study of the pelagos and benthos, separately, and the whole sea as a working system.

#### †38.409 Zoophysiology

Selected topics in comparative physiology emphasising functional design in lower vertebrates.

#### †38.410 Morphogenesis

Recent work on membrane structure, cell adhesion and recognition is considered and related to the overall biochemical and genetical control of morphogenetic systems, particularly to cell positioning and the formation of pattern during development.

#### †38.411 Aquaculture, Biology, Management and Planning

Case studies of fish, invertebrate and algal aquaculture industries in New Zealand, assessment of aquaculture opportunities worldwide, review of general environmental and biological problems important to aquaculture and its management, eg maintenance of water quality, control of parasites, development of hatchery technology.

#### †38.412 Conservation Biology

The theory and application of conservation for the management of New Zealand's biota. Seminars will include topics such as the philosophical and practical basis for conservation, methodologies for descriptions and analysis of communities at risk and their likely demographic and genetic consequences for small populations.

#### †38.413 Special Topic

Consult Professor P.R. Bergquist and/or Dr A. Rodrigo for details.

#### †38.414 Data Collection and Analysis

A series of seminars, workshops, and tutorials applying the principles of Experimental and Sampling Design, and the most frequently used techniques of univariate and multivariate analysis to problems in Biological research. The emphasis will be on case studies and acquiring direct practical experience of these methods. It will be aimed at non-mathematical students.

#### Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD

Staff and facilities are available for Masters and PhD research in many areas of zoology, environmental biology and the interaction of plants and animals. Most research has a field component and is based on animals in natural and experimental situations. Excellent supporting facilities are available for physiological and ultrastructural studies.

Research by staff covers such diverse interests as marine ecology, especially of the inshore communities; the behavioural ecology of both terrestrial and aquatic animals, with emphasis on sociality and communication; entomology and pest management; chronobiology, morphogenesis, ultrastructure and cellular and organ functions.

The related themes of evolutionary change and adaptation and of systematics and population dynamics run through most studies. Theoretical and practical solutions to current issues is a theme in conservation biology, while encouragement is given to an experimental approach based soundly on statistical techniques.

Much of the marine research is done at the Leigh Marine Laboratory; studies of native birds and lizards are carried out on Hauraki Gulf islands.

Further information may be obtained from the School of Biological Sciences *Guide to Postgraduate Study and Research*.

#### The McGregor Museum

For hours of opening, consult the Student Resource Centre, School of Biological Sciences.

### LEIGH LABORATORY

The University's Marine Laboratory provides research facilities for staff and postgraduate students in any branch of marine science. Present work is centred on the ecology, reproductive biology and taxonomy of shore and shallow water organisms, algal and fish physiology, physical & biological oceanography, and some aspects of applied fisheries. The laboratory also provides facilities for laboratory and field exercises for advanced undergraduate courses (BSc and MSc courses), primarily in conjunction with Botany, Environmental Science, Geography, Physics and Zoology.

The area in the immediate vicinity of the Laboratory is a Marine Reserve, and permission is required to collect specimens. However, there are examples of most types of marine habitat within 10km of the Laboratory, from where samples can be readily collected. There are a number of small boats for work in and

around the Reserve, and a 4m inflatable craft for work slightly further afield. The Laboratory's research vessel, R.V. Proteus, is equipped with diving compressor, winch, radar and accommodation for 6, and is used for offshore work. Facilities for diving are available at the Laboratory, including scuba tanks, air compressor, and some other equipment. Constantly running seawater is pumped through several tankrooms both indoors and outdoors, and a small climate station is maintained. In addition to general laboratory and office space, there are specialised areas for culturing unicellular algae, computing, photography, biochemical analyses and a small library.

The Laboratory is situated at Goat Island Bay on the east coast, 100km by road north of Auckland. There is on-site bunkroom accommodation for up to 36 students, and 2 self-contained visitors' cottages. A large kitchen and dining room complex is available to all workers. The Laboratory is managed by a University committee. Enquiries concerning use of the facilities at Leigh should be directed to the Scientist-in-Charge, Dr T.A.V. Rees, P.O. Box 349, Warkworth. (Phone 4226-111, or ext. 5300 or 5301.)

### DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

The courses in Chemistry for the BSc Degree under these Regulations are progressive; although prerequisites have not been prescribed more restrictively than necessary, students should bear in mind that familiarity with relevant material from earlier courses is assumed in the later ones.

#### Preparatory Chemistry (before enrolment)

This course is designed to assist prospective students who do not have a strong background of chemistry, or who intend enrolling in first-year chemistry courses after some years away from formal study. It will revise the basic principles of chemistry (at around Form 6 - Form 7 level) and will involve lectures, laboratories, tutorials, and computer-assisted learning. It will hence provide a background to enrolment in 08.111, 08.121 and T08.170. No credit is given towards the BSc degree. The course begins on Monday 8 February and concludes on Tuesday 16 February. Contact the Department of Chemistry for further information. Registration will be accepted up to 29 January 1993. A fee of \$100.00 will be charged.

#### First Year Courses

##### 08.111 Organic and Physical Chemistry

Structure, properties and spectra of organic compounds, acid-base equilibria, kinetics, systematic organic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. Four tests will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend 12 3-hour practical classes held on alternate weeks during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass in both theory and practical is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from theory (80%) and practical (20%). Theory comprises tests 24%, final examination (56%) or final examination 80%, whichever is to the student's advantage.

##### 08.121 Inorganic and Physical Chemistry

Atomic structure, the molecular structure and reactions of selected elements and their compounds, chemical bonding, energetics, equilibria and electrochemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. Four tests will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend 11 3-hour practical classes held on alternate weeks during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass in both theory and practical is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from theory (80%) and practical (20%). Theory comprises tests 24%, final examination 56% or final examination 80%, whichever is to the student's advantage.

##### T08.170 Chemistry and Our World

This course provides an introduction to basic chemical topics and their relationship to environmental processes. Topics will include structure and bonding, chemical analysis, equilibrium, kinetics, electrochemistry, and relevant organic and inorganic chemistry. It is part of the BSc programme in Environmental Management at Tamaki with lectures being held at the Tamaki Campus and practical work comprising laboratory and fieldwork supplemented with computer modelling.



**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held inside lecture hours.

**Practical work:** Students will attend 6 computer modelling sessions and 8 laboratory sessions (and/or field trips). No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass in both theory and practical is necessary. The final grade is assessed from theory (tests 20%, and final examination 60%) and practical work 20%.

#### **Advanced Courses**

Familiarity with the relevant material in the first year courses will be assumed.

#### **08.200 Perspectives in Chemistry**

This paper provides an introduction to a variety of topics in chemistry of contemporary interests such as applied organic chemistry, bioinorganic chemistry, and the study of new materials. The paper is descriptive in nature and will make use of demonstrations, slides and films.

Approximately four lectures will be devoted to each topic and assignments related to the topics will be set. The course which runs throughout the year is examined by continuous assessment.

#### **08.210 Physical Chemistry**

This course covers concepts and methods of modern physical chemistry, with applications to materials, processes and instrumentation. Topics will include spectroscopy (including reference to lasers and FTIR), electrochemistry (including reference to new battery technology), polymers (including reference to plastics and biopolymers) and surface chemistry (including reference to synthetic fuel catalysis). The course will provide experience with scientific applications of computers.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test/problems (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.220 Inorganic, Structural and Theoretical Chemistry**

The course provides an introduction to chemical bonding, and to the chemistry of the solid state. Aspects of the chemistry of transition metal and main group elements are treated at greater depth.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.210.

#### **08.230 Organic Chemistry**

The course is based on the prescribed text and covers the structure and reactions of carbon compounds, classified by functional groups. An introduction to the chemistry of molecules of biological importance, and to the use of NMR and mass spectrometry in structure elucidation, is included.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. Four tests will be held in lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from the best 3 of 4 tests (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%).

#### **08.250 Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists**

This service course is designed to meet the needs of biological scientists, health workers and natural scientists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radio-isotopes. It is not to be regarded as a training course for chemists. Students who expect to major in chemistry should generally enrol in 08.352 to gain experience in the principles and practice of radiochemistry. Principles of radioactive decay, quenching and self adsorption,

instrumental measurement of activity and dose, pulse height analysis, scintillation counting of gamma and beta nuclides, homogeneous and heterogeneous counting, radio-autography, radiological safety, waste disposal.

Ten lectures and ten three-hour laboratory sessions. One test (1.5 hours) will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

The final grade is assessed from a test (50% and practical (50%).

#### **08.260 Analytical Chemistry**

This course provides an introduction to analytical chemistry and students who intend to enrol for the advanced analytical chemistry 08.360 paper should take 08.260 as a prerequisite. It includes both non-instrumental and instrumental techniques and is a useful service course for natural scientists.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two 1-hour lectures per week during quarters 1 and 2. Two tests (1 x 1-hour and 1 x 1.5 hours) will be held outside lecture hours. The final grade is assessed from tests 50%, practical 40%, problem paper and assignments 10%.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend twelve 3-hour laboratory sessions, normally 3 hours per week, during quarters 1 and 2. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection and satisfactory foot protection. A pass in the practical course is necessary for obtaining the credits.

#### **08.310 Physical Chemistry**

The theory and experimental techniques of spectroscopy (prediction of the spectrum, laser Raman spectroscopy), dynamic electrochemistry (fuel cells and corrosion) and surface chemistry (surface spectroscopy and catalysis).

**Lectures:** One lecture per week throughout the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test/problems (20%), practical (33%) and a final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.311 Physical Chemistry: Applications**

Chemical physics (including quantum chemistry), photochemistry, and solid state chemistry.

**Lectures:** One lecture per week throughout the year.

One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

#### **08.320 Inorganic Chemistry**

The course will cover the organometallic chemistry of both transition metals and main group elements.

**Lectures:** Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

#### **08.321 Physical-Inorganic Chemistry**

The course includes aspects of inorganic spectroscopy, quantum, and bioinorganic co-ordination chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

#### **08.330 Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis**

This course covers heterocyclic and applied and industrial organic chemistry along with topics in synthetic organic chemistry such as

ring opening and ring closing reactions, and applications of organoborane and organosilicon chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 1 or 2 during the first half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from tests/problems (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.331 Advanced Organic Chemistry**

This course deals with topics such as stereochemistry, the study of reaction mechanisms, radicals, pericyclic reactions, photochemistry, reactions of carbonyl compounds, and bio-organic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 3 or 4 during the second half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.330.

#### **08.340 Structural Methods in Chemistry**

This course deals with physical methods of determining chemical structures. Background theory is described for mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance, U.V. and photoelectron spectroscopy, and X-ray structural analysis. Practical applications in inorganic, organic and organometallic chemistry are included. The course will consist of 32 lectures and 20 hours to be devoted to practical work and laboratory assignments. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test (19%), practical (25%) and a final examination (56%); or practical (25%) and a final examination (75%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.352 Radiochemistry**

The course is designed to meet the needs of chemists or biologists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radioisotopes. Counting methods and counting statistics, handling radioactive substances, source preparation, radiological safety, three channel beta scintillation spectrometry, gamma spectroscopy, neutron activation, radioisotope generators and application of the principles and practice of radiochemistry to environmental, biological and chemical problems.

Sixteen lectures and sixteen three-hour laboratory sessions. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

The final grade will be assessed from tests (50%) and practical (50%).

#### **08.360 Advanced Analytical Chemistry**

The course will cover instrumental methods of analysis. One test will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test and problems (20%), practical (33%) and a final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.370 Environmental Chemistry**

The course covers aspects of the chemistry of the atmosphere, natural waters, and the land surface. A section on hazards associated with chemicals and their handling is also included.

**Lectures:** Students will attend one lecture a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes, totalling 36 hours, at times to be arranged. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.360.

#### **†08.390 Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

#### **†08.391 Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

#### **Chemistry for MSc and Honours**

Candidates must take 08.450 plus four papers selected from 08.410-08.431. The assessment of a student's overall attainment in the Degree will be made on the basis that each of the five papers has a weight of one, and the thesis 08.601 has a weight of four. Students intending to read for MSc and Honours should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, regarding allocation of a thesis topic and to ensure availability of laboratory facilities. The course is normally of one year's duration, but the thesis may, with the approval of the Head of the Department, be completed during the second year. [See clause 2 (d) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).]

An overall prerequisite for the course is that students have completed 08.210, 08.220 and 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.

**Note:** The 12 Stage III credits in Chemistry may not include 08.352 for students first enrolling in an MSc after 1993. 08.260 will be a prerequisite paper for students enrolling in an MSc after 1994.

#### **08.410 Physical Chemistry A**

Quantum chemistry, magnetic resonance, and electrode kinetics.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.411 Physical Chemistry B**

Molecular spectroscopy and structure, surface analysis.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.420 Inorganic Chemistry**

This course will cover topics in organo-transition metal chemistry, co-ordination chemistry, main group chemistry and structural chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.421 Physical Inorganic Chemistry**

This course will cover some aspects of physical methods in inorganic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.430 Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis**

This is a course in which the principles of organic chemistry are applied to organic synthesis.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.431 Advanced Organic Chemistry**

This course will cover aspects of the investigation of organic reactions including physical-organic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.450 Special Topics in Chemistry**

Students must choose three topics in specialised areas of chemistry from a selection to be offered.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 10 lectures in each topic selected. In addition to attending prescribed lectures, students will be required to prepare and discuss a number of selected topics of special interest.

#### **PhD in Chemistry**

Thesis 08.602 and oral examination. Facilities are available for postgraduate research on a wide variety of topics in all branches of Chemistry. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.

## **DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**

### **Stage I Courses**

#### **07.100 Principles of Computing (a)**

This paper, taught in the first half year, introduces computers, computer programming in a high-level language (Pascal), and the use of application packages. Machine-level concepts and the role of computers and computer professionals in society are also introduced. This paper is intended for students who may wish to advance in Computer Science.

#### **07.105 Principles of Computing (b)**

The paper extends the programming skills of 07.100. The paper also introduces the area of data structures and data representation, the study of ways of efficiently organising and manipulating collections of data needed for representing real and abstract objects.

#### **07.111 Introduction to Computing and Applications**

This paper is a service paper for those who have no knowledge of

computers or programming, but who will find such knowledge useful in their other courses, such as the social, biological and physical sciences. The topics covered in this course are the same as those covered in 07.100 but with more of an emphasis on using existing applications for solving problems and somewhat less of an emphasis on programming. In addition, the paper is a full year paper and hence concepts are introduced at a somewhat slower rate than in 07.100. Students who pass this paper may be permitted to take 07.105 and/or 07.211 in the following year.

### **T07.115 Computers and Programming**

This paper introduces the topic of computer programming; the use of artificial languages to describe algorithms and data. The paper has a considerable laboratory component. The paper is taught on the Tamaki Campus and is intended for students who wish to advance in Information Systems, Computer Science or Information Technology.

### **26.165 Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics**

As prescribed for Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### **T74.110 Computers and Information Systems**

As prescribed for the Department of Management Science and Information Systems. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Stage II Courses**

#### **07.211 Computer Systems**

This paper explores how computer systems work in both hardware and software. The architecture of one particular computer, and its assembly language, is studied in some depth. The paper also introduces computer input/output, including data communications, the functional architecture of computers, and the function and architecture of system software. This paper replaces the previous 07.210.

#### **07.222 Data Base Management Systems**

An introduction to the basic concepts and techniques of managing data in an organisation. Topics include data models (hierarchical, network and relational), and the functions provided by common commercial data base management software environments.

Note: The same paper is offered as Management Science and Information Systems 74.222.

#### **07.231 Introduction to Software Engineering**

Issues in developing and analysing large complex programs. Tools for analysing program performance. Practical case studies in algorithms and data structures.

#### **07.232 Software Reliability and Design**

Modularity and reuse. Object-oriented programming. Techniques for analysing the reliability of programs. Practical case studies in reliability. Algorithm and data structure design.

#### **26.290 Numerical Computation**

As prescribed for Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### **Stage III Courses**

#### **07.301 Topic in Computer Science (a)**

#### **07.302 Topic in Computer Science (b): Data Communications Technology**

#### **07.303 Topic in Computer Science (c)**

#### **07.304 Topic in Computer Science (d)**

#### **07.305 Topic in Computer Science (e)**

#### **07.306 Topic in Computer Science (f)**

One or more of these topics papers may be taught in any particular year. The actual contents of such courses and the requirements that must be met before departmental approval to enrol in them is given, will be announced prior to enrolment. Enrolment is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

#### **07.310 Computer Organisation**

This paper continues on from 07.211 in describing the organisation of modern computer systems. Topics include microprogramming, virtual storage, high-level language support, advanced machine structures, and several case studies.

#### **07.315 Computer Graphics**

This paper covers the fundamentals of computer graphics, and gives a brief introduction to the field of image processing. Topics include: uses of computer graphics; graphics hardware; the GKS system; graphics programming; 2D and 3D display algorithms; high quality image rendering; an introduction to image processing.

#### **07.330 Language Implementation**

The compilation and interpretation of computer languages. Lexical analysis. Top down and bottom up parsing. Error recovery. Symbol table analysis. Translation of control structures. Virtual machine models. In-line, threaded, and

interpreted code. Linking. The comparison of implementation techniques necessary for various computer languages.

#### **07.340 Operating Systems**

What is an operating system? Operating system principles: concurrent processes, processor management, memory management, disk management, other peripherals, security. Interacting with people: system implementation and job control languages.

#### **\*07.342 Data Communications**

An introduction to data communications technology and network techniques, including the Open System Interconnection model, local area networks, wide area networks, packet switching and network security.

#### **07.351 Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science**

Mathematical preliminaries: graphs, trees, semi-groups. Grammars. Finite state automata and regular languages. Push-down automata and context-free languages. Turing machines and computability.

#### **07.352 Design and Analysis of Algorithms**

A study of aspects of problem solving and algorithm design, including the following topics: algorithm efficiency, order analysis, profiling, design levels, fine tuning, abstract data types, program verification, invariants, recursion, parallel algorithms, and decidability.

#### **07.361 Functional and Logic Programming**

This paper, taught in the first half of the year, provides a practical introduction to programming in functional and logic programming languages. It also describes the theoretical background from which these languages have been developed, namely lambda calculus for functional programming, and first order predicate calculus for logic programming.

#### **07.362 Artificial Intelligence**

This paper, taught in the second half year, provides an introduction to Artificial Intelligence (AI). AI is concerned with the construction of computer systems that are able to carry out tasks that are thought to require "intelligence". The paper introduces the basic concepts of AI. There will be some practical experience with existing AI systems.

#### **07.380 Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (a)**

#### **07.381 Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (b)**

#### **07.382 Undergraduate Project in Computer Science (c)**

Each student taking one of these papers will be expected to do an individual practical project under the supervision of a member of staff. Only students with excellent academic records will be allowed to take these papers, and only after a supervisor and topic have been agreed upon by the Head of Department.

#### **26.390 Numerical analysis**

As prescribed for the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **26.391 Optimisation in Operations Research**

As prescribed for the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **26.395 Mathematics Modelling for Operations Research**

As prescribed for the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **74.324 Data Communications**

As prescribed for the Department of Management Science and Information Systems.

### **BSc (Honours) in Computer Science**

The Regulations covering the BSc(Hons) in Computer Science are included in the general regulations for the Degree. This course is designed to allow students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years and thus be eligible to proceed directly to a PhD degree and be eligible for the award of postgraduate scholarships. Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted to advance to an MSc by presenting a thesis or by pursuing an approved advanced course of study.

#### **Courses for MSc and Honours**

Candidates for this Degree select papers totalling 24 credits approved by the Head of the Computer Science Department. Normally these papers are selected from the list that follows.

In addition they write a thesis (07.601) or take an advanced course of study (07.605), either of which counts as 24 credits. Not all 400 level papers will be offered each year but those that are, together with their prescriptions, will be announced prior to enrolment.

#### **Paper**

#### **Number**

#### **07.401 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (a)**

#### **Credits**

07.402 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (b)	1
07.403 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (c)	1
07.404 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (d)	1
07.405 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (e)	2
07.406 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (f): Object-Oriented Programming	2
07.407 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (g): Distributed Computing	2
07.408 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (h): Multi-media Systems	4
07.409 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (i)	4
07.410 Computer Architecture (a)	4
07.411 Computer Architecture (b)	4
07.412 Computer Architecture (c)	4
07.413 Computer Architecture (d)	2
07.415 Advanced Computer Graphics (a)	4
07.416 Advanced Computer Graphics (b)	2
07.417 Image Processing (a)	4
07.418 Image Processing (b)	2
07.420 Database Management Systems (a)	4
07.421 Database Management Systems (b)	2
07.430 Advanced Language Implementation (a)	4
07.431 Advanced Language Implementation (b)	4
07.432 Advanced Language Implementation (c)	2
07.433 Advanced Language Implementation (d)	2
07.435 Advanced Software Engineering (a)	4
07.436 Advanced Software Engineering (b)	2
07.437 Computer Language Application (a)	2
07.438 Computer Language Application (b)	2
07.439 Computer Language Application (c)	2
07.440 Advanced Operating Systems (a)	4
07.441 Advanced Operating Systems (b)	4
07.442 Data Communications and Networks (a)	4
07.443 Advanced Operating Systems (c)	2
07.444 Advanced Operating Systems (d)	2
07.446 Data Communications and Networks (b)	2
07.447 Data Communications and Networks (c)	2
07.450 Theoretical Computer Science (a)	4
07.451 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms (a)	4
07.452 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms (b)	4
07.453 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms (c)	2
07.454 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms (d)	2
07.456 Theoretical Computer Science (b)	2
07.460 Artificial Intelligence (a)	4
07.461 Advanced Artificial Intelligence (b)	4
07.462 Advanced Artificial Intelligence (c)	2
07.463 Advanced Artificial Intelligence (d)	2
07.470 Computer Applications (a)	2
07.471 Computer Applications (b)	2
07.472 Computer Applications (c)	4
07.473 Robotics and Real-Time Control	4
07.481 Advanced Project in Computer Science (a)	2
07.482 Advanced Project in Computer Science (b)	2
07.483 Advanced Project in Computer Science (c)	4
07.484 Advanced Project in Computer Science (d)	4
07.485 Advanced Project in	

<b>Computer Science (e)</b>	8
<b>53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design</b>	4
As prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering. Enrolment requires the permission of the Head of Department of Computer Science and the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.	
<b>Diploma in Computer Science</b>	
See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.	
<b>Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD</b>	
Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a range of topics in Computer Science. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.	

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### 14.327 Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

Note: Credits obtained from this paper do not count as Stage III Science credits in terms of the BSc Regulation 3(c).

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

### BSc Stage II

An interdisciplinary paper is offered at Stage II

### 64.200 Environmental Science

An introduction to local, regional and global environmental issues, especially those related to pollution and resource utilization. The paper will include consideration of the relevant scientific information, social concerns and management options.

#### MSc

The MSc in Environmental Science is a joint Degree in Environmental Science and another Science subject. It is co-ordinated by the Director of Environmental Science and contributed to by a number of Departments. Students who intend to take the course must consult as early as possible the Director of Environmental Science who will advise on a suitable paper combination for the Degree. A Preparatory Application Form must be submitted by October 31 in the year preceding intended entry to the programme. The course consists of four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. In the case of a joint degree with Chemistry or Physics three papers will be taken under MSc Regulation 10 Environmental Science (ii) but treated as the equivalent of two papers in the other subjects. The papers are Environmental Science 64.401 plus a selection from Stage III and Masters 400-level papers in Science and other approved subjects. Students will also be required to attend the Environmental Science seminars. The combination of papers must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science in consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned. The papers and thesis will normally be completed in two years of study.

### 64.401 Environmental Science

The principles and procedures of Environmental Science through an examination of the concepts, theories and methods of Science as they relate to both natural and managed environments. Topics include scientific methods, systems theory and its applications, environmental monitoring and modelling, analytical techniques, policy and management issues and environmental impact assessment procedures. The course will include both field and laboratory work. Attendance at Environmental Science seminars (normally held weekly) is a required part of this paper. (Available only to students enrolled for an MSc in Environmental Science.)

### 64.402 Special Topic in Environmental Science

Lectures, laboratory and field work as prescribed by the Director of Environmental Science in consultation with collaborating departments.

### 64.403 Air, Water and Waste Management

The natural processes involved in air and water and the effect of waste discharges upon them. Treatment options in waste management. The physical characteristics of noise and its propagation. Monitoring strategies and standards for pollution control as used on both a national and regional basis. The paper will include field trips and laboratory work in addition to lectures, discussion sessions and seminars.

## DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY

The Schedule to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for the pre and corequisites.

### Geography I

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work and tutorials form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

#### 20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

#### T20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment

As prescribed for 20.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### 20.102 Society, Space and Place

Social and economic processes that determine variation, accessibility and inequality in the spatial allocation of resources both within and between nations.

#### T20.102 Society, Space and Place

As prescribed for 20.102. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### Geography II

Six papers are offered for Geography II. Students planning to advance in geography should enrol for 20.204 (or equivalent), 20.201 and 20.202. Students advancing in other subjects may take papers separately. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

#### 20.201 Processes in the Natural Environment

Environmental processes in biogeography, climatology, geomorphology and hydrology are considered with energy flow and transformation as a unifying theme.

#### 20.202 Society, Economy and Environment

The location and organisation of economic activities in Western societies and their relationship to other aspects of social organisation. Principles and models that are used in geography to represent and interpret these relationships are considered.

#### 20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques

Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

#### 20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography

Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing (SAS).

#### 20.205 Human Impact in the Environment

An examination of humanity as a modifier of the soil, atmosphere, land and other aspects of the natural and cultural world.

#### \*20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations.

### Geography III

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

#### 20.302 Regional Processes and Development

The interplay between agents and mechanisms shaping the nature and distribution of economic activity on the one hand, and the characteristics of regions on the other. Attention is given to the features of firms, labour, industries, markets, institutions, the state, cities and territories as they relate to the geography of capitalist production. These topics are discussed in the context of different sectors, systems of government, and nations.

#### 20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology

Geomorphological and hydrological systems with special reference to coasts, slopes and karstic environments. 20.303 includes a residential field trip.

#### 20.304 Biogeography and Climatology

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

#### 20.305 Population Process Policies and Techniques

Components of change in human populations (fertility, mortality, migration), population structure (sex and age, ethnicity, economic activity) and population distribution (urbanisation, segregation, regional development), patterns of health and morbidity, and systems of service delivery.

#### \*20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations.

#### \*20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised.

#### 20.312 Special Topic: Development in the Asia-Pacific Region

Development processes and issues in the countries of South East Asia and the Pacific Islands. Themes include development theory, colonialism and historical change, population dynamics, agrarian systems and change, migration, urbanisation, international linkages, and development strategies.

#### 20.313 Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

#### 20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing

Principles, techniques and applications of geographic information systems, including computer analysis and presentation of cartographic and remotely sensed data.

#### 20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography

A lecture, practical and field course which considers the principles of research design, methods and practice of data collection, sources of published and unpublished data, experience in analytical techniques and the presentation of results. The paper includes a residential field course of at least seven days normally held in the first week of the May study break.

#### 20.320 Resources and Environmental Management.

Planning for the effective utilisation of natural resources through understanding the functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

#### †20.321 Special Topic

#### Geography for MSc and Honours

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis (which is the equivalent of three papers) in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.447. Further information (including recommended books) is included in the *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

There is an overall limit on the number of Masters students for 1993. Students should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelors Degree in order to discuss the graduate programme.

#### †20.400 History and Nature of Geography

#### 20.410 Change and Transition in the Pacific

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

#### 20.420 Biogeography

Analysis of theories and quantitative methods in biogeography.

#### 20.421 Climatology

Topics in environmental climatology, and climate resource evaluation.

#### 20.422 Geomorphology

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with a focus on the S.W. Pacific and New Zealand.

#### 20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

#### 20.430 Land Use Studies

The role of natural resources, the state and economic and social

forces in influencing the use of land.

#### **20.431 Cultural Geography**

Cross cultural themes in the study of people - nature relationships.

#### **20.432 Regional Development Studies**

Studies of the regional economic growth and restructuring, focussing on development models and contemporary events in the global economy.

#### **20.434 Population Geography**

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

#### **20.436 Urban Social Geography**

Emphasis is on the social processes that underlie spatial patterns of Western cities.

#### **20.440 Remote Sensing**

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

#### **20.441 Coastal Studies**

Topics in historical coastal geomorphology and coastal management with process as the unifying theme.

#### **20.442 Evaluation in Environmental and Resource Planning**

An examination of methods for the evaluation of resource development proposals.

#### **20.443 Digital Mapping Systems**

The study of computer assisted cartography with special reference to its role in Geographic Information Systems in New Zealand.

#### **20.444 Special Topic**

1993: The Geography of the Built Environment

An analysis of the socio-economic processes shaping the evolution of built environments.

#### **†20.445 Special Topic**

#### **†20.446 Special Topic**

#### **†20.447 Special Topic**

## **DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY**

The Schedule to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

### **Stage I**

Three 6 credit papers are offered for Geology I. All three papers may be taken and papers 21.110 and 21.111 may be taken separately. Students intending to advance to Geology Stage II must take papers 21.111 and 21.112.

#### **T21.108 Earth Materials and Processes**

Earth as a planet; earth materials and the regolith; past life and evolution; applied paleontology; Quaternary times; earth resources and geohazards. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **21.110 Planet Earth**

Field exercises held in weekends.

Earth as an evolving planetary body. Philosophy of earth sciences, fossils and evolution, natural hazards and earth resources.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend two one-day field classes arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Laboratory/Tutorial Classes:* Each student will be required to do exercises and essays and attend two one-day laboratory/tutorial classes to be in weekends.

#### **21.111 Introduction to General and Environmental Geology**

Basic geological concepts, earth materials, earth as a planet, structure and evolution of the lithosphere, oceans and atmosphere, origin and evolution of life. Geological hazards, earth resources. Geological evolution of New Zealand.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend two one-day field classes, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* One two-hour practical class must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.112 Geological Materials and Methods**

Earth materials and structure - rocks, minerals and rock-forming and deforming processes. Paleontology and stratigraphy. New Zealand Geology.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend two one-day field classes, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* Two two-hour practical classes must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **Stage II**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar by the prescribed date.

*Field Classes* are a compulsory part of each paper and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the BSc Schedule of 52.231 Geomechanics I as a Stage II course relevant to those students with an interest in mining or engineering geology.

The following five courses are offered:

#### **21.200 Introduction to Field Geology**

Seven days field work.

Introduction to the techniques of geological mapping. Each student will be required to produce a geological map and a report on their field mapping exercise.

Note: With permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites for this paper may be waived.

#### **21.211 Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics**

Elements and mechanical principles of structural geology.

Introduction to applied geophysics and solid earth geophysics.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.212 Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology**

Stratigraphic principles and practice, the code of nomenclature, definitions and application. Introductory paleontology: systematics, evolution, functional morphology; paleoecology.

*Field Classes:* One day excursions may be arranged throughout the year.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.213 Principles of Mineralogy**

Crystal morphology. Principles of optical micro-scopy. Principles of crystal chemistry. Systematic and determinative mineralogy.

*Field Classes:* One day excursions may be arranged during this course.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.215 Principles of Petrography**

The major rock-forming minerals. Introduction to igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary petrography.

*Field Classes:* An excursion of up to 4 days may be arranged during this course.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **Stage III**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar by the prescribed date; students are advised to consult before pre-enrolment.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the BSc Schedule of 52.331 Geotechnical Engineering, 52.332 Geomechanics II, 56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics and 56.314 Rock Mechanics as Stage III courses relevant to those students with an interest in engineering or mining geology.

*Field Classes:* Field classes are a compulsory part of each paper and may be held anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of field excursions.

The following seventeen courses are offered:

#### **21.300 Field Methods for Geology**

Photogrammetry, photogeology. A field report and map of a selected area.

Note: This course must be taken by all Geology students taking Geology III papers (excluding 21.306) totalling 6 credits or more. Under special circumstances the Head of Department may permit a student to take 21.200 rather than 21.300.

#### **21.303 Advanced Paleontology**

Advanced treatment of some major invertebrate groups (including Foraminiferida, Brachiopoda, Mollusca, Coelenterata) covering their morphology, origin, evolution, paleoecology and geological history. Paleocological principles and practice, paleoecology of other groups of organisms.

*Field Classes:* A total of about five days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

Note: Since the prerequisites for this course are first-year courses it is possible to take 21.303 as a second year course; students who intend to major in Geology must obtain the permission of the Head of Department to take 21.303 in their second year.

**21.306 Applied Geophysics**

A lecture course covering physical principles, equipment and techniques used in investigating the physical composition of the earth's crust and in mineral exploration. Standard numerical and graphical interpretation methods are discussed, and are used to interpret gravity, magnetic, seismic and DC-resistivity measurements to derive realistic geological gross structures and structures of mineral deposits.

**21.307 Experimental Geophysics (Joint Laboratory Course with Physics Department)**

This is a laboratory course associated with 21.306. Use and calibration of geophysical instrumentation, experiments to illustrate basic principles, analysis and interpretation of field data involving both Geology and Geophysics. This course is identical with course Physics 31.393, and those students who satisfy the prerequisites should enrol in 31.393.

*Field Classes:* A total of about five days of field work will be held throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand.

**21.310 Geology of Australasia and the South West Pacific**

Geological evolution of Australasia, the islands of the S W Pacific and the Pacific and Tasman ocean crust.

Students will be required to do a considerable amount of reading and prepare assignments and seminars outside designated course hours.

*Field Classes:* A total of about 5 days may be spent in the field throughout the year.

**21.311 Advanced Structural Geology**

Principles of structural analysis; fault patterns; strain analysis; regional metamorphic structure.

*Field Classes:* Two one-day field excursions.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.312 Advanced Sedimentology**

Modern sedimentary processes, sedimentary facies models; basin analysis, tectonics and sedimentation.

Advanced sedimentary petrography.

*Field Classes:* A total of about 5 days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.314 Introduction to Mineral Deposits**

Fossil fuels. Industrial minerals. Metallic deposits.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.315 Advanced Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology**

Petrography, chemistry, genesis and regional settings of igneous and metamorphic rocks.

*Field Classes:* A total of about five days of field work will be required.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.318 Introduction to Engineering Geology**

Introduction to engineering geology. Characterisation of rock, soil and defects. Slope movement. Surface and subsurface engineering geological investigations.

*Field Classes:* Two one-day field excursions.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.319 Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry**

Abundance and distribution of elements and element partitioning including kinetic and thermodynamic aspects. Crystallography and crystal chemistry. Chemical aspects of aqueous systems. Chemistry of geothermal systems. Instrumental methods for major and trace element analysis.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

Note: with the permission of the Head of Department, the prerequisites and corequisites for this paper may be waived.

**21.324 Advanced Mineral Deposits**

Mineral deposits in igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary environments. Metallogeny.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written

paper is necessary.

**21.381 Advanced Mining Geology**

The role of geology in mining. Case histories.

*Field Work:* Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

Note: Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for Science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for Engineering students. Science students are advised to enrol concurrently in 52.332 and 56.314.

**\*21.382 Applied Coal Geology**

Coal geology. Coal exploration and mining.

*Field Work:* Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

Note: Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for Science students or Head of Mining Engineering for Engineering students.

**21.384 Exploration and Mining Geology**

Methods in applied structural and engineering geology in the mine environment. Methods in exploration and evaluation of ore deposits.

*Field Work:* Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

Note: Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for Science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for Engineering students.

**\*21.386 Applied Geophysics for Mining**

Equipment and techniques used in mine development and investigation of mineral deposits.

*Field Work:* Each student will be required to attend a field camp and prepare a report on a geophysical project.

Note: Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for Science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for Engineering students.

**\*21.388 Engineering Geology**

Geological principles applied to engineering problems.

*Field Work:* Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

Note: Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for Science students or Head of Department of Civil Engineering for Engineering students.

**52.231 Geomechanics I****52.331 Geotechnical Engineering****53.332 Geomechanics II****56.101 Mineral Engineering****56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics****56.314 Rock Mechanics****BSc(Hons) Part IV in Geology**

(Three papers and a thesis 21.603.)

The Regulations which cover the BSc(Hons) course are listed elsewhere. Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) Part IV in Geology undertake course work as for first-year MSc students and will select three from the following papers prescribed for the MSc Degree (21.401 to 21.450 but not 86.100 or 86.102). In addition, they must complete a research project by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, and the marks allotted for the project report count as equivalent to one paper. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department prior to enrolment or at any time during the preceding year. Students who have been admitted to Part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

**BSc(Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.613).]

Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology undertake course work as for MSc students and will select three papers from the four groups of papers specified in the Schedule for MSc in Applied Geology. In addition they must complete a thesis by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, the thesis being equivalent to one paper. Students who have been admitted to part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

**MSc and Honours in Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.601)]

The MSc in Geology consists of three written papers to be selected from 21.401 to 21.450 and 86.404 together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as three written papers.

The course requires full-time attendance. Under normal circumstances the thesis shall be submitted by 1 November of the second year of enrolment. In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may approve a later date of submission but not exceeding the two year total time limit for the MSc course.

**21.401 Tectonics and Structural Geology**

Advanced topics on principles of deformation in rocks. Regional structure and tectonics of selected areas of the earth.

**21.402 Sediments and Sedimentary Processes**

Sedimentary processes and products in both ancient and modern settings. Identification and interpretation of sedimentary environments; the provenance and subsequent diagenetic history of terrigenous and carbonate sediments.

**21.403 Stratigraphy and Paleontology**

Principles and practice in stratigraphy and correlation, the fossil record and its interpretation, the historical geology of New Zealand.

**21.404 Advanced Studies in Mineral Deposits**

Advanced studies of selected types of mineral deposits with respect to their physicochemical conditions of formation and subsequent modification.

**21.405 Genesis of Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks**

Studies in the petrology of igneous and metamorphic rocks, covering geological settings, volcanology, PT environments, petrochemistry and mineral assemblages with emphasis on recent developments in the theoretical, experimental and observational fields.

**21.406 Advanced Applied Geophysics**

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. Topics covered are: potential field theory, quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two and three-dimensional bodies), DC and AC resistivity measurements, seismic wave transmission, refraction and reflection studies.

**Practical work:** The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course and two essays and discussion of a seminar topic.

Note: This course is the same as 31.433 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Departments. Previous enrolment in 31.330 or 335, 21.306 and 21.307 is desirable.

**21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

Application of geology to engineering practice with emphasis on the geological, physical and structural variants in rock and soil masses. Aspects of ground investigation methods, aggregates, relevant clay mineralogy, groundwater, sediments and soils, excavation methods, stability of slopes, foundation requirements and relationship to soil and rock mechanics.

**21.409 Mineral Chemistry and Geochemistry**

The abundance and distribution of the elements. Special topics in the chemistry of minerals, rocks and fluids.

**21.450 Special Topics in Geology**

To be prescribed by Head of Department.

**86.404 Geothermal Exploration Technology**

Geology of thermal areas. Hydrothermal alteration of reservoir rocks. Mapping and analyses of geothermal discharges. Geochemistry of thermal fluids. Geophysical exploration of prospects. Drillhole logging. Instrumentation.

Note: (a) Students seeking enrolment in this course must have passed 21.304 or 21.305 or 21.306; in addition, a pass in either 08.210 or 08.220 is desirable.

(b) This course includes a compulsory field trip, normally held in mid-term break to Wairakei and Wellington and of five days' duration, but timing, location, and duration may be altered from year to year.

**MSc and Honours in Applied Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.611)]

**Prerequisites:** A BSc with 24 Stage III credits, of which at least 12 must be from Geology.

The MSc in Applied Geology requires full-time attendance. The degree consists of three written papers together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as three written papers. Under normal circumstances the thesis shall be submitted by 1 November of the second year of enrolment. In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may approve a later date of submission but not exceeding the two years' total time limit for the MSc course. The individual course of study of each student must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology. The student shall select three papers from the following five groups: 21.408; (21.471-21.478); 21.484; 86.404; and any approved paper listed in the ME Schedule. The papers taken for the MSc in Applied Geology must be selected from three of the following:

**21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

As in Schedule for MSc and Honours in Geology.

**21.484 Economic and Mining Geology**

The exploitation and exploration of mineral deposits and other economically important earth materials.

**Any One Approved Paper Listed in the ME Schedule**

Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**(21.471-21.478) Special Topic Papers**

Only one paper may be selected from this group.

**21.471 Special Topic in Applied Geology**

Either any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE and/or Stage III BSc papers which have not already been taken or any approved paper from the MSc Schedule. Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.473 Special Topic in Mineral Processing**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mineral Processing Engineering). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.474 Special Topic in Mining Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mining Engineering). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.478 Special Topic in Engineering Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Civil). Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department concerned.

**86.404 Geothermal Exploration Technology**

As prescribed for MSc and Honours in Geology.

Note: This paper when taken for MSc in Applied Geology has a corequisite 86.401 (as prescribed for ME).

**PhD in Geology**

Thesis (21.602) and an oral examination.

Facilities are available for research by PhD candidates in many branches of Geology: geochemistry, petrology, volcanology, mineralogy, structural geology, paleontology and stratigraphy, sedimentology, marine geology, geophysics, engineering and mining geology. Students intending to work for this Degree should have reached a satisfactory level of attainment in BSc(Hons) or MSc.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

**Basic Skills**

A course covering basic skills in mathematics is offered by the Student Learning Centre. It is designed for students who have not studied mathematics for some years or those whose background in mathematics is weak. It meets each week during the first term for a lecture or tutorial session; ongoing assistance is available throughout the year if required. Students can obtain notes with numerous worked examples as well as access to computers with further examples. Register for this non-credit course with the Student Learning Centre, 1st floor Library Building.

**26.091 Mathematics for Wellesley Programme**

Refer to Wellesley Programme under Preliminary Course in this Calendar.

**Stage I Courses****26.101 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus**

This paper is intended for those students with an inadequate mathematics background who wish either to advance in mathematics or to take only one mathematics paper. It will focus mainly on algebraic concepts but also include trigonometry and a brief introduction to calculus. Students scoring 50 or more in any Bursary mathematics paper should enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101. It should be noted that students enrolling in 26.101 must expect to take 4 years to complete Stage III mathematics.

This paper is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 26.102 and at the Tamaki Campus as T26.101.

**T26.101 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus**

As prescribed for 26.101. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus. It is also taught on the Main Campus of the University as 26.101 and on the campus of the Auckland College of Education



with the paper number 26.102.

### **26.102 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus**

As prescribed for 26.101. This paper is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education. It is also taught at the Main Campus of the University as 26.101 and on the Tamaki Campus as T26.101.

### **26.105 Algebra and Calculus**

Refer to the Department of Optometry prescriptions.

### **T26.107 Algebra and Calculus**

This paper is the standard Stage I Pure Mathematics paper for all students at the Tamaki Campus except those in the Faculty of Commerce. Tamaki students with a weak mathematical background usually take 26.101 before 26.107 (see entry above). Syllabus: matrices and vectors, limits, differentiation and integration in one and two dimensions.

### **26.108 Algebra and Calculus for Commerce**

This paper is available under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce. Refer to prescriptions under Department of Mathematics and Statistics, Faculty of Commerce.

### **T26.108 Algebra and Calculus for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.108. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **26.120 Principles of Algebra**

### **26.121 Introductory Algebra**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students with a strong entrance background e.g. Bursary mark of approximately 65+ should enrol in 26.120 and students who are less well-prepared in 26.121. However, very well-prepared students e.g. Bursary mark of 80+ are encouraged to enrol in 26.221.

Syllabus for Mathematics 26.120 and 26.121: integers and induction; complex numbers; linear equations and matrices; vectors and geometry of 2 and 3 dimensions, polynomials; brief introduction to abstract algebra.

### **26.140 Principles of Calculus**

### **26.141 Introductory Calculus**

### **26.142 Concepts of Calculus**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take 26.140 or 26.141 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background e.g. Bursary mark of approximately 65+ should enrol in 26.140 and students who are less well-prepared e.g. Bursary marks of approximately 50-65 in 26.141. However, very well-prepared students e.g. Bursary marks of approximately 80+ are encouraged to enrol in 26.241. 26.142 is appropriate for arts, education and social science students not intending to major in Mathematics but who have some mathematical background e.g. Bursary mark of approximately 40+. One stream of 26.142 will be taught at the campus of Auckland College of Education.

Syllabus for 26.140, 26.141 and 26.142: limits, continuity; derivatives and integrals; differential calculus of polynomials and rational functions; antiderivatives and integrals of polynomials; logarithmic, exponential and circular functions; calculus in Euclidean geometry; applications.

### **26.165 Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics**

A computer-oriented course in which the computer will be used as a tool to simulate and/or numerically solve problems from a wide area of applied mathematics. Topics covered will include scientific computation, Monte Carlo simulation techniques, symbolic and numerical computation packages.

### **T26.165 Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics**

As prescribed for 26.165. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **26.175 Introduction to Mathematical Modelling**

Construction of mathematical models and solutions to problems with elementary examples from geometry, mechanics, population dynamics, conflict models, etc. Solution procedures will require methods of algebra, geometry, calculus and elementary differential equations.

### **26.180 Principles of Statistics**

Graphical and numerical summaries of data, probability axioms, random variables, probability distributions, expected values, discrete bivariate distributions, sampling distributions, small and large sample inference, nonparametric methods, straight line

regression.

This paper is a prerequisite for 26.280 and the more theoretical Stage III papers in the subject. However, students without adequate Bursary marks e.g. less than approximately 65 in Bursary paper of Mathematics with Statistics are advised to enrol in 26.181. Further information is available from the Department.

### **26.181 Introduction to Probability and Statistics**

The syllabus is similar to that of 26.180 but with less emphasis on mathematical proofs and more emphasis on statistical techniques and their applications. There are follow-up Stage II and III courses. Students who do very well in 26.181 and have the necessary pure mathematics background may be permitted by the Head of Department to enrol in 26.280.

One stream of 26.181 is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 26.182.

### **26.182 Introduction to Probability and Statics.**

As prescribed for 26.181. This paper is taught at the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

### **T26.187 Probability and Statistics**

This paper is the standard Stage I Statistics paper for all students at the Tamaki Campus except those in the Faculty of Commerce. Its syllabus is as for 26.181, but extended to include the use of computers for statistical analysis.

### **26.188 Probability and Statistics for Commerce**

This paper is available under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce. Refer to Bachelor of Commerce course prescriptions under Department of Mathematics and Statistics, Faculty of Commerce.

### **T26.188 Probability and Statistics for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.188. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **Stage II Courses**

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 8 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the Schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students who, instead of having passed the formal prerequisite, have passed a related paper with a good grade. The papers to which this applies are 26.122 instead of 120 or 121, 121 instead of 120, 142 instead of 140 or 141 and 181 or 182 instead of 180.

### **26.200 Tutoring in Mathematics**

A predominantly practical course in which selected students learn mathematics tutoring skills in a first year university Mathematics classroom situation. Five weeks of lectures are given prior to the commencement of the practical component. Normally, students in this course will have passed at least 36 Stage I credits including at least 12 in Mathematics, and concurrent enrolment in at least one other Stage II Mathematics paper will be required.

### **26.208 Mathematics for Commerce**

This paper is available under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce. Refer to Bachelor of Commerce course prescriptions under Department of Mathematics and Statistics, Faculty of Commerce.

### **T26.208 Mathematics for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.208. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **26.210 Principles of Mathematics**

The course consists of a wide selection of topics from various branches of Mathematics. Further information about the course may be obtained from the Senior Administrative Assistant of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### **26.220 Linear Algebra**

### **26.222 Linear Algebra**

These are alternative papers. Those who have passed 26.120 or 26.121 with a grade of B- or better should enrol in 26.220. Others who have passed 26.120 or 26.121 should enrol in 26.222.

Matrices, vector spaces, linear mappings, determinants, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, non-singular reduction of quadratic forms, Sylvester's law of inertia, inner products, orthogonal reduction of real quadratic forms.

### **26.221 Algebra (Accelerated Course)**

A selection of topics from 26.120 and 26.220 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students e.g. Bursary mark of approximately 80+ are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in 26.120.

**26.225 Discrete Mathematics**

Elementary logic, principles of counting, induction, recursion, relations and functions, graphs and trees, algorithms.

**26.240 Calculus**

Algebra and geometry of vectors in three dimensional space; calculus of vector valued functions, curves, functions of several variables, partial derivatives, chain rule, maxima and minima, div, grad and curl; multiple integrals; least upper bounds; sequence and series, introduction to power series.

Note: Students who intend to advance to Stage III and have obtained a grade of B- or better in papers 26.140 or 26.141 are encouraged to enrol concurrently in paper 26.330.

**26.241 Calculus and Analysis (Accelerated Course)**

A selection of topics from 26.140 and 26.240 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students e.g. Bursary mark of approximately 80+ are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in 26.140.

**26.260 Differential Equations**

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including variation of parameters, Laplace transform methods, and power series solutions; elementary Fourier series and boundary value problems.

**†26.270 Principles of Mechanics**

Principles of Newtonian mechanics, particle motion, projectile and planetary orbits. Simple harmonic motion and oscillations. Dynamics of systems of particles. Rigid body mechanics. Motion relative to a rotating reference frame.

**26.280 Statistical Theory**

Discrete and continuous distributions, multivariate distributions, moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution, theory of estimation, hypothesis testing, linear regression.

**26.281 Data Analysis**

Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, industrial applications of statistics, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit, and non-parametric methods.

The emphasis is on data analysis using a program called STATCALC. Macintosh computers are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

**26.288 Data Analysis for Commerce**

This paper is available under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce. Refer to Bachelor of Commerce course prescriptions under Department of Mathematics and Statistics, Faculty of Commerce.

**T26.288 Data Analysis for Commerce**

As prescribed for 26.288. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**26.290 Numerical Computation**

Introduction to the numerical algorithms fundamental to scientific computer work. Interpolation and approximation, numerical differentiation and integration, solution of nonlinear equations, linear systems of equations.

**26.293 Introduction to Operations Research**

This course will emphasise the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated Operations Research models. Computer package software will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such as linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

**†T26.293 Introduction to Operations Research**

As prescribed for 26.293. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

**Stage III Courses**

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 8 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the Schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students wishing to enrol in paper 26.330 concurrently with paper 26.240.

**†26.310 Special Topic****26.312 Topics in the History of Mathematics**

A study of some topics in the history of mathematics which facilitate the understanding of modern mathematics.

Note: This paper is also available as Education 14.510 for the Diploma in Mathematics Education.

**†26.313 Special Topic****26.314 Introduction to Mathematics Education**

This course considers mathematics education in New Zealand with an emphasis on its socio-political context, models of learning, curriculum issues and assessment of mathematics learning.

**26.315 Formal Logic**

Formal systems, proof-theoretic and model theoretic approaches to classical and modal sentential logic, introduction to first-order logic.

**26.320 Algebraic Structures****†26.321 Introduction to Abstract Algebra**

Groups, rings, unique factorisation domains, fields. The object of these courses is to give a basic introduction to modern algebra, exclusive of linear algebra. They are alternative courses, and only one of them may be selected by any student. Both courses are acceptable and suitable as a prerequisite for relevant 400 level papers, and the Mathematics and Statistics Department reserves the right to direct which of these courses a particular student shall take.

**26.325 Combinatorial Structures**

A selection of topics involving enumeration (generating functions and Polya's method), designs and codes, with applications.

**26.330 Introductory Analysis**

Students with good grades in 26.140 may with the permission of the Head of Department enrol in 26.330 concurrently with 26.240. Elements of set theory, the real number system, sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, Riemann integration.

**26.331 Analysis (Accelerated Course)**

A unified paper covering analytic and topological concepts needed for multivariable calculus. Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables with applications. Differential forms and Stokes' theorem. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics and permission is normally given to students who have completed 26.241 successfully or who have achieved a high grade in 26.240.

**26.335 Metric and Normed Spaces**

Metric and normed linear spaces with particular reference to  $n$ -dimensional Euclidean space and  $C(a,b)$ , compactness, connectedness, completeness and their applications.

**26.340 Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables and applications.

**26.345 Techniques of Complex Variables**

Analytical functions, power series, calculation of integrals by residues.

**\*26.350 Topics in Topology □**

A selection of topics chosen from topology or differential geometry. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department.

**†26.355 Geometry □**

A selection of topics chosen from axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, inversive geometry, convexity.

**26.360 Applied Analysis**

Differential equations, the special functions of applied mathematics, orthogonal polynomials, Fourier series, boundary value problems.

**\*26.362 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (a)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission from the Head of the Department. If this paper is offered further information may be obtained from the Senior Administrative Assistant of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**†26.363 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission of the Head of Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Senior Administrative Assistant, Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**†26.368 Mathematical Theory of Control**

Dynamical systems, time domain and frequency domain analysis, the exponential matrix, transfer functions, discrete-time systems. Linear control systems, feedback, stability, Nyquist and Liapunov theory.

**26.371 Introduction to Continuum Mechanics**

Vector and tensor. Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations and field equations. Introduction to fluid mechanics and linear elasticity theory.

**\*26.372 Analytical Mechanics**

Idea of the calculus of variations, Lagrange's equations for mechanical systems. Application to rigid body dynamics and vibrations.

**26.375 Applied Partial Differential Equations**

Mathematical and physical classification of partial differential equations into hyperbolic (propagation processes), parabolic (diffusion processes) and elliptic ('steady state' processes). Modelling with partial differential equations, illustrations of solution procedures using both analytical and numerical techniques.

**26.376 Theory of Waves**

This paper presents a unified treatment of wave phenomenon. Oscillations and waves, Fourier analysis, linear and nonlinear waves, dispersion. Application to sound, water and electromagnetic wave motions.

**26.380 Applied Probability**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory. Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes. Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queueing processes, miscellaneous topics.

**26.381 Advanced Statistical Theory**

Limit theorems, statistical inference, likelihood methods; theory of linear, logistic and log-linear models; multiple linear regression and analysis of variance. This course provides a theoretical background to 26.385.

**26.382 Design of Surveys and Experiments**

Survey methods including stratified, multistage and cluster sampling; experimental designs including incomplete block, latin square, split plot, factorial and fractional designs. Design of clinical trials.

**26.385 Advanced Data Analysis**

Techniques of multiple regression and analysis of variance; principles of experimentation; multi-way contingency tables and log-linear models; time series methods and multivariate methods. This is a methods course, and statistical computer packages such as SAS are taught and used.

**26.387 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (c)****26.390 Numerical Analysis**

Analysis of methods of numerical interpolation, differentiation and quadrature. Numerical methods for differential equations.

**26.391 Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming; Simplex and revised Simplex methods; duality and the dual Simplex method; post optimal analysis; decomposition and column generation, integer programming; cutting planes and branch and bound; dynamic programming; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

**26.395 Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research**

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as queueing theory, inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling, digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods.

**\*26.399 Applied Mathematics Laboratory**

Definition, analysis and solution of practical problems associated with applied mathematics courses in mechanics, statistics and operations research. Emphasis will be placed on preparation of initial problem specifications, implementation of algorithms, and computer programs and presentation of results. Students shall select three appropriate topics from those offered taking into account the applied mathematics papers in which they are enrolled.

**74.310 Total Quality Management**

Statistical quality control. Quality planning. Total quality management. Deming approach. Costs of quality. Integration of operations management and quality, in both manufacturing and services. Relationship between quality management and information systems.

**BSc (Honours) in Mathematics**

Normally only students of proven ability (B+ or above) may be considered for entry at either Part III or Part IV level.

The courses available at Part III level are such as will allow a candidate to satisfy the prerequisites for Part IV. The requirements for Part IV are given in BSc(Hons) Regulation 16 but some leeway for other papers is provided by Regulation 7.

Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted to complete

the MSc by presenting a thesis or completing an advanced course of study as approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Courses for MA, MSc and Honours**

The prerequisites for the MA and MSc Degrees are: Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least three (or, in exceptional cases, two) of 26.225, 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, 26.290, 26.293 plus sixteen 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics, including at least 12 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics.

The student shall select papers, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics from 26.400 to 26.499 with a total credit value of 20 credits, together with a thesis (26.601) or an Advanced Course of Study (26.605), which will count as 20 credits. Up to eight of the 20 credits may be replaced by eight Stage III credits from Mathematics and Statistics papers not already taken for any other degree or diploma.

Prospective Master's students should consult the Senior Administrative Assistant of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics for further details, preferably when they enrol for their 300 level papers. Not all 400 level papers listed will be offered each year. The list of papers to be offered and their prescriptions will be determined each year and intending students should request the postgraduate courses booklet available from the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. The number of credits for each paper is given after the titles below.

A candidate must normally complete his or her thesis or advanced course of study not later than twenty-four months after his or her first enrolment for this Degree.

**26.401 Topic in Pure Mathematics A (2)****26.402 Topic in Pure Mathematics B (2)****26.403 Special Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)****26.404 Advanced Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)****26.410 Introduction to Mathematical Logic (2)****26.411 Topic in Mathematical Logic (2)****26.412 Recursive Functions (2)****26.413 Set Theory (2)****26.414 Automated Reasoning (2)****26.415 Automata Theory (2)****26.416 Combinatorics (2)****26.417 Graph Theory (2)****26.418 Lattice Theory (2)****26.419 Universal Algebra (2)****26.420 Field Theory and Galois Theory (2)****26.421 Rings, Modules and Categories (2)****26.422 Number Theory (2)****26.423 Commutative Algebra (2)****26.424 Algebraic Geometry (2)****26.425 Group Theory (2)****26.426 Applied Linear Algebra (2)****26.427 Topic in Algebra (2)****26.428 Special Topic in Algebra (4)****26.429 Advanced Topic in Algebra (4)****26.430 Measure and Integration A (2)****26.431 Measure and Integration B (2)****26.432 Functional Analysis (2)****26.433 Banach Algebras (2)****26.434 Applied Functional Analysis (2)****26.435 Lie Groups and Lie Algebras (2)****26.436 Analysis on Manifolds (2)****26.437 Operator Theory (2)****26.438 Approximation Theory (2)****26.439 Topological Vector Spaces (2)****26.440 Complex Analysis A (2)****26.441 Complex Analysis B (2)****26.442 Applied Complex Analysis (2)****26.443 Riemann Surfaces (2)****26.444 Summability Methods (2)****26.445 Quasiconformal Analysis (2)****26.446 Topics in Analysis A (2)**

- 26.447 Topics in Analysis B (2)
- 26.448 Special Topics in Analysis (4)
- 26.449 Advanced Topics in Analysis (3)
- 26.450 Topology (2)
- 26.451 Algebraic Topology (2)
- 26.452 Differential Topology (2)
- 26.453 Uniform Spaces (2)
- 26.454 Differential Geometry (2)
- 26.455 Linear Geometry (2)
- 26.456 Topics in Geometry (2)
- 26.457 Topics in Topology (2)
- 26.458 Special Topic in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.459 Advanced Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.460 Ordinary Differential Equations A (4)
- 26.461 Ordinary Differential Equations B (2)
- 26.462 Partial Differential Equations (4)
- 26.463 Topics in Differential Equations (2)
- 26.464 Calculus of Variations (2)
- 26.465 Fourier Analysis (2)
- 26.466 Global Analysis (2)
- 26.467 Asymptotic Methods (2)
- 26.468 Topics in Applied Mathematics (2)
- 26.469 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (4)
- 26.470 Topics in Mechanics A (2)
- 26.471 Topics in Mechanics B (2)
- 26.472 Fluid Mechanics (4)
- 26.473 Quantum Mechanics (4)
- 26.474 Special Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.475 Advanced Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.480 Probability Theory A (2)
- 26.481 Probability Theory B (2)
- 26.482 Experimental Design (2)
- 26.483 Multivariate Analysis (2)
- 26.484 Stochastic Processes A (2)
- 26.485 Stochastic Processes B (2)
- 26.486 Topic in Probability and Statistics A (2)
- 26.487 Topic in Probability and Statistics B (2)
- 26.488 Statistical Methods (4)
- 26.489 Data Analysis (4)
- 26.490 Topic in Probability and Statistics C (2)
- 26.491 Generalised Linear Models (2)
- 26.492 Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations (4)
- 26.493 Numerical Solution of Partial Differential Equations (4)
- 26.494 Nonlinear Optimisation (2)
- 26.495 Mathematical Software (4)
- 26.496 Topics in Numerical Analysis (4)
- 26.499 Data Analysis (2)
- 26.601 Masters Thesis (16)
- 26.605 Advanced Course of Study (16)

Note: The number of credits for each paper is given in brackets.

#### PhD in Mathematics

The Regulations governing the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy are included in the Interfaculty section of this *Calendar*.

#### 26.602 Mathematics PhD Thesis

##### Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD

Staff and facilities are available for Masters and PhD research in many areas of Mathematics and Statistics. Research by staff covers such diverse interests as finite group theory, functional analysis, complex analysis, topology, numerical analysis and statistics.

##### Diploma in Mathematics Education

See under Inter-Faculty Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.

##### Diploma in Statistics

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.

## MEDICAL SCIENCE

The MSc in Medical Science is taught by several Departments in the School of Medicine. Students who intend to take the course

should consult as early as possible (preferably by 1 December of the preceding year) the Dean of Science, Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science, who acts as the Head of Department for the purpose of the MSc Regulations.

The course consists of three papers and a thesis 89.601 which counts as three papers. The papers are selected from: the four papers in Medical Science 89.401-404, Biochemistry 66.401-403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401-406, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419 and Pharmacology 96.404-407.

#### 89.401 Neuroanatomy

An introduction to experimental techniques. The organisation of the mammalian nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

#### 89.402 Immunobiology

An intensive analysis of the ontogeny of cells that comprise the immune system, the genes and hormones that regulate differentiation and the processes underlying lymphocyte recognition. Emphasis is given to the molecular mechanisms regulating immunity.

#### 89.403 Experimental Pathology

An introduction to the experimental method used to study normal and abnormal cells and tissues. Histological, histochemical, ultrastructural and biochemical approaches to cell and tissue injury.

#### 89.404 Cancer Biology

The biological and molecular basis of cancer development and tumor growth and metastasis. Principles of radiobiology and cytotoxic therapy of cancer, with the emphasis on molecular mechanisms.

#### 89.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth

This paper will review the biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian growth with a particular emphasis on the role of genetic, endocrine, paracrine and nutritional influences. The paper will include emphasis on growth in ruminant species, the control of carcass growth, fibre growth and lactation, as well as the regulation of growth in monogastric species (eg man). The paper will be taught within the Department of Paediatrics; it will include 20 lectures/active student participation in seminars, and each student will prepare two essays.

#### 89.406 Perinatal Physiology

This paper is taught by the Department of Paediatrics. Historical introduction, methodology of fetal investigation, fetal oxygenation, placental physiology, fetal cardiovascular physiology, ontogenesis of sleep, neural physiology of the fetus or respiratory control, maturation of the lung, maturation of the neuroendocrine axis, control of parturition, uterine function, fetal renal function and fluid balance, fetal metabolism and the regulation of fetal growth; the neonatal adaptation, ontogenesis of thermoregulation.

The paper is taught in lectures plus student seminars and practicals.

## DEPARTMENT OF OPTOMETRY

### 26.105 Algebra and Calculus

An introduction to algebra and calculus. Topics include complex numbers, linear equations and matrices, polynomials, differential and integral calculus.

All other papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

#### Part I Optometry

##### 744.201 Optics

Lecture studies are structured under the following headings:

##### Physical Optics

Image quality assessment, resolution of optical instruments, the optical transfer function. Interference and interferometers. Diffraction. Thin film optics. Polarisation. Sources and detectors. Coherent optical processes, holography. Fibre optics.

##### Geometrical Optics

Refraction at plane and spherical surfaces, limitations of Gaussian optics, thick lenses, cardinal points, equivalent and vertex powers, paraxial theory of optical instruments, stops. Magnification. Optical materials.

**Physiological Optics**

Optics of the vertebrate eye, schematic eyes, catoptric images, ametropia and retinal image size, accommodation.

**744.202 General Physiology**

An introductory course on cellular and organ physiology and relevant processes, particularly in mammalian systems. Topics are muscle, nervous system, motor control and sensory function; cardiovascular and respiratory systems and blood, with their exchange and transport functions; endocrine and reproductive systems, with humoral control of cell metabolism; alimentary system, digestion and absorption; kidney function; body fluids.

**744.203 Anatomy**

Gross anatomy, embryology, neuro anatomy and histology of the head, neck and eye, especially those aspects relevant to clinical practice. The gross anatomy and histology of the trunk and organ systems, essential for a proper appreciation of physiology, biochemistry and pathology relevant to clinical practice. The central visual pathways and associated vascular and neural systems. Embryology of the eye. Comparative anatomy.

**744.204 General and Ocular Biochemistry**

Molecular structures of biochemical importance and their relationship to cellular structure and function. Amino acids, carbohydrates, polysaccharides, lipids, nucleic acids, proteins and protein structures. Metabolism, energy yielding pathways, hormones. Tear chemistry, visual pigments, crystalline lens structure.

**744.205 Ocular Physiology**

The vascular supply to the eye. Formation and circulation of aqueous humour, intraocular pressure, chemistry and metabolism of the cornea, corneal permeability, turgescence and the mechanism of transparency. Corneal response to anoxia.

**744.210 Visual Science**

Luminous efficiency, light and dark adaption, increment thresholds. Stiles Crawford effect, temporal and spatial induction, critical fusion frequency, entoptic phenomena, visual acuity, trivariance of vision, chromaticity, theories of colour vision and colour discrimination. Classification of eye movements, local signs, corresponding points, diplopia, afferent and efferent control mechanisms, rotary movements, nystagmus, conjugate movements, vergence and stereopsis, Panum's areas, fixation disparity.

**744.230 Optometry**

The history and philosophy of optometry as a health care profession, scope of optometric practice, optometric organisations, introduction to the practice of optometry.

**Part II Optometry****744.305 Pharmacology**

General principles of drug actions on organ systems and the central and peripheral nervous systems. Characteristics of drugs producing miosis, mydriasis, cycloplegia, accommodative spasm and anaesthesia of ocular surfaces.

**744.306 Applied Optics**

The optics of ophthalmic lenses and optical dispensing. Optical design and the assessment of optical performance.

**744.310 Visual Science**

Refractive anomalies of the eye and their aetiology, recent advances in visual science, and assessment of visual performance. Colour vision anomalies. Techniques for vision research.

**744.313 Environmental Optometry**

Visual ergonomics in land transport, aviation and industry. The elements of illuminating engineering, photometric concepts and computational methods. Lamp, types, principles and applications, atmospheric optics. Principles of industrial safety, incidence of eye injuries, eye protection programmes, visual screening.

**744.322 Microbiology and General Pathology**

Morphology and physiology of micro-organisms and association with ocular diseases, sterilization and disinfection procedures relevant to optometry, haematopoiesis, haemostasis and an overview of diseases of the blood, introduction to immunology. Mechanisms of diseases, infection, inflammation, repair, cardiovascular disease, neoplasms, ageing.

**744.330 Introduction to Clinical Practice I**

The optometric examination, methods of history-taking, assessments of ocular health, clinical problem-solving, basic communication skills. Lectures, tutorials, case demonstrations and clinical instruction all contribute to this part of the course.

**744.331 Introduction to Clinical Practice II**

Special examination procedures, contact lenses, binocular vision and low vision assessment.

**744.334 Diseases of the Eye**

Diseases of the eye, orbit, lacrimal apparatus and visual pathways, ocular signs of systemic disease.

**Part III Optometry****744.415 Community Optometry**

Organisation of health services in New Zealand, health planning and administration, human resources requirements in health care. The delivery of health care, role of government statutory and voluntary agencies. Role of optometry in the team approach to health care. Optometric needs of particular groups. Modern techniques of practice management, software packages.

**744.421 Project**

An investigation into some aspect of optometry or visual science.

**744.425 Clinical Optometry I**

Examination of patients in the Optometry Clinic under the supervision of staff. Instruction in the routine optometric examination and in the diagnosis and management of disorders of the visual system.

**744.426 Clinical Optometry II**

Lectures, seminars and case discussion on the management of patients with visual disorders. Diseases of the eye and ocular signs of systemic disease.

**744.431 Contact Lenses**

Contact lens design and principles of fitting. Disinfection procedures, patient instruction. Signs and symptoms associated with contact lens wear and lens modification procedures.

**744.432 Low Vision**

Ocular and vision problems of the elderly. Epidemiology, aetiology, signs and symptoms of low vision. Optometric examination and management of the low vision patient, interdisciplinary rehabilitation resources, counselling and referral.

**744.433 Binocular Vision and Visual Training**

Detection, measurement and classification of latent and manifest disorders of binocular vision. Visual training. Visual aspects of learning disabilities. Clinical aspects of aniseikonia.

**Optometry for MSc**

(Two papers selected from 744.551 to 744.544 and one from another subject approved by the Head of Department and a thesis 744.601 which shall count as three papers). This course normally requires fifteen months to two years and necessitates full-time attendance to achieve Honours. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the year prior to enrolment.

**744.551 Physiological Optics**

A review of selected areas of physiological optics.

**744.552 Determinants of Visual Optics**

Environmental, genetic and geographical factors in the aetiology of human refractive error. The stimulus to accommodation, dark focus, mechanisms of accommodation, and presbyopia.

**744.553 Advanced Analysis of Visual Functions**

Assessment of visual function, contrast sensitivity functions; effects of defocus and intra-ocular scatter. Vision at low luminance levels.

**744.554 Special Topic**

The study of selected fields of Optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

**Stage III Courses****96.301 Principles of Pharmacology**

(One paper and practical work.)

An introductory course on the principles of pharmacology. Topics are passage of drugs across membranes; drug distribution, metabolism and elimination; pharmacokinetics; mechanism of drug action; drug toxicity; drug development and evaluation.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade of the course.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### **96.302 Systematic Pharmacology**

(One paper and practical work.)

This course examines specific aspects of pharmacology, particular emphasis being placed on mechanism of action, and the modification of function by drugs. The actions of drugs on excitable membranes, membrane bound enzymes, intermediate messengers will be considered. The modification by drugs of peripheral and central neurotransmission, and cardiovascular, bronchial, renal, gastrointestinal and endocrinal function will be reviewed. Practical work complements the lecture course.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### **Pharmacology for MSc and Honours**

(Three papers and a thesis (96.621) which shall count as three papers.) Three papers to be selected from 96.404 to 96.407. A Master's paper from Bio-chemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology may be substituted for one of the papers in Pharmacology with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned, or for the MSc in Medical Science, of the chairperson of the committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Head of the Department, students will select three papers among those listed below and an appropriate thesis topic. Not all of the papers listed will be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. The student should normally expect to complete his or her thesis during the second year.

#### **96.404 Drug Disposition and Action**

Absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs. Sites and mechanisms of drug action. Analysis of these processes.

#### **96.405 Transmitter and Brain Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on the central nervous system. Drugs used to treat neurological and psychiatric disorders. Chemical neuroanatomy of diseased and normal brain.

#### **96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on cardiovascular system. Drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris and heart failure. Drugs affecting blood coagulation.

#### **96.407 Special Topics**

The study of selected fields of pharmacology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. Possible topics include toxicology and anaesthetics. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a number of topics in Pharmacology. Further information is available from the Head of Department.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY**

### **Stage I Course**

#### **29.101 Introduction to Logic**

Logic is the study of argument. After an informal discussion of notions of truth, consistency, modes of truth, and the ideas of soundness, deductive validity and inductive strength as applied to arguments, this paper provides an introduction to formal logic through the study of syllogistic logic, propositional logic and quantificational logic.

### **Stage II Courses**

#### **29.201 Logic II**

This paper has two parts: (i) an introduction to set theory and its importance for logic, philosophy and the foundations of mathematics, and (ii) a study of non-classical logics, including many-valued logics, modal logic and intuitionistic logic.

#### **29.203 Philosophy of Science**

This course is available for second and third year BSc students. It provides an introduction to the logic, methodology, ontology and epistemology of science, and other problem areas where philosophy intersects with foundational issues in the special

sciences. No prior acquaintance with philosophy will be presupposed. However, students will be required to master some elementary logic. Full details of the course, including texts, can be found in the booklet *Guide to Undergraduate Philosophy, 1993* available from the Departmental Secretary, Room 7, 1 Alfred Street.

### **Stage III Course**

#### **29.305 Logic III**

A course in mathematical logic, focussing on a study of formal systems in general and some aspects of automatic theorem proving.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS**

### **Stage I Courses**

Students should select Stage I Physics papers according to their background preparation in Physics, and the major subject they intend to pursue for their degree or the requirements of the professional degrees in which they may be enrolling.

The standard first year course for students intending to advance in Physics and/or a related discipline comprises the 31.140 and 31.150 papers. These papers, taken together, provide students with a comprehensive foundation knowledge of the Physics of both macroscopic and microscopic systems. However they may also be taken as single papers to either supplement or satisfy a specific requirement of an alternative course of study.

The prescribed Physics papers for Engineering students are 31.114 and 31.144. For BE students intending to take a further Physics paper as an elective, paper 31.150 is recommended. BSc students with a special interest in electronics may be selectively enrolled in 31.114, but they will also be required to take (or have taken) 31.140 as a corequisite.

The prescribed Physics papers for Technology students depend upon the orientation of that degree. For BTech (Optoelectronics) they are 31.114 and 31.140. For BTech (Information Technology) which is offered only on the Tamaki Campus, the paper T31.132 is prescribed.

The new Physics papers, T31.122 and T31.132, have been developed to suit the requirements of new courses available only at the Tamaki campus. The paper, T31.122, is recommended for BSc students with an interest in the physics of energy and the environment, and T31.132 is recommended for BSc students interested in the physics of technology. Students intending to enrol at Tamaki should also note that for prerequisite purposes, a pass in both T31.122 and T31.132 is equivalent to a pass in both 31.140 and 31.150.

For all of the six papers specified above, namely 31.114, 31.140, 31.144, 31.150, T31.122 and T31.132, a B-bursary (or equivalent) background standard in Physics and Mathematics will be assumed to have been reached by students.

For BSc and BA students interested in the philosophical and historical development of Physics, paper 31.101 is strongly recommended. Similarly those students interested in obtaining a basic understanding of how application of the principles of Physics helps us better understand and appreciate the physical world around us are advised to enrol in paper 31.102. Neither of these two papers assume any previous formal study in Physics.

Note: Direct entry to Stage II Physics papers as noted below under Stage II Courses is available.

#### **31.101 The Physical Universe**

Two lectures and a one hour demonstration/tutorial session per week for the whole year. Available for both BSc and BA students. The course is descriptive in nature and requires a minimal background in Mathematics and Physics. It gives an overview of the major developments in Physics since the time of the Greeks. It discusses how the evolution of Physics from the Classical to the Modern period has given rise to philosophical problems and concludes with an outline of the current unanswered problems in our understanding of the universe. Among the topics covered are the development of physics from Aristotle to Newton, the forces of nature and attempts to unify them, and the ideas of quantum mechanics and relativity. Demonstration experiments are conducted from time to time. Student work emphasises essays and tutorial discussion.

#### **31.102 The World of Physics**

Two lectures per week and a one-hour tutorial session for the

whole year. Available for both BSc and BA students. The course seeks to provide an understanding of many of the phenomena of the natural world around us and the physics of many human activities. Some of the themes will be the physics of our environment, the physics of sports and music, physics in medicine, light and lasers, the laws of motion and a study of the physics of the solar system and satellite orbits.

### **31.114 Measurement and Instrumentation**

Measuring instruments depending on many different physical principles are now used widely by scientists and engineers. The paper will cover features which are common to many physical measurements; e.g. statistical analysis of data, probability, treatment of errors, basic electric circuit theory and elementary electronics, analogue and digital electronic instruments, transducers and the physical principles utilised in their design and application. Although the course is specifically addressed to engineering students it should be of value to any student with an interest in the practice of making physical measurements.

### **T31.122 Physics of the Environment**

It is expected that this course will appeal especially to students who wish to specialise in an area of environmental studies. Thermal physics: heat, transport and radiation in the atmosphere and hydrosphere. Mechanics, fluid flow and alternative energy systems. The physics of electrical generation and distribution. Oscillations and waves in acoustics and in geophysics. The physics of energy production. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **T31.132 Physics of Technology**

This paper is part of the BTech (Information Technology) course and will also appeal to BSc students with similar interests. Electric circuits, electric and magnetic fields and their applications in electronics and communications technology. Quantum effects and atomic structure with reference to solid state and other high technology devices. Lasers and optics in communication. An introduction to the sub-atomic world. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

### **31.140 Foundations of Classical Physics**

This paper is intended to be a broad introduction to Physics. It is suitable for students who wish to advance in the subject as well as for those who wish to apply physical principles in other disciplines. Mechanics, wave-motion, sound and light, electromagnetism.

### **31.144 Physics for Engineering**

This paper is for first year Bachelor of Engineering students. Mechanics, wave-motion, sound and light, electromagnetism.

### **31.150 Foundations of Modern Physics**

This paper will appeal to students advancing in Physics as well as those who would like some awareness of the excitement of modern developments in the areas of thermal physics, radiation, relativity and quantum physics.

### **Stage II Courses**

#### **Direct Entry**

Students who have gained outstanding marks in both Physics and Mathematics in the University Bursaries and Entrance Scholarships examination may be granted direct entry to Stage II papers in Physics. Such students will have obtained marks in the high 80's and above in such examinations. Enquiries should be made to the Head of Department.

#### **Non-Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.200-206 do not lead on to any other papers in physics at Stage III and have minimal Stage I prerequisites. These papers present aspects of pure and applied physics of interest to students in other subjects, but may also be taken by students advancing in physics.

### **31.200 Topics in Contemporary and Applied Physics**

This paper provides an introduction to a variety of topics in physics of contemporary interest, such as space physics, astrophysics, geophysics and biophysics. It also discusses the basic physics involved in a variety of general topics such as music, photography and microscopy. The paper is descriptive in nature and makes extensive use of demonstrations, slides, films and closed circuit TV. One two-hour lecture per week is devoted to each topic, with a different lecturer each week. This paper is examined by continuous assessment.

### **31.206 Introductory Geophysics**

This paper introduces students to a broad range of topics in

geophysics. The coverage will include basic physical phenomena and processes relating to the Earth as a planet in the solar system, the atmosphere, the oceans and the solid Earth. The level of presentation is appropriate both for advancing physics students and for students in other disciplines.

### **Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.225, 31.245 and 31.255 are the core Stage II physics papers. Students intending to major in physics should take at least two of the core papers including 31.225 and should note the mathematics prerequisites for Stage III physics papers. Students intending to enrol for MSc in Physics are advised to take all three core papers.

The core papers and 31.240 have two lectures per week and laboratory work. Tutorials are held in alternate weeks. Laboratory work will contribute to the final grade and it is necessary to pass both the laboratory course and the written paper.

### **31.225 Classical and Mathematical Physics**

This paper discusses Macroscopic Physics and considers the fundamentals of mechanics, oscillations, waves and electromagnetism with applications to a wide variety of physical systems. Applications will be drawn from gravitation, relativity, astrophysics, electrostatics, optics and acoustics. The course will also include an introduction to computer modelling and analysis of physical systems.

### **31.240 Electronic Physics**

This paper provides a fundamental understanding of basic electronic circuits and systems. It covers electric circuit theory, semiconductor devices, circuit applications and principles of electronic design and instrumentation. The lectures comprise the first half of 31.245.

### **31.245 Electronic and Applied Physics**

This paper provides a fundamental understanding of electronic, optical and electromagnetic systems. It covers circuit theory, semiconductor theory, circuit applications, principles of electronic design and instrumentation, fibre optics, lenses, waveguides, dielectrics and magnetism.

### **31.255 Quantum and Statistical Physics**

This paper discusses Microscopic Physics. The aim is to introduce students to the concepts of quantum physics and statistical physics with applications to atoms, molecules, solids (including semiconductors), nuclei and particles. Topics will include the Schrödinger equation, the Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution and Fermi-Dirac and Bose-Einstein quantum statistics.

### **31.270 Astronomy and Astrophysics (Optional Paper)**

Techniques of optical and radio astronomy; determination of properties of the solar system and of stars such as distance, radius and mass; Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; equations of stellar structure, energy production and transport; introduction to stellar evolution, galactic structure and cosmology.

Note: The Department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

### **31.297 Digital Logic Laboratory**

This laboratory paper is particularly designed for Computer Science students with an interest in computer hardware.

The course occupies two 2-hour periods each week for half the year, and is examined on the basis of continuous assessment.

### **Stage III Courses**

#### **31.325-370**

The prerequisites for these papers are listed in the BSc Schedule. Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Mathematics at Stage III level, the papers 26.340, 26.345, 26.360 and 26.375 being the most relevant. In addition paper 26.220 or equivalent is of benefit to students enrolling for 31.355.

Some papers in Computer Science such as 07.100, 07.101, 07.105, 07.210 and 07.340 are also likely to be of benefit to Physics students.

Laboratory work selected from papers 31.390-392 is corequisite for a course containing more than six credits from papers 31.325-370.

Students intending to undertake graduate studies in Physics should ensure that they satisfy the MSc prerequisites listed under the MSc Regulations.

### **31.325 Advanced Classical Physics**

This paper deals with Electromagnetism and Statistical Mechanics and contains material important to all further studies in Physics. Topics covered include the development of Maxwell's

Equations in differential form, and their application to electrostatics, magnetic fields, the EM wave equation and EM wave propagation. In the latter half of the course, the topics include the statistical basis of thermodynamics, entropy, temperature, partition function, classical and quantum gases, radiation, Bose condensation and superfluidity.

### 31.326 Laser Physics and Optoelectronics

This paper is concerned with modern advances in lasers and optics with emphasis on their applications. Topics covered include: common laser systems, resonator theory, propagation of laser beams, dispersion, optoelectronic devices, nonlinear optics, fibre optics, optical transmission systems, optical instruments and systems. The course is of value to students with interests in electrical engineering, electro optics and research in any experimental area of Physics.

### 31.330 Terrestrial Physics

A general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics.

This 2 credit option is a special arrangement for applied geophysics students and has the majority of the lectures given in common with 31.335.

### 31.335 Geophysics

This paper includes a general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics. The physics of the oceans and atmosphere are treated by application of fluid mechanics to the relevant dynamical phenomena. Other topics include driven flow, circulation of the atmosphere and oceans, atmospheric electricity, radiation balance and optical phenomena. A five-day field trip to the Leigh Laboratory during the first week of the May break is a compulsory part of the coursework for this paper.

### 31.342 Semiconductor Devices

This paper is concerned with understanding the electrical behaviour of semiconductor devices. It contains material relating to the physics of semiconductor junctions, device fabrication and integration, electrical characteristics of discrete and integrated devices, circuit models and device applications.

Although the paper is general in nature, and is designed to follow 31.240 and 31.245, students will benefit from concurrent enrolment in 31.345.

*Note:* Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in 31.390, 391 or 392.

### 31.345 Analogue and Digital Electronics

This paper is relevant to the needs of students intending to undertake experimental work in any area of Physics. Topics discussed include time and complex frequency domain analysis methods applied to electrical and physical systems, Laplace transform methods, Nyquist and Bode plots, poles and zeros, feedback, phase locked loops, oscillators, modulation and noise. A systematic introduction to modern digital techniques is given, covering pulse generation, shaping and cable transmission, active and passive switching circuits, combinational and sequential logic systems.

*Note:* Students enrolling in this paper will benefit substantially by also enrolling in 31.390, 391 or 392.

### 31.355 Advanced Quantum Physics

This paper deals with the postulates of non-relativistic quantum mechanics and their application in atomic, molecular, solid-state, nuclear and particle physics. The study of these topics will be developed using the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation and will include the quantisation of angular momentum and systems in which like particles interact.

*Note:* Students in this paper will benefit greatly by enrolling also in 31.390 or 31.391 or 31.392.

### 31.356 Nuclear Physics and Its Applications

This course discusses the principles of nuclear physics in order to go on to treat such contemporary nuclear topics as: fission and nuclear power; fusion and nuclear power; nuclear astrophysics; nuclear radiations and their origins, interaction and detection.

*Note:* Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in at least one of 31.390, 31.391, 31.392.

### 31.370 Astrophysics

This paper builds upon the second year course 31.270 and includes the following topics: cosmology, gravitation, binary stars,

synchrotron radiation, radio emissions, cosmic rays, neutron stars and current research.

*Note:* The Department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

### 31.380-389 Selected Topics

Subject to the approval of the Head of Department students may select not more than two topics from those offered at MSc level in Physics. Any necessary prerequisites or corequisites will be as determined by the Head of Department.

These papers will be examined in a fashion appropriate to Stage III as part of the Selected Topics 380-389.

From time to time special lecture courses in Physics may be offered to students in particular areas of specialisation. These papers will be announced prior to the enrolment period in the year in which they are given.

### Stage III Laboratory Courses

#### 31.390, 391, 392 Experimental Physics A, B, C

Three general laboratory papers are available at Stage III level in Physics, and students may enrol for one or more of these in the same or subsequent years. Each paper normally occupies two three-hour laboratory periods for half the year, but laboratory times are flexible depending on the allocation of experiments in the Advanced Laboratory and 31.392 may be spread over the whole year, at the discretion of the course organiser. Each paper will contain a representative selection of experiments from different branches of physics, but will in addition contain experiments selected as far as is practicable to suit the particular interests of students. Experiments are available in general physics, atomic and nuclear physics, electronic physics, pure and applied physics, laser physics and quantum optics.

In view of the value to be derived towards an understanding of experimental physics, it is expected that all students taking any of the 390-series laboratory courses will offer themselves for a period of Stage I laboratory demonstrating.

Prerequisites for enrolment in 31.390, 391 or 392 are passes in *two* of the papers 31.210 to 31.270 and in 31.290 (if taken before 1990) or one of the papers 31.225, 245 or 255 (special prerequisites apply for 31.393-see below). Corequisites for all four laboratory papers are concurrent enrolment (or passes) totalling at least two credits from 31.325-356 for each one of 31.390-393.

At least *two* of the papers 390 to 393 are required as a prerequisite to Masters in Physics.

#### 31.393 (3 credits) Experimental Geophysics

This is a joint paper offered by the Geology and Physics Departments and is the same as 21.307. For further information on this paper students should consult the entry under 21.307 Experimental Geophysics.

#### Physics for MSc and Honours

##### MSc Lecture Courses

The lecture papers given at the Honours level are of two types. The three core papers are of 33 lectures each and are given annually in terms one and two. Students must take at least two of these papers. In addition, the department offers elective papers (of 23 lecture duration) during the first half of the year which are, in general, given biennially with at least four given in each year. Students must select 5 papers (normally two core and three elective papers). The thesis counts as five papers. Core papers must be sat in the first year of enrolment. Students will be assisted in their selection of papers at enrolment but should feel free to discuss their proposed course of study, including an area of interest for thesis work, with lecturing staff before the end of the Stage III year.

There are no specific prerequisites for the individual lecture papers, but it is strongly recommended that students should have taken the appropriate corresponding Stage III paper. Concurrent enrolment in suitable Masters papers may be advised. Enrolment for COP in a supporting paper may also be recommended.

##### Core Papers

These papers are given annually.

#### 31.401 Mathematical Techniques in Physics

Topics will include: convolution, continuous and discrete Fourier transforms, Laplace transforms, z-transforms and Hilbert transforms. Modulation and detection of signals in the presence of noise, signal analysis by analogue and digital processes, digital filtering, phased detectors and optical signal processing methods.

#### 31.402 Classical Physics

Topics will include: advanced electromagnetic theory, co-variant



formulation of electrodynamics, Liénard Wiechert potentials, electromagnetic wave propagation in media, radiation from moving charges; principles of generalised classical mechanics, Lagrange's equations, Hamilton's principle, Hamilton's formulation, conservation laws, special relativity and fields within the Lagrange/Hamilton framework; fluid mechanics.

### 31.403 Quantum Mechanics

Topics will include: A review of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of Dirac notation, scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory, rotations and other symmetry operations. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

### Elective Papers

These papers are normally offered in alternate years, but may be given more often.

### 31.413 Statistical Mechanics ○

### \*31.414 Relativity □

### 31.426 Optoelectronics and Laser Physics ○

### 31.431 Wave Propagation ○

### \*31.432 Atmospheric Physics □

### 31.434 Applied Geophysics I

### 31.435 Applied Geophysics II

### \*31.443 Integrated Electronics □

### \*31.453 Nuclear Physics ○

### †31.454 Elementary Particle Physics ○

### \*31.455 Quantum Optics □

### 31.481-499 Selected Topics

Note: 31.434 and 31.435 can only be taken as a combination, as together they are equivalent to 21.406. (These papers are given jointly by the Physics and Geology Departments.)

With the approval of the Senate and on the recommendation of the Head of Department a candidate may select one Stage III Physics paper not previously taken and enrol in it as one of the Selected Topics 31.481-31.499. In such a case additional course work may be required, and a special examination will be set. Alternatively, or additionally, under MSc Regulation 5 (a), a Masters paper in an allied subject may be taken as an elective. With the approval of the Head of Department, a core paper may be substituted for an elective paper.

### 31.611 Thesis

An experimental or theoretical thesis is required, and will count as five papers. Students are given advice concerning theses early in the first year of MSc enrolment and are expected to familiarise themselves with research in progress in the Department during the first half-year. Staff will be ready to discuss possible thesis topics with students during this period, with a view to final choice of topic being made prior to the end of the second term. The choice of thesis topic is subject to the approval of the Head of Department, who will consider the availability of staff and facilities over the Department as a whole.

Bound theses must be submitted within 24 months of first enrolment for the MSc Degree. Extensions of time under MSc Regulation 9 (b) will not normally be recommended and will require justification by the candidate's supervisor on grounds of special circumstances only.

The Department is prepared to meet the cost of an additional copy of the thesis for the Departmental Thesis Library and students are asked to provide such a copy with author, year and degree on the spine.

### Research in Physics

Facilities are available for postgraduate and postdoctoral research in Physics in a wide variety of fields. Further information is available from the Departmental Office.

The PhD Degree in Physics normally requires about two and a half to three years full-time work. Part-time study is possible after the initial two years.

MSc students making satisfactory progress can, with the approval of the Head of Department, transfer to the PhD Degree in their second year. Initial direct enrolment for the degree of PhD is only possible in special cases.

An introduction to cellular and organ physiology and relevant processes, particularly in human and other mammalian systems. Topics are nervous system, muscle, motor control and sensory function; cardiovascular and respiratory systems and blood, with their exchange and transport functions; endocrine and reproductive systems, with humoral control of cell metabolism; alimentary system, digestion and absorption; kidney function; body fluids.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

### Stage III

### 67.301 Systematic Physiology

(One paper and practical work.)

An advanced treatment of specific aspects of physiology which demonstrate the interaction of function from the level of cell to that of the whole organism. Visceral regulatory mechanisms, regulation of body fluids, cardiovascular control, control of body temperature, and the determinants of oxygen supply and demand are considered in depth. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Practical work complements the lecture course and provides training in a wide range of the techniques used in physiology.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week.

Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

### 67.302 Physiology of Cells and Excitable Tissues

(One paper and practical work.)

The physiology of excitable tissues with particular emphasis on the nature of the physical and chemical processes involved. The bio-physical basis for membrane potentials; the nature of voltage and time dependent ion-selective membrane channels; synaptic transmission; the regulation of contractile processes; and functional differences between skeletal, cardiac and smooth muscle will be studied in detail. The approach is quantitative and special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture courses and introduces students to the principal physiological techniques of investigation in this field. The paper is offered in the first half-year.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

### 67.303 Physiology of the Nervous System

(One paper and practical work.)

The role of the nervous system and general pattern of its functional organisation. The physiology of the processing of sensory information, of motor outputs and their control, the integrative functions of the central nervous system, central neural mechanisms of homeostasis and aspects of the development of the nervous system are studied at an advanced level. Special emphasis is placed on human and other mammalian systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture course and introduces students to a range of neurophysiological techniques. The paper is offered in the second half-year.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

### Physiology for MSc and Honours

(Three papers and a Thesis (67.621) which shall count as three papers.)

Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Head of Department, students will select three papers from among those listed below and an appropriate thesis topic. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. With the approval of the Senate, a Master's paper in another subject may be substituted for one of the papers in Physiology. The emphasis in all papers is on the critical analysis of current physiology. Students will be

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

### Stage II

### 67.201 Introductory Physiology

(One paper and practical work.)

required to read and analyse scientific writings and to present their views on the methods of study and on the validity of the conclusions.

#### **67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control**

Studies of physiological regulatory mechanisms.

#### **67.403 Neurophysiology**

Central processing of sensory information. Organisation and integration of motor pathways in the brain involved in respiratory and cardiovascular control. Cellular mechanisms of synaptic function and memory.

#### **67.405 Methods in Physiology**

An outline of the theory and practice of data acquisition and analysis in physiology. Principles of experimental design, instrumentation, statistics and computation are considered with respect to specific experiments.

#### **67.407 Physiology of Exercise and Rest**

Human physiological responses and adaptations to physical activity, including maximal exertion, occasional and habitual exercise, exercise under special conditions (disability, heat and cold stress, alterations in oxygen supply), and the effects of prolonged inactivity.

### **DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

**Note:** On text books: Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

**On courses:** The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

#### **Stage I Courses**

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour. The papers may be taken separately. However, passes in 32.108 or 32.118, or T32.128 and in 32.109 or T32.129 are necessary for entry to Stage II.

#### **32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered may include: the neurobiological basis of behaviour; developmental psychology; social psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; causes and treatment of psycho-pathology; research design and analysis.

(Tutorial attendance of 1 hour per fortnight is required).

#### **32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered may include: learning, sensation and perception, memory, cognition and language.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required.)

#### **32.118 Introduction to General Psychology**

As prescribed for 32.108. This paper is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

#### **\*32.119 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

As prescribed for 32.109. This paper is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education.

#### **T32.128 Psychology as a Social Science**

An introduction to psychology as a social science, including the study of social and organizational psychology, developmental psychology, the measurement of mental abilities, and abnormal psychology. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **T32.129 Psychology as an Experimental Science**

This course stresses the scientific bases of modern psychology, including the study of biological psychology, the psychology of learning, sensation, perception, cognition, and language. Topics in applied experimental psychology may also be introduced. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

#### **Stage II Courses**

A pass in 12 Stage II credits in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III. From 1995 a further prerequisite, paper 26.181 or 26.182 will be required.

#### **32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of perception and cognition. Topics covered include visual and auditory perception, attention, memory, language and thinking, and psychophysics. The value of experimental methods in this area of psychology is illustrated with a variety of tutorials, laboratory demonstrations and experiments.

#### **32.230 Introduction to Neuroscience**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

#### **32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the lifespan in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such

topics as social cognition, social influence, attitudes, small group processes, social interaction, altruism and aggression. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Socioemotional developments will be emphasised in the Developmental Psychology section.

#### **32.250 Animal Learning and Behaviour**

A consideration of the environmental factors that control and modify animal (including human) behaviour. Generally, an experimental laboratory approach is taken, though some topics require also an ecological approach. Theories, especially quantitative theories, are stressed. Topics include: law of effect, contingencies of reinforcement, antecedent control, choice, foraging, memory, signal detection, experimental design, and self control.

#### **Stage III Courses**

A pass in 20 Stage III credits, including 32.306 and 12 other Stage III credits from Psychology is necessary for entry to MSc and Honours in Psychology.

#### **32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences and their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

#### **32.303 Cognitive Science**

Cognitive theories of the mind, including symbol-based and connectionist models. Topics covered include attention, pattern recognition, memory, language and thinking.

**Note:** Prior experience with computers is not necessary.

#### **32.304 Personality and Psychotherapy**

A study of theories of personality with emphasis on their relevance to psychotherapy, various social contexts, and personal growth.

#### **32.305 Human Neuroscience**

This course deals with issues relating central nervous system function to psychological performance. In particular the relationships between cognitive and perceptual processes and measures of EEG; the effects of drugs and other substances in biological and psychological variables; and the biological basis of normal and abnormal memory function.

#### **32.306 Research Methods in Psychology**

This course deals with principles and methods relevant to psychological research. Topics include research design, measurement of behaviour, describing and analysing data, and interpreting research findings. The scope is broad, including applied as well as pure research, and research with single cases as well as groups. Qualitative and quantitative methods are covered.

#### **32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviours in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

#### **32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

#### **32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

#### **32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

#### **32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, and the individual and social psychology of work and the development of groups and teams in organisations.

#### **†32.313 Special Topic in Psychology**

#### **32.314 Ergonomics**

An overview of methods of improving human well-being and productivity by optimising person-machine-environment systems.

#### **32.315 Abnormal Psychology**

This course is concerned with the major problems of children and adults that cause people to seek or receive psychological help. Topics include classification and effects of defining and labelling individuals as 'abnormal', models and practice of service delivery (institutions, community mental health, prevention).

#### **32.316 Lifespan Developmental Psychology**

Social and cognitive aspects of human development will be

considered in depth, with emphases on both empirical and theoretical approaches.

### **BSc(Hons) in Psychology**

The Regulations which cover the BSc(Hons) course are listed elsewhere. This course in Psychology is designed to enable students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years. Students gaining a good class of BSc(Hons) would be eligible to proceed directly to a PhD degree. Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) in Psychology take not less than 40 credits in Psychology, of which not less than 16 credits must be from Stage III papers and not less than 16 credits must be from Stage IV papers, and which must include paper 32.306 and a thesis 32.603 (worth 4 credits). In addition, students entering the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation must take 32.419 in Part IV if they have not passed 32.306. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department of Psychology prior to pre-enrolment or at any time during the preceding year.

### **Courses for MSc and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

#### **\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

#### **32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

#### **32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An examination of issues in the study of perception.

#### **32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

#### **32.409 Theory and Practice in Clinical Psychology**

This course is concerned with the categories of psychological problems most commonly encountered by practitioners. Included are problems of children and adults. In respect of each disorder attention will be given to the different theories of causation that inform clinical practice. Models of therapy derived from such theories will be dealt with. Attention will be given to research and evaluation methods in clinical psychology.

#### **32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

#### **32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

#### **32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on aspects of socioemotional development.

#### **32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

#### **32.418 Special Topic in Psychology**

1993: Learning Disabilities: Assessment and Intervention

#### **32.419 Psychological Research**

An advanced treatment of research techniques in psychology, emphasising analysis of variance, regression, categorical analysis, quasi-experimental designs and evaluation, and computer solutions for these techniques.

#### **32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

#### **32.421 Theories and Practices of Psychotherapy**

A study of a variety of psychotherapies with emphasis on their local relevance, problems of matching methods to individual people as well as to social contexts, and the importance of emotional processes in the maintenance of well-being.

#### **32.422 Learning Disabilities**

This paper provides training in the theory, identification and treatment of learning disabilities. Both developmental and acquired disabilities are covered.

*Prerequisites:* 32.210 and 32.301

*Corequisite:* 32.403

### **32.423 Issues in Cognitive Science**

An introduction to cognitive science with a principal focus on cognitive psychology. The paper will discuss both fundamental issues concerning the mind-computer analogy, and also practical issues concerning the impact and use of information technology in everyday life.

### **32.424 Mind and Brain**

This paper provides an introduction to cognitive neuropsychology. Topics covered will include studies of perception, memory and language from a neuropsychological perspective.

### **\*32.425 Gender Issues in Human Development**

A study of the impact of gender on psychological and social development and functioning, with an emphasis on theories and recent research.

### **32.426 Human Factors**

An investigation of the effects on psychological and task related performance of: sleep deprivation, circadian dysrhythmia in travel and shift work, environmental stressors, alcohol, prescription medication and other commonly used psycho-active substances. A particular emphasis running through the course will be the influence of these and other factors on work related accidents.

### **32.427 Contemporary Theory and Clinical Psychology**

An introduction to contemporary theory (e.g. postmodernisms, feminisms) and issues which have important implications for clinical psychology practice and research.

### **32.428 Applied Social Psychology**

An introduction to the application of social psychological theory and research methods in a community setting. This course will build on the theoretical skills students have developed in 32.306 and 32.311.

*Prerequisites:* 32.306 and 32.311

*Restriction:* 32.420

### **32.429 Language and Speech**

A study of selected topics in the literature on language and speech. The main focus of the course will be speech and language processing by normal adults, but other potential topics include language development and artificial intelligence approaches to natural language processing.

### **32.430 Applied Psychophysics: From Research to Practice**

The course considers the application of detection theory, ROC analysis, and other psychophysical techniques to a range of problems in psychology, medicine, and industry.

---

## **SCIENCE COMMUNICATION**

Responsibility for the administration of the paper lies with a Board of Studies consisting of the following: Dean of Science (or nominee), Higher Education Research Officer (or nominee) and two members elected from those teaching the course.

### **T701.101 Science Communication**

The paper is intended to provide students with the ability to communicate science effectively. It encompasses the underlying philosophy of science, the likely audiences of science, ways of managing and presenting data, the problems and pitfalls of communication between individuals, genders, cultures etc., negotiation and bargaining. Methods of communication in science and examples will be given. This paper is taught at the Tamaki Campus.

---

## **BACHELOR OF SCIENCE EDUCATION**

The Bachelor of Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

---

## **BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY**

The Bachelor of Technology is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*. Prescriptions for individual papers may be found in the Prescriptions for the Degrees of BCom, BE and BSc in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

---

## **TUTORING IN SCIENCE**

Responsibility for the administration of this paper lies with a committee consisting of the following: the Dean of Science or

nominee, two elected members of the Faculty of Science, the Dean of Education or nominee, the Higher Education Research Officer.

### **620.200 Tutoring in Science**

A predominantly practical course in which students learn science tutoring skills in a secondary classroom situation. Five weeks of lectures are given prior to the commencement of the practical

component.

Note: \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current Calendar year.

†Daggered papers will not be taught during the current Calendar year unless sufficient staff is available.

○ Taught in odd-numbered years

□ Taught in even-numbered years

\*† Prefix - taught at the Tamiaki Campus

---

## **DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS**

---

### **DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE DipCompSci**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Computer Science shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or hold a professional qualification in Computer Science, or have attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the Computing Profession;
  - (b) have attained, to the Head of Department's approval, a level of technical competence in Computer Science equivalent to the prerequisites for 300 level Computer Science papers.
2. A candidate permitted by the Senate to enrol for the Diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements may be required by the Senate to include all or any of the unfulfilled prerequisites as additional papers.
3. A candidate shall complete a coherent course of study approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science subject to the conditions that:
  - (a) the course of study shall comprise papers having a total credit value of at least 24 credits normally selected from papers at 300-level or higher in Computer Science and relevant papers offered by other Departments. For students without a substantial background in Computer Science some 200-level papers may be approved.
  - (b) at least 16 credits of the course shall be at 300-level or higher. At least 12 credits at 300-level or higher must be from Computer Science papers.
4. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another Degree or Diploma.
5. These Regulations come into force on 1 January 1986.

---

### **DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION DipMathsEd**

The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

---

### **DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE DipSci**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall before enrolment have been admitted or have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science or shall have attained a qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to that qualifying degree.
2. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Unless otherwise approved by the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. A candidate will be required to follow a coherent course of study which shall consist of at least 24 credits above Stage I, of which at least 16 must be at 300-level or higher. Unless otherwise recommended by the relevant Head(s) of Department(s) and approved by the Senate a candidate must substitute a Research Project (99.525) for 6 of the 300-level credits.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department and the Dean of Science.
5. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
6. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

### **DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE EDUCATION DipSciEd**

The Diploma in Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

---

### **DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS DipStats**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Statistics shall before enrolment for this Diploma have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or have satisfied Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master of Arts or Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master of Science and shall:
  - (a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc): (i) papers 26.220 or 221 or 222 and

- 240 or 241 and (ii) paper 26.280 or 26.281, or such other paper as may be approved by the Head of the Statistics Unit; or
- (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment to the approval of the Senate.
  2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.
  3. (a) A candidate shall complete a course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics on the recommendation of the Head of the Statistics Unit, consisting of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 200, 300, 400 or 500 level papers in Mathematics and Statistics and papers related to statistics and operations research above Stage I level in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580, which counts as four credits. At least 12 of the 20 credits must be selected from papers in probability or statistics offered by the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. No more than eight credits at the 200 level can be credited to the Diploma.
  - (b) A candidate who has no knowledge of computing shall be required to attend an appropriate course in computer programming.
  4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.
  5. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he or she has already passed for any other degree or diploma.
  6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN APPLIED PSYCHOLOGY PGDipAppPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology shall at least have satisfied the prerequisites for admission to a Master's Degree in Psychology of this University.
2. Admission to the course of study for this Postgraduate Diploma shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Psychology.
3. A candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma shall follow a coherent course of study of not less than three years.
4. The course of study shall consist of
  - (a) Either concurrently following a course of study for a Master's Degree in Psychology comprising four papers from 32.401 - 32.430 and a thesis (32.601) or if part of the Master's Degree has already been completed concurrently taking those requirements that have not already been completed, provided that a candidate who has completed all the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology shall be exempted from the requirements of this clause except where he or she has completed the Master's Degree without a thesis, in which case paper 32.420 (Research Topic in Psychology) shall be taken for this Postgraduate Diploma;
  - (b) A practicum (32.550) of not less than one full-time year or its equivalent involving supervised experience in applied settings approved by the Head of Department of Psychology;
  - (c) Two 400 level papers (or their equivalent as approved by the Senate) additional to those required by clause (a) of this Regulation.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY PGDipClinPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Clinical Psychology shall at least have satisfied the prerequisites for admission to a Master's Degree in Psychology of this University.
2. Admission to the course of study for the Diploma shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Psychology.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of study of not less than three years by taking courses 32.500 and 32.501 as prescribed for this Diploma, and EITHER
  - (a) concurrently follow a course of study for a Master's Degree in Psychology which shall include papers 32.408 and 32.409 and a thesis 32.601;
  - OR
  - (b) if all or part of the Master's Degree has already been completed, concurrently take those requirements specified in 3 (a) that have not already been completed. If the candidate had already taken a Master's Degree without a thesis, paper 32.420 (Research Topic in Psychology) may be substituted for the thesis.
  - OR
  - (c) if a Bachelor's degree with honours has been completed, concurrently take those requirements specified in 3(a) that have not been completed.

### Course Content and Examinations

4. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:
 

**Part I 32.500 (two years)**  
This course comprises seminars in the practice of Psychology, as well as supervised clinical work with clients at the Department of Psychology Clinic and at approved health and mental health institutions, for a minimum of 6 hours per week in the first year and 25 hours per week in the second year. Evaluation will be by internal assessment, and candidates must gain a pass in each year of the course.

**Part II 32.501 (one year)**  
Part II includes a practical component and a final examination, and a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass 32.501. The practical component comprises supervised clinical work of not less than 1500 hours in an approved mental health setting, and other on-course requirements as described in Regulation 6.  
The final examination comprises written case reports, the assessment of one or more clients, and an oral examination.
5. No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II before completing Part I to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology.

6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology such seminar, clinical, and practical work as may be required.
7. Where a candidate passes the practical component of Part II, but fails the final examination in November, in exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit the candidate to sit a Special Examination in the following February. This Special Examination may include one or more of the following: further written case studies; an assessment of a client; an oral examination.
8. A candidate shall be deemed to have completed the requirements for the Diploma upon gaining a pass in courses 32.500 and 32.501 and upon completing the requirements of the Master's Degree.
9. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, and at the discretion of the Senate, a candidate who fails any year of the course may be declined permission to enrol in the course as a whole.
10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE PGDipSci

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall before enrolment have been admitted or have qualified for admission to either the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours), of the degree of Bachelor of Science or another comparable qualification approved by the Senate.
2. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Unless otherwise approved by the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. A candidate will be required to follow a coherent course of study, recommended by the relevant Head(s) of Department and approved by the Senate, which shall consist of either (a) at least four papers at 400-level or higher or (b) at least three papers at 400-level or higher and a research project (99.575) which is equivalent to one paper or (c) a programme equivalent to that required for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).
4. Upon the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Department, and with the approval of the Dean of Science, Masters level papers in another Faculty may be substituted for 50% of the course.
5. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department and the Dean of Science.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
7. At the Senate's discretion this Diploma may be awarded with Distinction.
8. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

This course of study is designed for graduates in fields other than Computer Science, or candidates with equivalent status, to pursue their specialised interest in developments in the Computer field. The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 200, 300 and 400 level papers in Computer Science, and relevant papers offered by other departments. The course will normally include a project of either 4 or 8 credits. This course is normally studied on a part-time basis, however, it is possible for candidates who have a background equivalent to Stage II Computer Science to complete the course in one full year's study. Details are available from the Department of Computer Science and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be consulted.

### DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION

The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

### DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE EDUCATION

The Diploma in Science Education is an Inter-Faculty offering. For detailed Regulations and Prescriptions refer to the Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas section of this *Calendar*.

### DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS

This Diploma is available to students who have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's Degree, and have obtained passes in Mathematics papers 26.220 and 26.240, or their equivalents; and have a satisfactory background in Statistics (eg, a pass in 26.280 or 26.281). The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 200, 300, 400 or 500 level papers in

Mathematics and Statistics and statistically oriented papers above Stage I level in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580. Candidates may complete the course of one year's full-time study or else spend two or more years on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Department of Mathematics and Statistics and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be consulted. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:

- 26.580 Project in Statistics (4)
- 26.582 Special Topics in Statistics (4)
- 26.581 Topics in Statistics (2)
- 26.583 Further Topics in Statistics (4)

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN APPLIED PSYCHOLOGY

The minimum duration of the course including the Master's component is three years. Candidates wishing to enrol should make application to the Head of Department prior to pre-enrolling for the course.

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY

The course of study for this Diploma is designed to prepare the candidate for professional competence as a clinical psychologist, and to qualify the candidate for registration as a psychologist under the Registration of Psychologists Act.

The minimum duration of the course is three years. No more than eight candidates may be admitted to the course for the first time in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol should make application to the Programme Co-ordinator before 31 October preceding their first enrolment for the course. Application forms are available from the Department of Psychology.

Candidates wishing to take Part II in the following year should consult the Head of Department at the end of their second year in Part I of this course.

---

## CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATE IN OCULAR PHARMACOLOGY

#### **744.480 Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Certificate shall before enrolment: have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry *or* been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Optometry *or* shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent.
2. Admission to the Certificate shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department of Optometry.
3. A candidate for the Certificate shall follow a formal course of study of 40 hours of instruction comprising ten lectures and ten practical classes each of two hours duration.
4. A pass in respect of both practical work and a written examination is required.
5. A candidate shall complete the requirements for this Certificate within 24 months of first enrolment for the Certificate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

---

### CERTIFICATE IN THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF RADIOCHEMISTRY

#### **08.350 Elementary Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry**

The course for this Certificate involves ten lectures and ten laboratory classes each of three hours' duration. The course will run concurrently with the first ten lectures and laboratory sessions of 08.352, or by arrangement.

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work together with a written test.

*Prerequisites:* 08.210 or 08.220 or 08.230 or 08.260 but students having need of radiochemical techniques may be admitted to the Certificate Course without having passed the prerequisite upon obtaining the approval of the Head of the Chemistry Department.

---

# Joint Board of Studies in Theology

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>General Information</b>	Bachelor of Theology	409
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Bachelor of Theology	409
	Schedule for Bachelor of Theology	410
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Bachelor of Theology	416



---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

---

### Bachelor of Theology

The Bachelor of Theology Degree is offered by the University to make possible the study of both religion and theology at a tertiary level. It is administered by a Joint Board of Studies comprising appointees of the University and the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education. Constituent colleges of the Consortium at present are St John's College, Trinity Methodist College, Carey Baptist College, Catholic Institute of Theology, and Mt Saint Mary's College.

Students at the constituent colleges include both those who are preparing for a church or religious vocation and also those who wish to pursue the study of theology and/or religion in their various forms without any necessary commitment to either. However, because many of the present students of the constituent colleges are preparing for the ordained ministry it is appropriate that some guidance be given to those students in the development of maturity in the Christian faith and the disciplines of the Church. The primary responsibility for this assistance is undertaken by each of the constituent colleges in respect of its own members.

The complete course of education required for candidates for the ordained ministry is the responsibility of the colleges of those respective denominations but papers offered as part of the Bachelor of Theology Degree may form part of those requirements. Students contemplating the ordained ministry or any religious vocation should consult the Head of their own denominational college, or the appropriate person in their own religious tradition, for details of the particular requirements necessary.

No religious tests shall be imposed upon any person in order to entitle him or her to be enrolled for the Degree or to be a candidate for any examination or to graduate or to be an examiner/lecturer or to hold any office in connection with the Degree.

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF THEOLOGY BTheol

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers in subjects grouped as in Regulation 8 of these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II, and III.
3. Each course of study for the degree shall include
  - (i) at least two papers from Group A, to be selected subject to the approval of the relevant Head of Department and Chairman of the Joint Board of Studies, and no more than six papers in total from Groups A and B combined;
  - (ii) at least six papers in one Group selected from Group C D or E of which at least three are at stage III level;
  - (iii) at least eleven papers higher than Stage I of which at least nine shall be selected from Groups C D or E;
  - (iv) no more than eleven papers in one Group;
  - (v) at least two papers in the subjects Hebrew Bible, New Testament, Systematic Theology, Church History;
  - (vi) at least two papers selected from Group E.
4. For the purposes of Regulation 3 (ii), the Senate may approve the inclusion of one or more papers from one Group or discipline taken in another Group or discipline.
5. Except with the permission of the Senate, no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.
6. The total cross credits and exemptions granted to a candidate shall not exceed 10 papers for this Degree.
7. The Senate may, in exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the fore-going regulations. Such a course of study may include papers offered in other Faculties.
8. The subjects for this degree are grouped as follows:
 

Group A: The subjects listed in Group A of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

Group B, C, D, E as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations and as follows:

Group B: Introductory and Ancillary Topics.

Group C: Hebrew Bible; New Testament.

Group D: Systematic Theology; Church History.

Group E: Moral and Practical Theology
9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1990.

SCHEDULE

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year
Group B			
INTRODUCTORY AND ANCILLARY TOPICS			
375.120	Speech Communication A		2nd half
375.130	Literature and Theology A		1st half
375.131	Literature and Theology B		2nd half
375.140	Maori Language A		1st half
375.150	Cross Cultural Studies		2nd half
375.160	Introduction to Biblical Hebrew		
375.161	Introduction to Koine Greek		
375.162	Introduction to Syriac	*	
375.170	Greek Philosophy for Theologians		1st half
375.210	Maori Perspectives I		1st half
375.230	The Bible in Literature	*	2nd half
375.220	Speech Communication B	*	2nd half
375.240	Maori Language B		2nd half
375.270	"Modern" Philosophy and the Challenge to Theology		2nd half
375.271	Metaphysical Themes in Aquinas	*	
375.272	The Human Being in Aristotle and Aquinas		1st half
375.311	Exegesis of Maori Manuscript Texts		1st half
375.330	Maori Perspectives Research Essay		
375.340	Maori Language C		1st half
Group C			
HEBREW BIBLE			
Hebrew Bible I			
376.100	Introduction to the Hebrew Bible A		1st half
376.101	The Art of Interpreting the Hebrew Bible	*	
Hebrew Bible II			
376.200	Introduction to the Hebrew Bible B		2nd half
376.210	Studies in TaNaK (A)		1st half
376.211	Studies in TaNaK (B)	*	
376.212	Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes		
376.220	Early Post-Biblical	*	
376.225	Judaism Special Topic		1st half
Hebrew Bible III			
376.310	Studies in TaNaK (i)		2nd half
376.311	Studies in TaNaK (ii)		2nd half
376.312	Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes		
376.320	Hebrew Bible Theology	*	

Prerequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
	04.104	
	380.150	
	23.100, 101, 110	
	10.100, 101	
04.100 or 101 or 104 or 375.140	375.110, 380.250	
375.130, 376.100 or 377.100 375.120		
375.140 or 04.104 375.170 and 378.100 or 2 papers in Philosophy as in the BA Schedule	04.204, 205	
375.170, 378.100 or 2 papers in Philosophy as in the BA Schedule		
375.240 or 04.204 or 04.205, 375.210 or 380.250		
One Stage III paper in Maori Studies		
375.240		
	11.101, 376.101	
	11.101, 376.100	
376.100 or 376.101		
As for 376.200		
As for 376.200		
23.100 or 375.160 or equivalent		
Two of 376.100, 101; 377.100, 101	12.406	
As for 376.200		
376.210 or 376.211; and one other Stage II paper in Hebrew Bible or New Testament		
As for 376.310		
376.212		
As for 376.310		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year
376.325	Special Topic	*	
376.330	Hebrew Bible Research Essay		
<b>NEW TESTAMENT</b>			
<b>New Testament I</b>			
377.100	Introduction to the New Testament		2nd half
377.101	World of the New Testament	*	
<b>New Testament II</b>			
377.211	The Synoptic Gospels		1st half
377.212	The Johannine Writings I		1st half
377.213	The Pauline Letters (A)		1st half
377.214	The Pauline Letters (B)		2nd half
377.225	Special Topic	*	
377.226	Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts		
377.227	Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts	*	
<b>New Testament III</b>			
377.311	Studies in the Gospels	*	
377.312	Apocalyptic and the Apocalypse		2nd half
377.313	Studies in the Epistles	*	
377.314	The General Letters	*	
377.315	The Johannine Writings II		2nd half
377.316	The Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament	*	
377.317	The Parables of Jesus		2nd half
377.325	Special Topic	*	
377.326	Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts	*	
377.327	Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts	*	
377.330	New Testament Research Essay		

## Group D

### SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY

#### Systematic Theology I

378.100	Introduction to Theology		1st half
378.101	Contemporary Judaism	†	2nd half
378.102	A Maori Theology Perspective I		1st half

#### Systematic Theology II

378.200	God as Revealer and Creator		2nd half
378.201	Church, Ministry and Sacraments		2nd half
378.202	Christology		1st half
378.203	Sacramental Theology	*	
378.205	Special Topic		1st half
378.206	Theology and Science		2nd half
378.207	Special Topic		2nd half
378.208	A Maori Theology Perspective II		2nd half
378.210	Theology of Mission		1st half

**Prerequisites****Restrictions****Qualifications**

376.100, 377.100 and  
one other Stage II  
paper from within  
Group C  
One Stage III paper  
in Hebrew Bible

11.113

376.100 or 101:  
and 377.100  
As for 377.211  
As for 377.211  
As for 377.211

375.161 or  
equivalent  
375.162 or  
equivalent

One Stage II paper in  
New Testament, and  
one other Stage II  
New Testament or  
Hebrew Bible paper  
As for 377.311

As for 377.311  
As for 377.311  
377.212 and one  
another Stage II New  
Testament or Hebrew Bible  
Paper  
As for 377.311

As for 377.311  
As for 377.311  
377.226

377.227

One Stage III paper  
in New Testament

378.100 and  
379.100  
As for 378.200  
As for 378.200  
As for 378.200  
378.100, 379.100 or  
379.104  
As for 378.200

378.100  
378.102  
378.100

380.210 (1991 Calendar)

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year
<b>Systematic Theology III</b>			
378.300	God as Spirit and Trinity	*	
378.302	Issues in Contemporary Theology		
378.303	Religions of the World	*	
378.304	Special Topic		2nd half
378.305	Dietrich Bonhoeffer and the German Church Struggle	*	2nd half
378.330	Systematic Theology Research essay		
<b>CHURCH HISTORY</b>			
<b>Church History I</b>			
379.100	The Church in History to 500 CE		
379.101	Christianity in New Zealand		2nd half
379.102	Introduction to Anglicanism	*	
379.104	The Church in History to 1500 CE		1st half
<b>Church History II</b>			
379.200	Church in History: 500-1600		1st half
379.201	Reformation Church History	*	
379.203	Modern Church History		2nd half
379.204	The Baptist Churches	*	
379.205	Special Topic: History of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa - New Zealand and Australia		2nd half
379.300	Church and Society in the South Pacific		2nd half
379.301	Women in the Christian Tradition I	*	
379.302	Women in the Christian Tradition II	*	
379.303	Twentieth Century Ecumenism		1st half
379.304	The History of Christian Spirituality		1st half
<b>Church History III</b>			
379.325	Special Topic	*	
379.330	Church History Research		

Group E

<b>MORAL AND PRACTICAL THEOLOGY</b>			
<b>Moral and Practical Theology I</b>			
380.100	Introduction to Pastoral Care		
380.110	Christian Missions in History and Culture	*	
380.115	Spirituality and Justice I		1st half
380.120	Religious Education-Faith and Learning		
380.130	Liturgies		
380.135	Introduction to Anglicanism	*	
380.140	Christian Ethics I		1st half
380.150	Cross Cultural Studies		2nd half
<b>Moral and Practical Theology II</b>			
380.200	Pastoral Care II		2nd half
380.201	Human Development and Pastoral Care		2nd half

Prerequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
One Stage II paper in Theology; and one further Stage II paper in Theology or Church History As for 378.300		
Two Stage II papers in Theology or Church History, or one of each or approval of Head of Department. As for 378.300 As for 378.300		
One Stage III paper in Systematic Theology		
	380.135 379.100	
379.100, 378.100 As for 379.200 As for 379.200 As for 379.200	379.103	
One Stage I paper in Church History  Two of 379.200, 201,203 As for 379.300 As for 379.300 Two Stage II papers in Theology or Church History, or one of each As for 379.300		
One Stage III papers in Church History, or Equivalent		

379.100 or 101		
One of 376.100, 101, 377.100	379.102  375.150	
380.100 380.100 Pastoral Care		

Paper Number and Campus	Title of Paper	Availability	Part of Year
380.204	Clinical Pastoral Education		
380.211	Church and Society	*	
380.212	Mission in an Urban Context		2nd half
380.215	Spirituality and Justice II		2nd half
380.225	Homiletics		2nd half
380.226	Communication of Faith	*	
380.230	Christian Ritual		2nd half
390.233	The History of Christian Worship		2nd half
380.235	Liturgical Prayer: The Languages of Time, Space and Music	*	
380.240	Christian Ethics II	*	
380.241	Questions in Bioethics		1st half
380.242	Christian Theology of Marriage and the Family		2nd half
380.250	Maori Perspectives		1st half
<b>Moral and Practical Theology III</b>			
380.300	Advanced Pastoral Care		2nd half
380.303	Special Pastoral Project		

**Note:**

\* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BTheol

#### GROUP A

The subjects listed in Group A of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Bachelor of Arts and as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

#### GROUP B

##### Introductory and Ancillary Topics

###### Stage I

##### 375.120 Speech Communication A

A basic paper in oral communication theory and practice, including the production and management of the speaking voice and effective oral interpretation of poetry and prose.

##### 375.130 Literature and Theology A

An introduction to literature and its theological value. This paper will study images of God and Christ in literature, and selected themes such as the Fall, the absence of God, suffering, hope and prophecy. Papers 375.130 and 375.131 are complementary and it is of value if both are taken in the same year.

##### 375.131 Literature and Theology B

A study of a range of literature which explores human experience and belief, and includes the Christian's journey and Christian community. Childhood, old age and death, are discussed in the context of New Zealand writing. Papers 375.130 and 375.131 are complementary and it is of value if both are taken in the same year.

##### 375.140 Maori Language A

This is an introductory paper designed to help each student acquire confidence and competence in: reading liturgical and biblical material, conversation sessions (including the writing of the same), speech making, and waiata (sung poetry).

##### 375.150 Cross Cultural Studies

This paper draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilizes this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

##### 375.160 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew

The aim of the course is to evoke confidence and enjoyment and to

gain, by the use of the existential method of learning languages, the basic skills of listening to, speaking, writing and reading of biblical Hebrew.

##### 375.161 Introduction to Koine Greek

This paper introduces the students to the language of the Greek New Testament in preparation for translation and exegesis of the Greek text of the New Testament in subsequent years.

##### \*375.162 Introduction to Syriac: Language and Translation

No prior knowledge of Syriac is required. The text for translation will be specified each year.

##### 375.170 Greek Philosophy for Theologians

An examination of selected metaphysical themes from major Greek philosophers, which have influenced the development of Western Theology. Topics include the notions of being, nature, matter, form, potency, act, substance, teleology, good, time, space, God.

###### Stage II

##### 375.210 Maori Perspectives I

This paper examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today. It includes the spiritual and material concepts that underlie and support Maori history and culture, as well as Maori responses to various initiatives, including those of the Church.

##### \*375.220 Speech Communication B

A study of the practice and principles of public speaking, and effective speech communication in leading worship.

##### \*375.230 The Bible in Literature

A study of a range of literature which employs Biblical symbols, themes and concerns to inform life situations. The paper will consist of a series of seminars which reflect on the portrayal of God, liberation, freedom, journey, exile, land, evil, suffering, meals, celebration, Christ, in the context of contemporary literature.

##### 375.240 Maori Language B

This paper is aimed at increasing the student's competence in reading, conversation, writing, speech making and waiata.

##### 375.270 "Modern" Philosophy and the Challenge to Theology

An examination of the challenge which "modern" philosophy poses to theology. The course covers the beginnings of modernity, the preoccupation with foundations and method, the impact of science, "rationalist" and "empiricist" approaches to knowledge



**Prerequisites****Restrictions****Qualifications**

Approval of  
Board of Studies  
378.100, 380.110  
380.110, 378.100  
380.115  
378.100  
380.110  
One paper in  
Group D or Group E  
380.130  
380.130 or 380.230  
or equivalent  
380.140 or 378.100  
or equivalent  
380.140  
380.140

As for 375.210

375.110, 375.210

380.200  
380.300

of God, Enlightenment criticism of religion, Kant's critique of metaphysics and natural theology.

**\*375.271 Metaphysical Themes in Aquinas**

A study of fundamental metaphysical questions in the philosophy of Thomas Aquinas. Topics include the relation of philosophy to theology, the influence of medieval physics and cosmology, the use made of earlier philosophers, the notion of *esse*, the analogy of being, the transcendentals, the problem of evil.

**375.272 The Human Being in Aristotle and Aquinas**

A study of selected topics in philosophical anthropology from Aristotle and Aquinas. Topics are chosen for their theological relevance, and include the body/soul relation, perception, emotion, mind, freedom/will, immortality.

**Stage III**

**375.311 Exegesis of Maori Manuscript Texts**

A detailed exegesis of selected Maori manuscript texts from the collections of Grey, Shortland, Taylor and White.

**375.330 Maori Perspectives Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students in Maori. It is intended to cater for specific interests, or needs, not met within the current schedule of papers offered in Maori Studies.

**375.340 Maori Language C**

As for Maori Language B but at an advanced level.

## **GROUP C**

### **HEBREW BIBLE**

#### **Stage I**

**376.100 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible A**

The aim of the paper is to indicate to students, methods and areas of study which illuminate the background and nature of the Hebrew Bible.

**\*376.101 The Art of Interpreting the Hebrew Bible**

The paper will endeavour to give students a broad vision of the significance of the Hebrew Bible in the light of scholarship, with peculiar attention to what is of value for theological understanding today.

#### **Stage II**

**376.200 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible B**

The aim of this paper is to extend the candidate's knowledge of basic Hebrew Bible studies through the Hebrew Bible.

**376.210 Studies in TaNak (A)**

Torah, Prophets and Writings. An examination of the main sections of the Hebrew Bible and detailed study of selected texts. The Tetrateuch, Deuteronomistic History, Prophets and Writings will be dealt with in a cycle over two or more years.

**\*376.211 Studies in TaNak (B)**

This paper will provide an additional Stage II exegetical option and will be similar to 376.210 but based on a different text.

**376.212 Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes**

Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language.

**\*376.220 Early Post-Biblical Judaism**

An introduction to: the history of the period from 200 BCE to 135 CE which stretches from the Seleucid domination of the region to the aftermath of the Bar Kochbar revolt; the origin and development of streams of religious thought and practice within the Judaism of this period; the influence of Hellenism and the effects of Hellenisation.

**376.225 Special Topic**

1993: The Wisdom of Literature

A comprehensive study of the wisdom theology with its emphasis on human behaviour, with a primary focus on themes of creation, suffering, birth and death, retribution and immortality in the books of Proverbs, Job, Qoheleth and Wisdom. Exegesis of specific passages will be included.

#### **Stage III**

**376.310 Studies in TaNak (i)**

An advanced study of the main sections of the Hebrew Bible covering material not dealt with at Stage II.

**376.311 Studies in TaNak (ii)**

As for 376.310 but based on different text(s).

**376.312 Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes**

Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language. Texts specified annually.

**\*376.320 Hebrew Bible Theology**

The aim of this paper is to draw on exegetical and introductory studies in order to explore overall theological structures on the Hebrew Bible.

**\*376.325 Special Topic**

**376.330 Hebrew Bible Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Hebrew Bible. It is intended to cater for specific study

interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Hebrew Bible.

## New Testament

### Stage I

#### 377.100 Introduction to the New Testament

This paper will introduce students to a sensitive, critical reading of the literature that makes up the New Testament, based primarily on the approach of narrative criticism. Other, more traditional, critical approaches will, when appropriate, be introduced within this literary context.

#### \*377.101 World of the New Testament

A study of the historical, political, social, economic and religious worlds that lie behind the texts of the New Testament.

### Stage II

#### 377.211 The Synoptic Gospels

1993: The Gospel of Matthew

A study of a Synoptic Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind that text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to the other Gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.

#### 377.212 The Johannine Writings I

This paper provides an introduction to the literature of the Johannine Community and the Community behind this literature.

#### 377.213 The Pauline Letters (A)

General issues surrounding the production, use and interpretation of the Pauline corpus, together with the analysis and exegesis of one letter. The letter to be studied will be selected each year.

#### 377.214 The Pauline Letters (B)

As for 377.213 but based on a different letter.

#### \*377.225 Special Topic

For example, Miracle Stories, the Resurrection Narratives, the Kingdom of God.

#### 377.226 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts

Texts will be specified annually.

#### \*377.227 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts

Texts will be specified annually.

### Stage III

#### \*377.311 Studies in the Gospels

An advanced study of some aspect of the critical study of the Gospels, for example, the Parables, the Passion Narratives, the Sermon on the Mount.

#### 377.312 Apocalyptic and the Apocalypse

A general introduction to the development of apocalyptic and the genre of Apocalypse, its social context and interpretation.

#### \*377.313 Studies in the Epistles

An advanced study of some aspect of the critical study of the Epistles, for example, Pauline Theology, Pauline Eschatology.

#### \*377.314 The General Letters

An advanced study of the critical study of one or more of the General Letters. The text or theme will be chosen annually.

#### 377.315 The Johannine Writings II

Further Investigation of the Gospel of John is carried over into the Johannine Letters.

#### \*377.316 The Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament

A study of the Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament. The paper will look at both the content and the development of the traditions from the perspectives of critical New Testament study. It will also look at how these traditions are interpreted by a selected group of contemporary theologians.

#### 377.317 The Parables of Jesus

A study of the parables of Jesus as a literary form, the literary and social world of the parables and an investigation of the place of the parables within individual Gospels.

#### \*377.325 Special Topic

1993: The Passion Narratives

A study of the passion narratives of Mark (Mk. 14-15) and John (Jn. 18-19) as literary units within the narratives of these Gospels. A study of the theological and historical issues behind the arrest, trial and crucifixion of Jesus.

#### \*377.326 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts

The texts will be specified annually.

#### \*377.327 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts

The texts will be specified annually.

#### 377.330 New Testament Research Essay

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students

majoring in New Testament. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in New Testament.

## GROUP D

### Systematic Theology

#### Stage I

#### 378.100 Introduction to Theology

An exploration of the sources, methods and functions of systematic theology.

#### †378.101 Contemporary Judaism

An introduction to the contemporary expression of Judaism.

#### 378.102 A Maori Theology Perspective I

An introduction to Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values, such as 'tangata', 'tika', 'pono', 'aroha', 'tapu' and 'mana'.

#### Stage II

#### 378.200 God as Revealer and Creator

Contemporary approaches and interpretations of the doctrines of revelation and creation.

#### 378.201 Church, Ministry and Sacraments

A study of ecclesiology carried out in the framework of the doctrine of the Holy Spirit and eschatology.

#### 378.202 Christology

An introduction to the study of christology covering both historical and theological developments.

#### \*378.203 Sacramental Theology

A study of sacramentality in Christian thought and practice. The paper will focus particularly on such areas as initiation, eucharist, reconciliation, healing, marriage and ministry.

#### 378.205 Special Topic

1993: Knowledge of God

An examination of the relation of faith to reason. The paper will include such topics as (a) analogy and knowledge of God, (b) the nature of theological language, (c) the 'attributes' of God, (d) reason and the existence of God, (e) revelation, (f) scripture, (g) the development of doctrine.

#### 378.206 Theology and Science

A study of some of the inter-relationships between theology and science.

#### 378.207 Special Topic

#### 378.208 A Maori Theology Perspective II

A continuation of the study of Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values. This paper will highlight Maori revelation as a basis for Christian living.

#### 378.210 Theology of Mission

An examination of the theology of mission, including the following: biblical and historical foundations, formative thinkers of the 19th and 20th centuries, contemporary discussion regarding the nature of mission, approaches to living faiths and ideologies, Gospel and Culture. (This paper was formerly listed as 380.210.)

#### Stage III

#### \*378.300 God as Spirit and Trinity

(a) Holy Spirit: the doctrine of the Spirit in the Bible, historical developments of the doctrine, justification and sanctification, contemporary discussions of the Spirit in relation to the Church; (b) Trinity: the biblical foundations of the doctrine of the Trinity, historical developments of the doctrine, relation of the doctrine to the Christian understanding of God and the life of faith.

#### 378.302 Issues in Contemporary Theology

This will be a seminar paper in which students will be invited to study and then respond, through seminar presentation and written work, in a number of theological areas where transformation is taking place.

#### \*378.303 Religions of the World

A paper in which the thought of the major religions of the world will be studied, as well as the religious dimension of culture in New Zealand. The approach will be phenomenological.

#### 378.304 Special Topic

1993: The Theology of Mission in Relation to Western Culture in New Zealand

An examination of the theology of mission in relation to Western culture in New Zealand with particular reference to the Enlightenment roots of that culture; questions of secularism, pluralism, social class, and contextualisation will be explored.

### **\*378.305 Dietrich Bonhoeffer and the German Church Struggle**

This course is intended as a detailed study both of the theology of Dietrich Bonhoeffer and of the theological issues (involving revelation, culture, the place of Judaism in Christianity) emerging from the German Church Struggle during the Third Reich.

### **378.330 Systematic Theology Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Systematic Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Systematic Theology.

## **Church History**

### **Stage I**

#### **379.100 The Church in History to 500 CE**

A thematic study of the history of the Church to 500 CE.

#### **379.101 Christianity in New Zealand**

The first part of the paper looks at the 19th century in New Zealand: the interaction of the Gospel, missionaries and Maori; settler churches and involvement in the land wars, with one another and with New Zealand society. The second part looks at the Church in the 20th century.

#### **\*379.102 Introduction to Anglicanism**

This course discusses the nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to four core-themes of history, theology, spirituality and worship.

#### **379.104 The Church in History to 1500 CE**

A survey of Christian history up to the sixteenth century. The course will introduce students to historical method and to significant events, issues and people.

### **Stage II**

#### **379.200 Church in History: 500-1600**

An examination of the relationship between Church, State and Society in Medieval Europe based on selected themes.

#### **\*379.201 Reformation Church History**

This paper will cover: (a) early attempts at reform; the conciliar movement, Wyclif and Hus; (b) major focus on the reforming achievements of Luther or Calvin; (c) the radical reformers; (d) the Catholic Reformation; (e) Reformation in England and Scotland.

#### **379.203 Modern Church History**

A study of the history of the Church from the 17th century to the present day.

#### **\*379.204 The Baptist Church**

An introduction to the origins, growth and principals of the Baptist church.

#### **379.205 Special Topic**

1993: History of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa-New Zealand and Australia

This paper aims to study the internal development of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa-New Zealand and Australia. It may include: the early years of Catholicism in both countries; the development of Catholic education; the Irish contribution to Catholicism; the lay movement; the contribution of Religious Orders; relationship with other Christian Churches; Maoris and Catholicism; significant persons in Catholic History.

### **Stage III**

#### **379.300 Church and Society in the South Pacific**

A study of the history of missionary impact on the South Pacific.

#### **\*379.301 Women in the Christian Tradition I**

This course looks at various approaches and problems involved in the study of women in the Christian tradition.

#### **\*379.302 Women in the Christian Tradition II**

This paper addresses the history of women in the Church from the time of the Reformation until the present day.

#### **379.303 Twentieth Century Ecumenism**

A seminar studying the origins, development and theology of the ecumenical movement in the 20th century.

#### **379.304 The History of Christian Spirituality**

An examination of aspects of the history of Christian spirituality.

#### **\*379.325 Special Topic**

This paper would allow for the inclusion under this heading of papers offered by other Departments of the University, for example 24.422, 24.331, 12.400.

#### **379.330 Church History Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Church History. It is intended to cater for specific

study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Church History.

## **GROUP E**

### **Moral and Practical Theology**

#### **Stage I**

#### **380.100 Introduction to Pastoral Care**

Introduction to the principles and theology of pastoral care and counselling.

#### **\*380.110 Christian Missions in History and Culture**

An introduction to some of the major issues facing Christian educators.

#### **380.115 Spirituality and Justice I**

This paper will examine the Christian call to justice through a study of the scriptures and Church social teaching. It will explore foundational aspects of a spirituality of justice.

#### **380.130 Liturgies**

This paper will explore the theology and practice of contemporary Christian worship in various social and cultural contexts, especially in Aotearoa-New Zealand.

#### **380.120 Religious Education - Faith and Learning**

An introduction to some of the major issues facing Christian educators.

#### **\*380.135 Introduction to Anglicanism**

This course discusses the nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to four core-themes of history, theology, spirituality and worship.

#### **380.140 Christian Ethics I**

An introduction to the sources, methods, and praxis of Christian ethics.

#### **380.150 Cross Cultural Studies**

This paper draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilizes this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

### **Stage II**

#### **380.200 Pastoral Care II**

Major areas of pastoral care and counselling in the context of theory and theology.

#### **380.201 Human Development and Pastoral Care**

A consideration of the phases of human development and their relationship to pastoral care.

#### **380.204 Clinical Pastoral Education**

An intensive programme of 400 hours of supervised pastoral ministry, often undertaken in the context of a clinical setting, usually over a ten week period.

#### **\*380.211 Church and Society**

This paper will examine the social imperative of ministry, the biblical and theological roots of social ministry, the interface between church and society, the social and political implications of the Gospel, together with models of social ministry, including community development.

#### **380.212 Mission in an Urban Context**

A study of justice, politics and power as they relate to specific issues of urban ministry.

#### **380.215 Spirituality and Justice II**

This paper will study contemporary social issues from a Christian perspective with an emphasis on Aotearoa-New Zealand. It will explore emerging themes for developing a spirituality of justice.

#### **380.225 Homiletics**

The theory and practice of preaching.

#### **\*380.226 Communication of Faith**

A study of the theology and practice of evangelism.

#### **380.230 Christian Ritual**

This paper will explore symbols and rituals particularly in relation to the major Christian liturgies.

It will include aspects of inculturation with research on and participation in rituals.

#### **380.233 The History of Christian Worship**

A study of the development of Christian liturgy, primarily in the West, and the forces which have influenced it. The principal liturgical references will be Initiation, Eucharist and the Liturgical Year.

**\*380.235 Liturgical Prayer: The Languages of Time, Space and Music**

This paper explores Christian approaches to time, space and music as expressions of liturgical prayer in the tradition and in contemporary experience.

**\*380.240 Christian Ethics II**

A study of historical and contemporary Christian ethical thought and praxis and its relation to theology and philosophy. A special study will be made of the understanding of grace in Christian thought and its relation to ethical practice.

**380.241 Questions in Bioethics**

An examination and discussion of ethical questions arising from advances in biotechnology. Particular emphasis on principles involved in deciding such questions as genetic engineering, in vitro fertilization, euthanasia, abortion, the notion of consent.

**380.242 Christian Theology of Marriage and the Family**

A theological examination of the Christian significance of marriage and the family. Topics include the historical

development of theological reflection on marriage, marriage as a covenantal reality, breakdown of marriage, the place of children in marriage.

**380.250 Maori Perspectives**

This paper examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today.

**Stage III**

**380.300 Advanced Pastoral Care**

The paper is based on the action-reflection model and will focus upon the evaluation of theologically related distinctions of pastoral care and counselling.

**380.303 Special Pastoral Project**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Practical Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Pastoral Care.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

---

# Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Bachelor of Science Education	422
	Bachelor of Technology	423
	Conjoint Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce and Bachelor of Science	426
	Degree of Master of Philosophy	427
<hr/>		
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	Science Education	427
	Bachelor of Technology	427
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	Inter-Faculty Diplomas	427
	Diploma in Mathematics Education	428
	Diploma in Performing Arts	428
	Diploma in Science Education	429
<hr/>		
<b>Diploma Course Prescriptions</b>	Mathematics Education	430
	Science Education	430
<hr/>		

# DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE EDUCATION

### BScEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall follow a course of study of not less than four years.
2. (a) For the purpose of these Regulations, a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:  
 Stage I (xxx.100 to xxx.199)  
 Stage II (xxx.200 to xxx.299)  
 Stage III (xxx.300 to xxx.399) etc  
 (b) 'Credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ("the BScEd Schedule").
3. A complete course of study for this Degree requires the successful completion of Part I and Part II as detailed below.

#### PART I

4. In Part I a candidate's course of study for the degree shall comprise:
  - (a) Not fewer than 66 credits in papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science including
    - (i) At least 12 Stage II credits in either Chemistry or Physics *and*
    - (ii) At least 6 Stage I credits in each of the following subjects: Biology; Chemistry; Applied Mathematics *or* Pure Mathematics; Physics *and*
  - (b) Environmental Science 64.200 plus *either* Chemistry 08.200 (for those taking Physics under Regulation 4(a)(i)) *or* Physics 31.200 (for those taking Chemistry under Regulation 4(a)(i)).

#### PART II

5. After admission to Part II the candidate shall follow a course of study of at least two years which shall comprise:
  - (a) at least 12 Stage III credits from papers in the BSc Schedule (not being papers already credited under Regulation 4)
  - (b) the five papers specifically prescribed in the schedule for BScEd Part II
  - (c) the Diploma in Teaching of the Auckland Colleges of Education
  - (d) Credits obtained from the paper 14.327 (Aspects of Science Education) shall not satisfy the requirement of Regulation 5(a) above.
6. Admission to Part II of the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall be at the discretion of Senate after completion of Part I and on the recommendation of the Board of Studies.
7. The Board of Studies for Part II of the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall comprise: Dean of the Faculty of Science, or nominee; an elected member of the Faculty of Science; Dean of Science and Engineering of the Auckland Institute of Technology, or nominee; Head of the Department of Education, or nominee.
8. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply
  - (i) (before enrolment) with all prerequisite requirements and
  - (ii) with all the corequisite requirements, as set out in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule. However, the Head of Department in the case of the BSc Schedule or the Board of Studies in the case of the BScEd Schedule, may in exceptional circumstances:
    - (a) waive any of those requirements;
    - (b) waive any prerequisite requirement and impose it as a corequisite.
9. A candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers in the BScSchedule may not enrol for any papers above Stage I without the prior permission of the Senate.

#### Practical Work Requirements

10. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;
  - (a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;
  - (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

#### Course Load Restrictions

11. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

#### Credit for Papers in Other Faculties

12. (a) A candidate for Part I of this Degree may obtain up to 12 credits from any other papers or subjects which:
  - (i) are taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and are prescribed for a Bachelor's degree in any of those other Faculties; and
  - (ii) are not the same as, or do not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit to the BScEd degree.

Architecture Property	per credit	1 credit
and Planning	per paper	5 credits
Arts	per paper	5 credits
Commerce	per paper	5 credits
Engineering	paper 50.002	3 credits
	per any other half-year paper (but not 31.114)	4 credits
	per full-year paper	6 credits
Fine Arts	per paper	5 credits
Law	per 23 hours of lectures in any subject	2 credits
Medicine &		
Human Biology	per paper	6 credits
Music	per paper	5 credits

**Cross-Credits from Other Degree Courses**

Note: See Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

13. Credits obtained under Regulation 12 from papers which are credited also to the course of study for another degree, shall be counted as cross-credits for the purpose of Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
14. For the purposes of these Regulations the word 'papers' in Regulation 15 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:
  - (a) papers listed in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule
  - (b) papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule as determined by the Senate;
  - (c) papers that can be credited towards the BScEd Degree under Regulation 12

**Credit for Other Qualifications**

15. A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate of Science or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.

Note: A candidate who has successfully completed a course at an Auckland Teachers' College may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**Transitional Provisions**

16. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for the BSc Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent papers as may be determined by the Senate.

**Exceptions**

17. (a) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- (b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

**Validity**

18. (a) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

**Schedule**

1. This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions applying to courses of study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education.
2. The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the Calendar.
3. The heading 'prerequisite' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

**SCHEDULE****PART I**

As in the BSc Schedule pages 199-211.

**PART II**

Paper No	Title of Paper	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
† 14.270	Issues in STSE Education	4	BScEd PART I	Diploma in Teaching (ACE)	
14.327	Aspects of Science Education	4	As for 14.270	As for 14.270	
* 621.220	Science Technology & Industry	4	As for 14.270	As for 14.270	
* 621.300	Current Advances in Science	4	As for 14.270	As for 14.270	
634.260	Teaching and Learning in Science & Technology	4	As for 14.270	As for 14.270	

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Dagged papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY BTech**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Technology shall be required to:
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than four years;
  - (ii) pass separately each paper in each part of one of the course options as specified in the Schedule to these Regulations;
2. Subject to Regulations 7 and 8, a candidate for this Degree, who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any paper the same as or similar to that prescribed in the Schedule to these Regulations, shall substitute for each paper so credited such additional paper or papers as the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate may approve.
3. The course for each option shall consist of four parts as defined in the Schedule to these Regulations. Admission to Part Three of the course of study, after completion of Parts One and Two, shall be at the discretion of the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate.

**Examinations**

4. A candidate who has failed to pass any paper of one part may, in a subsequent year, be permitted to re-enrol in the failed paper or papers together with such papers of the succeeding part as may be approved by the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate provided that the prerequisites and corequisites for individual papers are satisfied except as the Head of the Department may otherwise permit.

**Honours**

5. (a) The Degree of Bachelor of Technology may be awarded with or without Honours. Honours may be awarded to a candidate who has maintained a superior standard of work throughout the course and has completed the requirements for the award of the Degree
- (i) within four years of first enrolment in the Degree
- OR
- (ii) if granted exemptions or credits under Regulations 7 or 8 within the period determined by the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate at the time of entry to this Degree;
- OR
- (iii) in exceptional circumstances as approved by the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate within five years of first enrolment in the Degree.
- (b) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

**Direct Entry to Stage II Papers included in Part Two of the Degree**

6. The Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate may permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. A candidate who passes Stage II papers shall be credited with Stage II papers but shall not be credited with Stage I papers as papers for any University degree or diploma. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.

**Exemptions**

7. On the recommendation of the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate, a candidate who has been admitted to, or qualified for admission to the degree of Bachelor of Science or other degrees of this University may be exempted from Parts One and Two of this degree or from such papers as may be determined. In such a case, the candidate shall be required to pursue a course of study of not less than two years in such papers for this Degree as the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate shall require.
8. A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate of Science or the New Zealand Certificate of Engineering or any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard may be credited with such papers as the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate may determine.

**Practical and Laboratory Work Requirements**

9. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Chairperson of the Board of Studies a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculties as to Practical Work.
10. In any paper that includes laboratory work as well as written work:
- (a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;
- (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in laboratory work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the laboratory work carried forward to a subsequent year.

**Elective Papers**

11. (a) Elective papers where specified in the Schedule shall be chosen from papers offered in Faculties other than the Faculty of Science, of an appropriate weighting and academic level as approved by the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate.
- (b) The candidate's choice of elective papers shall be approved by the Board of Studies on behalf of the Senate.

**Personal Course of Study**

12. The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing regulations.

**Commencement**

13. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

**Schedule for BTech (Information Technology Option)**

Part One Paper No	Title of Paper	Restrictions
T07.115	Computers and Programming	07.105
T74.110	Computers and Information Systems	74.100, 07.100, 07.111
T26.107	Algebra and Calculus	All other Stage I Pure Mathematics papers except 26.101 and 26.102
T26.187	Probability and Statistics	26.180, 26.181, 26.182, 26.188, 13.102
T31.132	Physics of Technology	31.140, 31.141, 31.150, 31.151
T01.104	Introduction to Accounting and Finance	01.100, 01.101, 01.102, 01.103

**One elective paper**

Note: 1. For 1993, Part One only of the BTech(information Technology) will be offered and enrolments will be restricted to the Tamaki Campus. Parts Two, Three, and Four will be introduced in the following years.

2. The course content for the advanced years may be modified to reflect the papers taught at Tamaki.

* Part Two Paper No	Title of Paper	Restrictions
* T07.211	Computer Systems	07.210
* T07.231	Introduction to Software Engineering	07.230
* T07.232	Software Reliability and Design	07.220, 07.221
* T74.222	Data Base Management Systems	07.320, 74.322



<b>Part Two Contd</b>		
<b>Paper No</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>
* T26.220	Linear Algebra	26.221, 222
* T31.240	Electronic Physics	31.245

A further elective paper

<b>* Part Three</b>		
<b>Paper No</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>
* T26.240	Calculus	26.241
* T07.340	Operating Systems	
* T74.324	Data Communications	
* T31.297	Digital Logic Laboratory	
* T07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b): Data Communications Technology	
* T26.293	Introduction to Operations Research	74.200 (before 1992)

One paper in Stage III or IV Computer Science, Operations Research, Electrical & Electronic Engineering, or Information Science.

A further elective paper

<b>* Part Four</b>		
<b>Paper No</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>
* T07.315	Computer Graphics	07.302 (before 1989)
* T07.406	Advanced Topic in Computer Science (f): Object-oriented Programming	
* T07.407	Advanced Topic in Computer Science (g): Multi-media Systems	
* Txx.3yy	Telecommunications Systems	
* T55.231	Industrial Administration	
* T07.442	Data Communications and Networks (a)	
* T701.352	Project in Information Technology (three paper value)	

Note: The BTech is being introduced for the first time in 1993. Parts Two, Three and Four will be available in subsequent years. The majority of these papers, however, are available in 1993 for the BSc Degree.

### Schedule for BTech (Optoelectronics Option)

<b>Part One</b>		
<b>Paper No</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>
31.140	Foundations of Classical Physics	31.102, 141, 144, T31.122, 132
31.150	Foundations of Modern Physics	31.100, 151, T31.122, 132
31.114	Measurement and Instrumentation	31.104
26.120	Principles of Algebra	26.108, 121, 122, 221
26.140	Principles of Calculus	26.108, 141, 142, 241
08.121	Inorganic and Physical Chemistry	
07.100	Principles of Computing (a)	07.101, 07.111, 50.002, 72.100

Note: Other papers of equivalent value in Computer Science or Chemistry may be substituted for 07.100 and 08.121 respectively with the permission of the respective Heads of Departments.

<b>* Part Two</b>		
<b>Paper No</b>	<b>Title of Paper</b>	<b>Restrictions</b>
* 31.225	Classical and Mathematical Physics	
* 31.245	Electronic and Applied Physics	31.220, 31.240
* 31.255	Quantum and Statistical Physics	
* 31.297	Digital Logic Laboratory	
* 26.240	Calculus	26.241
* 26.260	Differential Equations	

A further elective paper

* Part Three Paper No	Title of Paper	Restrictions
* 31.325	Advanced Classical Physics	
* 31.326	Laser Physics and Optoelectronics	
* 31.345	Analogue and Digital Electronics	
* 31.390	Experimental Physics A	
* 53.222	Networks and Signals	
* 26.340	Multivariable Calculus	26.331
* 26.360	Applied Analysis	
A further elective paper		

* Part Four Paper No	Title of Paper	Restrictions
* 31.426	Optoelectronics and Laser Physics	
* 31.391	Experimental Physics B	
* 31.427	Optoelectronics and Optical Communications Systems	
* 51.222	Electrical Engineering Materials	
* 53.352	Communication Systems	
* 72.101	Organisation and Management	72.203
* 701.351	Project in Optoelectronics (three paper value)	

Note: (i) The BTech is being introduced for the first time in 1993. Parts Two, Three and Four will be available in subsequent years. The majority of these papers, however, are available in 1993 for the BSc Degree.

(ii) \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

## CONJOINT DEGREES

### BCom/BSc

Note: These regulations facilitate the study of the Degrees BCom and BSc in combination; there is no conjoint degree in its own right, but students completing a conjoint programme graduate with the two degrees in which they enrol.

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

- With the permission of Senate a candidate whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may be admitted to a course of study leading to the Degrees of BCom and BSc. Each of the degrees included in the conjoint course will be referred to as a "component" of the conjoint course.
- Each paper taken for the conjoint course shall be credited to one or other of the two components. Except as otherwise provided by these Regulations, each component shall be governed by its appropriate course regulations.
- A candidate taking the conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the course.
  - A candidate taking the conjoint course is normally expected to advance studies in both components of the course in each year of enrolment.
  - A candidate who has already completed the requirements for one of the component degrees will not be permitted to enrol in the conjoint programme.
- A candidate completing a course of study which satisfies both components, as defined in the respective degree Regulations, shall be deemed to have completed both components.
- Papers may not be cross-credited into, from, or between components of the conjoint course.
- A paper may not be included in one component if it is substantially similar to, or is restricted against, a paper included in the other component.
- The Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it sees fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
  - Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

#### Honours Degrees

- In exceptional cases a student enrolled for a conjoint course may be admitted to an Honours programme associated with one of the components. Enrolment in an Honours programme constitutes enrolment in a component for the purposes of Regulation 3(b).

### BA/BCom, BCom/LLB and BCom/LLB(Hons)

Further conjoint programmes are offered in the above combinations. Refer to the Regulations for the Bachelors of Arts, Commerce, Law and Law (Honours) for details.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PHILOSOPHY MPhil

**Note:** A student who has qualified for a Bachelor's Degree in one Faculty but who wishes to take a Master's course which is only available in another Faculty may be permitted by Senate to do so for the Degree of Master of Philosophy. Permission will normally be given where the Senate is satisfied that the student holds qualifications at least equivalent to the prerequisites for the Master's course concerned. In some cases, instead of MPhil, the Master's Degree of the Faculty will be approved as the course for a student particularly appropriately qualified (e.g. a student qualified in Engineering but with a Bachelor's Degree in another Faculty may be permitted to take a Master's course in Engineering for ME instead of MPhil).

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate before enrolment for this Degree shall have been:
  - (a) admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree of this or any other University; and
  - (b) have been approved by the Senate as qualified to pursue a course of study for a Master's Degree in a particular Faculty, but the content of whose first degree is, in the opinion of the Senate, not sufficiently similar to the normal Bachelor's Degree in that Faculty.

### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy shall comply with the Course Regulations for a Master's Degree prescribed in the Faculty in which the course of study is being pursued.
3. The Degree shall be awarded by the Senate after receipt of a certificate from the Head of the Department in which the course for the degree has been taken, stating that the candidate has completed the prescribed requirements.

### Honours

4. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
  - (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he or she shall still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of subclause (c) of this Regulation.
  - (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he or she completes the requirements for Honours within three years of first enrolment for this Degree: provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### SCIENCE EDUCATION

#### \*14.270 Issues in STSE Education

This paper examines the complex interactions between science, technology, society and the environment, provides a critical awareness of some of the major issues confronting human society, and considers ways in which an ecologically-oriented science and technology education can be implemented in primary and secondary schools. Major topics, for which students will be expected to develop a bank of resource materials for school use, may include: health; land, water and mineral resources; food and agriculture; energy resources and consumption; industry and technology; biotechnology; information technology; ethics and social responsibility in science and technology.

#### 14.327 Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

**Note:** Credits obtained from this paper do not count as Stage III Science credits in terms of the BSc Regulation 3(c).

#### \*621.220 Science, Technology and Industry

This paper provides an introduction to the use of science and technology in commerce and industry. It involves (i) a study of some of the processes that underpin industrial operations in New Zealand and overseas, and (ii) experience of a range of laboratory skills, instrumentation techniques and computer applications through a laboratory-based component focusing of 'real life' problems and simulated industrial processes. Industrial visits and a short period of work experience may be included.

#### \*621.300 Current Advances in Science

This paper provides some understanding and awareness of current

priorities and interests in scientific research. In addition to specific topics such as gene technology, the course includes several interdisciplinary modules, such as fractal and chaotic processes, global change, hazards, and modern instrumental techniques. The precise content of the paper will vary from year to year in order to reflect current research developments.

#### 634.260 Teaching and Learning in Science and Technology

This paper involves a study of some of the key concepts and theories in science, and the teaching and learning issues they raise at primary, secondary and tertiary level. Of particular concern is the relationship between the content and context of learning and the teaching/learning methods employed. The paper provides opportunities for field-based investigations and individual research projects in science and technology education.

## BACHELOR OF TECHNOLOGY

These courses are composed of a defined selection of papers drawn from the parent Faculties of Science, Engineering and Commerce. The individual programmes are specified in the Schedule, and details of the content of individual papers may be found in the prescriptions for the degrees of BSc, BE, and BCom in the appropriate sections of this calendar. Each course has a designated course coordinator, whom students are encouraged to contact for any further details.

\* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggared papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS

### Diplomas

The majority of the Regulations for Diplomas are found under individual Faculty headings. In a number of cases, however, the prerequisites may be obtained in another Faculty, and the Diplomas are inter-Faculty qualifications. An example is the Diploma in

Labour Studies. Interested students should check the index to the Calendar under Course Prescriptions for Diplomas. Diplomas in Mathematics Education, Performing Arts and Science Education are included here.

## DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION DipMathsEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Mathematics Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or hold an equivalent professional qualification in teaching, or have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession;
  - (b) be currently teaching or have had three years of teaching experience;
  - (c) have attained a level of competence, to the satisfaction of the Dean of Science, sufficient to enable him or her to perform satisfactorily in each paper chosen for this Diploma.

**Note:** An interview will normally be required under 1 (c).

2. A candidate shall be required to pursue a course of study consisting of two parts. Each part must be passed separately before a candidate qualifies for admission to this Diploma.

**Part I:** Five papers selected with the approval of the Dean of Science from the following groups (a), (b) and (c). At least one paper must be chosen from each group:

- (a) Papers taught by the Auckland College of Education.

†625.501 Mathematics in early childhood (ages 0 to 5)

625.502 Mathematics in the first three years of school (ages 5 to 8)

†625.503 Mathematics in Standard 2 to Form 1 (ages 8 to 11)

625.504 Mathematics in Form 1 to Form 4 (ages 11 to 14)

625.505 Mathematics in Form 4 to Form 6 (ages 14 to 16)

†625.506 Mathematics in Form 7 and Tertiary Education

625.507 Investigative methods of teaching

†625.508 Bilingual Mathematics

- (b) Mathematical content papers.

Any papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics & Statistics, listed in the BSc Schedule, or the Schedule for MSc in Mathematics. The weighting for each such paper is:

Six credits at Stage I are equivalent to one paper.

Four credits at any other Stage are equivalent to one paper.

In addition, the following papers are available for the Diploma:

26.512 Independent learning course in Mathematics

†26.522 School pupil projects in Mathematics

†26.532 Mathematics for problem solving in Primary School Mathematics

26.533 Mathematics for problem solving in Secondary School Mathematics

- (c) Education theory papers.

Any paper, approved by the Head of the Department of Education, listed in the BA Schedule. In addition, the following half-papers are available:

14.510 History of Mathematics (half paper)

14.511 Philosophy of Mathematics (half paper)

14.514 Cultural Context of Mathematics Education (half paper)

†14.515 Assessment and evaluation in Mathematics (half paper)

†14.516 Mathematics in the curriculum (half paper)

14.517 Children's development of Mathematical concepts (half paper)

**Part II:** 14.520 Investigation in Mathematics Education (two papers).

- (i) The investigation shall relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Mathematics Education from a topic developed from papers taken in Part I.

(ii) The topic must be approved by the Dean of Science through the Head of the Department of Education.

(iii) Must be supervised by a course lecturer approved by the Head of the Department of Education.

**Note:** Where necessary, candidates may be directed to undertake appropriate preparation in research methodology.

3. A candidate must pass at least four papers from Part I before commencing Part II. Part I may be undertaken either full-time in one year, or part-time for such period as the Dean of Science may permit. The project will normally be submitted within one year of its commencement, although in exceptional circumstances, projects lasting over more than one year may be approved.
4. The candidate may not take a paper if the material has been covered in obtaining a previous qualification.
5. Notwithstanding the provision of Enrolment and Course (General) Regulation 10, a candidate shall be permitted to cross-credit to this diploma no more than the equivalent of one Part I paper.
6. A candidate who has been enrolled for the Diploma of Mathematical Education under the Regulations holding in 1988 may complete that Diploma, up to 31 January 1992, under those Regulations or with such substitutions as the Dean of Science may permit.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

## †DIPLOMA IN PERFORMING ARTS DipPerformArts

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma in Performing Arts shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or
  - (b) have been admitted or qualified for admission to some other University degree approved for this purpose by the Senate, or
  - (c) hold or have qualified for an award or qualification in an appropriate area of the performing arts approved for this purpose by the Senate and, in any case, had in the opinion of the Senate sufficient experience in the appropriate area.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study (†\$76,500) for a period of one year, but in exceptional circumstances this period may be extended by the Senate.
3. The programme shall consist of such written and practical work as may be prescribed in the candidate's area of performance, in the history and practice of performing arts and in disciplines associated with performance.
4. A candidate shall throughout his or her enrolment for this Diploma carry out such practical work, participate in such approved performance work and satisfactorily complete such written assignments and examinations as the Senate, on the recommendation of the lecturer in charge of the programme, shall require.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

---

## **DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE EDUCATION DipSciEd**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Science Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, and be currently teaching or have had three years' teaching experience, or
  - (b) hold a professional qualification in teaching, approved by the Senate, or
  - (c) have attained to the satisfaction of the Senate a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession; and, in any case, have attained a level of competence, to the satisfaction of the Senate, sufficient to enable him or her to complete the requirements for this Diploma.

Note: An interview will normally be required under 1 (c).

2. A candidate shall be required to pursue a coherent course of study consisting of two parts. Each part as a whole must be passed separately before a candidate qualifies for admission to this Diploma.

**Part I:** Five papers selected with the approval of the Board of Studies from the following (at least one paper must be selected from each group):

- (a) Papers taught by the Auckland College of Education.
  - 634.260 Teaching and Learning in Science and Technology
  - 634.501 Modern Trends in Science Teaching
  - 634.502 Teaching Science using the Environment
  - 634.503 New Strategies in Teaching Science
  - 634.504 Teaching Strategies in Biotechnology Forms 1-5
- (b) Papers taught by the Science Faculty of the University of Auckland.
  - 08.111 Organic and Physical Chemistry
  - 08.121 Inorganic and Physical Chemistry
  - 21.111 Introduction to General and Environmental Geology
  - 31.101 The Physical Universe
  - 31.102 The World of Physics
  - 39.101 Central Concepts of Biology
  - 39.103 New Zealand Biology
 Other papers of equivalent weighting chosen from the BSc schedule with the approval of the Board of Studies and the relevant Head(s) of Department(s).
- (c) Papers taught by the Education Department of the University of Auckland.
  - 14.327 Aspects of Science Education
  - 14.458 History, Philosophy and Science Teaching
  - 14.551 Assessment and Evaluation in Science Education

**Part II:** 14.575 Investigation in Science Education (two papers)

- (i) The investigation shall relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Science Education.
- (ii) The topic must be approved by the Board of Studies.
- (iii) The investigation must be supervised by a member of the academic staff of the University or the Auckland College of Education approved by the Board of Studies.
- (iv) The written project resulting from the investigation will be submitted within one year of its commencement provided that, in exceptional circumstance, this period may be extended by the Dean of Science on the recommendation of the Board of Studies.
3. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper the same as or substantially similar to a paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
4. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1992.

## DIPLOMA COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION

This Diploma is administered by a committee, consisting of the Dean of Science, the Heads of the Departments of Education and Mathematics & Statistics (or their nominees), and two representatives from the Auckland College of Education. In the first instance, candidates should apply to the Head of the Department of Education.

A DipMathsEd is appropriate for teachers from Early Childhood to Tertiary. It is flexible enough to allow candidates to concentrate on Education or Mathematics. Each candidate's course must be approved by the administering committee, which will take into account the candidate's background.

Papers for Part I are divided into three schedules, and candidates will normally take one to three papers from each schedule.

Candidates may study for one year full-time to complete these papers, but, if studying part-time, will typically take two or three papers per year and embark on the project in their third or fourth year. The investigation will typically be completed in the year after completion of the Part I papers, during the candidate's normal employment.

(a) Papers Taught by the Auckland College of Education

The prerequisite for any paper in this schedule is that the candidate can demonstrate mastery of the mathematical content at the relevant level.

†625.501 **Mathematics in Early Childhood (Ages 0 to 5)**  
625.502 **Mathematics in the First Three Years of School (Ages 5 to 8)**

†625.503 **Mathematics in Standard 2 to Form 1 (Ages 8 to 11)**

625.504 **Mathematics in Form 1 to Form 4 (Ages 11 to 14)**

625.505 **Mathematics in Form 4 to Form 6 (Ages 14 to 16)**

†625.506 **Mathematics in Form 7 and Tertiary Education**

625.507 **Investigative Methods of Teaching**

†625.508 **Bilingual Mathematics**

These are classroom-oriented papers. All papers incorporate examination of the syllabus, including the rationale and relevance of the content, critical inspection of teaching materials, issues in Mathematics Education such as equity, diagnostic and interactive teaching, use of technology in Mathematics Education, testing and evaluation in the classroom, children with special needs, emphasis on practical classroom tasks and reflective behaviour.

(b) Mathematical Content Papers

The papers chosen from the BSc Schedule will normally be in the subjects Pure Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Computer Science.

26.512 **Independent Learning Course in Mathematics**

Students who need to increase their mathematical skills will be required to take this paper.

†26.522 **School Pupil Projects in Mathematics**

This course concentrates on the seventh form Project in mathematics.

†26.532 **Mathematics for Problem Solving in Primary School Mathematics**

This course is intended to give Primary School teachers a firm understanding of the mathematical concepts introduced at this level.

26.533 **Mathematics for Problem Solving in Secondary School Mathematics**

This course is intended to give Secondary School teachers a firm understanding of the mathematical concepts introduced at this level.

(c) Education Theory Papers

The papers chosen from the BA Schedule will normally be in the Department of Education.

14.510 **History of Mathematics (half paper)**

Studies of topics in the historical development of mathematics, which facilitate understanding of modern mathematics.

14.511 **Philosophy of Mathematics (half paper)**

An introduction to philosophical problems surrounding pure

mathematics, its application and foundations.

14.514 **Cultural Context of Mathematics Education (half paper)**

This paper deals with the social context in which mathematical skills are both learned and used, primarily outside school.

†14.515 **Assessment and Evaluation in Mathematics (half paper)**

A consideration of (1) the purposes and methods of assessment in school mathematics and (2) the principles and procedures of mathematics curriculum evaluation.

†14.516 **Mathematics in the Curriculum (half paper)**

Introduction to the principles underpinning the design of mathematics curricula together with a consideration of the role of mathematics within the primary and secondary school curriculum.

14.517 **Children's Development of Mathematical Concepts (half paper)**

Research relating to the mathematical concepts of average, advanced and slow learning children will be examined with a view to its implications for teachers.

### DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE EDUCATION

This diploma is administered by a Board of Studies, consisting of the Dean of Science, the Professor of Science Education (or their nominees), two representatives of the Faculty of Science, and two representatives of the Auckland College of Education. A DipSciEd is appropriate for teachers from Early Childhood onwards.

Each candidate's course must be approved by the Board of Studies which will take into account the candidate's background. Papers for Part I are divided into three schedules, and candidates will take one to three papers from each schedule.

Candidates may study for one year full-time to complete these papers, but, if studying part-time, will typically take two or three papers per year and embark on the project in their third year. The investigation will be completed in the year after completion of all or most of the Part I papers.

(a) Papers Taught by the Auckland College of Education

634.260 **Teaching and Learning in Science and Technology**  
As prescribed for the BScEd.

634.501 **Modern Trends in Science Teaching**

This course has been designed to meet the needs of teachers seeking further ideas for developing stimulating science programmes in tune with our everyday environment. It is an opportunity for teachers to update their attitudes to science teaching and to build up their confidence to teach it in a practical way.

634.502 **Teaching Science Using the Environment**

The course content lays emphasis on planning and safety aspects of field trips, particularly for bush and stream studies. Some simple astronomy and a general study of the geology of Auckland is included.

634.503 **New Strategies in Teaching Science**

In this course participants will look at a range of modern science teaching strategies. They will undertake individual investigations within their own schools. This will result in the production of a report by each course member.

634.504 **Teaching Strategies in Biotechnology, Forms 1-5**

This course, based on problem solving and practical investigations, examines science teaching strategies for the current Form 1-5 syllabus. The emphasis is on using a wide range of biotechnology techniques as a link into technology education. The relationships between science, technology and industry are explored with particular reference to the classroom programmes.

(b) Papers taught by the Science Faculty of the University of Auckland

39.103 **New Zealand Biology**

31.101 **The Physical Universe**

31.102 **The World of Physics**

39.101 **Central Concepts of Biology**

08.111 **Organic and Physical Chemistry**

08.121 **Inorganic and Physical Chemistry**

**21.111 Introduction to General and Environmental Geology**

As prescribed for the BSc Degree.

**(c) Papers taught by the Education Department of the University of Auckland****14.327 Aspects of Science Education**

As prescribed for the BSc Degree.

**14.458 History, Philosophy and Science Teaching**

As prescribed for the MEd Degree.

**14.551 Assessment and Evaluation in Science Education**

This course provides an introduction to the principles and

procedures of science curriculum evaluation and a critical analysis of the purposes, strategies and methods of assessment in school science.

**14.575 Investigation in Science Education**

An original study (empirical or theoretical) that relates directly to some issue or issues in science education at primary, secondary or tertiary level.

**Note:** \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

---

# Inter-Faculty Studies

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>Inter-Faculty Studies</b>	Operations Research	433
<b>Certificate Course Regulations</b>	Certificate of Proficiency	433
	Joint Certificate	434
	Transitional Certificate	434
<b>Intermediate Courses for other Universities</b>	Intermediate Courses for Degrees and Diplomas for other New Zealand Universities	435



# INTER-FACULTY STUDIES

## Operations Research

Operations Research (also known as Management Science) can be defined briefly as the application of scientific methods to management decision problems in business, industry, and government. It is widely used in areas such as optimal scheduling, inventory control, simulation studies, decision analysis and many similar applications, both on a short-term basis and to assist in long-range planning. Training for Operations Research is frequently inter-disciplinary and in the University there are several paths along which Operations Research may be approached. These include a conjoint BCom/BSc in Operations Research and Applied Mathematics, a BCom in Operations Research, a BSc in Applied Mathematics, or a BE in Engineering Science, as well as study at graduate level. The particular programmes are described here, and further reference should be made to relevant prescriptions in the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and Science.

1. In the Faculty of Science, the Department of Mathematics and Statistics offers courses which contain topics dealing with the theory and methodology of basic stochastic and deterministic techniques in Operations Research. In particular the following papers are offered for the BSc and BSc(Hons) Degrees:

- 26.293 Introduction to Operations Research
- 26.380 Applied Probability
- 26.382 Design of Surveys and Experiments
- 26.385 Advanced Data Analysis
- 26.391 Optimization in Operations Research
- 26.395 Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research

together with related papers in Mathematics and Statistics, Computer Science, Engineering, Economics, Management Science and Information System and Marketing and International Business.

At the graduate level students may choose courses in Operations Research towards an MSc or MPhil or towards the DipComSci or DipStats. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

2. In the Faculty of Commerce students wishing to specialise in Operations Research for the BCom or BCom(Hons) Degrees should consider the following papers offered by the Department of Management Science and Information Systems:

- 26.293 Introduction to Operations Research
- 26.391 Optimization in Operations Research
- 26.395 Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research
- 74.300 Advanced Operations Management
- 74.301 Project in Operations Management

together with related papers in Accounting, Computer Science, Economics, Engineering, Management Science and Information Systems, Marketing and International Business, and Mathematics.

At the graduate level, students may choose courses in Operations Research towards the Degrees of MCom, MPhil or DipCom which may include a thesis or a research essay in this area. Research in Operations Research may also be undertaken for the Degree of PhD. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Management Science and Information Systems.

3. In the Faculty of Engineering, students may specialise in Operations Research within the professional Degree of BE by taking the Engineering Science option, which includes:

- 54.251 Operations Research I
- 54.351 Operations Research II
- 54.291 Engineering Science Design
- 54.304 Project in Engineering Science
- 54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research
- 54.371 Deterministic Methods in Operations Research

Appropriate papers in such areas as computation, statistics, industrial administration and transportation are also available. The project topic can be chosen from a wide area of application of mathematical modelling in industry and corporate administration.

At the graduate level, students may specialise in Operations Research for the Degrees of ME, MPhil and PhD by choosing from:

- 54.422 Nonlinear Optimization
- 54.423 Advanced Linear Optimization
- 54.451 Studies in Operations Research A
- 54.452 Studies in Operations Research B
- 54.455 Advanced Systems Analysis A
- 54.456 Advanced Systems Analysis B

and related papers in Engineering, Science and Commerce. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

Further information and suggested academic programmes are described in the booklet '*Operations Research and Management Science at the University of Auckland*' prepared by the Committee on Operations Research. The booklet is available from the three departments who contribute to the programme.

## CERTIFICATE COURSE REGULATIONS

### CERTIFICATE OF PROFICIENCY COP

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. In these Regulations a "pass" means a pass in any paper or subject or in any examinable part of a subject. "Certificate of Proficiency" means a certificate issued by the University as to a pass otherwise than for a degree or diploma.
2. With the permission of the Senate a matriculated student may be enrolled under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency.

3. To obtain a Certificate of Proficiency a student who is enrolled under Regulation 2 must comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations and pass the appropriate examinations.
4. Where a candidate has sat a paper for Certificate of Proficiency that paper may not be credited towards or repeated for a Master's Honours Degree.
5. Except as provided by Regulation 4 of these Regulations a candidate who has obtained a pass for Certificate of Proficiency may at any time have that pass credited to a degree or diploma; on condition that any prerequisite and corequisite conditions or other requirements prescribed for that degree or diploma have been complied with; but in exceptional circumstances the Senate may exempt the candidate from this requirement.
6. A candidate who (a) has obtained a pass in any subject at Master's level for a Certificate of Proficiency and (b) would have been eligible for Honours if that subject had been presented under the appropriate Master's Degree Regulations, may be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency with Honours of the appropriate class provided in those Regulations.
7. A candidate who (having completed a course of study) has been admitted to a degree, may, subject to the approval of the Senate, enrol for a further course of study prescribed for that degree; and on completing it shall be entitled to be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency.

**Note:** A member of the permanent academic staff of this University with overseas university qualifications may be permitted to enrol for a paper or a subject for Certificate of Proficiency without having to make a formal application for Admission Ad Eundem Statum.

## JOINT CERTIFICATE JointCert

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. A candidate for the Joint Certificate of Studies shall be enrolled in a course of study approved by the Board of Studies.
2. The course of study shall comprise three equal parts;
  - (a) one part shall consist of two undergraduate papers, which will normally be at Stage I level, of the University of Auckland;
  - (b) a second part shall consist of a course of study offered by the participant polytechnic, and which will normally require attendance and assessed work totalling approximately 300 hours;
  - (c) a third part may be completed in one of the following ways:
    - (i) Two university papers, or approximately 300 hours of study in courses of one of the contributing polytechnics, or by one university paper and approximately 150 hours of study in a course of one of the contributing polytechnics;
    - (ii) appropriate work of a practical nature which is related to an area of study already undertaken and which is equivalent to 300 hours of study at a tertiary education institution;
    - (iii) (a) credit of appropriate course or practical work which has already been completed and certified by a recognised training or educational institution or organisation, such credit to count for one-sixth of the Certificate requirements; and  
(b) undertaking an approved project relevant to the courses taken and the personal area of interest of the candidate, the result of the project to be presented in an appropriate form and to count for one-sixth of the Certificate requirements.
  - (d) The University papers will normally be chosen from those offered by the Faculties of Arts and Science. The choice may be undertaken
    - either (a) according to programmes identified by the Board of Studies
    - or (b) according to proposals made by the student concerned, designed to lead on to further tertiary study, and subject to the approval of the Board of Studies.
3. Not more than one-third of the total of the course may be derived from credit from non-participating institutions. In assessing whether credit may be granted towards the Certificate for work completed in non-participating institutions, the following principles will apply:
  - (a) the work to be credited shall be appropriate in subject matter and standard;
  - (b) the work has required a similar period of study to that which would be needed for a similar body of work carried out in the participating institutions (for this purpose it will be generally assumed that 150 hours of study equates to two years of appropriate practical experience);
  - (c) once credit towards the Certificate has been granted for work which has already been recognised as part of the requirement for any earlier qualification, it cannot be further cross-credited to another higher qualification (e.g. a degree) unless the Certificate is surrendered.
4. A candidate who has successfully completed the Certificate may apply to the Registrar of the University of Auckland, or to the Principal of any of the contributing polytechnics, to credit Certificate courses towards a higher qualification of that institution. The credit which may be awarded for transfer to a higher qualification shall be decided by the appropriate authority of the institution to which application is made.  
The application must be accompanied by the prescribed fee. The credited courses shall comply with the regulations for the higher qualification. A maximum of one-third of the work completed for the Certificate may be credited in this way. A candidate who wishes to credit more than one-third of the work completed for the Certificate will be required to surrender that Certificate before the award of credit will be confirmed.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1993.

## TRANSITIONAL CERTIFICATE TransCert

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for a Transitional Certificate shall (a) have qualified for admission to a degree in this University and (b) with the approval of the Senate be enrolled in a course prescribed for a Transitional Certificate and (c) follow a course of study of not less than one year and pass the prescribed examinations and (d) comply with such of the prerequisites for

that course as shall be specified in each case by the Senate.

2. The completion of the prerequisites for a Transitional Certificate shall have the effect of meeting whichever of MA Regulation 1, MSc Regulation 1, MCom Regulation 1, MBA Regulation 1, LLM Regulation 1, MJur Regulation 1, MPlan Regulation 1, ME Regulation 1, MFA Regulation 1 or MPhil Regulation 2, the Senate shall determine is appropriate, and shall have no other purposes or effect whatever.
3. To be eligible for the award of a Transitional Certificate a candidate shall be required to enrol for the degree to which it leads.
4. The subjects for examination shall be those prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc, BCom, LLB, BMus, BArch, BProp, BPlan, BE, BFA.

---

## INTERMEDIATE COURSE FOR DEGREES OR DIPLOMAS FOR OTHER NZ UNIVERSITIES

---

Intermediate courses may be taken at the University of Auckland for a number of degrees and diplomas offered by other New Zealand Universities. Enquiries in the first instance must be made to the University concerned before any enrolment for that University is made at the University of Auckland.

A student wishing to enrol at Auckland for an Intermediate course for a degree or diploma at another University is required to include on the enrolment forms the course of study and the University for which it is being taken as an Intermediate e.g. 'ForestInt' (Forestry Intermediate for Canterbury).

A student who decides to remain at Auckland after having passed Intermediate papers for another University's course may apply to have those papers credited to an Auckland course by completing the appropriate form (Abandonment) and paying the prescribed fee of \$12.00.

---

# Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees

---

*Contents*

		<i>Page</i>
<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	Degree of Doctor of Philosophy	437
<hr/>		
<b>Higher Degree Regulations</b>	Degree of Doctor of Literature	438
	Degree of Doctor of Science	439
	Degree of Doctor of Laws	440
	Degree of Doctor of Engineering	440

The University offers higher doctorates in Literature, Science, Laws, and Engineering. As at other universities, these are primarily designed for graduates of the University who have subsequently published original work that has over a period given them authoritative international standing in their field. The higher doctorate is thus to be seen as a recognition of real distinction in one of these areas of study. It will be awarded rarely and after rigorous examination of a substantial and significant corpus of material.

Candidates intending to submit for examination are advised to obtain the notes *Guidance for Candidates* from the Registrar, The University of Auckland, before submitting.

# DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY PhD

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. The PhD degree comprises a course of advanced study and research, the results of which are presented in a thesis. The thesis shall be an original contribution to the field of study and is required to meet internationally recognised standards for such work. Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall apply to the Head of Department for registration as such, showing:
  - (a) that he or she has the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 2 hereof; and
  - (b) that he or she has adequate training and ability to pursue a course of advanced study and research.
2. The preliminary qualification shall be:
  - (a) qualification for admission to a Bachelor's Degree with Honours, or a Bachelor's (Honours) Degree, or a Master's Degree with Honours of this University, or
  - (b) qualification for admission to a Master's Degree First Class or Second Class, or
  - (c) qualification for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery together with evidence that the candidate has carried out research which, in the opinion of the Senate, is satisfactory evidence of the candidate's ability to pursue a course of advanced study and research for this Degree;
  - (d) in the case of a graduate of another University, admission to the course under the provisions of the Admission Regulations, or
  - (e) any other qualifications approved by the Senate in the particular case of any candidate.
3. (a) The Senate (Deans Committee) having received a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned (or in Commerce, Engineering and Medicine and Human Biology, from the Dean concerned) shall determine if the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of that registration.
  - (b) The recommendation for registration shall include: (i) the field of study (ii) the date of registration (iii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff (iv) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed course of study (v) a statement of any language or other requirement which the candidate must satisfy as part of the course of study (vi) where submitted by the Dean of Engineering, a description of the papers required in terms of clause 8(a) of these Regulations.
  - (c) An application for registration from a qualified candidate may be declined by the Senate, acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, if appropriate supervision and resources are not available.
4. A candidate for a Master's Degree may, after the completion of at least one year's work for that Degree at a standard considered satisfactory by the Senate, be registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. Any such candidate so registered may be allowed credit for the work for the Master's course if that work can form part of the doctoral thesis. The date of registration shall not be earlier than the end of the academic year in which he or she completed papers for a Master's or Bachelor's Degree with Honours.
5. (a) After being registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy the candidate shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department and the Supervisor for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration, during which he or she shall work at the advanced study and research full time under the supervision of a teacher in the University; provided that:
  - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine;
  - (iii) research requiring the use at first hand of documents or books not available within the University may be undertaken in an approved institution outside the University, for such period or periods and on such conditions as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (iv) when a candidate has completed the initial period of two years full-time study and research he or she may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate. Any such application must be supported by the Supervisor and the Head of the Department.
- (b) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate shall be deemed to work full-time if he or she has no occupation other than his or her study or research; provided that he or she may:
  - (i) with the approval of the Supervisor and the Head of Department engage for an average period of not more than six hours per week in academic work other than his or her study or research;
  - (ii) take such statutory, recreational and other holidays as are normally incidental to full-time occupation.
6. (a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a part-time member of the academic staff
  - (i) engaged in teaching or in laboratory supervision (or in both) for not more than twelve hours a week on average over the teaching weeks of the year, and
  - (ii) with no other occupation may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he or she shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least three calendar years from the date of registration, to the satisfaction of the Head of Department and the Supervisor.
- (b) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the academic staff, other than a Head of the Department, may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he or she shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least four calendar years from the date of his or her registration to the satisfaction of the Head of his or her Department and the Supervisor.
- (c) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College, in the Auckland area or a Technical Institute in the Auckland area or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation may apply for registration for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy and shall submit with such application a statement from the Principal of the College or Institute or Head of Research Organisation that the candidate's College or Institute or Research Organisation work is such as to allow him or her to pursue a course at the University for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being registered the candidate shall pursue to the satisfaction of the Head of his or her Department and the Supervisor, a course of advanced study

- and research at the University over a period of at least four calendar years from the date of registration.
- (d) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate who, by reason of occupation or other responsibilities, is unable to enrol full-time, and to whom paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of this Regulation do not apply, may register for a PhD, provided that Senate (Deans Committee) is satisfied, on the evidence of the supervisor and Head of Department, that the candidate would be able to attempt at least the equivalent of two years full-time study within an initial period of four years enrolment.
  7. The supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of the Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year, provided that in the case of a candidate who is a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation the Supervisor shall submit a report at the end of each six months. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavourable report is received.
  8. (a) A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Engineering shall take three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Engineering or papers deemed by the Deans Committee to be equivalent provided that the Senate on the recommendation of the Deans Committee may waive or modify this requirement.  
(b) A candidate shall not be eligible to enrol for any other course while registered for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy unless he or she obtains the prior permission of the Senate.
  9. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Commerce may be required to take three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Commerce or papers deemed by the Dean to be equivalent provided that the Senate on recommendation of the Dean may waive or modify this requirement.
  10. (a) A candidate who has fulfilled the conditions required by these Regulations may apply at any time within six years from the date of registration to the Registrar to be examined provided that a full-time member of the academic staff, or a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or a member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation, or any candidate registered in accordance with Regulation 6(d) above, may apply at any time within eight years and this period may in special circumstances be extended by the Senate for a full-time member of the academic staff who has not while registered for the Degree been a full-time research student.  
(b) A candidate shall submit to the Registrar three bound copies of a thesis embodying the results of his or her research which shall be retained by the University.  
Note: An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 16.
  11. (a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department, approve the title of the thesis and shall appoint as examiners:
    - (i) the Supervisor or Supervisors,
    - (ii) one person, who shall also act as Oral Examiner, and who may be a member of the staff of this University if there is no specialist in the field at another University in New Zealand, and
    - (iii) one person who may not be a member of the staff of this University except in such circumstances as the Senate thinks fit.
  - (b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.
  12. The Supervisor shall forward to the Registrar a certificate stating that the work described in the thesis was carried out by the candidate under his or her supervision and that the conditions laid down in Regulation 5 or 6 have been fulfilled.
  13. (a) A copy of the thesis shall be submitted to each examiner who shall report on the thesis independently. Except where the Vice-Chancellor acting on the advice of the Examiners otherwise authorises, the Supervising Examiner and one External Examiner shall together examine the candidate orally in the subject of the thesis and on the general field to which the subject belongs. The oral examination shall be held after the reports from all the examiners have been received, and not sooner than six weeks after the submission of the thesis, except in very special circumstances and with the approval of the Senate. At the request of the Oral Examiners the candidate may be required to take a written examination. The Oral Examiners shall make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination. The Examiners may recommend that a thesis, not considered entirely suitable by them for acceptance, may be revised by the candidate for re-submission on one further occasion only.  
(b) Where a candidate registered for this Degree who has not qualified for or been awarded a Master's Degree of this University submits or re-submits a thesis not considered entirely suitable to the examiners, the Senate may recommend that the thesis be submitted for a Master's Degree without Honours in the appropriate Faculty provided that the candidate satisfies all other requirements for that Master's Degree.
  14. Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

---

## HIGHER DEGREES REGULATIONS

---

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LITERATURE LittD

---

#### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or that of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistics, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and

- (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

---

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF SCIENCE DSc

---

#### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work, submitted had been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed ; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing Examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall Be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should

not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where the Examiners' recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LAWS LLD

### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall be eligible for the award of Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
4. The Degree shall be awarded on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF ENGINEERING Deng

### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of Engineering or Technology.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general



- circulation or as designs and inventions; but in addition the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
  6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
    - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
    - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
      - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
      - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
      - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### **Examination Procedure**

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.  
 (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate; and Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where the Examiner's recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. In that case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

---

# Staff and Student Information

---

*Contents*

	<i>Page</i>
<b>Staff and Student Information</b>	
Academic Dress	443
Accommodation Service	443
Auckland Uniservices Limited	443
Auckland University Club	443
Careers Advisory Service	443
Centre for Continuing Education	443
The Chapel	444
Chaplains	444
Clinical Psychology Services	444
Computer Centre	444
Counselling Service	445
The Creche	445
Equal Employment Opportunity Policy	445
Halls of Residence	445
Harassment Procedures	445
Intellectual Property : Inventions and Patents	446
Lost Property	446
Newman Hall	446
The New Zealand Universities Graduates Association (UK)	446
The New Zealand Universities Students' Association	446
Parking	447
Public Comment	447
Recreation Centre	447
Rest Spaces	447
Smoke Free Policy	447
Students' Association	448
Student Health Service	449
Student Learning Centre	449
Telephones	449
The University of Auckland Alumni Association	449
The University of Auckland Foundation	450
University Park	450

---

## STAFF AND STUDENT INFORMATION

---

### ACADEMIC DRESS

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of University Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods, Trenchers and Tudor Bonnets. These are available for hire throughout the year. Details may be obtained from Cheryl Nixon, Room 007, Registry, Ext 7780. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the Graduation Ceremony with his or her Application for Conferment of Degree Form.

---

### ACCOMMODATION SERVICE

An accommodation service is provided without charge for students of the University. The office, which is situated in room 204 in the Northern Wing of the first floor of the Old Arts Building, has noticeboards giving details of accommodation available for occupation by students.

The University administers two blocks of flats of four or five bedrooms. These flats are leased to groups. Any group wishing to make up their numbers advertises on the Student Accommodation Office noticeboard so that they can meet prospective flatmates.

---

### AUCKLAND UNISERVICES LIMITED

Auckland UniServices Limited is a company legally separate from the University of Auckland but its shares are held in trust by the University. The objectives of UniServices are to:

- Commercialise university-sourced technology and innovations.
- Provide specialist consulting, testing and teaching services on a commercial basis.
- Carry out research contract work for outside organisations.
- Undertake any other commercial work considered to be advantageous.

UniServices will evaluate the commercial potential of new ideas, innovations and inventions produced by University staff and students and, where there is judged to be a good possibility of commercialisation, will arrange patent protection or advise on copyright and/or confidentiality agreements.

The main office of UniServices is located in UniServices House, 58 Symonds Street and is open during normal working hours (telephone 373 7522). Offices are also located in Room 2503 School of Medicine, 5th Floor (extn. 6779) and Room 1.610 School of Engineering, 6th Level (ext. 5114).

All profits made by UniServices will be returned to the University of Auckland.

---

### AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY CLUB (INC.)

Telephone: 732-279.

The Auckland University Club Inc., provides the means by which former graduates can maintain close links with other graduates, with present students and with members of the University Staff. It encourages a closer relationship between the University and the professional and business community. The Club is located in its own premises at 23/25 Princes St where the facilities include a restaurant, two bars, private function room, reading room and a pool room.

Membership is open to persons over the age of 20 who are members of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, graduates or diploma holders of other Universities, members of professional societies who have gained a substantial portion of their professional qualifications as students of the University of Auckland, and members of The Auckland University Students' Assn (Inc.), and other suitable persons. Numbers are limited in terms of the club Charter to 2250. Application forms are available from the Secretary.

---

### CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE

The Careers Advisory Service has five main functions:

1. To give advice and information to students and graduates of the University which will assist them in achieving their career goals.
2. To maintain links with prospective employers, particularly through the Employer Campus Visit programmes. These provide opportunities for students to meet employers on the campus and discuss employment prospects. The visit programmes are:
  - Legal Employment Advisory Programme (LEAP): Law students may meet representatives of law firms. Scheduled for the May vacation.
  - Chartered Accountants' Programme (CAP): Accounting students may meet representatives from chartered accounting firms. Scheduled for the May vacation.
  - Careers Expo: Provides students from all disciplines with the opportunity to meet various employers interested in graduate recruitment. Scheduled to run during the second term with some carry over into the third term.
  - Careers Week: A small-scale careers expo, held in November after exams if employer demand is high enough.
3. To maintain a 'Situations Vacant' service, informing students and graduates of specific opportunities offered by employers, circulating this information through direct referrals and departmental noticeboards.
4. To increase community awareness of the potential benefits of employing University graduates.
5. To report on the first destination of graduates of the University.

Students are encouraged to visit the Careers Advisory Service in the early stages of their University course to discuss their career objectives. The Careers Advisory Service is located in the suite of offices behind the Upper Lecture Theatre. Enquiries to the Secretary in Room 10. The Service is open during normal University administrative hours.

---

### CENTRE FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION

The Centre for Continuing Education is a Department of the University, the special function of which is to create opportunities for the whole community to attend courses and other activities for personal enjoyment and development or advancement of professional knowledge. Nearly all courses are conducted by University academic staff or outside specialists. It makes available to the general public a wide variety of courses in the humanities, sciences, music and the arts. These are usually of ten weeks or longer. Day or weekend seminars are also promoted at the Centre. A number of these will focus on issues of community concern and will have an interdisciplinary

perspective.

Adults contemplating degree studies after some years away from formal education are referred to the "New Start" programmes in Arts detailed in the *Calendar* under "Preliminary Courses". Alongside the basic New Start 10 week courses are introductory courses in specific subjects, study skills, workshops and other supportive activities to assist adults recommence formal studies. New Start also caters for people with physical and sensory disabilities. Stepping Stones, a preparatory course for those needing additional help with written language is also offered.

The Preliminary Commerce Course is a year-long programme and an examination of bursary-level standard will be given at the end of the course.

The Centre is linked with the N.Z. College for Seniors and the American Elderhostel movement to provide residential educational programmes for older adults. In addition its Educational Travel Programme arranges study tours abroad for New Zealanders of all ages. Certificate courses are conducted in (i) Adult Education, (ii) Women's Studies, (iii) School Leadership, (iv) Training and Development. Short courses providing professional development for workers in health, education, welfare, recreation, community development are also available. Aspects of the theory and practice of Adult Education are taught in short courses within the Centre and at Stage III and Master's level within the Education Department. The Centre also promotes a wide-ranging series of seminars, courses for such professional groups as engineers, business people, teachers, surveyors, valuers. The Centre's Conference organisation team provides administrative services for a range of academic and professional conferences.

Publicity brochures about the Centre's activities are available on request from the Centre for Continuing Education. More information can be obtained by telephoning the Centre, 3737 999 or 3737 599 ext. 7831 or 7832, writing to the Centre for Continuing Education, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland or calling at the General Office of the Centre, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street.

## THE CHAPEL

The Maclaurin Chapel was established under a deed of trust by Sir William Goodfellow, Hon. LLD, in memory of his son, Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow, killed during service with the Fleet Air Arm in World War II, and of Professor Richard Cockburn Maclaurin, one of Auckland's most distinguished graduates.

University representatives are included in the Board of Management which is responsible for administering the trust and appointing the Maclaurin Chaplain.

Services are conducted in the University Chapel are non-denominational in character, and all members of the University are welcome. Special Services are held at Orientation, Easter, Graduation, Mid-Year and End of Year.

A mid week service is held in the Chapel at 1pm on Fridays, and a discussion group on Thursdays at 1pm. Other Special services are as advertised. The Chapel may also be used for weddings and funerals of University students and staff and their families.

## CHAPLAINS

There are two chaplaincies to the University. The Roman Catholic team is based at the Catholic Student Centre, Newman Hall, 16 Waterloo Quadrant, with a priest, one lay person and a sister on the team (telephone 3732 097).

The Maclaurin chaplaincy is non-denominational. The Chapel may be contacted in his office in the Chapel complex (phone 3737-732).

## CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY SERVICES

The Clinical Psychology Services function as part of the training programme for graduate students enrolled in the Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology. Psychology services are offered in the areas of assessment, counselling and therapeutic intervention. The staff are trainee clinical psychologists, supervised by staff members who are experienced and registered psychologists. These services are available to the general public, and students and staff of the University are welcome to make appointments. Clients are assured of complete confidentiality.

Fees are charged for each session on a sliding scale dependent on income. All initial sessions are \$15 except for students, who are free. The Clinical Psychology Services are located in the Psychology Department on level 5 of the Human Sciences Building. Appointments can be made by telephoning 3737 999 ext. 8413.

## COMPUTER CENTRE

### Central Computing Services

These are available to users throughout the University and are based on the following systems: Silicon Graphics 4D/240S and Sun 4/330 (unix service for teaching and research users), VAX 4000 (VMS service, teaching and research) and Silicon Graphics 4D/320S (Unix-Pick service for the University's administration). The Centre operates an IBM 4341 on behalf of the Engineering School and an IBM ES/9000 which supports Library and Finance Registry systems. Remote terminals and printers connected to these systems are installed at key locations throughout the campus and in some offices and laboratories.

### Microcomputer Services

The Centre provides a purchasing service for departments and full-time members of the University wishing to obtain microcomputer units, and a maintenance service supporting them. The Sales Office for equipment and consumable supplies is located in the Centre's entrance foyer.

### Data Communications Network

As part of its support for both mainframe and microcomputer users, the Centre is also responsible for the development and operation of the University's data communications network consisting of cables throughout the campus and fibre-optic and microwave links between them. The network provides connectivity between many of the University's central and distributed computing resources and also gives users access to national and international networks, particularly the NZ Universities' Network (also known as Kawaihiko) and an Internet link to other countries.

### Data Entry

A limited service is available for the entry of data from coding sheets to microcomputer diskettes or into central mainframes.

### Advisory Services

A Help Desk service is available throughout the hours the Centre is open (ext. 5100, room G06). User notes prepared by Computer Centre staff are available in the ground floor terminal room, and a wide range of reference manuals is available for inspection there.

### General

All use of central computing services is charged against computer resource allocations approved by the University's Computer Committee. The Centre is open between 8 a.m. and 11.30 p.m., Monday to Friday, and from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m. on Saturdays and Sundays,

throughout the year. The mainframe systems operate continuously and terminals to them can be used at any time through terminals in buildings to which users have entry.

---

## COUNSELLING SERVICE

The Counselling Service is located on the upper floor of the eastern wing of the Old Arts Building, (next door to the Student Health Service). The Service is free to all enrolled students who have paid the Student Services Fee. It is staffed by registered Psychologists who provide counselling and therapy on an individual or group basis. The Service seeks to help students learn skills for improved relationships and living, to complement their focus upon academic learning. Any enquiries should be made to the Secretary, telephone 373-7999 (internal extension 7895).

---

## THE CRECHE

The University operates two crèches primarily available for the children of students but with a limited number of places for those of staff. Based on hourly use with a maximum of up to four hours at any one time, both crèches are open from 7.45 a.m. to 5 p.m. Monday to Friday during the University term. Holiday care is available during May and August. The licence is for children aged from 0-5 yrs. Staff are trained in Early Childhood Care and Education. Enrolments are accepted during enrolment week, and early enrolment at that time is advised. Both crèches will be open for casual use from the beginning of February.

For further information telephone Mrs McCulloch ext. 7755.

Student places are also available at the Park Avenue Childcare Centre. For further information telephone 379 729.

---

## EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY POLICY

### Introduction

The University of Auckland has adopted an "Equal Employment Opportunity" policy under its obligations to be a "good employer" as provided for in the State Sector Act, 1988.

### Policy

The University of Auckland aims to promote teaching, research and community service of the highest standard so as to enhance the standing of the University in Auckland, in New Zealand and internationally.

The University of Auckland is committed to the principle and practice of equity. It therefore opposes unfair discrimination on the grounds of gender, race, disability, marital status, sexual orientation, age, religion, or on any other grounds, or through harassment.

The University undertakes, within available resources, to meet its obligations to equity by developing, publishing and ensuring compliance with an effective Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) programme in each year for all general and academic staff.

The development of the EEO programme will be the responsibility of the EEO Officer and the Advisory Committee on EEO working in consultation with the University community.

The University of Auckland is committed to meeting its responsibilities under the Treaty of Waitangi. The EEO programme will contain objectives which show that we accept the principle of partnership, and that we aim to redress the under-representation of Maori in the University.

The programme will aim to redress under-representation of other groups also; in particular women, Pacific Islanders, members of other ethnic minorities, people with disabilities, and others who are under-represented.

The programme will aim to identify and avoid any unfair discrimination against those employed by, or applying for appointment within the University. It will review current personnel policies and procedures, such as those relating to recruitment, interviewing, appointments, promotions, work conditions and staff development and training, in order to meet EEO objectives.

The programme will, where necessary, recommend the review of University structures as well as policies and procedures to achieve equal employment opportunity.

The programme will require that appointment to all positions should be on the basis of merit and that the definition of merit should be wide enough to include such matters as applicants' community and cultural standing or their work experience (whether paid or unpaid).

The programme will recommend EEO training for University staff to ensure familiarity with affirmative action principles and practices. The EEO Officer, in liaison with the Advisory Committee on EEO, will co-ordinate the development of an EEO database to enable the EEO programme to be evaluated regularly and checked for its effectiveness.

The University acknowledges an obligation, within available resources, to provide facilities and support services such as childcare centres and liaison officers, in order to meet EEO objectives.

The responsibility for disseminating and giving effect to this policy will lie at all levels within University government, i.e. in Council, Senate, and their Committees, and with the Vice-Chancellor, Registrar, Deans and Heads of Departments. The EEO Officer is available to offer advice.

---

## HALLS OF RESIDENCE

The University administers two Halls of Residence. One other Hall works within the University system.

The Halls offer three meals a day. There is also a University administered self-catering complex. All establishments accommodate both men and women. Applications for admission, which close on 30 September, 1992 should be addressed to the Accommodation Officer, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland. Late applications are accepted for the waiting list.

**Grafton Hall**, Seafield View Road, Grafton, administered by the Presbyterian Methodist Congregational Foundation Inc., and within 15 minutes' walk of the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 166 students.

**International House**, 27 Whitaker Place, administered by the University and within seven minutes' walk of the campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 164 students.

**O'Rorke Hall**, 16 Mount Street, administered by the University and about five minutes' walk to the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 356 students.

**Park Road Student Flats**, Grafton. Accommodation is provided for 44 students (12 in single rooms and 32 in shared rooms). Each room has its own bathroom but residents must share the communal kitchen. The single rooms are reserved for post-graduate students.

---

## HARASSMENT PROCEDURES

The University is committed to providing an environment within the University and all its facilities which is free from harassment. Harassment may be offensive behaviour or unwanted attention. It may involve an abuse of power to disadvantage, dominate,

discriminate or insult. Whatever kind of harassment - sexual, racial, academic, religious etc - it is totally unacceptable. The University's Council endorsed the above procedures in 1984.

The University has set in place:

- (a) procedures to investigate and/or resolve harassment complaints
- (b) programmes to prevent the occurrence of harassment.

Procedures available for the *informal, confidential and expeditious* resolution of harassment complaints involve:

- (i) The Contact Network, drawn from staff and students throughout the University to listen to and discuss options for dealing with the harassment. Lists of Contact Network members are available from all Departmental Offices or in the internal telephone directory.
- (ii) The Mediator, who is also a part of the informal procedures. When mediation is required the complaint is referred to the Mediator.

A complainant may approach the Mediator directly and may request a mediator of the same gender.

The Mediator co-ordinates University procedures for dealing with harassment and provides educative activities relating to harassment. The Mediator also functions as a disputes mediator, any staff member or student may request the assistance of the mediator in resolving a dispute.

The Mediator's office is located in Room 4, Lower Lecture Theatre, Ext 7478.

**STUDENTS OR STAFF USING THE UNIVERSITY'S FACILITIES SHOULD NOT HESITATE IN USING THESE PROCEDURES IF THEY FEEL THEY ARE BEING HARASSED.**

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INCLUDING INVENTIONS AND PATENTS

When staff or students consider that during the course of their University activities a discovery or innovation has occurred which may have possibilities for commercial exploitation, the University requires them to disclose such a discovery to the University by informing the Auckland UniServices Limited. The Board of Directors of Auckland UniServices Limited would, in due course, make a decision as to its assignment to UniServices, its protection and its course of commercialisation. An agreement between the discoverer(s) and UniServices would then be entered into, such an agreement describing the obligations of the parties and the division of any income and expenditure.

Members of staff and students should know that prior to the granting of a provisional patent, publication is likely to render any research, result unpatentable. It is not the wish of the University, however, that this circumstance should inhibit the free publication of research work.

Copyright of journal articles and books are not included in the above requirements and the copyright will remain with the author(s). Where research contract agreements are being negotiated on behalf of the University with clauses regarding the ownership of data or results, or any future inventions or patents arising from the proposed research, then the University requires that Auckland UniServices Limited be consulted at an early stage of these negotiations to ensure that no commitments regarding such ownership are made to funding agencies which are in conflict with University policy.

Staff or students are not to use for commercial purposes any University resources, invention or development or computer program to which they have had access while at the University without the specific approval of the University obtained through the Head of Department concerned.

## LOST PROPERTY

All enquiries regarding lost property should be referred to the Student Union Custodian, telephone 3090-789 (external) or 32 816 (internal).

## NEWMAN HALL

Newman Hall is the Catholic Student Centre at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. It is named after Cardinal John Henry Newman, the nineteenth century scholar.

Newman Hall is the centre for the Catholic tertiary students and staff. There is worship each day at 1.10 p.m. and 6.00 p.m. every Wednesday.

The Theological library is at Newman Hall for the use of theology staff and students. Some of the lectures for the Bachelor of Theology degree are held at Newman Hall.

## THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITIES GRADUATES ASSOCIATION (UK)

The New Zealand Universities Graduates' Association (UK) was formed in 1967 with the main aim of creating and fostering opportunities for graduates of New Zealand Universities to establish contact with other New Zealand graduates in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

Other objects of the Association are the establishment of links with Universities and University organisations throughout the United Kingdom and New Zealand, and to make known to visitors the names of individuals or organisations who might be helpful to them.

Membership is open to holders of a degree or equivalent professional qualifications and associate membership is available to all members of NZUSA who are not yet graduates. The Secretary will be pleased to receive membership inquiries and give further information. Postal Address: Secretary: Mrs Mary Mitchell, "Wyndcliffe", Shootersway Lane, Berkhamsted, Hertfordshire, HP4 3NW, U.K. [Tel: (0442) 874 057]; President: Dr Robert Orr, 12 Erskine Hill, London, NW11 6HB, U.K. [Tel: (081) 455 1636 (hm); (071) 955 7190 (wk)].

## THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

Formed in 1929, the New Zealand University Students' Association is the national union of New Zealand's university students, to which all seven local university students' associations are affiliated, giving a total membership of approximately 50,000.

NZUSA acts for students in all matters of national concern. Education and student welfare are NZUSA's major concerns, but it also takes stands on wider social and political issues on which students, through their representatives, have expressed their collective views.

NZUSA's National Office is in Wellington and is headed by the President along with General, Women's, Maori and Education and Welfare Vice-Presidents and two Research Officers. In addition there is one part-time officer, the National Overseas Students' Action Committee Co-ordinator.

NZUAS's policies are made by representatives of its constituent students' associations at Council Meetings twice a year. These policies are carried out under the guidance of the National Executive consisting of the Presidents of the constituent associations and the full-time

elected officers of NZUSA.

NZUSA's activities are funded by an annual levy of approximately \$5.90 paid by constituent students' associations on account of each individual member. More information about NZUSA can be gained by contacting AUSA or by writing to the President, P.O. Box 10191, The Terrace, Wellington.

## PARKING

Street parking is available for two-wheel vehicles in Symonds Street between Alfred and Wellesley Streets, in Alfred Street, in Symonds Street between Grafton Road and the Human Sciences building, Princes Street outside Maidment Arts Centre and School of Medicine. Provision has been made for bicycles on the following areas: Alfred Street – Concourse, Library; Princes Street – Physics Building; Symonds Street – School of Architecture and School of Engineering, Goods Entrance and Lower Lecture Theatre Main Campus, Upper and Lower Concourses, Recreation Centre; Park Road – School of Medicine.

An area in lower Grafton Road (area No. 17) has been set aside for students' cars. Admission is by ticket only, to be purchased at the University Bookshop on production of student identification only. Tickets will be sold in booklets of 20 — the 1992 fee is under review. No charge is made for this area during the weekend or after 4 p.m. on weekdays. Students may use the parking facilities in Wynyard Street (between Grafton and Alten Roads) without charge after 5.45 p.m. any day, and at any time during the weekends.

The parking building at 36 Princes Street is available for general parking after 5.45 each evening and weekends.

## PUBLIC COMMENT

Staff should ensure that their university title is used in the media or in press correspondence only when they are commenting on a subject in which they have special competence and when there are no commercial or legal implications arising. For academic staff such subjects would normally be those within their area of academic competence. Students may refer to their links with the University in matters of general concern.

Staff commenting on matters of public interest outside their particular areas of expertise or responsibility should do so in a purely private capacity unless they have first obtained the specific approval of the University through the appropriate head of department or section. Further details of University policy on this matter are set out in the Staff Handbook held by each department.

## RECREATION CENTRE

The Recreation Centre has been planned to meet a comprehensive range of sporting and recreational needs. The facilities available include seven squash courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall which may be used for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, cricket, netball, table tennis and cricket practice.

The Centre runs a diverse range of aerobics classes plus a special Recreational Programme which offers instruction from qualified people in a wide range of activities. Centre hours are Monday to Friday 7 a.m. - 10 p.m., Saturday and Sunday 9 a.m. - 6 p.m.

## REST SPACES

The University has a number of rest spaces which students and staff with disabilities are welcome to use. Enquiries should be made in the first instance to the Disabled Students Resource Officer, telephone 309-0789.

## ROOM BOOKINGS

University rooms can be booked by departments, AUSA clubs and by outside groups, on a casual or regular basis, by phoning extension 7475. Bookings for the University Conference Centre in the School of Architecture are taken on extension 7691.

Outside groups who have not previously used University facilities need to write to the Registrar providing information about their organisation and the event or meeting they want to hold. (Subsequent bookings by the group can be made by telephone.) All bookings are confirmed in writing and include details of the hire charge, where applicable.

## SMOKE FREE POLICY

### Introduction

The University of Auckland has adopted a "smoke free" policy, in accordance with the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, for the following reasons:

- (i) Research suggests tobacco smoke may affect an individual's well being and health;
- (ii) Everyone is entitled to a smoke free environment in all public areas and their place of study or work.

The University recognises that the implementation of the "smoke free" policy requires the cooperation of all members of the University and visitors.

### Policy

1. Smoking is not permitted in any building controlled by the University Council (with the possible exception of personal offices as outlined in 3 below). This includes public areas, lifts and stairways.
2. Smoking is not permitted in any vehicle controlled by the University Council, if at any time that vehicle is used by more than one person.
3. Except in departments where a "No Smoking" policy has been adopted, smoking is permitted in personal offices provided University members who wish to smoke in their office take all reasonable precautions to prevent such smoke circulating to other areas where it may affect non-smokers. Accordingly, members of the University wishing to smoke in their personal office should ensure that their office door is kept closed and that the office is adequately ventilated by opening external windows. Smokers should also consider the effect of smoke on the health of persons who may have to visit their office for consultations and meetings. [N.B. a "personal office" is an office occupied by one person only.]
4. Staff who wish to smoke should try to do so only during lunch or tea breaks and out of doors.
5. The international no smoking symbol will be displayed in all university controlled buildings to remind University members and visitors of the "smoke free" policy.
6. Members may complain to their supervisor or Head of Department if a person continues to smoke in any designated "smoke free" area. The supervisor or Head of Department shall, within twenty days of the receipt of the complaint, investigate that complaint and, if it appears a contravention has occurred, shall try to resolve the complaint. In the event that a member of the University will not

give an assurance that there will be no repetition of the cause of the complaint the University will notify the Auckland Area Health Board which is responsible for enforcing the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act.

7. At its first meeting each year the University Council shall review the "smoke free" policy and shall, before making changes to the policy in accordance with the provision of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, consider any submissions received from members of the University of their representatives by the Registrar during the previous year.
8. Copies of the "smoke free" policy are available from the Registrar on request and reminders will be printed in *Next Week* at the commencement of each term and from time to time in other University publications.

## STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

The Association is an Incorporated Society which was founded in 1891. For almost 100 years the Students Association (AUSA) has acted for the benefit of students both within and outside the University. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the members of AUSA are involved not only in the control of the University but also in fostering social, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University. AUSA is a society which is concerned with the problems and needs of students in their widest context.

### Activities

There are over one hundred clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for almost all sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in the NZUSU tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests. Information about these clubs and societies is available from the AUSA reception office. The Association employs a full-time Social Activities Officer and organises a large number of social functions and cultural activities. These include informal dances, the formal Graduation Ball, weekly lunch-time entertainment, film festivals and the annual Capping Festival as well as regular entertainment in the licensed student restaurant "Shadows". During the first two weeks of the academic year the Association organises the Orientation Festival to acquaint new students with the varied facets of University life. Various welfare activities such as school visits, blood days, emergency accommodation are co-ordinated by the Welfare Officer.

"CRACCU" is the weekly newspaper published by the Association during the academic year. Traditionally, it is the vehicle for the expression of student views and news and viewpoints of interest to students, the Editor is elected annually. The Association owns Campus Radio BFM Ltd, which broadcasts on 95 FM throughout the year.

### Administration

The control of the business and affairs of AUSA lies with the Executive Committee which is elected annually. It is comprised of a full-time President, three part-time Officers and twelve portfolio holders, together with the Secretary - a full-time administration position. The Executive is the official mouthpiece of AUSA and takes action on behalf of AUSA to further students' interests. Through this Executive which acts as a co-ordinating body, AUSA undertakes a wide and varied number of activities.

AUSA is the link between individual students and the academic and administrative staff of the University. Students elect four representatives to Senate, one to the University Council, various representatives to departmental and faculty committees as well as to the committees of Senate and Council. The President is also a member of Council and Senate. Through its Executive, AUSA represents students in matters involving their interests within the University community.

The Students Representative Council is the political and policy making body of AUSA. The SRC acts on any matter of concern to students and all students may attend meetings and vote. These meetings are usually at 1.00 p.m. in the Quad outside the University Bookshop every Wednesday.

### Cafeterias

The Cafeteria block is under the supervision of the Catering Manager. The main cafeteria is the only food outlet open on campus during holidays. The catering service provides freshly brewed coffee in most of its outlets and various vending machines are situated in the student union area for out of hours requirements.

The Main Cafeteria is situated on the ground floor of the catering block and provides a range of sandwiches, filled rolls, hot savouries and from the hot servery chips, fish, hot dogs etc to take away. There is a large seating area available adjacent to the cafeteria, term time only. Hours are term time 7.30 am to 3 pm; holidays 9 am to 3 pm. The coffee lounge on the first floor provides a similar range of items but does not have a hot servery. Hours are 9 am to 4 pm. A budget meal at a subsidised price for students is served on the mezzanine floor each night (term time and holidays) from 4.30 to 6.30 pm. There is also a chef's special meal which costs a little more. Hours 5 pm to 8 pm term time only.

The milk bar and coffee bar are situated on Alfred Street. The milk bar specialises in milkshakes, thickshakes, ice creams and a wide range of sweets. Opening hours are 8.30 am to 5.30 pm. The Coffee bar has a jukebox and coin operated games machines as well as food and drinks. Daily papers are sold from here and opening hours are 8 am to 9 pm. During the third term and exam time the coffee bar is open during the weekends from 8 am to 4 pm.

There are other cafeterias operating in the Human Science block and Engineering, Medical and Law Schools, and at the Tamaki Campus.

### Facilities

The Student Union Buildings are occupied by the Association with control and use subject to the Student Union Management Committee, which consists of six students and five University representatives including representatives of the Senate, Council and Sub Professional staff. There are five separate blocks, with the Administration block containing Reception, Council Room, the offices of Executive, the Disabled Students Resource Officer, the Student Parent Resource Officer, the Finance department, general meeting rooms, the Publications Office, Student Travel and the radio station. Reception is open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. for Association business. The official AUSA Noticeboard outside the Book Shop carries information on activities and meetings as well as details on appointments of Association Representatives. In general, any student may be a representative. On the same level is the Social Activities Officer and the Custodians. Above these are the main common rooms. Below are the toilets and lockers, which can be hired for the year from the Custodians. The block adjacent to Alfred Street contains the TV Room, the games and billiard room, the sick bay, meeting rooms, Wominspace and Hineahuoe, the Maori Students' Room, Student Job Search and the Student Services Centre which along with giving assistance to students, sells discounted bus and rail tickets. The AUSA Secondhand Bookstall located in the Functions Room (Second Floor of Student Union Building) runs during the last week of enrolment and throughout the first week of term one. The bookstall provides a valuable service for students wishing to acquire their year's textbooks at a reduced rate. Opening hours are 9.00 am to 6.00 pm for taking in books and 10.00 am to 6.00 pm for selling.

### The Maidment Arts Centre

The Maidment Arts Centre on the corner of Princes and Alfred Street provides a venue for some of the cultural activities of AUSA and the University. The larger of the two theatres seats 450, while the smaller holds up to 120 people. The Centre is managed by the Theatre Management Committee which comprises five Association and four University members.

### The Recreation Centre

The Recreation Centre meets a comprehensive range of sporting and recreation needs. The facilities available include seven squash



courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall, which can cater for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, netball, table tennis or cricket. The operating costs are met by membership charges paid by users of the centre. This centre is managed by the Student Recreation Committee, which comprises four Association and six University representatives. This committee also oversees University Park; 40 acres of facilities for rugby, soccer, hockey, athletics and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

### **Students' Association Fee**

All students pay a membership fee to belong to the Students' Association. The fee is calculated as a portion of the course load for which a student is enrolled, but no student pays more than a full time course load equivalent of \$139.50. This fee is recalculated whenever a student changes their course. Any student may appeal to the University Council if they conscientiously object to being a member of the Association. Many University and Students' Association funds exist to help students who are suffering financial hardship and find payment difficult. The Students' Association will put any student in touch with these funds.

### **Support**

*Crisis Centre:* An advice and referral service for students with financial difficulties, tenancy, legal or other problems.

*Disabled Student Resource Officer:* A full time officer is employed by the Association to provide practical help to disabled students. This officer helps students familiarise themselves with the campus, assists with mobility, library work and research, typing, financial problems, obtaining lecture notes, organising parking and transport, and lobbying for access improvements around the campus.

*Referral and Advice:* The Association's Reception staff are skilled in referring students to the right people and places around the University. The Association's officers are available to give advice and referrals on all facets of student life.

*Student Job Search:* The Department of Labour funds a job search programme for students over the summer. During the remainder of the year, a reduced service locates part-time jobs for students.

*Student Parent Resource Officer:* AUSA employs a part-time resource officer to advise student parents on academic choices, mobility, parking, and support groups. This officer also represents student parents within the University and organises social events.

### **The University Book Shop**

Nearby is the University Book Shop in which AUSA has a half interest. Students are entitled to a 10% discount. The Book Shop also provides the Association with a financial contribution in recognition of its marketing assistance.

---

## **STUDENT HEALTH SERVICE**

This Service is located next to the Counselling Service on the upper floor of the eastern extension of the Old Arts Building.

The service is free and confidential, offering General Practice together with specialised advice for family planning, psychiatric and psychological problems, S.T.D., gynaecology, immunisation and travel advice and minor surgery.

Appointments can be made by telephoning 373-7599 Extn 7681. Urgent matters can be seen every week day in a Clinic between 9-10 a.m.

The staff comprises a full-time Medical Director, Pat Mauger, two full-time nurses, Sue Parton and Shirley Bennett, part-time male and female doctors and Reception staff giving advice and information.

There is also a sports medicine service and physiotherapy clinic situated at the Recreation Centre.

---

## **STUDENT LEARNING CENTRE**

The SLC is located on Floor 1 of the Main Library Building and is staffed by academic tutors with special skills for helping students overcome difficulties in university study. Individual consultations are available to enrolled students by appointment, phone 3737 599 ext. 8850. The Centre has a basic maths skills programme and a basic writing skills for academic purposes programme, as well as groups for such varied topics as reading, computing, calculators, concentration, and memory. Special educational testing and evaluation can be arranged, to assist specific learning requirements. There is a small registration fee for use of the SLC.

The Centre also has a Marae-based study skills programme, Te Roopu Kaiawhina. Tutors in this programme may be found in Room 116 in the Maori Studies Department or by telephoning 3737 599 ext 7941. Pacific Islands tutors are located in the Library Centre. The Head of the Student Learning Centre is David Simpson.

---

## **TELEPHONES**

Telephones for student's use are provided in the following locations:

**Telecom Card Telephones** are provided in the Old Arts Building (Basement South Wing and adjacent to the Campus Pharmacy), the Library Building (Alfred Street Foyer and first floor by the lifts), the Thomas Building (adjacent to the entrance to the Biological Sciences Library, Ground floor), the School of Engineering (adjacent to Library), Human Sciences Building (adjacent to lecture theatres), School of Architecture, Property and Planning (adjacent Reception Office), School of Commerce and Economics (in tunnel between Arts and Commerce Buildings), Arts Building (Lobby areas 2nd and 4th floors), Precinct, Arts/Commerce Buildings, Maths/Physics Building (outside lecture theatre G20), Chemistry (Ground floor foyer), Maidment Theatre courtyard, School of Medicine (adjacent to the Student Common Room) and Tamaki Campus (foyer Library Building).

**National Payphones - Coin Telephones** are also available as follows: Arts 1 Building Level 4, West entrance - where overbridge enters; Human Sciences Building, Level 3 with other card phones, Level 4 and Level 9 adjacent to lifts; Maori Studies, Foyer Main entrance; School of Engineering, Level 1, Foyer Administration and also near Library; Old Choral Hall, Foyer Ground floor; Chemistry/Science Building, Foyer Main east entrance and next to card phone, Ground floor North entrance; Commerce B Building, near stairwell Ground floor and Commerce C Building, Foyer 3rd floor; Recreation Centre, Main entrance, Ground floor; School of Architecture Property and Planning, by card phone; Physics/Mathematics Building lift foyer, Ground floor; Library, Main entrance Ground floor and by card phone Level 1.

In addition, telephones are provided by the Students' Association in the Student Union Building.

Students are not permitted to make or receive outside calls through the University main telephone system except on University business. Telecom cards are available from the University of Auckland Book Shop Limited.

---

## **THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ALUMNI ASSOCIATION (INC.)**

The Alumni Association was established in 1991:

to encourage interaction between the University and its graduates, former students and former staff;

to engender support for the University and its various undertakings from members at large;

to inform members of the Association about the activities of the University; and to provide a means whereby

organisations of former students based on faculties, departments, associated institutions, other special interests, or based in particular countries or cities, may promote the common object of the welfare of the University.

Members receive regular mailouts including a magazine, as well as social and commercial benefits. A wide range of memorabilia for sale has been developed. Those eligible to join the Association are all past students, graduate or non-graduate, of the University of Auckland and Auckland University College, all members and past members of the Senate and Council, present and past staff members, and anyone who, through association with the University, contributes towards its development and achievement.

The Alumni Office will be pleased to receive membership enquiries or to give further information about the activities of the Alumni Association. Contact Christine Smith Phone 373 7599 Extns 7600 or 8723.

---

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND FOUNDATION

In commemoration of the Centenary of the University, the University of Auckland Foundation is established for the advancement of education in New Zealand in ways which extend the University's ability to meet the higher educational needs of the Community.

The Trustees will apply the income of the foundation from time to time in fulfilling within the University District and elsewhere in New Zealand the purpose for which the Foundation is established:

1. To encourage the transfer and exchange of knowledge among scholars and the dissemination of knowledge among the community.
2. To encourage overseas scholars to visit New Zealand and New Zealand scholars to visit overseas to carry out study and research and to exchange and impart their knowledge and experience.
3. To arrange the movement within New Zealand of resident and visiting scholars.
4. To facilitate those visits and movements of scholars to, from and within New Zealand, assisting to arrange the temporary exchange or occupation of academic posts in New Zealand and (where New Zealand scholars are concerned) overseas.
5. To arrange the giving of lectures and the promotion of educational discussion and debate in New Zealand before invited or public audiences by scholars from both within and without New Zealand and to arrange itineraries and accommodation for the participants; and in encouraging, arranging and facilitating those activities the Trustees may make such grants, pay such fees, cost of travel and accommodation and make such other expenditure as they consider necessary or desirable.

**Note:** "New Zealand Scholar" means a scholar resident in New Zealand who is pursuing his/her career here. "Scholar" includes a person engaged in any discipline in the study or practice of administration and of technology and in the management or custody of libraries.

Donations to the Foundation should be sent to:

The Registrar,  
University of Auckland,  
Private Bag 92019,  
Auckland 1.

A form of legacy for the Foundation, or for the University as a whole, is available on request from the Registrar.

---

## UNIVERSITY PARK

The University Park is a 40 acre sports complex situated in Glen Innes. Sports facilities include rugby, soccer, hockey, Australian Rules Football and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

---

# Student Allowances, Student Loans, Scholarships and Awards

---

*Contents*

	<i>Page</i>
Students Allowances	452
Student Loans	453
Scholarships and Prizes	453
National Scholarships, 1992	453
University of Auckland Scholarships 1992	454
University of Auckland Prizes 1991	456

# STUDENT ALLOWANCES

For the convenience of students a brief outline of allowances available through the Ministry of Education is printed below.

The official information is contained in the booklet *Student Allowances 1993*

All enquiries should be made to the Student Allowances Office (Room 126, Old Arts Building).

**Note:** Values stated are the figures as at August 1992.

## Eligibility

Students may receive assistance only if they are:

a. a New Zealand citizen; or

b. a person from overseas who has obtained permanent residency and signs a statutory declaration of their intention to reside permanently.

**Note:** Persons admitted to New Zealand on a study permit issued by the Department of Labour are NOT eligible for Student Allowances.

## Income Restriction

The income limit for assistance in 1992 is \$5,000 gross p.a. not including the vacation periods.

## Tenure

Students may only receive assistance for five academic years of fulltime study in a recognised course(s) unless they are enrolled in a recognised long course to study. The period of tenure for the various courses that have been recognised for tertiary grants purposes is as follows:

13 weeks: Prof LS

One Year: DipArts, DipBrC, DipCom, DipCompSci, DipDrama, DipEd, DipELT  
DipGeothermTech, DipGuid, DipLabourStudies, DipLGA, DipMathsEd, DipMus(Hons),  
DipPH, DipStats, DipSci, PGDipSocRes, MPlan, MArch, MJur, LLM (papers only),  
MPA, MMedSc, MHB, BMus(Performance) (Hons), ME (papers only),  
Transitional Certificate

Two Years: DipCrim, DipEdPsych, DipTP, MBChB, MA, MAud, MCom, MSc, MPhil, MFA, ME, MEd,  
MLitt (papers and thesis), MMus, LLM (papers and thesis), MA/DipClinPsych, MPH, MHSc,  
PhD, DMus

Three Years: BA, BCom, BHB, BMus, BPA, BSc, BTheol, DipMus, PGDipAppPsych, PGDipTrans

Four Years: BE, BED, BFA, BMus(Performance), BOptom, BSc (Hons), BPlan, DipOpt,

Five Years: LLB, LLB(Hons), BCom/BSc<sup>¶</sup>, BCom/BA<sup>¶</sup>, BScEd  
BArch, BA/BSc, BA/LLB<sup>¶</sup>, BA/LLB(Hons)<sup>¶</sup>, BA/BMus<sup>¶</sup>, BA/BMus  
(Performance)<sup>¶</sup>, BA/DipMus<sup>¶</sup>, BA/DipMus(Hons)<sup>¶</sup>, BCom/LLB<sup>¶</sup>,  
BCom/LLB(Hons)<sup>¶</sup>, BHB/MBChB, BMus/DipMus<sup>¶</sup>, BA/BTheol  
BMus/DipMus(Hons)<sup>¶</sup>, BSc/BOptom, BMus (Performance)/BMus  
(Performance) (Hons), BA/MA, BA/MA/DipClinPsych.

Six Years: BSc/MSc, BSc(Hons)/MSc, BCom/MCom, LLB/LLM (papers only),  
LLB(Hons)/MJur, BMus/MMus, BE/ME (papers only) BPlan/MPlan  
LLB/LLM (papers and thesis)<sup>¶</sup>, BFA/MFA<sup>¶</sup>, BHB/MBChB/MMedSc<sup>¶</sup>,  
BHB/MHB/MBChB<sup>¶</sup>, BArch/MArch<sup>¶</sup>, BE/ME (papers and thesis)<sup>¶</sup>,  
BMus (Performance)<sup>¶</sup>/MMus (Performance)<sup>¶</sup>, BOptom/MSc (in Psych)<sup>¶</sup>

Seven Years: BSc/BHB/MBChB, BA(Bio or Chem)/BHB/MBChB<sup>¶</sup>

**Notes:** (i) Conjoint courses, marked with a <sup>¶</sup>, count as two courses. Other combined courses count as one course only.

(ii) Those combinations of courses marked with a <sup>¶</sup> have been approved as "long" courses and can qualify for a six year of tenure.

(iii) A further year's fees assistance is available for Professional Legal Studies in the following combinations only: LLB/LLM/ProfLS and LLB(Hons)/MJur/ProfLS, LLB/ProfLS and LLB(Hons)/ProfLS.

(iv) Seven years "long" course in Medicine, requires a student to be admitted to BHB II on the basis of credits for the first Degree.

## Academic Performance

Students must pass more than half a fulltime course of study in any year in order to be eligible for assistance in a subsequent year.

## Application for Allowances

For 1993 students must apply for an application form on the mailer sent to all students with their pre-enrolment material, or alternatively the application form may be collected from Student Allowances, Room 126, Old Arts Building.

## ALLOWANCES

Allowances are available according to the age of the student. There are two categories for single students: a) 16 - 24 years of age, b) 25 years and over.

For students who are married and/or have dependents, there are specific allowances which are detailed in the booklet *1993 Student Allowances* which will be sent to you with your application form. A brief outline of allowances is given below.

### a. Students 16-24 years of age inclusive

Your parents' combined taxable gross income must be tested for the 1991/92 tax year in order for you to be eligible for any payment, as allowances for your age group are targeted.

There is a scale of payment (maximum \$109.25 per week if you live away from home or \$87.40 per week if you live at home).

#### At Home

If you live at home and your parents' combined gross income is less than \$28,080 you will receive \$87.40 per week. This decreases as your parents' earnings increase. If your parents earn more than \$45,760 you will not receive any targeted allowance.

#### Away from Home

If you live away from home and your parents' combined gross income is less than \$28,050 you will receive \$109.25 per week. This also decreases as your parents' earnings increase. You will also receive an accommodation benefit (in 1992 this was \$21.50 per week, for flatting and boarding but varied for hostels). If your parents earn more than \$50,752 you will not receive any targeted allowance.

#### A or B Bursary

A "B" mark (250-299) or an "A" mark (300+) in the Bursaries Examination entitles a student to a bursary payment of \$100 or \$200 respectively if they are under 20 years of age at the commencement of the academic year.

The A or B Bursaries are not subject to a parental income test. You must apply for the payment of an A or B Bursary.

#### Independent Circumstances Allowance

The Independent Circumstances Allowance is for students who can prove that there are home circumstances which preclude their living at home. An allowance of \$109.25 a week plus an accommodation benefit may be payable. A special application form is available from the Student Allowances Office.

**b. Students 25 years and over**

Students 25 years of age and over will receive \$104.88 per week if living with their parents, or \$131.11 per week if living away from their parents, plus an accommodation benefit.

---

## STUDENT LOANS

---

This scheme was introduced by the Government for 1992 enrolment.

A brief outline of the Student Loan scheme is given below. In order to apply for a student loan you complete the application request that is sent with your pre-enrolment form and instructions and information will then be sent to you.

**ELIGIBILITY**

New Zealand citizens or permanent residents enrolled in an approved course of study of at least 12 weeks tenure.

IRD number and verification is required as well as a bank account to credit your loan money. You must also sign a contract with the State over your loan.

**LOANS****FULL-TIME STUDENTS**

1. Compulsory Fees  
(i.e. tuition, welfare, student assoc)
2. \$1,000 for course related costs

3. Up to \$4500 living expenses less any entitlement you claim through Student Allowances

**PART-TIME STUDENTS**

1. Compulsory Fees
2. Proportion of \$1,000 course related costs on weighting of your enrolment, e.g.  $\frac{1}{3}$  FT may borrow \$333.33

**CHARGES**

The Student Loan Management Unit in Wellington sets an initial \$50 charge each year that you borrow. This is incorporated as part of your loan over and above the other totals.

Once you begin borrowing you are charged interest on the amount borrowed. This is calculated at 6% plus the cost of living increase. (For 1992 students the total rate was set at 8.2%) and is calculated daily.

**REPAYMENT**

You may pay back your loan at any time to reduce your debt. Any loan unpaid will become a compulsory repayment through the Inland Revenue Department once your income exceeds \$12,670.

---

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

---

A booklet entitled *Awards Handbook 1992-3* is available without charge from the Enquiry Office of the Registry, 24 Princes Street. This booklet gives details of certain funds for special assistance.

**REVIEW OF SCHOLARSHIP**

The Council, in awarding any scholarship, reserves the right to reduce the annual value of a scholarship at any time and from time to time during the tenure of it by any holder should the annual income of the funds of the scholarship, in the opinion of the Council, render such reduction expedient. All scholarships offered are subject to review in the event of the candidate being awarded other scholarships. Every holder of a scholarship shall be deemed to accept the award, subject to the above reservation and notwithstanding that the value of the scholarship is set out specifically in the Regulations.

**RE-AWARD OF A SCHOLARSHIP DISCONTINUED BY THE ORIGINAL HOLDER**

Fresh applications may be called for in respect of any scholarship discontinued after a period of three months or more from the original date of award; the re-award in the event of this discontinuation of the scholarship to be made on the basis of the original application if possible.

---

## NATIONAL SCHOLARSHIPS - 1992

---

The following scholarships were offered to students from the University of Auckland:

*BNZ Graduate Scholarship*  
*Commonwealth Scholarships (Australia)*

*Commonwealth Scholarships (UK)*

*DAAD Scholarships*

*William Georgetti Scholarships*

*IBM Scholarship*  
*Edward & Isabel Kidson Scholarship*  
*Postgraduate Scholarships*

Melodie M van Aalst  
Philip C Armstrong  
Bipan Bansal  
Daniel A Beauregard  
Lisa C Bielecki  
Gregory G R Blunden

Christopher P Bradley  
Lisa C Bielecki  
E Pippa Storey  
Philip C Armstrong  
Daniel A Beauregard  
Thomas M Hyde  
Antonia H Jackson  
E Pippa Storey  
Elizabeth S Hirst  
Roger W Pook  
Ian M P Sly  
Rebecca Godfrey  
Martyn P Nash  
Job J Rustenhoven  
Stephen M Zepke  
Douglas P W Kingsford  
Costin M Sutton

Peter W Brunt  
G Richard Christie  
Mark S Clements  
Karl L Dahm  
Paul R Day  
Nigel K George

Rebecca Godfrey  
C Roger Halkyard  
Shane G Henderson  
Lynley H Hicks  
Margie K Hohepa  
Thomas M Hyde  
Colin D Ives  
Antonia H Jackson  
Douglas P W Kingsford  
Lawrence Lau  
Anne E Lyden  
Graham Y Matthews  
John W McCrystal  
Paul D Moran

*Gerald Agnew Postgraduate Research Fellowship*  
*Italian Scholarships*

*French Teaching Assistantships*

*Shirtcliffe Fellowships*

*Bank of New Zealand Undergraduate Scholarship*  
*Tower Corporation Undergraduate Scholarship*

James N A Morrison  
Martyn P Nash  
Christopher J Poor  
Elizabeth M Rata  
Andrew D Rockell  
Thelma A Rodgers  
Job J Rustenhoven  
Peter N Shand  
E Pippa Storey  
Costin M Sutton  
Rebecca S Tansley  
Richard B Taylor  
Christopher J Were  
Stephen M Zepke  
Simone L Holmes  
Mary L Kisler  
Susan F Young  
Deirdre A Coleman  
Susan L Harvey  
A Maeva O'Donnell  
Britt Paul  
Philip C Armstrong  
E Pippa Storey  
Rhea W Y Liang  
Chung Meng Cheong

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND SCHOLARSHIPS - 1992

The following scholarships for 1992 had been awarded at the time of preparation of the 1993 Calendar:

*Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarship*  
*Auckland Chinese Medical Society Elective Scholarships*

*Auckland City Council 1990 Commemoration Scholarships for Maori Students*

Michelle J Page  
Brett R Cowan  
Simon J Denny  
Raymond W Holden  
Hemi R Jury  
Reece M Kingi  
Adam C Parore  
Edward L M Reid  
Shadrach W Rolleston  
Milton G Ross  
Jamie J A Wilkinson

*Auckland City Council Queen Elizabeth II Scholarships for Pacific Island Polynesian Students*

Paul G Ah Kuoi  
Tauanuu P Aiono  
Halofatafati S Asekona  
Ivanhoe E Atimalala  
Naomi F Bentley  
Ephraim Cooper  
Lina J Eville  
Jacinta Faalili  
Petirini Faireka  
Jacinta A Fidow  
Ulu (F J) Fruean  
Lokeni Fuatagaumu  
Lotu Fuli  
Troy R Gentles  
James C Halafihi  
Maryann N Heather

Tasi B Iosefo  
Finau Kaitu'u  
Pati T M Keenan  
Ian H Laban  
Sonny J Lemalu  
Sam Mamea  
Havila Matangi  
Ruby Z Manukia  
Siakisona Mauwong  
Justine A Mesui  
Jimmy V Ofa  
Patrick T O'Halloran  
Douglas K Papali'i  
'Unaloto K S Pongi  
Heker T Robertson  
Jennifer T Schaaf

Janus V Schaumkel  
Silipa Silipa  
Desirae T Simeti  
Alfred G Soakai  
Christopher R Southern  
Tamasailau M Suaalii  
Iese M Tata  
Raine Tata  
Anamalia L Tauiliili Lia  
Logopati Tautalafua  
Italia J L Toelei'u  
Yvonne S Tuai  
Fagalaoa L S R Tufuga  
Paul L Va'a  
Evelise Togi Vaoga

*Marie d' Albini Scholarship*  
*Barry & Beale & Partners Scholarship*  
*Anne Bellam Scholarships*

Maria C Treadaway  
Stuart A Warren  
Elizabeth S Hirst  
Wendy L Patston  
Andrew Millar  
Stephen A Brandon  
Philip R N Brownlee  
Fiona E Carswell  
Susan M Carnachan  
Adam C Tommy  
Barry M O'Connor  
Susan M Maddock  
Peter M Sands  
Paul D Stubbs  
Callum L Wilson

*Bishop Music Scholarship, Senior*  
*Bishop Music Scholarship, Junior*  
*Frances Briggs Memorial Bursary in Botany, Snr*  
*Frances Briggs Memorial Bursary in Botany, Jnr*  
*Broadcast Communications Ltd (BCL) Scholarship in Communications Engineering*  
*R N Brothers Memorial Award*  
*Frederick Douglas Brown Postgraduate Science Research Scholarship*  
*Buttie Wilson Scholarships in Finance*

Shirley Calderwood Memorial Scholarship  
 Chapman Tripp Sheffield Young Postgraduate Award  
 Comalco Scholarship in Engineering  
 Comalco New Zealand Limited Undergraduate Bursary in  
 Chemical & Materials Engineering  
 Consutel Scholarship in Telecommunications Engineering  
 DowElanco Bursary in Chemical & Materials Engineering  
 Elam Art Scholarship  
 Exicom Scholarship in Radio Communications Engineering  
 Flying Officer Alfred P Fogerty Memorial Scholarships

#### *Geology Centennial Awards*

Winifred Gimblett Scholarship  
 Sir George Grey Scholarship

Harcourts Real Estate Scholarship  
 James Hardie & Co Pty Ltd Bursary in Architecture

#### *Health Research Council of NZ Junior Research Awards in Health Sciences*

Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship  
 Hollinrake Memorial Scholarship  
 Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship  
 Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering  
 IPENZ Craven Scholarship for Postgraduate Research in Engineering  
 C S First Boston Scholarship in Finance  
 C S First Boston Scholarship in Investments

T R Johnston Scholarship  
 Walter Kirby Singing Scholarship  
 Duffus Lubecki Scholarship  
 Janet Bain Mackay Memorial Scholarship  
 Mercer Memorial Scholarship in Aeronautics  
 N Z Federation of University Women (Auckland Branch)  
 Postgraduate Fellowships  
 N Z Steel Research Scholarship  
 OHL Corporation Ltd Scholarship  
 Maurice Paykel Scholarship  
 Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing  
 Wilhelm Penseler Scholarships in Music

Grace Phillips Memorial Bursary  
 Lissie Rathbone Scholarship  
 Lissie Rathbone Additional Scholarship  
 Joe Raynes Scholarship  
 Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarship  
 Reardon Postgraduate Scholarship in Music  
 Rive Memorial Scholarship  
 Sagar Scholarship for String Players  
 Sanders Memorial Scholarships

#### *Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship*

Senior Scholarships  
 Jolanda M Allen  
 Robert T Berks  
 Stephen Bird  
 Suzanne M Borich  
 Kit A Boyes  
 Christopher P Bradley  
 Warren T Buckingham  
 Fiona E Carswell  
 Mui Mui L Chua  
 Alistair Clark  
 Paul B Comer  
 Timothy D G Corballis  
 Patricia R Corbett  
 Simon H Corston  
 Fiona J Cribb  
 Stephen J Depledge  
 John S Frear  
 Catherine G Geeves  
 Anderw Gilman  
 Paul J Goldsmith  
 Paula Green  
 Crispin R Halkyard  
 Fiona M Harnett  
 Lisa J Hay  
 Sharon R Heatherbell  
 Tracy L Hill  
 Cheryl A Holloway  
 Gregory B Horton  
 Tomas M Hyde  
 Matthew C Hyland  
 Josephine T W A Kalan  
 Siew Mae Kwa  
 Peter Le Baige  
 Sarah J Leggott  
 Soon T E Lim  
 Fiona M Maclean

David W Pacey  
 David J Cooper  
 Neal S Wai-Poi

Christian Tribbe  
 Anthony Tse  
 Li Yun Chong  
 Richard N Lewer  
 Matthew P Trent  
 Simon S B Cheung  
 Simon L Cose  
 Gregory J Cocks  
 Mark P Lipman  
 Angus J McFarlane  
 Susan C Tilsley  
 Janina K Adamiak  
 Mui Mui L Chua and  
 David A Wardle  
 Callum L Wilson  
 Peter McG Wood and  
 Marc T Wilson  
 Christopher P Bradley  
 Suzanne M Borich  
 Natalie S Tantrum  
 Susan L Rowe  
 John P O'Sullivan  
 Adam R Barker  
 Christopher P Bradley  
 David P Clatworthy  
 Michael C Blennerhassett  
 and Simon J McDonald  
 David W Pacey  
 Elizabeth J M Wesseling  
 David B Hirst  
 Sarah G Painter  
 Stuart E Norris  
 Jui En Chui  
 Sarah L Dodd  
 Anthony J Van Erp  
 Stuart A Warren  
 G Richard Christie  
 Terri M Crouch  
 William Hanfling  
 Andrew H Uren  
 Mui Mui L Chua  
 Emily A Prentice  
 Lena Erakovich  
 Gail M Haffern  
 Stephen J Depledge  
 Jessica K Shaw  
 Kaye L Glamuzina  
 Natalie S Tantrum  
 Ian W McIntosh  
 Rachel A Wenden  
 Rebecca J Macauley

Todd W Maddock  
 Alistair J McAlpine  
 Simon McDonald  
 Tracey K McIntosh  
 Anthony S Mitchell  
 Yaw Shiun Moh  
 Michelle Moir  
 Robert W O'Callahan  
 Adrian H Ormsby  
 Tanya M Quin  
 Paul L Sinton  
 Simone A Smith  
 Ping Sze Soh  
 Richard G Storey  
 Simon B Tebutt  
 Rodger E Tiedmann  
 John H Tucker  
 Julie Turner

Anthony J Van Erp  
David E Vokes  
David Wardle

Carolyn J Weatherall  
Adrian S Whale

Deborah A Widdowson  
Frances M Wright

*Siemens Bursary in Electrical & Electronic Engineering*  
*Mervyn Walter Stoddart Scholarship in Electrical & Electronic Engineering*  
*Telecom New Zealand Fellowship in Telecommunications Engineering*  
*Telecom New Zealand Scholarship in Telecommunications Engineering*  
*Trans Power Scholarships in Power Systems Engineering*

Maresa K Bunning  
David S C Biggs  
Paul G Bollond  
Vincent I Dirks  
Ying Wai Chan  
Grant A J Elliott  
Michael R Redgrove  
Kevin D Hynds

*Westpac Banking Corporation Scholarship*

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND PRIZES - 1991

### Annual Prizes

*Accounting & Finance*  
*Ancient History*  
*Anthropology*  
*Applied Mathematics*  
*Asian History*  
*Asian Politics*  
*Biochemistry*  
*Botany*  
*Cellular & Molecular Biology*  
*Chemistry*  
*Chinese*  
*Commercial Law (Commerce)*  
*Commercial Law (Law)*  
*Computer Science*  
*Economics*  
*Engineering - Chemical & Materials*  
*Civil*  
*Electrical & Electronic*  
*Engineering Science*  
*Mechanical*  
*Mining*  
*English*  
*Equity and Succession*  
*Fine Arts*  
*French*  
*Geography*  
*Geology*  
*German*  
*Greek*  
*History*  
*Human Biology (BHB II)*  
*Indonesian*  
*Italian*  
*Japanese*  
*Korean*  
*Land Law*  
*Latin*  
*Maori Studies*  
*Marketing & International Business*  
*MBChB*  
*Music*  
*Philosophy*  
*Physics*  
*Physiology*  
*Planning*  
*Property*  
*Psychology*  
*Pure Mathematics*  
*Russian*  
*Scandinavian Studies*  
*Sociology*

Fiona M Harnett  
Therese A Marshall  
Justin W McNab  
Shane G Henderson  
Vanessa J Hamm  
Justin K C Lee  
Simon J Webb  
Peter J Rutledge  
Andrew C Gilman  
Simon J Webb  
Rebecca M Yeates  
Gary J Warren  
Kirsty M Wilkinson  
Robert T Berks  
Ping Sze Soh  
  
Meredith L Bartlett  
Robin M Dawson  
  
Russell L Smith  
Geoffrey B Leyland and  
Karl A Tomlinson  
Jeffrey C Porter  
Richard T Sullivan  
Christopher R Hilliard  
Roger F Wallis  
Julainne S Sumich  
Catherine M Purdie  
Tania M Boyer  
Andrew D Heap  
Nicola L Barfoot  
Martin A Kerr  
Marian F Hutchinson  
Susan M Morton  
Robert J Wills  
Mary R Ginever  
Alison J Currie and  
Vanessa J Hamm  
Lisa A Hansen and  
Li Irene Tsang  
Gregory B Horton  
Martin A Kerr  
Teri I McElroy  
  
Karin S Glucina  
Nicola J Kingston  
Stephen J Depledge  
Clinton G Golding and  
Barry W Moffatt  
Mark K Horsburgh and  
Christopher deL. Heath  
Andrew V Collins  
Catherine P Elvidge  
Thomas Lee  
Noeline G Jonkers and  
Elizabeth J M Wesseling  
Yang Thong Kho  
Jennifer B Twist  
Jeremy D Hunt  
Debra Singh



<i>Andrew Memorial Prize</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	Claudine M Wagg
<i>Antarctica 150 Prize</i>	<i>Zoology</i>	Katharine E J Brunette
<i>Philip Sidney Arden Memorial Prize</i>		Richard T Sullivan
<i>John Asher Prizes in German Literature</i>	<i>Stage II</i>	Diane R Phillips
	<i>Stage I</i>	Christine M McCarthy
		James M Hosking
		Nicola L Barfoot
		and Christa Burkhardt
<i>Asian History Award</i>		Graeme Middleton
<i>Auckland Brick Manufacturers Prizes</i>	<i>First</i>	Stephen M Auld
	<i>Second</i>	Megan A Rule
<i>Auckland Stock Exchange Prize</i>		Paul C Farrington
<i>Auckland Town Planning Assoc Prize in Town Planning</i>		David A Wong
<i>Bartrum Memorial Prizes in Geology</i>	<i>Honours</i>	Keenan Jennings
	<i>Stage III</i>	Alastair R R Clark
<i>Beca Carter Hollings &amp; Ferner Prizes</i>		Keith I Bailey
		Geoffrey J J Tham
<i>L H Briggs Memorial Prize</i>		Michael R Metzler
		and Michael R Mucalo
<i>Dennis Brown Prize in Experimental Physics</i>		Philip J C Smith
<i>Vernon Brown Memorial Award in Architecture</i>		Adrienne K Kyd
<i>Alice Bush Memorial Prize in Paediatrics</i>		Nicola J Kingston
<i>Butland Prize</i>		David J McMahon
<i>Butterworths Prize</i>		Paul A Windeatt
<i>Cairns Slane Prize in Commercial Legal Studies</i>		Matthew L Whineray
<i>R Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize</i>		Megan C Vial
<i>Robert Chapman Prize in Political Studies</i>		Dianne C Harlow
		and Paul R Martin
<i>Chisholm Memorial Prize</i>		Anna R Browne
<i>Ciba-Geigy Prize in Applied Pharmacology &amp; Therapeutics</i>		Nicola J Kingston
<i>Clarkson Measured Drawing Prize</i>		Joseph B Schulze
<i>Coopers &amp; Lybrand Prizes in</i>	<i>Accounting (a)</i>	Jacqueline K Powell
	<i>Accounting (b)</i>	Tracey M Fromon
	<i>Accounting Information Systems</i>	John M Shale
	<i>Financial Management</i>	A Jamie Norwell
<i>Tony Cotton Memorial Prizes</i>	<i>Graduate Award</i>	Giles J N Margetts
	<i>Undergraduate Award</i>	Jannette E Farley
<i>Philip Graham Crabbe Memorial Prize</i>		Thomas M Hyde
<i>Gary Davies Memorial Prizes</i>		Marc A Corlett
		Julian Long
<i>Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize</i>		Linda V Prasad and
		Muriel R Roberts
<i>Deloitte Ross Tohmatsu Prizes in Advanced Financial Accounting</i>		Fiona M Harnett
	<i>First Prize</i>	Richard D Kitto
	<i>Second Prize</i>	Callum L Wilson
<i>Ernst &amp; Young Prize in Cost and Management Accounting</i>		Philip D Keith
<i>Ernst &amp; Young Prize in Financial Accounting</i>		
<i>Fowlds Memorial Prizes</i>	<i>Arts</i>	Philip C Armstrong
	<i>Commerce</i>	Jane Parker
	<i>Engineering</i>	Graham O Hughes
	<i>Medicine &amp; Human Biology</i>	Thomas H Bryant
	<i>Music</i>	Kaye L Glamuzina
	<i>Science</i>	E Pippa Storey
<i>Eric Hector Goodfellow Memorial Prize</i>		Yaw Shiun Moh
<i>James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize</i>		Thomas M Hyde
<i>Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize</i>		Philip G Neary
<i>Habens Prize</i>		Sarah F Fox and
		Glynnis G Paraha
<i>Haydon Prize</i>		Christopher R Hilliard
<i>W E Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine</i>		David J McMahon
<i>Holmes Consulting Group Structural Engineering Prize</i>		Robin M Dawson
<i>George S Holmes Memorial Prize</i>		Rachael A Watkins
<i>George Hopkins Prize</i>		Elizabeth S Hirst
<i>IEE Prize</i>		Michael G Lelieveld
<i>Ilford Photography Prize</i>		Michelle A Moir
<i>Institute of Chartered Secretaries &amp; Administrators Prize</i>		Fleur J Cribb
<i>Institution of Production Engineers Prize</i>		Irwin C Munro and
		Justine C Rooney
<i>A C Keys Memorial Prize</i>		Julie A Bell
<i>Kodak Photography Prizes</i>	<i>Studio V</i>	Lisa A Ganassin
	<i>Studio IV</i>	Haruhiko Sameshima
<i>Law Book Company Ltd Prize</i>		Paul A Windeatt
<i>Leukaemia &amp; Blood Foundation Prize in Molecular Medicine</i>		Sylvia J Boys
<i>Desmond Memorial Lewis Prize in International Law</i>		Anton G R Nannestad

Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology  
 Mainzeal Construction Studies Prize  
 S R de la Mare Memorial Prize  
 Roland Marleyn Prize in German Literature  
 Dr R G McElroy Prize  
 Janetta McStay Prize for Pianists  
 Douglas Mews Composition Prize  
 Mitsubishi Prize in Geothermal Technology  
 Monier Prizes

#### Montgomery Memorial Prize

John Mulgan Memorial Prize  
 N Z Association of Optometrists Undergraduate Awards

N Z Automobile Assoc Prize in Traffic Engineering  
 N Z Computer Society Prize  
 N Z Institute of Architects Prizes

	Fourth Year
	Third Year
	Second Year
	First Year

N Z Institute of Chemistry (Auckland Branch) Prize  
 N Z Institute of Valuers Prize  
 N Z Society of Accountants Prizes

01.300 01.301 and 01.302	First Prize
	Second Prizes

01.200 and 01.201

01.100 and 01.101

N Z Solar Action Prize  
 F E R Noble Memorial Prize  
 J D K North Prize in Clinical Medicine  
 W S O'Connell Prize in Economic History  
 Pathology Prize  
 Peat, Marwick Prizes in Auditing

First Prizes

#### Potter Interior Systems Prizes in Architecture

Geoffrey Powell Prize  
 Property Management Institute Prize

Second Year

First Prize  
 Second Prize

D W Pullar Prize  
 Real Estate Institute Prize  
 Richards Prize in Primary Health Care  
 Douglas Robb Prize  
 Carrick Robertson Prize  
 Roche Prize in Psychiatry  
 Christine Roigard Memorial Prize  
 Royal N Z College of General Practitioners Prize  
 Rudd, Watts & Stone Prize for Income Tax  
 Sagar Geophysics Prize  
 S E T M A Timber Engineering Prize

C M Segedin Prize in Engineering Science  
 SmithKline Beecham Prize in Physiology  
 Yvonne Sogno Prizes in Finance

	01.301
	01.205

#### Squire Speedy Prize in Property Administration

Spicer & Oppenheim Prize 01.200  
 Spicer & Oppenheim Prize in Business Communication  
 Structural Concrete Design Prize  
 John Tinline Prize in English  
 A L Titchener Prize  
 H B Turbott Prize in Community Health  
 G W Eaton Turner Prize  
 Paul Turtill Memorial Awards in Geology

Best Student Geology II  
 Second Award Geology II

Jan M Lindsay  
 Robert A D Bosch  
 Nicola J Kingston  
 Cherie K Ross  
 David A Simpson  
 Stephen J Depledge  
 Cheryl M Spiers  
 Julio A Guidos-Pineda  
 Adrienne K Kyd  
 Dean B Burke  
 Antony P Martin  
 Timothy D G Corballis  
 and James A Rountree  
 Matthew S Lark  
 Sarah E Baker  
 Cara J Lowe  
 Vandana Kumar  
 Douglas J A Wilson  
 Robert W O'Callahan  
 Stephen M Auld  
 Peter McG Wood  
 Adrienne K Kyd  
 Kirsty L Perkinson

Daniel A Beauregard  
 Timothy D Grove

Fiona M Harnett  
 Megan C Chester  
 Richard D Kitto  
 Philip H Brinkman  
 Karen A McGorman  
 William J Morrison  
 Rhys A C Weyburne  
 Catherine Y Skellern  
 Catherine M Syme  
 Brett R Cowan

Megan C Chester  
 Fiona M Harnett

Dean B Burke  
 Julian Long

Helen M Fuscic  
 Mark A Farrands  
 Darren S Hunt  
 Reid D Quinlin  
 Brenda M Gordon  
 Clayton F G Chan  
 David J McMahon  
 Julia M A Rawstorne  
 James M Hosking  
 Laurence R G DeB Anderson  
 Shelley J Cave  
 Costin M Sutton  
 Stephen J Bickers and  
 Stuart J Tucker  
 Christopher P Bradley  
 Todd W Maddock  
 Simon J McDonald  
 Callum L Wilson  
 Mark G J Chase and  
 Kym P Higgins and  
 Shaun M Jackson  
 Sandra L Dawson  
 Peter E Torrington  
 Brent L England  
 Justine L Crump  
 Thomas M Hyde  
 Jennifer A Lucas  
 Mark P Bixley

Jan M Lindsay  
 Charlotte M Severne

*Valuers Registration Board Prize*  
*Seiichi Waki Prize in Physics*

*Wallath Prize*  
*W D Wilson Prize*  
*Wilson-Allison Memorial Prize in Dermatology*  
*Maharaia Winiata Memorial Prize*  
*1928 Staff Award in Mechanical Engineering*

Tara L Woolley  
Alan F Pace and  
E Pippa Storey  
Carl L Eagleton  
Thomas B Gill  
Linda M Ashley  
Katene M Eruera  
C Roger Halkyard

# Prescribed Texts

## Contents

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
Introduction	461	Indonesian	468
Accounting	461	Italian	468
Ancient History	461	Japanese	468
Anthropology	461	Korean	468
Architecture	462	Labour Studies, Diploma in	468
Art History	462	Latin	468
Asian Geography	462	Law	468
Asian Politics	462	Linguistics	468
Asian Studies	462	Management Science and Information Systems	468
Audiology	462	Management Studies and Labour Relations	469
Biochemistry	462	Maori Studies	469
Biology	462	Marketing and International Business	469
Botany	462	Mathematics and Statistics	469
Cellular and Molecular Biology	462	MBA/DipBus	470
Chemistry	462	Medicine	470
Chinese	462	Music	470
Commercial Law	463	Optometry	470
Computer Science	463	Pacific Studies	471
Drama, Diploma in	463	Pharmacology	471
Dutch	463	Philosophy	471
Economics	463	Physics	471
Education	464	Physiology	471
Engineering	464	Planning	471
English	464	Political Studies	471
English Language Teaching, Diploma in	465	Property	472
Environmental Science	465	Psychology	472
Film and Television Studies	465	Russian	472
French	465	Samoan	473
Geography	466	Scandinavian Studies	473
Geology	466	Sociology	473
German	466	Spanish	473
Greek	467	Technology, Bachelor of	473
History	467	Theology	473
Human Biology	467	Translation, Postgraduate Diploma in	473
		Zoology	473

## PREScribed TEXTS

### Introduction

Prescribed texts are those texts that students should purchase.

The list of prescribed texts for 1993 which is set out below in alphabetical subject order is not exhaustive. Additional books may be prescribed during the year. Further lists of such prescribed books may be obtained from the appropriate department.

Recommended books are those books which students may purchase if desired. Lists of recommended books and additional reading guides may be obtained from the appropriate departments.

## ACCOUNTING

### Accounting I

**01.100, T01.100** A.M. Teixeira & D.M. Emanuel, *Accounting in New Zealand* (Wiley, 1990).

**01.101, T01.101** Wilson & Chua, *Managerial Accounting: Method and Meaning*, 2nd edn (Chapman & Hall, 1992).

**01.104, T01.104** Bell, Althea (ed.) *Introductory Accounting & Finance* (Nelson, 1990).

### Accounting II

**01.200, T01.200** Nikolai Bazley, *Intermediate Accounting*, 5th edn (PWS-Kent); others to be advised.

**01.201** New Zealand Society of Accountants, *Financial Reporting for Primary Producers*; H. Halley, *Barton's Executorship Law & Accounts*, 9th edn (Butterworths)

**01.202, T01.202** Hansen & Mowen, *Management Accounting*, 2nd edn (South Western).

**01.203, T01.203** J.W. Wilkinson, *Accounting and Information Systems*, 3rd edn (Wiley).

**01.205, T01.205** Alan C. Shapiro, *Modern Corporate Finance*, 1st edn (Macmillan, 1990).

**01.206** C.P. Jones, *Investments Analysis and Management*, 3rd edn (Wiley).

### Accounting III

**01.300** H.J. Wolk, J.R. Francis & M.G. Tearney, *Accounting Theory: A Conceptual and Institutional Approach*, 2nd edn (PWS-Kent, Boston/Thomas Nelson Australia); *Coursebook 1993* to be purchased at enrolment.

**01.301** Neale, *Auditing, Contemporary Systems, Theory and Practice*; NZSA, *Financial Reporting Standards/SSAPs*; NZSA, *Auditing Standards*.

**01.302** Robin Cooper and Robert S. Kaplan, *The Design of Cost Management Systems*, (Prentice-Hall, 1991).

**01.305** To be advised.

**01.306** Study guide to be purchased at enrolment.

**01.307** Elton & Gruber, *Modern Portfolio Theory & Investment Analysis*, 4rd edn (Wiley).

**01.308** John Hull; *Introduction to Futures and Options Markets*. (Prentice-Hall International Editions, 1992)

## ANCIENT HISTORY

### Ancient History I

**12.100** J.B. Pritchard (ed.) *The Ancient Near East* (Princeton); G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq*, 2nd edn (Pelican); W.K. Simpson (ed.) *Literature of Ancient Egypt* (Yale U.P., New Haven); A.H. Gardiner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.).

**12.102** O. Murray, *Early Greece*, (Stanford UPR); J.B. Bury/R. Meiggs, *A History of Greece* (Macmillan); S. Hornblower, *The Greek World 479-323BC* (Methuen, 1983).

**12.103** M. Cary & H.H. Scullard, *A History of Rome*, 3rd edn (Macmillan); M. Grant & R. Graves (eds) *Suetonius, The Twelve Caesars* (Penguin Classic).

**12.104** Homer, *Iliad*, tr. R. Lattimore (University of Chicago Press/Phoenix paperback); *Plautus the Pot of Gold and other Plays*, tr. E.F. Watling (Penguin); *Menander Plays and Fragments*, tr. N. Miller (Penguin).

### Ancient History II

**12.204** S. Woodford, *Introduction to Greek Art* (Duckworth); G.M.A. Hanfmann, *Roman Art, A Modern Survey of the Art of Imperial Rome* (Norton).

**12.210** A. Gardiner, *Egyptian Grammar* (Oxford); R.O. Faulkner, *A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian* (Oxford).

**12.211** Texts to be supplied by the Department.

**12.213** Polybius, *The Rise of the Roman Empire* (Penguin Classic); W.K. Lacey and B.W.J.G. Wilson, *Res Publica: Roman Politics and Society According to Cicero* (Bristol Classical Press).

**12.220** Texts to be supplied by the Department.

**12.221** G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); S. Dalley, *Mari and Karana* (Longman).

**12.222** A. Andrewes, *Greek Tyrants* (Hutchinson).

### Ancient History III

**12.300** As for 12.220

**12.310** As for 12.210

**12.311** As for 12.211

**12.313** As for 12.213

**12.321** As for 12.221

**12.322** As for 12.222

**12.324** Either T.S. Brown, *The Green Historians* (D.C. Heath, paperback) or S. Usher, *Historians of Greece and Rome* (B.C.P., paperback); Herodotus, *Histories* (Penguin Classics); Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War* (Penguin Classics); Xenophon, *History of My Times and Persian Expedition* (Penguin Classics); Arrian, *Campaigns of Alexander* (Penguin Classics).

### Ancient History for MA and Honours

**12.401** S.N. Kramer, *The Sumerians* (Chicago, 1963) and *History Begins at Sumer* (Thames & Hudson, 1957).

**12.404** N. Lewis, *The Greeks in Egypt* (Oxford, 1986).

**12.430** Mario Liverani, *Prestige and Interest*, (Padova, 1990).

**12.440** Paul Frandsen, *An Outline of the Late Egyptian Verbal System* (Academisk Forlag Copenhagen, 1974).

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

**03.101** B.M. Fagan, *People of the Earth: An Introduction to World Prehistory*, 7th edn (Little Brown, ppb.); M. Hanson, *Apes and Ancestors* (Longman Paul).

**03.102** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle without end* (Penguin).

### Anthropology II

**03.200** R. Firth, *We, the Tikopia*, any edn

**03.201** P. Swadling, *Sepik-Ramu* (PNG Nat. Mus.).

**03.206** R.E.W. Adams, *Prehistoric Mesoamerica*, 1992 Revised edn (University of Oklahoma); H.J. Nissen, *The Early History of the Ancient Near East 9000-2000 B.C.*, (University of Chicago Press); B.M. Fagan, *People of the Earth: an Introduction to World Prehistory*, 7th edn (Little Brown, ppb.).

**03.207** H. Nelson & R. Jurmain, *Introduction to Physical Anthropology*, 5th edn (West); Harrison, Tanner, Pilbeam & Baker, *Human Biology: An Introduction to Human Evolution*, 3rd edn (O.U.P. Auckland).

**03.208** J. Davidson, *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul).

**03.214** E. Wolf, *Europe and the People Without History* (Univ of Calif. Press).

**03.215** C. Renfrew & P. Bahn, *Archaeology: Theories, Methods and Practice* (Thames & Hudson).

**03.219** R.R. Reiter (ed.) *Toward an Anthropology of Women*, any edn (Monthly Review Press).

### Anthropology III

**03.306** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle without end* (Penguin).

**03.308** B.G. Trigger, *A History of Archaeological Thought* (C.U.P.).

**03.309** Frans DeWaal, *Peacemaking Among Primates*, 1st edn (Harvard University Press); Richard Dawkins, *The Selfish Gene*, 2nd edn (O.U.P.).

**03.315** G. Irwin, *The Prehistoric exploration and colonisation of the Pacific* (C.U.P., 1992).

**03.316** J. Dodson, *The Naive Lands*, 1st edn (Longman Cheshire); D. Frankel, *Remains to be seen*, 1st edn (Longman Cheshire).

**03.320** E. Massal & J. Barrau, *Food Plants of the South Sea Islands* (South Pacific Commission Technical Bulletin).

**03.326** S. Shennan, *Quantifying Archaeology* (Edinburgh Univ. Press, 1990).

**03.334** Anthony P. Cohen, *The Symbolic Construction of*

*Community* (Routledge, 1989); Paul Spoonley, David Pearson, Ian Shirlege, *New Zealand Society* (Dunmore, 1990); Bev James & Kay Saville-Smith, *Gender, Culture and Power* (O.U.P., 1989); Jock Phillips, *A Man's Country?* (Penguin, 1987); Julie Park (ed.) *Ladies a Plate* (Auckland University Press, 1991); D. Pearson, *A dream deferred* (Allen and Unwin, 1990).

**03.338** Baker et al., *The Changing Samoans*, (O.U.P., 1986); Harrison et al., *Human Biology: An Introduction to Human Evolution*, 3rd edn (O.U.P.)

**03.342** U. Leute, *Archaeométry* (V.C.H., 1987).

**03.343** B.G. Trigger, *A History of Archaeological Thought*, any edn (C.U.P.); G.W. Stocking, *Race, Culture and Evolution*, any edn (Free Press).

**03.414** H.R. Bernard, *Research Methods in Cultural Anthropology* (Sage, 1988); J. Spradley, *Participant Observation* (Holt, 1980); M. Hammersley, *Whats wrong with ethnography* (Routledge, 1992).

## ARCHITECTURE

Details of any prescribed texts and reading lists will be published in the Department prior to commencement of lectures.

## ART HISTORY

**19.153** W.J. Phillips, *Maori Carving Illustrated* (Heinemann Reed, 1989); E. Puketapu-Hetet, *Maori Weaving* (Pitman, 1989); K. Mataira (ed.) *Maori Artists of the South Pacific* (Nga Puna Waihangā, 1984).

**19.154** M. Dunn, *A Concise History of New Zealand Painting*, (Bateman, 1991).

**19.260** R. Wittkower, *Art and Architecture in Italy 1600-1750* (Pelican History of Art, 1990 edn).

**19.313** H. Hibbard, *Michelangelo* (Penguin, 1986).

**19.401** B. Smith & T. Smith, *Australian Painting 1788-1980* (O.U.P., 1991).

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

See Geography.

## ASIAN POLITICS

See Political Studies.

## ASIAN STUDIES

See relevant entry under Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese.

## AUDIOLOGY

**751.401** J.O. Pickles, *An Introduction to the Physiology of Hearing*, 2nd edn (Academic Press); B.C.J. Moore, *An Introduction to the Psychology of Hearing*, 3rd edn (Academic Press).

**751.402** J. Katz, *Handbook of Clinical Audiology*, 3rd edn (Williams & Wilkins); M. Hannley, *Basic Principles of Auditory Assessment*, 1st edn (Taylor & Francis); B. McCormick, *Paediatric Audiology* (Taylor & Francis, 1988)

**751.403** R.E. Sandlin, *Handbook of Hearing Aid Amplification*, Vol.1 (College Hill Press, 1988).

**751.411** J.T. Jacobsen, *Auditory Brainstem Response*, 1st edn (College Hill Press); *Diagnostic Audiology* (Austin, 1991)

## BIOCHEMISTRY

### Biochemistry I & II

**66.202, 66.203, 66.204, 66.301 & 66.302** C.K. Mathews & K.E. van Holde, *Biochemistry* (Benjamin/Cummings, 1990).

## BIOLOGY

### Biology I

**39.101** H. Curtis & N.S. Barnes, *Part I Biology of Cells*, 5th edn (Worth).

## BOTANY

### Botany I

**06.102** P.H. Raven, R.F. Evert & S.E. Eichhorn, *Biology of Plants*,

4th edn (Worth).

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

### Cellular and Molecular Biology III

**40.303, 304, 305** There are no prescribed texts for 40.303, 40.304 or 40.305. A list of books that are recommended reading may be obtained from the Departmental Office after 1 December.

## CHEMISTRY

### Chemistry I

**08.111** J. E. McMurry, *Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry (ISE)*, 2nd edn ppb. (Brooks/Cole); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.121** P.W. Atkins, *General Chemistry*, 1st or 2nd edn, ppb. (Scientific American Books); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**T08.171** R.M. Harrison et al., *Introductory Chemistry for Environmental Sciences* (Cambridge University Press).

### Chemistry II

**08.210** P.W. Atkins, *Physical Chemistry*, 4th edn (Oxford); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.220** D.F. Shriver, P.W. Atkins, C.H. Langford, *Inorganic Chemistry* (O.U.P.); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.230** J. E. McMurry, *Organic Chemistry*, 2nd or 3rd edn (Brooks/Cole); *Laboratory Manual* (available from Department at enrolment).

**08.250** *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.260** L.G. Hargis, *Analytical Chemistry: Principles and Techniques* (Prentice Hall International edn, 1988).

### Chemistry III

**08.310** P.W. Atkins, *Physical Chemistry*, 4th edn (Oxford); *Laboratory Manual* (available at commencement of laboratory session).

**08.311** *Laboratory Manual* (available at commencement of laboratory session).

**08.320** Ch. Elschenbroich and A. Salzer, *Organometallics*, 2nd edn (VCH Publications); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.321** J. P. Lowe, *Quantum Chemistry*, Student Edition (Academic Press); *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**08.330** *Laboratory Manual* (available at commencement of laboratory session).

**08.331** *Laboratory Manual* (available at commencement of laboratory session).

**08.352** *Laboratory Manual; Supplementary Sheets*, (both available from the Department at enrolment or commencement of laboratory session).

**08.360** D.A. Skoog, *Principles of Instrumental Analysis*, 3rd/4th edn (Saunders International edn).

### Chemistry for MSc

Information available from the Department.

## CHINESE

For papers not listed below course materials and advice about recommended books will be supplied by the Department.

### Chinese I

**48.100 and 48.101** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking); *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking); *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader* (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.102** W.T. De Bary (ed.) *Sources of Chinese Tradition*, Vol. I (Columbia Univ. Press); Chan Wing-tsit, *A Source Book in Chinese Philosophy* (Princeton Univ. Press).

**48.107** L. Jones (comp.) *Progress to first certificate: student's book: new edition* (Cambridge U.P.).

### Chinese II

**48.200** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. II (Commercial Press, Peking); *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol. II (Commercial Press, Peking) *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader* (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.203** Confucius [D.C. Lau (trans.)] *The Analects* (Penguin); Lao Tzu [D.C. Lau (trans.)] *Tao-te Ching* (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

### Chinese III

**48.300** *Speak Chinese about China, Vol. I & II* (Sinolingua, Beijing).

**48.301** G. Barme & J. Minford, *Seeds of Fire* (Hill & Wang, N.Y.); further materials supplied by the Department.

**48.303** Yu Luo Jin [R. May and Zhu Zhiyu (trans.)] *A Chinese Winter's Tale* (Renditions); G. Barme & J. Minford, *Seeds of Fire* (Hill & Wang, N.Y.).

## COMMERCIAL LAW

### Commercial Law I

**02.100, T02.100** *Legal Structures and Reasoning; Legal Environment of Business*, both books available for purchase at enrolment.

### Commercial Law II

**02.200, T02.200** Nicoll and Perkin, *Contract Law in New Zealand* (CCH, 1992); *Restitution Study Guide*, to be purchased at enrolment.

**02.201, T02.201** Farrar, *Butterworth's Commercial Law*, 2nd edn (Butterworth).

**02.202, T02.202** To be advised by the Department of Commercial Law.

**02.204** *Legal Environment of Business*, available for purchase at enrolment.

**02.205** Brown & Grant, *Law of Intellectual Property in New Zealand*.

### Commercial Law III

**02.301** *New Zealand Master Tax Guide*, latest edn (Commerce Clearing House); *New Zealand Income Tax Legislation*, latest edn (Commerce Clearing House).

**02.303** *New Zealand Companies & Securities Legislation*, latest edn (Commerce Clearing House).

**02.305** *New Zealand Companies and Securities Legislation*, latest edn (Commerce Clearing House).

**02.308** To be advised by Department of Commercial Law.

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

### Computer Science I

**07.100** J. Williamson & R. Lobb, *Pascal Exercises 1993* (Available only from Department).

**07.105** R.L. Kruse, *Programming with Data Structures (Pascal Version)* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.111** J. Lennon, *The Explorer's Guide to Programming* (Dunmore Press).

**T07.115** R.L. Kruse, *Programming with Data Structures (Pascal Version)* (Prentice-Hall).

J. Lennon, *The Explorer's Guide to Programming* (Dunmore Press).

### Computer Science II

**07.211** H. Levy & R. Eckhouse (ed.) *Computer Programming and Architecture: The Vax* (Digital).

**07.222** F.R. McFadden and J.A. Hoffer, *Data Base Management*, 3rd edn (Benjamin Cummings).

**07.231** R.L. Kruse, *Programming with Data Structures (Pascal Version)* (Prentice Hall).

### Computer Science III

**07.302** F. Halsall, *Data Communications, Computer Networks and OSI*, 2nd edn (Addison-Wesley).

**07.310** J.P. Hayes (ed.) *Computer Architecture and Organisation*, 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill).

**07.315** F. S. Hill, *Computer Graphics* (Macmillan).

**07.330** B. Hutton, *Language Implementation Lecture Notes* (Available only from Department).

**07.340** M.G. Lane & J.D. Mooney, *A Practical Approach to Operating Systems* (Boyd and Fraser).

**07.351** H.R. Lewis & C.H. Papadimitriou, *Elements of Theory of Computation* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.352** U. Manber (ed.) *Introduction to Algorithms: A Creative Approach* (Addison-Wesley).

**07.361** C. Reade, *Elements of Functional Programming* (Addison-Wesley); I. Bratko, *Prolog Programming for Artificial*

*Intelligence*, 2nd edn (Addison-Wesley).

### Computer Science for MSC

**07.415** J. Foley, A. Van Dam, S. Feiner & J. Hughes, *Computer Graphics, Principles & Practice*, 2nd edn (Addison-Wesley).

**07.417** R.C. Gonzales, P. Wintz, *Digital Image Processing* (Addison-Wesley).

**07.437** B. Meyer, *Object-Oriented Software Construction* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.442** W. Stallings, *Data & Computer Communications*, 3rd edn (Maxwell-Macmillan).

**07.443** A.S. Tanenbaum, *Operating Systems: Design and Implementation* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.450** A. Kaldewaij, *Programming: The Derivation of Algorithms* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.473** W.E. Snyder, *Industrial Robotics: Computer Interfacing & Control* (Prentice-Hall); S. Bennett, *Real-time Computer Control, An Introduction* (Prentice-Hall).

**Note:** Refer to Computer Science Handbook for the recommended reading list for all papers.

## DRAMA, DIPLOMA IN

A booklist will be available from the English Department.

## DUTCH

### Dutch I

**421.100** *Levend Nederlands* Rev. edn (C.U.P.); Wijnen (ed.) *Prisma Woordenboek Engels-Nederlands* (Spectrum, Utrecht/Antwerp).

**421.102** W.Z. Shetter, *The Netherlands in Perspective* (Nijhoff, Leiden).

**421.200** *Woordenboek Nederlands - Engels & Engels - Nederlands* (Wolters-Noordhoff).

## ECONOMICS

### Economics I

**13.100, T13.100** To be advised by Department of Economics.

**13.101, T13.101** To be advised by Department of Economics.

### Economics II

**13.200, T13.200** A.C. de Serpa, *Microeconomic Theory, Issues and Applications*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon Inc.).

**13.201, T13.201** R. Dornbush, *Macroeconomics*, 6th edn (McGraw-Hill, 1992).

**13.203** Dominick Salvatore, *Managerial Economics* (McGraw-Hill, 1989).

**13.205, T13.205** D.N. Gujarati, *Basic Econometrics*, 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill, 1988); A.H. Studenmund, *Using Econometrics* 2nd edn

### Economics III

**13.300** H. Varian, *Microeconomic Analysis*, 3rd edn (Norton); D. Kreps, *A Course in Microeconomic Theory*, 1st edn (Harvester Wheatsheaf).

**13.301** B. T. McCallum, *Monetary Economics, Theory and Policy* (Macmillan 1989); W.M. Scarth, *Macroeconomics: An Introduction to Advanced Methods* (Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovitch).

**13.302** R. Ramanathan, *Introductory Econometrics with Applications*, 2nd edn (Dryden Press 1992).

**13.304** R. Caves and J. Frankel, *World Trade and Payments, An Introduction*, 5th edn (Harper Collins); Peter Lindert, *International Economics*, 9th edn (Irwin).

**13.305** T.E. Copland & F.J. Weston, *Financial Theory and Corporate Policy*, 2nd and 3rd edns (Addison-Wesley Publishing Co. Sydney).

**13.306** R. Ekelund & R. Hébert, *A History of Economic Theory and Method*, 3rd edn (McGraw-Hill, New York 1990); S. Hollander, *Classical Economics*, 1992 paperback edn (recommended supplementary text).

**13.307** J.E. Stiglitz, *Economics of the Public Sector*, 2nd edn (Norton & Co. New York 1988); Barr, *The Economics of the Welfare State* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson).

**13.308** R.G. Ehrenberg & R.S. Smith, *Modern Labor Economics*, 4th edn (Harper Collins, 1991); K. Whitfield, *Contemporary Issues in Labour Economics* (Harper & Row 1989).

**13.314** R. Cooter and T. Ulen, *Law and Economics* (Scott, Foresman & Coy).

**13.320** D. Hay and Derek Morris, *Industrial Economics and Organisation*, 2nd edn (Oxford University Press, 1991).

## EDUCATION

### Education I

**14.100** Jones, Marshall, McCulloch, L. Smith & G. Smith, *Myths & Realities*, 1st edn (Dunmore, 1990).

**14.101** E.M. Hetherington & R.D. Parke, *Child Psychology: A Contemporary Viewpoint*, 4rd edn (McGraw-Hill, 1986).

**14.151** A. Smith, *Understanding Children's Development*, 2nd edn (Allen & Unwin).

### Education II

**14.203** Gage & Berliner, *Educational Psychology*, 5th edn (Houghton-Mifflin).

**14.204** N.E. Gronlund & R.L. Linn, *Measurement and Evaluation in Teaching*, 6th edn (Maxwell Mc.M).

**14.206** A. Jones, 'At School I've Got a Chance' *Culture/Privilege: Pacific Island and Pakeha girls at school* (Dunmore, 1991).

**14.210** G. McCulloch (ed.) *The School Curriculum in N.Z.: History, Theory, Policy & Practice*, 1st edn (Dunmore, 1992).

**14.211** C.B. Cazden, *Classroom Discourse: the language of teacher and child*, 1st edn (Heinemann); J. Lindfors, *Children's language and learning*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall).

### Education III

**14.300** J.F. Lyotard, *The Post Modern Condition* (University of Minnesota Press, 1984).

**14.305** Munro, Manthei & Small, *Counselling: The skills of problem solving* (Longman Paul, 1988).

**14.306** G.S. Belkin, *An Introduction to Counselling*, 3rd edn (Brown); J. Small & T. Ambrose, *Counselling and Guidance towards the Nineties*, 3rd edn (N.Z. Assoc. of Couns.).

**14.308** J.O. Cooper, T.E. Heron & W.L. Heward, *Applied Behaviour Analysis*, 1st edn (Merrill).

**14.309** D. Wood, *How Children Think & Learn*, 1st edn (Basil Blackwell).

**14.310** J.J. Conger, *Adolescence and Youth: Psychological Development in a Changing World*, 4th edn (Harper Collins); R.E. Muuss, *Theories of Adolescence*, 5th edn (Random House).

**14.311** D. D. Bricker, *Early Intervention for At-Risk and Handicapped Infants, Toddlers, and Pre-School Children*, 1st edn (Vort). D.R. Hallahan & J.M. Kauffman, *Exceptional Children: Introduction to Special Education*, 5th edn (Prentice-Hall); B.W. Tuckman, *Conducting Educational Research*, 3rd edn (Harcourt, Brace & Jovanovich).

**14.313** R.K. Yin, *Case Study Research: Design and Methods* (Sage, 1989); L. Cohen, *Research Methods in Education*, 3rd edn (Routledge, 1989).

**14.319** K. Rayner & A. Pollatsek, *Psychology of Reading* (Prentice-Hall).

**14.320** D.J. Stipek, *Motivation to Learn* (Prentice-Hall); M. Townsend, *Children's Friendships and Social Development* (Dunmore).

**14.327** R. Osborne & D. Freyberg, *Learning in Science*, 1st edn (Heinemann).

**14.331** K.W. Lai & B. McMillan, *Learning with Computers: Issues and Applications in NZ* (Dunmore Press).

**14.337** D. Pearson, *A Dream Deferred: Origins of Ethnic Conflict in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, 1990).

### Education for MA and Honours

**14.400** S. Ball (ed.) *Foucault and Education*, 1st edn (Routledge & Kegan Paul).

**14.404** R. Dale, *The State and Education Policy*, 1st edn (Open University Press).

**14.407** D. Wood, *How Children Think and Learn*, 1st edn (Blackwell).

**14.409** Calfee, *Experimental methods in Psychology*, 1st edn (Holt); Jaeger, *Complementary methods for research in education*, 1st edn (American Educational Research Association).

**14.410** G. Egan, *The Skilled Helper*, 4th edn (Brooks/Cole); C. Argyris & D. Schön, *Theory in Practice*, Revised edn (Jossey-Bass).

**14.412** Kazdin, *Single-Case Research Designs: Methods for Clinical and Applied Settings* (Oxford).

**14.413** S.J. Meisels & J.P. Shonkoff (eds) *Handbook of Early Childhood Intervention*, 1st edn (Cambridge University Press);

J.M. Neale & R.M. Liebert, *Science and Behaviour: An Introduction to Methods of Research*, 3rd edn (Prentice Hall Int.); E. Zigler & R.M. Hodapp, *Understanding Mental Retardation*, 1st edn (Cambridge University Press).

**14.416** (a) Professional Issues in Counselling  
G. Corey, M.S. Corey & P. Callanan, *Issues and Ethics in the Helping Professions*, 3rd edn (Brooks/Cole); N. A. Vacc & L.C. Loesch, *Counselling as a Profession* (Accelerated Development, 1987).

**14.416** (b) Psychology of Reading  
Singer & Ruddell, *Theoretical models and processes of reading*, 3rd edn (International Reading Association).

**14.418** I. & H. Goldenberg, *Family Therapy An Overview*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole).

**14.421** G.E. DeBoer, *A History of Ideas in Science Education*, 1st edn (Teachers College Press).

**14.423** R.G. Burgess (ed.) *Field Methods in the Study of Education* (Falmer).

**14.424** R. Gibson, *Critical Theory and Education*, 1st edn (Hodder and Stoughton); M.W. Apple, *Education and Power*, ARK Ed. (ARK Paperbacks, 1985).

**14.425** P. Lather, *Getting Smart* (Routledge).

**14.426** P. Appleman (ed.) *Darwin* (Norton, 1978); M.C. Jacob, *The Cultural Meaning of the Scientific Revolution* (McGraw-Hill, 1988); M.R. Matthews (ed.) *The Scientific Background to Modern Philosophy* (Hackett Publishing Co., 1989).

**14.428** P. Neshet & J. Kilpatrick (eds) *Mathematics and Cognition: A research synthesis by the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Cambridge University Press).

**14.451** S. J. Ball, *The Micro-politics of the School* (Methuen, 1987); I.G. Bolman & T.E. Deal, *Reframing organizations: Artistry, Choice and Leadership* (Jossey-Bass, 1991).

**14.452** C. Argyris & D. Schön, *Theory in Practice: Increasing professional effectiveness*, 2nd edn (Jossey-Bass); S. Kemmis & McTaggart, *The action research planner*, 3rd edn (Deakin University Press).

**14.453** M.S. & G. Corey, *Groups - Process and Practice*, 4th edn (Brooks/Cole); D.W. Sue & D. Sue, *Counselling the Culturally Different*, 2nd edn (Wiley).

**14.457** A.J. Bishop, *Mathematical Enculturation* (Klewer Academic).

## ENGINEERING

Lists of prescribed texts are available from the School of Engineering.

## ENGLISH

Prescribed texts for papers not listed below and recommended texts are included in the book list available from the Department. All students should possess a good dictionary: the *Concise Oxford* or *Collins English Dictionary* is recommended. Students will also find Abrams, *A Glossary of Literary Terms* and Holman, *A Handbook to Literature* useful.

### English I

**18.100** Chaucer: *The Prologue*, R T Davis (ed.) (Harrap); *The Miller's Tale*, J. Winny (ed.) (Cambridge); *The Nun's Priest's Tale*, N. Coghill and C. Tolkien (eds) (Harrap). Shakespeare: *Hamlet*, A. Barton (ed.) (New Penguin Shakespeare); *1 Henry IV*, P.H. Davison (ed.) (Penguin); *Merry Wives of Windsor*, G. R. Hibbard (ed.) (New Penguin).

**18.101** Poetry: *The Penguin Book of American Verse*, G. Moore (ed.) (revised edn). Fiction: J. Joyce, *Dubliners* (Granada); W. Faulkner, *As I Lay Dying* (Penguin); J. Rhys, *The Wide Sargasso Sea* (Penguin); T. Pynchon, *The Crying of Lot 49* (Picador); M. Laurence, *The Diviners* (Virago). Drama: B. Brecht, *The Caucasian Chalk Circle* (Methuen); S. Beckett, *Krapp's Last Tape* (Faber); H. Pinter, *Old Times* (Methuen); C. Hampton, *Savages* (Faber); C. Churchill, *Top Girls* (Methuen); D. Potter, *The Singing Detective* (Faber).

**18.104** E.A. Poe, *The Fall of the House of Usher and Other Tales* (Penguin); E. Brontë, *Wuthering Heights* (O.U.P. World's Classics); C. Dickens, *Great Expectations* (Penguin); M. Twain, *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* (Penguin); T. Hardy, *Tess of the d'Urbervilles* (Macmillan ppb.). J. Austen, *Northanger Abbey*



(Penguin).

18.113 as for 18.103.

## English II

18.200 L. Benson (gen. ed.) *The Riverside Chaucer* (O.U.P. Paperback); *York Mystery Plays*, R. Beadle & P.M. King (eds) (Clarendon); *Three Late Medieval Morality Plays*, G.A. Lester (ed.) (New Mermaid/Benn); *A Chaucer Glossary*, N. Davis, D. Gray et al. (eds) (Clarendon); *Middle English Verse Romances*, D. B. Sands (ed.) (University of Exeter); Malory, *King Arthur and His Knights*, Vinaver (ed.) (O.U.P.).

18.213 Shakespeare: *Macbeth*, *Othello*, *King Lear*, *Antony and Cleopatra* (all New Penguin Shakespeare ppbs); Marlowe, *Complete Plays* (Penguin); Anon, *Arden of Faversham* (New Mermaid); Tourneur, *The Revenger's Tragedy* (New Mermaid); Webster, *The Duchess of Malfi* (New Mermaid); Middleton, *The Changeling* (New Mermaid); A. Gurr, *The Shakespearean Stage* (Cambridge ppb.).

18.220 W. Cather, *My Antonia* (Virago); E.M. Forster, *A Passage to India* (Penguin); V. Woolf, *To the Lighthouse* (Panther); J. Barth, *The Floating Opera / The End of the Road* (Anchor/Doubleday); V. Nabokov, *Lolita* (Penguin); T. O'Brien, *The Things They Carried* (Fontana/Collins); G. Greene, *The Comedians* (Penguin); E.L. Doctorow, *Ragtime* (Picador); K. Ishiguro, *The Remains of the Day* (Faber); L. Erdrich, *Tracks* (Picador); M. Atwood, *Cat's Eye* (Virago).

18.222 W.B. Yeats, *Selected Poetry*, Jeffares (ed.) (Pan); R. Frost, *Selected Poems*, I. Hamilton (ed.) (Penguin); E. Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-1959* (Faber ppb.); W.C. Williams, *Selected Poems* (Penguin); W. Stevens, *Selected Poems* (Faber ppb.); M. Moore, *Complete Poems* (Faber ppb.).

## English III

18.301 *A Guide to Old English: Revised with Prose and Verse Texts and Glossary*, B. Mitchell & F.C. Robinson (eds) (rev. 4th edn, Blackwell).

18.303 G.N. Leech, *A Linguistic Guide to English Poetry* (Longman); G.N. Leech & M.H. Short, *A Linguistic Introduction to English Fictional Prose* (Longman).

18.304 E. Gordon & T. Deverson, *New Zealand English* (Heinemann, 1985); E. Gordon & T. Deverson, *Finding a New Zealand Voice* (New House, 1989).

18.307 Blake, *The Portable Blake*, Kazin (ed.) (Penguin); Wordsworth, *Selected Poems*, W. Davies (ed.) [Dent (Everyman)]; Coleridge, *Selected Poetry and Prose* (Modern Library College); Keats, *The Complete Poems*, Barnard (ed.) (Penguin); Scott, *The Bride of Lammermoor* (Dent (Everyman)); Hogg, *Confessions of a Justified Sinner* (O.U.P. ppb.); Byron, *Don Juan* (Penguin); Shelley, *Selected Poems*, Webb (ed.) (Dent).

18.310 W. Shakespeare, *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, *Much Ado About Nothing*, *As You Like It*, *All's Well That Ends Well*, *Measure for Measure*, *Cymbeline*, *The Winter's Tale*, *The Tempest* (all Penguin).

18.319 Aristotle, Horace, Longinus, *Aristotle/Horace/Longinus: Classical Literary Criticism* (Penguin); P. Sidney, *A Defence of Poetry* (O.U.P.); S.T. Coleridge, *Biographia Literaria* (Everyman pb); M. Arnold, *Essays of English Literature* (Hodder).

18.323 G. Moore (ed.) *Penguin Book of American Verse* (Penguin).

18.325 G.G. Marquez, *One Hundred Years of Solitude* (Picador); S. Rushdie, *Midnight's Children* (Picador); N. wa Thongo, *A Grain of Wheat* (Heinemann); A.K. Amagh, *The Beautiful One's are not yet Born* (Heinemann); S. Ousmane, *The Last of the Empire* (Heinemann); A.A. Aidoo, *Our Sister Kilroy* (Longman); B. Emecheta, *The Joys of Motherhood* (Heinemann); J.M. Coetzee, *Age of Iron* (Penguin); N. Gordima, *My Son's Story* (Penguin); V.S. Naipaul, *A House for Mr Biswas* (Penguin); B. Gilroy, *The Frangipani House* (Heinemann).

18.402 E.V. Gordon (ed.) *An Introduction to Old Norse* (O.U.P.).

18.405 T.S. Eliot, *Collected Poems* (Faber ppb.); E. Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-59*, *Selected Cantos* (both Faber); W. C. Williams, *Selected Poems*, Paterson (both Penguin); A. Curnow, *Selected Poems* (Penguin, 1990); W. Stevens, *Selected Poems* (Faber ppb.).

18.406 W. Shakespeare, *Titus Andronicus*, *King John*, *Richard II*, *I Henry IV*, *2 Henry IV*, *Henry V*, *Julius Caesar*, *Troilus and Cressida*, *Coriolanus* (all Penguin).

18.407 D. Lodge (ed.) *Modern Criticism and Theory: A Reader*

(Longman); K. Silverman, *The Subject of Semiotics* (O.U.P.).

18.409 H. Ibsen, *Peer Gynt*; *Ghosts and Other Plays* (Penguin); A. Chekhov, *Plays* (Penguin); E. Ionesco, *The Bald Prima Donna*, *Rhinoceros* (both Samuel French); S. Beckett, *Waiting for Godot* (Faber); J. Genet, *The Balcony* (Grove Press); A. Miller, *The Crucible*, *After the Fall* (Penguin); H. Pinter, *The Caretaker*, *Old Times* (Methuen); T. Williams, *The Rose Tattoo and Camino Real* (Penguin); S. Shepard, *Seven Plays* (Faber); T. Stoppard, *After Magritte*, *Artist Descending a Staircase*, *Where are they Now?* (Faber); C. Hampton, *The Philanthropist* (Faber) C. Hampton, *Tales from Holywood* (Samuel French); D. Hare, *The Secret Rapture* (Faber); C. Churchill, *Serious Money* (Methuen).

18.414 W.B. Yeats, *Collected Poems* (McMillan or Arrow); S. Beckett, *Watt*, *The Beckett Trilogy Murphy* (all Picador); J. Joyce, *Dubliners*, *A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man* (both Granada).

18.416 D. Allen & W. Tallman (eds), *The Poetics of the New American Poetry* (Grove).

18.418 Congreve, *The Way of the World*, Gibbons (ed.) (New Mermaid); Hobbes, *Leviathan*, MacPherson (ed.) (Penguin); A. Behn, *Five Plays*, Duffy (ed.) (Methuen); J. Dryden, *A Selection*, Conaghan (ed.) (Methuen ppb.).

18.420 J. Dennis & J. Bieringa (eds), *Film in Aotearoa New Zealand* (Victoria U.P.), C. Penley (ed.) *Feminism and Film Theory* (Routledge); R. Lapsley & M. West, *Film Theory: An Introduction* (Manchester U.P.).

18.427 M. Glascoe, *Julian of Norwich: Revelation of Divine Love* (Exeter. U.P.); G. Shepherd, *Ancrene Wisse: Parts 6 and 7* (Manchester. U.P.); B.A. Windeatt, *The Book of Margery Kempe* (Penguin).

18.430 J. Austen, *Persuasion* (O.U.P.); G. Egerton, *Keynotes and Discords* (Virago); A. Brontë, *The Tenant of Wildfell Hall* (Penguin); C. Brontë, *Villette* (Penguin); E. Gaskell, *Cranford/Cousin Phillis* (Penguin), *North and South* (O.U.P./World's Classics); G. Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (O.U.P./World's Classics); O. Schreiner, *The Story of an African Farm* (Penguin); C. Perkins Gilman, *The Yellow Wallpaper* (Virago); E.B. Browning, *Aurora Leigh* (Women's Press); M. Caird, *The Daughters of Danaus* (Feminist Press); E. Dickinson, *A Choice of Emily Dickinson's Verse*, T. Hughes (ed.) (Faber); G. Eliot, *Daniel Deronda* (O.U.P./World's Classics).

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING, DIPLOMA IN

18.502, 18.503, 18.506 Please refer to DipELT Handbook.

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

64.200/36.262 C.E. Kupchella & M.C. Hyland, *Environmental Science: Living within the System of Nature*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, 1989).

## FILM & TELEVISION STUDIES

85.200 D. Bordell & K. Thomson, *Film Art: An Introduction*, (Addison & Wesley); J. Dennis & J. Bieringa (eds) *Film in Aotearoa New Zealand* (Victoria. U.P.); H. Newcomb (ed.) *Television: The Critical View*, 4th edn (O.U.P.).

## FRENCH

### French I

34.100 Omaggio, *Kaleidoscope*, 2nd edn and *Cahier d'exercices* (Random House).

34.101 Departmental-material; Prévert, *Paroles* (LP); Triolet *Le premier accroc coûte 200 francs* (Folio); Anouilh, *L'Alouette* (Folio); Giono, *Un de Baumugnes* (LP).

34.151, 34.152 Terrell et al., *Deux Mondes* and *Cahier d'exercices* (Random House).

### French II

34.200 J. Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (H.B.J.); Departmental material.

34.201 Maupassant, *Boule de suif* (LP); Gide, *L'Immoraliste* (Folio); Mauriac, *Thérèse Desqueyroux* (LP); Camus, *Noces* (Folio); Giraudoux, *La Guerre de Troie n'aura pas lieu* (Larousse).

**34.203** Chateaubriand, *René* (Garnier-Flammarion); Hugo, *Ruy Blas* (Bordas); Musset, *Lorenzaccio* (Bordas); Sand, *La Mare au diable* (Garnier-Flammarion); Departmental material.

**34.214** P. Léon, *Introduction à la phonétique corrective* (Hachette/Larousse); B. Tranel, *The Sounds of French* (C.U.P.); E. Roulet, *Linguistic Theory, Linguistic Description and Language Teaching* (Longmans).

### French III

**34.300** Bescherelle, *L'Art de conjuguer huit mille verbes* (Harrap/Hatier); Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (H.B.S.).

**34.306** Douin de Lavesne, *Trubert* (Droz); Villon, *Poésies complètes* (LP); Departmental material.

**34.309** Stendhal, *Le rouge et le noir* (Garnier); Flaubert, *Madame Bovary* (Classique Garnier); Zola, *Au bonheur des dames* (Garnier-Flammarion); Beauvoir, *L'Invitée* (Folio); Duras, *L'Amant* (Ed. de Minuit).

**34.310** Molière, *Le Malade imaginaire* and *Dom Juan*; Corneille, *L'illusion comique* and *Le Cid*; Racine, *Andromaque*; Marivaux, *Le Jeu de l'amour et du hasard*; Beaumarchais, *Le Mariage de Figaro* (All published by Bordas).

**34.318** Departmental materials.

## GEOGRAPHY

For papers not listed below, see the Department of Geography *Students' Guide* available from the Secretary which lists recommended texts.

### Geography I

**20.102, T20.102** R.J. Johnston (ed.) *The Dictionary of Human Geography*, 2nd edn (Blackwell, 1986).

## GEOLOGY

### Geology I

**T21.108** Intending students should consult with the Department.

**21.110** either I.F. Clark & B.J. Cook (eds) *Perspectives of the Earth* (Australian Academy of Science, 1983) or F. Press & R. Siever, *Earth*, 4th edn (Freeman, 1985).

**21.111** F. Press & R. Siever, *Earth*, 4th edn (Freeman, 1985).

**21.112** W.R. Hamilton, A.R. Woolley, A.C. Bishop, *The Hamlyn Guide to Minerals, Rocks and Fossils* (Hamlyn, 1990).

### Geology II

**21.200** K.A. Rodgers & J.A. Grant-Mackie, *Port Waikato Field Itinerary* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1988); K.A. Rodgers & K.B. Spörli, *Field Geology, a Handbook of Basic Techniques and Safety Practice* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1989).

**21.211** B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means & P.F. Williams, *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons, 1986).

**21.212** C.W. Stearn & R.L. Carroll, *Paleontology: the record of life* (Wiley and Sons, 1989).

**21.213** M.H. Battey, *Mineralogy for Students*, (Longman, 2nd edn 1981).

**21.215** E.G. Ehlers & H. Blatt, *Petrology Igneous, Sedimentary and Metamorphic* (Freeman, 1982); W.A. Deer, R.A. Howie & J. Zussman, *An introduction to the rock-forming minerals*, 2nd edn (Longman, 1992).

### Geology III

**21.300** J.A.E. Allum, *Photogeology and Regional Mapping* (Pergamon, 1966); K.A. Rodgers & K.B. Spörli, *Field Geology, a Handbook of Basic Techniques and Safety Practice* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1988).

**21.303** E.N.K. Clarkson, *Invertebrate Paleontology and Evolution*, 2nd edn (George Allen & Unwin, 1986); N. de B. Hornibrook, R. C. Brazier & C. P. Strong, *Manual of N.Z. Permian to Pleistocene Foraminiferal Biostratigraphy* (N.Z. Geol. Survey, Pal. Bull. 56, 1989); I.G. Speden & I.W. Keyes, *Illustrations of N.Z. Fossils* (Government Printer, D.S.I.R. Information Series 150, 1981).

**21.306, 21.307** P. Kearey & M. Brooks, *An Introduction to Geophysical Exploration*, 2nd edn (Blackwell, 1991).

**21.311** B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means & P.F. Williams, *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons, 1986).

**21.312** M.E. Tucker, *Sedimentary Petrology: an introduction to the origin of sedimentary rocks* (Blackwell Scientific

Publications, 2nd edn, 1991)

**21.314, 21.324** Intending students should consult with the Department.

**21.315** W.A. Deer, R.A. Howie & J. Zussman, *An introduction to the rock-forming minerals*, 2nd edn (Longman, 1992); A.R. Philpotts, *Principles of igneous and metamorphic petrology* (Prentice-Hall, 1990).

**21.319** Intending students should consult with Department.

**21.381, 21.384** W.C. Peters, *Exploration and Mining Geology*, 2nd edn (J. Wiley & Sons, 1987).

**21.382** C.R. Ward, *Coal Geology and Coal Technology* (Blackwell, 1984).

**21.386** P. Kearey & M. Brooks, *An Introduction to geophysical exploration*, 2nd edn (Blackwell, 1991).

## GERMAN

### German I

All students and especially those intending to advance in German are strongly recommended to acquire Pasley (ed.) *Germany, a Companion to German Studies* (Methuen).

**22.100** K. van Eunen et al., *Deutsch Aktiv Neu IC: Lehrbuch, Arbeitsbuch, Glossar Deutsch-Englisch* (Langenscheidt); Nexus et al., *Harrap's German Grammar* (Harrap); Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins).

**22.101** A reader supplied by the Department.

**22.102** Kafka, *Metamorphosis & Other Stories*, (Minerva); Handke, *The Left-Handed Woman*, (Methuen); Fontane, *Effi Briest* (Penguin); J. & W. Grimm, *Selected Tales* (Penguin); T. Mann, *Death in Venice and Other Stories* (Bantam Classic).

**22.103** Nexus et al., *Harrap's German Grammar* (Harrap); Collins-Klett *German-English Dictionary*, Vol. I (Collins).

**22.105** Terrell et al., *Kontakte*, 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill Inc.).

### German II

**22.200** Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden - Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden). A reader supplied by the Department.

**22.202** Andersch, *Sansibar* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Rilke, *Neue Gedichte* (Insel Taschenbuch); Brecht, *Leben des Galilei*, (Edn Suhrkamp); Walser, *Ein fliehendes Pferd*, (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Kafka, *Die Söhne, Drei Geschichten*, (Fischer Taschenbuch); Herd/Obermayer (eds), *A Glossary of German Literary Terms* (Otago).

**22.203** Clyne, *Language and Society in the German-Speaking Countries* (C.U.P., ppb.); R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden-Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden); further materials to be supplied by the Department.

### German III

**22.300** R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden - Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden); F. Hackl, *Abschied von Sidonie* (Diogenes); Dürrenmatt, *Der Richter und sein Henker* (rororo); Böll, *Das Brot der frühen Jahre* (div); Schwaiger, *Wie kommt das Salz ins Meer* (rororo); selected texts to be supplied by the Department.

**22.301** Paul/Bonath (eds) *Hartmann von Aue, Der arme Heinrich*, 15th edn (Niemeyer); Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (AUP/OU); Brüder Grimm, *Ausgewählte Kinder- und Hausmärchen* (one vol. edn) (Reclam).

**22.302** Grillparzer, *Der arme Spielmann*, (Reclam); Stifter, *Brigitta* (Reclam); Fontane, *Irrungen, Wirrungen* (Ullstein); T. Mann, *Buddenbrooks* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Goethe, *Faust, Der Tragödie erster Teil*, (Reclam); Boyle, *Faust Part One* (C.U.P.).

**22.350** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch* (Duden); further texts to be supplied by the Department; Sykes & Scholze-Stubenrecht (eds), *The Oxford-Duden German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Clarendon Press).

**22.309** Materials to be supplied by the Department.

### MA and Honours

**22.400** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch* (Duden); Hammer, *German Grammar and Usage* (Arnold); R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden-Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden); Sykes & Scholze-Stubenrecht (eds) *The Oxford-Duden German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Clarendon Press).

**22.402** Wolfram von Eschenbach, *Parzival*, Studienausgabe (de Gruyter); Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (AUP/OU).

- 22.408** Andersch, *Sansibar oder der letzte Grund* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Andersch, *Der Vater eines Mörders* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Grass, *Die Blechtrommel* (Luchterhand Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Kassandra* (Luchterhand Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Voraussetzungen einer Erzählung: Kassandra* (Luchterhand Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Sommerstück* (Luchterhand Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Was Bleibt* (Aufbau); Walser, *Brandung*, (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch).  
**22.411** Brüder Grimm, *Kinder - und Hausmärchen*, (three vol. edn) (Reclam).  
**22.422** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch von A-Z* (Duden).

## GREEK

### Greek I

- 10.100** Texts will be supplied by Department.  
**10.102** Henry and Betts, *Teach Yourself Ancient Greek* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1989).

### Greek II

- 10.200** *Herodotus Bk. VI*, ed. E.S. Shuckburgh (Pitt. Press CUP, 1965); Aristophanes: *Scenes from the Birds*, W.H. Oldaker BCP (CUP 1926)  
**10.201** Plato, *Crito*, ed. J. Adam (CUP repr., 1984)  
**10.202** *Hellenisti*. To be purchased from the Department.

### Greek III

- 10.300** As for Greek II.  
**10.301** Sophocles, *Oedipus Rex*, ed. R.D. Dawe (CUP 1984).  
**10.302** North & Hillard, *Greek Prose Composition*.  
**Greek for MA and Honours**  
**10.407** Aeschylus, *Agamemnon*, eds J.D. Denniston and D. Page (OUP 1957); Sophocles, *Antigone*, eds R.C. Jebb and E.S. Shuckburgh (CUP repr., 1966).

## HISTORY

The Department will issue leaflets entitled *Advice on Books to Buy* relating to these papers and to others not listed below.

### History I

- 24.101** G. Gill, *Stalinism* (Macmillan Education, 1990); and J.N. Westwood, *Endurance and Endeavour: Russian History 1812-1986*, 3rd edn (Oxford, 1987).  
**24.105** C. Sellers, H. May, N. McMillen, *A Synopsis of American History*, Vol. 2, 6th edn (Houghton Mifflin); M. Marable, *Race Reform and Rebellion*, 2nd edn (MacMillan); J. Dos Passos, *U.S.A.: 1919* (Signet Classic)  
**24.107** B. Brookes, C. Macdonald & M. Tennant (eds) *Women in History: Essays on European Women in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, 1986); S.M. Evans, *Born for Liberty: A History of Women in America* (The Free Press, 1989).  
**24.140** One 16th century text and one 17th century text to be chosen from: T. Munck, *Seventeenth Century Europe 1598-1700* (Macmillan, 1990); J. Lotherington, *Years of Renewal, European History, 1470-1600* (Edward Arnold, 1988); D. Maland, *Europe in the Sixteenth Century* (Macmillan); D. Maland, *Europe in the Seventeenth Century* (Macmillan); H. Koenigsberger & G.L. Mosse, *Europe in the Sixteenth Century* (Longman); D.H. Pennington, *Seventeenth Century Europe* (Longman).

### History II

- 24.201** M. Clanchy, *England and its Rulers, 1066-1272* (Fontana, 1983).  
**24.214** A.R. Myers, *Parliaments and Estates in Europe to 1789* (London, 1975).  
**24.215** K. Wrightson, *English Society 1580-1680* (Hutchinson, ppb., 1982); or J.A. Sharpe, *Early Modern England: A Social History 1550-1760* (Arnold, ppb., 1987).

### History III

- 24.301** L. Bethell (ed.) *Mexico Since Independence*, paperback edn (Cambridge University Press, 1991)  
**24.333** R. Collins, *Early Medieval Europe 300-1000* (Macmillan, 1991).  
**24.336** P. Burke, *Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe* (Gower, ppb., 1988) or B. Reay (ed.) *Popular Culture in Seventeenth-Century England* (Routledge, ppb., 1988).

### MA and Honours

- 24.404** G.R. Elton, *The Tudor Constitution* (C.U.P., 1982); M.A.R. Graves, *The Tudor Parliaments* (Longman, ppb., 1985).

- 24.410** J. Tosh, *The Pursuit of History* (Longman, ppb., 1984).  
**24.414** L. Friedman, *The Republic of Choice* (Harvard); S. Levinson, *Constitutional Faith* (Princeton); W. Wiecek, *Liberty under Law* (John Hopkins)

## HUMAN BIOLOGY

### Human Biology I

- 60.100, 60.101, 60.102** Ville, Solomon, Martin, Berg, Davis, *Biology*, 2nd edn (Saunders College Publishing); *Molecular Biology, Microbiology and Genetic Immunobiology* (Department of Molecular Medicine).  
**60.103, 60.104, 60.105** T.W. Gordon Solomons, *Organic Chemistry*, 4th edn (Wiley, 1988); G. Duncan, *Physics in the Life Sciences*, 2nd edn (Blackwell Scientific Publications); Mathews and Van Holde, *Biochemistry* (Benjamin Cummings).  
**60.108** W. Weiten, *Psychology: Themes and Variations*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole, 1992); *Hauora: Maori Standards of Health* (MRC Special Report Service, 78); *Treaty of Waitangi and Social Policy* (Royal Commission on Social Policy).

### Human Biology II

- 60.205** Either D.H. Cormack, *Ham's Histology*, 9th edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., hardback or softcover version, 1987), or D.H. Cormack, *Essential Histology*, 1st edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., 1992); optional additional text: *Either* Wheater Burkitt & Daniels, *Functional Histology* (Churchill Livingstone) or Erlandsen & Magney, *Color Atlas of Histology* (Mosby Year Book, 1992); Moore, *Before We are Born* (W.B. Saunders); Moore, *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*, 3rd edn (Williams & Wilkins, 1992); optional additional texts: Grants, *Atlas of Anatomy*, 9th edn (Williams & Wilkins); Netter, *Atlas of Human Anatomy* (Giba-Geigy) [not available in N.Z. at the moment]; Frick; Leonhardt, Stark, Thieme, *Human Anatomy I & II* (flexibook).  
**60.206** L. Stryer, *Biochemistry*, 3rd edn (Freeman, 1988); Mathews and Van Holde, *Biochemistry* (Benjamin Cummings).  
**60.207** J.B. West, *Best & Taylor's Physiological Basis of Medical Practice*, 12th edn (Williams & Williams).  
**60.208** R. Bolton, *People Skills* (Prentice-Hall, 1986); C. Peterson, *Looking Forward Through the Lifespan: Developmental Psychology*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, 1989); E.P. Sarafino, *Health Psychology: Biopsychosocial Interactions* (Wiley, 1990).

### Human Biology III

- 60.300** *Course Manual in Immunobiology* (Department of Molecular Medicine); Joklik, Willett & Amos, *Zinsser Microbiology*, 19th edn (Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1988) optional.  
**60.301** Either Robbins & Cotran & Kumar, *Pathologic Basis of Disease*, 4th edn (Saunders, 1989) or McGee, J.O'D., P.G. Isaacs, N.A. Wright, *Oxford Textbook of Pathology*, vol. 1, 2A & 2B, 1st edn (Oxford 1992); or P. Chandrasoma, *Concise Pathology* (Appleton-Lange, 1991) or R.N.M. Mac Sween, K. Whalley, *Muir's Textbook of Pathology*, 14th edn (Arnold, 1992) or Rubin & Farber, *Pathology*, 1st edn (Lippincott, 1988); *Course Manual in Pathology* (Department of Pathology).  
**60.302** Wilkinson, *Neuroanatomy for Medical Students*, 2nd edn (Butterworth, Heinemann, 1992); Moore, *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*, 3rd edn (Williams & Wilkins, 1992) as listed for Human Biology II.  
**60.304** Either D.H. Cormack, *Ham's Histology*, 9th edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., hardback or softcover version, 1987) or D.H. Cormack, *Essential Histology*, 1st edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., 1992); optional additional text: *Either* Wheater Burkitt & Daniels, *Functional Histology* (Churchill Livingstone) or Erlandsen & Magney, *Color Atlas of Histology* (Mosby Year Book, 1992); Moore, *Before We are Born* (W.B. Saunders); A.L.R. Findlay, *Reproduction and the Fetus* (Arnold, London, 1984).  
**60.305, 60.306** J.B. West, *Best & Taylor's Physiological Basis of Medical Practice*, 12th edn (Williams & Williams).  
**60.307** Wingard, Brody, Larner & Schwarz, *Human Pharmacology - Molecular to Clinical*, 1st edn (Mosby-Williams & Wilkins Pty. Ltd.); B.G. Katzung (ed.) *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*, 4th edn. Required reading will be placed on reserve at the Philson Library.  
**60.308** E.P. Sarafino, *Health Psychology: Biopsychosocial Interactions* (Wiley, 1990); required reading will also be placed on

reserve at the Philson Library.

## INDONESIAN

For papers not listed below course materials and advice about recommended books will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian I

**80.100, 80.101** Ian J. White, *BAHASA TETANGGAKU, Coursebook and Workbook, Stage One* (Longman Cheshire Pty Ltd, 1988).

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

**35.104** Concise Cambridge Italian Dictionary (Penguin).

**35.106, 35.107** *Collins pocket Italian/English, English/Italian Dictionary or Dizionario Italiano/Inglese, Inglese/Italiano* (Garzanti); (students who intend to continue with Italian should purchase the prescribed dictionary for 35.200); J. Germano & C. Schmitt, *Italian Grammar* (McGraw-Hill).

**35.110** S. Aleramo, *A Woman* (University of California Press); L. Pirandello, *Six Characters in Search of an Author* (Eyre Methuen); E. Vittorini, *Conversation in Sicily* (Quartet); D. Maraini, *Woman at War* (Italcia).

### Italian II

**35.200** Grammar text to be advised; *Collins Sansoni Italian/English, English/Italian Dictionary*.

**35.204** I. Calvino, *Fiabe Italiane* (Selections) (Manchester U.P.); N. Ginzburg, *Valentino* (Einaudi); L. Sciascia, *A ciascuno il suo* (Einaudi); departmental material.

**35.209** Machiavelli, *Il Principe* (B.U.R.); Castiglione, *Il Cortegiano* (Mursia).

**35.210** Machiavelli, *The Prince* (trans.) G. Bull, (Penguin); Castiglione, *The Book of the Courtier* (trans.) C. Singleton (Anchor).

**35.231** D. Fo, *Morte accidentale di un anarchico* (Einaudi); and departmental material.

### Italian III

**35.300** G. Lazzarino, Da Capo, (Holt, Rinehart, Winston); *Collins Sansoni Italian/English, English/Italian Dictionary*.

**35.302** Dante, *Inferno* (La Nuova Italia).

**35.303** G. Boccaccio, *Decameron* (Laterza); F. Petrarca, Departmental material.

**35.322** Departmental material.

**35.332** L. Pirandello, *Three Plays* (Manchester U.P.); Italo Calvino, *Le città invisibili* (Einaudi); Clara Sereni, *Casalinghitudine* (Einaudi); and Departmental material.

## JAPANESE

For papers not listed below course materials and advice about recommended books will be supplied by the Department.

### Japanese I

**81.100, T81.100, 81.101, T81.101** T. Akima, K. Henshall & T. Takagaki, *An Intensive Approach to Japanese* (Auckland University, 1993).

**81.103** H.P. Varley, *Japanese Culture* (Tuttle).

### Japanese II

**81.201** Tokai University, *Intermediate Japanese I* (Bonjin-sha).

### Japanese III

**81.301** Tokai University, *Intermediate Japanese I* (Bonjin-sha) and materials supplied by the Department.

### Japanese for MA and Honours

**81.402-409, 81.411-413** Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.410** To be advised at enrolment.

## KOREAN

For papers not listed below course materials and advice about recommended books will be supplied by the Department.

### Korean I

**449.100, 449.101** To be advised at enrolment. Further materials supplied by the department.

### Korean II

**449.200** C. Park & K. Pak, *Korean I. An Intensive Course* (Yonsei University Press).

### Korean III

**449.300** K. Pak, *Korean II, An Intensive Course* (Yonsei University Press).

## LABOUR STUDIES, DIPLOMA IN

A reading list will be available from the Centre for Labour Studies.

## LATIN

### Latin I

**09.100** To be issued by the Department.

**09.102** C.T. Lewis, *Elementary Latin Dictionary* (OUP); N. Goldman & L. Szymanski, *English Grammar for Students of Latin* (Ann Arbor, Michigan); W.F. Richardson, *Ab Ovo* (to be purchased from the Department).

### Latin II

**09.200** Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 1, ed. A.G. Lee (Bristol Classical Press). For other texts consult the Department.

**09.201** Horace, *Odes & Epistles* (To be issued by the Department).

**09.202** *In Itinere* (To be purchased from the Department).

### Latin III

**09.300** *Roman Love Elegy*; Plautus. Students should consult Department about recommended editions.

**09.301** Tacitus, *Annals* (Selections). To be issued by the Department.

**09.302** Material will be provided by the Department.

### Latin for MA and Honours

**09.402** Intending students should consult the Department.

**09.403** Intending students should consult the Department.

## LAW

Details of prescribed texts are available from the Faculty Office of the School of Law.

## LINGUISTICS

### Linguistics I

**83.102** V. Fromkin & R. Rodman, *An Introduction to Language*, 4th edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1988); E. Finegan, N. Besnier, D. Blair & P. Collins, *Language: its structure and use*, Australian edn (Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich).

**83.104** E. Finegan, N. Besnier, D. Blair & P. Collins, *Language: its structure and use*, Australian edn (Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich).

### Linguistics II

**83.202** T. Crowley, *An Introduction to Historical Linguistics*, 2nd edn (O.U.P.).

**83.203** F. Katamba, *An Introduction to Phonology*, 2nd edn (Longman).

### Linguistics III

**83.303** R. Clark, *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax*, 1st edn (Linguistic Society of N.Z.).

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

**74.100** D. Kroenke, *Management Information Systems*, 2nd edn (McGraw Hill); J. Sheffield, M. Myers, *New Zealand Cases in Information Systems*, 2nd edn (Pagination Publishing). Metzelaar & Fox, *Hands-on +* (Benjamin Cummings).

**T74.110** D. Kroenke *Management Information Systems*, 2nd edn, (McGraw Hill); J. Sheffield, M. Myers, *New Zealand Cases in Information Systems*, 2nd edn (Pagination Publishing). Metzelaar & Fox, *Hands-on +* (Benjamin Cummings).

### MSIS II

**74.200, T74.200** Chase, Aquilano, *Production and Operations Management*, 6th edn (Irwin).

**74.220** Whitten, Benton, Barlow, *Systems Analysis and Design*, 2nd edn (Irwin).

**74.221, T74.221** D.D. McCracken, D.G. Golden, *Simplified Structured COBOL with Micro Soft/Micro Focus COBOL*, (Wiley).

**74.222, T74.222, 07.222** F. McFadden, & J. Hoffer *Database Management*, 3rd edn (Benjamin-Cummings).

**MSIS III**

- 74.300** Vollman, Berry, Whybark, *Manufacturing, Planning & Control Systems*, 3rd edn (Dow-Jones Irwin).
- 74.301** Kezbon, Schilling, Edward, *Dynamic Project Management: A Practical Guide for Managers and Engineers* (Wiley, 1989).
- 74.302** No Text.
- 74.310, 26.362** Joran & Gryna, *Quality Planning & Analysis*, 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill).
- 74.320** No Text.
- 74.321** No Text.
- 74.323** R.K. Wysocki, J. Young, *Information Systems Management-Principles in Action* (John Wiley & Sons).
- 74.324** W. Stallings, *Business Data Communications* (Maxwell, MacMillan International).
- 74.325** E. Turban, *Expert Systems & Applied Artificial Intelligence* (McMillan 1992).
- 74.326** C. Dunlop, & R. Kling, *Computerisation and Controversy: Value Conflict and Social Choices* (Academic Press).
- 74.327** No Text.
- 74.400** C. Giffi, A.V. Roth, G.M. Seal, *Competing in World Class Manufacturing: America's 21st Century Challenge* (Richard Irwin Inc., 1990).
- 74.405** No Text.
- 74.411** No Text.

---

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

**MSLR II**

- 72.204, T72.204** To be advised by Department.
- 72.207, T72.207** J. Deeks & P. Boxall, *Labour Relations in New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1989).
- 72.303** R. Bean, *Comparative Industrial Relations* (Croom Helm, 1985).
- 72.307** To be advised by the Department.
- 72.314** F.X. Sligo, *Effective Communication in Business* (Software Technology (NZ) Ltd., 1988).
- 72.317** J. Firth-Cozens, and M.A. West (1991) *Women at Work: Psychological and Organizational Perspectives* (Buckingham Open University Press).
- 72.325** S.P. Robbins, and N.S. Barnwell, *Organisation Theory in Australia* (Prentice Hall, 1989).
- 72.326** J.A.F. Stoner, and R.E. Freeman, *Management*, 4th edn (Prentice Hall International Editions, 1989).
- 72.421** D.S. Pugh, and D.J. Hickson, *Writers on Organizations*, 4th edn (Penguin Business); Charles Perrow, *Complex Organizations: A Critical Essay*, 3rd edn (Random).

---

## MAORI STUDIES

**Maori Studies I**

- 04.101, N04.101, T04.101** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle Without End* (Penguin, 1990).
- 04.106**, H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983).
- 04.107**, H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language*. (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); B. Biggs, *English-Maori Dictionary* (Reed Methuen 1986).
- 04.109, T04.109** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); B. Biggs, *Lets Learn Maori* (Uniprint 1986).
- 04.110, T04.110** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann 1983); B. Biggs (translated by C. Barlow) *Me Ako Taatou i te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990); B. Biggs, S.M. Mead, P. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori* (Biggs, 1990).
- 04.111** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); *Me Ako Taatou i te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990); M. Penfold, *Ngaa Hiikoi Tuatahi*; (available from the Department of Maori Studies

Secretary).

- 04.112** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); B. Biggs (translated by C. Barlow) *Me Ako Taatou i te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990).
- 04.113** University of Auckland, *Tane-nui-a-rangi* (Uniprint, 1991)
- Maori Studies II**
- 04.203** J. Davidson, *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1984).
- 04.204** B. Biggs, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); B. Biggs, S.M. Mead, P.W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori*; B. Biggs, C. Lane, H. Cullen, *Readings from Maori Literature*; H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975).
- 04.205** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); B. Biggs, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (A.U.P., 1980); B. Biggs (transl. by C. Barlow) *Me Ako Taatou I Te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990).
- Maori Studies III**
- 04.302** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle Without End* (Penguin, 1990).
- 04.305** R. Clark, *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976)
- 04.306** B. Biggs, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); B. Biggs, S.M. Mead, P.W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori*.
- 04.307** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); B. Biggs, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980); B. Biggs, trans. C. Barlow, *Me Ako Taatou I Te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990).
- 04.308** A. Ward, *A Show of Justice* (Oxford, 1973); R. Firth, *Economics of the New Zealand Maori* (Govt Printer, 1959/1973); J.A. Williams, *Politics of the New Zealand Maori* (Oxford, 1969/1977).
- 04.311** *Tane-nui-a-Rangi* (University of Auckland, 1988).
- 04.312** S. Hockey, *SNOBOL - Programming for the Humanities* (Oxford University Press, 1985); R. Griwold et al., *The SNOBOL Programming Language*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, 1971).
- 04.313** A. Woodset al., *Statistics in Language Studies* (Cambridge University Press, 1986).
- 04.314** Sir Apirana Ngata, *Nga Moteatea* Vols. I, II, III, IV (Reed); Makereti, *The Old-time Maori* (New Women's Classics, 1986).
- Maori Studies for MA**
- 04.403** E. Best, *Maori Religion and Mythology*, 2 vols (Govt Printer, 1976/1982); R. De Vaux, *Ancient Israel* (McGraw-Hill, 1984).

---

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

**MIB II**

- 71.200, T71.200** W. Keegan, S. Moriarty, and T. Duncan, *Marketing*, (Prentice Hall, 1992).
- 71.201, T71.201** J.D. Daniels & L.H. Radebaugh, *International Business: Environments and Operations*, 6th edn (Addison-Wesley, 1991).
- 71.300** D.A. Aakker, *Strategic Market Management*, 3rd edn (Wiley); L. Brown, *Competitive Marketing Strategy* (Thomas Nelson, Australia).
- 71.301** J.F. Engel, R.D. Blackwell & P.W. Miniard, *Consumer Behaviour*, 6th edn (Dryden Press, 1990).
- 71.302** Dillon, Madden, & Firtle, *Marketing Research in a Marketing Environment*, 2nd edn (Irwin, 1990).
- 71.304** M.L. Rothschild, *Advertising: From Fundamentals to Strategies*, (D.C. Heath, 1987). V. Terpstra & R. Sarathy, *International Marketing*, 5th edn (Dryden).

---

## MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

Printed material for the following courses may be purchased from the Department at enrolment:

**26.101, T26.101, 26.102, 26.120, 26.121, 26.165, T26.165,**

**26.180, 26.181, 26.182, T26.187, 26.188, T26.188.**

#### Stage I

**T26.107, 26.108, T26.108** Frank S. Budnick, *Applied Mathematics for Business, Economics and the Social Sciences*, 4th edn (McGraw-Hill International).

**26.140, 26.141** J. Stewart, *Calculus*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole Publishing Company).

**26.142** L.D. Hoffmann & G.L. Bradley, *Calculus for Business, Economics and the Social and Life Sciences*, 5th edn (McGraw-Hill).

**26.175** D. Edwards & M. Hamson, *Guide to Mathematical Modelling*, 1988 edn (Macmillan).

**26.180, 26.181, 26.182, 26.188, T26.188** Calculators: A battery-powered calculator is required which has at least the following facilities: square roots, exponential and logarithmic functions, mean and standard deviation.

#### Stage II

Printed material for the following courses may be purchased from the Department at enrolment:

**26.200, 26.220, 26.221, 26.222, 26.281, 26.288, T26.288, 26.290.**

**26.225** K.A. Ross & C.R.B. Wright, *Discrete Mathematics*, 3rd edn (Prentice-Hall).

**26.240** J. Stewart, *Calculus*, any edn (Brooks/Cole Publishing Company).

**26.241** T.M. Apostol, *Calculus Volume I*, 2nd edn (Wiley International); J. Stewart, *Calculus*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole Publishing Company).

**26.260** Either D.G. Zill, *Differential Equations with Boundary-Value Problems*, 2nd edn (PWS-Kent, 1989) or D.G. Zill, *A First Course in Differential Equations with Applications*, 4th edn (PWS-Kent, 1989).

**26.293, T26.293** H. Emmons, A.D. Flowers, C.M. Khot, K. Mathur, *STORM* (Personalised version 3.0); *Quantitative Modelling for Decision Support* (Holden-Day, 1992)

#### Stage III

Printed material for the following course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment:

**26.331.**

**26.320** J.A. Galian, *Contemporary Abstract Algebra*, 2nd edn (Heath).

**26.325** R.P. Grimaldi, *Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics*, 2nd edn (Addison-Wesley).

**26.330** K.G. Binmore, *Mathematical Analysis*, any edn (Cambridge University Press).

**26.335** E.T. Copson, *Metric Spaces* (Cambridge University Press, 1979).

**26.345** R.V. Churchill, J.W. Brown, R.F. Verhey, *Complex Variables and Applications*, 5th edn (McGraw-Hill Book Co.).

**26.376** D.R. Bland, *Wave Theory and Applications*, 1988 (Oxford - Clarendon).

**26.387** J.J. McCutcheon & W.F. Scott, *An Introduction to the Mathematics of Finance*, 2nd edn (Butterworths Heinemann).

**26.390** J.D. Lambert, *Numerical Methods for Ordinary Differential Systems*, (John Wiley & Sons, 1991).

**26.391, 26.395** F.S. Hillier & G.J. Lieberman, *Introduction to Operations Research*, 5th edn (McGraw-Hill).

### MBA/DIPBUS.

Please refer to the appropriate handbook produced by the Graduate School of Business.

### MEDICINE

Reading lists for MBChB are published in *The Handbook of the Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology*.

### MUSIC for BA and BMUS

#### Music I

**28.101** A. Trubitt & R. Hines, *Ear Training and Sight Singing* (Schirmer).

**28.103** D.J. Grout, *A History of Western Music*, 4th edn (Norton); C. Palisca (ed.) *Norton Anthology of Western Music* 2 vols, 2nd edn (Norton).

**28.104** P. Griffiths, *A Concise History of Modern Music* (Thames & Hudson); C. Belz, *The Story of Rock* (O.U.P.); A. Copland, *What to Listen for in Music* (Mentor).

**28.113** T.D. Rossing, *The Science of Sound*, 2nd edn (Addison-Wesley) (preferred text) or J. Backus, *The Acoustical Foundation of Music*, 2nd edn (Norton).

#### Music II

**28.202** J.S. Bach, *Two Part Inventions*, any edn; Riemenschneider/Bach, *371 Chorales*.

**28.203** J. Yudkin, *Music in Medieval Europe*, 1st edn (Prentice Hall).

**28.207** D.J. Grout, *A History of Western Music*, 4th edn (Norton); F. Blume, *Classic and Romantic Music* (Norton)

**28.215** S. Adler, *Workbook for the Study of Orchestration*, 2nd edn (Norton).

**28.216** D. Keane, *Tape Music Composition* (Oxford).

#### Music III

**28.301** As for 28.103.

**28.303** As for 28.203.

**28.307** As for 28.207.

#### Music for Masters & Honours

**28.409** H. Schenker, *Five Graphic Analyses* (Dover).

**22.415** A. Blatter, *Orchestration/Instrumentation* (Schirmer).

### OPTOMETRY

#### PART I

**744.201** M.H. Freeman, *Optics*, 10th edn (Butterworths).

**744.202** S. I. Fox, *Human Physiology*, 3rd edn (W.C. Brown).

**744.203** R.S. Snell & M.A. Lemp, *Clinical Anatomy of the Eye*, 1st edn (Blackwell Scientific Publications).

**744.204** C.K. Mathews & van Holle, *Biochemistry* (Benjamin/Cummings).

**744.205** H. Davson, *Physiology of the Eye*, 5th edn (Academic Press).

**744.210** M. Millodot, *Dictionary of Optometry*, 2nd edn (Butterworths); R.A. Moses, *Adler's Physiology of the Eye*, 9th edn (Mosby).

**744.230** T.P. Grosvenor, *Primary Care Optometry*, 2nd edn (Professional Press); A.G. Bennett and R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

#### PART II

**744.306** A.G. Bennett & R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics*, 2nd edn (Butterworths); M. Jalie, *The Principles of Ophthalmic Lenses* (Association of Dispensing Opticians); Standards Association of New Zealand, *NZS1563 : 1963 Spectacle Lenses* (Standards Assoc of NZ).

**744.310** R.A. Moses, *Adler's Physiology of the Eye*, 9th edn (Mosby); H. Davson, *Physiology of the Eye*, 5th edn (Academic Press).

**744.313** Standards Association of New Zealand, *NZ Standard 6703 Artificial Lighting in Buildings* (Standards Assoc of NZ).

**744.322** Spector, *An Introduction to General Pathology*, 3rd edn (Churchill Livingstone).

**744.330** T.P. Grosvenor, *Primary Care Optometry*, 2nd edn (Professional Press); A.G. Bennett & R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics*, 2nd edn (Butterworths); M. Millodot, *Dictionary of Optometry*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

**744.331** J.R. Griffin, *Binocular Anomalies; Procedures for Therapy*, 2nd edn (Professional Press); J. Stone & A.J. Phillips, *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student*, 3rd edn (Butterworths); M. Millodot, *Dictionary of Optometry*, 2nd edn (Butterworths); L.D. Pickwell, *Binocular Vision Anomalies*, 2nd edn (Butterworths); J.E. Lovie-Kitchin & K.J. Bowman, *Age Related Macular Degeneration*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

**744.334** J.J. Kanski, *Clinical Ophthalmology*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

#### PART III

**744.425** T.P. Grosvenor, *Primary Care Optometry*, 2nd edn (Professional Press).

**744.426** J.J. Kanski, *Clinical Ophthalmology*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

**744.431** J. Stone & A.J. Phillips, *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student*, 3rd edn (Butterworths).

**744.432** J.E. Lovie-Kitchin & K.J. Bowman, *Age Related Macular Degeneration* (Butterworths).

**744.433** L.D. Pickwell, *Binocular Vision Anomalies*, 2nd edn (Butterworths).

## PACIFIC STUDIES

**478.100** Galumalemana Afeleti Hunkin, *Gagana Samoa: A Samoan Language Course Book*, 1st edn (Polynesian Press, pp., 1988) with tape of Samoan language oral skills; R.W. Allardice, *A Simplified Dictionary of Modern Samoan*, 1st edn (Polynesian Press, pp., 1985).

**79.100** R.G. Crocombe, *The South Pacific: an introduction*, 5th edn (Institute of Pacific Studies, USP, 1989); Te'o J.J. Fairbairn, Charles E. Morrison, Richard W. Baker, & Sheree A. Groves (eds) *The Pacific Islands: Politics, Economics and International Relations* (East West Center International Relations Program, 1991).

## PHARMACOLOGY

**96.301, 96.302** Wingard, Brody, Larner & Schwarz, *Human Pharmacology - Molecular to Clinical*, 1st edn (Mosby-Williams & Wilkins Pty Ltd).

## PHILOSOPHY

### Philosophy I

**29.100** Plato, *The Last Days of Socrates* (Penguin); Plato, *Symposium* (Hackett); Descartes, *Discourse on Method and the Meditations*, (Penguin); John Perry, *Dialogue on Personal Identity* (Hackett).

**29.101** Richard Jeffrey, *Formal Logic: Its Scope and Limits* (McGraw-Hill).

**29.104** James Rachels, *The Elements of Moral Philosophy* (Random House); J.S. Mill, *Utilitarianism, On Liberty, and Considerations on Representative Government* (Dent Everyman).

### Philosophy II

**29.204** Plato, *Republic* (translated by G. Briebe) (Hackett); J. Barnes, *Early Greek Philosophy* (Penguin).

**29.205** Graham Oddie and Roy Perrett, *Justice, Ethics and New Zealand Society* (Oxford U.P.).

**29.208** G. Berkeley et al., *The Empiricists* (Doubleday).

**29.209** A. Schopenhauer, *The World as Will and Representation*, Vol. I, trans. E.F.J. Payne (Dover); Hegel, *The Phenomenology of Spirit*, ed. J.N. Findlay (Blackwell) (paperback).

**29.212** Margaret P. Battin, John Fisher, Ronald Moore, Anita Silvers, *Puzzles about Art* (St Martins Press).

**29.213** Hester Eisenstein, *Contemporary Feminist Thought* (Unwin); Janet R. Richards, *The Sceptical Feminist* (Pelican).

### Philosophy III

**29.303** Nietzsche, *The Portable Nietzsche*, ed. W. Kaufmann (Penguin); Heidegger, *Being and Time*, trans. J. Macquarrie and E.S. Robinson (Blackwell).

**29.304** Aristotle, *Nicomachean Ethics* (Penguin).

**29.307** P. M. Churchland, *Matter and Consciousness* (M.I.T. Press).

## PHYSICS

### Physics I

**31.102** Arthur Beiser, *Physics*, 4th edn (Benjamin/Cummings).

**31.114** Earnshaw & Bold, *Electric Circuits, Filters and Amplifiers* (University of Auckland, 1992) available from Physics Department.

**T31.122** Tipler, *Physics - Vol. I*, 3rd edn (Worth)

**T31.132** Tipler, *Physics - Vol. II*, 3rd edn (Worth)

**N.B.** Students enrolled in both T31.122 and T31.132 should purchase the single extended version of this text.

**31.140** Halliday & Resnick, *Fundamentals of Physics* (Wiley/Jacaranda 1992).

**31.144** Young, *University Physics*, 8th edn (Addison-Wesley).

**31.150** as 31.140.

### Physics II, III, MSc and Honours

Lists of prescribed texts are available from the Departmental Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment.

## PHYSIOLOGY

### Physiology (Science) II

**67.201** S.I. Fox, *Human Physiology*, 3rd edn (W.C. Brown).

### Physiology (Science) III

**67.301, 67.302** Berne & Levy, *Physiology*, 2nd edn (Mosby, 1988).

**67.303** Guyton, *Basic Neuroscience - Anatomy & Physiology* (Saunders, 1987).

## PLANNING

Recommended texts are listed in the Department of Planning's *Student Handbook* available from the Secretary.

## POLITICAL STUDIES

### Political Studies I

**30.106** R.C. Macridis (ed.) *Foreign Policy and World Politics*, 8th edn (Prentice-Hall, paperback, 1992).

**30.107** H. Gold (ed.) *New Zealand Politics in Perspective*, 3rd edn (Longman Paul, 1992).

**30.109** Some of: Plato, *The Republic* (Penguin, 1970); Aristotle, *Politics* (Penguin, rev. edn, 1981), Augustine, *City of God* (Penguin, 1984); Thomas Aquinas, *On Politics and Ethics* (Norton, paperback, 1988); Machiavelli, *The Prince and Selected Discourses* (Bantam, 1984); Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan* (Penguin, 1985); John Locke, *Two Treatises of Government* (C.U.P.); I. Hampsher-Monk, *The Political Philosophy of Edmund Burke* (Longman, 1987); Michael Foot and I. Kramnick (eds) *The Thomas Paine Reader* (Penguin, 1987); Mary Wollstonecraft, *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman* (Penguin, 1985); Jeremy Bentham, *A Fragment on Government* (C.U.P., 1988); R.C. Tucker, *The Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton, paperback, 1978).

**30.110** (Consult the Department)

### Political Studies II

**30.201** P. Dunleavy, A. Gamble & G. Peele (eds), *Development in British Politics* 3, revised edn (Macmillan, 1992).

**30.204** S. Hoadley, *The New Zealand Foreign Affairs Handbook*, 2nd edn (O.U.P., paperback, 1992).

**30.209** A. Heywood, *Political Ideologies: An Introduction* (Macmillan, 1992).

**30.211** Either J. Greenwood & D. Wilson, *Public Administration in Britain Today* (Unwin Hyman, 1989); or H. Elcock, *Conflict, Change and Decay? Public Administration in the 1990s* (Longman, 1991); H. Gold (ed.) *New Zealand Politics in Perspective*, 3rd edn (Longman Paul, 1992).

**30.213** Kathleen B. Jones and Anna G. Jónasdóttir (eds), *The Political Interests of Gender. Developing Theory and Research with a Feminist Face* (Sage, paperback, 1988); Anne Phillips, *Engendering Democracy* (Polity Press, 1991).

**30.214** J. Lively, *Democracy* (Blackwell, 1975); R. Mulgan, *Democracy and Power in New Zealand*, 2nd edn (O.U.P., paperback, 1989).

**30.215** S. White, *Gorbachev and After* (C.U.P. 1991); S. White, A. Pravda and Z. Gitelman, *Developments in Soviet and Post-Soviet Politics* (Macmillan, 1992).

**30.218** K. Janda, J.M. Berry and J. Goldman, *The Challenge of Democracy: Government in America*, 3rd edn (Houghton Mifflin, 1992).

### Political Studies III

**30.302** J. Barber & J. Barrat, *South Africa's Foreign Policy*, (C.U.P., paperback); Donald L. Horowitz, *A Democratic South Africa?* (University of California Press); Albie Sachs, *Protecting Human Rights in a New South Africa* (O.U.P., paperback).

**30.304** M. Harrop & W. Miller, *Elections and Voters, A Comparative Introduction* (Macmillan, paperback, 1987).

**30.306** Either C. Marsh, *Exploring Data* (Polity Press, paperback, 1988); or B.H. Erikson and T.A. Nosanchuk, *Understanding Data* (Open University Press, paperback, 1977).

**30.307** Neill Nugent, *The Government and Politics of the European Community* (Macmillan, 1991); Roberto Rabel, *Europe Without Walls* (University of Otago, 1991); Jonathan Story, *The New Europe* (Blackwell, 1992).

**30.309** Sonia M. Livingstone, *Making Sense of Television - The Psychology of Audience Interpretation* (Pergamon, 1990).

**30.312** Andrew Dobson, *Green Political Thought*, (Unwin Hyman, 1990); Andrew Dobson (ed.) *The Green Reader*, (Unwin Hyman, 1991).

**30.314** H.D. Clarke, M.M. Czudnowski (eds) *Political Elites in*

*Anglo-American Democracies* (Northern Illinois University Press, 1987).

**30.319** Some of: Somerville (ed.) *Patriarcha and Other Writings of Sir Robert Filmer* (C.U.P., paperback); Riley (ed.) *Bossuet Politics Drawn from the Very Words of Scripture* (C.U.P., paperback); Laslett (ed.) *Locke. Two Treatises of Government* (C.U.P., paperback); Cohler, et al, (eds) *Montesquieu. The Spirit of Laws* (C.U.P., paperback); Rousseau, *The Social Contract and the Discourses* (Dent, paperback); Smith, *Wealth of Nations* (Penguin); Ferguson, *Essay on the History of Civil Society* (Transaction, paperback); Easton and Guddatt, *Writings of the Young Marx* (Anchor, paperback); David Hume (enquire at bookshop for edition).

#### Political Studies for MA and Honours

**30.402** H. Wolman & M. Goldsmith, *Urban Politics & Policy: A Comparative Approach* (Blackwell, paperback, 1992).

**30.403** An introductory reading list is available from the department.

**30.407** James Harrington, *The Commonwealth of Oceana and System* (ed. Pocock, C.U.P., paperback); T. Hobbes, *Leviathan* (Penguin); John Locke, *Two Treatises of Government* (ed.) Peter Laslett (C.U.P.).

**30.408** Graham Murdock, *The Battle for Television* (Macmillan, 1992).

**30.412** R.E. Neustadt, *Presidential Power and the Modern Presidents* (Free Press, 1990); Haynes Johnson, *Sleepwalking Through History* (W.W. Norton, 1991); D.M. O'Brien, *Storm Centre: The Supreme Court in American Politics* (W.W. Norton, 1990).

**30.416** N. Elder, A.H. Thomas & D. Arter, *The Consensual Democracies?* 2nd edn (Martin Robertson, paperback, 1988).

**30.419** A. Panebianco, *Political Parties: Organisation and Power* (C.U.P., 1988).

**30.420** H. Catt, P. Harris, N. Roberts, *Voters Choice* (Dunmore, 1992).

**30.422** An introductory reading list is available from the department.

**30.424** Carl Schmitt, *The Concept of the Political* (ed. and translated by Georg Schwab), (Rutgers University Press, 1976); Iris Marion Young, *Justice and the Politics of Difference* (Princeton University Press, 1990).

## PROPERTY

R.L. Jefferies, *Urban Valuation in New Zealand*, Vol. 1, 2nd edn (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, Wellington, 1991); R.L. Jefferies (ed.) *Urban Valuation in New Zealand*, Vol. 2 (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1990).

R.A. Bell, *Investment Property: Income Analysis and Appraisal* (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1988).

W.K.S. Christiansen, *Fundamentals of Property Management* (Butterworths, 1989).

W.K.S. Christiansen, *Mahoney's Urban Land Economics* (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1991).

Reading lists will be published in the Department prior to the commencement of lectures.

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Psychology I (for Arts and Science)

**32.108** H. Gleitman, *Psychology*, 3rd edn (W.W. Norton & Co., 1991).

**32.109** H. Gleitman, *Psychology*, 3rd edn (W.W. Norton & Co., 1991); *Psychology I Laboratory Manual* available from the University Bookshop.

**32.118** H. Gleitman, *Psychology*, 3rd edn (W.W. Norton & Co., 1991).

**T32.128, T32.129** H. Gleitman, *Psychology*, 3rd edn (W.W. Norton & Co., 1991).

### Psychology II (for Arts and Science)

**32.220** J. Best, *Cognitive Psychology*, 3rd edn (West Publishing 1992).

**32.230** N.R. Carlson, *Physiology of Behavior*, 4th edn (Allyn & Bacon 1991).

**32.240** G.M. Vaughan (ed.) *Topics in Social Psychology*, 4th edn (1992) Available in Department. Refer to Psychology Handbook for information concerning Developmental Psychology.

**32.250** J.E. Mazur, *Learning and Behavior*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, 1990).

### Psychology III (for Arts and Science)

**32.301** A. Anastasi, *Psychological Testing*, 6th edn (Macmillan, 1987).

**32.304** R. Corsini & D. Wedding (eds), *Current Psychotherapies*, 4th edn (Peacock, 1989); C. F. Monte, *Beneath the Mask*, 4th edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1991); H. Yensen, K. Hague & T. McCreanor, *Honouring the Treaty* (Penguin, 1989).

**32.305** N.R. Carlson, *Physiology of Behavior*, 4th edn (Allyn & Bacon, 1991).

**32.306** Refer to Psychology Handbook.

**32.307** B.C.J. Moore, *Introduction to the Psychology of Hearing*, 3rd edn (Academic Press, 1989); S. Coren and L.M. Ward, *Sensation and Perception*, 3rd intl edn (Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1989).

**32.315** G.C. Davison & J.M. Neale, *Abnormal Psychology*, 5th edn (Wiley, 1990).

**32.316** P.K. Smith & H. Cowie, *Understanding Children's Development*, 2nd edn (Blackwell, 1991).

### Psychology for MA, MSc and Honours

**32.409** G.C. Davison & J.M. Neale, *Abnormal Psychology*, 5th edn (Wiley, 1990).

**32.419** D.C. Howell, *Statistical Methods for Psychology*, 3rd edn (Duxbury/P.W.S.).

**32.421** J. Masson, *Against Therapy* (Fontana, 1988); Starhawk, *Truth or Dare* (Harper and Row, 1987); J.D. Safran and L.S. Greenberg, *Emotion Psychotherapy and Change* (Guilford, 1991); J. Zinker, *Creative process in gestalt therapy* (Vintage, 1977).

**32.428** D. Thomas & A. Veno (eds) *Psychology and Social Change* (Dunmore, 1992).

## RUSSIAN

Only prescribed books for Russian I, II and III and certain MA papers are indicated below. A handbook, reading lists and additional teaching materials are available from the Department.

### Russian I

**43.100, 43.101** V. Kostomarov (ed.) R. Baker (adapt.), *Russkii iazyk dlia vsekh*, 3 vols. (Russkii iazyk); B.A. Lapidus & S.V. Shevtsova, *The Learner's Russian-English Dictionary* (Russkii iazyk); S. Folomkina & H. Weiser, *The Learner's English-Russian Dictionary* (Russkii iazyk).

**43.111** Intending students should consult the Department regarding the textbook for this course.

**43.112** N.V. Riasanovsky, *A History of Russia* (Oxford, any edn).

**43.113** I.S. Turgenev, *Fathers and Sons* (Penguin); L.N. Tolstoy, *Anna Karenin* (Penguin); A.P. Chekhov, *Lady with Lapdog and Other Stories* (Penguin); F.M. Dostoevsky, *Crime and Punishment* (Penguin); N.V. Gogol, *Diary of a Madman and Other Stories* (Penguin); V.V. Nabokov, *Pnin* (Penguin); Y. I. Zamyatin, *We* (Avon).

### Russian II

**43.210** P.A. Davis, D.V. Oprendeck, *Making Progress in Russian* (Xerox Publishers).

**43.211** C.E. Gribble, *Russian Root List* (Slavica); D. Obolensky (ed.) *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana).

**43.212** A.S. Pushkin, *Povesti Belkina* (Bristol Classical Press); N.V. Gogol, *Shinel* (Bristol Classical Press); M. E. Saltykov-Shchedrin, *Skazki* (available from the Department); A.P. Chekhov, *Dama s sobachkoi* (Bristol Classical Press).

### Russian III

**43.310** C. Townsend, *Continuing with Russian* (Slavica).

**43.311** Material available from the Department.

**43.313** D. Obolensky (ed.) *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana); with additional poetry texts by Blok, Tsvetaeva, Esenin, Akhmatova & Brodsky; and with prose texts by Bunin, Babel, Zoshchenko, Aksenov & Shukshin available from the Department.

### Russian for MA and Honours

**43.410** A.D. Nakhimovsky & R.L. Leed, *Advanced Russian* (Slavica); C. Townsend, *Continuing with Russian* (Slavica).

**43.415** C.E. Townsend, *Czech Through Russian* (Slavica) and materials on Croatian/Serbian available from the Department.



---

## SAMOAN

see Pacific Studies page 513.

---

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES

### Scandinavian Studies I

**46.100, 46.102** U. Göransson-Lindholm, *Nyborjar-svenska-Textbok* (Kursverksamheten); Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.101** Turner & Nordquist, *The Other European Community* (Weidenfeld & Nicolson); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Strindberg, *Three Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *The Seventh Seal & Wild Strawberries* (Faber & Faber); Odelberg et al., *Viking Ways* (Swedish Institute).

### Scandinavian Studies II

**46.200** Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Nyborg, *Svenska som mål Bok 2* (Folkuniversitetet); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.201** Bergman, *A Short History of the Swedish Language* (Swedish Institute); further texts available from the Department.  
**46.202** Ibsen, *A Doll's House & Other Plays* (Penguin); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler & Other Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *The Seventh Seal & Wild Strawberries* (Faber & Faber); further texts by Holberg and Strindberg available from the Department.

### Scandinavian Studies III

**46.300** Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma); selected texts to be supplied by the Department.

**46.301** Bergman, *A Short History of the Swedish Language*, (Swedish Institute); further texts available from the Department.

**46.302** Ibsen, *A Doll's House & Other Plays* (Penguin); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler & Other Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *The Seventh Seal & Wild Strawberries* (Faber & Faber); further texts by Holberg, Strindberg, Lagerkvist and Hjalmar Bergman available from the Department.

---

## SOCIOLOGY

### Sociology I

**82.100** A. Giddens, *Sociology* (Polity Press, 1989).

**82.101** D. Bedggood, *Rich & Poor in New Zealand* (available only from Department); P. Spoonley et al. *New Zealand Society: A Sociological Introduction* (Dunmore Press, 1989).

**82.102** E.J. Hobsbawm, *Age of Revolutions* (Abacus, 1977).

**82.104** P. Jones, *Theory and Method in Sociology* (Bell & Hyman, 1985); P. Spoonley et al. (eds) *New Zealand Society*, 2nd edn (Dunmore, 1989).

### Sociology II

**82.200** A. Giddens, *Capitalism and Modern Social Theory* (Cambridge, 1973); A. Giddens, *Social Theory and Modern Sociology* (Polity Press, 1987).

Note: A reading list is available from the Department for 82.202, 82.208, 82.209, 82.213, 82.214, 82.215 and for Stage III and Masters' papers.

---

## SPANISH

### Spanish I

**45.103** E. Galeano, *Open Veins of Latin America* (Monthly Review Press).

**45.104, 45.105** Da Silva, *Beginning Spanish*, 6th edn (Harper & Row); *First Year Departmental Workbook and Tape Manual* (for purchase in Department).

**45.107, 45.108** J. Howley, *Spanish Twice a Week* (Uniprint).

### Spanish II

**45.200** Nieves García Fernández and Jesús Sánchez Lobato, *Español 2000: nivel medio* (Ed. Coloquio/Sociedad General Española de Librería).

**45.202** Sender, *Réquiem por un campesino español* (Destino); Bueró Vallejo, *El concierto de San Ovidio* (Castalia); G. Lorca, *La casa de Bernarda Alba* (Cátedra); Y. Navajo (ed.) *Doce relatos de mujeres* (Alianza); *Poetry* (supplied).

**45.203** J.L. Borges, *Ficciones* (Alianza/Emecé); J. Hawthorne, *Unlocking the Text* (Edward Arnold); M. de Unamuno, *Niebla* (Nivola) (Taurus).

**45.204** Modernist poetry (supplied); Sábato, *El túnel* (Harrap); Solórzano (ed.) *Teatro hispanoamericano II* (F.C.E.); Gallegos,

Doña Bárbara; *Cuentos, Poetry* (supplied).

**45.208** Lourdes Miguel López and Neus Sans Baulenas, *¿A qué no sabes? Curso de Perfeccionamiento de español para extranjeros* (edi 6); *Third Year Departmental Coursebook*.

### Spanish III

**45.300** Lourdes Miguel López and Neus Sans Baulenas, *¿A qué no sabes? Curso de Perfeccionamiento de español para extranjeros* (edi 6); *Third Year Departmental Coursebook*.

**45.304** R. Sánchez Ferlosio, *Alfanhuí* (Destino); Martín Gaité, *Nubosidad Variable*; A. Bueró Vallejo, *Diálogo secreto* (Austral); C.J. Cela, *La familia de Pascual Duarte* (Biblioteca de crítica literaria), *Poetry* (supplied).

**45.307** Mercé Rodoreda, *La plaza del diamante* (Edhasa); Carmen Conde (material supplied); Rosa Chacel, *Memorias de Leticia Valle* (Lumen); Elena Soriano, *Mujer y hombre* (Plaza y Janés); Sor Juana Inés de la Cruz (Material supplied); Isabel Allende, *La casa de los espejitos* (Plaza y Janés); Laura Esquivel, *Como agua para chocolate* (Planeta); Griselda Gambaro (Material supplied)

**45.309** Peter Newmark, *A Textbook of Translation* (Prentice-Hall).

### Spanish for MA

**45.424** As for 45.307 plus: Rosa Chancel, *Barrio de Maravillas* (Seix Barral) Cristina Peri Rossi, *La nave de los locos*

**45.425** As for 45.309.

---

## TECHNOLOGY, BACHELOR OF

Details of any prescribed texts are listed under subject paper numbers.

---

## THEOLOGY

For information on text books, see the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education Handbook, available upon payment of \$5 from The University Book Shop and from A.C.T.E., (202 St John's Road, Auckland 5, ph: 5285261).

---

## TRANSLATION, POSTGRADUATE

### DIPLOMA IN

Details of any prescribed texts are listed under subject paper numbers, or may be obtained by consultation with teaching staff.

---

## ZOOLOGY

### Zoology I

**38.102** Villee, Walker & Barnes, *General Zoology*, 6th edn (Sanders).

### Advanced Zoology

**38.207** D. Rowntree, *Statistics Without Tears* (Penguin, 1981). (Blackwell, 1986).

**38.251** M.S. Laverack and J. Dando, *Lecture Notes on Invertebrate Zoology*, 3rd edn (Blackwell, 1987); P.J.S. Boaden and R. Seed, *An Introduction to Coastal Ecology* (Blackie, 1985).

**38.252** R. Dawkins, *The Blind Watchmaker* (Penguin), T.H. Waterman, *Animal Navigation* (Scientific American) M. Hildebrand, *Analysis of Vertebrate Structure* (Wiley)

**38.317** H.F. Van Emden, *Pest Control*, 2nd edn (Edward Arnold 1989).

---

# Lecture and Laboratory Timetable 1993

---

*Contents*

	<i>Page</i>
General Information and Key	443
Lecture Timetable 1993	444
Science Laboratory Timetable 1993	466

# LECTURE AND LABORATORY TIMETABLES

## GENERAL INFORMATION AND KEY

The following section contains lecture and laboratory times mainly for students taking Bachelors' degrees in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce, Education, Law, Music and Science. Timetables for other degrees and for papers in other faculties are available from departments.

### Notes:

1. This timetable does not include information about tutorials, nor about some oral and practical classes. Students enrolled in papers in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce, Education, Law, and Science are assigned by computer to specific lecture, laboratory and tutorial streams. Streaming lists will be displayed on faculty and departmental noticeboards towards the end of enrolment period. Otherwise times will be arranged during the first week of lectures.
2. Information about the times of lectures for Master's papers will be available from departments towards the end of enrolment week.
3. Except with the approval of Senate, a student may not enrol in a course of study unless the student can attend at least one set of lecture times for each paper in the course.
4. For bracketed papers, (eg 48.100, 48.101) each paper will be taught at one or more of the times listed. Details are available from the department concerned.

### KEY

† consult the department concerned to find out whether the paper will be taught in 1993

### Parts of the Year

#### Quarters

1st quarter	-	Monday 1 March to Friday 16 April
2nd quarter	-	Monday 19 April to Friday 18 June
3rd quarter	-	Monday 21 June to Friday 6 August
4th quarter	-	Monday 9 August to Friday 8 October

#### Terms

1st term	-	Monday 1 March to Friday 7 May
2nd term	-	Monday 31 May to Friday 13 August
3rd term	-	Monday 6 September to Friday 8 October

#### Halves

1st half	-	Monday 1 March to Friday 18 June
2nd half	-	Monday 21 June to Friday 8 October

#### Full Year

Where a quarter, term or half does not appear in the part of the year column, the papers taught for the full year i.e. Monday 1 March to Friday 8 October.

### Streams

Where **lectures** are offered at more than one set of times the sets are indicated by Roman numerals (eg i, ii). **Students attend only ONE lecture stream of each paper in which they are enrolled.**

Where **laboratories** are offered at more than one set of times these are indicated by a code relating to the days and times of the stream. For example, a laboratory stream with a code of TF10 occurs on Tuesdays and Fridays at ten. **Students attend only ONE laboratory stream of each paper in which they are enrolled.**

### Times

Unless a specific finish time is given, all lectures last one hour starting at the time listed.

### Rooms

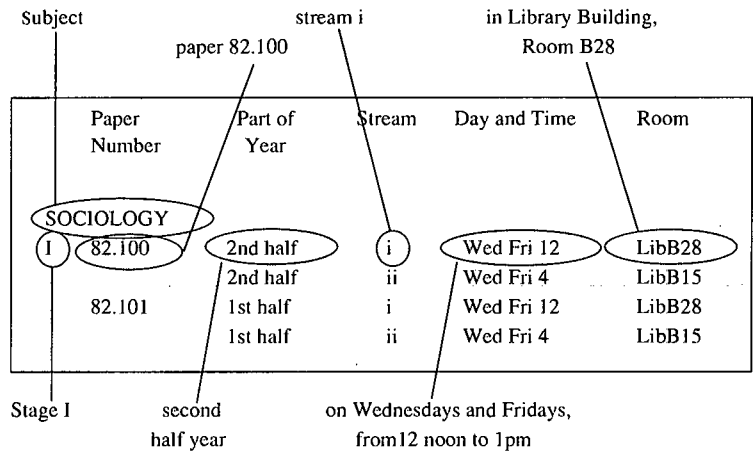
Most room numbers have two parts. The letters at the beginning relate to a building, the numbers at the end a specific room in that building. The following is a list of building codes. Plans of the campuses appear elsewhere in this Calendar.

ACE	Auckland College of Education, 74 Epsom Avenue, Epsom
Algie	Algie Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
ALR	Architecture Lecture Room, Architecture Building, 22-26 Symonds Street
Arts	Arts 1 (New Arts) Building, 14A Symonds Street
BotLT	Botany Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building, 3A Symonds Street
CA	Commerce A Building, 3A Symonds Street
CB	Commerce B Building, 5 Symonds Street
Chem	Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street, contains the Large and Medium Chemistry Lecture Theatres (LgeChem and MedChem)
CMBioLT	Cellular and Molecular Biology Lecture Theatre, Thomas Building, 3A Symonds Street
Dept	Departmental room
Eng	Engineering Buildings, 24 Symonds Street
HSB	Human Sciences Building, 10 Symonds Street
Lab1, Lab2	Language Laboratories 1 and 2, 8 Grafton Road
LgeChem	Large Chemistry Lecture Theatre, Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street
Lib	Library Building, 28 Princes Street, contains basement theatres B10, B15 and B28
LLT	Lower Lecture Theatre, behind Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
Manukau	Manukau Polytechnic, 1 Otara Road, Otara
MedChem	Medium Chemistry Lecture Theatre, Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street
MLT	Maths Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
Northey	Northey Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
Northld	Northland Polytechnic, Raumanga Valley, RD, Whangarei
OA	Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

OCH	Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street
PLT	Physics Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
SLT	Science Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
Stone	Stone Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
Tam	Tamaki Campus, Morrin Road, Glen Innes
ULT	Upper Lecture Theatre, behind Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
UniHall	University Hall, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
ZooLT	Zoology Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building, 3A Symonds Street
01Wyn	1 Wynyard Street, Classics Building

**Note:** The University reserves the right to make changes to this timetable, including adding or deleting papers, where the changes are considered necessary or desirable.

**EXAMPLE**



**TIMETABLE PLANNER**

Tamaki Campus	Main Campus	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
	8.00 am					
8.30 am	9.00 am					
9.30 am	10.00 am					
10.30 am	11.00 am					
11.30 am	12 noon					
		L	U	N	C	H
1.30 pm	2.00 pm					
2.30 pm	3.00 pm					
3.30 pm	4.00 pm					
4.30 pm	5.00 pm					
5.30 pm						

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
<b>ACCOUNTING &amp; FINANCE</b>					
<b>I</b>	01.100	Division I	i	Mon 10	HSB1
				Tue 10	LibB15
		Division II	ii	Mon Tue 11	LibB15
			i	Mon Tue 3	MLT1
			ii	Mon 9	HSB1
	T01.100	Workshops		Tue 9	LibB15
				Wed 12 1	PLT2
				Thu 12 1	OCH2
				Mon 4:30-6:30, Tue 4:30	Tam722.201
				Tue Wed 1:30	Tam702.04
	01.101	Workshops		Tue 5:30 Fri 11:30	Tam722.201
			i	Wed Fri 8	LibB15
			ii	Wed 10	LibB15
	T01.101			Fri 10	LibB28
			iii	Wed Fri 3	MLT1
			i	Wed 1:30	Tam722.201
				Thu 1:30	Tam702.04
	01.104		ii	Wed Thu 4:30	Tam722.201
			i	Tue Wed 8	LLT
			ii	Tue Wed 10	OA039
			iii	Tue Wed 3	HSB2
	T01.104			Mon 9:30-11:30	Tam722.201
<b>II</b>	01.200		i	Tue 11-1	OA039
			ii	Tue 3-5	OCH1
			iii	Wed 9-11	MedChem
			iv	Wed 2-4	LibB15
		Workshops Clinics		Fri 9 10	MLT2
				Mon 9	OCH2
				Mon 3. Tue Wed 4	SLT1
				Tue 10	ZooLT
				Thu 2	OA039
				Thu 4:30-6:30	Tam702.04
	T01.200	Workshop		Fri 1:30	Tam702.04
	01.201			Fri 9	Arts215
	01.202		i	Tue 9-11	Arts215
			ii	Tue 3-5	Arts215
			iii	Wed 9-11	Arts215
			iv	Wed 3-5	Arts215
				Thu 12	LibB15
	T01.202			Tue 2:30-4:30	Tam721.201
	01.203	Workshop		Mon 8:30	Tam721.201
			i	Tue 4-6	LibB15
	T01.203	Clinic	ii	Wed 10-12	HSB2
				Wed 4	HSB1
				Mon 2:30-4:30	Tam702.04
	01.205	Workshop		Mon 11:30	Tam721.201
			i	Wed 3-5	Eng3404
			ii	Thu 8-10	OA039
			iii	Thu 3-5	OCH1
	T01.205	Clinics		Wed 10 11 12	Dept
				Thu 2 3 4	Dept
				Fri 2:30-4:30	Tam702.04
				Wed 10:30	Tam722.201
	01.206	Workshop	i	Mon 4-6	LibB10
			ii	Wed 9-11	PLT2
			iii	Thu 10-12	MedChem
<b>III</b>	01.300	Workshops		Wed 4 5, Thu 4	BotLT
			i	Tue 9-11	SLT1
			ii	Wed 9-11	MLT2
			iii	Wed 3-5	OA039
	01.301	Workshops	i	Wed 8-10	OA039
			ii	Thu 2-4	Eng3402
				Wed 10	OA029

see following page

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	<i>01.301 contd</i>			Wed 2	OA039
				Thu 12	CAG14
	01.302		i	Tue 11-1	Arts215
			ii	Tue 4-6	Arts206
			iii	Wed 11-1	CAG13
			iv	Wed 2-4	CAG13
			v	Thu 4-6	CAG13
	01.305			Mon 9-11	Arts716
	01.306		i	Mon 2-4	HSB2
			ii	Tue 9-11	Algje
	01.308		i	Tue 8-10	OA039
			ii	Tue 4-6	OA039
<b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>					
<b>I</b>	12.100			Mon Wed 12	LibB15
	12.102			Mon Thu 11	ULT
	12.103			Tue Thu 5	ULT
	12.104			Tue Fri 2	OA039
<b>II</b>	12.204			Tue Fri 10	OCH2
	12.210			Mon Wed 2	01Wyn04
	12.211			Tue Fri 10	01Wyn02
	12.213			Mon Wed 4	OA029
	12.220			Tue Thu 12	OA029
	12.221			Tue Fri 4	Arts209
	12.222			Tue Fri 3	Arts209
	12.224			Thu 4-6	Eng3402
<b>III</b>	12.300			Tue Thu 12	OA029
	12.310			Mon Wed 3	01Wyn02
	12.311			Tue Fri 2	01Wyn02
	12.313			Mon Wed 4	OA029
	12.321			Tue Fri 4	Arts209
	12.322			Tue Fri 3	Arts209
	12.324			Tue Wed 11	OCHG07
<b>ANTHROPOLOGY</b>					
<b>I</b>	03.100		i	Tue 11	LibB28
			ii	Tue 6	LibB28
	03.101		i	Fri 11	LibB28
			ii	Fri 2	LibB28
	03.102		i	Tue 12	LibB28
			ii	Wed 5	HSB1
	03.103			Fri 11	UniHall
	Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:				
<b>II</b>			i	Tue 2	Dept
			ii	Tue 3	Dept
	03.200			Mon 2-4	HSB704
	03.201			Mon 6-8	HSB704
	03.206			Fri 12	LibB10
	03.207			Tue 10	MedChem
	03.208			Wed 5	ULT
	03.209			Thu 11-1	Music Dept
	03.210			consult Department	
	03.211			Mon 4	Arts215
	03.214			Mon 4-6	CAG15
	03.215			Tue 12	LgcChem
	03.217			Wed Fri 10	HSB508
	03.219			Wed 11-1	Arts716
	03.220			Tue 4-6	MLT3

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
III †	03.305			Thu 2-4	HSB703
†	03.306			consult Maori Studies Department	
	03.308			Mon 4-6	HSB703
	03.309			Thu 9-11	HSB704
†	03.313			Fri 2-4	HSB703
	03.315			Tue 2-4	HSB411
	03.316			Fri 11-1	HSB704
†	03.318			Wed 9-11	Music Dept
	03.320			Mon 6-8	HSB703
†	03.322			Mon 11-1	Maori Dept
†	03.325			Tue 9-12	HSB703
	03.326			Mon 9-11	HSB704
†	03.327			Wed 9-12	HSB411
	03.330			Thu 10-12	HSB516
	03.331			Fri 2-4	HSB704
	03.333			Wed 4-6	HSB508
	03.334			Thu 9-11	HSB704
†	03.335			Mon 4-6	HSB704
	03.338			Mon 2-4	HSB703
	03.340			Wed 2-4	HSB411
†	03.341			consult Maori Studies Department	
	03.342			Wed 4-6	HSB411
	03.343			Tue 4-6	HSB704
<b>ART HISTORY</b>					
I	19.151			Wed 2	HSB1
	19.153			Thu 3	Eng1401
	19.154			Mon 2	LibB28
	19.155			Tue 2	Eng1401
	19.156			Fri 3	LibB28
II	19.259			Mon 3	ALR1
	19.260			Thu 3	ALR1
	19.262			Fri 3	ALR1
III	19.301			Thu 11	Dept
	19.302			Mon 2	Dept
	19.304			Mon 9	Dept
	19.305			Wed 2	Dept
	19.307			Wed 11	Dept
	19.308			Wed 10	Dept
	19.311			Thu 10	Dept
	19.312			Tue 12	Dept
	19.313			Tue 10	Dept
<b>ASIAN GEOGRAPHY</b>					
I	20.130	2nd half		Mon Wed 12-2	HSB370
<b>ASIAN HISTORY</b>					
I	24.130	2nd half		Tue Thu Fri 2	OCH1
	24.132	1st half		Tue Thu Fri 2	OCH1
	24.133			Mon Wed 2	Arts716
II	24.222	2nd half		Mon Wed 11	Dept
	24.224	2nd half		Thu Fri 11	Dept
III	24.330	1st half		Tue 11-1, Wed 12	Dept
	24.340	2nd half		Tue 11-1, Wed 12	Dept
	24.341	1st half		Tue 10, Thu 10-12	Dept
<b>ASIAN POLITICS</b>					
I †	30.216	1st half		Mon Wed 4	CAG10
	30.313	2nd half		Mon Wed 3	OCH1
<b>ASIAN STUDIES</b>					
I	97.100	1st half		Tue Thu Fri 10	Arts209
	97.102			Wed Fri 9	OCH2
†	97.103	2nd half		Tue Thu Fri 10	Arts209

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	97.120			Tue 12 (odd weeks) Fri 12	CAG13 CAG13
	97.121			Mon Wed 12	CAG15
	97.122			Tue 3-5	CAG15
	97.141			Tue Thu 2	OA029
II	97.200	1st half		Mon 3, Tue Thu 4	CB15
	97.223			Thu 2-4	CAG15
BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE					
I	11.101	1st half		consult Auckland Consortium for Theological Education	
	11.113	2nd half		consult Auckland Consortium for Theological Education	
BIOCHEMISTRY					
II	66.202			Tue Fri 2	MLT2
	66.203			Mon Thu 2	SLT1
III	66.301	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CAG13
	66.302	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CAG13
BIOLOGY					
I	39.101	1st half	i	Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	HSB1
		1st half	ii	Mon Tue Thu Fri 4	HSB1
	39.103			Mon Thu 5	HSB1
	T39.103			Mon Thu 2:30	Tam721.134
III	39.311	2nd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 9	BotLT
	39.314	4th quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 9	BotLT
BOTANY					
I	06.102	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	HSB1
II	06.250			Mon Thu 9	OCH1
	06.251	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	BotLT
	06.252	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	BotLT
III	06.313	1st quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CB15
	06.326	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	CAG13
	06.334	3rd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CB15
	06.335	4th quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CB15
	06.341	4th quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	CAG13
	06.361	2nd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	CB15
	06.371	3rd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	CAG13
CELLULAR & MOLECULAR BIOLOGY					
III	40.303	1st half		Tue Thu 5, Wed 9 12	BotLT
	40.304	2nd half		Mon Thu 4, Tue Fri 9	CMBioLT
	40.305	2nd half		Mon Wed Thu 9, Tue 5	CMBioLT
CHEMISTRY					
I	08.111		i	Mon Thu 9	LgcChem
			ii	Mon Thu 11	LgcChem
			iii	Mon Thu 2	LgcChem
	08.121		i	Tue Fri 9	LgcChem
			ii	Tue Fri 11	LgcChem
			iii	Tue Fri 2	LgcChem
	T08.170			Wed Thu 11:30	Tam721.134
II	08.200			Fri 4	MedChem
	08.210			Wed 9 2	LgcChem
	08.220			Mon Thu 9	MLT2
	08.230			Tue Fri 9	MedChem
	08.250	1st half		Thu 1	MedChem
	08.260	1st half		Wed 3-5	MedChem
III	08.310			Wed 9	MLT3
	08.311			Wed 2	SLT1
	08.320			Mon 9	MedChem
	08.321			Thu 9	MLT3
	08.330			Tue 9	MLT3
	08.331			Fri 9	MLT3



	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
<b>CHINESE I</b>	08.340			Tue Thu 2	CAG16
	08.352	1st,2nd,3rd qu.		Fri 3	MedChem
	08.360	2nd half		Wed 3-5	MedChem
	08.370			Fri 2	MedChem
	48.100)			Mon Wed Fri 11	Arts209
	48.101)	Students attend the above three hours PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue 12	CAG15
		ii		Tue 12	CAG16
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Tue 9	Lab1
				Tue 9	Arts214
				Tue 11	Lab1
				Tue 11	Lab2
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Thu 9	Lab1
<b>†</b>	48.102	1st half		Thu 9 Tue Thu Fri 10	Arts213 Lab1
	48.105			Thu 11	Lab2
	48.106	2nd half		Tue Thu Fri 10	Arts209
	48.107		i	Mon 9	CAG13
				Wed 11	SLT1
			ii	Mon 11	HSB2
				Fri 11	CAG10
				Mon Wed 2	CAG10
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Tue 2	Lab1
				Tue 2	Lab2
	48.201			Tue Thu 3	CAG14
	48.202			Wed 3, Fri 2	CAG14
	48.203	1st half		Mon 3, Tue Thu 4	CB15
	48.300			Mon Fri 12	CAG10
<b>II</b>		Students attend both the above hours PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Wed 10	Lab2
				Wed 12	Lab1
	48.301			Tue Thu 12	CAG10
	48.302			Mon 3, Wed 2	CAG15
	48.303			Tue Thu 2	Arts209
			i	Mon 8, Wed 5	LibB28
			ii	Wed Thu 2	LibB28
		Clinic		Fri 1	LibB28
	T02.100		i	Tue 9:30-11:30	Tam702.04
			ii	Thu 9:30-11:30	Tam702.04
	02.200		i	Mon 9, Fri 8	LibB10
			ii	Tue Fri 2	LibB10
	T02.200			Wed Fri 11:30	Tam702.04
	02.201			Mon Thu 10	PLT1
<b>III</b>	T02.201			Mon Thu 10:30	Tam721.201
	02.202		i	Tue 11, Wed 10	LibB10
			ii	Tue Wed 3	ULT
	T02.202			Tue 4:30-6:30	Tam702.04
	02.203			Mon 4-6	OCH2
	02.204	1st half		Tue Thu 5	Northey
	02.205			Mon Wed 11	MedChem
	02.301		i	Wed 4-6	ZooLT
			ii	Thu 8-10	ZooLT
	02.303			Fri 8-10	OCH1

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	02.305			Mon 9, Thu 3	CB15
	02.307			Fri 10-12	BoLT
†	02.308			Mon 11	CB15
				Wed 11	CAG15
<b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>					
I	07.100	1st half	i	Tue Thu Fri 11	PLT1
		1st half	ii	Tue Fri 3, Wed 4	PLT1
	07.105	2nd half	i	Tue Thu Fri 11	PLT1
		2nd half	ii	Tue Fri 3, Wed 4	PLT1
	07.111		i	Mon Thu 12	PLT1
			ii	Mon Thu 4	PLT1
	T07.115			Tue Fri 9:30	Tam722.201
II	07.211		i	Mon Thu 10	LgeChem
			ii	Tue Fri 3	LibB15
	07.222		i	Wed 11-1	ULT
			ii	Fri 11-1	ULT
	07.231	1st half		Mon Thu 3, Wed 10	PLT1
	07.232	2nd half		Mon Thu 3, Wed 10	PLT1
III	07.301	2nd half		Mon Thu 10	CB15
	07.302	2nd half		Mon Thu 12	MedChem
	07.303	1st half		Mon Thu 10	CB15
	07.310			Mon Thu 2	PLT2
	07.315	1st half		Mon Thu 12	MedChem
	07.330			Wed 2, Thu 9	MedChem
	07.340			Mon Thu 4	OA039
	07.351			Tue Fri 4	PLT4
	07.352			Tue Fri 12	MedChem
	07.361	1st half		Tue Fri 2	PLT2
	07.362	2nd half		Tue Fri 2	PLT2
<b>DUTCH</b>					
I	421.100		i	Mon Tue Thu 11	Dept
			ii	Mon Tue Thu 3	Dept
	421.102			Mon Wed 2	OCH1
II	421.200			Tue Thu 9	Dept
<b>ECONOMICS</b>					
I	13.100	1st half	i	Mon Tue Wed Thu 10	LibB28
		1st half	ii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 12	LLT
		1st half	iii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 2	LLT
		1st half	iv	Mon Tue Wed Thu 4	ULT
	T13.100	1st half	i	Mon Tue Wed Thu 11:30	Tam722.201
		1st half	ii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 3:30	Tam722.201
	13.101	2nd half	i	Mon Tue Wed Thu 10	LibB28
		2nd half	ii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 12	LLT
		2nd half	iii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 2	LLT
		2nd half	iv	Mon Tue Wed Thu 4	ULT
	T13.101	2nd half	i	Mon Tue Wed Thu 11:30	Tam722.201
		2nd half	ii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 3:30	Tam722.201
II	13.200			Tue Wed 4	LibB28
	T13.200			Tue Thu 9:30	Tam721.201
	13.201			Tue Thu 10	HSB1
	T13.201			Mon Wed 8:30	Tam722.201
	13.203			Mon 11	ZooLT
				Wed 11	MLT2
	13.205			Tue Thu 11	HSB2
	T13.205			Tue 2:30, Thu 3:30	Tam721.134
	13.210	1st half		Mon Wed 2	UniHall
	13.211	2nd half		Mon Wed 2	UniHall
III	13.300			Mon 12	Arts209
				Wed 12	MedChem
	13.301			Mon Wed 4	OCH1
	13.302			Tue Thu 3	CAG16

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	13.304			Tue Thu 10	OA029
	13.305			Mon Wed 10	OCH2
	13.306			Tue Thu 11	CB15
	13.307			Mon Wed 9	Dept
	13.308			Mon 2	OCHG10
				Wed 2	CB15
	13.309			Tue 2	CAG14
				Thu 2	CAG10
†	13.310			Thu 4-6	CAG15
	13.314			Tue Thu 9	Dept
	13.315			Mon Wed 3	ZooLT
	13.320			Tue 4-6	CAG14
<b>EDUCATION</b>					
<b>I</b>	14.100		i	Tue 9	LibB28
			ii	Tue 5	LibB28
	14.101		i	Wed 11	LibB28
			ii	Wed 5	LLT
	14.150		i	Mon 10:30-12:30	ACE
			ii	Wed 2:30-4:30	ACE
	N14.150			consult Department	Northld
	14.151		i	Tue 10:30-12:30	ACE
			ii	Thu 2:30-4:30	ACE
	N14.151			consult Department	Northld
<b>II</b>	14.200			Mon 11	Arts716
	14.201			Wed 4	OCH2
	14.203			Wed 4	LLT
	14.204			Tue 8:30-10:30	ACE
	14.206		i	Wed 9	PLT1
			ii	Wed 4:30-6:30	ACE
	14.208			Wed 2	Dept
	14.210			Tue 4	BotLT
	14.211			Thu 9	LibB15
	14.212			Wed 11-1	OCH2
<b>III</b>	14.300			Thu 4-6	Dept
	14.301			Wed 4-6	Dept
	14.302			Tue 11-1	Dept
	14.303			Mon 2-4	Dept
	14.305			Tue 4	Dept
	14.306			Mon 10	OA039
	14.308			Mon 4-6	CAG13
	14.309	1st half		Tue 4-6	Algie
		1st half		Wed 4	CAG14
	14.310			Fri 2	Northey
	14.311			Thu 10	OCH1
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Thu 11	CAG10
				Thu 11	CAG14
	14.316			Tue 3 (odd weeks)	ALR3
				Tue 4	ALR3
	14.319			Tue 9-11	CAG13
	14.320			Thu 4-6	OA029
	14.322			Wed 10-12	Dept
	14.327			Mon 4-6	CAG14
	14.328			Thu 11-1	Dept
	14.329			Wed 10:30-12:30	ACE
				Fri 2:30	ACE
	14.330			Tue 2	ALR3
				Tue 3 (even weeks)	ALR3
	14.331			Wed 4	Arts209
	14.333		i	Mon 4-6	Maori Dept

see following page

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	14.333 <i>contd</i>		ii	Mon 9-11	CAG10
	14.334			Thu 8:30-10	Dept
†	14.335			Tue 2-4	OCH2
	14.336			Mon 2-4	Dept
	14.337			Tue 4-6	OA029
<b>ENGINEERING</b>					
<b>I</b>	50.001	1st half		Tue Thu Fri 4	Eng1401
		2nd half		Thu 4	Eng1401
	50.002	1st half		Mon Wed 11	Eng1401
<b>ENGLISH</b>					
<b>I</b>	18.100	1st half		Mon Fri 11	LLT
		2nd half		Mon 11	LLT
	18.101	1st half	i	Mon Tue 3	LLT
		2nd half		Tue 3	LLT
		1st half	ii	Mon Tue 5	LLT
		2nd half		Tue 5	LLT
	18.103	1st half	i	Mon Thu 12	LibB28
		2nd half		Thu 12	LibB28
		1st half	ii	Mon Thu 4	UniHall
		2nd half		Thu 4	UniHall
	18.104			Wed 12	PLT1
	18.105			Wed 3	LLT
†	T18.106			Mon Wed 4:30	Tam702.04
†	T18.107			Tue Thu 3:30	Tam702.04
	18.113	1st half		Mon Thu 5:30	ACE
		2nd half		Thu 5:30	ACE
	18.115			Wed 5:30	ACE
<b>II</b>	18.200			Thu 4	LgeChem
	18.201			Tue 2	LibB28
	18.206			Tue 10-12	HSB516
	18.210			Tue 11	SLT1
	18.213			Tue 5	HSB1
	18.220			Mon 10	LLT
	18.221			Thu 10	LibB15
	18.222			Thu 2	Arts716
	18.223			Wed 11-1	Arts206
	18.224			Thu 2-4	HSB704
	18.250			Thu 5	Arts202
<b>III</b>	18.301			Mon Wed 2	Arts209
	18.302			Thu 11	Arts215
	18.303			Tue 4	Arts716
	18.304			Mon 10-12	OCH1
	18.305			Thu 10-12	Arts202
	18.306			Thu 12	Arts215
	18.307			Tue 2	ULT
	18.308			Tue 3	ZooLT
	18.310			Tue 12	UniHall
	18.314			Mon 12	OA029
	18.319			Wed 12	CAG14
	18.320			Thu 2	Arts215
	18.323			Wed 11	Arts215
	18.325			Wed 3	Arts209
	18.326			Wed 5	Arts215
	18.327			Mon 3-5	Dept
	18.328			Tue 10-1	Dept
	18.330			Wed 2-4	HSB508
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE</b>					
<b>II</b>	64.200			Mon Tue 9	LLT
<b>FILM &amp; TELEVISION STUDIES</b>					
<b>II</b>	85.200			Wed 4-6	LibB10

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room				
FRENCH I	34.100		i	Tue Thu 10	CAG15				
			ii	Tue Thu 11	Arts206				
			iii	Tue Thu 11	CAG16				
			iv	Tue Thu 3	Arts202				
			v	Tue Thu 3	Arts206				
			vi	Tue Thu 4	Arts202				
	Students attend both hours in one of the above streams PLUS one of:								
					Mon 5	Arts215			
					Mon 6	Arts215			
	PLUS one of the following laboratories:								
					Tue 12	Arts708			
					Tue 2	Arts708			
					Wed 10	Arts708			
					Wed 11	Arts708			
					Wed 12	Arts708			
	34.101			Wed 2	Arts708				
				Thu 9	Arts708				
				Thu 12	Arts708				
				Thu 2	Arts708				
				Fri 11	Arts708				
				Wed 3	UniHall				
	Students attend the above hour PLUS one of:								
					Fri 9	Arts607			
					Fri 10	Arts607			
					Fri 11	Arts607			
					Fri 12	Arts607			
	34.151)		i	Tue Wed Thu Fri 9. Wed 3	Arts206				
	34.152)		ii	Tue Wed Thu Fri 10. Wed 4	Arts206				
	Students attend five hours in one of the above streams PLUS one of the following laboratories:								
					Mon 9	Arts214			
				Mon 9	Arts708				
				Mon 10	Arts214				
				Mon 10	Arts708				
				Mon 11	Arts213				
II	34.200			Mon 12	Arts213				
				Mon Wed 12	Arts723				
				Mon 12	Arts708				
				Wed 12	Arts611				
				Mon Wed 2	Arts723				
				Mon 2	Arts708				
				Wed 2	Arts613				
				Mon Wed 3	Arts723				
				Students attend both hours in one of the above streams PLUS one of the following laboratories:					
								Mon 11	Arts708
								Tue 9	Arts708
								Tue 11	Arts708
								Wed 9	Arts708
				PLUS one of the following oral classes:					
								Mon 1	Arts719
					Wed 11	Arts719			
					Wed 1	Arts613			
					Thu 1	Arts609			
	34.201		Tue 12	Arts607					
	34.203		Tue 3	Arts719					
			Thu 3	Arts607					
	III		34.214	Wed 4	Arts202				
			34.300	Mon 4	Arts202				
				Wed 4	Arts607				
			Students attend both the above hours PLUS one of the following oral classes:						
				Thu 10	Arts613				
		Thu 11	Arts613						

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	34.306			Fri 9-11	Arts203
	34.309			Thu 12	Arts611
	34.310			Mon 2-4	Arts202
	34.318			Tue 4	Arts611
				Fri 11	Arts723
<b>GEOGRAPHY</b>					
<b>I</b>	20.101	2nd half		Tue Wed Thu 9	HSB1
	T20.101	2nd half		Tue Wed Fri 2:30	Tam722.201
	20.102	1st half		Tue Wed Thu 9	HSB1
	T20.102	1st half		Tue Wed Fri 2:30	Tam722.201
<b>II</b>	20.130	2nd half		Mon Wed 12-2	HSB370
	20.201			Mon 11	MLT2
				Wed 11	HSB1
	20.202			Mon Wed 2	LibB10
<b>III</b>	20.203			Wed 4	HSB370
	20.204			Tue Thu 12	HSB2
	20.205			Thu 4-6	HSB2
	20.302			Wed 2-4	HSB370
	20.303			Tue Thu 11	HSB370
	20.304			Mon 3-5	HSB370
	20.305			Tue Thu 2	HSB370
	20.312			Mon Tue 10	HSB370
	20.313			Tue Wed 9	HSB370
	20.314			Mon Tue 12	HSB370
	20.315			Tue 3-5	HSB370
	20.320			Thu 9-11	HSB370
<b>GEOLOGY</b>					
<b>I</b>	T21.108			Mon Wed 10:30	Tam721.134
	21.110	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu 5	LgeChem
	21.111	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	LibB15
	21.112	2nd half		Mon Thu 2	LibB15
<b>II</b>	21.211	2nd half		Mon Wed Thu 2	Dept
	21.212	1st half		Mon Wed Thu 2	Dept
	21.213	1st half		Tue Fri 2	Dept
	21.215	2nd half		Tue Fri 2	Dept
<b>III</b>	21.303			Mon 12, Thu 10	Dept
	21.306	1st half		Mon 11, Wed 11-1	Dept
	21.310	2nd half		Tue 4-6	Dept
	21.311	1st half		Mon Wed 10	Dept
	21.312	2nd half		Mon Wed 10	Dept
	21.314	1st half		Tue 4, Fri 9	Dept
	21.315	1st half		Tue Thu 9	Dept
	21.318	1st half		Tue 3, Fri 9	Dept
	21.319	2nd half		Mon Thu 11	Dept
	21.324	2nd half		Wed Fri 9	Dept
<b>GERMAN</b>					
<b>I</b>	22.100		i	Mon Tue Thu 10	Dept
			ii	Mon Tue Thu 2	Dept
			iii	Mon Tue Thu 4	Dept
	22.101			Wed 12	Arts215
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Fri 10	Dept
			ii	Fri 12	Dept
			iii	Fri 2	Dept
	22.102			Tue Thu 12	Arts209
	22.103	2nd,3rd terms		Tue Wed Thu 11	OCH1
	22.105		i	Mon Tue Thu 10	Dept
			ii	Mon Tue Thu 2	Dept
			iii	Mon Tue Thu 4	Dept

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room	
II	22.200		i	Tue Thu 11	Dept	
			ii	Tue Thu 2	Dept	
	22.202			Mon 2	CAG15	
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:				
			i	Tue 10	Dept	
			ii	Tue 4	Dept	
	22.203			Mon 12, Wed 2	Arts206	
	22.300			Tue 2, Thu 11	Dept	
	22.301			Mon 12, Wed 2	Dept	
	22.302			Mon Wed 4	Dept	
	22.309			Mon Thu 10	Dept	
	22.350			Thu 2-4	Dept	
	GREEK					
I	10.100			Tue Thu 4	OCHG10	
	10.102			Mon Fri 12, Wed 2	OCHG07	
II	10.200			Mon Thu 4	01Wyn02	
	10.201			Tue 11	01Wyn02	
III	10.202			Wed Fri 11	01Wyn02	
	10.300			Mon Thu 4	01Wyn02	
	10.301			Tue 4	01Wyn02	
	10.302			Wed Thu 2	01Wyn02	
HEBREW						
I	23.110			consult Auckland Consortium for Theological Education		
HISTORY						
I	24.100	2nd half		Tue Wed Thu 5	MLT1	
	24.101	1st half		Wed Thu Fri 11	LibB15	
	24.105	2nd half		Wed Thu Fri 11	LibB15	
	24.107	1st half		Mon Tue Wed 12	LibB10	
	24.122	1st half		Mon Wed Thu 3	LibB10	
	24.123	2nd half		Mon Wed Thu 3	LibB10	
	24.130	2nd half		Tue Thu Fri 2	OCH1	
	24.132	1st half		Tue Thu Fri 2	OCH1	
	24.133			Mon Wed 2	Arts716	
	24.140	1st half		Tue Wed Thu 5	MLT1	
	T24.150	2nd half		Mon Tue Fri 9:30	Tam721.134	
	T24.151	1st half		Mon Tue Fri 9:30	Tam721.134	
	II	24.200	1st half		Mon Tue 2	Arts215
		24.201	2nd half		Mon Tue 2	Arts215
24.214		1st half		Tue Thu 10	ULT	
24.215		2nd half		Tue Thu 10	ULT	
†		24.217	2nd half		Thu Fri 9	CB15
	24.218	2nd half		Tue Thu 5	MedChem	
	24.222	2nd half		Mon Wed 11	Dept	
	24.224	2nd half		Thu Fri 11	Dept	
	24.230	1st half		Tue Wed 12	OCH1	
	24.233	1st half		Mon Tue 4	HSB2	
	24.234	2nd half		Tue Wed 12	OCH1	
	24.235	2nd half		Mon Tue 4	HSB2	
	†	24.236	2nd half		Tue Wed 11	OA029
		24.237	1st half		Tue Wed 11	OA029
	III	24.301	2nd half		Tue 10, Thu 10-12	Dept
		24.305	2nd half		Tue 4-6, Thu 5	Dept
24.307		1st half		Tue 2, Thu 2-4	MedChem	
24.315		2nd half		Wed 11, Fri 11-1	CB15	
24.320		2nd half		Mon 3, Wed 2-4	Dept	
24.321		1st half		Mon 4, Wed 4-6	Dept	
24.325		2nd half		Mon 4, Wed 4-6	Dept	

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	24.329	1st half		Wed 11, Fri 11-1	Dept
	24.330	1st half		Tue 11-1, Wed 12	Dept
	24.332	2nd half		Mon 2, Wed 2-4	Dept
	24.333	1st half		Mon 2, Wed 2-4	Dept
	24.334	2nd half		Tue 2, Thu 2-4	Dept
	24.336	2nd half		Mon 10, Fri 9-11	OA029
	24.340	2nd half		Tue 11-1, Wed 12	Dept
	24.341	1st half		Tue 10, Thu 10-12	Dept
	24.351	1st half		Tue 4-6, Thu 5	MedChem
	24.354	1st half		Mon 10, Fri 9-11	OA029
<b>INDONESIAN</b>					
<b>I</b>	80.100)			Mon 11, Wed Fri 10	CAG15
	80.101)			Thu 11-1	CAG15
		Students attend the above five hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
	80.103			Fri 11 Tue 12 (odd weeks) Fri 12	Arts214 CAG13 CAG13
	80.104			Mon Wed 12	CAG15
	80.105			Tue 3-5	CAG15
<b>II</b>	80.106			Mon Wed 3	CAG10
†	80.200			Mon Thu 10	CAG13
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
				Tue 10	Arts214
	80.201			Mon 2, Thu 11	MLT3
†	80.202			Tue Wed 3	CB15
	80.206			Thu 2-4	CAG15
†	80.207			Tue Wed 2	OCHG10
	80.208			Mon 11 (odd weeks)	CAG10
<b>III</b>				Tue 11	CAG10
	80.300			Mon 12, Tue 10	OCHG10
	80.301			Mon 11, Wed 10	01Wyn04
	80.302			Tue 11	CAG13
				Fri 10	CAG17
	80.306			Wed 11	CAG10
				Thu 12 (odd weeks)	Dept
†	80.308			Fri 2-4	CAG10
†	80.309			Mon Wed 4	Dept
<b>ITALIAN</b>					
<b>I</b>	35.104			Tue 4-6	Arts719
†	35.106)			Mon Fri 10	LibB15
	35.107)				
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS both hours in one of the following streams:			
		i		Mon 11, Tue 10	Arts202
		ii		Tue Wed 9	Arts202
		iii		Wed Thu 12	Arts202
		iv		Wed Thu 2	Arts202
		v		Thu Fri 9	Arts202
		PLUS one conversation class (details from the Department)			
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Mon 11	Lab1
				Mon 3	Lab1
				Tue 12	Lab1
				Tue 3	Lab1
				Tue 4	Arts708
				Wed 3	Lab1
				Thu 9	Arts214
				Thu 11	Arts213
				Thu 12	Lab1
				Fri 9	Arts708



	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	35.106, 35.107 contd			Fri 11	Lab1
				Fri 12	Lab1
†	35.110			Fri 11	OA029
			i	Fri 12	Arts202
			ii	Fri 12	Arts206
II	35.200			Mon 11	OA029
		Students attend the above hour			
		PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Tue 12	Arts214
			ii	Tue 4	Arts214
			iii	Wed 3	Arts708
			iv	Thu 10	Arts214
		PLUS one of the following conversation classes:			
				Wed 10	Arts202
				Wed 4	Arts609
				Thu 11	Arts201
				Thu 12	Arts609
				Thu 3	Arts708
				Fri 10	Arts609
				Fri 12	Arts609
	35.204			Mon 3-5	Arts716
			i	Thu 2	Arts206
			ii	Thu 4	Arts206
	35.209			Wed 12	Arts209
			i	Mon 2	Arts701
			ii	Tue 2	Arts723
			iii	Tue 4	Arts723
	35.210			Wed 12	Arts209
				Tue 3	Arts723
	35.231			Mon 12	Arts719
			i	Thu 10	Arts719
			ii	Thu 2	Arts609
III	35.300			Tue 11	Arts202
		Students attend the above hour			
		PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Tue 2	Arts214
			ii	Wed 2	Arts214
		PLUS one of the following conversation classes:			
				Mon 2	Arts611
				Tue 3	Arts611
				Thu 2	Arts723
	35.302			Mon 3, Thu 11	Arts611
	35.303			Mon 11	Arts206
				Thu 12	Arts716
	35.322			Tue 9-11	Arts609
	35.332			Mon 10, Wed 3	Arts719
JAPANESE					
I	81.100			Mon Tue 10	HSB2
				Thu 11	MLT2
†	T81.100			Mon 9:30	Tam702.04
				Tue Thu 11:30	Tam721.201
	81.101		i	Wed Thu Fri 9	CAG16
			ii	Wed Thu Fri 9	OCHG07
			iii	Wed Thu Fri 9	OCHG10
			iv	Wed Thu Fri 9	CAG10
			v	Wed Thu Fri 10	CAG16
			vi	Wed Thu Fri 10	OCHG07
			vii	Wed Thu Fri 10	OCHG10
†	T81.101		i	Wed Thu Fri 9:30	Tam721.231
			ii	Wed Thu Fri 9:30	Tam721.234
			iii	Wed Thu Fri 10:30	Tam721.231
			iv	Wed Thu Fri 10:30	Tam721.234
	81.103			Tue Thu 2	OA029
II	81.200			Fri 10	ULT

see following page

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	81.200 contd	Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Tue 11	CAG14
			ii	Tue 12	CAG14
	81.201			Wed Thu 12	MLT2
	81.202			Fri 11	SLT1
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Mon 9	CAG16
			ii	Mon 10	CAG16
			iii	Mon 11	CAG16
			iv	Mon 12	CAG16
			v	Mon 3	CAG16
			vi	Mon 4	CAG16
III	81.300			Tue Wed 11	PLT2
	81.301			Mon 11	SLT1
				Fri 11	PLT2
	81.302			Wed 3-5	CAG15
	81.303			Fri 12	Arts209
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Mon 9	OCHG21
			ii	Mon 10	OCHG21
			iii	Mon 12	OCHG21
			iv	Mon 2	OCHG21
			v	Mon 3	OCHG21
KOREAN I	449.100			Mon 12	CAG14
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of:			
				Tue 12	CB15
				Wed 10	CB15
		PLUS one of the following streams:			
			i	Wed 12	CB15
			ii	Thu 12	CAG16
			iii	Thu 12	OCHG10
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Mon 9	Lab1
				Mon 10	Lab2
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Fri 10	Lab1
				Fri 11	Lab2
	449.101			Tue Thu 9	CAG14
	449.200			Mon 10, Tue 11	CAG15
II		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
				Thu 9	Lab2
	449.201			Wed Fri 9	CAG15
	449.202			Wed Thu 10	CAG10
III	449.300			Tue 10, Thu 11	OCHG21
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
				Thu 10	Lab2
	449.301			Mon 11, Wed 9	OCHG21
LATIN I	449.302			Wed 11, Fri 10	OCHG21
	09.100			Tue Thu 12	Algic
	09.102			Tue Fri 10, Wed 12	CAG10
II	09.200			Mon Thu 10	01Wyn04
	09.201			Mon 3	01Wyn04
III	09.202			Wed Thu 3	01Wyn04
	09.300			Mon Thu 10	01Wyn02
	09.301			Mon 3	01Wyn03

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
LAW I	09.302			Tue Fri 3	01Wyn02
	25.101		i	Mon Wed Thu 9	Dent
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 1	Dept
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 10	Dept
	25.103		i	Mon Wed Thu 8	ULT
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 11	OA039
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 12	OA039
	25.104		i	Mon Wed Thu 10	Dent
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 2	Dept
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 1	Dept
	25.105		i	Mon Wed Thu 1	Dept
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 9	Dept
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 2	Dept
	25.106		i	Mon Wed Thu 2	Dent
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 10	Dept
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 9	Dept
	25.201		i	Mon Wed 11	Dept
			ii	Mon Wed 12	Dept
II			iii	Mon Wed 3	Dept
	25.202		i	Tue Thu 11	Dent
			ii	Tue Thu 12	Dept
			iii	Tue Thu 3	Dept
	25.203	1st half	i	Tue Thu 11	Dept
		1st half	ii	Tue Thu 3	Dept
		2nd half	iii	Tue Thu 11	Dept
	25.204		i	Tue 8-10	Dept
			ii	Tue Thu 4	Dept
	25.205			Fri 9-11	Dept
	25.207			Mon 4-6	Dept
	25.208		i	Tue Fri 10	Dept
			ii	Tue 1-3	Dept
	25.209			Tue 5-7	Dept
	25.211			Fri 11-1	OA039
	25.212	1st half		Tue Thu 9-11	Dept
	25.214			Tue 1-3	Dept
	25.217		i	Mon Wed 3	Dent
			ii	Mon Wed 11	Dept
			iii	Mon Wed 12	Dept
	25.218			Wed 4-6	Dept
	25.221			Mon 1-3	Dept
	25.222	2nd half		Mon Wed 4-6	Dept
	25.223			Wed 9-11	Dept
	25.224			Tue Thu 4	Dept
	25.228			Thu 1-3	Dept
	25.229			Wed 9-11	Dept
	25.238			Mon 8-10	Dept
	25.239			Wed 1-3	Dept
III	25.240			Mon Thu 9	Dept
	25.301			Mon 11-1	Dept
	25.303			Wed 9-11	Dept
	25.305			Fri 11-1	Dept
	25.306	2nd half		Tue Thu 9-11	Dept
	25.308	2nd half		Tue Thu 5-7	Dept
	25.309	1st half		Tue Fri 9-11	Dept
	25.310	1st half		Tue Thu 11-1	Dept
	25.313			Wed 4-6	Dept
	25.314		i	Tue 1-3	Dept
			ii	Mon Wed 3	Dept
	25.315			Tue Thu 4	Dept
	25.318			Wed 4-6	Dept

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	25.319			Thu 3-5	Dept
	25.320	1st half		Tue Thu 3-5	Dept
	25.322	1st half		Mon Wed 4-6	Dept
	25.323			Thu 5-7	Dept
	25.325	2nd half		Tue Wed 11-1	Dept
	25.326			Mon 2-4	Dept
	25.331	1st half	i	Fri 11-1	Dept
	25.333	2nd half	ii	Tue Thu 11-1	Dept
<b>LINGUISTICS</b>					
<b>I</b>	83.102			Wed 3	LLT
				Fri 10	OA039
	83.104			Mon 11, Wed 2	HSB704
<b>II</b>	83.200			Tue 10-12	HSB516
	83.203			Wed 11-1	Arts206
	83.204			Thu 2-4	HSB704
	83.205			Wed Fri 10	HSB508
<b>III</b>	83.300			Wed 2-4	HSB508
†	83.303			Mon Fri 12	HSB516
	83.305			Tue 4	Arts716
	83.307			Mon 10-12	OCH1
	83.312			Thu 10-12	Arts202
	83.313			Mon 3-5	HSB508
<b>MANAGEMENT SCIENCE &amp; INFORMATION SYSTEMS</b>					
<b>I</b>	74.100		i	Mon Thu 9	LibB28
			ii	Mon Thu 11	HSB1
	T74.110		i	Wed Fri 8:30	Tam702.04
			ii	Wed Fri 10:30	Tam702.04
<b>II</b>	74.200		i	Mon Tue 10	LibB10
			ii	Mon Tue 12	ULT
	T74.200			Mon 9:30, Tue 10:30	Tam721.201
	74.220			Thu 9-11	HSB2
	T74.220			Thu 2:30-4:30	Tam721.201
	74.221			Tue Thu 8	MLT2
	T74.221			Mon Wed 2:30	Tam721.201
	74.222		i	Wed 11-1	ULT
			ii	Fri 11-1	ULT
	T74.222			Thu 8:30-10:30	Tam722.201
<b>III</b>	T74.223			Mon 4:30-6:30	Tam721.201
	74.300			Wed 8-10	CAG13
	74.301			Tue 8	CAG13
	74.302			Tue 2-4	UniHall
	74.310			Fri 9-11	SLT1
	74.320			Fri 10-12	HSB370
	74.321			Wed 10-12	CAG14
	74.323			Tue 9-11	OCH1
	74.324			Fri 8-10	OA039
†	74.325			Mon 8-10	OA029
	74.326			Wed 3-5	Arts716
	74.327			Wed 9-11	Arts209
<b>MANAGEMENT STUDIES &amp; LABOUR RELATIONS</b>					
<b>I</b>	72.101		i	Tue Thu 10	LLT
			ii	Tue Thu 11	LLT
			iii	Tue 4	LLT
				Thu 4	MLT1
			iv	Tue Thu 6	LLT
	T72.101		i	Tue Thu 2:30	Tam702.04
			ii	Wed 9:30	Tam722.201
				Fri 9:30	Tam702.04

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
II	72.204 T72.204			Mon Wed 3 Mon 1:30 Wed 1:30	LibB28 Tam702.04 Tam721.201
	72.207 T72.207	2nd half 2nd half 2nd half		Wed Fri 9-11 Wed 4:30-6:30 Fri 2:30-4:30	LLT Tam721.201 Tam721.201
†	72.210	2nd half		Mon Thu 4-6	LLT
III	72.303	1st half		Mon 11-1, Tue 4	OCH2
†	72.305	2nd half		Mon 11-1, Tue 4	OCH2
†	72.307	2nd half 2nd half		Tue 9-11 Thu 9	Stone UniHall
	72.311	1st half		Mon 3-5	Eng1401
		1st half		Tue 2	HSB2
	72.313	2nd half		Mon 3-5	Eng1401
		2nd half		Tue 2	HSB2
†	72.314	2nd half		Wed 9-11	OCH1
		2nd half		Fri 9-11	Stone
	72.316			Thu 4-6	LibB15
	72.317	2nd half		Wed 2-4	OA029
		2nd half		Thu 2-4	MedChem
	72.325	1st half		Tue 11	ULT
		1st half		Thu 4-6	LLT
	72.326	2nd half		Wed 12, Mon 4-6	UniHall
	72.340	1st half		Wed 9-11	OCH1
<b>MAORI STUDIES</b>					
I	04.101		i	Tue 12	LibB28
			ii	Wed 5	HSB1
	N04.101			consult Department	Northld
	T04.101			Tue 8:30	Tam722.201
	04.106			Tue 3-5	LibB10
	04.107			Wed 4	UniHall
	04.109			Wed 4-6	Eng1401
†	T04.109			Wed 1:30-3:30	Tam721.134
	04.110			Thu 4-6	LibB10
†	T04.110			Wed 9:30-11:30	Tam721.201
	04.111			Tue 5	Eng1401
†	04.112			Tue 11-1	OCH2
†	04.113			Wed 2-4	Eng3402
II	04.202			Mon 4	Arts215
	04.203			Wed 5	ULT
	N04.203			consult Department	Northld
	04.204			Mon 11-1	Arts215
	04.205			Thu 9	OCH2
†	04.206			consult Department	
†	04.208			consult Department	
III	04.302			consult Department	
†	04.303			consult Department	
†	04.304			consult Department	
†	04.305			Mon Fri 12	HSB516
†	04.310			consult Department	
†	04.311			consult Department	
†	04.314			consult Department	
	04.315			Thu 10-12	HSB516
<b>MARKETING &amp; INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS</b>					
II	71.200			Wed Fri 8	LibB28
	T71.200			Mon Wed 3:30	Tam721.201
	71.201			Tue Thu 8	LibB28
	T71.201			Wed Fri 11:30	Tam721.201
III	71.300	2nd half		Mon 8-10	MLT1
	71.301			Thu 8-10	LLT

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	71.302	1st half		Mon 8-10	MLT1
		1st half		Thu 11	LibB10
	71.304			Wed 2-4	Eng1401
	71.310			Thu 3-5	Arts209
<b>MATHEMATICS &amp; STATISTICS</b>					
<b>I</b>	26.101		i	Mon Thu 11	MLT1
				Wed 11	LeeChem
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 3	MLT2
			iii	Mon Wed Thu 5	MLT3
	T26.101			Wed Fri 8:30	Tam721.201
	26.102			Thu 4-7	ACE
	26.105			Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri 2	Dept
	T26.107			Mon Tue Thu 8:30	Tam702.04
	26.108		i	Tue Thu 9, Fri 10	LibB10
			ii	Tue Thu Fri 3	OA039
	T26.108			Mon Tue Thu 8:30	Tam702.04
	26.120		i	Mon Thu 9	ULT
				Wed 9 (odd weeks)	ULT
			ii	Mon Thu 12	ZooLT
				Wed 12 (odd weeks)	ZooLT
	26.121		i	Mon Thu 10	MLT1
				Wed 10 (odd weeks)	MLT1
			ii	Mon Thu 12	MLT1
				Wed 12 (odd weeks)	MLT1
			iii	Tue Fri 2	SLT1
				Wed 2 (odd weeks)	MLT2
			iv	Mon Thu 5	Eng3401
				Wed 5 (odd weeks)	Eng3401
			v	Mon Thu 4	MLT2
				Wed 4 (odd weeks)	MLT2
	26.140		i	Tue Fri 9	ULT
				Wed 9 (even weeks)	ULT
			ii	Tue Fri 12	ZooLT
				Wed 12 (even weeks)	ZooLT
	26.141		i	Tue Fri 10	MLT1
				Wed 10 (even weeks)	MLT1
			ii	Tue Fri 12	MLT1
				Wed 12 (even weeks)	MLT1
			iii	Mon Thu 2	MLT2
				Wed 2 (even weeks)	MLT2
			iv	Tue Fri 5	Eng3401
				Wed 5 (even weeks)	Eng3401
			v	Tue Fri 8	SLT1
				Wed 8 (even weeks)	SLT1
	26.142		i	Mon Fri 3	ULT
			ii	Thu 5-7	ACE
	26.165		i	Tue Fri 11	MLT2
				Wed 11 (even weeks)	LLT
			ii	Tue Fri 3	MLT2
				Wed 11 (even weeks)	LLT
	T26.165			Tue Wed Fri 3:30	Tam721.134
	26.175			Mon Thu 11	PLT2
				Wed 11 (odd weeks)	LLT
	26.180		i	Tue Wed Fri 12	SLT1
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 3	MLT3
	26.181		i	Tue Wed Fri 8	MLT1
			ii	Tue Wed Fri 9	MLT1
			iii	Tue Wed Fri 10	LeeChem
			iv	Tue Wed Fri 11	MLT1
			v	Tue Wed Fri 2	MLT1
			vi	Mon 5:30, Tue 4:30-6:30	ACE
	26.182			Mon 5:30	ACE
				Tue 4:30-6:30	ACE
	T26.187		i	Mon 10:30	Tam702.04
				Thu Fri 10:30	Tam722.201

see following page

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
II	T26.187 <i>contd</i>		ii	Mon Thu 2:30, Fri 3:30	Tam722.201
	26.188		i	Mon Wed Fri 9	LibB15
			ii	Mon Wed Fri 11	LibB10
	T26.188		i	Mon 10:30	Tam702.04
				Thu Fri 10:30	Tam722.201
			ii	Mon Thu 2:30, Fri 3:30	Tam722.201
	26.200			Tue 10	OCHG07
			i	Mon 11 3	OCHG07
			ii	Mon 11 3	OCHG10
	26.208			Mon Wed Fri 9	HSB2
	T26.208			Mon Tue Thu 1:30	Tam721.134
	26.210			Tue 4-6	PLT2
	26.220			Mon Wed Thu 4	MLT3
	26.221			Mon Wed Thu 9	Dept .
	26.222		i	Tue Thu Fri 11	ZooLT
			ii	Mon Wed Thu 3	PLT2
	26.225			Mon Thu 10	BotLT
	26.240		i	Tue Fri 12	MLT2
			ii	Mon Thu 2	MLT1
	26.241			Tue Fri 9, Wed 11	PLT3
	26.260		i	Mon Thu 9	SLT1
			ii	Mon Thu 12	SLT1
	26.280			Tue Fri 10	CB15
	26.281		i	Tue Fri 12	PLT1
			ii	Tue Fri 4	PLT1
	26.288			Mon Fri 12	OCH1
	T26.288			Tue 11:30, Fri 11.30	Tam721.134
	26.290			Tue 9	CAG16
III				Fri 9	CAG17
	26.293			Tue Wed Fri 3	SLT1
	T26.293			Tue Thu 8:30	Tam721.134
	26.312	1st half		Thu 4-6	PLT4
	26.314			Mon Wed 4	PLT4
	26.315			Mon Wed Thu 3	PLT4
	26.320			Mon 11, Tue Fri 2	MLT3
	26.325	2nd half		Mon Thu 2, Wed 9	CAG14
	26.330	1st half		Mon Wed Thu 12	PLT3
	26.331			Tue Wed Fri 12	Dept
	26.335	2nd half		Mon Wed Thu 12	PLT3
	26.340			Tue Fri 12, Wed 2	MLT3
	26.345	1st half		Mon Wed 4	CB15
	26.355			Mon Thu 10	PLT4
	26.360			Tue Fri 10	MLT3
	26.368	2nd half		Mon Thu 10	PLT3
	26.371			Mon Thu 12	Eng Dept
	26.375	1st half		Tue Fri 12	PLT4
	26.376	2nd half		Tue Fri 12	PLT4
	26.380			Tue Fri 3	PLT4
				Wed 3 (odd weeks)	PLT3
	26.381			Mon Thu 3	Dept
				Wed 3 (even weeks)	PLT3
	26.382			Mon Wed Thu 12	MLT3
	26.385			Mon Wed Thu 10	MLT3
	26.387			Tue 2, Fri 1-3	Dept
	26.390			Tue Fri 9	Dept
	26.391			Mon Thu 9	PLT2
				Wed 11 (odd weeks)	MLT3
	26.395			Tue Fri 11	MLT3
†				Wed 11 (even weeks)	MLT3
	26.399	2nd half		Wed 9	CB15

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
<b>MUSIC</b>					
<b>I</b>	28.100	Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:		Tue 12	Dent
		i		Wed 12	Dent
		ii		Wed 2	Dept
		iii		Wed 3	Dept
	28.101			Tue 11	UniHall
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Mon 12	Dept
		ii		Tue 2	Dept
		PLUS one of the following half hour sessions in the department:			
				Mon 10, Mon 10:30, Mon 12, Tue 9:30, Tue 10, Tue 10:30, Wed 9:30, Wed 10, Wed 10:30	
	28.103			Mon 11	Dept
				Wed 11	UniHall
	28.104			Tue 4-6	UniHall
	28.105			Tue 11	Dent
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue 5	Dent
		ii		Wed 9	Dept
		iii		Wed 10	Dept
	28.106			Thu 11-1	UniHall
	28.110			Fri 2:30-4	Dent
		Students attend the above hour and a half PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue 3:30-4	Dent
		ii		Tue 4-4:30	Dent
		iii		Tue 4:30-5	Dent
		iv		Thu 3-3:30	Dent
		v		Thu 3:30-4	Dept
		vi		Thu 4-4:30	Dept
	28.113			Wed 2	PLT2
	28.114			Fri 11	UniHall
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue 2	Anthro Dept
		ii		Tue 3	Anthro Dept
	28.115			Mon Wed 4:30	ACE
<b>II</b>	28.201			Tue Thu 2	Dent
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS one of the following half hour sessions in the department:			
				Mon 11, Mon 11:30, Tue 11, Tue 11:30, Tue 12, Tue 12:30, Wed 3, Wed 3:30	
	28.202			Wed 12	Dept
		Students attend the above hour PLUS one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue 12	Dept
		ii		Thu 3	Dept
		iii		Thu 4	Dept
		PLUS one of the following sessions in the department:			
				Tue 11, Wed 11	
	28.203			Fri 11-1	Dept
	28.207			Mon 11-1	UniHall
	28.210			Fri 2:30-4	Dept
	28.214			Thu 11-1	Dept
	28.215			Tue 9-11	Dept
	28.216			Tue 4-6	Dept
	28.217			Tue 4-6	ACE
	28.218			Wed 2-4	Dept
	28.221			Tue Thu 3	Dept
	28.223			Mon 2-4	Dept



	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
III	28.301	until Easter after Easter	i	Tue 3-5	Dept
	Tue 2-3:30			Dept	
	28.303		ii	Wed 4-5:30	Dept
				Fri 11-1	Dept
	28.307		Mon 11-1	UniHall	
	28.310		Wed 12	Dept	
	† †		28.314	Wed 9-11	Dept
			28.316	Wed 2-4	Dept
	28.318		Thu 3-5	Dept	
	28.323		Mon 2-4	Dept	
28.324				Thu 11-1	Dept
PACIFIC STUDIES					
I	79.100	2nd half		Wed Thu 12	LibB10
			Fri 12	LibB15	
PHARMACOLOGY					
III	96.301			Wed Thu 8	Dept MedSchool
	96.302			Tue Fri 8	
PHILOSOPHY					
I	29.100	1st half		Tue Thu 3	LibB28
		2nd half		Thu 3	LibB28
II	29.101	1st half		Wed Fri 12	LgeChem
		2nd half		Wed 12	LgeChem
	29.104	1st half		Wed Fri 9	LibB28
		2nd half		Fri 9	LibB28
	29.201	1st,2nd terms		Mon 10, Thu 9-11	Dept
	29.203	1st,2nd terms		Mon Tue Wed 5	Eng3407
	29.204			Thu 4-6	Eng3402
	29.205			Fri 11-1	OCH2
	29.208			Mon 11-1	CAG13
	29.209			Fri 9-11	UniHall
III	29.210			Thu 2-4	HSB2
	29.212			Thu 11-1	CAG13
	29.213			Tue 2-4	Arts716
	29.214	2nd,3rd terms		Mon Wed 2-4	OCH2
	29.302	2nd,3rd terms		Mon 11-1 4	Dept
	29.303			Tue 11-1	BotLT
	29.304			Wed 11-1	CAG16
	29.305			Mon Wed Thu 3	PLT4
	29.306			Tue 9-11	Dept
	29.307			Fri 9-11	Dept
PHYSICS	29.309	2nd,3rd terms		Mon Wed 2-4	OCH2
	29.310			Mon 10	MedChem
	I				
	31.101			Mon Thu 10	MLT2
II				Wed 9	SLT1
	31.102			Mon Wed Thu 4	PLT2
	31.114	2nd half	i	Mon Wed 11	PLT1
		2nd half	ii	Mon Wed 10	SLT1
	T31.122	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 1:30	Tam721.201
	T31.132	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 1:30	Tam721.201
	31.140		i	Mon Thu 9	PLT1
			ii	Mon Thu 2	PLT1
	31.144			Tue Fri 10	PLT1
	31.150		i	Tue Fri 9	PLT1
II			ii	Tue Fri 2	PLT1
	31.200			Wed 2-4	PLT1
	31.206	1st half		Tue Fri 3	PLT2
	31.225			Mon Thu 10	PLT2
	31.240	1st half		Mon Thu 12	PLT2
	31.245			Mon Thu 12	PLT2

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
III	31.255			Tue Fri 10	PLT2
	31.270			Tue 12	PLT2
	31.325			Tue Fri 9	PLT2
	31.326	2nd half		Tue Fri 11	PLT4
	31.330	1st half		Mon Thu 2	PLT3
	31.335			Mon Thu 2	PLT3
	31.342	1st half		Tue Fri 11	PLT4
	31.345			Mon Thu 11	PLT4
	31.355			Mon Thu 9	PLT4
	31.356	1st half		Tue Fri 2	PLT4
†	31.370	2nd half		Tue Fri 2	PLT4
<b>PHYSIOLOGY</b>					
II	67.201			Tue Fri 3	Eng1401
III Stage III lectures are held at the Medical School					
	67.301			Mon Wed 5	Rm2284
	67.302	1st half		Tue Fri 9	Rm2284
	67.303	2nd half		Tue Fri 9	Rm2284
<b>PLANNING</b>					
II	113.240			Mon Tue 9	LLT
<b>POLITICAL STUDIES</b>					
I	30.106	1st half		Tue Wed Thu 3	LgeChem
	30.107	1st half		Mon Wed 12	HSB1
		2nd half		Mon 12	HSB1
	30.109	1st half		Tue Fri 12	LibB15
		2nd half		Tue 12	LibB15
	30.110	2nd half		Tue Wed Thu 3	LgeChem
	T30.111	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu 11:30	Tam702.04
	T30.112	1st half		Mon Tue Thu 11:30	Tam702.04
	30.201	2nd half		Mon Wed 10	UniHall
	30.204	1st half		Mon Wed 10	UniHall
II	30.209	1st half		Mon Wed 12	HSB2
	30.211	1st half		Tue Wed 5	ALR3
	30.213	2nd half		Mon Wed 12	HSB2
	30.214	1st half		Mon Wed 3	OCH1
	30.215	2nd half		Tue Thu 12	Northey
	30.216	1st half		Mon Wed 4	CAG10
	30.218	1st half		Tue Thu 10	UniHall
	30.302			Thu 5	CAG14
	30.304	1st half		Tue Thu 9	Arts209
	30.305			Mon 10	MedChem
III	30.306	1st half		Mon Wed 11	Northey
	30.307	1st half		Mon Thu 4	SLT1
	30.309	2nd half		Mon Thu 4	SLT1
	30.312	2nd half		Tue Thu 9	Arts209
	30.313	2nd half		Mon Wed 3	OCH1
	30.314	1st half		Tue Thu 9	UniHall
	30.318	2nd half		Tue Thu 10	UniHall
	30.319			Tue 4	Eng3407
	30.320			consult Department	
	30.321			consult Department	
<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>					
I	32.108		i	Mon Thu 11	LibB28
			ii	Mon Thu 4	LibB28
	32.109		i	Fri 12	LLT
			ii	Fri 3	LLT
	32.118			Mon Thu 4:30	ACE
	T32.128			Mon Thu 1:30	Tam722.201
	T32.129			Tue 1:30	Tam722.201
	32.220			Mon 3	LibB15
II					

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
III	32.230			Wed 3	HSB1
				Thu 3	LLT
	32.240			Fri 10-12	HSB1
	32.250			Tue 9	HSB2
	32.301			Wed 2	HSB2
	32.303			Tue Thu 10	CAG14
	32.304			Fri 10	HSB2
	32.305			Thu 2	UniHall
	32.306			Mon 10, Thu 12	ULT
	32.307			Fri 11	Dept
	32.309			Mon Fri 12	Dept
	32.311			Thu 3	Arts716
	32.312			Thu 4-6	LibB15
	32.314			Tue 2-5	CAG10
RUSSIAN I	32.315			Wed 10-12	ZooLT
	32.316			Mon 3-5	ALR3
	43.100)			Mon 12	Arts716
	43.101)	Students attend the above hour PLUS four hours in one of the following streams:			
		i		Tue Wed Thu Fri 12	HSB410
		ii		Tue Wed Thu Fri 2	HSB410
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:			
				Tue 3	Lab2
				Tue 3	Arts213
				Tue 4	Arts213
	43.111			Mon 3-5	Arts209
	43.112			Thu 10-12	SLT1
	43.113			Fri 10-12	Arts215
II	43.210			Wed 3	CAG16
				Fri 10-12	CAG13
	43.211			Tue Fri 2	Dept
III	43.212			Mon Thu 2	Dept
	43.310			Wed 2, Thu 10-12	Dept
	43.311			Wed 10-12	Dept
	43.313			Fri 10-12	Dept
SAMOAN I	478.100	2nd,3rd terms		Tue 10	BotLT
				Thu 11	OA029
	478.101	1st,2nd terms	Fri 11	Wed 11 HSB2	BotLT
SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES I	46.100	Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:		Tue Fri 12	Dent
				Wed 2	Lab1
	46.101			Tue Thu 11	Arts209
	46.102			Mon 12, Wed 11	Dent
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
II	46.200			Thu 12 Thu 9-11	Arts214 Dept
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:			
				Mon 9	Lab2
III	46.201			Fri 9-11	Dept
	46.202			Wed 9-11	Dept
	46.300			Tue Thu 9	Dept
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS the following laboratory:		Tue 10	Lab2

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	46.301			Fri 9-11	Dept
	46.302			Wed 9-11	Dept
<b>SCIENCE COMMUNICATION</b>					
<b>I</b>	T701.101			Wed Thu 9:30	Tam721.134
<b>SOCIOLOGY</b>					
<b>I</b>	82.100	2nd half	i	Wed Fri 12	LibB28
		2nd half	ii	Wed Fri 4	LibB15
	82.101	1st half	i	Wed Fri 12	LibB28
		1st half	ii	Wed Fri 4	LibB15
	82.102	1st half		Mon Thu 2	ULT
	82.104	2nd half		Tue Thu 5	Manukau
<b>II</b>	82.200	1st half		Mon 12	MLT2
				Mon 2-4	OA039
	82.202	2nd half		Thu 9-11	Arts215
		2nd half		Fri 10	Eng3407
	82.205	1st half		Tue 9	OA029
		1st half		Thu 9-11	Arts215
	82.208	1st half		Mon 10	Arts209
		1st half		Mon 4-6	BotLT
	82.209	1st half		Tue 3	HSB1
		1st half		Wed 2-4	OA029
	82.213	2nd half		Mon 10	Arts209
		2nd half		Mon 4-6	BotLT
	82.214	2nd half		Mon 2-4	OA039
		2nd half		Tue 9	OA029
	82.215	2nd half		Wed 2-4	Eng3401
		2nd half		Thu 3	Arts215
<b>III</b>	82.301	1st half		Wed 2, Thu 11-1	HSB919
	82.302	1st half		Fri 10-1	CAG14
	82.305	1st half		Wed 3, Fri 2-4	HSB919
	82.307	2nd half		Tue 12	LibB10
		2nd half		Thu 2-4	ZooLT
	82.314	2nd half		Fri 10-1	CAG14
	82.318	1st half		Tue 9-11	MLT2
		1st half		Wed 4	Eng3401
	82.319	2nd half		Mon 12	BotLT
		2nd half		Tue 2-4	OCHG07
	82.320	1st half		Mon 9-12	CAG14
	82.321	2nd half		Mon 9-12	CAG14
	82.322	1st half		Thu 2-4	ZooLT
		1st half		Fri 9	HSB370
<b>SPANISH</b>					
<b>I</b>	45.103			Tue 11, Wed 1	Arts716
	45.104)		i	Mon Tue Wed Thu 9	Arts201
	45.105)		ii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 9	Arts509
			iii	Mon Tue Wed Thu 9	Arts607
			iv	Mon Tue Wed Thu 10	Arts607
			v	Mon Tue Wed Thu 12	Arts509
			vi	Mon Wed Thu 12	Arts607
				Tue 12	Arts719
			vii	Mon 3	Arts206
				Tue Wed Thu 3	Arts509
			viii	Mon 4	Arts206
				Tue Wed Thu 4	Arts509
Students attend four hours in one of the above streams					
PLUS one of the following oral classes:					
				Mon 10	Arts613
				Mon 12	Arts701
				Mon 2	Arts609
				Tue 11	Arts723

Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
			Tue 12	Arts609
			Tue 2	Arts201
			Tue 2	Arts613
			Tue 4	Arts609
			Tue 5	Arts611
			Wed 10	Arts611
			Wed 10	Arts723
			Wed 11	Arts201
			Wed 11	Arts613
			Wed 11	Arts701
			Wed 2	Arts201
			Wed 3	Arts611
			Thu 10	Arts609
			Thu 10	Arts723
			Thu 11	Arts609
			Thu 11	Arts723
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:		
			Tue 10	Arts708
			Tue 11	Arts214
			Tue 3	Arts214
			Tue 3	Arts708
			Wed 10	Lab1
			Wed 11	Lab1
			Wed 11	Arts214
			Thu 10	Arts708
			Thu 11	Arts214
			Thu 3	Arts214
			Fri 10	Arts708
			Fri 12	Arts214
45.107)		i	Mon Wed Thu 10	Arts201
45.108)			Tue 10	Arts509
		ii	Mon Tue 12	Arts202
			Wed 12	Arts719
			Thu 12	CB15
		Students attend four hours in one of the above streams		
		PLUS one of the following oral classes:		
			Mon 11	Arts723
			Mon 2	Arts613
			Wed 11	Arts213
II	45.200	i	Tue 11	Arts607
			Thu 11	Arts719
		ii	Tue 2	Arts607
			Thu 2	Arts719
		iii	Tue 2	Arts719
			Thu 2	Arts607
		iv	Tue Thu 4	Arts607
		Students attend both hours in one of the above streams		
		PLUS one of the following oral classes:		
			Mon 11	Arts609
			Tue 9	Arts611
			Wed 9	Arts611
			Wed 5	Arts611
			Thu 12	Arts203
			Fri 10	Arts611
			Fri 11	Arts611
			Fri 12	Arts611
		PLUS one of the following laboratories:		
			Mon 11	Arts214
			Tue 12	Arts213
			Wed 12	Arts214
			Thu 11	Arts708
			Thu 12	Arts213
			Thu 2	Arts214
45.202			Thu 10-12	Arts716

	Paper Number	Part of Year	Stream	Day and Time	Room
	45.203			Mon 11	Arts607
				Mon 12	Arts611
	45.204			Wed 2	Arts215
				Wed 3	Arts607
	45.206			Mon 1	Arts214
	45.208		i	Mon 10	Arts206
				Thu 2	Arts509
			ii	Tue 11	Arts509
				Thu 11	Arts607
			iii	Tue Thu 12	Arts206
		Students attend both hours in one of the above streams PLUS one of the following oral classes:			
				Mon 9	Arts611
				Mon 2	Arts213
III	45.300		i	Mon 10	Arts206
				Thu 2	Arts509
			ii	Tue 11	Arts509
				Thu 11	Arts607
			ii	Tue Thu 12	Arts206
		Students attend both hours in one of the above streams PLUS one of the following oral classes:			
				Wed 12	Arts609
				Thu 9	Arts611
				Fri 11	Arts609
				Fri 12	Arts613
	45.304			Mon 3-5	Arts607
	45.306			Mon 1	Arts214
	45.307			Mon 2	Arts206
				Tue 3	Arts607
	45.308			Mon 12	Arts613
				Wed 2	Arts203
		Students attend both the above hours PLUS one of the following oral classes:			
				Tue 2	Arts611
				Thu 2	Arts203
	45.309			Tue 10	Arts719
				Wed 3	Arts213
<b>TUTORING IN SCIENCE</b>					
II	620.200	until Easter		Wed 2-4	Edu Dept
<b>WOMEN'S STUDIES</b>					
I	† 488.100	2nd half		Mon Thu 10	ZooLT
	† 488.101	1st half		Mon Thu 10	ZooLT
<b>ZOOLOGY</b>					
I	38.102	2nd half	i	Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	HSB1
		2nd half	ii	Mon Tue Thu Fri 4	HSB1
II	38.207	1st half		Tue Fri 9	ZooLT
	38.250			Mon Tue 2	ZooLT
	38.251	1st half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 4	ZooLT
	38.252	2nd half		Mon Tue Thu Fri 4	ZooLT
III	38.303	4th quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 4	CB15
	38.305	1st quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	BotLT
	38.310	2nd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	OA029
	38.315	3rd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	OA029
	38.316	3rd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 9	BotLT
	38.317	2nd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 2	BotLT
	38.319	2nd quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 3	Dept
	38.320	1st quarter		Mon Tue Thu Fri 9	BotLT

# SCIENCE LABORATORY TIMETABLE 1993

Paper Number	Part Year	Stream Code	Day and Time	Paper Number	Part Year	Stream Code	Day and Time
<b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>							
II	66.202	W10	Wed 10-1	T08.170			Students attend eight three-hour laboratory sessions on Saturday morning, 9.30-12.30, at the Main Campus. The dates of the laboratories are: 13 March, 3 April, 17 April, 19 June, 26 June, 24 July, 31 July, 25 September
	66.203	F10	Fri 10-1				
		T10	Tue 10-1				
		Th10	Thu 10-1				
			Mon Thu 10-1				
III	66.301	1st half	Mon Thu 10-1	II	08.210		Two times in 1st half or 2nd half year chosen from:
	66.302	2nd half	Mon Thu 10-1				Mon 10-1
<b>BIOLOGY</b>							
I	39.101	1st half	T10a				Mon 3-6
		1st half	T10b				Tue 10-1
		1st half	W10a				Tue 3-6
		1st half	W10b				Wed 10-1
		1st half	W3a				Thu 10-1
		1st half	W3b				Thu 3-6
		1st half	Th10a				
		1st half	Th10b				
		1st half	F10a				Mon 10-1
		1st half	F10b				Mon 3-6
	39.103	Three Sunday field trips					Tue 10-1
III	39.311	2nd quarter	Wed 10-1, 2-5				Tue 3-6
	39.314	4th quarter	Wed 10-1, 2-5				Wed 10-1
<b>BOTANY</b>							Wed 3-6
I	06.102	2nd half	T10				Thu 10-1
		2nd half	W10				Thu 3-6
		2nd half	W2				
		2nd half	Th10				Tue 10-1
		2nd half	F10				Tue 3-6
II	06.250	1st,2nd,3rd qu.	W10				Wed 3-6
		1st,2nd,3rd qu.	W2				Thu 10-1
	06.251	2nd half	MTh10				Thu 3-6
		2nd half	TF10				Fri 10-1
	06.252	1st half	MTh10				
		1st half	TF10				Mon 10-1
III	06.313	1st quarter	Thu 10-1				Thu 10-1
	06.326	1st half	Wed 10-1, 2-5				Fri 10-1
		Students wishing to take both 06.326 and 39.311 should note that the laboratories are so arranged that they can take both papers					Mon 10-1
	06.334	3rd quarter	Tue Fri 10-1				Mon 3-6
	06.335	4th quarter	Mon Thu 10-1				Thu 10-1
	06.341	4th quarter	Tue Fri 10-1				Thu 3-6
	06.361	2nd quarter	Tue Fri 10-1				
	06.371	3rd quarter	Thu 10-1				
		Students wishing to take both 06.371 and 38.316 should note that the laboratories are so arranged that they can take both papers					Mon 10-1
<b>CELLULAR &amp; MOLECULAR BIOLOGY</b>							Mon 3-6
III	40.303	1st half	MTh10				Tue 10-1
		1st half	TF10				Tue 3-6
	40.304	2nd half	Tue Fri 10-1				Wed 10-1
	40.305	2nd half	Tue Fri 10-1				Thu 10-1
			Wed 10-1, 3-6				Thu 3-6
<b>CHEMISTRY</b>				III	08.310, 08.311		
I	08.111, 08.121	Students will be assigned to one three-hour laboratory session chosen from:					Two times in quarters 1, 2, 3 or 4 chosen from:
		M10	Mon 10-1				Mon 10-1
		M3	Mon 3-6				Mon 3-6
		T10	Tue 10-1				Tue 10-1
		T3	Tue 3-6				Tue 3-6
		W3	Wed 3-6				Wed 10-1
	#	Th10	Thu 10-1				Thu 10-1
		Th3	Thu 3-6				Thu 3-6
		F10	Fri 10-1				
# This stream is for students enrolled in only 08.121							

Paper Number	Part Year	Stream Code	Day and Time
08.330	Two times in quarters 1 or 2	chosen from:	Tue 3-6 Wed 10-1 Wed 3-6 Thu 10-1 Thu 3-6 Fri 10-1
08.331	Two times in quarters 3 or 4	chosen from:	Tue 3-6 Wed 10-1 Wed 3-6 Thu 10-1 Thu 3-6 Fri 10-1
08.340	Consult Department		
08.352	One time in quarters 2, 3 and 4	chosen from:	Mon 10-1 Tue 3-6 Fri 10-1
08.360	One time in 2nd half	chosen from:	Mon 10-1 Mon 3-6 Thu 10-1 Thu 3-6 Fri 10-1
08.370	2nd half		

### COMPUTER SCIENCE

Consult Department

### GEOGRAPHY

I	20.101, 20.102	T11	Tue 11-1
		T2	Tue 2-4
		T4	Tue 4-6
		W10	Wed 10-12
		W2	Wed 2-4
		W4	Wed 4-6
		Th10	Thu 10-12
		Th2	Thu 2-4
		Th4	Thu 4-6
		F9	Fri 9-11
		F11	Fri 11-1
		F2	Fri 2-4
		Consult Department	
		T9	Tue 9
		T10	Tue 10
II	T20.101, T20.102 20.201	T11	Tue 11
		T12	Tue 12
		T2	Tue 2
		T3	Tue 3
		T4	Tue 4
		T9	Tue 9
		T10	Tue 10
		T11	Tue 11
		T2	Tue 2
		W8	Wed 8
		W9	Wed 9
		W12	Wed 12
		W3	Wed 3
		Th9	Thu 9-11
		Th11	Thu 11-1
20.202		Th2	Thu 2-4
		M9	Mon 9
		M10	Mon 10
		M11	Mon 11
		M12	Mon 12
		M2	Mon 2
		M3	Mon 3
		M4	Mon 4
		M5	Mon 5
		Consult Department	
		Mon 9	
III	20.205 20.302		

Paper Number	Part Year	Stream Code	Day and Time
20.303		W9	Wed 9-11
		W11	Wed 11-1
		W2	Wed 2-4
20.304		M5	Mon 5
		Th2	Thu 2
		Th3	Thu 3
20.305			Thu 3
20.312			Mon 11
20.313		W4	Wed 4-6
		Th9	Thu 9-11
20.314		Consult Department	
20.315			Tue 5
20.320		Th12	Thu 12
		Th4	Thu 4

### GEOLOGY

I	T21.108 21.111	Consult Department	
		T11	Tue 11-1
		T3	Tue 3-5
		Th11	Thu 11-1
		Th3	Thu 3-5
		F11	Fri 11-1
		Attend one from:	
		2nd half M3	Mon 3-5
		2nd half T11	Tue 11-1
		2nd half T3	Tue 3-5
		PLUS one from:	
		2nd half Th11	Thu 11-1
		2nd half Th3	Thu 3-5
		2nd half F3	Fri 3-5
II	21.200 21.211 21.212 21.213	2nd quarter	Wed 8
		2nd half	Tue 10-1
		1st half	Tue 10-1
		1st half W10	Wed 10-1
		1st half W3	Wed 3-6
		2nd half W10	Wed 10-1
		2nd half W3	Wed 3-6
III	21.215 21.300 21.303 21.307 21.311 21.312 21.314 21.315 21.318 21.319 21.324	1st half	Thu 2
			Wed 3-6
		2nd half	Thu Fri 3-6
		1st half	Fri 10-1
		2nd half	Fri 10-1
		1st half	Mon 3-6
		1st half	Tue 10-1
		1st half	Thu 11-1
		2nd half	Wed 11-1
		2nd half	Mon 3-6

### PHARMACOLOGY

(at Medical School)

III	96.301 96.302	T10	Tue 10-1
		W10	Wed 10-1
		T3	Tue 3-6
		F3	Fri 3-6

### PHYSICS

I	31.114	Attend one from:	
		2nd half M3	Mon 3-6
		2nd half T10	Tue 10-1
		2nd half T3	Tue 3-6
		2nd half W3	Wed 3-6
		2nd half Th10	Thu 10-1
		2nd half Th3	Thu 3-6
		2nd half F3	Fri 3-6
		Attend one from:	
		1st half M3	Mon 3-6
		1st half F10	Fri 10-1
		Attend one from:	
		2nd half M3	Mon 3-6
		2nd half T3	Tue 3-6
		2nd half Th10	Thu 10-1



[illegible]

## GLOSSARY OF TERMINOLOGY

An explanation of some commonly used University terms in the *Calendar*:

<b>Ad Eundem Statum</b>	A means of admission to the University for students who have completed an acceptable level of study overseas.
<b>Availability of Papers</b>	Not all papers are available in any given year. Papers which will definitely not be taught are indicated with a '*' in the Schedules and the Timetable. Papers which may not be taught unless sufficient staff is available are indicated with a '†'. Papers which do not appear with either a * or a † are definitely available. However, Regulation 2(c) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) may be invoked in specific circumstances.
<b>Bachelor's Degree</b>	Undergraduate students work towards a Bachelor's degree which takes 3 or more years of study.
<b>Campus Code</b>	Refer to Paper in this Glossary.
<b>Certificate Courses</b>	Courses of study which lead to the award of a certificate. Their level may be pre-undergraduate or they may be short courses aimed at professionals.
<b>Conjoint Degrees</b>	It is possible in certain circumstances, to study for two bachelor's degrees at the same time. This reduces the requirements for completion of the two degrees.
<b>COP (Certificate of Proficiency)</b>	A paper which is studied and examined in the normal manner but which does not constitute part of the student's degree or diploma course is shown on the record as COP.
<b>Corequisite</b>	A paper required to be studied at the same time as another paper unless it has been previously passed.
<b>Council</b>	The governing body of the University.
<b>Course of study</b>	The course of study is the Intermediate, Degree, Diploma or Certificate in which a student is enrolled. Each course of study consists of a number of papers. Course regulations in this <i>Calendar</i> set out the requirements for each programme.
<b>Cross-Credit</b>	A Paper which is common to two courses of study and is credited to both. Cross-crediting procedures are set out in Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
<b>Dean</b>	The Head of a Faculty.
<b>Department</b>	A sub-division within a Faculty focusing on a particular subject or subjects.
<b>Diploma</b>	Graduate or postgraduate courses which (i) extend knowledge within the original specialised field of the degree or (ii) meet the needs of specific groups - usually with a professional or semi-professional focus.
<b>Dissertation</b>	A written research component of some degrees above the level of Bachelor's. Generally of less weight than a thesis.
<b>Double chance</b>	Refer to plussage.
<b>EFTS</b>	Equivalent Full-Time Student.
<b>Enrolment</b>	The process which follows pre-enrolment and which includes the payment of tuition and other fees to complete registration at the University.
<b>Extra-Mural</b>	Study by correspondence. Most university extra-mural study in New Zealand is carried out through Massey University.
<b>Faculty</b>	The University is divided into ten Faculties most of which comprise groups of loosely related departments.
<b>Full-time</b>	Each course has a definition of what constitutes full-time study. It is important for student allowances and fees purposes. For first-year students six papers usually satisfy the regulations. For more details refer to the Definitions of Full-time Study in this <i>Calendar</i> .
<b>Honours</b>	Some courses of study beyond a basic Bachelor's degree may be awarded with honours. There are two classes of Honours - first and second.
<b>Intermediate</b>	The preliminary year of study taken before you start a professional degree, e.g. LawInt is the intermediate year for the degree Bachelor of Laws. Although it is a prescribed first year, it is usually of a fairly general nature.
<b>Laboratory</b>	Many departments have 'labs' as part of their requirements. These are sessions of a practical nature. Most departments in the Science Faculty, for example, organise three-hour laboratory sessions on a regular basis.

**Lecture** The basic unit of instruction, usually of 50 minutes duration.

### Lecture Theatres

The following are commonly used abbreviations and are those adopted in the Timetable. Most room numbers have two parts. The letters at the beginning relate to a building, the numbers at the end a specific room in that building. The following is a list of building codes. Plans of the campuses appear elsewhere in this *Calendar*.

ACE	Auckland College of Education, 74 Epsom Avenue, Epsom
Algie	Algie Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
ALR	Architecture Lecture Room, Architecture Building, 22-26 Symonds Street
Arts	Arts 1 (New Arts) Building, 14A Symonds Street
BotLT	Botany Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building, 3A Symonds Street
CA	Commerce A Building, 3A Symonds Street
CB	Commerce B Building, 5 Symonds Street
Chem	Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street, contains the Large and Medium Chemistry Lecture Theatres (LgeChem and MedChem)
CMBioLT	Cellular and Molecular Biology Lecture Theatre, Thomas Building, 3A Symonds Street
Dept	Departmental room
Eng	Engineering Buildings, 24 Symonds Street
HSB	Human Sciences Building, 10 Symonds Street
Lab1, Lab2	Language Laboratories 1 and 2, 8 Grafton Road
LgeChem	Large Chemistry Lecture Theatre, Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street
Lib	Library Building, 28 Princes Street, contains basement theatres B10, B15 and B28
LLT	Lower Lecture Theatre, behind Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
Manukau	Manukau Polytechnic, 1 Otara Road, Otara
MedChem	Medium Chemistry Lecture Theatre, Chemistry Building, 23 Symonds Street
MLT	Maths Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
Northey	Northey Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
Northld	Northland Polytechnic, Raumanga Valley, RD, Whangarei
OA	Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
OCH	Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street
PLT	Physics Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
SLT	Science Lecture Theatre, Maths/Physics Building, 36 Princes Street
Stone	Stone Lecture Theatre, Law Buildings, 5-17 Eden Crescent
Tam	Tamaki Campus, Morrin Road, Glen Innes
ULT	Upper Lecture Theatre, behind Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
UniHall	University Hall, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
ZooLT	Zoology Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building, 3A Symonds Street
01Wyn	1 Wynyard Street, Classics Building

**Limited Entry Course or Paper** Because of limitations on the availability of staff and/or teaching and laboratory space the number of students that can be accepted for most courses of study, all Stage I Arts and Science papers, and some advanced level papers, is limited. Such courses or papers are called Limited Entry Courses and Papers.

**Main Campus** The Campus which is situated in the City Centre.

**Matriculation** The process by which a student is officially admitted to the University.

**Master's degree** A graduate course of study beyond the level of a Bachelor's degree.

**Paper** A Course of Study comprises a range of papers. Each paper is listed in the *Calendar* and is identified by a five or six digit number. Papers taught at the Tamaki Campus have a 'T' prefix and papers taught at Northland Polytechnic a 'N' prefix. Papers taught at the Main Campus do not have a prefix. This is referred to as 'Campus Code' in the Schedules.

**Part of Year** Some papers run the full year, others only part of the year, but most are of equal weight. Those covering only part of the year compensate by having more time devoted to them each week. If the part of the year in which the paper is taught is any other than the full year, this is indicated in the Bachelor's Degree Schedules and the Lecture and Laboratory Timetables.

The following are the parts of the year during which papers are taught:

<i>Quarters</i>	
1st quarter	- Monday 1 March to Friday 16 April
2nd quarter	- Monday 19 April to Friday 18 June
3rd quarter	- Monday 21 June to Friday 6 August
4th quarter	- Monday 9 August to Friday 8 October
<i>Terms</i>	
1st term	- Monday 1 March to Friday 7 May
2nd term	- Monday 31 May to Friday 13 August
3rd term	- Monday 6 September to Friday 8 October
<i>Halves</i>	
1st half	- Monday 1 March to Friday 18 June

<b>2nd half Full Year full year</b>	-	Monday 21 June to Friday 8 October
	-	Monday 1 March to Friday 8 October. Used for classes taught over the whole academic year where others in the same paper or stream are for part of the year only.
<b>Part-time</b>		Part-time study does not qualify students for allowance assistance (see Full-time). Part-time courses are mostly undertaken in normal study hours.
<b>PhD</b>		Doctor of Philosophy - a degree of a higher level than an Honours or Masters course.
<b>Plussage</b>		A system by which students are credited with a final result for the year which is either the final examination grade or a combination of final grade plus course work, whichever is to the student's advantage. Many departments operate such a system. The precise regulations for plussage for each paper should be checked as there are variations.
<b>Pre-enrolment</b>		All students intending to enrol at Auckland in 1993 must pre-enrol by completing and submitting the appropriate Pre-enrolment Application Form (PAF). There are five different versions of the PAF for 1993. There are specified deadline dates by which PAFs must be submitted.
<b>Prerequisite</b>		A paper which must be passed before another is attempted. Many departments require you to pass two papers at Stage I in a subject before you progress to Stage II in that subject.
<b>Prescribed Texts</b>		Textbooks which are considered essential to the paper concerned.
<b>Prescriptions</b>		Descriptions of papers.
<b>Recommended Texts</b>		Textbooks which are useful for the paper concerned but which are not deemed essential. Departments usually issue lists of such books.
<b>Registry</b>		The administrative centre of the University.
<b>Research Essay</b>		A written research component of some degrees above the level of Bachelor's. It is of less weight than a thesis.
<b>Restriction</b>		It is not permitted to credit two similar papers to the same course. Papers that are restricted against each other are listed in the Schedules in this <i>Calendar</i> .
<b>Returning Students</b>		All students who were enrolled at the University of Auckland last year and who are returning to continue with their course of study or to start a new one.
<b>Schedule</b>		A tabulated list of papers taught for a particular degree. The Schedule typically contains information relating to papers' availability, part of the year in which they are taught, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions.
<b>Senate</b>		The Committee to which Faculties report and which, in turn, reports to Council.
<b>Stage I, II, III</b>		The academic level of study of a paper. Papers at different levels in the same subject are taken in successive years. Stage I papers are the entry level.
<b>Subject</b>		Papers are grouped into subject areas. For general degrees a range of subjects is studied with only one or perhaps two subjects taken to Stage III.
<b>Tamaki Campus</b>		The new campus of the University situated in Morrin Road, Glen Innes.
<b>Thesis</b>		A major written research component of higher degrees.
<b>Timetable</b>		The <i>Calendar</i> sets out the weekly timetable of lectures for most papers in general degrees and for laboratories in Science. A key is provided explaining the abbreviations used.
<b>Tutorial</b>		A small group teaching session. At Stage I the numbers of students in lectures are often very large, but most papers require weekly or fortnightly tutorials with a regular tutor where questions may be asked or points raised in the lectures discussed.
<b>Unsatisfactory Progress</b>		Failure to make satisfactory academic progress renders a student liable for suspension from further enrolment for at least one year. The regulations relating to this appear under Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) in this <i>Calendar</i> .

# SUMMARY OF SUBJECT CODES

01	Accounting and Finance	70	Business Administration
02	Commercial Law	71	Marketing & International Business
03	Anthropology	72	Management Studies & Labour Relations
04	Maori Studies	74	Management Science & Information Systems
06	Botany	75	Drama
07	Computer Science	79	Pacific Studies
08	Chemistry	80	Indonesian
09	Latin	81	Japanese
10	Greek	82	Sociology
12	Ancient History	83	Linguistics
13	Economics	85	Film & Television Studies
14	Education; Guidance & Counselling	86	Energy Technology
16	Educational Psychology	89	Medical Science
18	English	90	Medicine (MBChB)
19	Art History	91	Community Health
20	Geography	92	Medicine
21	Geology	93	Paediatrics
22	German	94	Psychiatry
23	Hebrew	95	Surgery
24	History	96	Pharmacology
25	Law	97	Asian Studies
26	Mathematics	98	Molecular Medicine
27	Fine Arts	110	Architecture Property and Planning General
28	Music	111	Architecture
29	Philosophy	112	Property
30	Political Studies;	113	Planning
	Local Government & Administration	115	Architecture (Masters)
31	Physics	191	Pulp & Paper Technology
32	Psychology	225	Law Honours
34	French	270	Business Administration
35	Italian	275	Labour Studies
38	Zoology	375	Introductory & Ancillary Topics (Theology)
39	Biology	376	Hebrew Bible
40	Cellular & Molecular Biology	377	New Testament
43	Russian	378	Systematic Theology
45	Spanish	379	Church History
46	Scandinavian Studies	380	Moral & Practical Theology
47	Obstetrics & Gynaecology	421	Dutch
48	Chinese	449	Korean
50	Engineering, General	460	Translation
51	Chemical & Materials Engineering	478	Samoan
52	Civil Engineering	486	Theatre Studies
53	Electrical & Electronic Engineering	488	Women's Studies
54	Engineering Science	571	Arts Administration
55	Mechanical Engineering	576	Performing Arts
56	Mining Engineering	590	English as a Second Language
60	Human Biology	620	Tutoring in Science
63	Behavioural Science	621	Science Education
64	Environmental Science	625	Mathematics Education
65	Anatomy	634	Science Education
66	Biochemistry	690	Social Work
67	Physiology	701	Science General
68	Pathology	744	Optometry
69	General Practice	751	Audiology
		788	Health Sciences

**DIRECTORY***(The Postal Address for all Departments is The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland)*

Academic Registrar	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Accommodation Officer	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Accounts	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Accounting & Finance	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Acoustics Research & Testing Service	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Administration	Registry Building and Old Arts Building	24 Princes Street 22 Princes Street
Alumni Office	Room 2, Lower Lecture Theatre	3A Symonds Street
Anatomy	School of Medicine	85 Park Road 5 Alten Road 85 Park Road
Ancient History - refer Classics	School of Medicine	10 Symonds Street
Animal Research Laboratories	Human Sciences Building	22/26 Symonds Street
Anthropology	Architecture Building	4 Alfred Street and 11 Symonds Street
Architecture Property & Planning	Art History Buildings	10 Symonds Street
Art History	Human Sciences Building	5 Wynyard Street
Arts Faculty Office	History Building	10 Symonds Street
Asian History - refer History	Human Sciences Building	9 Symonds Street and 2 & 4 Alfred Street
Asian Geography - refer Geography	Asian Languages Buildings	20 Symonds Street 9 Grafton Road
Asian Languages & Literatures		23 Symonds Street
Auckland UniServices Ltd	Engineering Building	85 Park Road 3A Symonds Street
Auckland University Press	Science Building	3A Symonds Street
Audio Visual Centre	Old Arts East Wing	23 Symonds Street
Bank of New Zealand	School of Medicine	5 Symonds Street
Behavioural Science	Thomas Building	34 Princes and High Streets
Biological Sciences, School of incorporating Botany, Cellular & Molecular Biology, Zoology: incorporating Biochemistry:	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Biological Sciences Student Resource Centre	Science Building	34 Princes Street
Bookshop	Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Botany - deliveries	Student Union Building	16 Waterloo Quadrant
Cafeteria	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Careers Advisory Service	Student Union	3 Symonds Street
Cashier	Upper Lecture Theatre (rear)	5 Symonds Street
Catholic Chaplains	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Cellular & Molecular Biology - deliveries	Newman Hall	3 Symonds Street
Centre for Information Science	Thomas Building	18 Symonds Street
Centre for Labour Studies	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Centre for Pacific Studies	Commerce C Building	22 Wynyard Street
Chapel and Chaplains	Building 231	18 Princes Street
Chemistry	Maclaurin Chapel	23 Symonds Street
Chemistry - deliveries	Science Building	40 Wellesley Street E.
Childcare Centre	Science Building	22 Park Avenue
Chinese	Asian Languages Buildings	2 Alfred Street and 9 Symonds Street 5 Alten Road
Classics & Ancient History	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Commerce Faculty Office	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Commerce Student Resource Centre	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Commercial Law	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Community Health	Computer Centre Building	24 Symonds Street
Computer Centre	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Computer Science	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Conference Centre	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Continuing Education	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Counsellors	Science Building	30-32 Wynyard Street
Creche	Arts I Building	23 Symonds Street
Custodians Office	Germanic Languages Building	14A Symonds Street
Drama Theatre	Commerce A Building	10 Grafton Road
Dutch	Fisher International Building	3A Symonds Street
Economics	Engineering Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
Education	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering	Arts I Building	3 Grafton Road
Engineering - deliveries	Registry Building	14A Symonds Street
English	Human Sciences Building	24 Princes Street
Enquiries	Lower Lecture Theatre	10 Symonds Street
Environmental Science	Old Government House, Annexe	3A Symonds Street
Equal Employment Opportunities Office	Old Arts Building	3A Symonds Street
Federation of University Women	Fine Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Finance Registrar	Fine Arts Building	28 Symonds Street
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Fine Arts - deliveries		

Fisher International Building	Arts I Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
French - refer Romance Languages	School of Medicine	14A Symonds Street
General Practice	Human Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Geography	Science Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Architecture Building	23 Symonds Street
Geothermal Institute	Germanic Languages Building	26 Symonds Street
German	Commerce C Building	10 Grafton Road
Graduate School of Business		18 Symonds Street
Grafton Hall		40 Seafield View Road
Greek - refer Classics		5 Alten Road
Grounds Dept		3 Symonds Street
Gymnasium	Recreation Centre	17 Symonds Street
Higher Education Research Office	Fisher Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
History	History Building	5 Wynyard Street
Human Sciences Building		10 Symonds Street
Indonesian	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Information & Public Affairs Officer	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
International House		27 Whitaker Place
Italian - refer Romance Languages	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Japanese	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Kenneth Maidment Theatre	Maidment Arts Centre	8 Alfred Street
Korean	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Language Laboratories B and D	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Language Laboratories 1 and 2		8 Grafton Road
Language Laboratories 3, 4 and 5	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Latin - refer Classics		5 Alten Road
Law	Law Buildings	9-17 Eden Crescent
Lecture Theatres & Rooms:		
Architecture (ALR)	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Botany (BotLT)	Old Biology Building	3A Symonds Street
Cell Biology (CMBioLT)	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Chemistry (Chem)	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Conference Centre		22 Symonds Street
Engineering (Eng)	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Human Sciences (HSB)	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Library (Lib)	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Mathematics & Statistics (MLT)	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Medical	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Old Arts (OA)	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Old Choral Hall (OCH)	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Physics (PLT)	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Upper and Lower		3A Symonds Street
(ULT & LLT)		
Zoology (ZooLT)	Old Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Leigh Laboratory	Goat Island Bay Road, R.D., Leigh,	North Auckland
		(Phone Warkworth 422-6111 or 793-934)
Liaison Office	The Cottage	3A Symonds Street
Library:		
General	Library Building	3-5 Alfred Street
General - deliveries	Library Building	26 Princes Street
Architecture	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Asian Languages & Literatures	Library Building	3-5 Alfred Street
Audio Visual	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Bio. Sciences - deliveries	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Commerce	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Continuing Education	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering - deliveries	Engineering Building	3 Grafton Road
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Law	Law Buildings	15 Eden Crescent
Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)		16 Wynyard Street
Medicine (Philson Library)	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Music	Music Building	6 Symonds Street
Science	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Tamaki	Tamaki Campus	Corner Merton and Morrin Roads
Linguistics - refer Anthropology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Maidment Arts Centre		8 Alfred Street
Main Stores - Services	Arts I Building	29 Wynyard Street
Maintenance	Human Sciences Building	13-19 Wynyard Street
Management Science & Info. Systems	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Management Studies & Labour Relations	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Maori Studies	Maori Studies Academic Wing	16 Wynyard Street
Marketing & International Business	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street

Marae		16 Wynyard Street
Mathematics & Statistics	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Medicine	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Music	School of Music	6 Symonds Street
Music-Piano Studies		18 Grafton Road
Newman Hall		16 Waterloo Quadrant
Norman Spencer Student Apartments		9 St Stephens Avenue
'Number 14'		14 Whitaker Place
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	National Women's Hospital	Claude Road, Epsom
Old Arts Building		22 Princes Street
Old Choral Hall		7 Symonds Street
Old Government House		3A Symonds Street
Optometry	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
O'Rorke Hall		16 Mount Street
Paediatrics	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Park Road Student Flats		70 Seafield View Road
Pathology	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Personnel	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Pharmacology	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Pharmacy and Post Office Agency	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Philosophy		1 Alfred Street
Photographer - refer Audio Visual Centre	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Physico-Chemistry	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Physics	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Physics- deliveries	Science Building	40 Wellesley Street E.
Physiology	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Planning	Architecture Building	22-26 Symonds Street
Political Studies	Political Studies Building	14 Symonds Street
Property	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Psychiatry and Behavioural Science	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Psychology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Recreation Centre		17 Symonds Street
Registry		24 Princes Street
Romance Languages	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Russian	Building 236	28 Wynyard Street
Scandinavian Studies	Germanic Languages Building	10 Grafton Road
Science Faculty Office	Ground Floor, Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
Senior Common Room	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Services - Administration	Human Sciences Building	11 Wynyard Street
Sociology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Spanish - refer Romance Languages	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Staff Registrar	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Staff Development Officer	Fisher Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
Student Accommodation	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Student Cafeteria		34 Princes Street
Student Counsellors	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Health	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Learning Unit	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Union		34 Princes Street
Tamaki Campus	Corner Merton and Morrin Roads	Glen Innes
Theatre, Student Activities Officer	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
Thomas Building		3A Symonds Street
Thomas Building- deliveries		3 Symonds Street
Undergraduate Reading Room	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
University Bookshop	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
University Club		23/25 Princes Street
University Park		85 Merton Road
University Press	Auckland University Press	9 Grafton Road
Uniprint		176 Kapa Road, Orakei
Works Registrar	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Zoology - deliveries	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street



# INDEX

## A

Abandonments, 61  
 Abstracts, 78  
 Academic Dress, 78-79  
 Academic Dress hire, 443  
 Academic Qualifications Statute (Conferment of), 78-79  
 Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress, 58  
 Accommodation Service, 443  
 Accounting & Finance, Department of, 249-250  
 Additional Lectures, 61  
 Addition of papers and subjects, 57  
 Admission, 54-55  
   *ad eundem statum*, 54, 69  
   provisional entrance, 55  
   special, 54-55, 70  
 Aegrotat pass, 77  
 Alcohol, 85  
 Alterations to courses, 57  
 Alumni Association, *see* University of Auckland  
   Alumni Assoc.  
 Ancient History, 190-192  
 Anthropology, 183-185  
 Anthropology, Department of, 183-185  
 Architecture Property and Planning, Faculty of, 91-114  
 Architecture, Department of, 92-104  
 Arms of the University, 2  
 Art History, Department of, 185-186, 292  
 Arts, Faculty of, 115-220  
 Asian Geography, 196  
 Asian History, 199, 200  
 Asian Languages and Literatures, 186-189  
 Asian Politics, 205  
 Asian Studies, 186  
 Auckland Uniservices Ltd., 443  
 Auckland University Club, 443  
 Awards Handbook, 453

## B

Biochemistry, *see* Biological Sciences  
 Biological Sciences, School of, 379-384  
 Biology (for BHB), 317  
 Biology (for BSc), *see* Biological Sciences  
 Botany, *See* Biological Sciences  
 Bursaries, *see* Student Allowances

## C

Calendar Year, 7-11  
 Careers Advisory Service, 443  
 Catering Services, 448  
 Cellular and Molecular Biology, Department of, *see* Biological Sciences  
 Centre for Pacific Studies, 203  
 Certificates:  
   Geothermal Energy Technology, 288  
   Ocular Pharmacology, 407  
   Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry, 407  
 Certificate of Proficiency, 433-434  
 Certificate - Joint, 434  
 Certificate - Transitional, 434-435  
 Chapel, 444  
 Chaplains, 444  
 Chemistry, Department of, 384-386

Chinese, 187  
 Classical Studies, 192  
 Classics and Ancient History, Department of, 189-192  
 Commerce, Faculty of, 221-261  
 Commercial Law, Department of, 250-251  
 Compassionate Pass, 77  
 Computer Centre, 444  
 Computer Science, Department of, 386-388  
   Commerce papers, 228-231  
   Science papers, 346-351  
 Computer System Regulations, 86  
 Conceded Passes, 76  
 Conjoint Degrees, BCom and BSc, 426  
 Continuing Education, Centre for, 443  
 Convocation, Court of Register Statute, *see* Statutes and Regulations of the University  
 Copyright, 88  
 Council meetings, 7-11  
   members, 12  
 Counselling Service, 445  
 Course prescriptions for Degrees:  
   Accounting & Finance, 249-250  
   Ancient History, 190-192  
   Anthropology, 183-185  
   Architecture, 99-103  
   Art History, 185-186, 292  
   Asian Geography, 196  
   Asian History, 199, 200  
   Asian Politics, 205  
   Asian Studies, 186  
   Audiology, 319  
   Biochemistry, 379-380  
   Biology for BHB, 317  
   Biology for BSc, 380, 381, 382-384  
   Botany, 380-381  
   Building Science, 102-103  
   Cellular and Molecular Biology, 381-382  
   Chemistry, 384-386  
   Chinese, 187  
   Classical Studies, 192  
   Commercial Law, 250-251  
   Computer Science, 386-388  
   Dutch, 197  
   Economics, 251-252  
   Education, 193-194, 265, 388  
   Engineering, 276-286  
   English, 194-196  
   Environmental Science, 388  
   Film & T.V. Studies, 196  
   Fine Arts, 292-293  
   French, 207-208  
   Geography, 196-197, 389-390  
   Geology, 390-392  
   German, 197-198  
   Greek, 190  
   Hebrew, 199  
   History, 199-201  
   Human Biology, 317-318  
   Indonesian, 187-188  
   Italian, 208-209  
   Japanese, 188  
   Jurisprudence, 305-306  
   Korean, 188-189  
   Latin, 189-190  
   Law, 301-303  
   Law, (Honours), 301-303, 303-305  
   Linguistics, 185  
   Management Science and Information Systems, 252-253

- Management Studies and  
 Labour Relations, 201-202, 253-254  
 Maori Studies, 202-203  
 Marketing and International Business, 254-255  
 Mathematics and Statistics, 255, 392-396  
 Medical Science, 319-321, 396  
 Medicine, 317-319  
 Music, 203, 334-335  
 Optometry, 396-397  
 Pacific Studies, 203  
 Pharmacology for BSc, 397-398  
 Philosophy, 203-205, 398  
 Physics, 205, 398-401  
 Physiology for BSc, 401-402  
 Planning, 113-114  
 Political Studies, 205  
 Property, 108-109  
 Psychology, 205-207, 402-403  
 Public Health, 321  
 Russian, 210-211  
 Samoan, *see* Pacific Studies  
 Scandinavian Studies, 198-199  
 Science Communication, 403  
 Science Education, 403, 427  
 Social Work, 211  
 Sociology, 211-212  
 Spanish, 209-210  
 Taxation Studies, 255  
 Theatre Studies, 212  
 Theology, 416-420  
 Tutoring in Science, 403-404  
 Zoology, 382-384
- Course Prescriptions for Diplomas:  
 Broadcast Communication, 218  
 Business, 258-261  
 Commerce, 261  
 Computer Science, 406  
 Drama, 218  
 English Language Teaching, 218-219  
 Geothermal Energy Technology, 287-288  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 324  
 Labour Studies, 219  
 Local Government and Administration, 219  
 Mathematics Education, 430  
 Mental Health, 324  
 Music, 338  
 Music with Honours, 338  
 Obstetrics, 324  
 Paediatrics, 325  
 Postgraduate Applied Psychology, 406  
 Postgraduate Clinical Psychology, 406  
 Postgraduate Legal Studies, 307  
 Postgraduate Social Research, 220  
 Postgraduate Translation, 220  
 Professional Ethics, 219-220  
 Pulp & Paper Technology, 288  
 Science Education, 430-431  
 Special Education, 267  
 Statistics, 406
- Course Prescriptions for Professional Examinations:  
 Accounting, 256  
 Architecture, 98  
 Law and Practice, 303
- Course Regulations for Degrees - *see* Degree Regulations  
 Course Regulations for Diplomas:  
 Arts, 212  
 Arts Administration, 212-213  
 Broadcast Communication, 213  
 Business, 256-258
- Commerce, 258  
 Computer Science, 404  
 Criminology (*discontinued*), 306  
 Drama, 213  
 Educational Psychology, 265  
 English Language Teaching, 213-214  
 Geothermal Energy Technology, 287  
 Guidance and Counselling, 266  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 321-322  
 Labour Studies, 214-215  
 Legal Studies, 306-307  
 Local Government and Administration, 215  
 Mathematics Education, 428  
 Mental Health, 322  
 Music, 336-337  
 Music with Honours, 337  
 Obstetrics, 322-323  
 Paediatrics, 323  
 Performing Arts, 215, 428-429  
 Politics and the News Media, 215-216  
 Postgraduate Applied Psychology, 405  
 Postgraduate Arts, 216-217  
 Postgraduate Building Science, 104  
 Postgraduate Clinical Psychology, 405-406  
 Postgraduate Science, 406  
 Postgraduate Social Research, 217  
 Postgraduate Translation, 217-218  
 Professional Ethics, 216  
 Public Health, 323-324  
 Pulp & Paper Technology, 287  
 Science, 404  
 Science Education, 429  
 Special Education, 267  
 Statistics, 404-405
- Course Regulations for Professional Examinations:  
 Membership of NZ Society of Accountants, 256  
 Institute of Architects & AERB Special Exam, 98  
 Admission as Barrister and Solicitor, 299
- Creche, 445  
 Credits, 59-61  
 Cross-credits, 58-59
- ## D
- Dates of Terms, 6-12, 55  
 Deans, 13-14  
 Degree, Completion of, at another University, 61  
 Degrees, Conferring of, 78-79  
 Degree Courses, *see* Course Prescriptions for Degrees  
 Degrees, Honorary, 80-81  
 Degree Regulations (and Schedules):  
 Bachelor of  
   Architecture, 92-96  
   Arts, 116-177  
   Commerce, 223-243  
   Commerce (Honours), 244-245  
   Education, 263  
   Engineering, 269-274  
   Fine Arts, 290-291  
   Human Biology, 310  
   Laws, 295-298  
   Laws (Honours), 298-299  
   Medicine and Surgery, 310-311  
   Music, 327-330  
   Music (Honours), 330-332  
   Music (Performance), 330  
   Music (Performance) (Hons), 332  
   Optometry, 375-376  
   Planning, 109-112

- Property, 104-107  
 Science, 341-371  
 Science (Honours), 372-375  
 Science Education, 422-423  
 Technology, 423-426  
 Theology, 409-417
- Master of  
 Architecture, 96-97  
 Arts, 178-183  
 Audiology, 311  
 Building Science, 97-98  
 Business Administration, 246-247  
 Commerce, 245-246  
 Commercial Law, 248  
 Education, 264-265  
 Engineering, 274-275  
 Fine Arts, 291-292  
 Health Sciences, 313-314  
 Jurisprudence, 300-301  
 Laws, 299-300  
 Literature, 183  
 Medical Science, 314-315  
 Music, 332-333  
 Philosophy, 427  
 Planning, 112-113  
 Property, 107-108  
 Public Health, 315-316  
 Science, 439-440  
 Taxation Studies, 248-249
- Degrees and Diplomas Statute, 79-81
- Doctor of  
 Engineering, 440-441  
 Jurisprudence, 301  
 Laws, 440  
 Literature, 438-439  
 Medicine, 316-317  
 Music, 333-334  
 Philosophy, 437-438  
 Science, 439-440
- Deletions of papers and subjects, 57
- Diploma courses *see* Course prescriptions for Diplomas
- Discipline, Regulations, 84-86  
 Library, 87-88  
 Computer System, 86
- Doctorates, *see* Degree Regulations
- Tuition and Research Fees, 82-83
- Dutch, 197
- ## E
- Economics, Department of, 251-252  
 Education Act, 1989, 48  
 Education, Department of, 193-194, 265  
 Education, Faculty of, 262-267  
 Elam School of Fine Arts, 290  
 Eligibility to Enrol, 54-55, 56  
 Eligibility to sit Examinations, 75  
 English, Department of, 194-196  
 English, as a Second Language, 89  
 Engineering, Faculty of, 268-288  
 Enrolment 1993, 54-55, 62-72
- Enrolment:  
 eligibility, 54-55, 62-72  
 extramural, 72-73  
 late, 70  
 limitations, 62-69  
 pre-enrolment, 55, 62-69  
 timetable 1993, 70-72
- Enrolment & Course, Regulations (General), 55-61
- Entrance, Provisional, 55  
 Environmental Science, 388  
 Examinations, 75-78  
   aegrotat and compassionate passes, 77  
   availability of scripts, 77  
   conceded passes, 76  
   conduct, 75-76  
   grades and marks, 76  
   marking of scripts, 76  
   open and restricted book, 75  
   recount of marks, 76-77  
   restricted passes, 76  
   theses, 78
- 'Exclusion', *see* Unsatisfactory Progress
- Exempted papers, courses, subjects, 61
- Extramural enrolment, 72-73  
   at Massey University, 72-73
- ## F
- Failure in a paper, course, after two attempts, 56  
 Failure to make satisfactory academic progress, 58  
 Fees, 81-84  
 Film & Television Studies, 196  
 Fine Arts, Faculty of, 289-293  
   Elam School of, 290
- Fines:  
 disciplinary, 85  
 library, 87, 88  
 penalties, *see* Fees
- Foreign Language Reading Examination, 208  
   French, 207-208  
   French, 207-208  
 Full time study, Definitions, 73-74
- ## G
- General Statutes and Regulations, 53-88  
 Geography, Department of, 196-197, 389-390  
 Geothermal Institute, 287-288  
 German, 197-198  
 Germanic Languages and Literature, Department of, 197-199  
 Geology, Department of, 390-392  
 Glossary of Terminology, 506-508
- Graduates:  
 Alumni Association, 449  
   N.Z. Association U.K., 446  
   Club, 443  
   Honorary, 14  
 Graduation, 78-79  
 Grafton Hall, 445  
 Greek, 190  
 Group B subjects (for BA), 176-177
- ## H
- Halls of Residence, 445  
   International House, 445  
   Grafton Hall, 445  
   O'Rorke Hall, 445  
   Park Road Student Flats, 445
- Harassment Procedures, 445-446  
 Health Service, Student, 449  
 Hebrew, 199  
 Higher Degrees, 438-441  
   Doctor of Engineering, 440-441  
   Doctor of Laws, 440  
   Doctor of Literature, 438-439  
   Doctor of Science, 439-440
- History, Department of, 199-201

History, University of Auckland, 3-4  
 History Degrees, award of, 80-81  
 Honorary Graduates, 14

## I

Indonesian, 187-188  
 Instrument, instruction in a Single, 338  
 Intermediate Courses, Other Universities, 435  
 Intellectual Property, 446  
 Inter-Faculty Degrees and Diplomas, 421-431  
 Inter-Faculty Studies, 432-435  
 International House, 445  
 Inventions and Patents, 446  
 Italian, 208-209

## J

Japanese, 188  
 Joint Board of Studies, Theology, 408-420

## K

Korean, 188-189

## L

Laboratory Timetable, 1993, 503-505  
 Late Enrolment, 54, 55, 70  
 Latin, 189-190  
 Law, Faculty of, 294-307  
 Lecture Timetable, 1993, 474-502  
 Legislation, 48-49  
 Leigh Laboratory, 384  
 Library, 87-88  
   hours, 87  
 Limitations of Entry Statute, 62  
 Limited entry papers and courses, 62-69  
 Linguistics, 185  
 Loans, 453  
 Lost Property, 446

## M

Maclaurin Chapel, 444  
 Maclament Arts Centre, 448  
 Main Campus Map, 522  
 Management Science and Information Systems,  
   Department of, 252-253  
 Management Studies and Labour Relations,  
   Department of, 201, 202, 253-254  
 Maori Studies, 202-203  
 Map,  
   Main Campus 522  
   Tamaki Campus 524  
 Marine Research Laboratory,  
   *see* Leigh Laboratory  
 Marketing and International Business,  
   Department of, 254-255  
 Marking of Scripts, 76  
 Massey University, tuition at, 72-73  
 Mathematics and Statistics, Department of, 255, 392-396  
 Matriculation, 54  
 McGregor Museum, 384  
 Medical Science, 319-321, 396  
 Medicine and Human Biology, Faculty of, 308-325  
   Higher Academic Training, 325  
   Refresher Training, 325  
   School of, 309  
 Music, BA papers, 203  
   instruction for non-degree students, 338

Music, Faculty of, 326-338

## N

Newman Hall, 446  
 New Start Programme, 89  
 NZ Federation of University Women, 443  
 NZ Universities Graduates' Association (UK), 446  
 NZ University Students' Association, 446  
 Non-matriculated students, 58

## O

Obstetrics & Gynaecology, Higher Training, 325  
 Refresher Training for Family Doctors, 325  
 Officers of the University, 12  
 Operations Research, 433  
 Optometry, 396-397  
 O'Rorke Hall, 445  
 Overseas educational qualifications, 54, 69  
 Overseas Students, General Information, 89-90  
 Overseas Students Unit, 69, 89-90

## P

Pacific Studies, 203  
 Parking, 447  
 Park Road Student Flats, 445  
 Patents, 446  
 Payment of Fees, 57, 81-84  
 Penalties for late enrolment, 55, 81-82  
 Personal Interest Course, 54  
 Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology,  
   Department of, 397-398  
 Philosophy, Department of, 203-205, 398  
   Master of, 427  
   Doctor of, 437-438  
 Philosophy of Science, 398  
 Physics, Department of, 205, 398-401  
 Physiology, Department of, 401-402  
 Planning, Department of, 109-114  
 Political Studies, Department of, 205  
 Postgraduate Medical Committee, 325  
 Pre-enrolment Application Regulations, 55  
 Pre-enrolment, 55, 62-69  
 Preparatory Preliminary Courses,  
   German, 197-198  
   Latin, 189  
 Prerequisites, *see* Degree Regulations  
 Prescribed Texts, 460-473  
 Prizes: 453  
   University of Auckland 1991, 456-459  
 Professore Emeriti, 14  
 Professional Examinations, *see* Course  
   Prescriptions for professional examinations  
 Property, Department of, 104-109  
 Provisional Entrance, 55  
 Psychology:  
   Clinical Psychology Services, 444  
   Department of, 205-207, 402-403  
 Public Comment, 447

## Q

## R

Radiochemistry, 407  
 Recreation Centre, 447

- Research, Engineering, 276  
 Rest Spaces, 447  
 Restricted Passes, 76  
 'Restrictions' on Enrolment, *see* Limitations on Enrolment  
 Recount of marks, 76-77  
 Romance Languages, Department of, 207-210  
 Russian, 210-211
- S**
- Scandinavian Studies, 198-199  
 Science, Faculty of, 339-407  
 Scholarships and other Awards, 453-459  
 Scholarships, University of Auckland 1992, 454-456  
 Scholarships, National, 1992, 453-454  
 Senate:  
   Meetings, 7-11  
   Members, 12  
 Smoking, 84-85, 88  
 Society of Accountants, 256  
 Social Research, Postgraduate Diploma in, 217  
 Social Work, Master of Arts in, 211  
 Sociology, 211-212  
 Spanish, 209-210  
 Special Admission, 54-55  
 Staff:  
   Academic, 15-40  
   General, 42-48  
   Library, 40-41  
 Statutes and Regulations of the University:  
   Admission Regulations, 54-55  
   Computer System Regulations, 86  
   Conferment of Degrees and Academic Dress Statute, 78-79  
   Court of Convocation Register Statute, 49-50  
   Council Elections Statutes (Court of Convocation Representatives), 50-51  
   Degrees and Diplomas Statutes, 79-81  
   Disciplinary Regulations, 84-86  
   Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations, 55-61  
   Extramural Enrolment Statute, 72-73  
   Examination Regulations, 75-78  
   Fees Regulations, 81-84  
   Fellows of the University of Auckland Statute, 52  
   Library Regulations, 87-88  
   Limitation of Entry Statute, 62  
   Pre-enrolment Application Regulations, 55  
 Student Allowances, 442-453  
 Student Counselling, 445  
 Student Health Service, 449  
 Student Learning Centre, 449  
 Students' Association, 448-449  
 Studio:  
   Fine Arts, 293
- Subject Codes, summary of, 509  
 Supplementary courses, *see* Preparatory courses
- T**
- Tamaki Campus, 5  
 Tamaki Campus Map, 524  
 Technology, 423-426  
 Telephones, 449  
 Terms, 55  
   dates, 6-11  
 Theatre Studies, 212  
 Theses, 78  
   *see also* the Regulations for individual degrees  
 Texts, prescribed, 460-473  
 Theology, 408-420  
 Timetables, 1993  
   Enrolment, 1993 70-72  
   Lecture, 1993 474-502  
   Laboratory, 1993 503-505  
 Transfer from another NZ University, 54-69  
 Transitional Certificate, 434-435  
 Tuition Fees, 81-84  
 Tutoring in Maths, 393  
 Tutoring in Science, 403-404
- U**
- UniServices Ltd, *see* Auckland Uniservices Ltd  
 Universities (Other), Intermediate Courses, 435  
 University of Auckland Alumni Association, 449  
 University of Auckland Foundation, 450  
 University of Auckland Act 1961, 48-49  
 University Park, 450  
 Unsatisfactory Progress, 58
- V**
- Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers, 61
- W**
- Welfare Services, 443-445, 447-449  
 Wellesley Programme, 89  
 Withdrawals from course, paper or subject, 57
- Y**
- Z**
- Zoology, Department of, *see* Biological Sciences  
 Zoology (McGregor) Museum, 384

Editor: Felicity Hopkin

Desktop Publishing: Cara Le-Vene (The Image Studio), Sal Manzi, Rahima Macdonald, Lynda McLea, Roshni Prasad, Debby Ryan, Helen Thomas.

Additional Assistance: Brent Clark, Jeff Kennedy, Stephanie Wynne and many colleagues

Printing: Uniprint Auckland







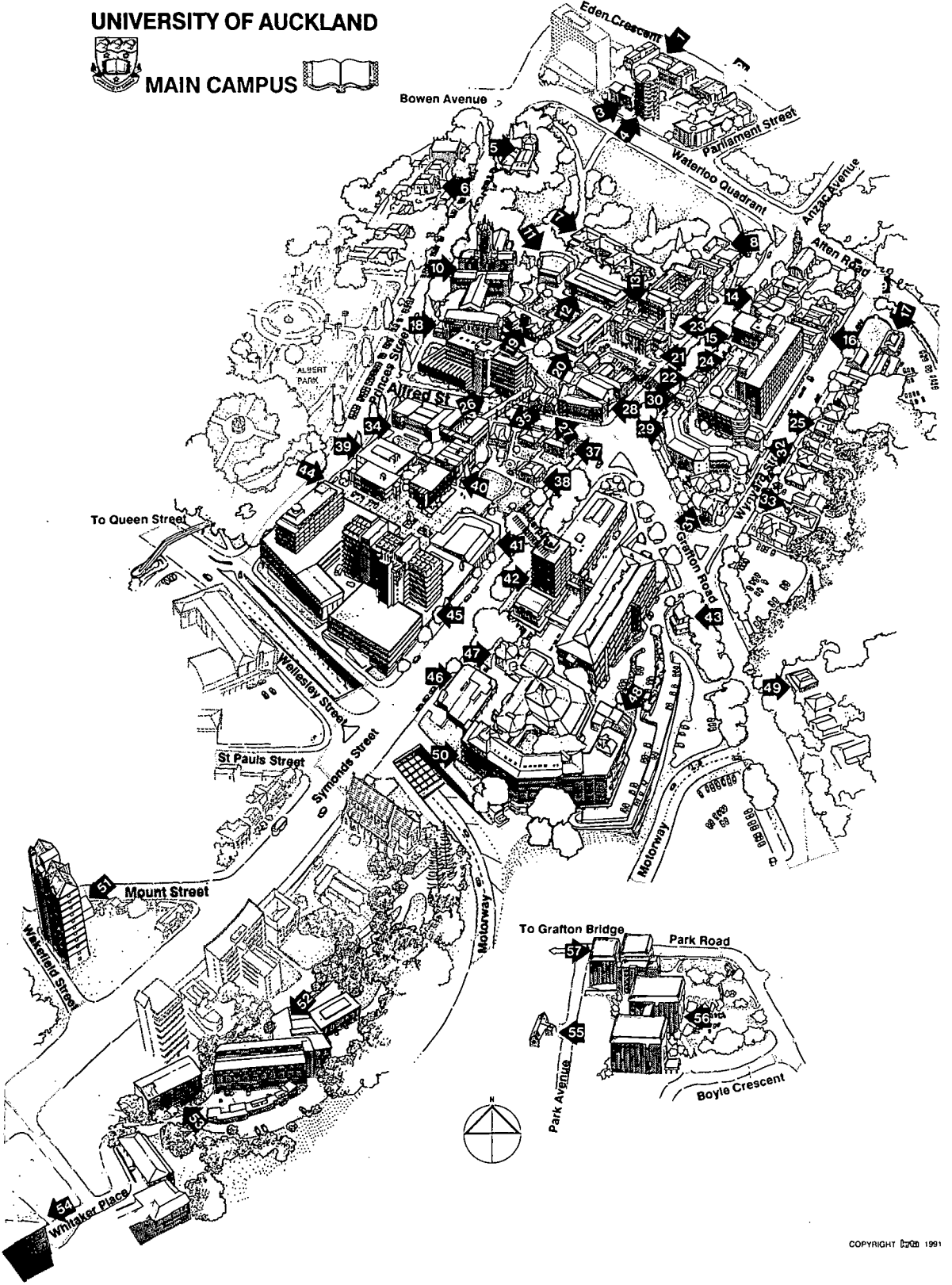




UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND



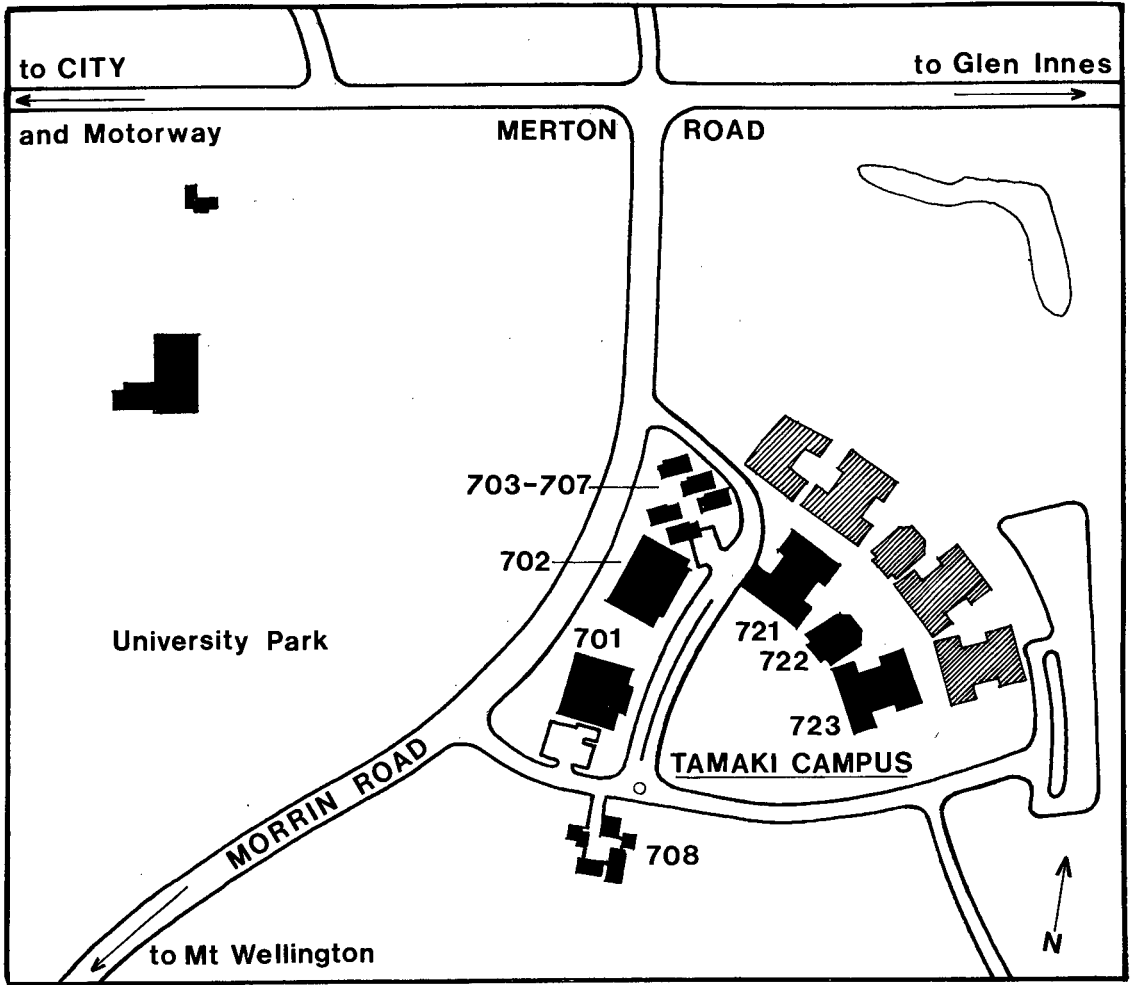
MAIN CAMPUS



## KEY TO CAMPUS MAP

	No.		
ACADEMIC REGISTRY	18	LIBRARIES:	
ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE	29	General	26
ACOUSTICS	48	Architecture	47
ALUMNI OFFICE	11	Asian Languages & Literatures	26
ANTHROPOLOGY	24	Audio Visual	30
ARCHITECTURE	47	Biological Sciences	23
ART HISTORY	35	Commerce	29
ASIAN LANGUAGES & LITERATURES	37	Continuing Education	10
AUCKLAND UNISERVICES LTD	42	Engineering	42
AUDIO VISUAL CENTRE	45	Fine Arts	52
BANK OF NEW ZEALAND	19	Geography	15
BIOCHEMISTRY	45	Geology	45
BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES	23	Law	1
BOOKSHOP	40	Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)	17
BOTANY	23	Medicine	56
CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE	11	Music	14
CASHIER	10	Science	44
CATHOLIC CHAPLAINS	3	MAIDMENT ARTS CENTRE	34
CELLULAR & MOLECULAR BIOLOGY	23	MAIN STORES - SERVICES	30
CENTRE FOR PACIFIC STUDIES	25	MAINTENANCE	24
CHAPEL AND CHAPLAIN	5	MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS	28
CHEMISTRY	45	MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS	29
CHILDCARE CENTRE	55	MAORI STUDIES	17
CHINESE	37	MARAE	17
CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY	9	MARKETING & INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS	20
COMMERCE STUDENT CENTRE	20	MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS	44
COMMERCE A	12	MEDICAL SCHOOL	56
COMMERCE B	20	MUSIC	14
COMMERCE C	29	MUSIC PIANO STUDIES	49
COMMERCIAL LAW	28	NEWMAN HALL	3
COMPUTER CENTRE	46	"NUMBER FOURTEEN"	53
COMPUTER SCIENCE	44	N.Z. FEDERATION OF UNIVERSITY WOMEN	7
CONFERENCE CENTRE	47	OLD ARTS BUILDING	10
CONTINUING EDUCATION	10	OLD BIOLOGY	21
CRECHE	33	OLD CHORAL HALL	28
CUSTODIANS	45	OLD GOVERNMENT HOUSE	7
DRAMA THEATRE	30	OPTOMETRY	57
ECONOMICS	12	O'RORKE HALL	51
EDUCATION	4	PHARMACY AND POST OFFICE AGENCY	19
ENGINEERING	42	PHILOSOPHY	27
ENGLISH	30	PHOTOGRAPHERS	45
ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE	15	PHYSICO-CHEMISTRY	56
EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITIES	11	PHYSICS	44
FINANCE REGISTRY	10	PLANNING	50
FINE ARTS	52	POLITICAL STUDIES	22
FRENCH	30	PROPERTY	50
GEOGRAPHY	15	PSYCHOLOGY	24
GEOLOGY	45	RECREATION CENTRE	41
GEOTHERMAL INSTITUTE	50	REGISTRY	18
GERMANIC LANGUAGES & LITERATURE	31	ROMANCE LANGUAGES	30
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS	29	RUSSIAN	32
GROUND	8	SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES	32
HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH OFFICE	4	SENIOR COMMON ROOM	7
HISTORY	16	SOCIOLOGY	24
HUMAN SCIENCES BUILDING	24	SPANISH	30
INDONESIAN	37	STAFF DEVELOPMENT OFFICER	4
INFORMATION & PUBLIC AFFAIRS	10	STAFF REGISTRY	18
INTERNATIONAL HOUSE	54	STUDENT ACCOMMODATION	10
ITALIAN	30	STUDENT CAFETERIA/STUDENT UNION	39
JAPANESE	37	STUDENT CAFETERIA/HUMAN SCIENCES	24
KOREAN	37	STUDENT COUNSELLORS	19
LANGUAGE LABORATORIES B & D	26	STUDENT HEALTH	19
LANGUAGE LABORATORIES 1 & 2	31	STUDENT LEARNING CENTRE	19
LANGUAGE LABORATORIES 3, 4 & 5	30,	STUDENT UNION	40
LAW	1 & 2	THOMAS BUILDING	23
LECTURE THEATRES:		UNDERGRADUATE READING ROOM	7
Architecture (ALR)	50	UNIVERSITY CLUB	6
Botany (BotLT)	21	WORKS & SERVICES REGISTRY	28
Cellular & Molecular (CMBioLT)	23	ZOOLOGY	23
Chemistry (Chem)	45		
Conference Centre	47	PLACES OF INTEREST	
Engineering (Eng)	42		
Human Sciences (HSB)	24	1. Barracks Wall - 1848	
Library (Lib)	26	2. Old Government House - 1856	7
Mathematics (MLT)	44	3. Old Choral Hall - 1873/1919	28
Medical School	56	4. Nathan House. "Wickford" 1880's	18
Old Arts (OA)	10	5. Old Arts Building - 1926	10
Old Choral Hall (OCH)	28		
Physics (PLT)	44		
Upper & Lower (ULT & LLT)	11		
Zoology (ZooLT)	21		
LIAISON OFFICE	13		

# TAMAKI CAMPUS



## KEY

701	-	Library
702	-	Student Resource Centre, Lecture Theatre and Seminar Rooms
703-707	-	Staff Offices
708	-	Student Union
721	-	Administration, Lecture Theatre, Computer Laboratory, Seminar Rooms and Staff Offices
722	-	Lecture Theatre
723	-	Lecture Theatres, Seminar Rooms and Staff Offices